

# **ACCESSORY INSTALLATION GUIDES**

## 2008 Accessory Instruction List

ITEM NO.	PART NUMBER	DESCRIPTION	APPLICATION					
			LEGACY		IMPREZA		FORESTER	B9
			SDN	O/B WGN	SDN	WGN	SUV	TRIBECA
1	J2010AG000WB	ARMREST - IVORY	X	X				
2	J2010AG000JD	ARMREST - OFF BLACK	X	X				
3	H6210FG000	AUX INPUT CABLE			X	X		
4	H481SXA100	BACKUP SENSOR SYSTEM, TRIBECA (08MY)						X
5	H481SXA100-OM	BACKUP SENSOR SYSTEM, TRIBECA (08MY) OWNER MANUAL						X
6	H481SXA100-S	BACKUP SENSOR SYSTEM, TRIBECA (08MY) SUPPLEMENT - SENSOR LOCATIONS						X
7	J6010FS000	BATTERY WARMER	X	X	X	X	X	X
8	E361SSA100	BIKE CARRIER, FORK MOUNT		X			X	X
9	E3610LS430	BIKE CARRIER, FORK MOUNT - FRONT WHEEL MOUNT		X			X	X
10	E361SAG400	BIKE CARRIER, ROOF MOUNT - TWO BIKE		X			X	
11	E361SXA300	BIKE CARRIER, ROOF MOUNT (SINGLE)			X	X		X
12	E3610AS940	BIKE CARRIER-TRAILER HITCH		X			X	X
13	H0018FG300	BLUETOOTH HANDS FREE KIT			X	X	X	
14	J101SFG000	BODY SIDE MOLDING - IMPREZA 08+			X	X		
15	E7710AS109	BUMPER CORNER MOLDING	X	X	X	X	X	X
16	E7710AS108	BUMPER CORNER MOULDING	X	X	X	X	X	X
17	E771SFG000	BUMPER COVER				X		
18	E771SSA000	BUMPER COVER					X	
19	E771SFG000	BUMPER COVER - IMPREZA 08+				X		
20	E771SXA100	BUMPER COVER - TRIBECA 08+						X
21	M001SFG500	CAR COVER			X			
22	M001SFG800	CAR COVER				X		
23	M001SSA000	CAR COVER					X	
24	M001SXA100	CAR COVER - TRIBECA						X
25	SOA303N100	CARGO AREA SPOTLIGHT		X		X	X	X
26	E3610AS990	CARGO BASKET		X			X	X
27	E361SSA200	CARGO BASKET (HEAVY DUTY) LOADWARRIOR		X	X	X	X	X
28	E361SAG200	CARGO CARRIER		X	X	X	X	X
29	E361SAG300	CARGO CARRIER - EXTENDED		X	X	X	X	X
30	F551SSA101	CARGO NET - REAR					X	
31	F551SSA201	CARGO NET - REAR OF 2ND SEAT					X	
32	F551SXA100	CARGO NET - REAR OF 2ND SEAT						X
33	F551SAG200	CARGO NET - REAR OF REAR SEAT BACK		X				
34	F551SFG100	CARGO NET - REAR VERTICAL NET (08MY+)				X		
35	F551SSA001	CARGO NET - SIDE					X	
36	F551SAG100	CARGO NET - SIDE NET		X				
37	F551SAG000	CARGO NET - VERTICAL		X				
38	F551SXA000	CARGO NET - VERTICAL						X
39	F551SAG700	CARGO NETS - SEDAN TRUNK	X					
40	F551SFG000	CARGO NETS, SIDE NETS (08MY+)			X			
41	E3610FG500	CARRIER BASE - IMPREZA (08MY+)			X	X		
42	H625SSA000	CD CHANGER					X	
43	F551SXA200	COMPARTMENT SEPARATOR						X
44	F551SAG500	COMPARTMENT SEPARATOR (W/MOONROOF)		X				
45	F551SAG600	COMPARTMENT SEPARATOR (W/O MOONROOF)		X				
46	F551SSA300	COMPARTMENT SEPARATOR W/O SUNROOF					X	
47	F551SSA400	COMPARTMENT SEPARATOR W/SUNROOF					X	
48	E361ESA100	CROSS BAR KIT -SQUARE					X	
49	E3610AS181	CROSS BAR SET-ROUND		X				
50	E361SXA000	CROSSBAR KIT - AERO, TRIBECA (06-08MY+)						X
51	E361SXA400	CROSSBAR KIT - AERO, TRIBECA (08MY+)						X
52	E361SXA500	CROSSBAR KIT - ROUND, TRIBECA (08MY+)						X
53	H461SXA000	DOME LIGHT	X					X
54	H501SAG200	EC COMPASS MIRROR	X	X				
55	H501SSA100	EC COMPASS MIRROR					X	
56	H501SXA000	EC COMPASS MIRROR						X
57	H501SXA100	EC COMPASS MIRROR (ELV)						X
58	H501SFG000	EC COMPASS MIRROR 08MY IMPREZA			X	X		
59	H501SAG100	EC COMPASS MIRROR WITH HOMELINK	X	X			X	
60	H501SXA201	EC COMPASS MIRROR WITH HOMELINK			X	X		X
61	H501SXA200	EC COMPASS MIRROR WITH HOMELINK (08MY+)			X	X		X
62	H501SSA040	EC MIRROR COMPASS HOMELINK ADAPTOR			X	X	X	



## 2008 Accessory Instruction List

ITEM NO.	PART NUMBER	DESCRIPTION	APPLICATION					
			LEGACY		IMPREZA		FORESTER	B9
			SDN	O/B WGN	SDN	WGN	SUV	TRIBECA
63	H501SAG010	ELECTRONIC COMPASS MIRROR W/ HOMELINK	X	X			X	
64	A0910AS100	ENGINE BLOCK HEATER	X	X	X	X	X	
65	H4510AG030	FOG LAMP KIT	X					
66	H541SAG000	FOG LAMP KIT		X				
67	H4510FG030	FOG LAMP KIT, IMPREZA WRX STI				X		
68	H541SAG000	FOG LAMP KIT, OUTBACK BASIC		X				
69	E7710SA030	FRONT BUMPER UNDERGUARD					X	
70	E551SAG000	FRONT BUMPER UNDERGUARD - OUTBACK (08+)		X				
71	E551SXA000	FRONT BUMPER UNDERGUARD - TRIBECA 08+						X
72	M001SAG300	FRONT END COVER	X					
73	M001SAG400	FRONT END COVER		X				
74	M001SFG000	FRONT END COVER			X	X		
75	M001SSA200	FRONT END COVER - FULL					X	
76	M001SSA210	FRONT END COVER - HOOD					X	
77	E231SAG000	HOOD PROTECTOR	X					
78	E231SAG300	HOOD PROTECTOR		X				
79	E231SSA100	HOOD PROTECTOR					X	
80	E231SXA100	HOOD PROTECTOR - TRIBECA (08MY+)						X
81	E231SAG200	HOOD PROTECTOR - TURBO	X	X				
82	E231SFG010	HOOD PROTECTOR (08MY+)			X	X		
83	H621SFG500	INTERFACE KIT FOR IPOD			X	X		
84	H621SFG501	INTERFACE KIT FOR IPOD			X	X	X	
85	H621SFG500-OM	INTERFACE KIT FOR IPOD, OWNER'S MANUAL			X	X		
86	E3610AS190	KAYAK CARRIER		X			X	
87	E361SXA200	KAYAK CARRIER		X	X	X	X	X
88	E3610AS890	KAYAK CARRIER MTG CLAMPS (ROUND BAR)		X				X
89	SOA8431120	LOWER CHASSIS BRACE	X	X	X	X	X	
90	E551SFG000	LOWER FRONT BUMPER TRIM - IMPREZA			X	X		
91	E551SFG010	LOWER REAR BUMPER TRIM - IMPREZA (08MY+)				X		
92	F541SXA000	MOON ROOF AIR DEFLECTOR						X
93	F541SAG000	MOONROOF AIR DEFLECTOR	X					
94	F541SSA000	MOONROOF AIR DEFLECTOR					X	
95	C1010FC121	PARKING BRAKE HANDLE - CARBON FIBER					X	
96	H7110FG010	PERIMETER ALARM			X	X		
97	H711SXA000	PERIMETER ALARM (SHOCK SENSOR)						X
98	H711SSA500	PERIMETER ALARM (SHOCK SENSOR) - NON-TURBO MODELS					X	
99	H711SSA400	PERIMETER ALARM (SHOCK SENSOR) - TURBO MODELS					X	
100	H711SAG300	PERIMETER ALARM (SHOCK SENSOR) FOR BEIGE CARPET	X	X				
101	H711SAG200	PERIMETER ALARM (SHOCK SENSOR) FOR GRAY CARPET	X	X				
102	H711SAG400	PERIMETER ALARM (SHOCK SENSOR) MOUNTING KIT	X	X				
103	H7110FG010	PERIMETER ALARM (SHOCK SENSOR) - IMPREZA 08+			X	X		
104	H471SXA100	PUDDLE LIGHTS - DEALER KIT (06MY+)						X
105	B031SSA000	REAR DIFFERENTIAL PROTECTOR					X	
106	F551SFG200	REAR OF SEAT NET (08MY+)				X		
107	E751SSA000	REAR WINDOW DUST DEFLECTOR					X	
108	H001SAG100	REMOTE ENGINE START SYSTEM (LEGACY 08MY+)	X	X				
109	H001SXA100	REMOTE ENGINE STARTER						X
110	H001SFG000	REMOTE STARTER - 08 IMPREZA			X	X		
111	E361SAG300	ROOF BOX - LONG - UPDATED IX!!!						
112	E3610FG550	ROOF CARRIER BASE			X	X		
113	E3610LS120	ROOF RACK - SQUARE BIKE CONV. KIT CLAMPS					X	
114	E3610LS130	ROOF RACK - SQUARE KAYAK/CARGO BASKET CLAMPS					X	
115	E3610LS140	ROOF RACK - SQUARE SKI CARRIER CLAMPS					X	
116	E3610FS980	ROUND BAR BICYCLE CONVERSION KIT		X				X
117	H621SSA101	SATELLITE RADIO KIT - SIRIUS (07MY+)					X	
118	H621SFG000	SATELLITE RADIO KIT - SIRIUS (08MY+)			X	X		
119	H621SXA000	SATELLITE RADIO KIT - XM (07MY+)	X	X				X
120	H621SFG100	SATELLITE RADIO KIT - XM (08MY+)			X	X		
121	H621SXA100	SATELLITE RADIO KIT, SIRIUS - LEGACY AND TRIBECA (07MY)	X	X				X
122	C1010FE200	SHIFT KNOB - TITANIUM (STI) FOR AT					X	
123	C1010FG000	SHIFT KNOB 5MT	X	X	X	X	X	
124	C1010FG300	SHIFT KNOB 5MT DURACON	X	X	X	X	X	
125	C1010FG200	SHIFT KNOB AT	X	X	X	X	X	
126	C1010FG400	SHIFT KNOB, DURACON, 6MT	X			X		
127	H621SFG000	SIRIUS SATELLITE RADIO KIT			X	X		
128	H621SSC000	SIRIUS SATELLITE RADIO KIT			X	X		
129	E3610AS790	SKI ATTACHMENT-6 PR		X	X	X	X	X

## 2008 Accessory Instruction List

ITEM NO.	PART NUMBER	DESCRIPTION	APPLICATION					
			LEGACY		IMPREZA		FORESTER	B9
			SDN	O/B WGN	SDN	WGN	SUV	TRIBECA
130	H630SSA000	SPEAKER UPGRADE					X	
131	J101SXA001	SPLASH GUARD KIT						X
132	J1010FG000	SPLASH GUARD KIT - IMPREZA (08MY+)			X			
133	J1010FG010	SPLASH GUARD KIT - IMPREZA (08MY+)				X		
134	J101SXA200	SPLASH GUARD KIT - TRIBECA (REAR ONLY 08MY+)						X
135	J101SXA000	SPLASH GUARDS						X
136	J101SXA001	SPLASH GUARDS - 08+ TRIBECA, AUSTRALIA ONLY						X
137	J1010AG234	SPLASH GUARDS - LEGACY SEDAN REAR	X					
138	J1010AG221	SPLASH GUARDS - LEGACY WAGON & SEDAN FRONT	X					
139	J1010SA100XX	SPLASH GUARDS - PAINTED					X	
140	J1010SA100XX	SPLASH GUARDS - PAINTED					X	
141	J101SAG000NN	SPLASHGUARD KIT, OUTBACK WAGON (05-08MY)		X				
142	E721SAG000XX	SPOILER - PAINTED	X					
143	E721SSA000XX	SPOILER - PAINTED					X	
144	E721SFG000XX	SPOILER, REAR - PAINTED			X			
145	E721SAG000XX	SPOILER, SEDAN - PAINTED	X					
146	J1010FG100XX	SPORTS MESH GRILLE, IMPREZA			X	X		
147	SOA3881000	SPT BATTERY TIEDOWN	X	X	X	X	X	X
148	SOA3881030	SPT BATTERY TIEDOWN (REFER TO PART NUMBER SOA3881	X	X	X	X	X	X
149	SOA8431010	SPT INTAKE	X	X				
150	SOA3881010	SPT OIL CAP	X	X	X	X	X	X
151	SOA3881040	SPT OIL CAP (REFER TO PART NUMBER SOA3881010)	X	X	X	X	X	X
152	E3610AS450	STABILIZING BRACKETS (4)		X				X
153	E2410FG110	STI FRONT LIP SPOILER, FACTORY AERO			X	X		
154	E2410FG100	STI FRONT LIP SPOILER, NO FACTORY AERO			X	X		
155	E2410FG120	STI FRONT LIP SPOILER, STI				X		
156	C8110AG010	STI PEDAL KIT - AT	X	X	X	X		
157	C8110AG000	STI PEDAL KIT - MT	X	X	X	X		
158	C8110SA015	STI PEDAL KIT 2.0, AT					X	
159	C8110SA005	STI PEDAL KIT 2.0, MT					X	
160	H5010AG000	STI PERFORMANCE GAUGE PACK	X	X				
161	ST2050021000	STRUT TOWER BRACE	X	X				
162	H630SSA300	SUBWOOFER					X	
163	H630SXA000	SUBWOOFER						X
164	H630SSA400	SUBWOOFER - FORESTER (07MY-08MY)					X	
165	H630SFG000	SUBWOOFER (08MY+)			X	X		
166	H630SFG000	SUBWOOFER (08MY+)			X	X		
167	H630SAG000	SUBWOOFER AMPLIFIER	X	X				
168	SOA551G000	SUBWOOFER UNDER SEAT MOUNTING KIT - TRIBECA 08MY+						X
169	F551SXA300ER	TONNEAU COVER (BEIGE)						X
170	F551SXA300MR	TONNEAU COVER (GRAY)						X
171	L101SAG100	TRAILER HITCH		X				
172	L101SSA000	TRAILER HITCH					X	
173	I101sxa100	TRAILER HITCH (07-08)						X
174	D551SXA000	TRANSMISSION FLUID COOLER						X
175	H5010SA020	TURBO BOOST GAUGE					X	
176	H5010SA010	TURBO GAUGE (FXT)					X	
177	H630SSA100	TWEETER KIT					X	
178	B321SFG000	WHEEL LOCKS	X	X	X	X	X	X
179	H621SFG100	XM SATELLITE RADIO KIT			X	X		
180	H621SXA001	XM SATELLITE RADIO KIT	X	X				X

**SUBARU**  
**GENUINE PARTS AUX TERMINAL INPUT CABLE** Installation Manual

Genuine part No. H6210FG000  
 Applicable model Impreza 08MY and later models

Keep the installation manual at the dealer.

**Component**



**Caution**

To prevent an accident, be sure to place the vehicle on a level surface before installation. Apply the parking brake firmly and make sure that the vehicle is stable. Remove the negative terminal of the battery.

**Tools for use**

Screwdrivers (Philips screwdriver, flathead screwdriver), panel remover, wrench, hexagonal wrench, vinyl tape, protective cloth, etc.

**Safety precautions**

Before installation and use, please read this "Safety precautions" carefully for the correct procedures. Precautions described here are intended to ensure safe and appropriate use of this product and to prevent any hazard or damage to yourself or other people. To identify the degree of hazard or damage and it's the level of imminence, the risks, which may occur due to incorrect operation, are classified into two categories in the precautions: "Warning" and "Caution". Be sure to observe them because they are important safety items.

**Warning**

- Make connections in accordance with this installation manual. Otherwise, a fire or an accident may occur. (Mandatory)
- Bundle cables in accordance with the installation method so that operation may not be disturbed. Winding it around the shift lever or the parking brake may result in an accident. (Mandatory)
- Do not modify or disassemble this product. Otherwise, fire, injury or failure may occur. (Disassembly prohibited)
- This product is designed only for the DC12V negative ground vehicle. Do not install this on the DC24V vehicle. Otherwise, a fire may occur. (Prohibited)
- If a fuse of this product or vehicle is blown, be sure to replace it with a new fuse of the specified capacity. A fuse beyond the specified capacity may cause a fire. (Mandatory)
- This product is designed for vehicles only. Do not use it for other purposes. Otherwise, a fire or an electric shock may occur. (Prohibited)

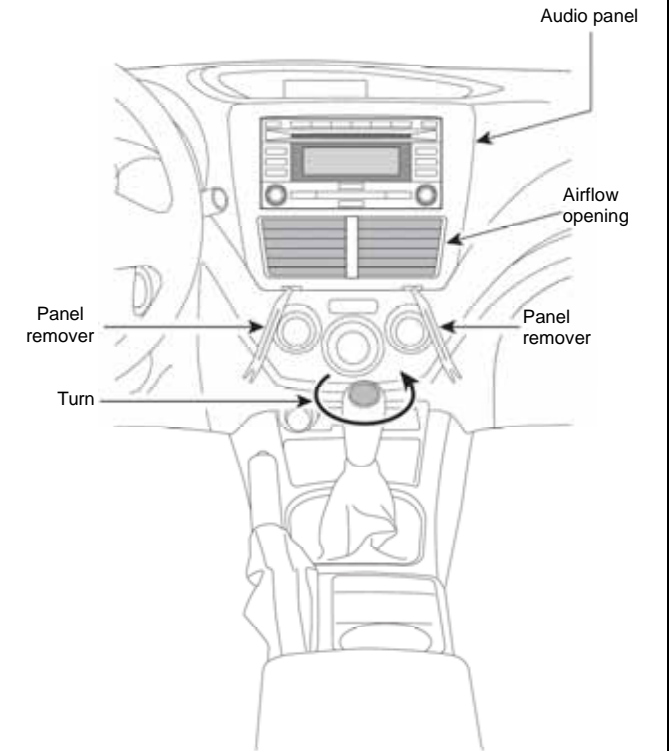
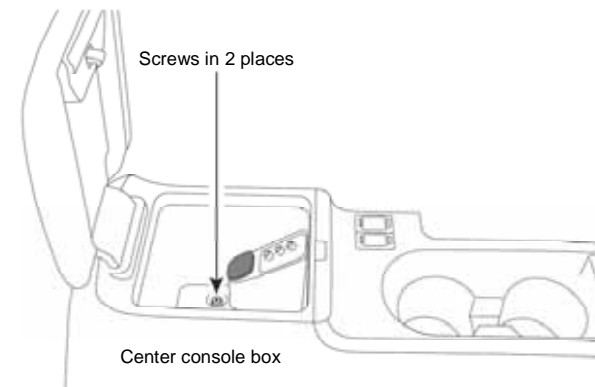
**Caution**

- Do not route cables in high temperature areas. The melting of the cable sheath may cause an accident or a fire. (Mandatory)
- Do not put the cable with movable parts such as vehicle body, seat rail, etc. Otherwise, an accident, an electric shock or a fire may occur due to disconnection or short-circuit. (Prohibited)

**Removing the Panels**

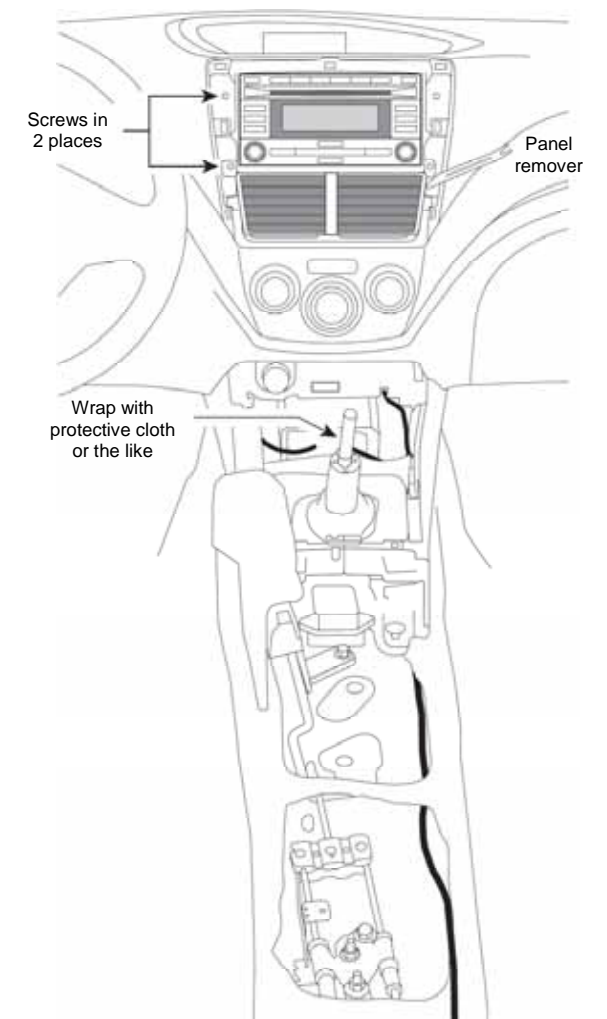
**1. Removing the center console and box**

1. Unscrew the 2 screws inside the center console box using either a Philips screwdriver or a hexagonal wrench.
2. There is a screw in the part that connects the center console box to the panel around the shift knob. Unscrew the screw using a Philips screwdriver and then remove the panel around the shift knob.
3. The shift knob is a screw-in type, so remove the knob by unscrewing it. After removing the shift knob, protect the threaded part by wrapping it in a cloth or other protective material (to avoid scratching the audio panel).



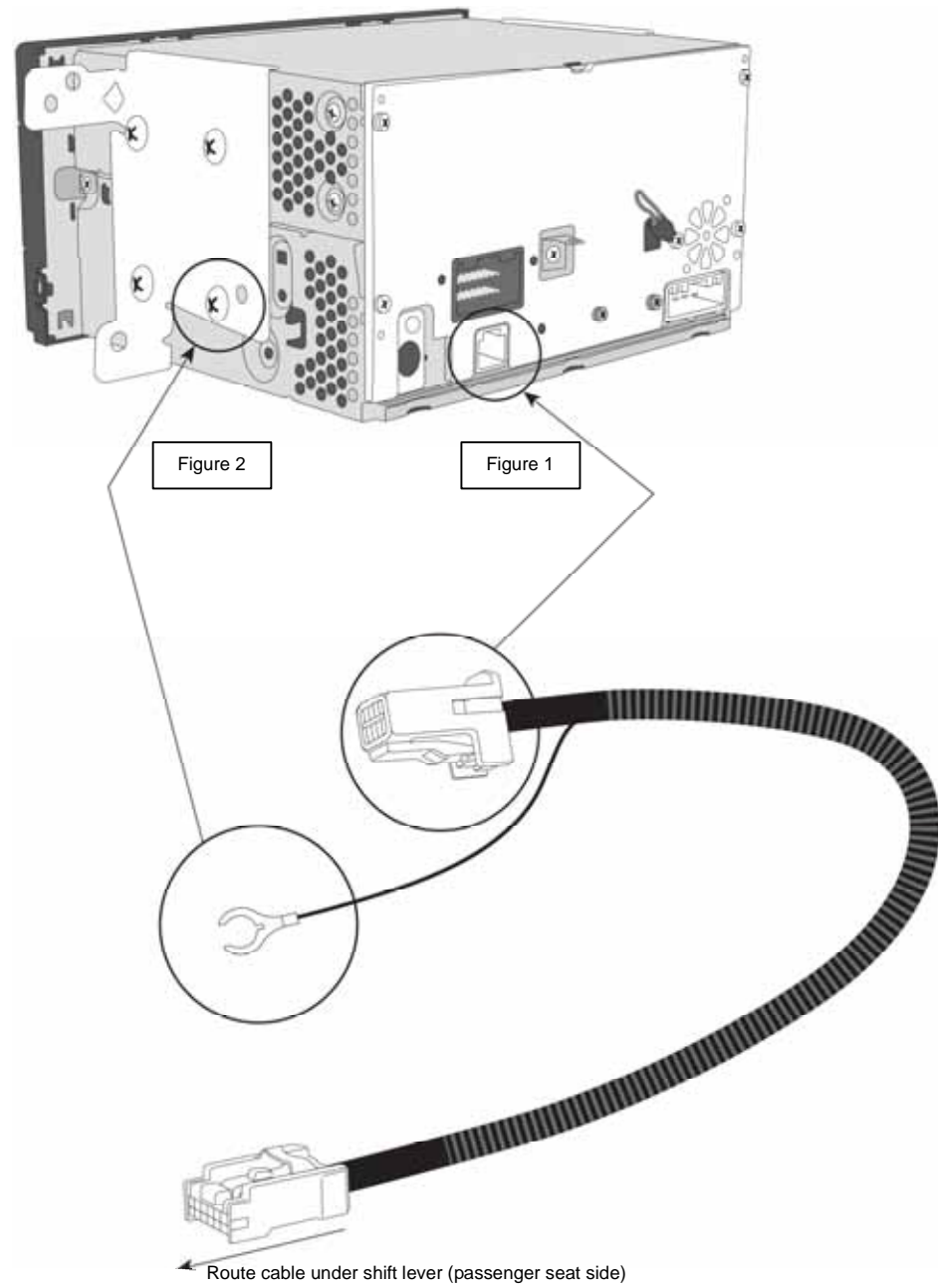
**2. Removing the audio panel**

1. Remove the audio panel by inserting panel removers in the 2 grooves under the airflow opening.
2. Using a Philips screwdriver, unscrew the left and right screws at the bottom of the removed audio panel and take out the audio panel.
3. Remove the ventilation panel using a panel remover.



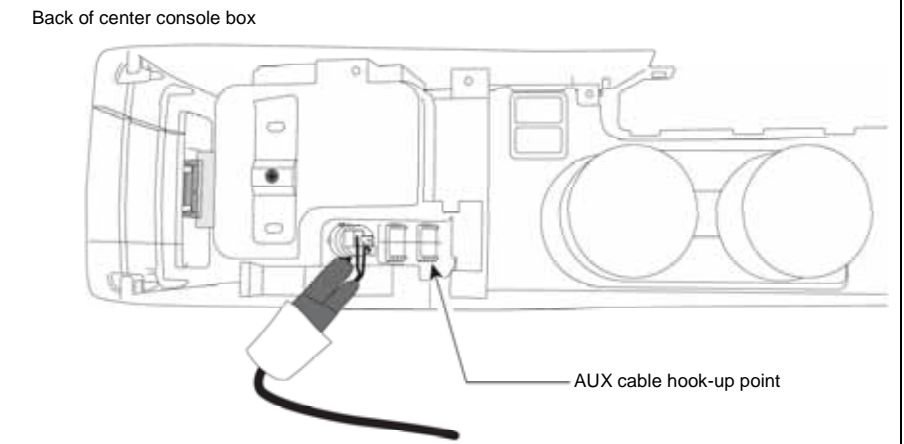
Wiring - I

1. Wiring connections on back of audio unit
  1. Connect the AUX cable 4-pin connector to the connection point shown in Figure 1.
  2. Connect the ground cable to the connection point shown in Figure 2.
  3. Route the AUX cable under the shift lever (passenger seat side). Put the audio unit back in its original place and screw it in.

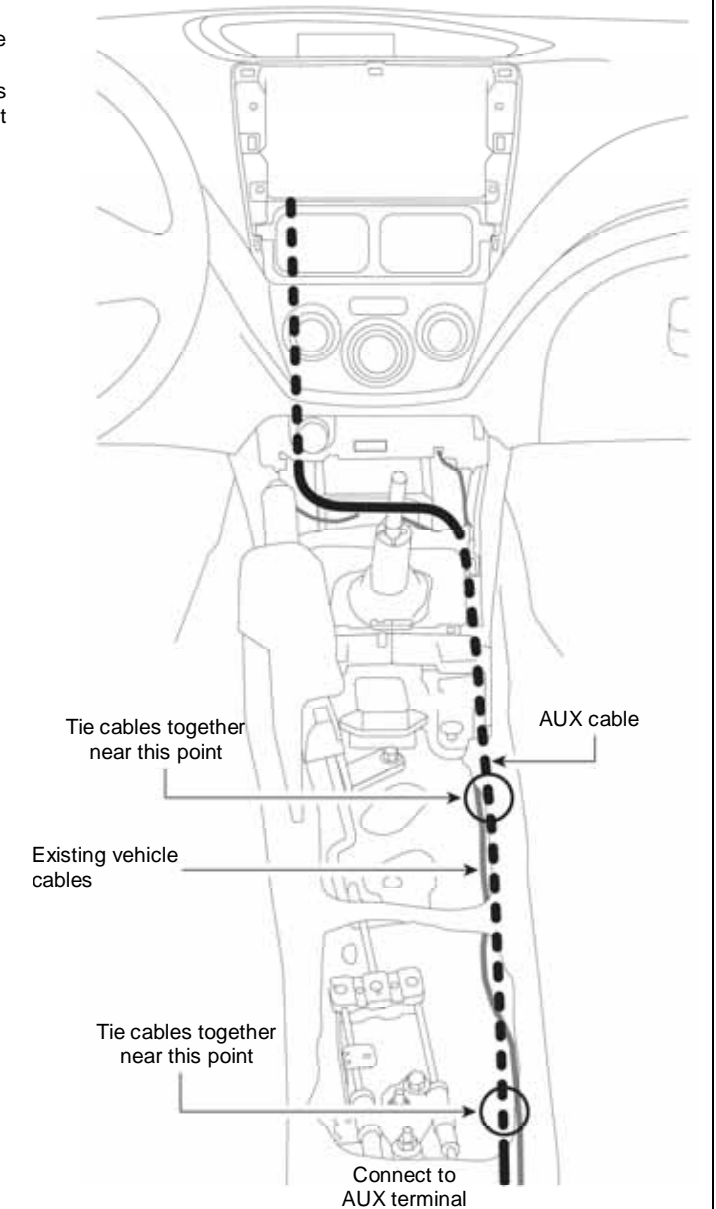


Wiring - II

1. Hooking up the AUX terminal
  1. An AUX terminal is provided on the back of the center console box.
  2. Hook up the AUX cable to the terminal.



2. Wiring the center console box
  1. Take the slack out of the AUX cable routed under the shift lever (passenger seat side).
  2. Tie the AUX cable and the existing vehicle cables together near the two points shown in the figure at right.
  3. Re-install all the panels in their original place.





**SUBARU**  
**GENUINE PARTS AUX TERMINAL INPUT CABLE** Installation Manual

Genuine part No. H6210FG000  
 Applicable model Impreza 08MY and later models

Keep the installation manual at the dealer.

**Component**



**Caution**

To prevent an accident, be sure to place the vehicle on a level surface before installation. Apply the parking brake firmly and make sure that the vehicle is stable. Remove the negative terminal of the battery.

**Tools for use**

Screwdrivers (Philips screwdriver, flathead screwdriver), panel remover, wrench, hexagonal wrench, vinyl tape, protective cloth, etc.

**Safety precautions**

Before installation and use, please read this "Safety precautions" carefully for the correct procedures. Precautions described here are intended to ensure safe and appropriate use of this product and to prevent any hazard or damage to yourself or other people. To identify the degree of hazard or damage and it's the level of imminence, the risks, which may occur due to incorrect operation, are classified into two categories in the precautions: "Warning" and "Caution". Be sure to observe them because they are important safety items.

**Warning**

- Make connections in accordance with this installation manual. Otherwise, a fire or an accident may occur. (Mandatory)
- Bundle cables in accordance with the installation method so that operation may not be disturbed. Winding it around the shift lever or the parking brake may result in an accident. (Mandatory)
- Do not modify or disassemble this product. Otherwise, fire, injury or failure may occur. (Disassembly prohibited)
- This product is designed only for the DC12V negative ground vehicle. Do not install this on the DC24V vehicle. Otherwise, a fire may occur. (Prohibited)
- If a fuse of this product or vehicle is blown, be sure to replace it with a new fuse of the specified capacity. A fuse beyond the specified capacity may cause a fire. (Mandatory)
- This product is designed for vehicles only. Do not use it for other purposes. Otherwise, a fire or an electric shock may occur. (Prohibited)

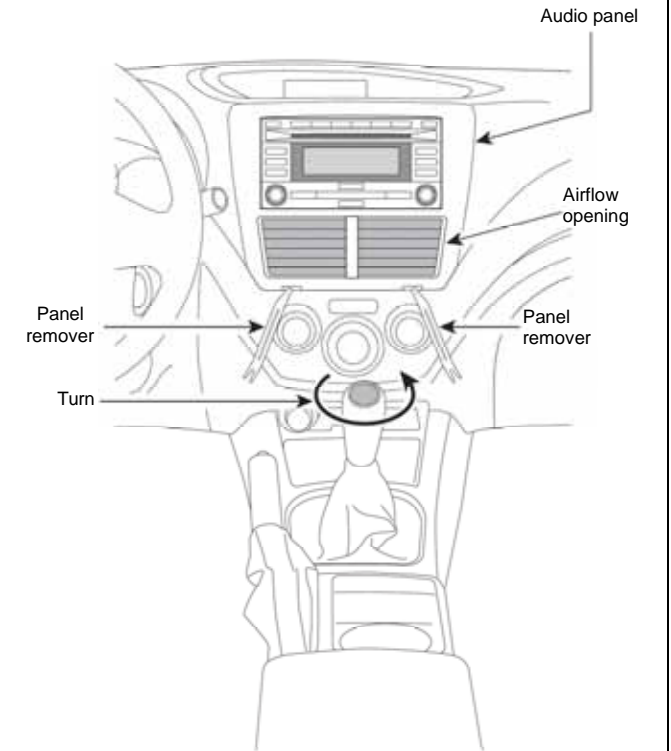
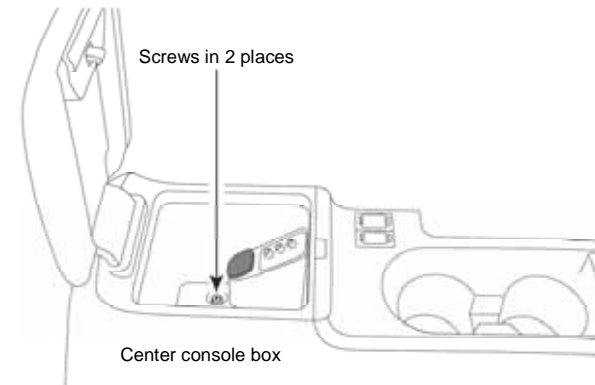
**Caution**

- Do not route cables in high temperature areas. The melting of the cable sheath may cause an accident or a fire. (Mandatory)
- Do not put the cable with movable parts such as vehicle body, seat rail, etc. Otherwise, an accident, an electric shock or a fire may occur due to disconnection or short-circuit. (Prohibited)

**Removing the Panels**

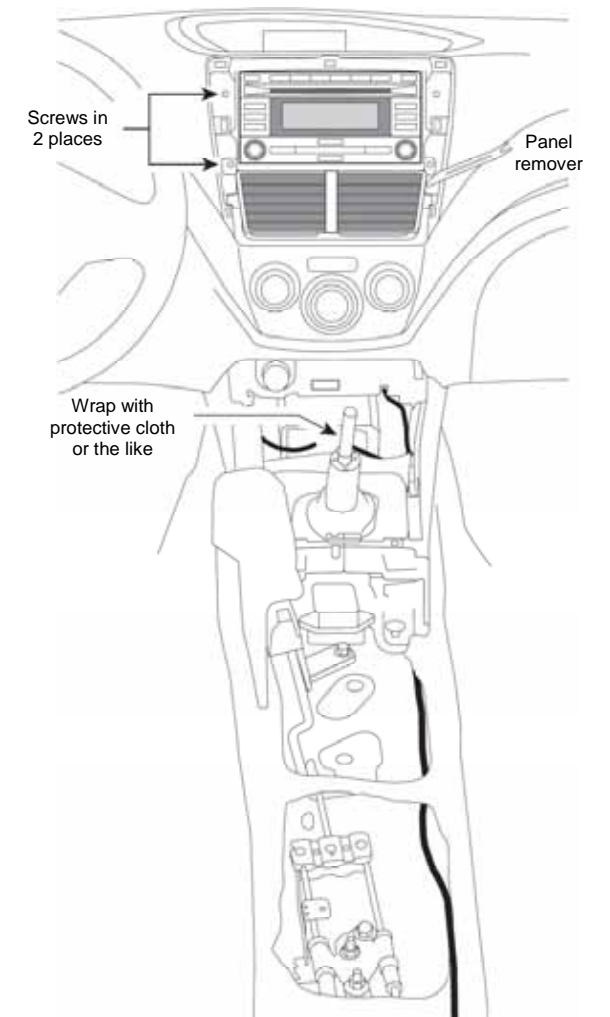
**1. Removing the center console and box**

1. Unscrew the 2 screws inside the center console box using either a Philips screwdriver or a hexagonal wrench.
2. There is a screw in the part that connects the center console box to the panel around the shift knob. Unscrew the screw using a Philips screwdriver and then remove the panel around the shift knob.
3. The shift knob is a screw-in type, so remove the knob by unscrewing it. After removing the shift knob, protect the threaded part by wrapping it in a cloth or other protective material (to avoid scratching the audio panel).



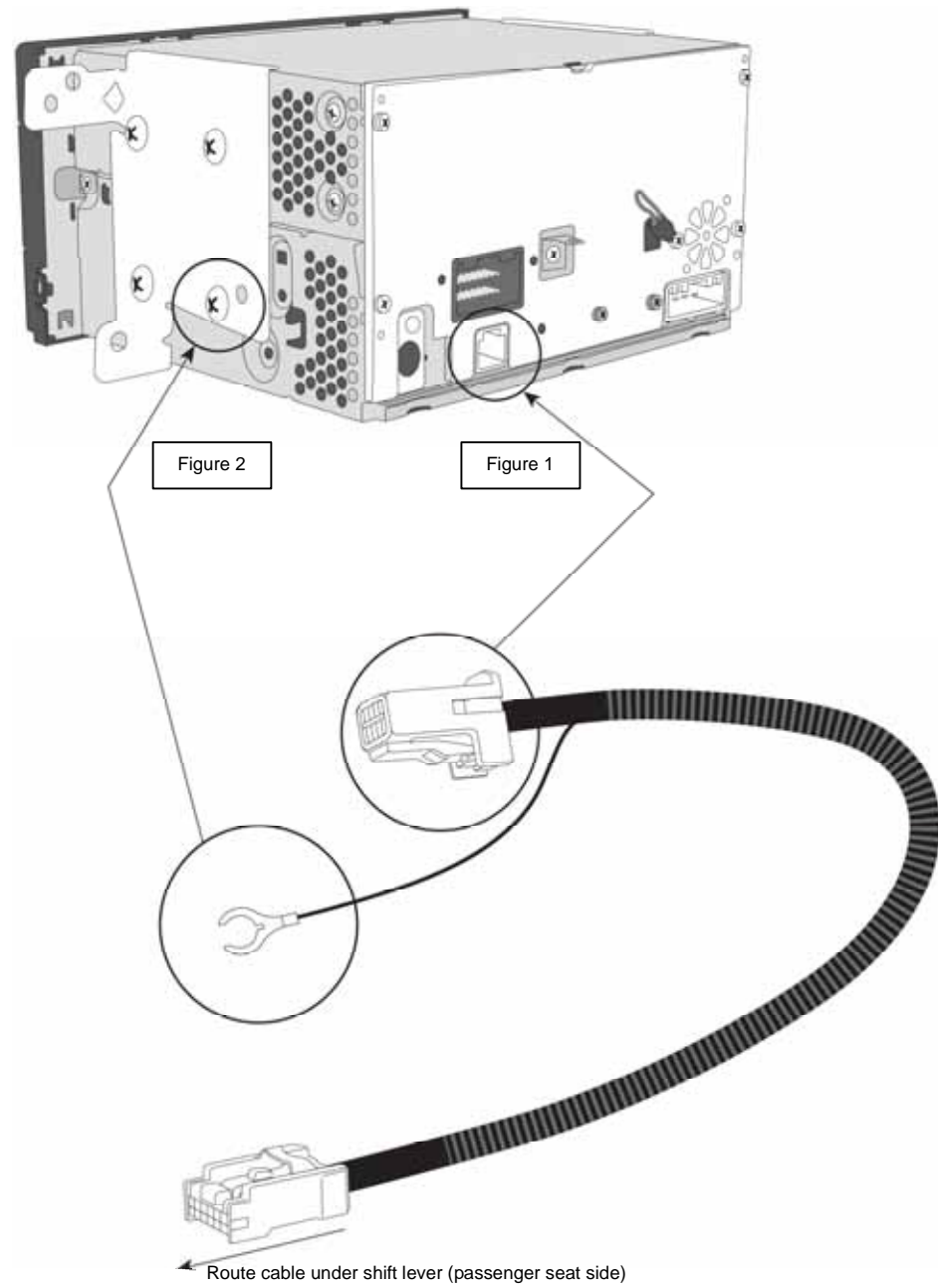
**2. Removing the audio panel**

1. Remove the audio panel by inserting panel removers in the 2 grooves under the airflow opening.
2. Using a Philips screwdriver, unscrew the left and right screws at the bottom of the removed audio panel and take out the audio panel.
3. Remove the ventilation panel using a panel remover.



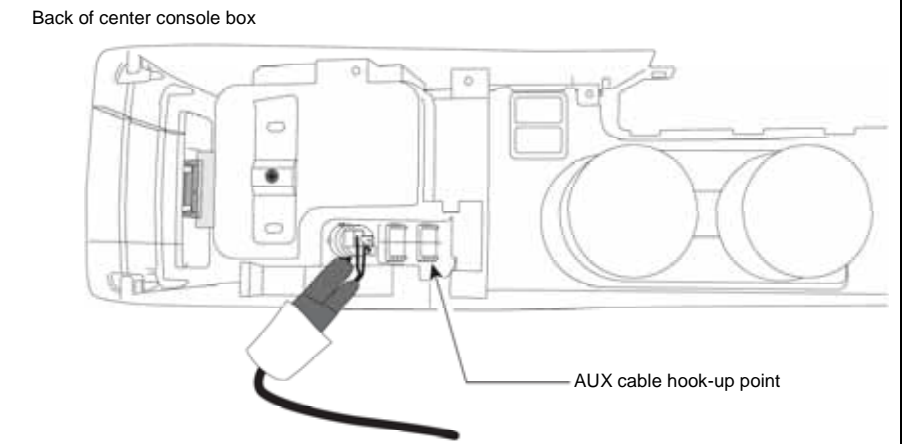
Wiring - I

1. Wiring connections on back of audio unit
  1. Connect the AUX cable 4-pin connector to the connection point shown in Figure 1.
  2. Connect the ground cable to the connection point shown in Figure 2.
  3. Route the AUX cable under the shift lever (passenger seat side). Put the audio unit back in its original place and screw it in.

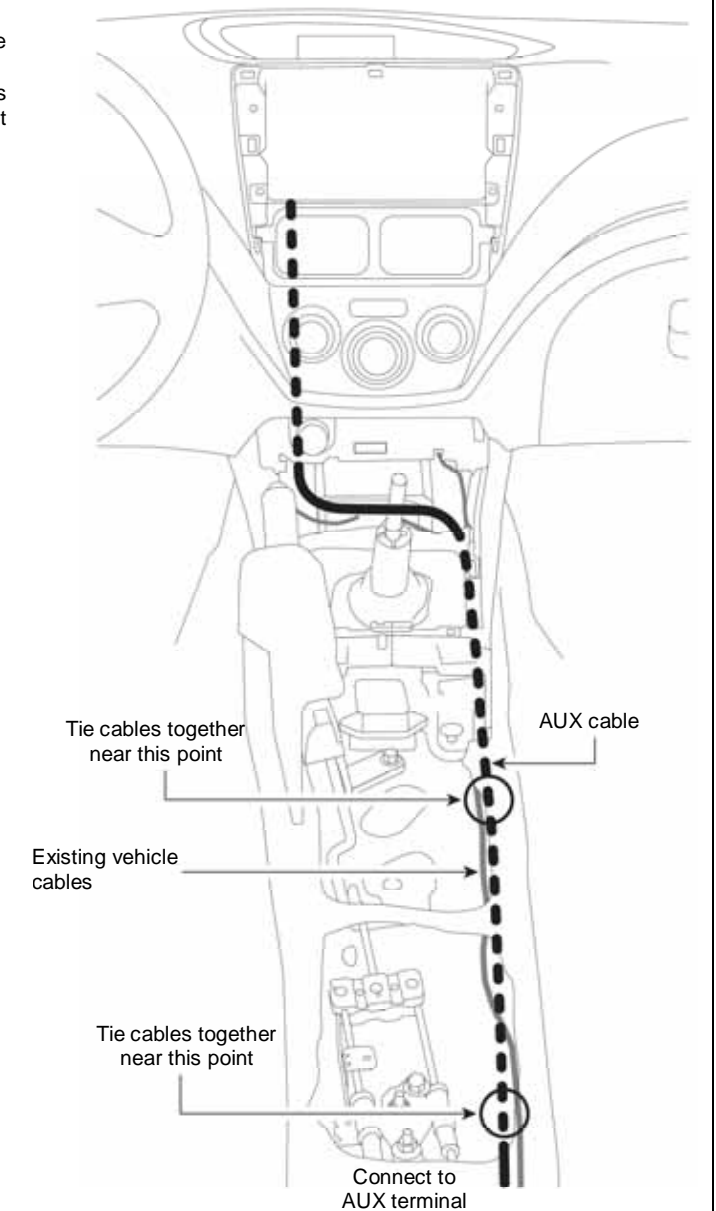


Wiring - II

1. Hooking up the AUX terminal
  1. An AUX terminal is provided on the back of the center console box.
  2. Hook up the AUX cable to the terminal.



2. Wiring the center console box
  1. Take the slack out of the AUX cable routed under the shift lever (passenger seat side).
  2. Tie the AUX cable and the existing vehicle cables together near the two points shown in the figure at right.
  3. Re-install all the panels in their original place.



**SUBARU**

BACKUP SENSOR SYSTEM

## **WARNING**

This Backup Sensor System is strictly a driver assistance device, and should not be relied upon as a substitute for safe driving practices. Use common sense when driving in reverse and always follow recommended safe driving guidelines from your state or local Department of Motor Vehicles regarding the engagement of reverse gear. To help prevent accidents, always use caution when driving in reverse by visually checking to ensure that your path is clear. When applicable, that may include conducting a visual check before you enter your vehicle. While driving in reverse, keep speeds under 5 MPH.



## ***Understanding Your Backup Sensor System's Audible Warning Zones***

The Backup Sensor System emits and receives ultrasonic signals that are projected from the sensors mounted in the vehicle's rear bumper. As the signals reflect off of objects in the detection field, an audible warning tone will be heard inside the vehicle. This warning tone alerts the driver to obstacles in the vehicle's path.

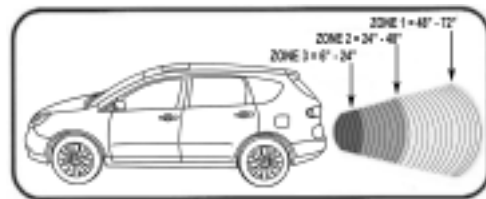
When the gearshift is put into reverse, the system will make one short 'beep' to verify system functionality. This alert serves multiple purposes:

- 1) Notification that the system is active and is scanning for objects in the detection field.
- 2) As a reminder that the vehicle is in reverse gear.
- 3) As an indication that the Backup Sensor System has performed a self-check.

***NOTE:*** *If additional "quick beeps" are heard, the Backup Sensor System may need to be checked by your Subaru Dealer. If warning tones continue after reverse is initially selected, check for obstacles behind the vehicle.*

The Backup Sensor System reverse scanning system will detect objects in three distinct "Zones", which correspond to the vehicle's distance from an object. When reversing towards an object, the Back-Up Sensor System audible alerts are as follows:

- "Zone 1" - At a distance of approximately 48 to 72 inches the Backup Sensor System will begin to beep slowly indicating an obstacle is in the vehicle's path.
- "Zone 2" - At a distance of approximately 24 to 48 inches, the Backup Sensor System will beep three times per second, indicating that an obstacle is in the vehicle's path.
- "Zone 3" - If an object is within 24 inches of the vehicle's bumper a continuous warning tone will be heard.



***NOTE:*** *Always use extreme caution in "Zone 2" and always stop when a solid warning tone indicating "Zone 3" is heard. If a moving object enters "Zone 3", the system is designed to "lock" onto it, making the "Zone 3" tone constant, until the object moves to a safe distance from "Zone 3", (i.e., The object moves 2 feet outside of the "Zone 3" detection area).*

## ***Situations Where Obstacles May Not be Detected or Which May Provide Momentary Detection Signals***

The Backup Sensor System utilizes highly advanced ultrasonic technology to locate objects in the vehicle's path when driving in reverse. Under some circumstances, however, an object may not be detected, so always exercise extreme caution when driving in reverse. Look behind the vehicle and maintain speeds of less than 5 MPH. Inclement weather may reduce performance or cause intermittent detection of rain or snow.

The backup sensors must be kept clean for optimum performance. Dirt, Snow or Ice accumulations may cause reduced performance.



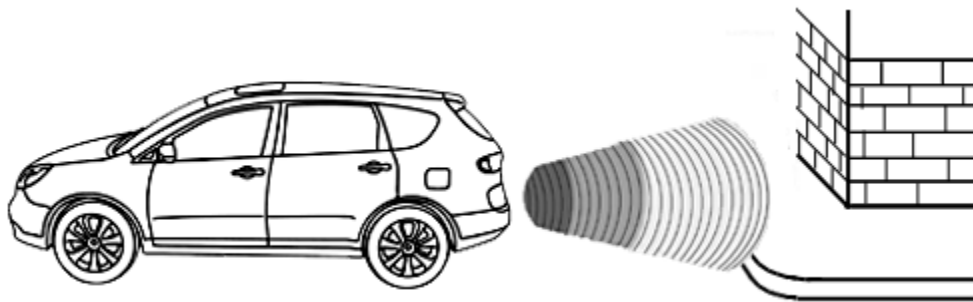
A small object, under your bumper or too close to the vehicle may not be detected due to the angle of the sensor's signal.



When driving in reverse down a steep slope or driveway, gravel and/or the road surface may cause momentary detection signals due to the sensor's following the sloping angle of the vehicle.

## ***Situations Where Obstacles May Not be Detected or Which May Provide Momentary Detection Signals***

In general, reversing at an angle towards a partial wall or other large flat surface may refract ultrasonic signals, causing the object not to be detected. Driving in reverse on loose gravel, rough surfaces and potholes may produce intermittent detection due to signal bouncing off of refractive surfaces behind the vehicle. Entering or exiting a garage may result in a brief detection signal as the vehicle passes through the doorway.



If driving in reverse towards a 90-degree angle, such as a corner of a wall or pillar, sensor detection pattern will refract until the vehicle is close enough to receive a signal back from corners. In such situations the vehicle could be very close to an object before it is detected.

## ***Adjusting the Backup Sensor System Speaker***

The Backup Sensor System comes equipped with an adjustable warning indication speaker located in the rear passenger side of the vehicle. (See figure below.)

The speaker has three controllable audio settings:

- 1) HI Volume setting:** For individuals desiring a loud warning tone.
- 2) LOW Volume Setting:** For individuals desiring a soft warning tone.
- 3) OFF:** The speaker should be turned off when the vehicle is towing with a trailer hitch, a ball mount is installed, or when a hitch-mounted Bike Carrier is used. In all other instances, the speaker should remain on.

Adjusting the volume setting is easy. A fingertip slide switch is accessible and used to select the desired setting.



128-7533B



Always wear your seatbelt.

**A007372INS**



PART NUMBER: H481SXA100

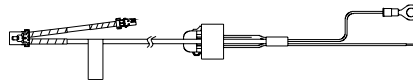
INSTALLATION INSTRUCTIONS

DESCRIPTION: TRIBECA BACKUP SENSOR SYSTEM

A SPEAKER DRILLING TEMPLATE (1)



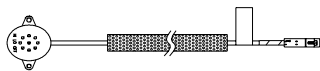
B HARNESS, POWER, BACK-UP SENSOR (1)



C GROMMET (1)



D HARNESS, SPEAKER / BUZZER (1)



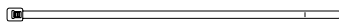
E SPEAKER MOUNTING SCREWS (2)



F 8" RELEASABLE CABLE TIE, BLACK (10)



G 17.5" CABLE TIE, BLACK (1)



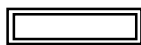
H 8" CHRISTMAS TREE TIE, BLACK (4)



I BEZEL (4)



J FOAM TAPE (1)



K HARNESS, BACK-UP SENSOR CENTER RIGHT (CR) (1)



L HARNESS, BACK-UP SENSOR RIGHT (R) (1)



M HARNESS, BACK-UP SENSOR CENTER LEFT (CL) (1)



N HARNESS, BACK-UP SENSOR LEFT (L) (1)



O \*Posi-Tap™ (1)



\*Posi-Tap™ Patent # 5,228,875 5,695,369 5,868,589 6,692,313B1 6,568,952B1  
Jap 2881414, Aus 708700, Tia 103534, Can 2204826, Mex 200626  
China Z197105562.9, Korea 477279 and others pending.

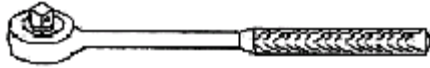
P MODULE, BACK-UP SENSOR SYSTEM CONTROL (1)



**Tools Required:**



Nylon Trim Removal Tool



1/2" Drive Ratchet



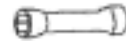
6" Socket Extension



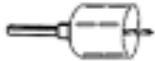
10 mm Deep Well Socket



Vehicle Lug Wrench



Lug Extension



30 mm Hole Saw



Phillips Screwdriver



Automatic Center Punch



Pliers with Cutter



1/2" Drill Bit



1/4" Drill Bit

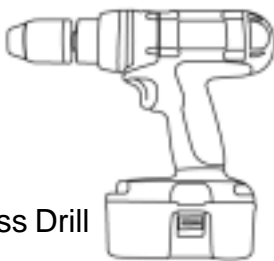


# 50 (0.070") Drill Bit

1/2" Drill Stop Collar



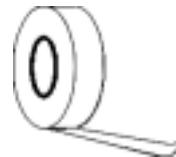
# 50 (0.070") Drill Stop Collar



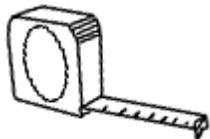
Cordless Drill



Safety Glasses



Masking Tape



Tape Measure



Deburring Tool

**Dealer Installation Is Recommended**

**Meaning of Characters:**

Remove:

Disconnect:

Loosen:

Reuse:

Install:






Connect:

Discard:

Location of Clip or Screw:



## Vehicle Preparation

1	
	
	

### Storage Tray and Drain Plug Removal

Refer to Figure 1. for steps 1 through 3 below.

- 1.) Using the nylon pry tool, remove the four pushpins (1) from the bottom corners of the storage tray (do not lose the pushpins) and remove storage tray (2) from the vehicle.
- 2.) Using the nylon pry tool, remove the drain plug (3) located under the storage tray on the passenger side of the vehicle.
- 3.) Using the vehicle's lug wrench and extension, lower the spare tire (4) .

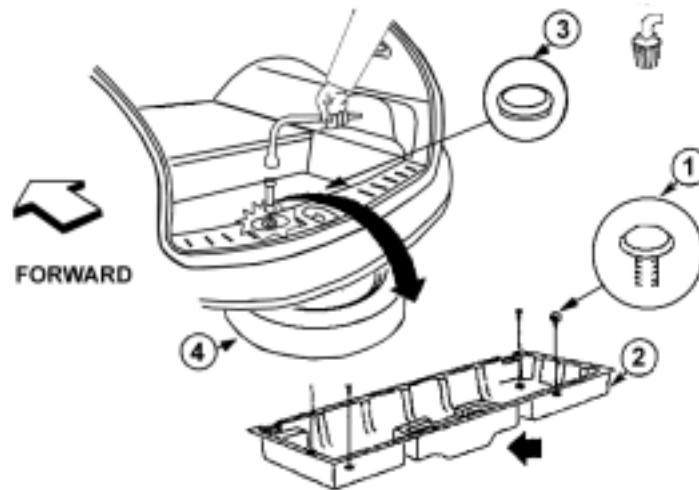


Figure 1.

### Rear Gate Trim Removal

- 1.) Using the phillips screwdriver, remove the two screws and the rear gate trim panel from the vehicle. (Figure 2.)

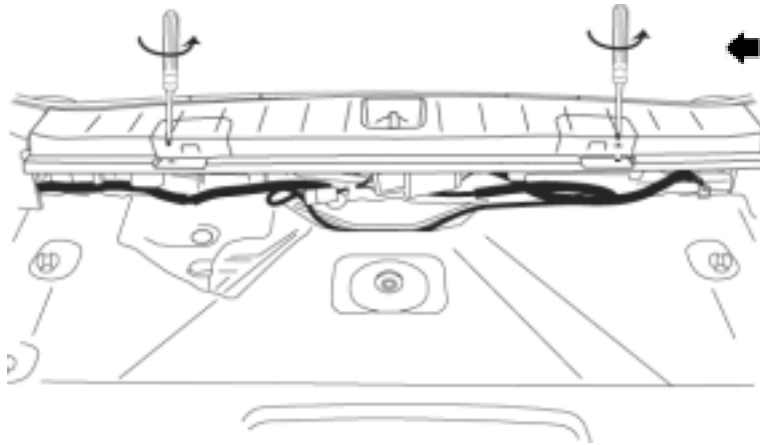



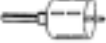



Figure 2.

# Drilling Holes for the Backup Sensors

1	
	
	

**Caution:** Before performing the following step, ensure that the hole saw to be used is sharp and free of drilling debris. Ensure that the hole saw is pointed perpendicular to the surface of the bumper, not horizontal to the ground. (See Figure 3.)

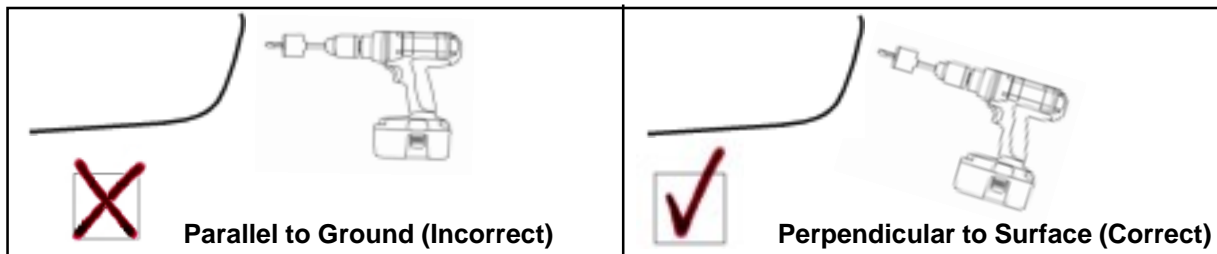


Figure 3.

- 1.) Locate the four sensor drilling locations, visible as a 2mm untextured circle (Figure 4) on the bumper surface. Approximate locations are shown below in Figure 5. **To work properly, the sensors must be located at the marked locations.**

**NOTE:** Marked locations are most visible in bright light and/or with the vehicle elevated such that the bumper is at eye level.

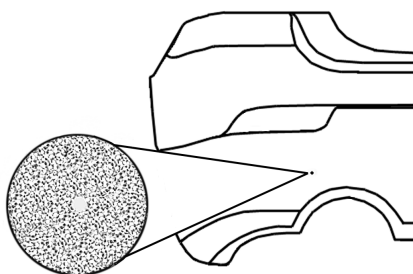


Figure 4.

- 2.) Using an automatic centerpunch (recommended), or a sharp center punch, mark the four locations to be drilled. Using a 30mm hole saw, slowly drill out the four sensor holes (Figure 5). Make sure the hole saw is centered in each of the center punch marks.

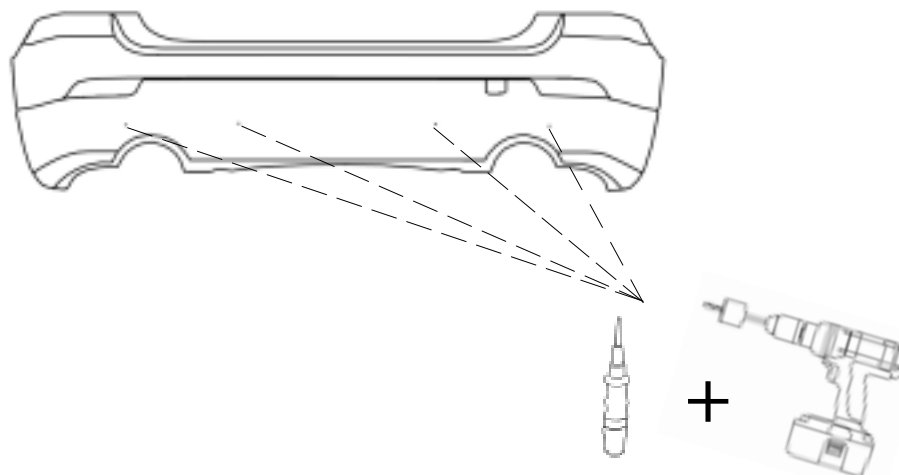



Figure 5.

- 3.) Remove burrs **only** if necessary to successfully install the bezels  into the bumper.

# Installing Back-Up Sensor System

2

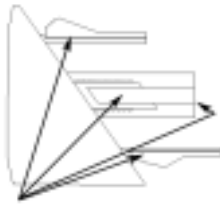


## Installing Back-Up Sensors into the Bumper

**NOTE:** It is important that the following steps are performed in the order in which they appear and that sensors are installed into the correct locations. Refer to Figures 7. and 8. for steps 1 and 2 below.

- 1.) Insert one bezel **I** into each of the four holes in the bumper (Figure 6), and then insert each of the sensor cables **K** **L** **M** **N** into the four bezels as shown in Figure 7. and Figure 8.
- 2.) Pull each sensor cable through the bumper from behind and press the sensor outer rim firmly against the bumper until it locks into position (a click will be heard).

**\*\* NOTE:** Make sure the word "UP" marked on the sensor is facing upward when inserted into the bezel. Sensors should be level with respect to the ground.



Before installing the sensors, ensure all bezel clips are fully engaged to the bumper.

Figure 6.

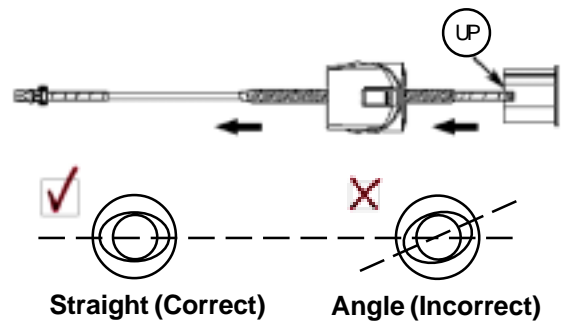


Figure 7.

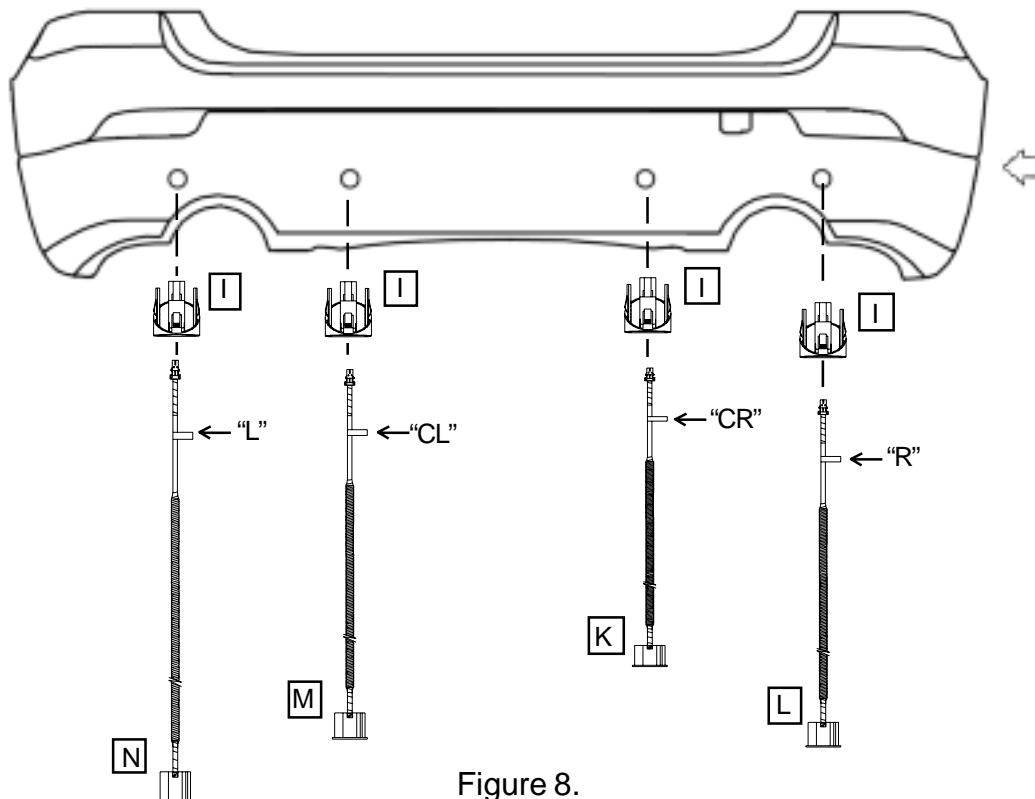


Figure 8.

# Installing Back-Up Sensor System (Continued)

2



## Routing the Back-Up Sensor Cables

- 1.) While removing cable slack, wrap one cable tie [F] through the mounting hole at the end of the bumper beam shown in Detail A of Figure 9 and around the sensor cable marked "L" then tighten (Figure 9.).

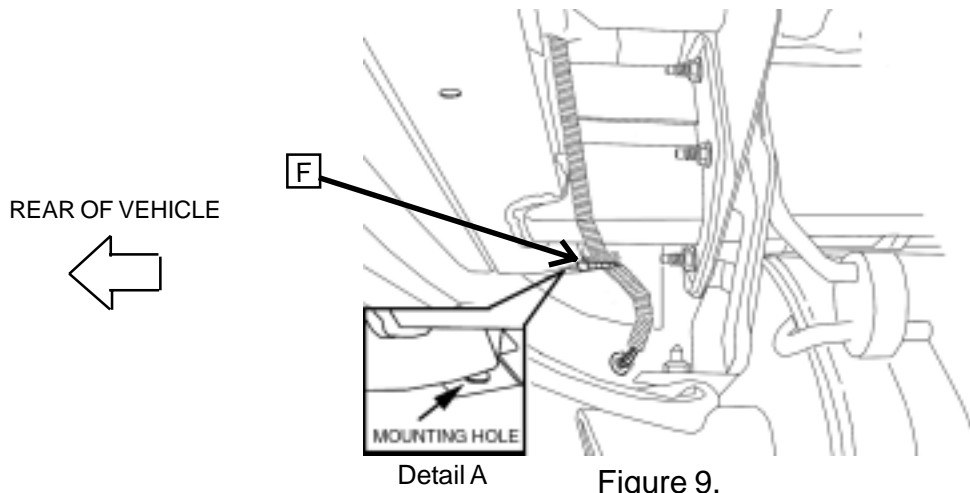


Figure 9.

- 2.) Insert one christmas tree tie [H1] into location as shown below. Route the sensor cable marked "L" back toward the bumper and fasten it using the christmas tree tie (Figure 10.).
- 3.) Insert one christmas tree tie [H2] into location as shown below. While removing cable slack, route the sensor cable marked "L" towards the passenger side of the vehicle grouping it with the sensor cable marked "CL" and fasten them using the christmas tree tie (Figure 10.). **NOTE: If the vehicle is equipped with a trailer hitch, route sensor cables above the trailer hitch bracket.**
- 4.) Insert one christmas tree tie [H3] as shown below. While removing cable slack, route the sensor cables marked "L" and "CL" towards the passenger side of the vehicle and fasten them using the christmas tree tie (Figure 10.).

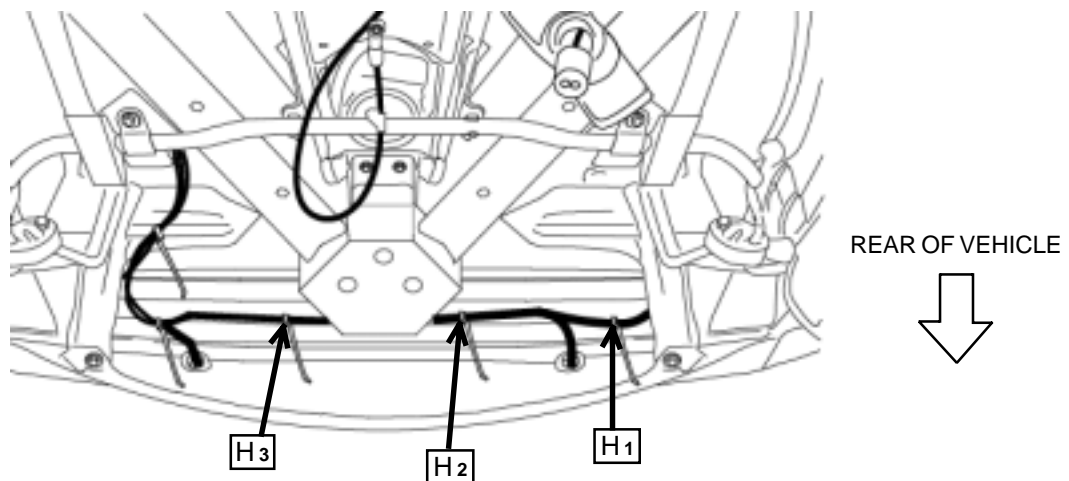


Figure 10.

- 5.) Cut all excess cable tie material in all locations.

## Installing Back-Up Sensor System (Continued)

2



### Routing the Back-Up Sensor Cables (Continued)

- 6.) While removing cable slack, wrap one cable tie **F** through the mounting hole at the end of the bumper beam shown in Detail A of Figure 11 and around the sensor cable marked "R" then tighten.

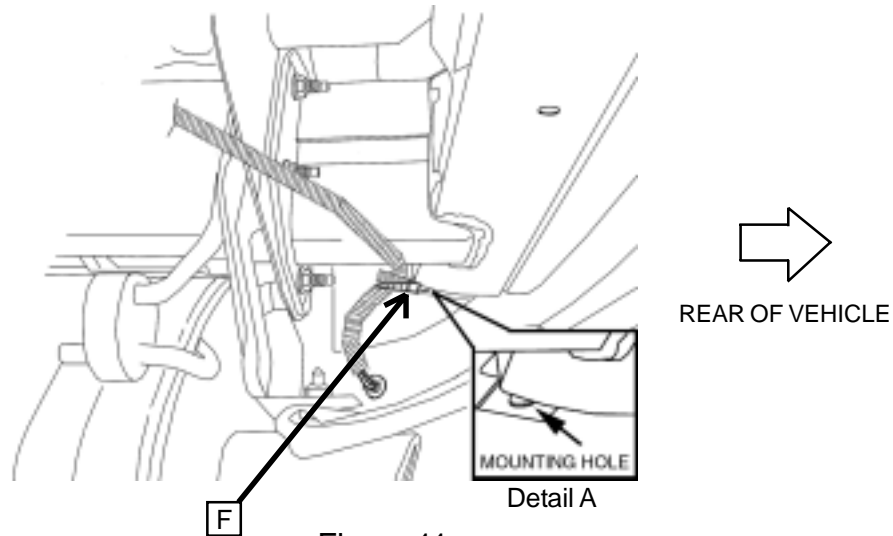


Figure 11.

- 7.) Insert the last christmas tree tie **H4** as shown below. While removing cable slack, route the sensor cables marked "L," "CL" & "CR" and fasten them using the christmas tree tie just installed "H4" (see Figure 12.).
- 8.) While removing cable slack, route the sensor cable marked "R" and group it with the three sensor cables ("L," "CL" & "CR") and use one cable tie **G** to group all four sensor cables together as shown in Figure 12.

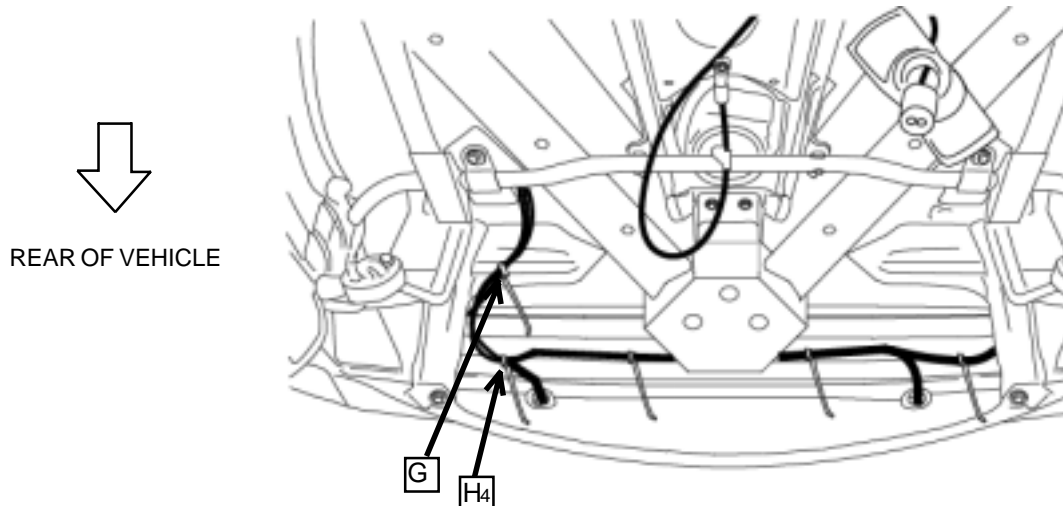


Figure 12.

- 9.) Cut all excess cable tie material in all locations.

## Installing Back-Up Sensor System (Continued)

2



### Routing the Back-Up Sensor Cables (Continued)

10.) Install the harness grommet **C** by placing each of the four sensor cables through one of the four slits and use a cable tie **F** to secure the wires into the harness grommet (Figure 13.). Cut excess cable tie material.

**NOTE: The side of the harness grommet with five holes must be closest to the sensor cable ends (see Figure 13).**

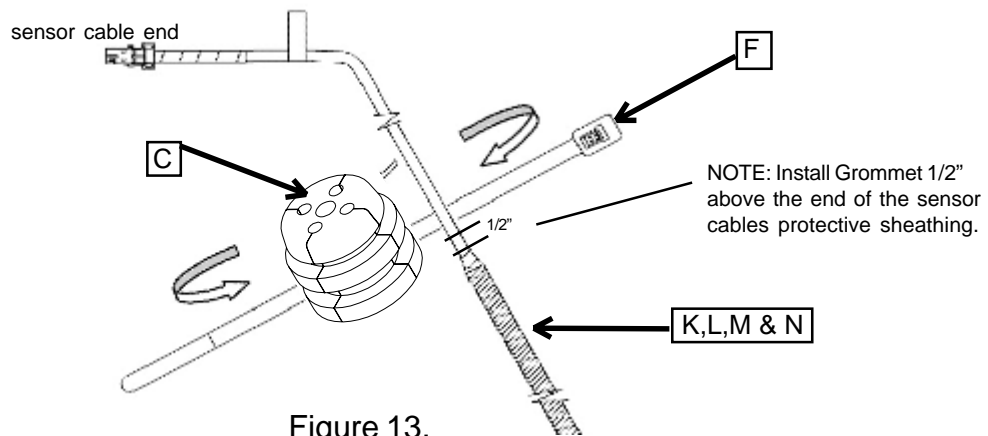


Figure 13.

11.) Insert the four sensor cables through the drain plughole and press the harness grommet up into position (Figure 14.).

**\*\*NOTE: Drain Plug Hole (Under Trunk)**

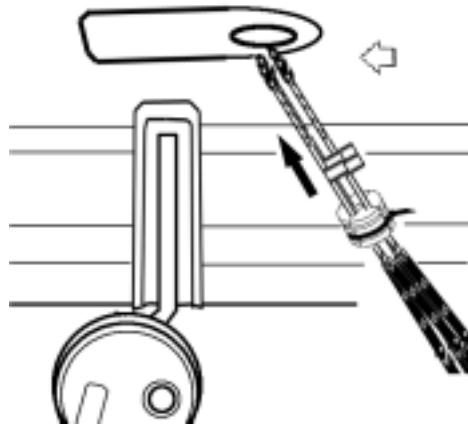







Figure 14.

# Installing Back-Up Sensor Speaker

<b>3</b>	
	
	

## Using the Speaker Drilling Template

**Caution:** Before performing the following step, ensure that the drill bits to be used are sharp and wrap the bits with masking tape (see Figure 15.) or with a drill-stop collar at 1/2" depth max. Ensure that the drill is pointed straight in the direction of the hole(s) and not at an angle (see Figure 16.).

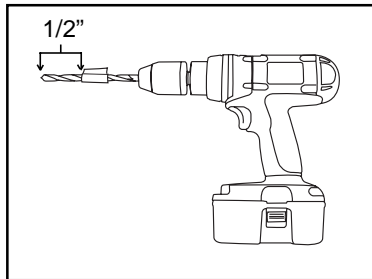


Figure 15.

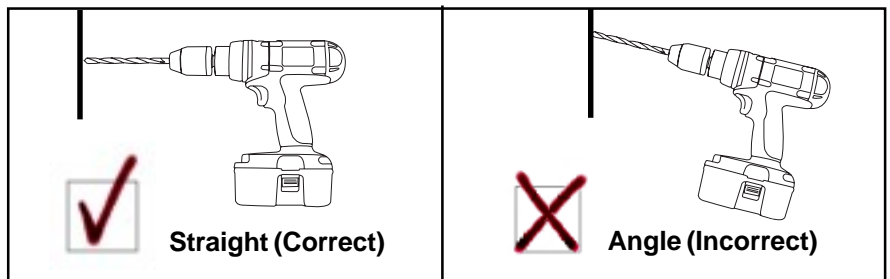


Figure 16.

- 1.) Using a nylon pry-tool, carefully remove the carpeted trim piece located under the vehicle's rear passenger side speaker (Figure 17.).

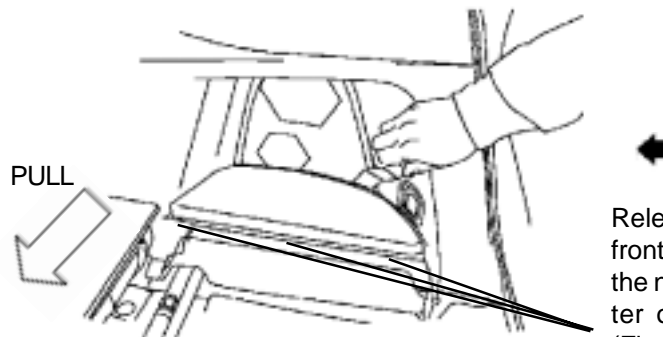


Figure 17.

Release the three tabs located under the front edge of the carpeted trim piece using the nylon pry tool and pull towards the center of the vehicle (DO NOT PULL UP) (Figure 17.).






- 2.) Carefully position the drilling template **A** where the carpeted trim piece was removed (Figure 18.) secure with masking tape.



Figure 18.

- 3.) Using the automatic center punch, carefully mark the three drilling locations and drill holes as shown on the template. (Figure 19).

## Installing Back-Up Sensor Speaker (Continued)

<b>3</b>	
	
	

### Using the Speaker Drilling Template (Continued)

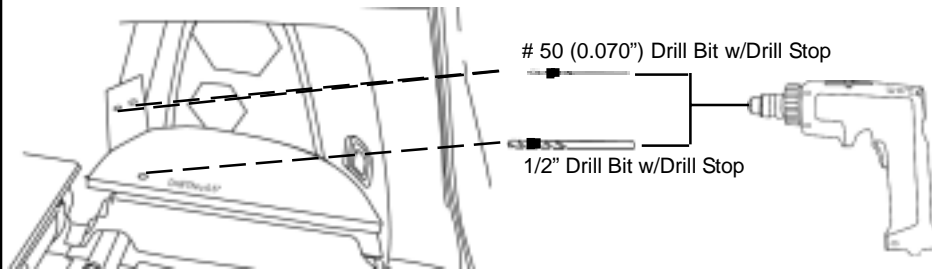
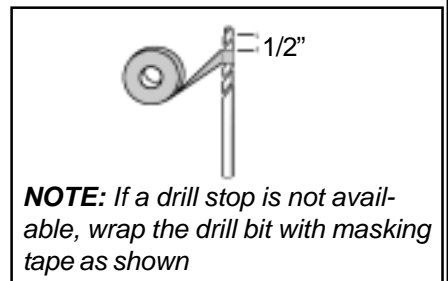


Figure 19.



**Caution:** Drill stop must be used. DO NOT EXCEED 1/2" Drill Depth.

- 4.) Remove the speaker drilling template and clear the area of any drilling debris.
- 5.) Remove any burrs from around the holes.
- 6.) Carefully mount the speaker **D** using two screws **E** (Figure 20.).
- 7.) Route the speaker cable through the pass-through hole and out of the bottom of the trim panel and to the back of the vehicle (Figure 21.).

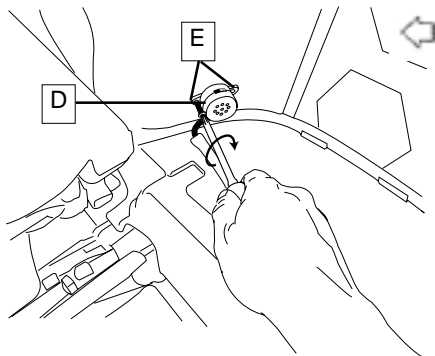


Figure 20.



Figure 21.

- 8.) Replace the carpeted trim piece.

**NOTE:** Ensure that the speaker cable does not become crimped and that there is no excess slack in the cable between the carpeted trim piece and the bottom of the speaker.

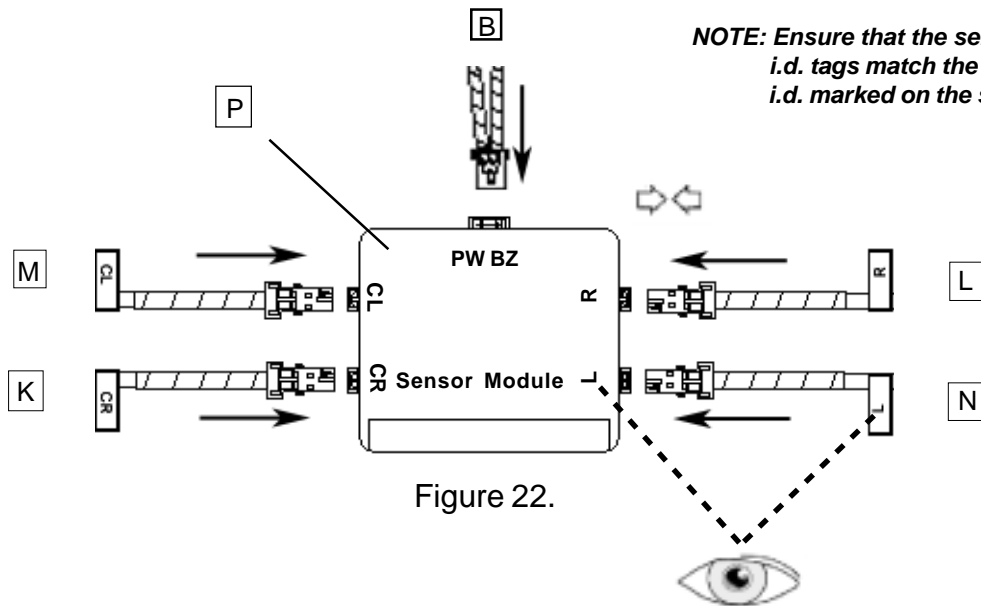


# Installing Back-Up Sensor System Control Module

4



- 1.) Connect the back-up sensor power harness **B** into the "PW BZ" connector located on the top side of the Back-Up Sensor System Control Module **P** (Figure 22.).
- 2.) Connect the back-up sensor cables marked "CL", "CR", "L", and "R" into the matching connectors as shown (Figure 22.).



- 3.) Connect the speaker cable **D** to the back-up sensor power harness **B** (Figure 23.).

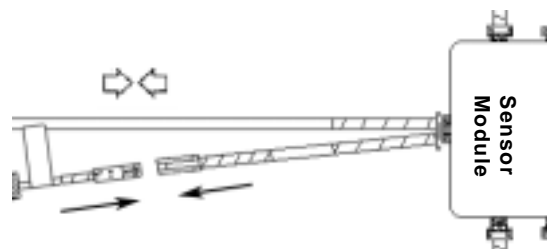






Figure 23.

# Installing Back-Up Sensor System Control Module (Continued)

4	
	
	

- 4.) Route the power and ground connections toward the driver's side of the vehicle. Secure the cable to the vehicle's main harness using four cable ties **F** along the way (Figure 24.).
- 5.) Cut all excess cable tie material in all locations.

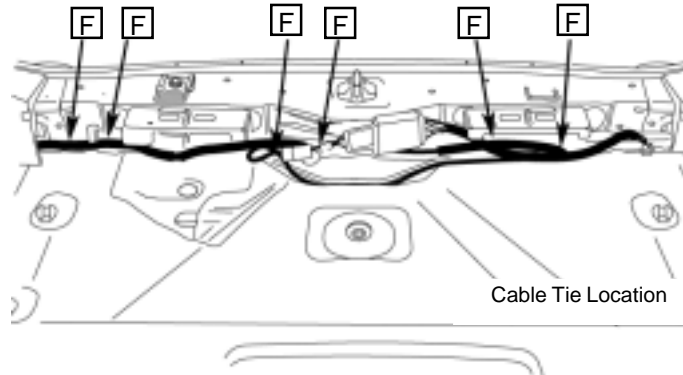


Figure 24.

- 6.) Using a 10 mm socket wrench with a 6" socket extension, remove one nut from the rear gate trim mounting bracket studs (Detail "A" Figure 25.).
- 7.) Place the ring lug of the ground wire over the mounting bracket stud and reinstall the nut removed in step 6. (Detail "B" Figure 25.).

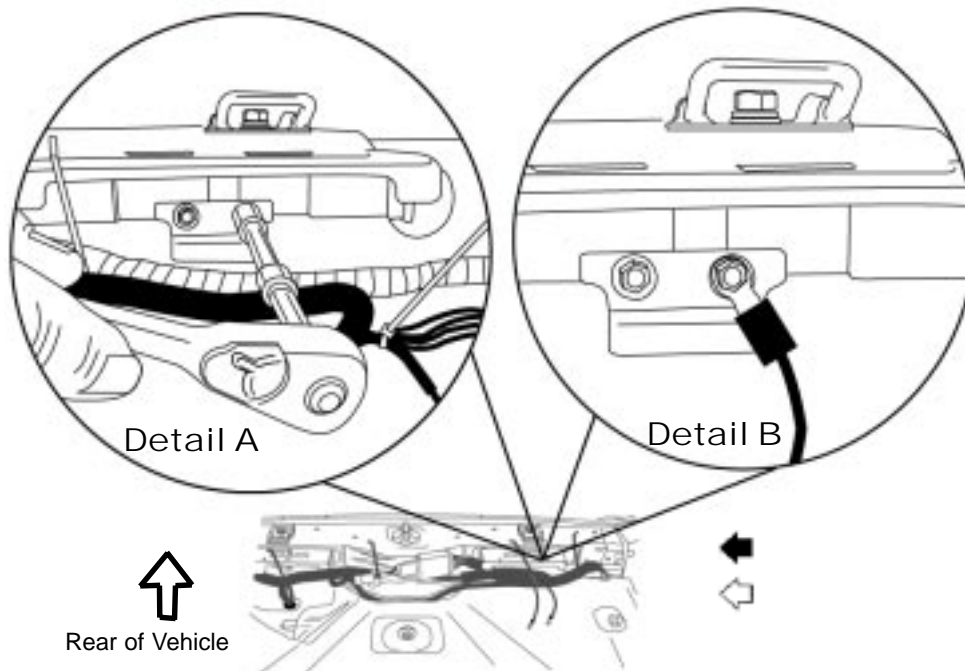





Figure 25.

# Installing Back-Up Sensor System Control Module (Continued)

<b>4</b>	
	

8.) Carefully remove the electrical tape on the vehicle wire harness in the area shown in figure 26.

9.) Using a \*Posi-tap connector  connect the red wire (power) of the back-up sensor power harness to the brown w/ yellow stripe wire located on the driver's side and part of the vehicle's main harness (Figure 26.).

- Insert the vehicle's brown w/ yellow stripe back-up light power wire into the groove on the \*Posi-Tap™ cap #1.
- Tighten the \*Posi-Tap™ sleeve #2 onto cap #1.
- Insert the back-up sensor red power wire into the \*Posi-Tap™ cap #3.
- Insert and tighten \*Posi-Tap™ cap #3 into the sleeve #4.

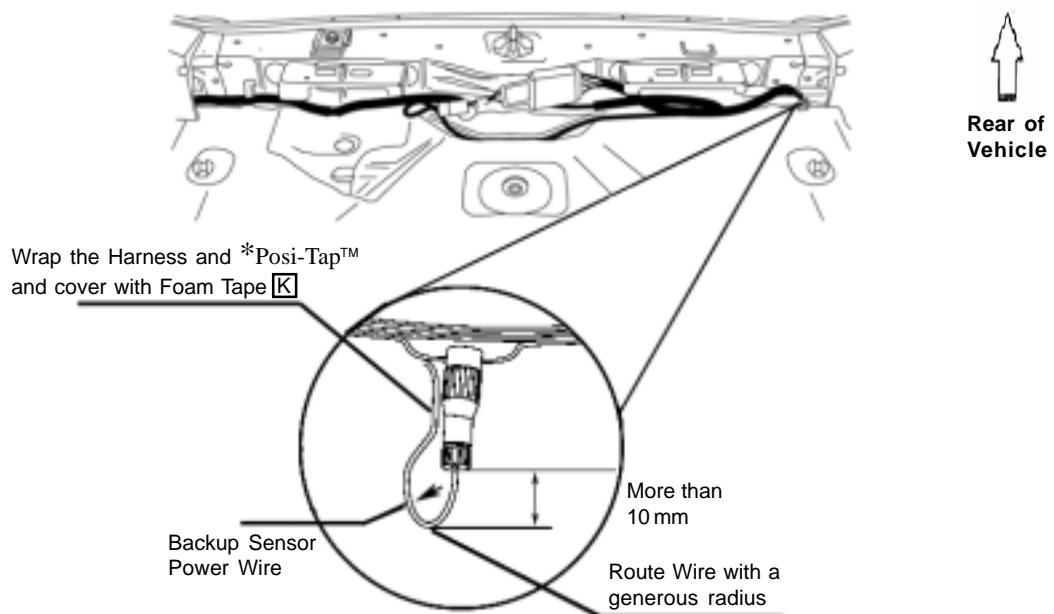
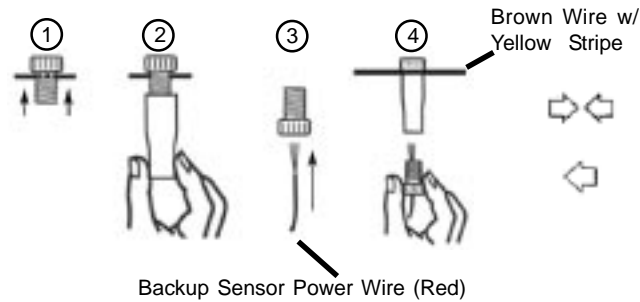


Figure 26.

\*Posi-Tap™ Patent # 5,228,875 5,695,369 5,868,589 6,692,313B1 6,568,952B1 Jap 2881414, Aus 708700, Tia 103534, Can 2204826, Mex 200626 China Z197105562.9, Korea 477279 and others pending.

## Installing Back-Up Sensor System Control Module (Continued)

4



10.) Use the strip of foam tape to wrap the \* Posi-Tap™ connection (Figure 27.).

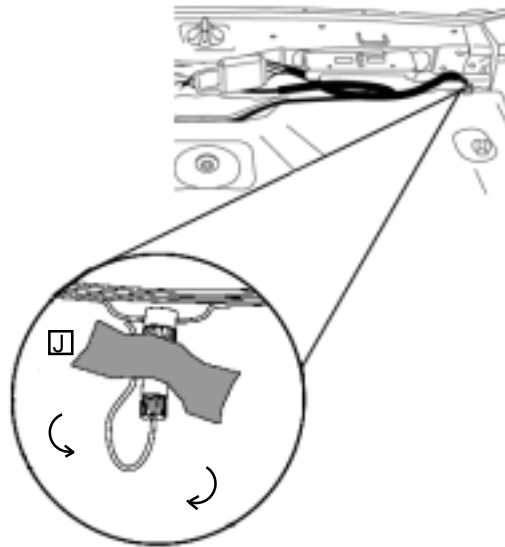


Figure 27.

**NOTE: Do not mount the sensor module! Test back-up sensor system as described on page 15 before continuing with steps 11 through 14 below.**

- 11.) Clean the area where the back-up sensor module will be installed.
- 12.) Remove the paper backing off of the adhesive strip on the back of the back-up sensor module.
- 13.) Press the back-up sensor module firmly into position under the bracket (Figure 28.).
- 14.) Reassemble vehicle.

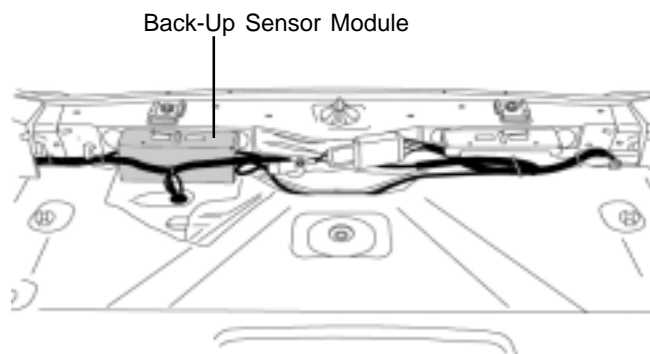


Figure 28.

\* Posi-Tap™ Patent # 5,228,875 5,695,369 5,868,589 6,692,313B1 6,568,952B1 Jap 2881414, Aus 708700, Tia 103534, Can 2204826, Mex 200626 China Z197105562.9, Korea 477279 and others pending.

## Test the Back-Up Sensor System

### Diagnostic Procedure with Diagnostic Trouble Code (DTC)

#### Back-up Sensor System (Diagnostics)

#### Section 0 - System Function Check:

**NOTE:** In order to perform the system function check, the vehicle shall be parked in a level open area with no objects behind the vehicle for a minimum of ten feet. The parking brake must be applied and the trailer hitch ball mount must be removed.

**NOTE:** In order to properly test the system, the vehicle battery must be fully charged.

#### Simple Functional Check

Step	Check	Yes	No	
1	Activate the vehicle parking brake. Turn the key to the run position. Do not start the vehicle. Step on the brake and shift the vehicle into reverse.	Did the system give a single beep?	Proceed to Step 2.	Proceed to Detailed Functional Check Step 1.
2	Stand in front of the outermost sensor on the driver's side.	Does the system emit a constant tone?	Proceed to Step 3.	Proceed to Detailed Functional Check Step 1
3	Stand in front of the driver's side center sensor.	Does the system emit a constant tone?	Proceed to Step 4.	Proceed to Detailed Functional Check Step 1.
4	Stand in front of the passenger's side outermost sensor.	Does the system emit a constant tone?	Proceed to Step 5.	Proceed to Detailed Functional Check Step 1.
5	Stand in front of the passenger's side center sensor.	Does the system emit a constant tone?	System Works.End Diagnostic Check.	Proceed to Detailed Functional Check Step 1

#### Detailed Functional Check

1	Activate the vehicle parking brake. Turn the key to the run position. Do no start the vehicle. Step on the brake and shift the vehicle into reverse.	Does the system emit a constant tone?	Proceed to Section 3 (Constant Tone).	Proceed to Step 2.
2	Activate the vehicle parking brake. Turn the key to the run position. Do no start the vehicle. Step on the brake and shift the vehicle into reverse.	Does the system emit multiple beeps?	Proceed to Section 2 (Multiple Beeps).	Proceed to Step 3.
3	Activate the vehicle parking brake. Turn the key to the run position. Do no start the vehicle. Step on the brake and shift the vehicle into reverse.	Is the system silent?	Proceed to Section 1 (No Sound).	Return to Simple Functional Check Step1.

## Test the Back-Up Sensor System

### Diagnostic Procedure with Diagnostic Trouble Code (DTC)

#### Back-up Sensor System (Diagnostics)

#### Section 1 - No sound when system is turned ON.

NOTE: In order to perform the system function check, the vehicle shall be parked in a level open area with no objects behind the vehicle for a minimum of ten feet. The parking brake must be applied and the trailer hitch ball mount must be removed.

	Step	Check	Yes	No
1	Verify that the speaker switch is either in the "HI" or "LO" position.	Determine if the speaker switch is either in the "HI" or "LO" position.	Proceed to Step 3.	Move the speaker switch from the "OFF" position to either in the "HI" or "LO" position. Proceed to Step 2.
2	Turn the key to the run position. Press the vehicle parking brake and shift the vehicle into reverse gear. If the vehicle is already in reverse gear, shift the vehicle into park then to reverse.	Does the system emit a single beep?	Continue System Function Check. (Section 0)	Proceed to Step 3.
3	Check that the 2-pin speaker connector is plugged into the 2-pin connector on the main power harness.	Is the 2-pin connector plugged into the 2-pin connector on the main harness?	Proceed to Step 5.	Plug the 2-pin speaker connector into the 2-pin connector on the main power harness. Proceed to Step 4.
4	Turn the key to the run position. Press the vehicle parking brake and shift the vehicle into reverse gear. If the vehicle is already in reverse gear, shift the vehicle into park then to reverse.	Does the system emit a single beep?	Continue System Function Check. (Section 0)	Proceed to Step 5.
5	Disconnect the 2-pin speaker connector. Apply 12 Vdc to Pin 1 (green) terminal and Ground to Pin 2 (blue).	Did speaker emit a constant tone?	Proceed to Step 7.	Replace Speaker. Proceed to Step 6.
6	Turn the key to the run position. Press the vehicle parking brake and shift the vehicle into reverse gear. If the vehicle is already in reverse gear, shift the vehicle into park then to reverse.	Does the system emit a single beep?	Continue System Function Check. (Section 0)	Proceed to Step 7.
7	Verify that the 4-pin connector on the main power harness is plugged into the 4-pin connector on the control module at "PWBZ".	Is the 4-pin connector on the main power harness plugged into the 4-pin connector on the control module at "PWBZ"?	Proceed to Step 9.	Plug the 4-pin connector on the main power harness into the 4-pin connector on the control module marked "PWBZ". Proceed to Step 8.
8	Turn the key to the Run position. Press the vehicle parking brake and shift the vehicle into reverse gear. If the vehicle is already in reverse gear, shift the vehicle into park then to reverse.	Does the system emit a single beep?	Continue System Function Check. (Section 0)	Proceed to Step 9
9	Verify that the 2 Amp fuse is not opened on the main power harness.	Is the 2 Amp good?	Proceed to Step 11.	Replace the 2 Amp. fuse on the main power harness. Proceed to Step 10
1-0	Turn the key to the run position. Press the vehicle parking brake and shift the vehicle into reverse gear. If the vehicle is already in reverse gear, shift the vehicle into park then to reverse.	Does the system emit a single beep?	Continue System Function Check. (Section 0)	Proceed to Step 11.

## Test the Back-Up Sensor System

### Diagnostic Procedure with Diagnostic Trouble Code (DTC)

#### Back-up Sensor System (Diagnostics)

#### Section 1 - No sound when system is turned on (continued)

**NOTE:** In order to perform the system function check, the vehicle shall be parked in a level open area with no objects behind the vehicle for a minimum of ten feet. The parking brake must be applied and the trailer hitch ball mount must be removed.

	Step	Check	Yes	No
11	Remove the 4-pin connector on the control module and measure the input voltage between Pins 3 and 4 of the main connector. Was the input voltage +10VDC or greater?	Is the voltage measured across pins 3 & 4 +10VDC or greater?	Proceed to Step 13.	Check the Posi-Tap <sup>®</sup> Connection. Proceed to Step 12.
12	Turn the key to the run position. Press the vehicle parking brake and shift the vehicle into reverse gear. If the vehicle is already in reverse gear, shift the vehicle into park then to reverse.	Does the system emit a single beep?	Continue System Function Check. (Section 0)	Proceed to Step 13.
13	Disconnect the 2-pin speaker connector. Place an object in front of the sensors. Measure the voltage between Pin 1 (green) and Pin 2 (blue).	Was the measured voltage +10VDC or greater?	Replace Main Power Harness. Proceed to Step 14.	Replace Control Module. Proceed to Step 14.
14	Turn the key to the run position. Press the vehicle parking brake and shift the vehicle into reverse gear. If the vehicle is already in reverse gear, shift the vehicle into park then to reverse.	Does the system emit a single beep?	Continue System Function Check. (Section 0)	

## Test the Back-Up Sensor System

### Diagnostic Procedure with Diagnostic Trouble Code (DTC)

Back-up Sensor System (Diagnostics)

#### Section 2 - The system emits multiple beeps when shifted into reverse.

**NOTE: In order to perform the system function check, the vehicle shall be parked in a level open area with no objects behind the vehicle for a minimum of ten feet. The parking brake must be applied and the trailer hitch ball mount must be removed.**

	Step	Check	Yes	No
1	Activate the vehicle parking brake. Turn the key to the run position. Do not start the engine. Step on the brake and shift the vehicle into reverse.	Did the system give a single beep?	Continue System Function Check. (Section 0)	Proceed to Step 2.
2	Activate the vehicle parking brake. Turn the key to the run position. Do not start the engine. Step on the brake and shift the vehicle into reverse.	Does the system emit multiple beeps?	The number of beeps relates to the number of problem sensors. Proceed to Step 3.	Proceed to Section 1 (No sound when system is turned on).
3	Verify that all sensors are connected into the correct connectors on the Control Module.	Check that all sensors are properly connected to the Control Module.	Proceed to Step 4.	Connect sensor(s) into the correct connector(s) on the Control Module. Proceed to Step 1.
4	Determine the number of problem sensors.	When activated does the system emit multiple beeps?	The number of beeps indicates the number of problem sensors. If the system emits 2 beeps, proceed to Step 5. If the system emits 3 beeps, proceed to Step 10. If the system emits 4 beeps, proceed to Step 12. If the system emits 5 beeps, proceed to Step 16.	Continue System Function Check. (Section 0)
5	The system emits two beeps when activated. Determine the sensor that is not communicating properly with the control module.	Stand behind the vehicle and place an object behind each sensor. The malfunctioning sensor will not emit an audible tone.	If the L sensor is the suspect sensor, proceed to step 6. If the CL sensor is the suspect sensor, proceed to step 7. If the CR sensor is the suspect sensor, proceed to step 8. If the R sensor is the suspect sensor, proceed to step 9.	The system emits a solid tone after an object is placed in front of each sensor. The system is functioning properly, continue system function check. (Section 0)



## Test the Back-Up Sensor System

### Diagnostic Procedure with Diagnostic Trouble Code (DTC)

#### Back-up Sensor System (Diagnostics)

#### Section 2 - The system emits multiple beeps when shifted into reverse (continued)

	Step	Check	Yes	No
6	Sensor L is the suspect sensor. Unplug Sensors L & R from the control module. Plug the sensor marked L into the control module connector marked R. Plug the sensor marked R into the control module connector marked L.	Recycle power to the system. Stand behind the vehicle and place an object behind sensor L and then behind sensor R. Does the system emit an audible tone when an object is placed behind the sensor in position R and does not emit an audible tone when an object is placed behind the sensor in position L?	Sensor L has malfunctioned. Return Sensor R to its correct position on the control module. Replace Sensor L with a new sensor. Proceed to step 1 to retest the system with the new sensor installed.	The control module has malfunctioned. Replace the control module. Proceed to step 1 to retest the system with the new control module installed.
7	Sensor CL is the suspect sensor. Unplug Sensors CL & CR from the control module. Plug the sensor marked CL into the control module connector marked CR. Plug the sensor marked CR into the control module connector marked CL.	Recycle power to the system. Stand behind the vehicle and place an object behind sensor CL and then behind sensor CR. Does the system emit an audible tone when an object is placed behind the sensor in position CR and does not emit an audible tone when an object is placed behind the sensor in position CL?	Sensor CL has malfunctioned. Return Sensor CR to its correct position on the control module. Replace Sensor CL with a new sensor. Proceed to step 1 to retest the system with the new sensor installed.	The control module has malfunctioned. Replace the control module. Proceed to step 1 to retest the system with the new control module installed.
8	Sensor CR is the suspect sensor. Unplug Sensors CR & CL from the control module. Plug the sensor marked CR into the control module connector marked CL. Plug the sensor marked CL into the control module connector marked CR.	Recycle power to the system. Stand behind the vehicle and place an object behind sensor CR and then behind sensor CL. Does the system emit an audible tone when an object is placed behind the sensor in position CL and does not emit an audible tone when an object is placed behind the sensor in position CR?	Sensor CR has malfunctioned. Return Sensor CL to its correct position on the control module. Replace Sensor CR with a new sensor. Proceed to step 1 to retest the system with the new sensor installed.	The control module has malfunctioned. Replace the control module. Proceed to step 1 to retest the system with the new control module installed.

## Test the Back-Up Sensor System

### Diagnostic Procedure with Diagnostic Trouble Code (DTC)

#### Back-up Sensor System (Diagnostics)

#### Section 2 - The system emits multiple beeps when shifted into reverse (continued)

	Step	Check	Yes	No
9	Sensor R is the suspect sensor. Unplug Sensors R & L from the control module. Plug the sensor marked R into the control module connector marked L. Plug the sensor marked L into the control module connector marked R.	Recycle power to the system. Stand behind the vehicle and place an object behind sensor R and then behind sensor L. Does the system emit an audible tone when an object is placed behind the sensor in position L and does not emit an audible tone when an object is placed behind the sensor in position R?	Sensor R has malfunctioned. Return Sensor L to its correct position on the control module. Replace Sensor R with a new sensor. Proceed to step 1 to retest the system with the new sensor installed.	The control module has malfunctioned. Replace the control module. Proceed to step 1 to retest the system with the new control module installed.
10	The system emits three beeps when activated. The three beeps indicate that two sensors may not be working properly. Determine the sensors that are not communicating properly with the control module.	Stand behind each sensor. The malfunctioning sensors will not emit an audible tone.	Two sensors were found not emitting an audible tone when an object was placed in front of them. Proceed to step 11.	The system emits a solid tone after an object is placed in front of each sensor. The system is functioning properly, continue system function check. (Section 0)
11	Unplug one of the non-working sensors from the control module. Unplug one of the working sensors from the control module. Connect the first sensor into the second disconnected sensor connector. Connect the second sensor into the first disconnected sensor connector.	Recycle power to the system. Stand behind the swapped sensors. Does the system emit an audible tone when an object is placed behind the sensor in position 1 and does not emit an audible tone when an object is placed behind the sensor in position 2?	Sensor 1 has malfunctioned. Return Sensor 2 to its correct position on the control module. Replace Sensor 1 with a new sensor. Proceed to step 1 to retest the system with the new sensor installed.	The control module has malfunctioned. Replace the control module. Proceed to step 1 to retest the system with the new control module installed.
12	The system emits four beeps when activated. The four beeps indicate that three sensors may not be working properly. Determine the sensors that are not communicating properly with the control module.	Stand behind sensor. The malfunctioning sensors will not emit an audible tone.	Three sensors were found not emitting an audible tone when an object was placed in front of them. The one sensor that emitted an audible tone shall be referred to as Sensor 1. Proceed to step 13.	The system emits a solid tone after an object is placed in front of each sensor. The system is functioning properly, continue system function check. (Section 0)

## Test the Back-Up Sensor System

### Diagnostic Procedure with Diagnostic Trouble Code (DTC)

#### Back-up Sensor System (Diagnostics)

#### Section 2 - The system emits multiple beeps when shifted into reverse (continued)

	Step	Check	Yes	No
13	Disconnect all sensor connectors from the Control Module. Plug Sensor 1 into the first non-working connector on the control module.	Recycle power to the system. Stand behind the vehicle and place an object in front of Sensor 1. Does the system emit an audible tone when an object is placed in front of Sensor 1?	The sensor has malfunctioned. Reconnect sensor 1 to its proper location and replace the malfunctioning sensor with a new one. Proceed to step 14.	The control module has malfunctioned. Replace the control module. Proceed to step 1 to retest the system with the new control module installed.
14	Plug Sensor 1 into the second non-working connector on the control module.	Recycle power to the system. Stand behind the vehicle and place an object in front of Sensor 1. Does the system emit an audible tone when an object is placed in front of Sensor 1?	The sensor has malfunctioned. Reconnect sensor 1 to its proper location and replace the malfunctioning sensor with a new one. Proceed to step 15.	The control module has malfunctioned. Replace the control module. Proceed to step 1 to retest the system with the new control module installed.
15	Plug Sensor 1 into the third non-working connector on the control module.	Recycle power to the system. Stand behind the vehicle and place an object in front of Sensor 1. Does the system emit an audible tone when an object is placed in front of Sensor 1?	The sensor has malfunctioned. Reconnect sensor 1 to its proper location and replace the malfunctioning sensor with a new one. Proceed to step 1.	The control module has malfunctioned. Replace the control module. Proceed to step 1 to retest the system with the new control module installed.
16	When activated, the system emits 5 beeps. The five beeps indicate that there are problems with all four sensors of the system.	The control module may be the cause of the system malfunction. Replace the control module and connect all sensors to the correct connectors. Power up the system and verify that the system no longer emits 5 beeps.	The system no longer emits 5 beeps, indicating that the control module malfunctioned. Proceed to step 1.	The system still emits 5 beeps after the control module was replaced and all sensors were connected. All of the sensors are malfunctioning. Replace all sensors and proceed to step 1.

## Test the Back-Up Sensor System

### Diagnostic Procedure with Diagnostic Trouble Code (DTC)

#### Back-up Sensor System (Diagnostics)

#### Section 3 - The system emits a constant tone

**NOTE:** In order to perform the system function check, the vehicle shall be parked in a level open area with no objects behind the vehicle for a minimum of ten feet. The parking brake must be applied and the trailer hitch ball mount must be removed.

	Step	Check	Yes	No
1	Activate the vehicle parking brake. Turn the key to the run position. Do not start the engine. Step on the brake and shift the vehicle into reverse.	Does the system emit a constant tone?	Proceed to Step 2.	Continue System Function Check. (Section 0)
2	Verify that there are no objects on the ground behind the vehicle.	Are there objects on the ground behind the vehicle?	Remove objects. Proceed to Step 1.	Proceed to Step 3.
3	Check if the vehicle has a trailer hitch.	Does the vehicle have a trailer hitch with anything installed (i.e. bike rack, trailer adapter, ball mount etc.)	The trailer hitch attachment is causing the system to emit a constant tone. The user should turn the speaker off in this condition or remove the attachment.	The vehicle does not have a trailer hitch or any attachments. Replace the control module. Proceed to Step 1.

**NOTE:** On vehicles equipped with a trailer hitch, the ball mount assembly should be stowed in the vehicle when unused.



DESCRIPTION:

INSTALLATION  
INSTRUCTIONS

### 08 TRIBECA BACKUP SENSOR LOCATIONS

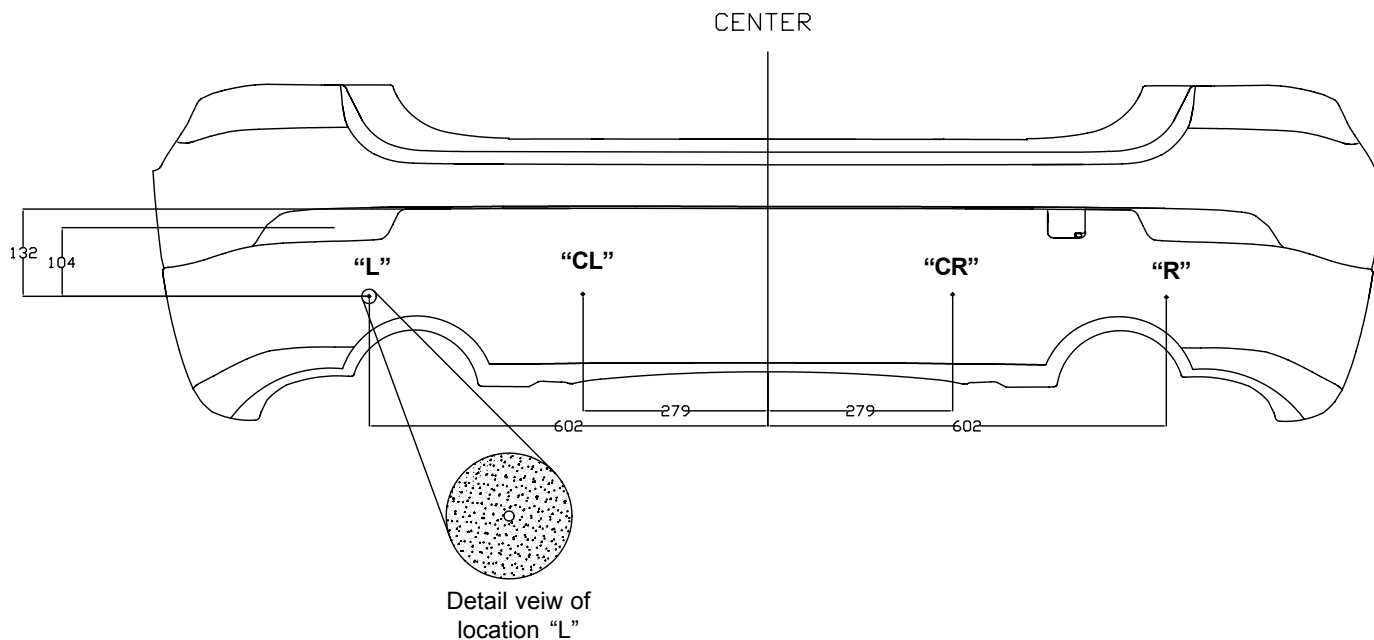
**NOTE:** Pre-marked locations are most visible in bright light and/or with the vehicle elevated such that the bumper is at eye level.

To work properly, the back-up sensors must be located at the pre-marked locations on the bumper. Use the illustration and sensor location chart to identify the four pre-marked sensor drilling locations.

The four pre-marked sensor drilling locations are visible as a 2mm untextured circles (or dots) on the bumpers textured surface.

The illustration below shows the approximate locations of the four 2mm untextured circles with a detail view of location "L".

Once the four locations have been identified, carefully follow the procedure described in the installation guide.



**Sensor Location Chart**

Description	L	CL	CR	R
Distance from Center of Bumper (Horizontal)	602mm	279mm	279mm	602mm
Distance from Center of Reflector (Vertical)	104mm	104mm	104mm	104mm
Distance from Bumper Center Line (Vertical)	132mm	132mm	132mm	132mm

128-8053

DATE  
04/16/2007

SUBARU OF AMERICA

PAGE  
1 of 1



**GENUINE PARTS**

**H0018FG300 (08 MY~)**

**(FMC205)**

---

HANDS FREE MICROPHONE ► page 2 - 5

## **INSTALLATION MANUAL**

**Applicable models : All IMPREZA models (08 MY~)**

- Installation will be in mirror image for vehicles with right-hand steering

MICROPHONE MAINS LIBRES ► page 6 - 9

## **MANUEL D'INSTALLATION**

**Modèles applicables : Tous les modèles IMPREZA (08 MY~)**

- L'installation est à réaliser en image inverse pour les véhicules à conduite à droite

FREISPRECHMIKROFON ► Seite 10 - 13

## **INSTALLATION-HANDBUCH**

**Geeignet für Modelle : Sämtliche Modelle des Typs IMPREZA (08 MY~)**

- Der Einbau wird spiegelbildlich für Fahrzeuge mit Rechtssteuerung dargestellt

MICROFONO VIVAVOCE ► pagina 14 - 17

## **MANUALE DI INSTALLAZIONE**

**Modelli applicabili : tutti i modelli IMPREZA (08 MY~)**

- Per i veicoli con guida a destra, l'installazione va eseguita secondo l'immagine speculare

MICRÓFONO MANOS LIBRES ► página 18 - 21

## **MANUAL DE INSTALACIÓN**

**Modelos aplicables : Todos los modelos IMPREZA (08 MY~)**

- La instalación se realizará en el espejo retrovisor para los vehículos con volante a la derecha.

CE





## 1 Parts

No.	Part name	Number of Items	External View
①	Microphone	1	
②	Cushion	1	
③	Tape	2	
④	Installation manual	2	

## 2 Tools to be used

Plus screwdrivers (long, short), clipremover, nippers, scissors, measure

## 3 Cautions in Installing

### ▲WARNING

- Before wiring work is done, the battery terminal  $\ominus$  must be removed. Electric shock or injury due to short-circuit accident will be caused.
- The audio products must be wired in accordance with the instruction manual.  
Wrong wiring will result in a fire or other accident.
- To cut the coating of a cord and take the power supply of other equipment is strictly prohibited. The current capacity of the lead wire will be exceeded and a fire or electric shock will be caused.
- When the installation is made by making a hole in the car body, check the positions of pipe, tank, electric wiring, etc. and avoid contact with them. A fire will be caused.
- No extension must be made using other than the cord for vehicle power wiring. The cord coating will be easily damaged and a fire may be caused due to short-circuit or heating accident.
- Any cord passing near the sheet metal portion of the vehicle should be wrapped with protective tape. If the cord is cut, a fire may be caused due to short-circuit.
- The bolts/nuts must be securely tightened using tools of right size. They should be tightened to the specified torque if specified. Otherwise, the bolts/nuts may be damaged or removed.
- When the audio product is installed, use the fitting parts provided. Otherwise, the product interior will be damaged and a fire may be caused due to short-circuit. If faulty installation is made, the product may be removed and hit a person resulting in injury.
- The earth cord must not be fit to a bolt or nut of important safety parts such as steering portion and brake line system. Accidents will be caused.
- If the fuse of the car audio product or vehicle is blown, confirm that the cord is not short-circuited, and then replace it with a new fuse of the capacity (amperage) indicated on the fuse. If a fuse of wrong capacity is used, a fire may be caused.
- After the installation of the car audio product is completed, check that the vehicle's brake lamps, head lamps, wipers, etc. operate normally. If any of them does not normally operate, correct the installation.
- The product must not be disassembled or modified. An accident, a fire, or electric shock will be caused.
  - For checking/repairing, consult at the address mentioned in the warranty card.
  - If the repairing is done by a customer, a fire or other accident will be caused.
- Read the "SUBARU service manual" for detail procedure to detach / restore the trim.

### ▲CAUTION

- The cords must not be caught or pulled too strongly. Cord breakage or short-circuit may be caused.
- When the connector is removed, the lock must be unlocked by holding the connector instead of pulling the lead wire. The lead wire will be broken or contact failure will be caused.
- Products using glass parts must not be dropped or given a strong impact. They will break resulting in injury.
- If a product using liquid crystal is broken due to impact, etc., do not touch the liquid crystal liquid. There is a danger to life. If the liquid crystal liquid sticks to your body including hands and feet or clothes, it must be immediately washed off with soap.

### ▲CAUTION

#### Precautions when it is installed in a vehicle equipped with SRS air bag

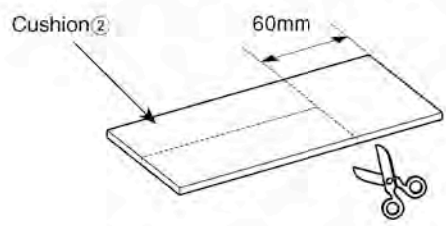
When it is installed in a vehicle equipped with SRS air bag (hereinafter called air bag), the installation work must be done in such a way that the air bag related parts will not be adversely affected.

- The wire harness for air bag is wrapped with a yellow cover so that it can be discriminated from other systems. For the detail, read the cautions related to the air bag in the maintenance manual.

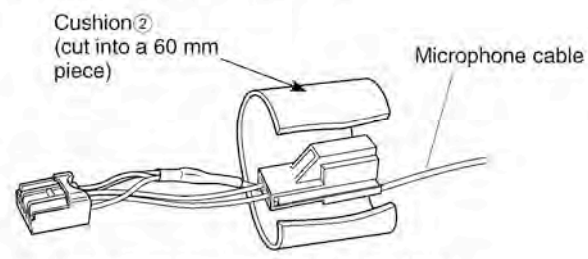
- If any of the following conditions occurs after vehicle restoration, immediate checking must be done.
  - 1 The warning lamp does not light with the key switch ON.
  - 2 The warning lamp does not extinguish about 7 seconds after the key switch is turned ON.
  - 3 The warning lamp extinguishes one about 7 seconds after the key switch is turned ON, but subsequently it lights.

## 4 Before starting the work

- Cut the cushion ② according to the size of the drawing before using.

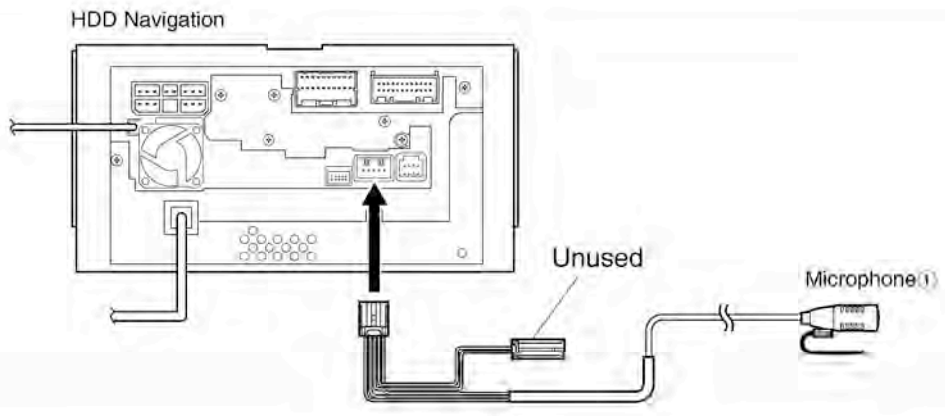


- Wrap the unused connector with cushion ②.



Wrap the unused connector with cushion ② together with the microphone cable.

## 5 Connection

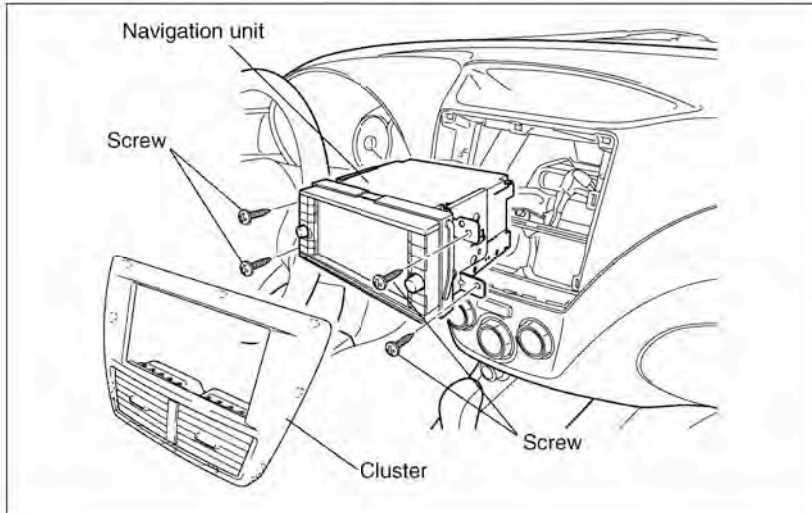




## 6 Removing Parts from the Vehicle

### ▲CAUTION

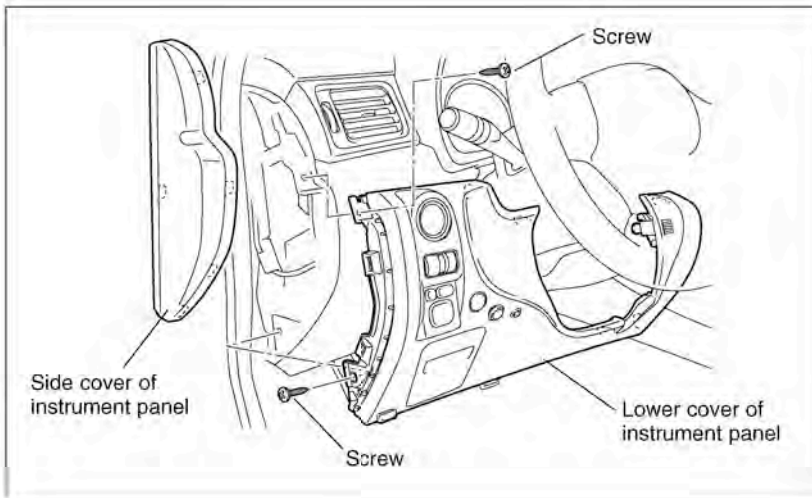
- Securely pull the parking brake.
- To prevent accidents, be sure to remove the  $\ominus$  terminal of the battery before starting the work (For the MT system).
- To prevent accidents, be sure to shift the gear into the "N" position and remove the  $\ominus$  terminal of the battery before starting the work (For the AT system).
- The programmed music memory of the audio system will be erased. Make a note of the memory contents before removing parts.



1. Remove the cluster (by releasing 5 clips and 7 latches).
2. Remove the navigation unit (by releasing 4 screws).

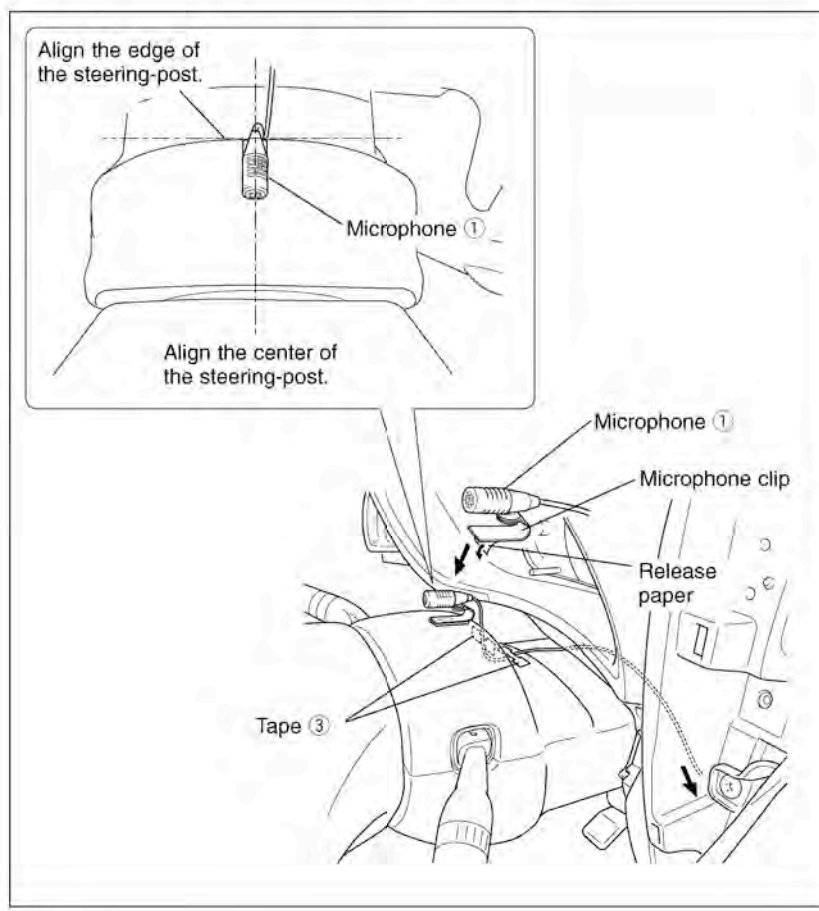
### ▲CAUTION

Take care not to damage plastic clips during part disassembling.



3. Remove the side cover of instrument panel (by releasing 4 clips and 1 latch).
4. Remove the lower cover of instrument panel (by releasing 2 screws and clips).

## 7 Installing the Microphone

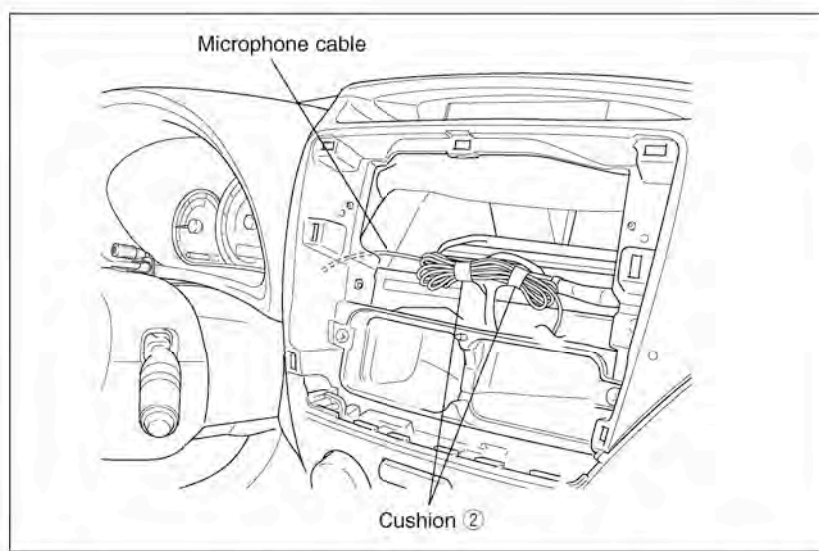


1. Peel the release paper off the clip of Microphone ①.
2. Affix the Microphone ① onto the position of the steering-post as indicated in the drawing.

**CAUTION**

Remove the grease of the adhesive side before affixing the Microphone clip.

3. Wire the Microphone cable by fixing with the tape ③.



4. Wire the Microphone cable to the navigation unit
5. Roll up the excess microphone cable and secure it to the vehicle's harness using the cut pieces of cushion ②.
6. Connect the cable according to the "Connection".

## 8 Restoring of removed parts of vehicle and operation checking

1. Recheck the connection, setting, and fixing of installed microphone, etc.
2. After the work is completed, restore the removed parts by reversing the procedure for removal.
3. Check if the electric parts of the vehicle (lamps, switches, instruments) and the navigation system operate normally.



## 1 Pièces

N°	Désignation de la pièce	Nombre d'éléments	Vue générale
①	Microphone	1	
②	Coussinet	1	
③	Bande	2	
④	Manuel d'installation	2	

## 2 Outils à utiliser

Tournevis Plus (long, court), instrument de retrait des agrafes de fixation, pinces coupantes, ciseaux, mesureur

## 3 Précautions d'installation

### ▲AVERTISSEMENT

- Avant de procéder au câblage, la cosse négative  $\ominus$  de la batterie doit être retirée. Dans le cas contraire, une électrocution ou une autre blessure peut être causée par un court-circuit.
- Les appareils audio doivent être câblés en accord avec le manuel d'utilisation. Toute erreur de câblage risque de provoquer un incendie ou autre accident.
- Il est strictement interdit de couper la gaine d'un câble d'un autres équipement pour se brancher dessus. L'intensité nominale de ce câble risque d'être dépassée et de déclencher un incendie ou une électrocution.
- Lorsque l'installation nécessite un trou dans la structure du véhicule, effectuez une vérification préalable de l'emplacement des tuyauteries, réservoir, faisceaux électriques, etc. et évitez tout contact avec ceux-ci. Un incendie risque d'être déclenché.
- Aucune extension de câblage ne doit être effectuée en utilisant un autre moyen que les câbles d'alimentation du faisceau électrique du véhicule. La gaine du câble peut facilement être endommagée et un incendie provoqué par un court-circuit ou une surchauffe accidentelle.
- Tout fil électrique passant à proximité d'une partie métallique du véhicule doit être enrobé de ruban isolant. Tout câble dénudé risque de déclencher un incendie par court-circuit.
- Les vis et écrous doivent être serrés correctement en utilisant les outils de taille appropriés. Ceux-ci doivent aussi être serrés au couple de serrage approprié lorsque ce dernier est mentionné. Dans le cas contraire, les vis et écrous risquent d'être endommagés ou de se dévissés.
- Installez tout appareil audio en utilisant les pièces de montage fournies. Dans le cas contraire, l'intérieur risque d'être endommagé ou un incendie provoqué par court-circuit. Si l'installation n'est pas correcte, l'appareil peut se détacher et blesser quelqu'un.
- Le fil de masse ne doit pas être connecté en utilisant un écrou ou une vis appartenant à un composant de sécurité important tel que les systèmes de direction ou de freinage. Cela risque de provoquer un accident.
- Si le fusible de l'appareil autoradio ou du véhicule se grille, vérifiez que le câble n'est pas court-circuité et remplacez le par un nouveau fusible du calibre (ampérage) indiqué sur celui-ci. Si un fusible de calibre trop élevé est utilisé, un incendie risque de se déclencher.
- Une fois que l'installation e l'appareil audio est terminée, vérifiez que tous les feux et accessoires du véhicule fonctionnent normalement. Si l'un d'eux ne fonctionne pas correctement, vérifiez et corrigez l'installation.
- L'appareil ne doit pas être désassemblé ou modifié. Dans le cas contraire, un incendie ou une électrocution risque de se produire.
  - Pour toute vérification ou réparation, consultez l'adresse mentionnée sur la carte de garantie.
  - Si la réparation est effectuée par le client, un incendie ou autre accident risque de se produire.
- Lire le "Manuel d'entretien SUBARU" pour connaître la procédure détaillée à suivre pour retirer / remettre la garniture.

### ▲ATTENTION

- Les câbles ne doivent être pincés ou tirés trop fortement. Ces derniers risquent de se rompre ou de déclencher un court-circuit.
- Lorsqu'un connecteur est retiré, son verrouillage doit être libéré en tenant le connecteur et non pas en tirant sur son câble. Le câble risque de se rompre ou de provoquer un mauvais contact.
- Prendre garde de ne pas laisser tomber les appareils comportant des pièces en verre ou de les exposer à des chocs violents. Ces pièces en verre risquent de se briser et causer des blessures.
- Si l'écran à cristaux liquides d'un appareil se brise lors d'un choc, etc., ne touchez pas au liquide qui s'en échappe. C'est un poison dangereux. Si ce liquide entre en contact avec le corps, y compris les mains, les pieds ou les vêtements, celui-ci doit être lavé immédiatement avec du savon.

### ▲ATTENTION

#### Précautions lors de l'installation dans un véhicule équipé d'un airbag SRS

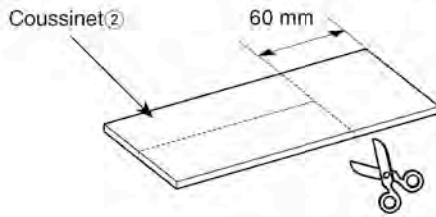
Lors d'une installation dans un véhicule équipé d'un airbag SRS (appelé simplement airbag ensuite), les travaux doivent être effectués de manière à ce que l'installation n'affecte d'aucune façon le fonctionnement de celui-ci

- Le faisceau électrique de l'airbag est enveloppé dans une gaine jaune afin de le différencier des autres systèmes. Pour plus de détails, veuillez consulter les précautions à prendre à ce sujet dans le manuel d'entretien.

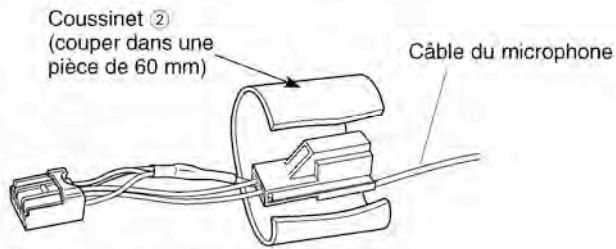
- Si l'une des conditions suivantes se produit après lors de la remise en utilisation du véhicule, une vérification immédiate doit être effectuée.
  - 1 Le voyant ne s'allume pas lorsque le contact est mis avec la clé.
  - 2 Le voyant ne s'éteint pas au bout de 7 secondes après avoir mis le contact avec la clé.
  - 3 Le voyant s'éteint au bout de 7 secondes après avoir mis le contact avec la clé mais se rallume ensuite.

## 4 Avant de démarrer le travail

- Couper le coussinet ② selon la taille du dessin avant utilisation.



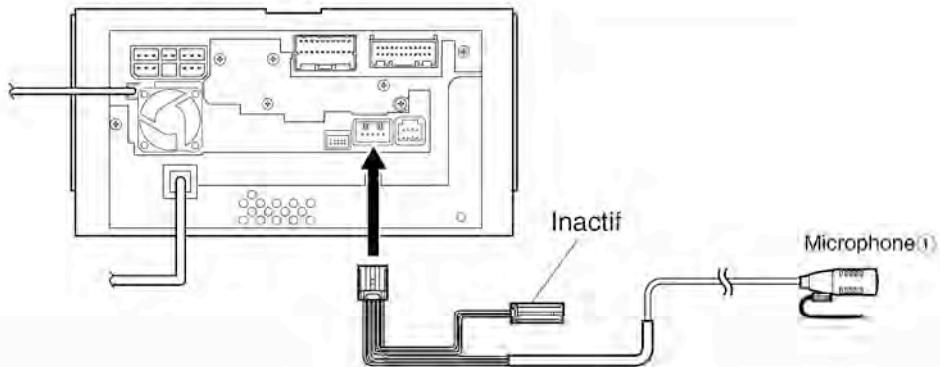
- Entourer le connecteur inutilisé avec le coussinet ②.



Entourer le connecteur inactif avec le coussinet ② et le câble du microphone.

## 5 Connexion

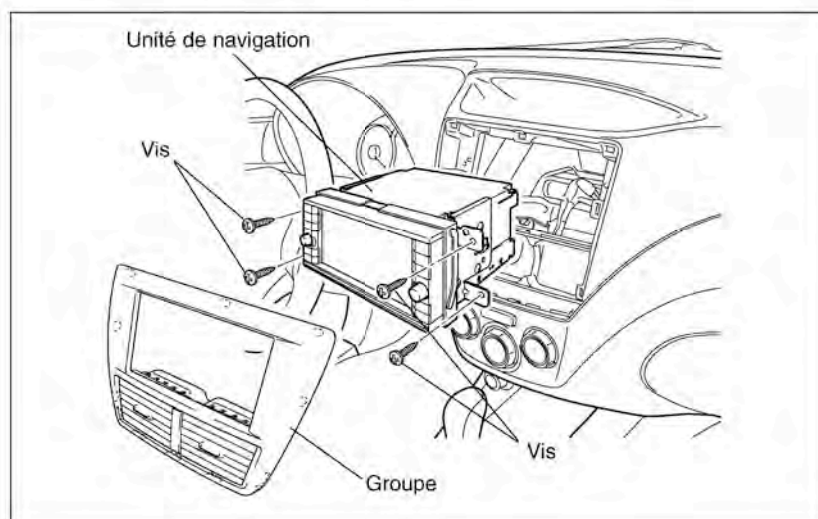
Navigation à Disque Dur



## 6 Retirer des pièces du véhicule

### ⚠ ATTENTION

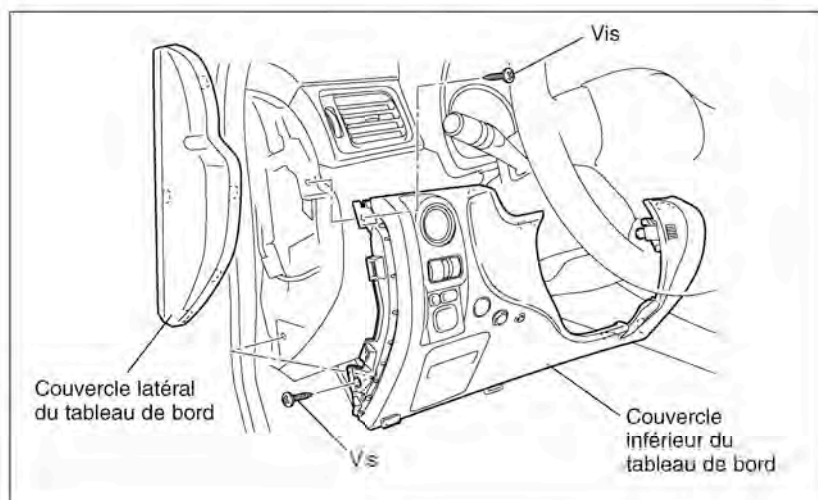
- Tirer fermement sur le frein parking.
- Afin de prévenir des accidents, bien s'assurer de retirer la borne  $\ominus$  de la batterie avant de démarrer le travail (Pour le système MT).
- Afin de prévenir des accidents, bien s'assurer de déplacer l'entraînement dans la position "N" et de retirer la borne  $\ominus$  de la batterie avant de démarrer le travail (Pour le système AT).
- La mémoire musicale programmée du système audio a été effacée. Noter les contenus de la mémoire avant de retirer des pièces.



1. Retirer le groupe (en défaisant 5 agrafes et 7 attaches).
2. Retirer l'unité de navigation (en desserrant 4 vis).

### ⚠ ATTENTION

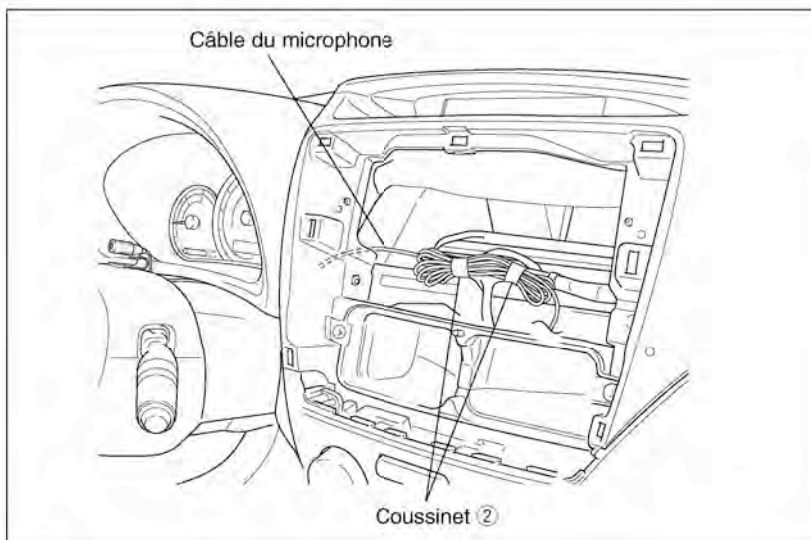
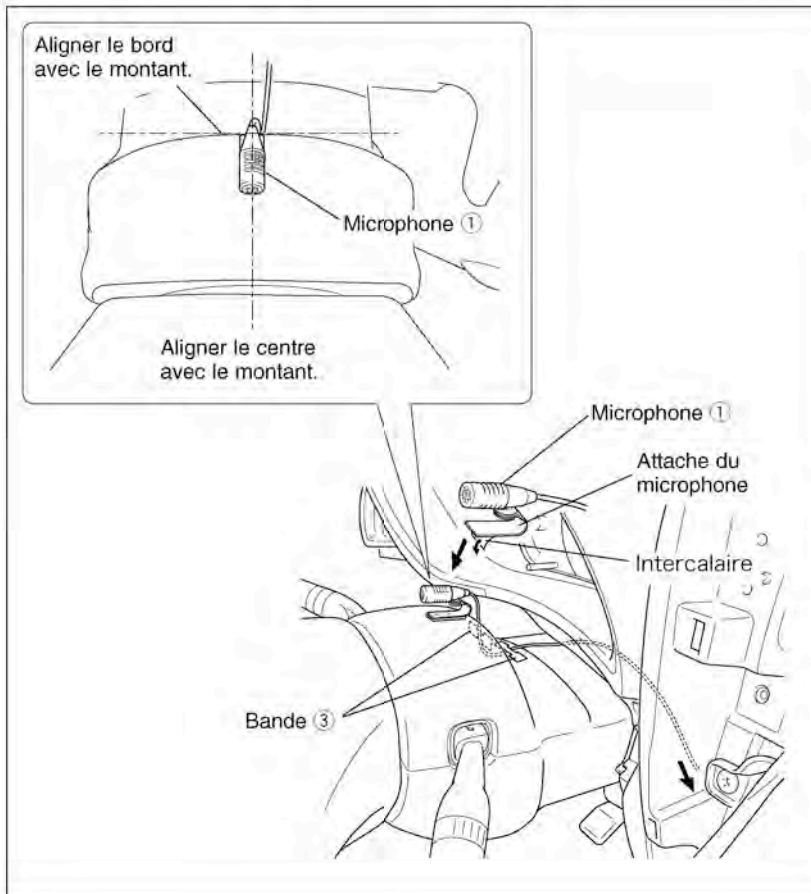
Veiller à ne pas endommager les agrafes de plastique lors du démontage.



3. Retirer le couvercle latéral du tableau de bord (en défaisant 4 agrafes et 1 attache).
4. Retirer le couvercle inférieur du tableau de bord (en desserrant 2 vis et agrafes).



## 7 Installation du microphone



1. Retirer l'intercalaire de l'agrafe du Microphone ①.
2. Fixer le Microphone ① en position sur le montant comme indiqué sur le dessin.

### ⚠ ATTENTION

Retirer la graisse du côté adhésif avant de fixer l'agrafe du microphone.

3. Fixer le câble du microphone avec la bande ③.

4. Fixer le câble du microphone à l'unité de navigation.
5. Rouler l'excédent de câble du microphone et le fixer fermement au câblage du véhicule en utilisant les morceaux du coussinet ②.
6. Connecter le câble selon la partie "Connexion".

## 8 Remise en place des pièces démontées du véhicule et vérification du fonctionnement

1. Revérifier la connexion, le réglage, et la fixation du microphone installé, etc.
2. Une fois le travail terminé, remettre en place les pièces qui ont été retirées en inversant la procédure de démontage.
3. Vérifier que les pièces électriques du véhicule (lampes, interrupteurs, instruments) et que le système de navigation fonctionne normalement.

## 1 Teile

Nr.	Bauteilbezeichnung	Anzahl	Außenansicht
①	Mikrofon	1	
②	Dämpfer	1	
③	Band	2	
④	Bedienungsanleitung	2	

## 2 Erforderliche Werkzeuge

Einschließlich Schraubenzieher (lang, kurz), Abnehmer für Clips, Greifer, Schere, Maßstab

## 3 Vorsichtshinweise bei der Installation

### ⚠ WARNUNG

- Vor der Verdrahtung muss die Batterieklammer ⊖ entfernt werden. Ein elektrischer Schlag oder Verletzungen aufgrund eines Kurzschlusses sind die Folge.
- Die Audiokomponenten müssen entsprechend der Bedienungsanleitung verdrahtet werden. Eine falsche Verdrahtung führt zu einem Brand oder einem anderen Defekt.
- Das Entfernen des Kabelmantels und das Verwenden eines Netzkabels von einem anderen Gerät ist streng verboten. Die Stromkapazität des Kabels wird überschritten und ein Brand oder ein elektrischer Schlag wird verursacht.
- Wenn die Installation durch eine Öffnung in der Fahrzeugkarosserie vorgenommen wird, prüfen Sie die Positionen des Rohrs, des Tanks, der Verdrahtung, usw. und vermeiden Sie den Kontakt untereinander. Ein Brand wäre die Folge.
- Es darf keine Verlängerung mit einem anderen Kabel als für Fahrzeugverdrahtung bestimmte Kabel ausgeführt werden. Der Kabelmantel wird leicht beschädigt und ein Brand könnte aufgrund eines Kurzschlusses oder Heizungsdefekts verursacht werden.
- Kabel, die in der Nähe von Blechteilstücken des Fahrzeugs verlaufen, sollten mit Schutzklebeband umwickelt werden. Wenn das Kabel zerschnitten wird, könnte ein Brand aufgrund eines Kurzschlusses verursacht werden.
- Die Bolzen/Muttern müssen mit Werkzeugen der korrekten Größe fest angezogen werden. Sie sollten auf das spezifizierte Anzugsmoment angezogen werden, sofern dieses angegeben ist. Anderenfalls könnten die Bolzen/Muttern beschädigt werden oder sich lösen.
- Wenn die Audiokomponente installiert wird, verwenden Sie die beiliegenden Paßteile. Anderenfalls wird die Innenseite der Komponente beschädigt und ein Brand könnte aufgrund eines Kurzschlusses verursacht werden. Bei einer falsch ausgeführten Installation könnte sich die Komponente lösen und Personenschäden verursachen.
- Das Erdungskabel darf nicht an einem Bolzen oder einer Mutter wichtiger Sicherheitsbauteile wie Lenkung und Bremsleitungssystem befestigt werden. Unfälle werden verursacht.
- Wenn die Sicherung der Auto-Audiokomponente durchgebrannt ist, prüfen Sie, dass das Kabel nicht kurzgeschlossen ist, und tauschen Sie danach diese durch eine neue Sicherung mit der auf der Sicherung angegebenen Kapazität (Amperezahl) aus. Wenn eine Sicherung mit falscher Kapazität verwendet wird, könnte ein Brand verursacht werden.
- Prüfen Sie nach der Installation der Auto-Audiokomponente, dass die Bremsleuchten, die Scheinwerfer, die Blinkleuchten, die Wischer, usw. am Fahrzeug normal arbeiten. Falls eine dieser Komponenten nicht normal arbeitet, führen Sie die Installation noch einmal korrekt durch.
- Das Produkt darf nicht auseinanderggebaut oder modifiziert werden. Ein Unfall, ein Brand oder ein elektrischer Schlag wird verursacht.
  - Wenden Sie sich zwecks Prüfungs-/Reparaturarbeiten an die in der Garantiekarte stehenden Adresse.
  - Falls Reparaturarbeiten vom Kunden ausgeführt werden, wird ein Brand oder ein anderer Unfall verursacht.
- Lesen Sie für das detaillierte Verfahren zum Entfernen/Einsetzen der Verkleidung das "SUBARU-Servicehandbuch".

### ⚠ ACHTUNG

- Die Kabel dürfen nicht eingeklemmt und an ihnen darf nicht zu stark gezogen werden. Kabelbruch oder Kurzschluss könnte verursacht werden.
- Wenn der Anschluss entfernt wird, muss die Verriegelung entriegelt werden, indem am Anschluss festgehalten wird anstatt am Kabel zu ziehen. Das Kabel bricht oder ein Kontaktausfall wird verursacht.
- Produkte mit Glasteilen dürfen nicht fallen gelassen und keinen starken Erschütterungen ausgesetzt werden. Sie brechen und können Verletzungen verursachen.
- Wenn ein Produkt mit Flüssigkristall aufgrund von Erschütterungen, usw. bricht, berühren Sie nicht den Flüssigkristall. Das ist lebensgefährlich. Wenn Flüssigkristall an Ihrem Körper, einschließlich Hände und Füße, oder Ihrer Kleidung haftet, müssen Sie ihn sofort mit Seife abwaschen.

### ⚠ ACHTUNG

#### Vorsichtsmaßnahmen bei der Installation in ein Fahrzeug mit SRS-Airbag

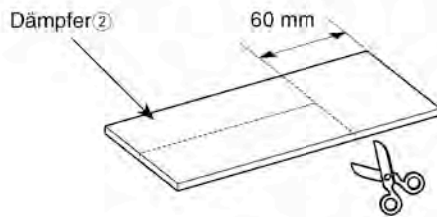
Bei der Installation in ein Fahrzeug mit SRS-Airbag (nachfolgend nur "Airbag" genannt), müssen die Installationsarbeiten so ausgeführt werden, dass die auf den Airbag bezogenen Teile nicht nachteilig beeinträchtigt werden.

- Der Kabelbaum für den Airbag ist mit einer gelben Umhüllung versehen, so dass er von anderen Systemen unterschieden werden kann. Lesen Sie für Einzelheiten die auf den Airbag bezogenen Vorsichtshinweise im Wartungshandbuch.
- Falls eine der folgenden Bedingungen nach der Fahrzeugwiederherstellung auftreten, muss eine sofortige Überprüfung ausgeführt werden.
  - 1 Die Warnleuchte leuchtet nicht, wenn der Tastschalter eingeschaltet ist.
  - 2 Die Warnleuchte geht etwa 7 Sekunden nach dem Einschalten des Tastschalters nicht aus.
  - 3 Die Warnleuchte geht etwa 7 Sekunden nach dem Einschalten des Tastschalters aus, leuchtet aber später.

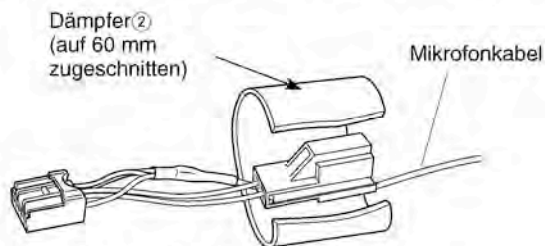


## 4 **Bevor Sie mit der Arbeit beginnen**

- Schneiden Sie den Dämpfer<sup>2</sup> entsprechend den Maßgaben in der Zeichnung zurecht, bevor Sie ihn verwenden.



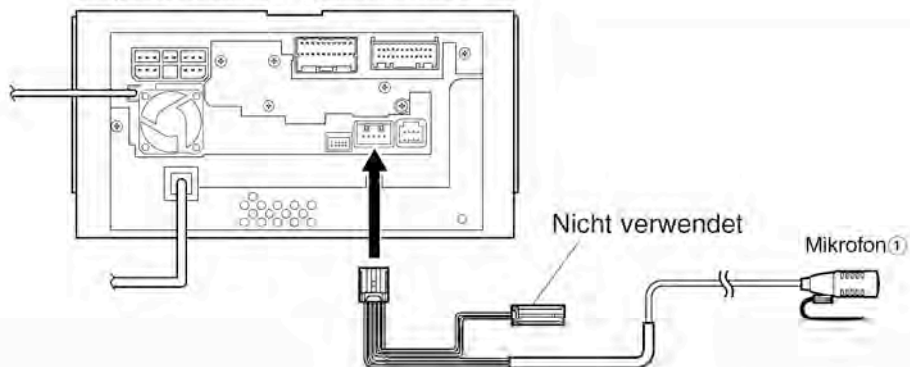
- Wickeln Sie den Dämpfer<sup>2</sup> um den nicht verwendeten Anschluss.



Wickeln Sie den Dämpfer<sup>2</sup> um den nicht verwendeten Anschluss und das Mikrofonkabel.

## 5 **Anschluss**

Navigation über das Festplattenlaufwerk (HDD)

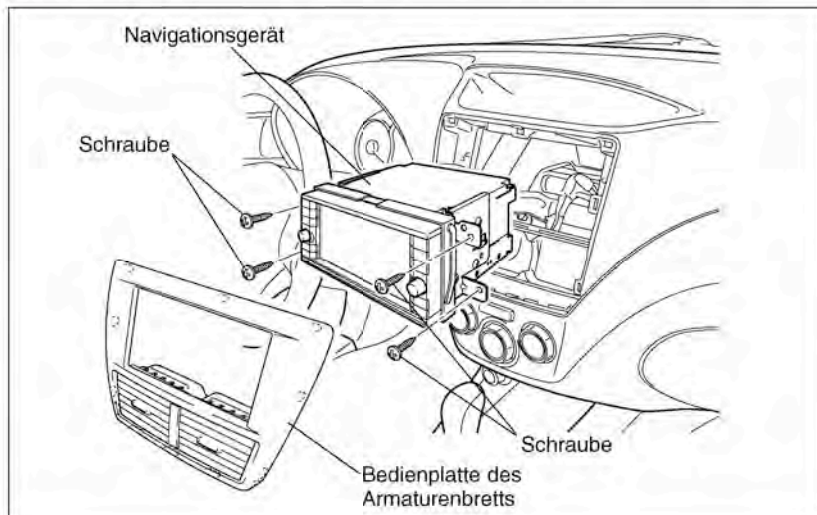




## 6 Demontage der Teile vom Wagen

### ⚠ ACHTUNG

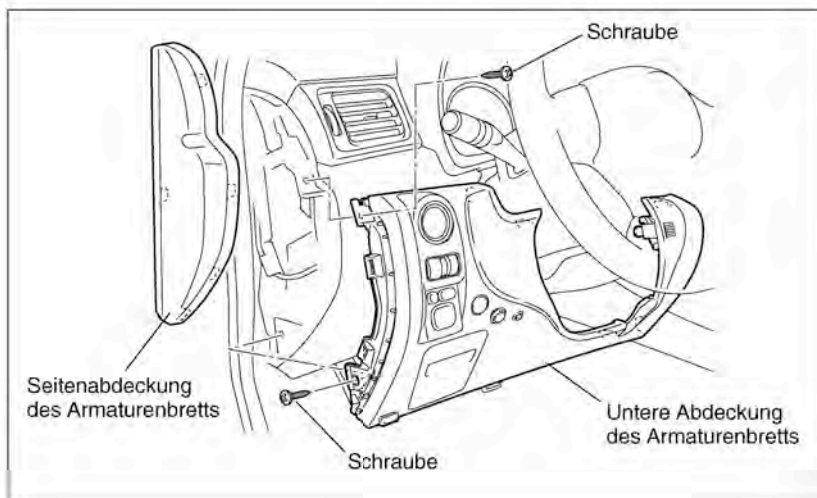
- Ziehen Sie die Handbremse sicher an.
- Um Unfälle zu verhindern, stellen Sie bitte sicher, dass Sie vor Arbeitsbeginn den  $\ominus$  Pol der Batterie entfernen (für das MT-System).
- Um Unfälle zu verhindern, stellen Sie bitte sicher, dass Sie vor Arbeitsbeginn den "N"-Gang einlegen und den  $\ominus$  Pol der Batterie entfernen (für das AT-System).
- Der Speicher mit einprogrammierter Musik des Audiosystems wird gelöscht. Notieren Sie sich die Speicherinhalte, bevor Sie die Bauteile ausbauen.



1. Nehmen Sie die Bedienplatte des Armaturenbretts ab (lockern Sie die 5 Clips und die 7 Verriegelungen).
2. Nehmen Sie das Navigationsgerät heraus (lockern Sie die 4 Schrauben).

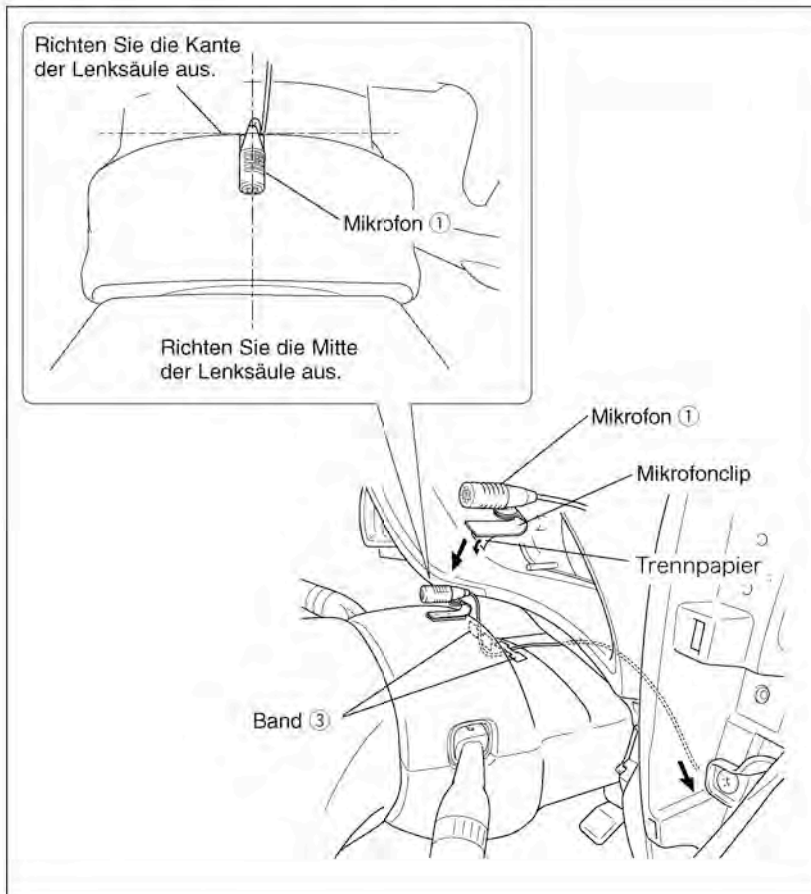
### ⚠ ACHTUNG

Geben Sie Acht, dass Sie die Plastikklammern während des Auseinanderbaus nicht beschädigen.



3. Nehmen Sie die Seitenabdeckung des Armaturenbretts ab (lockern Sie die 4 Klammern und eine Verriegelung).
4. Nehmen Sie die untere Abdeckung des Armaturenbretts ab (lockern Sie die 2 Schrauben und Klammern).

## 7 Einbau des Mikrofons

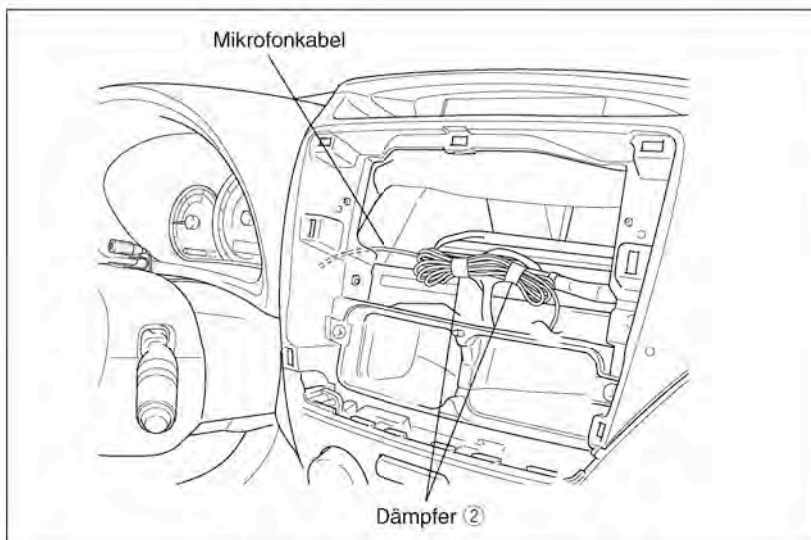


1. Ziehen Sie das Trennpapier vom Mikrofonclip (1) ab.
2. Bringen Sie das Mikrofon (1) auf der Position der Lenksäule wie in der Abbildung gezeigt an.

### ⚠ ACHTUNG

Entfernen Sie das Fett der klebenden Seite, bevor Sie den Mikrofonclip anbringen.

3. Befestigen Sie das Kabel mit dem Band (3).



4. Wickeln Sie das Mikrofonskabel zusammen und befestigen Sie es am Navigationssystem.
5. Rollen Sie den Rest des Mikrofonskabels auf und sichern Sie es mit den Dämpferstücken (2) am Kabelbaum des Fahrzeugs.
6. Schließen Sie das Kabel wie unter "Anschluss" beschrieben an.

## 8 Wiedereinbau der entfernten Fahrzeugteile und Betriebsprüfung

1. Überprüfen Sie noch einmal den Anschluss, die Einstellung, die Befestigung des eingebauten Mikrofons, etc.
2. Bauen Sie nach Beendigung der Arbeit die ausgebauten Teile in umgekehrter Reihenfolge des Ausbaublaufs wieder ein.
3. Überprüfen Sie, ob die elektrischen Fahrzeugbauteile (Lampen, Schalter, Armaturen) und das Navigationssystem ordnungsgemäß funktionieren.



## 1 Parti

No.	Nome della parte	Numero delle voci	Vista dall'esterno
①	Microfono	1	
②	Cuscinetto	1	
③	Nastro adesivo	2	
④	Manuale di installazione	2	

## 2 Utensileria

Diversi cacciavite (lunghi, corti), strumento di rimozione di graffe di fissaggio, tronchese, forbici, strumento di misurazione

## 3 Precauzioni dell'installazione

### ▲ AVVERTIMENTO

- Prima che sia stato effettuato il lavoro di cablaggio, il terminale della batteria ⊖ deve venire rimosso. Potrebbero verificarsi choc elettrico o danni alle persone dovuti ad un corto circuito.
- I prodotti audio dovrebbero essere cablati seguendo quanto riportato sul manuale delle istruzioni. Un cablaggio errato potrebbe causare un incendio o un incidente.
- E' severamente proibito tagliare il rivestimento di un cavo e utilizzare un alimentatore appartenente ad un'altra apparecchiatura. La capacità attuale del cavo in rame verrà eccessa causando un incendio o uno choc elettrico.
- Quando l'installazione viene effettuata creando un foro nella struttura dell'auto, controllate la posizione di tubi, serbatoio, e cablaggio elettrico, ecc. evitandone il contatto. Ciò potrebbe causare un incendio.
- Non deve venire effettuata nessuna estensione utilizzando altro rispetto al cavo del cablaggio di corrente del veicolo. Il rivestimento del cavo potrebbe essere facilmente danneggiato e potrebbe verificarsi un incendio causato da un corto circuito o un incidente riguardante il calore.
- Qualsiasi cavo che passa accanto a la parte della lamiera del veicolo dovrebbe essere coperto da del nastro protettivo. Se il cavo di dovesse tagliare, potrebbero verificarsi un incendio o un corto circuito.
- I bulloni/dadi devono venire stretti in maniera sicura utilizzando un utensile della grandezza adeguata. Dovrebbero essere stretti al momento di forza specifico. Altrimenti, i bulloni/dadi potrebbero venire danneggiati o rimossi.
- Quando il prodotto audio viene installato, utilizzare le parti fornite. In caso contrario, l'interno del prodotto potrebbe venire danneggiato a causa di un corto circuito. Se venisse effettuata un'installazione inadeguata, il prodotto potrebbe staccarsi e colpire una persona causando lesioni personali.
- Il cavo di terra non deve venire fissato ad un bullone o ad un delle parti importanti per la sicurezza come la porzione di svolta e il sistema dei freni in linea. Si potrebbero verificare degli incidenti.
- Se il prodotto del fusso o del prodotto audio o del veicolo si brucia, assicuratevi che il cavo non sia stato soggetto a corto circuito e sostituitelo in seguito con uno nuovo della capacità indicata dal fusso (amperaggio). Se dovesse venire impiegato un fusso dalla capacità sbagliata, potrebbe verificarsi un incendio.
- Dopo aver completato l'installazione dell'autoradio, controllate che gli indicatori di frenata, le luci principali, le frecce, i tergicristalli ecc. funzionino correttamente. Se anche solo uno di essi non dovesse funzionare correttamente, correggete l'installazione.
- Il prodotto non dovrebbe venire smontato o modificato. Potrebbero verificarsi un incidente, un incendio, o uno choc elettrico.
  - Per il controllo/riparazione, consultate l'indirizzo menzionato nella scheda di garanzia.
  - Se la riparazione dovesse essere effettuata da un cliente, potrebbero verificarsi un incendio o un incidente.
- Leggete il "manuale di servizio della SUBARU" per avere una descrizione della procedura più dettagliata per staccare/riaggiustare la rifinitura.

### ▲ ATTENZIONE

- I cavi non devono venire attorcigliati o tirati troppo forte. Potrebbe rompersi il cavo o verificarsi un corto circuito.
- Quando il connettore viene rimosso, il bloccaggio deve venire sbloccato tenendo il connettore invece di tirare il cavo in rame. Il cavo in rame verrà rotto o potrebbe verificarsi un errore di contatto.
- I prodotti contenenti parti in vetro non devono essere fatti cadere o cozzati. Potrebbero rompersi causando danni personali.
- Se un prodotto contenente cristalli liquidi dovesse rompersi a causa di una caduta ecc., non toccare il liquido stesso contenente i cristalli liquidi. Si può mettere in serio pericolo la propria vita. Se il liquido a cristalli liquidi dovesse venire in contatto con il vostro corpo, inclusi mani, piedi o vestiti, lavatevi immediatamente con il sapone.

### ▲ ATTENZIONE

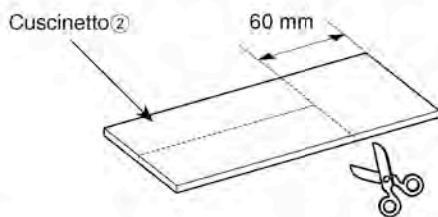
Precauzioni quando viene installato in un veicolo fornito di air bag SRS

- Quando viene installato in un veicolo fornito di air bag SRS (da ora chiamato semplicemente air bag), il lavoro di installazione deve venire effettuato in modo che le parti relative all'air bag non vengano modificate.
- Il cablaggio preassemblato per l'air bag ha un involucro con una copertura gialla in modo che sia facilmente riconoscibile da altri sistemi. Per ulteriori dettagli, leggere le precauzioni relative all'air bag nel manuale di assistenza.

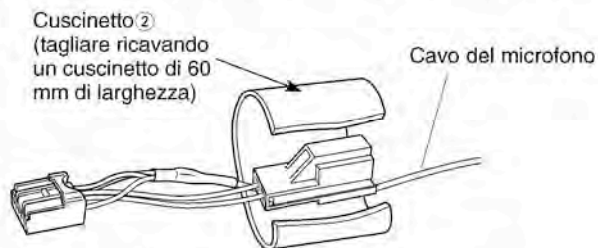
- Se si dovesse verificare una di queste condizioni dopo l'avviamento del veicolo, sarà da effettuare un controllo immediato.
  - 1 La spia di avvertimento con la chiave in posizione accesa.
  - 2 La spia di avvertimento non si spegne dopo circa 7 secondi dal posizionamento dell'interruttore su acceso.
  - 3 La spia di avvertimento si spegne dopo circa 7 secondi dal posizionamento dell'interruttore su acceso, ma continua ad accendersi ininterrottamente.

## 4 Prima di iniziare il lavoro

- Tagliare il cuscinetto ② secondo le dimensioni indicate nell'illustrazione prima dell'uso.

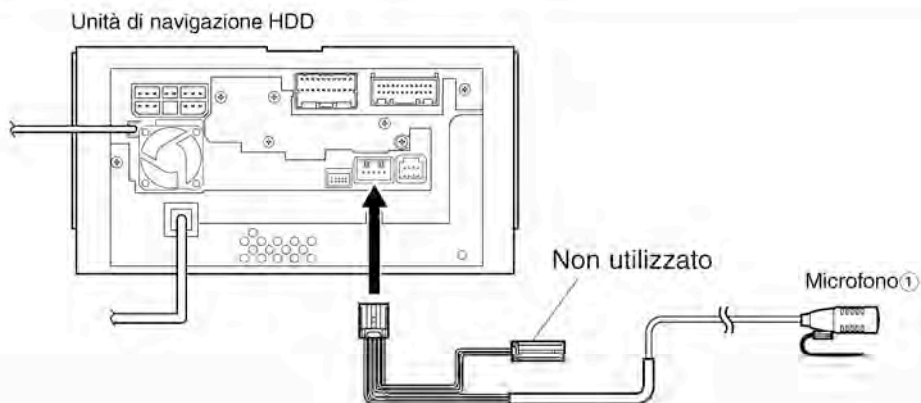


- Avvolgere la parte del connettore non utilizzata con il cuscinetto ②.



Avvolgere la parte del connettore non utilizzata  
e il cavo del microfono con il cuscinetto ②.

## 5 Collegamento

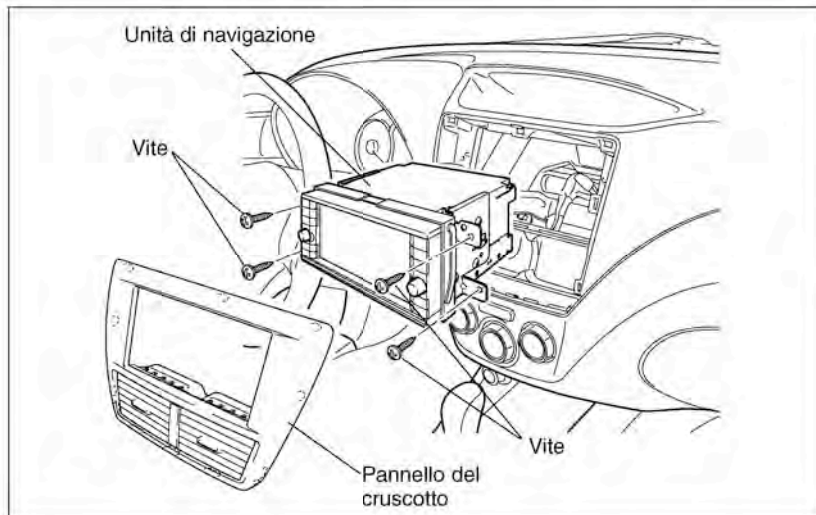




## 6 Rimozione delle parti dal veicolo

### ▲ ATTENZIONE

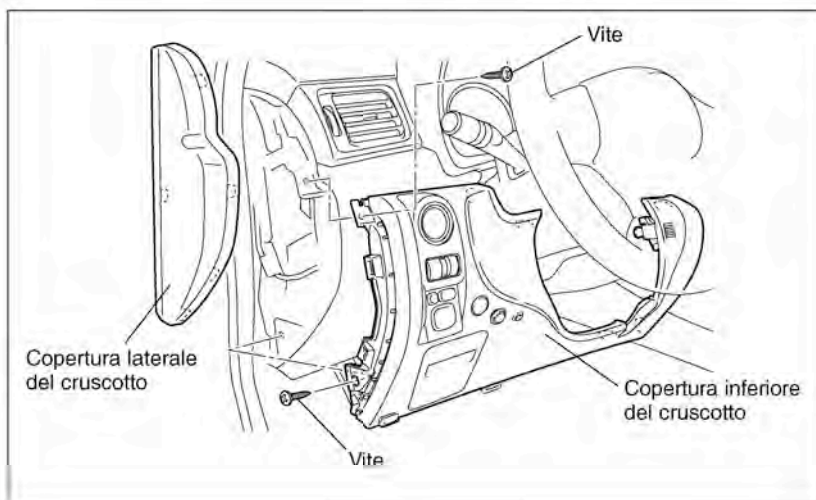
- Tirare il freno di stazionamento in modo che sia saldamente fissato.
- Al fine di evitare incidenti, assicurarsi di rimuovere il terminale  $\ominus$  della batteria prima di iniziare il lavoro (per i sistemi MT).
- Al fine di evitare incidenti, assicurarsi di portare la leva del cambio in posizione "N" e rimuovere il terminale  $\ominus$  della batteria prima di iniziare il lavoro (per i sistemi con AT).
- La memoria musicale del sistema audio sarà cancellata. Annotare i contenuti della memoria prima di eseguire la rimozione dei componenti.



1. Rimuovere il pannello del cruscotto (allentando 5 graffe di fissaggio e 7 ganci di bloccaggio).
2. Rimuovere l'unità di navigazione (allentando 4 viti).

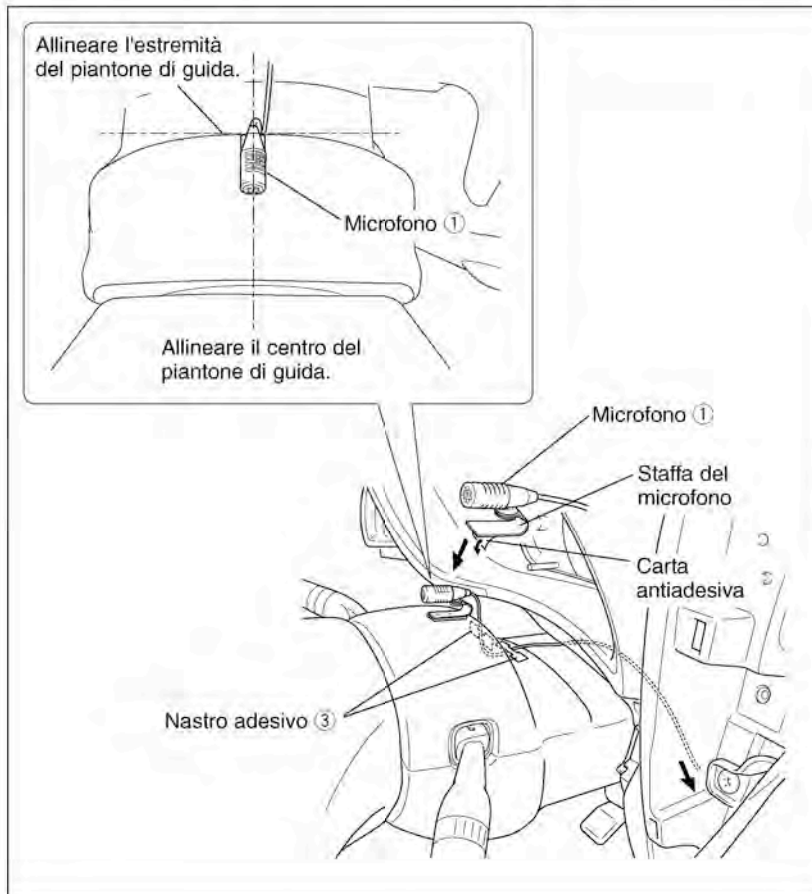
### ▲ ATTENZIONE

Prestare attenzione a non danneggiare le graffe di plastica durante lo smontaggio dei componenti.



3. Rimuovere la copertura laterale del cruscotto (allentando 4 graffe di fissaggio e 1 gancio di bloccaggio).
4. Rimuovere la copertura inferiore del cruscotto (allentando 2 viti e graffe di fissaggio).

## 7 Installazione del microfono

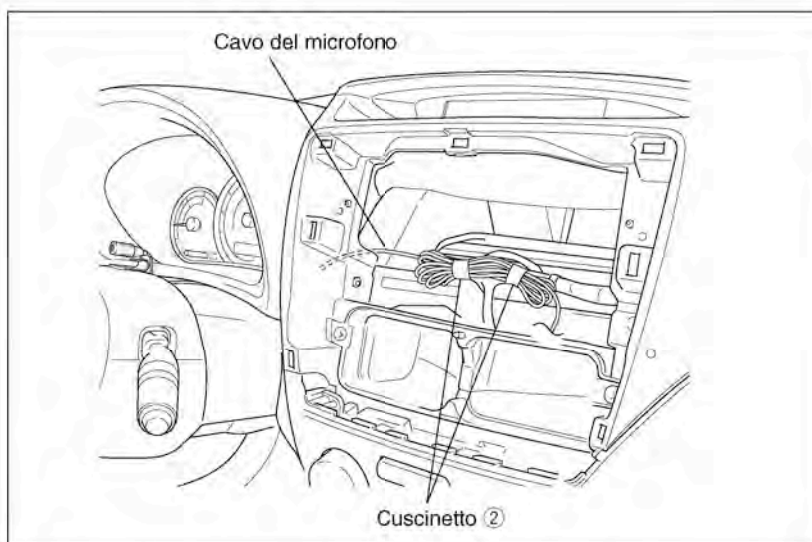


1. Staccare la carta antiadesiva dalla staffa del microfono ①.
2. Fissare il microfono ① in posizione nel piantone di guida come indicato nell'illustrazione.

### ⚠ ATTENZIONE

Rimuovere il grasso del lato adesivo prima di fissare la staffa del microfono.

3. Fissare il cavo del microfono utilizzando il nastro adesivo ③.



4. Fissare il cavo del microfono all'unità di navigazione.
5. Avvolgere il cavo del microfono in eccesso e fissarlo al cablaggio del veicolo utilizzando ritagli del cuscinetto ②.
6. Collegare il cavo come indicato alla sezione "Collegamento".

## 8 Riposizionamento delle parti rimosse del veicolo e procedura di controllo

1. Ricontrollare i collegamenti, le impostazioni, il fissaggio del microfono installato ecc.
2. Dopo aver completato il lavoro, reinstallare i componenti rimossi seguendo la procedura inversa da quella di rimozione.
3. Verificare il corretto funzionamento dei componenti elettrici del veicolo (spie, interruttori, strumenti) e del sistema di navigazione.



# 1 Piezas

No.	Nombre de pieza	Número de artículos	Vista
①	Micrófono	1	
②	Almohadilla de protección	1	
③	Cinta	2	
④	Manual de instalación	2	

# 2 Herramientas necesarias

Destornilladores (largo, corto), removedor de clips, pinzas, tijeras, medidor

# 3 Precauciones durante la instalación

## ▲ADVERTENCIA

- Antes de realizar el trabajo de cableado, debe de quitarse el terminal de la batería (-). Se pueden causar accidentes por choques eléctricos o lesiones debido a cortos circuitos.
- Los productos de audio deben conectarse como se encuentra establecido en el manual de instrucciones. La conexión errónea puede resultar en incendios o en otros accidentes.
- Se encuentra estrictamente prohibido cortar los cables para obtener suministro eléctrico de otro equipo. La capacidad de corriente del cable se excederá y se provocarán incendios o choques eléctricos.
- Cuando la instalación se realiza haciendo un orificio en el chasis del auto, verifique las posiciones de la tubería, depósito, cableado eléctrico, etc. y evite entrar en contacto con ellos. Puede ocasionar un incendio.
- No se debe realizar ninguna extensión usando otro cable que no sea del mismo tipo que el del vehículo. Se dañaría fácilmente el blindaje del cable y se causarían incendios debido a un sobrecalentamiento o corto circuitos.
- Cualquier cable que pase cerca de la porción metálica de la lámina del vehículo se deberá envolver con cinta aislante. Si corta el cable, se puede ocasionar un incendio debido a cortos circuitos.
- Los tornillos y las tuercas deben de apretarse firmemente usando herramientas de la medida correcta. Deberán apretarse a un par de torque específico si así se requiere. De otro modo, se averiarán o se aflojarán.
- Al instalar el producto de audio, utilice las piezas suministradas. De lo contrario, el interior del producto se dañará y se causarían incendios debido a cortos circuitos. Si se realiza una instalación de forma incorrecta, el producto podría salirse y de esta manera podría golpear un persona provocando lesiones.
- El cable de tierra no debe de conectarse a un tornillo o tuerca de alguna pieza importante relacionada con la seguridad como por ejemplo parte del volante o en el sistema de frenos. Pueden ocasionarse accidentes.
- Si se funde el fusible del producto de audio del auto o vehículo, confirme que el cable no tenga corto circuito, y después sustitúyalo por uno nuevo que sea de la capacidad (amperaje) indicada en el fusible. Si se utiliza un fusible de otra capacidad, se puede ocasionar un incendio.
- Después de finalizar la instalación del producto de audio del auto, verifique que las lámparas de los frenos del vehículo, faros, limpiaparabrisas, intermitentes, etc. funcionan correctamente. Si alguno no funciona, corrija la instalación.
- El producto no debe desensamblarse o modificarse. Se causaría un accidente, incendio o choque eléctrico.
  - Para inspecciones/repificaciones, consulte la dirección mencionada en el certificado de garantía.
  - Si la reparación la lleva a cabo el cliente, se causará un incendio o algún accidente.
- Lea el "Manual de servicio SUBARU" para más detalles sobre el procedimiento a realizar para quitar/restaurar la tapicería.

## ▲PRECAUCIÓN

- Los cables no deben jarse o cogerse demasiado fuerte. Se puede romper el cable o provocar un corto circuito.
- Al quitar el conector, se debe de quitar el seguro sosteniendo el conector y no tirando del cable. Se puede romper el cable o provocar fallas de contacto.
- Los productos que usan piezas de cristal no deben dejarse caer o exponerse a fuertes impactos. Se romperán y causarían lesiones.
- Si se rompe algún producto que utiliza cristal líquido debido a algún impacto, etc. no toque el líquido. Existe un peligro para la salud. Si el líquido entra en contacto con su cuerpo incluyendo manos y pies o prendas, se debe de lavar inmediatamente con jabón.

## ▲PRECAUCIÓN

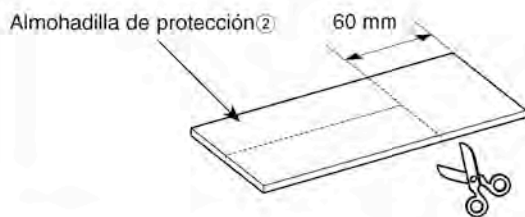
Precauciones que se deben seguir al realizar la instalación en un vehículo equipado con bolsa de aire SRS

Cuando se instala en un vehículo equipado con bolsa de aire SRS (de aquí en adelante bolsa de aire), el trabajo de instalación debe de realizarse de tal modo que las piezas relacionadas con la bolsa de aire no se vean afectadas adversamente.

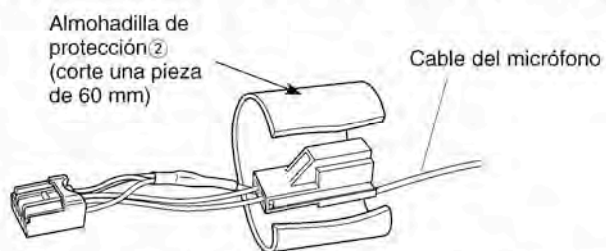
- El arnés del cableado para la bolsa de aire se encuentra envuelto con una cubierta amarilla de tal manera que pueda ser discriminado para otros sistemas. Para más detalles, lea las precauciones relacionadas con la bolsa de aire en el manual de mantenimiento.
- Si ocurre cualquiera de las siguientes condiciones después de la restauración del vehículo, se debe hacer una inspección inmediatamente.
  - 1 La lámpara de advertencia no se ilumina al encender el interruptor de llave.
  - 2 La lámpara de advertencia no se apaga después de 7 segundos una vez que se ha encendido el interruptor de llave.
  - 3 La lámpara de advertencia se apaga un momento después de 7 segundos una vez que se ha encendido el interruptor de llave, pero enseguida se ilumina.

## 4 Antes de iniciar

- Corte la almohadilla de protección<sup>②</sup> de acuerdo al tamaño de la imagen antes de usarla.

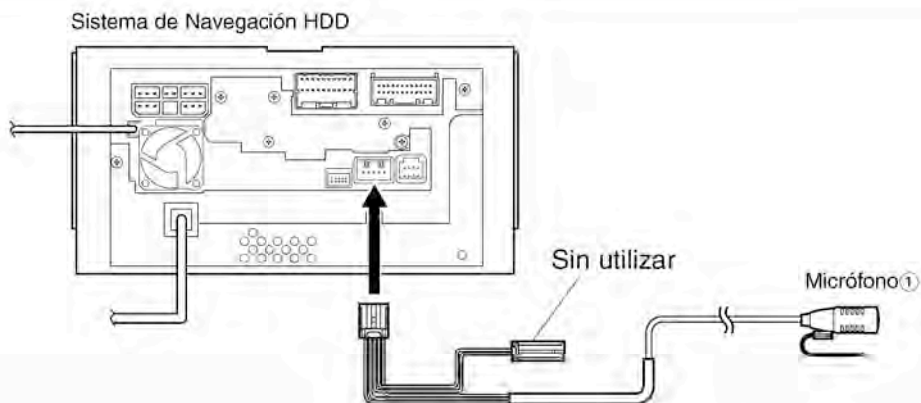


- Envuelva el conector que no se usa con la almohadilla de protección<sup>②</sup>.



Envuelva el conector que no se usa con la almohadilla de protección<sup>②</sup> junto con el cable del micrófono.

## 5 Conexión

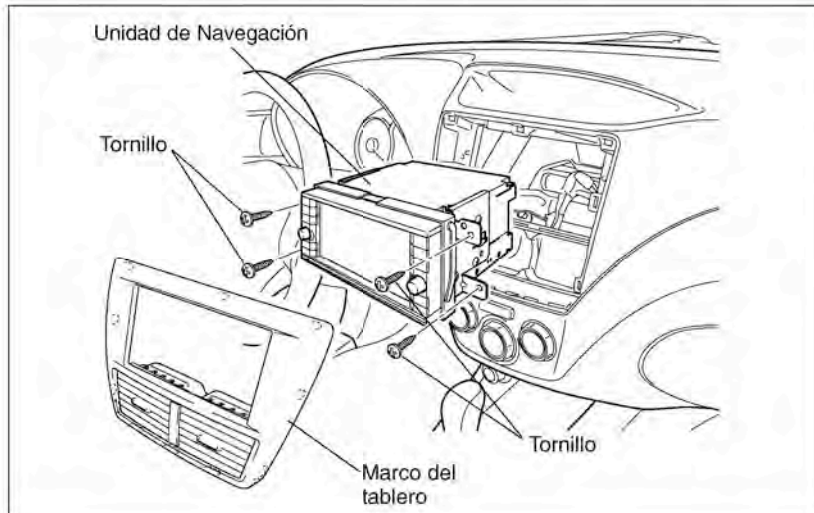




## 6 Desinstalación de las piezas del vehículo

### ⚠PRECAUCIÓN

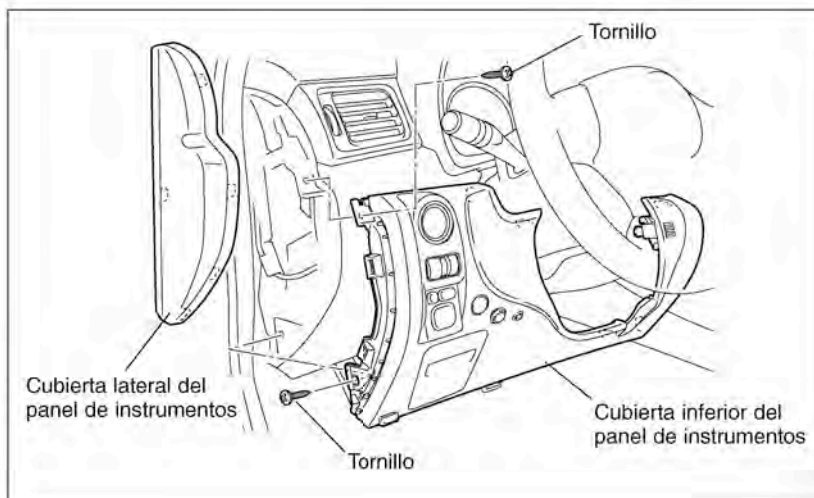
- Firmemente ponga el freno de aparcamiento.
- Para prevenir accidentes, asegúrese de quitar el terminal  $\ominus$  de la batería antes de iniciar el trabajo (Para el sistema MT).
- Para prevenir accidentes, asegúrese de poner el motor en la posición "N" y quitar el terminal  $\ominus$  de la batería antes de iniciar el trabajo (Para el sistema AT).
- Se borrará la memoria de música programada del sistema de audio. Realice una nota sobre el contenido de la memoria antes de quitar las piezas.



1. Quite el marco del tablero (quitando 5 clips y 7 pestillos).
2. Quite la unidad de navegación (quitando 4 tornillos).

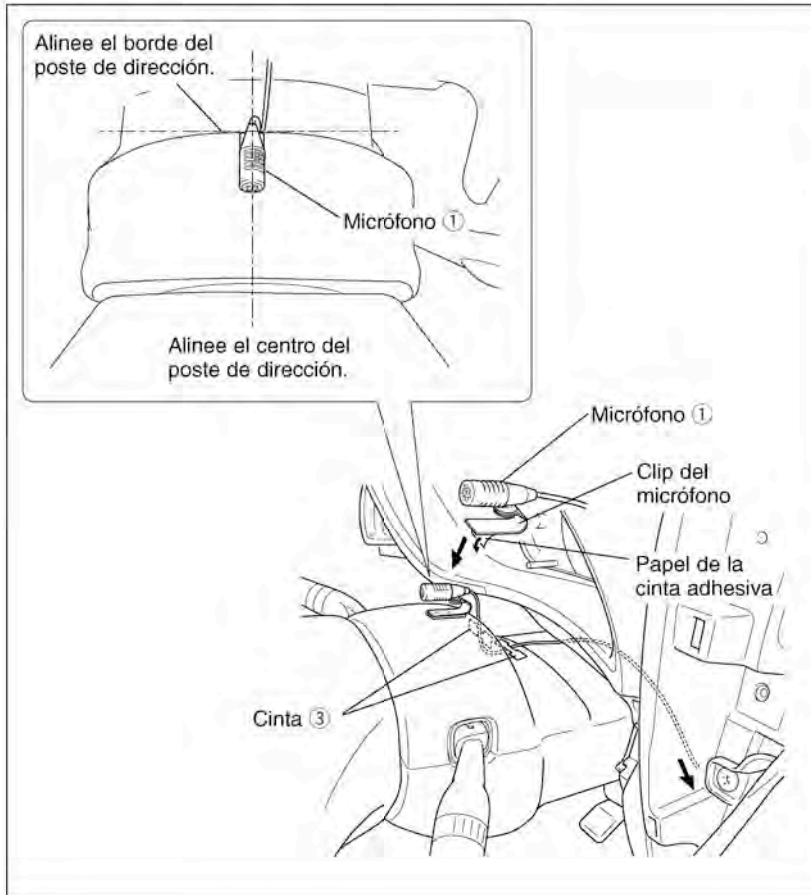
### ⚠PRECAUCIÓN

Tenga cuidado de no dañar los clips de plástico durante la desinstalación de las piezas.



3. Quite la cubierta lateral del panel de instrumentos (quitando 4 clips y 1 pestillo).
4. Quite la cubierta inferior del panel de instrumentos (quitando 2 tornillos y clips).

## 7 Instalación del micrófono

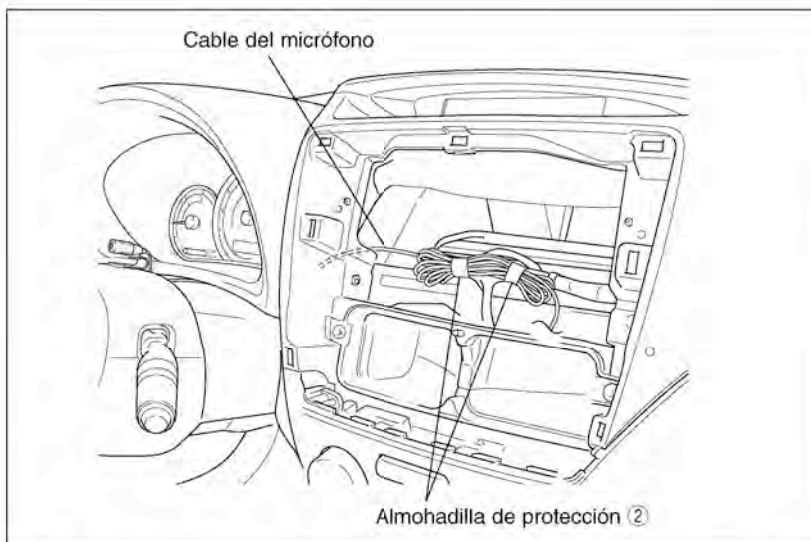


1. Quite el papel de la cinta adhesiva del clip del micrófono ①.
2. Pegue el micrófono ① en el poste de dirección como se indica en el dibujo.

### ⚠PRECAUCIÓN

Quite la grasa del lado adhesivo antes de pegar el clip del micrófono.

3. Guíe el cable del micrófono pegando con la cinta ③.



4. Guíe el cable del micrófono hacia la unidad de navegación.
5. Enrolle el exceso de cable del micrófono y asegúrelo al arnés del vehículo usando las piezas recortadas de la almohadilla de protección ②.
6. Conecte el cable según lo establecido en la sección "Conexión".

## 8 Reinstalación de las piezas removidas del vehículo y verificación de funcionamiento

1. Vuelva a verificar la conexión, la configuración y la fijación del micrófono instalado, etc.
2. Después de finalizar el trabajo, reinstale las piezas removidas llevando a cabo el procedimiento en forma inversa.
3. Verifique si funcionan correctamente las piezas eléctricas del vehículo (lámparas, interruptores, instrumentos) y el sistema de navegación.







**SUBARU**

**Manufacturer** Kenwood corporation

© PRINTED IN JAPAN B54-4610-10/01 (E) (DT) 07/06



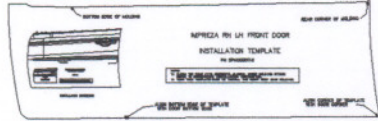


Installation  
instructions

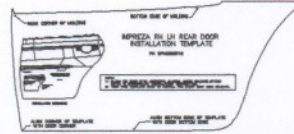
Part Number : J101SFG000XX

Description : Impreza Body Side Molding

**KIT CONTENTS**



INSTALLATION TEMPLATE FRONT DOOR



INSTALLATION TEMPLATE REAR DOOR



BODY SIDE MOLDING PASS SIDE FR



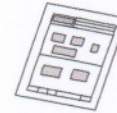
BODY SIDE MOLDING DRIVER SIDE FR



BODY SIDE MOLDING DRIVER SIDE RR



BODY SIDE MOLDING PASS SIDE RR

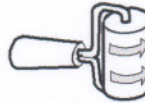


INSTALLATION  
INSTRUCTIONS

**TOOLS REQUIRED**

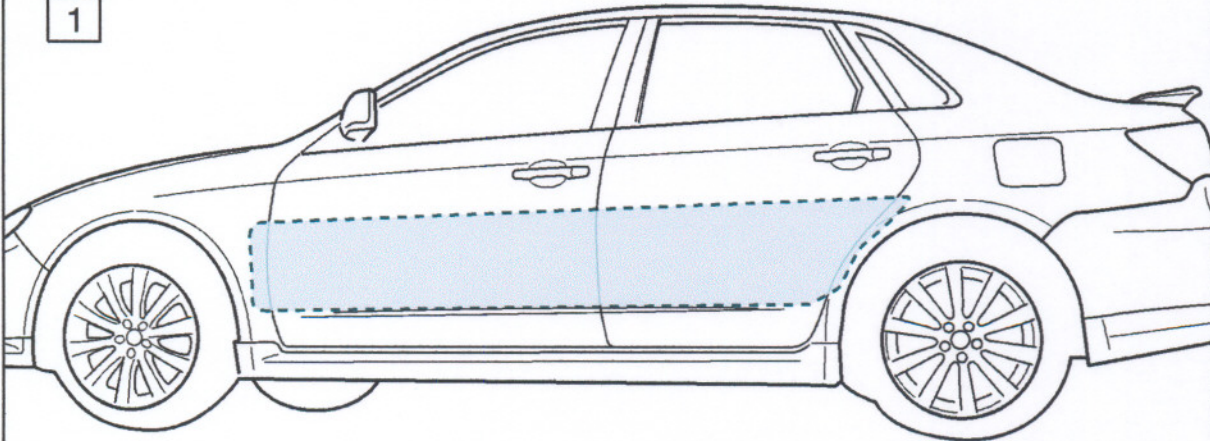


MASKING TAPE



RUBBER ROLLER

1



Clean installation area with a clean rag dampened with a solution mix of 50/50 isopropyl alcohol and water.

Part number  
J101SFG000XX

Date  
04-06-07

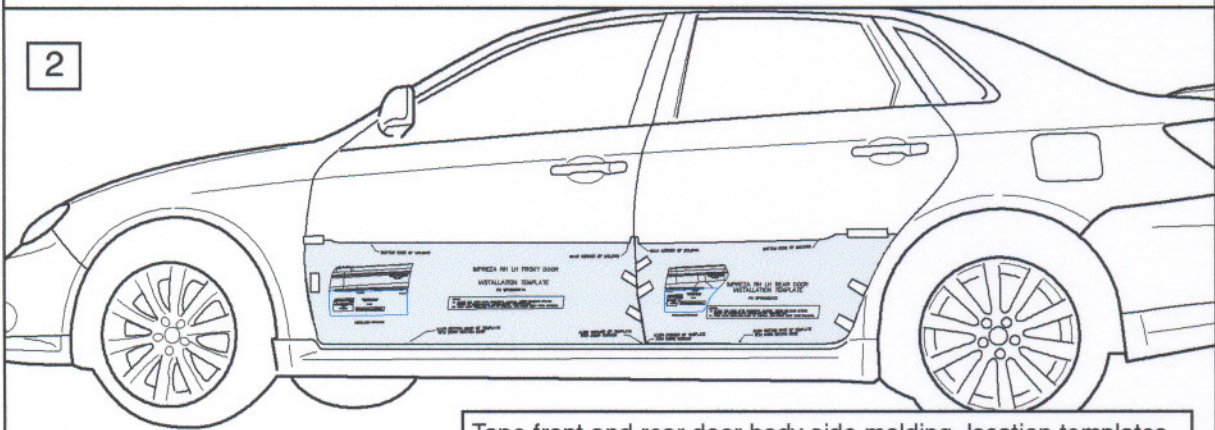
Subaru of America

Page  
1/2



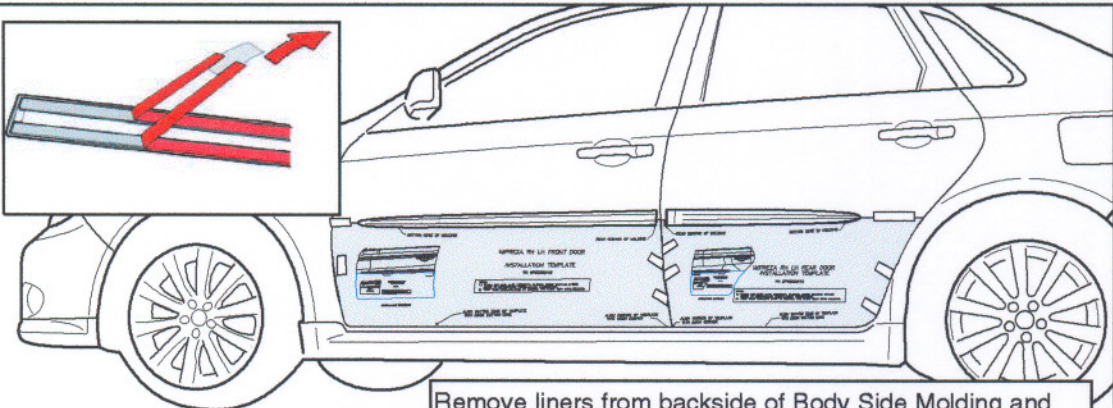
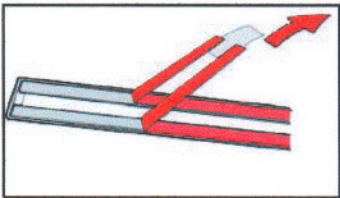
## BODY SIDE MOLDING INSTALLATION

2



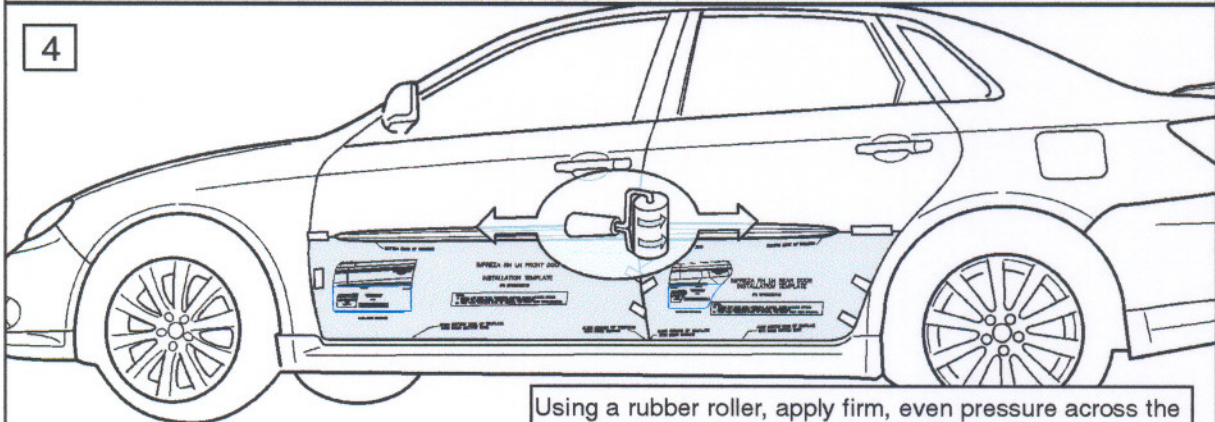
Tape front and rear door body side molding, location templates into place as shown.

3



Remove liners from backside of Body Side Molding and place into location as shown.

4



Using a rubber roller, apply firm, even pressure across the Body Side Molding to adhere to vehicle.

Repeat steps #1 thru #4 for the passenger side.

Part number  
J101SFG000XX

Date  
04-06-07

Subaru of America

Page  
2/2

**SUBARU** 

PART NUMBER:

**E7710AS109****INSTALLATION  
INSTRUCTIONS**

DESCRIPTION:

**BUMPER CORNER MOLDING**

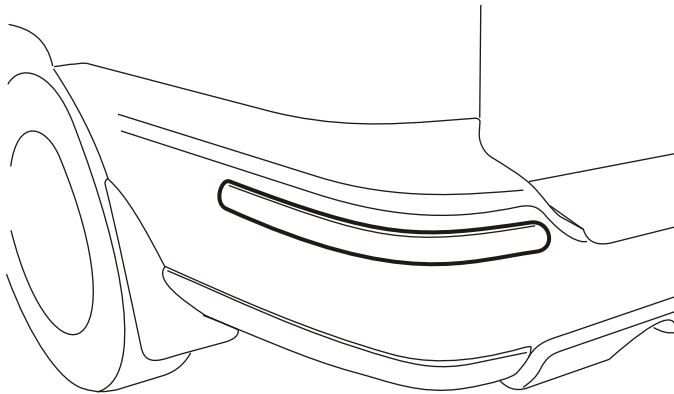
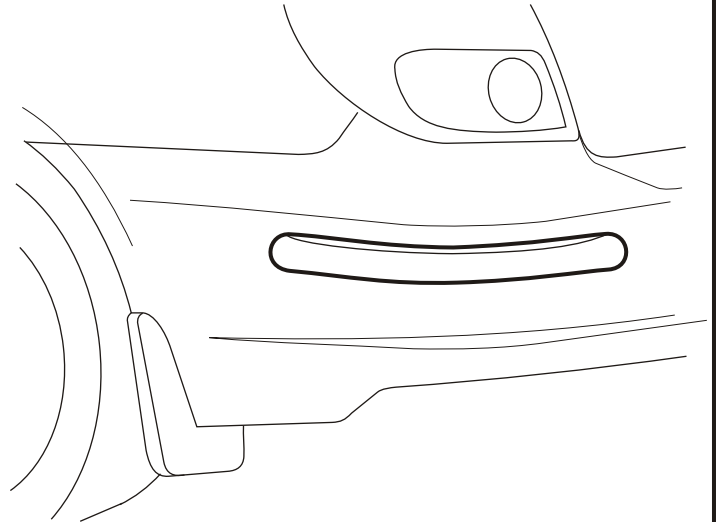
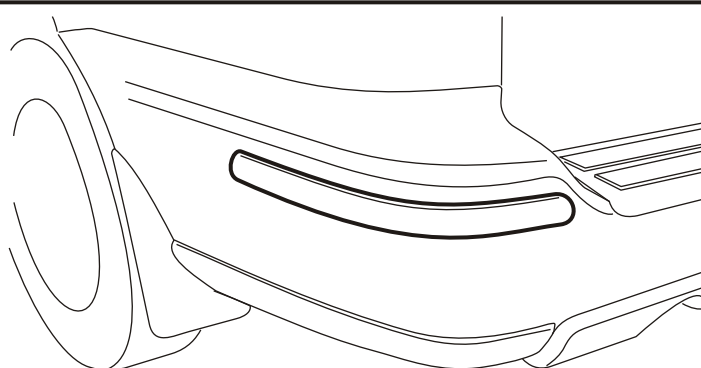
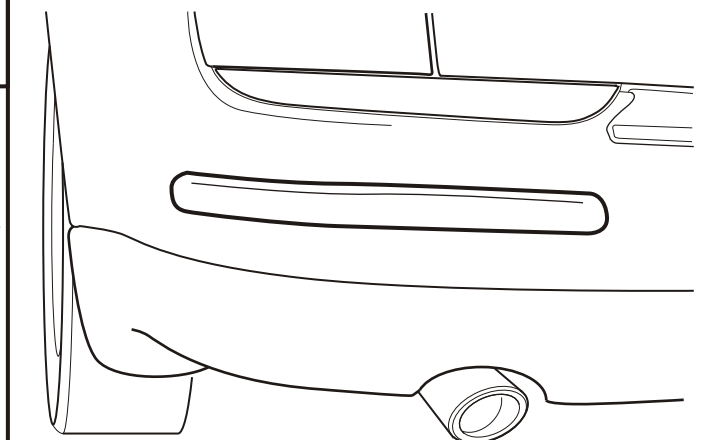
MADE IN HUNGARY

**PARTS INCLUDE**

- |                              |        |
|------------------------------|--------|
| 1. Rear Bumper Molding       | Qty. 4 |
| 2. Alcohol Swab              | Qty. 2 |
| 3. Installation Instructions | Qty. 1 |

**TOOLS REQUIRED**

- |                |               |
|----------------|---------------|
| Heat Gun       | Grease Pencil |
| Measuring Tape | Cloth         |

**2003- BAJA****2003-2005 FORESTER** (PAINTED BUMPERS ONLY)**2006-2008 FORESTER** (REAR BUMPER ONLY)**2009- FORESTER** (REAR BUMPER ONLY)**2004- IMPREZA ALL MODELS****2008- IMPREZA ALL MODELS****2000-2004 LEGACY SEDAN AND  
OUTBACK SEDAN****2005- LEGACY WAGON AND  
OUTBACK WAGON****2008- LEGACY SEDAN** (FRONT BUMPER ONLY)**2006- B9 TRIBECA****2008- B9 TRIBECA**

It is recommended that this product be installed by a trained Subaru Technician at your local Subaru dealer. If you intend to install this product and you feel that additional detailed instructions might be of benefit to you, please contact your local Subaru dealer for more detailed installation instructions.



## PRE-INSTALLATION NOTES

1. Be careful not to scratch the vehicle body or bumpers during installation.
2. Do not wash vehicle for 24 hours following installation of the bumper molding.
3. Areas of application must be prepared for proper adhesion of the mounting tape. The surface must be clean, dry, oil and wax free.
4. If the temperature is below 60°F (15°C), heat the double sided tape and the bumper surface to a temperature of 80°F (27°C).
5. Not to be used on unpainted bumpers.
6. Review installation instruction thoroughly prior to installation.

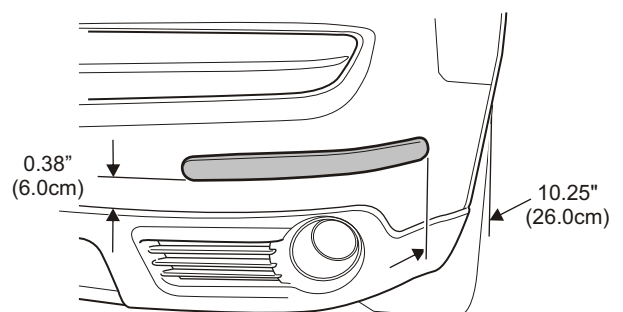
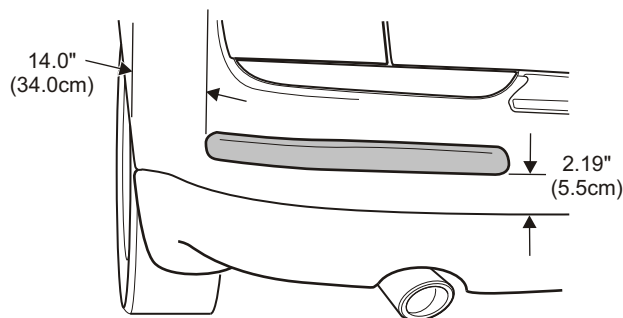
## INSTALLATION STEPS

1. Clean area of application using alcohol swab.
2. Measure with a measuring tape and mark using a grease pencil.
3. Center bumper molding and mark using a grease pencil.
4. Without removing red tape liner, check positioning on bumper.
5. Remove half-round and top strip red tape liner.
6. Peel back 1"(2.5cm) to 2"(5cm) of bottom red tape liner from each end and fold down as shown.
7. Position bumper molding between the grease pencil marks.
8. Peel remaining red liner from behind the bumper molding and press firmly onto surface for 10 seconds.

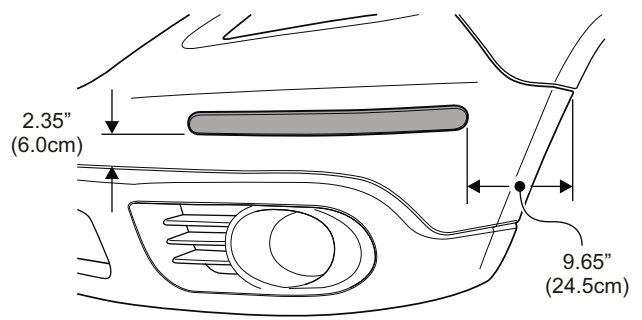
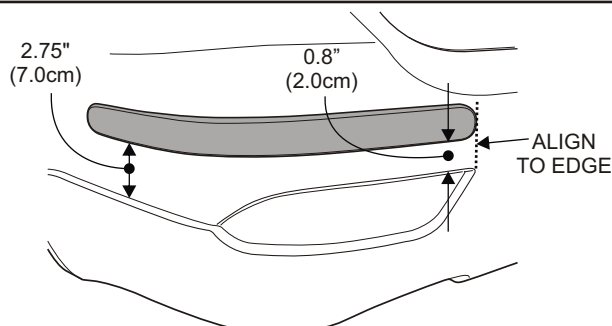
## APPLICATION

2004 to 2005 - Impreza all models  
 2006 to Current - Impreza all models (**Rear Bumper Only**)  
 2003 to 2005 - Forester (**Painted Bumper Only**)  
 2006-2008, 2009 to Current - Forester all models(**Rear Bumper Only**)  
 2000 to 2004 - Legacy Sedan, Wagon and Outback Sedan  
 2008 to Current - Legacy Sedan (**Front Bumper Only**)  
 2005 to Current - Legacy and Outback Wagon  
 2006 to Current - B9 Tribeca

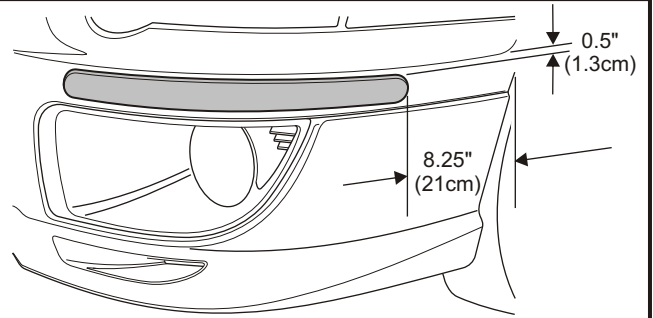
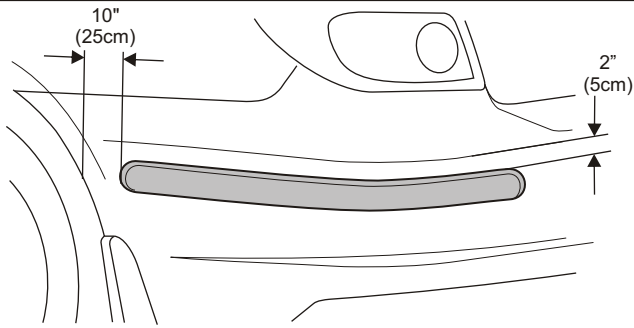
### 2006- B9 Tribeca



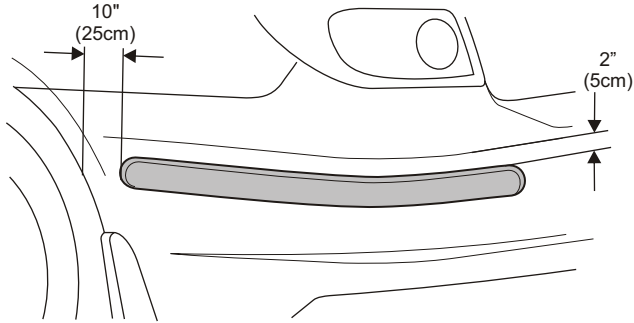
### 2008- B9 Tribeca



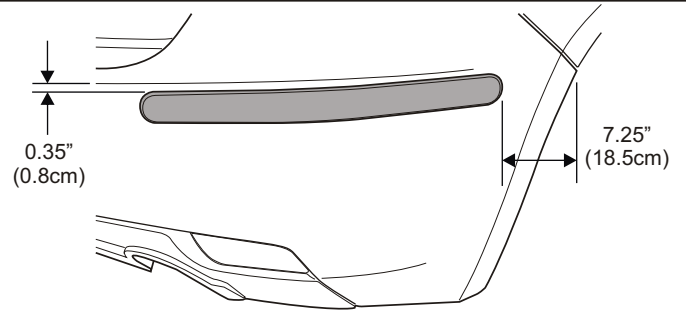
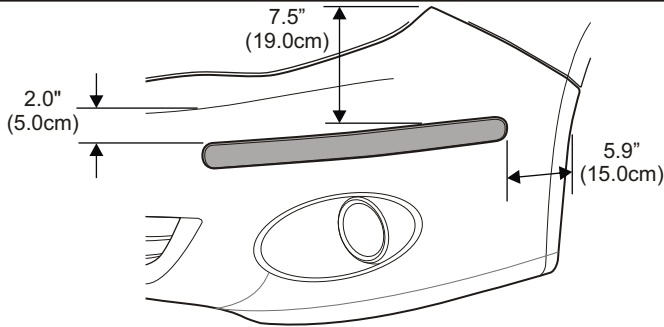
## 2004-2005 IMPREZA ALL MODELS



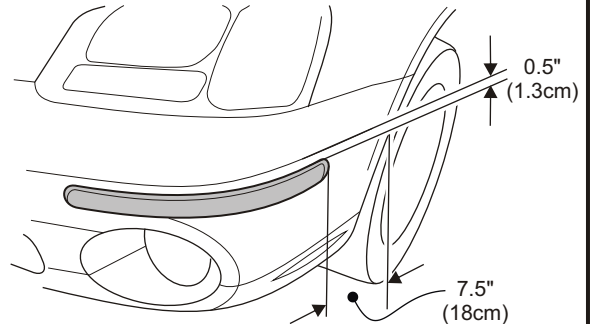
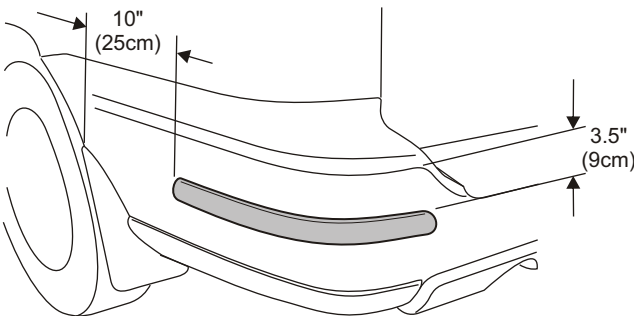
## 2006- IMPREZA ALL MODELS (Rear Bumper Only)



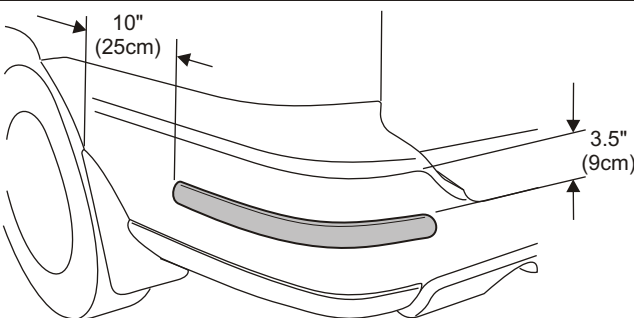
## 2008 - IMPREZA ALL MODELS



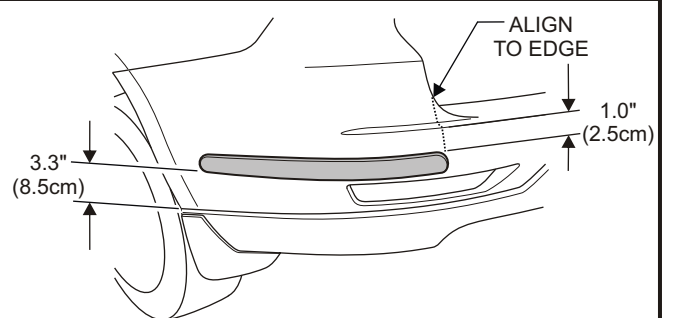
## 2003-2005 FORESTER (Painted Bumpers Only)



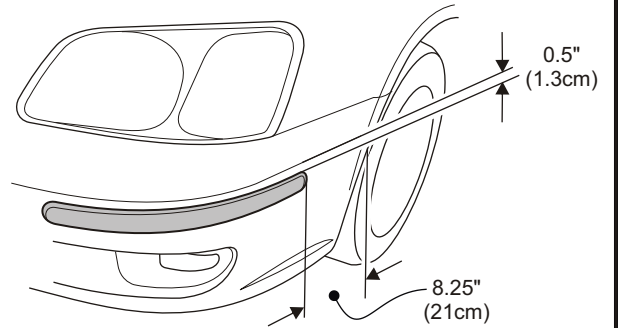
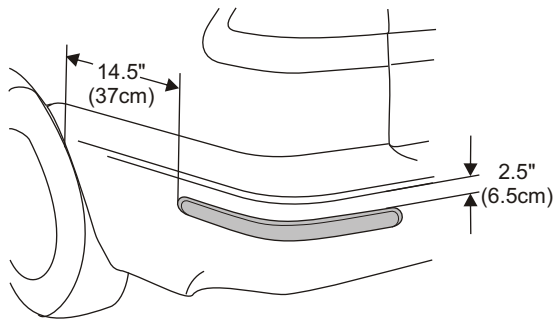
## 2006-2008 FORESTER (Rear Bumper Only)



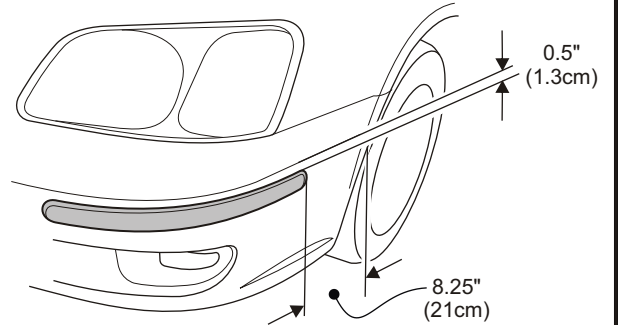
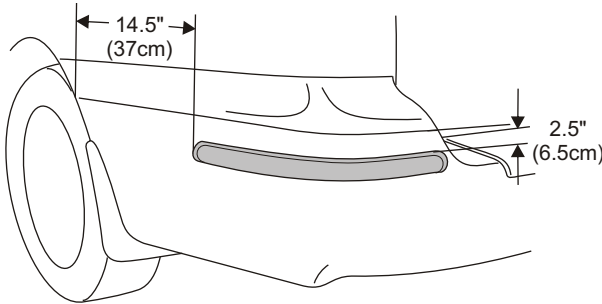
## 2009- FORESTER (Rear Bumper Only)



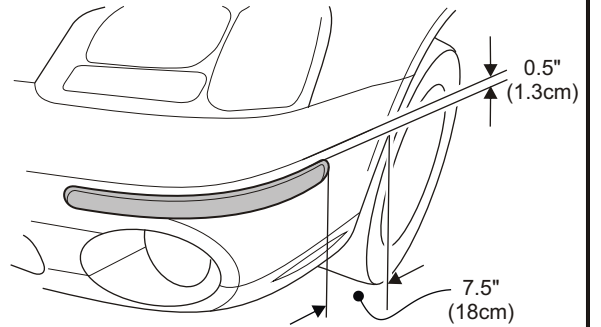
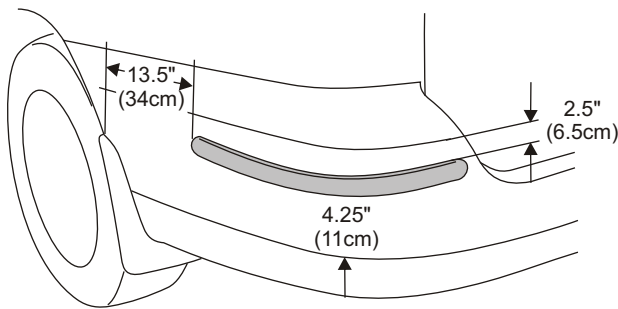
**2000-2004 LEGACY SEDAN AND OUTBACK SEDAN**



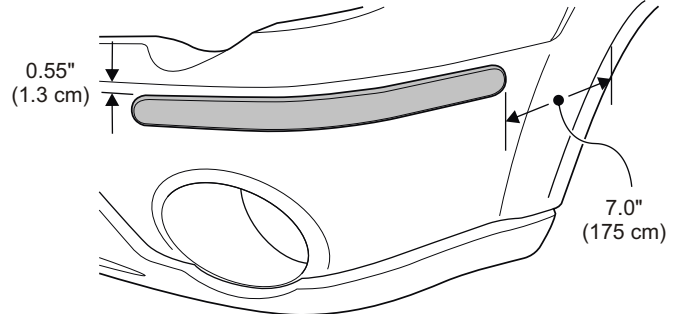
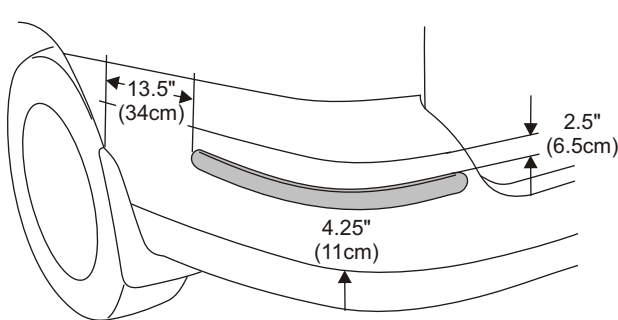
**2000-2004 LEGACY WAGON**



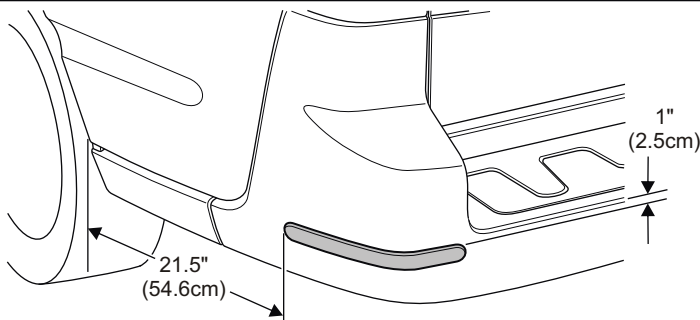
**2005- LEGACY AND OUTBACK WAGON**



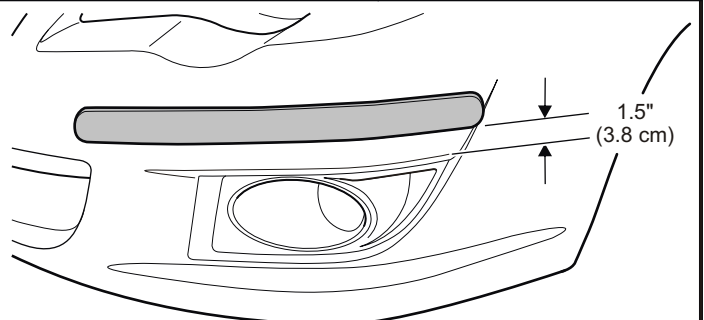
**2008- OUTBACK WAGON**



**2003- BAJA (Rear Bumper Only)**



**2008- Legacy Sedan (Front Bumper Only)**



**SUBARU** 

PART NUMBER:

**E7710AS108****INSTALLATION  
INSTRUCTIONS**

DESCRIPTION:

**BUMPER CORNER MOLDING**

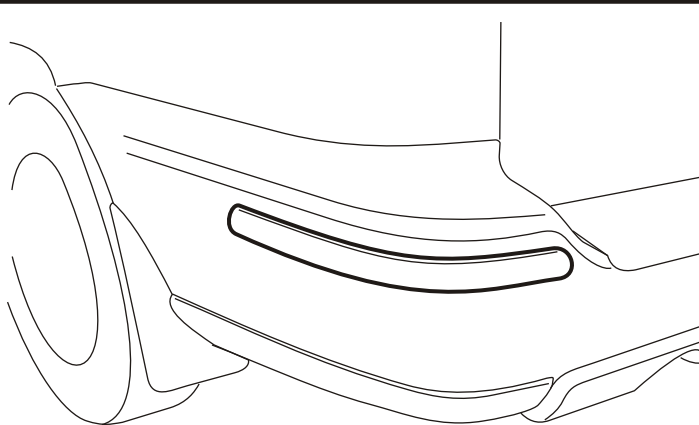
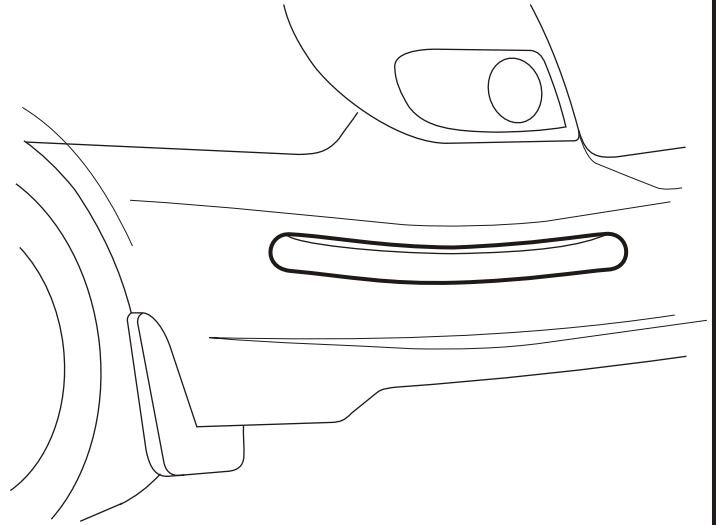
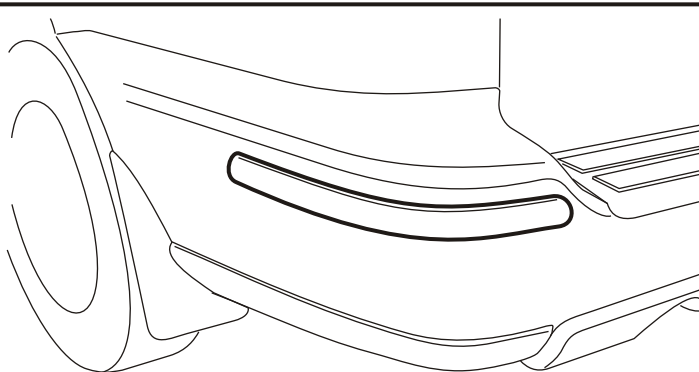
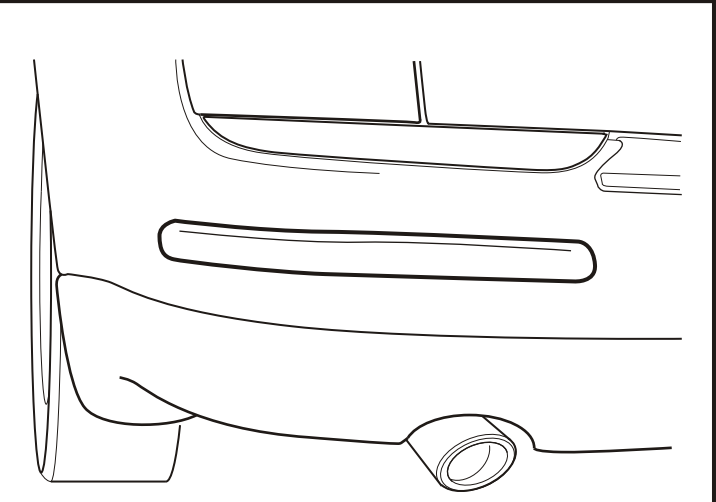
MADE IN HUNGARY

**PARTS INCLUDE**

- |                              |        |
|------------------------------|--------|
| 1. Rear Bumper Molding       | Qty. 4 |
| 2. Alcohol Swab              | Qty. 2 |
| 3. Installation Instructions | Qty. 1 |

**TOOLS REQUIRED**

- |                |               |
|----------------|---------------|
| Heat Gun       | Grease Pencil |
| Measuring Tape | Cloth         |

**2003- BAJA****2003-2005 FORESTER** (PAINTED BUMPERS ONLY)**2006 FORESTER** (REAR BUMPER ONLY)**2004- IMPREZA ALL MODELS****2008- IMPREZA ALL MODELS****2000-2004 LEGACY SEDAN AND  
OUTBACK SEDAN****2005- LEGACY WAGON AND  
OUTBACK WAGON****2008- LEGACY SEDAN** (FRONT BUMPER ONLY)**2006- B9 TRIBECA****2008- B9 TRIBECA**

It is recommended that this product be installed by a trained Subaru Technician at your local Subaru dealer. If you intend to install this product and you feel that additional detailed instructions might be of benefit to you, please contact your local Subaru dealer for more detailed installation instructions.

## PRE-INSTALLATION NOTES

1. Be careful not to scratch the vehicle body or bumpers during installation.
2. Do not wash vehicle for 24 hours following installation of the bumper molding.
3. Areas of application must be prepared for proper adhesion of the mounting tape. The surface must be clean, dry, oil and wax free.
4. If the temperature is below 60°F (15°C), heat the double sided tape and the bumper surface to a temperature of 80°F (27°C).
5. Not to be used on unpainted bumpers.
6. Review installation instruction thoroughly prior to installation.

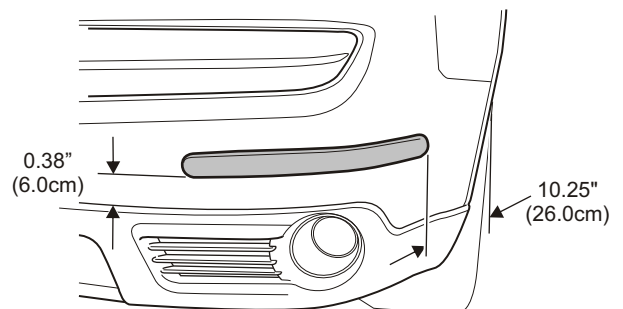
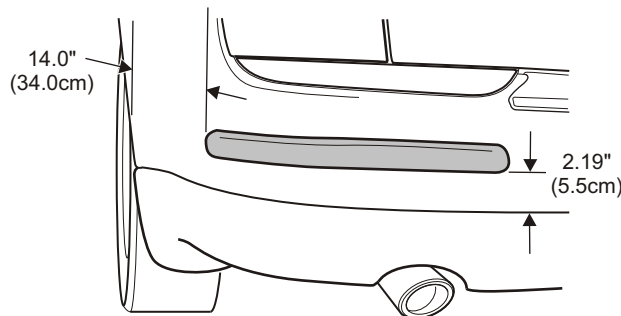
## INSTALLATION STEPS

1. Clean area of application using alcohol swab.
2. Measure with a measuring tape and mark using a grease pencil.
3. Center bumper molding and mark using a grease pencil.
4. Without removing red tape liner, check positioning on bumper.
5. Remove half-round and top strip red tape liner.
6. Peel back 1"(2.5cm) to 2"(5cm) of bottom red tape liner from each end and fold down as shown.
7. Position bumper molding between the grease pencil marks.
8. Peel remaining red liner from behind the bumper molding and press firmly onto surface for 10 seconds.

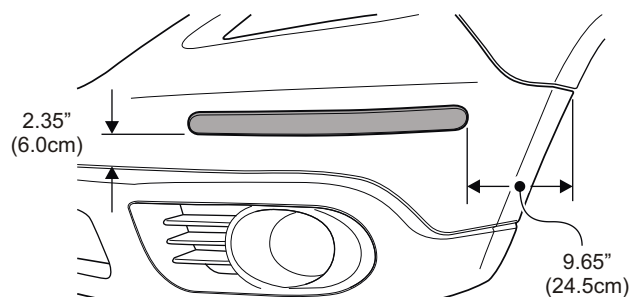
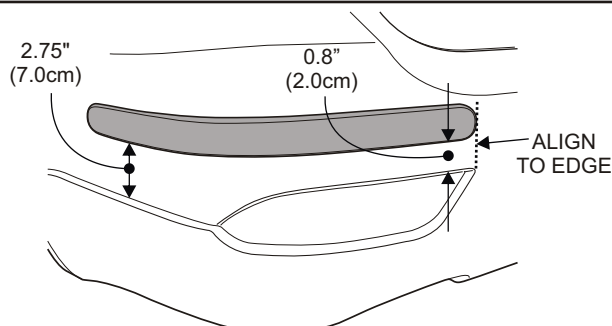
## APPLICATION

2004 to 2005 - Impreza all models  
 2006 to Current - Impreza all models (**Rear Bumper Only**)  
 2003 to 2005 - Forester (**Painted Bumper Only**)  
 2006 to Current - Forester all models(**Rear Bumper Only**)  
 2000 to 2004 - Legacy Sedan, Wagon and Outback Sedan  
 2008 to Current - Legacy Sedan (**Front Bumper Only**)  
 2005 to Current - Legacy and Outback Wagon  
 2006 to Current - B9 Tribeca

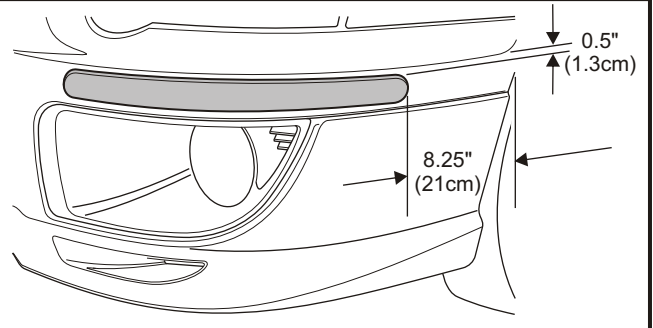
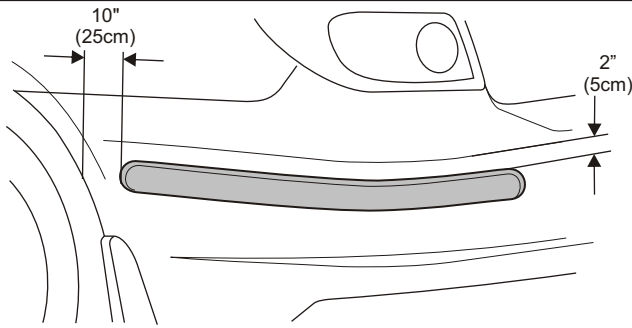
### 2006- B9 Tribeca



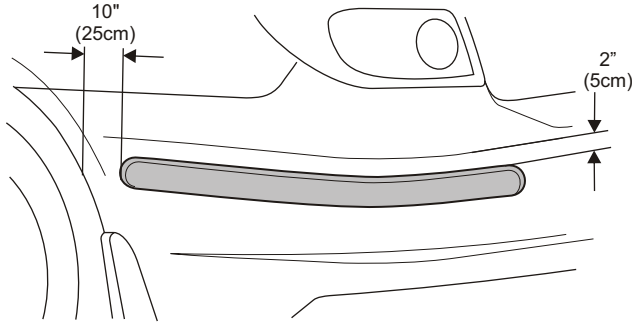
### 2008- B9 Tribeca



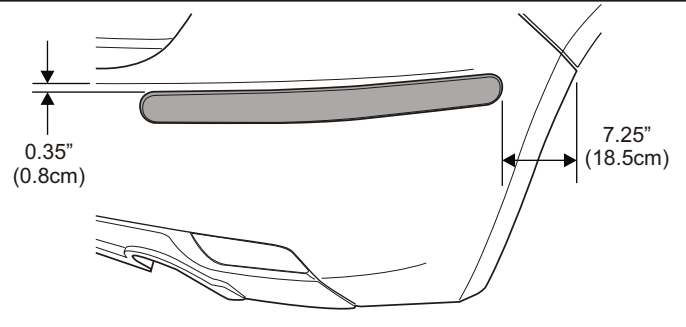
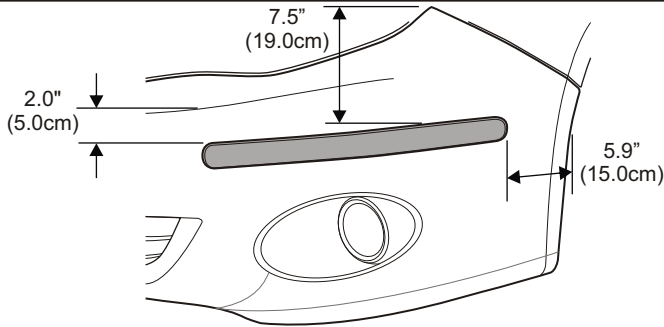
## 2004-2005 IMPREZA ALL MODELS



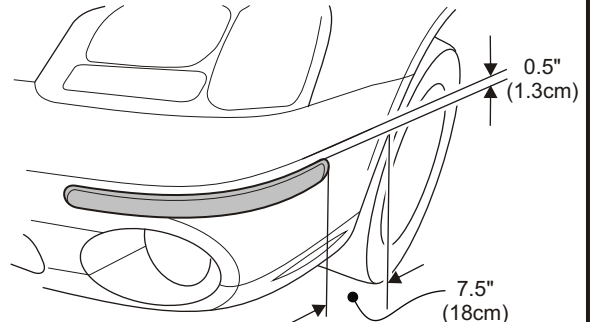
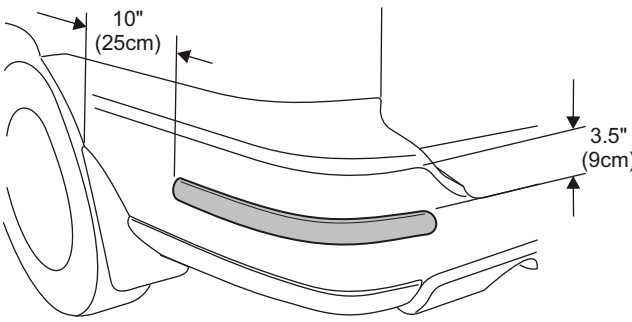
## 2006- IMPREZA ALL MODELS (Rear Bumper Only)



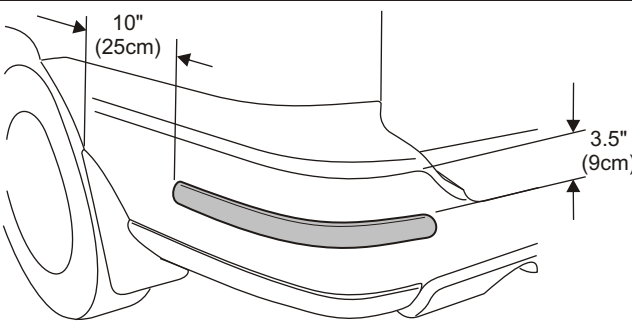
## 2008 - IMPREZA ALL MODELS



## 2003-2005 FORESTER (Painted Bumpers Only)

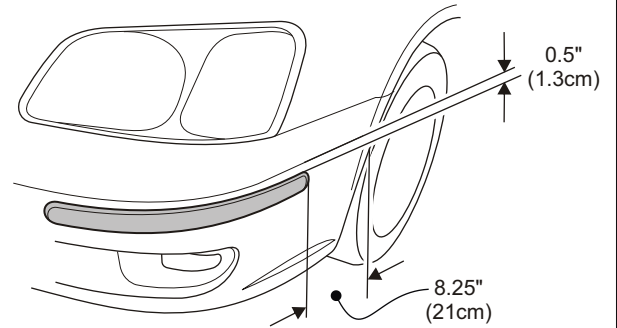
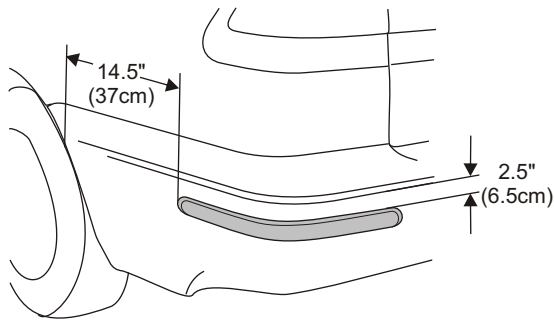


## 2006- FORESTER (Rear Bumper Only)

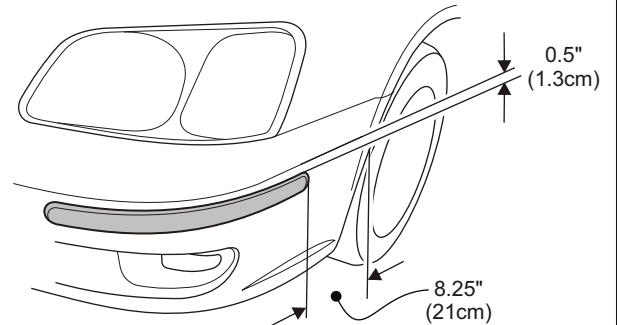
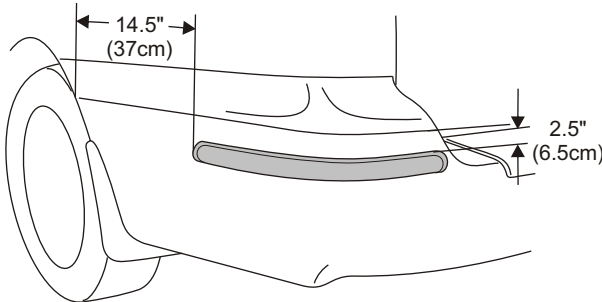




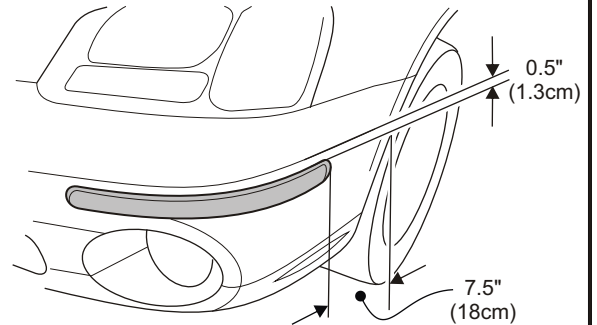
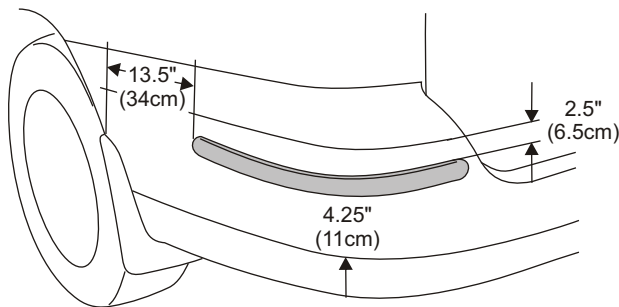
## 2000-2004 LEGACY SEDAN AND OUTBACK SEDAN



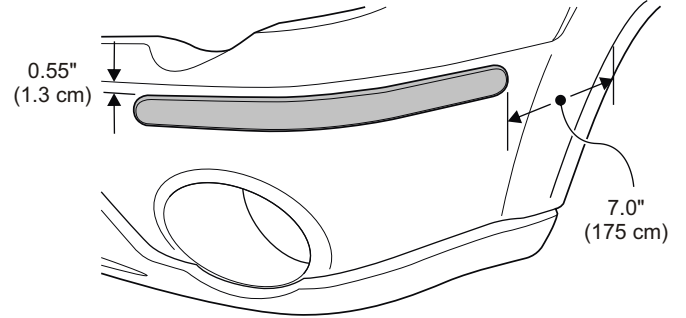
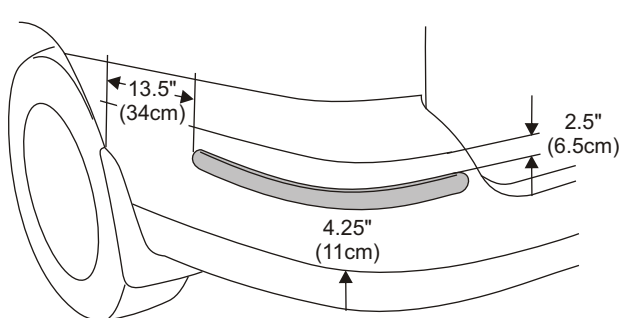
## 2000-2004 LEGACY WAGON



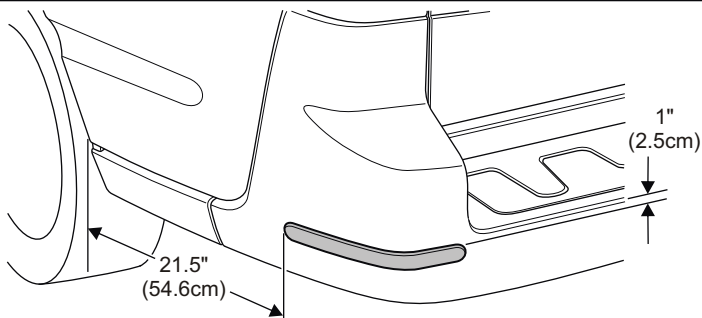
## 2005- LEGACY AND OUTBACK WAGON



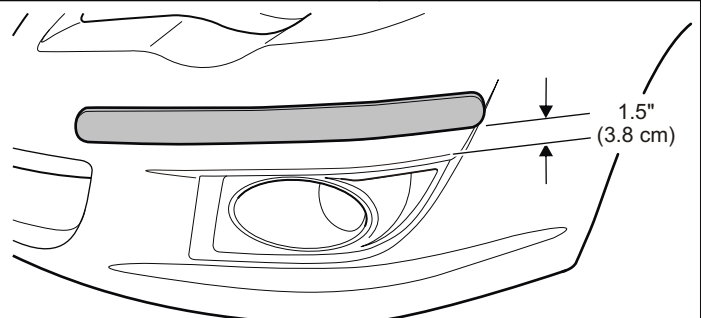
## 2008- OUTBACK WAGON



## 2003- BAJA (Rear Bumper Only)



## 2008- Legacy Sedan (Front Bumper Only)





# INSTALLATION INSTRUCTIONS

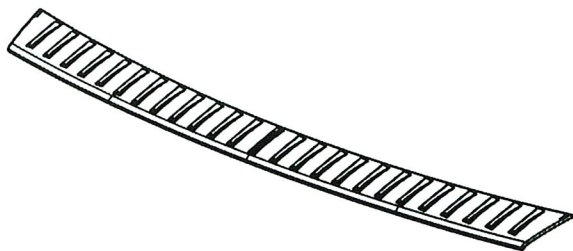
PART NUMBER:

E771SFG000

DESCRIPTION:

BUMPER COVER - IMPREZA

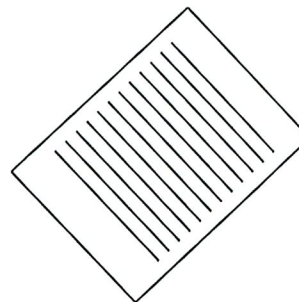
## A KIT CONTENTS



BUMPER COVER

1x

## B



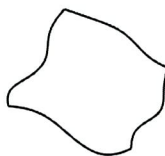
INSTALLATION INSTRUCTIONS

1x

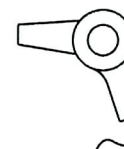
## TOOLS REQUIRED



100% (RUBBING) ALCOHOL



CLEAN CLOTH



DRYER

## MEANING OF CHARACTERS

: REMOVE

: INSTALL

: DISCONNECT

: CONNECT

: LOCATION OF CLIP OR SCREW

**T** : TIGHTEN

: LOOSEN

: DISCARD

: RE USE

## NOTE:

DO NOT WASH THE VEHICLE FOR 24 HOURS FOLLOWING INSTALLATION OF BUMPER COVER.

IF BUMPER COVER REQUIRES CLEANING AFTER INSTALLATION, WIPE WITH A SOFT CLOTH OR SPONGE AND MILD SOAP AND WIPE THOROUGHLY WITH A DRY CLOTH. DO NOT USE GASOLINE, THINNER, ACID, ALKALI OR OTHER SOLVENT BASED PRODUCTS.

IF THE TEMPERATURE IS BELOW 60°F (15°C), HEAT THE DOUBLE SIDED TAPE AND BUMPER SURFACE TO A TEMPERATURE OF 80°F (27°C).

BUMPER COVER SHOULD BE INSTALLED ON THE BUMPER WITHIN 5 MINUTES OF PARTING PAPER REMOVAL.

PART NUMBER  
E771SFG000

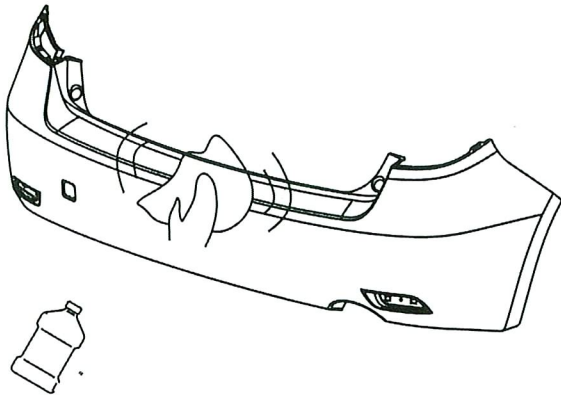
ISSUE  
01

DATE  
01/26/2007

SUBARU OF AMERICA

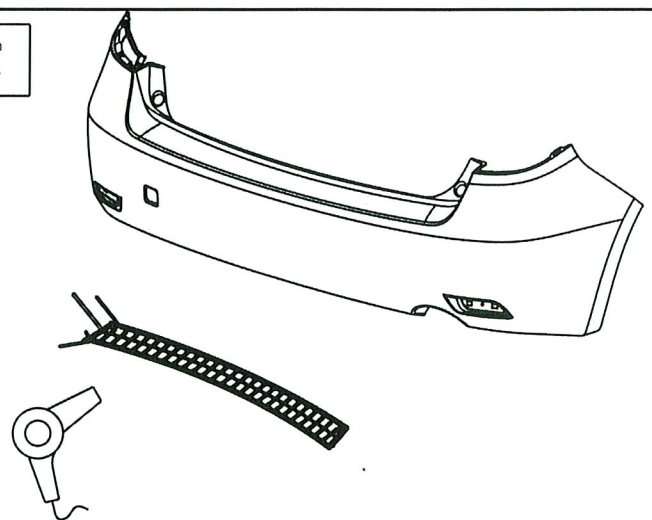
PAGE  
1/2

1



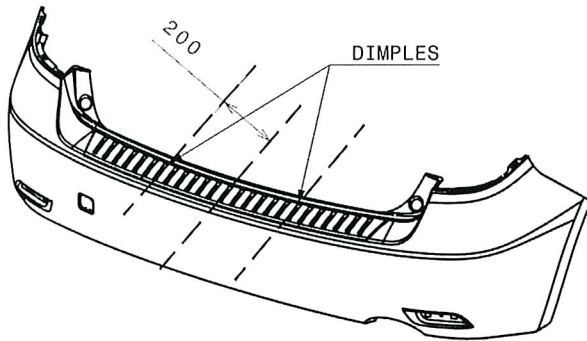
NOTE:  
CLEAN ANY DIRT, OIL OR WAX FROM ATTACHING AREA OF BUMPER WITH A CLEAN CLOTH AND 100% ALCOHOL.

2



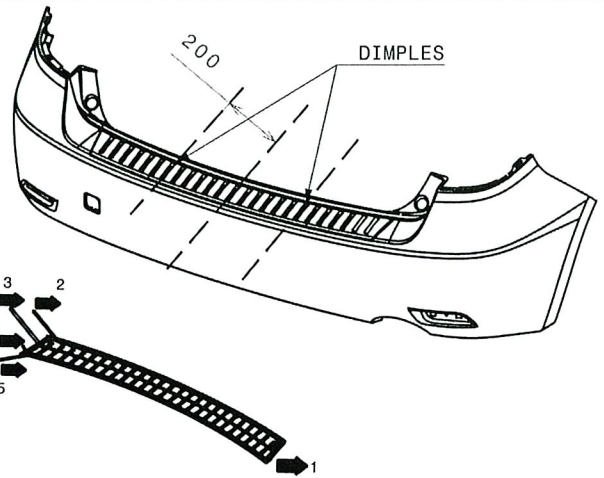
NOTE:  
IF THE TEMPERATURE IS BELOW 60°F (15°C), HEAT THE DOUBLE SIDED TAPE AND BUMPER SURFACE TO A TEMPERATURE OF 80°F (27°C)

3



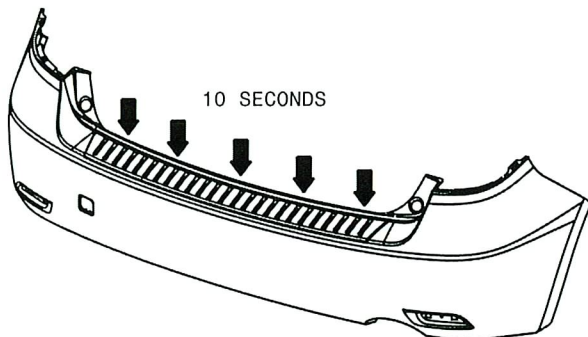
NOTE:  
PLACE THE BUMPER COVER ONTO THE BUMPER AND PERFORM A TRIAL FIT BEFORE REMOVING ADHESIVE BACKING. ALIGN TRIANGLE MARKS ON BUMPER (UNDER GASKET) TO DIMPLES ON BUMPER COVER. (200mm FROM CENTERLINE)

4



NOTE:  
WITH BUMPER COVER ALIGNED IN FINAL POSITION PER STEP #3, CAREFULLY REMOVE ADHESIVE BACKING IN THE ORDER SHOWN ABOVE.

5



NOTE:  
AFTER ATTACHING BUMPER COVER TO BUMPER, PRESSURE MUST BE APPLIED ALONG ENTIRE PART FOR 10 SECS. TO ENSURE PROPER ADHESION.

PART NUMBER  
E771SFG000

ISSUE  
01

DATE  
01/26/2007

SUBARU OF AMERICA

PAGE  
2/2

SPN0000075



PART NUMBER:

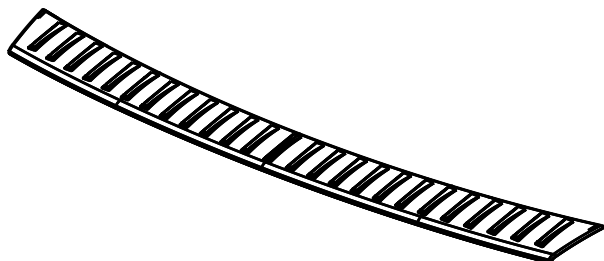
E771SFG000

# INSTALLATION INSTRUCTIONS

DESCRIPTION:

BUMPER COVER - IMPREZA

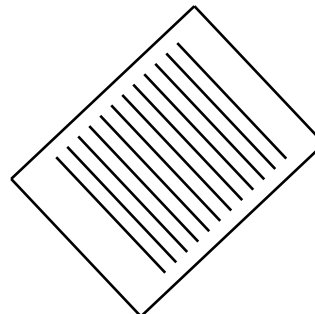
## A KIT CONTENTS



BUMPER COVER

1x

## B



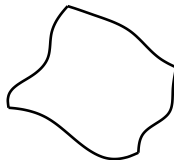
INSTALLATION INSTRUCTIONS

1x

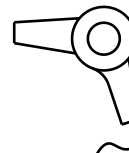
## TOOLS REQUIRED



100% (RUBBING)ALCOHOL



CLEAN CLOTH



DRYER

## MEANING OF CHARACTERS

- : REMOVE
- : INSTALL
- : DISCONNECT
- : CONNECT
- : LOCATION OF CLIP OR SCREW

- T** : TIGHTEN
- : LOOSEN
- : DISCARD
- : RE USE

## NOTE:

DO NOT WASH THE VEHICLE FOR 24 HOURS FOLLOWING INSTALLATION OF BUMPER COVER.

IF BUMPER COVER REQUIRES CLEANING AFTER INSTALLATION, WIPE WITH A SOFT CLOTH OR SPONGE AND MILD SOAP AND WIPE THOROUGHLY WITH A DRY CLOTH. DO NOT USE GASOLINE, THINNER, ACID, ALKALI OR OTHER SOLVENT BASED PRODUCTS.

IF THE TEMPERATURE IS BELOW 60°F (15°C), HEAT THE DOUBLE SIDED TAPE AND BUMPER SURFACE TO A TEMPERATURE OF 80°F (27°C).

BUMPER COVER SHOULD BE INSTALLED ON THE BUMPER WITHIN 5 MINUTES OF PARTING PAPER REMOVAL.

PART NUMBER  
E771SFG000

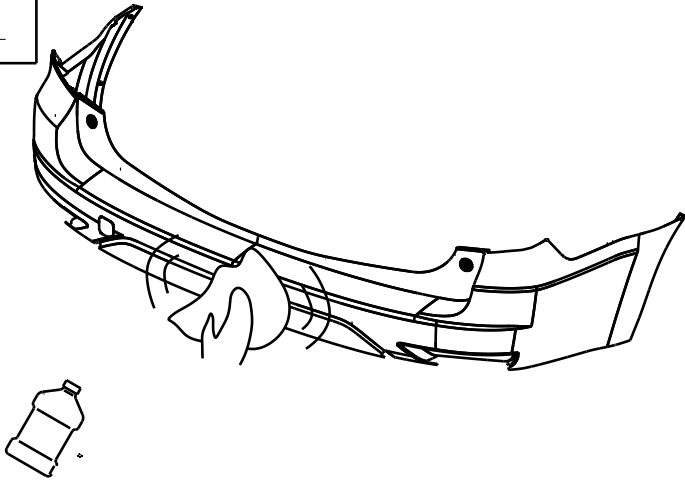
ISSUE  
01

DATE  
10/31/2007

SUBARU OF AMERICA

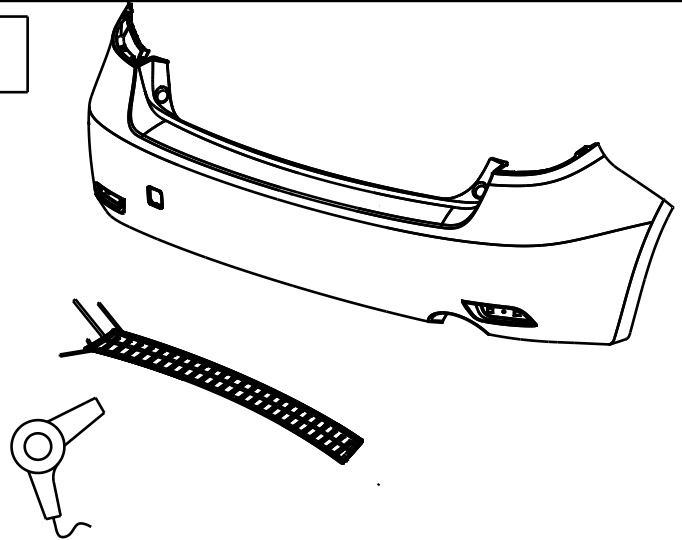
PAGE  
1/2

1



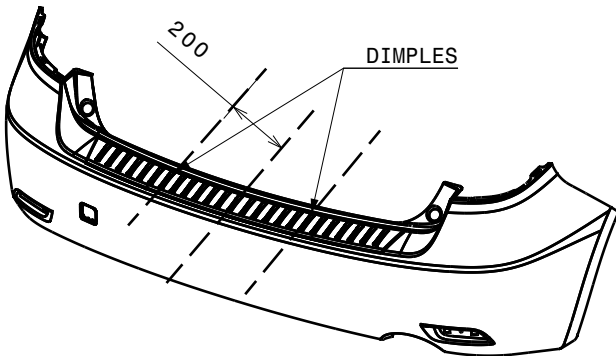
NOTE:  
CLEAN ANY DIRT, OIL OR WAX FROM ATTACHING AREA  
OF BUMPER WITH A CLEAN CLOTH AND 100% ALCOHOL.

2



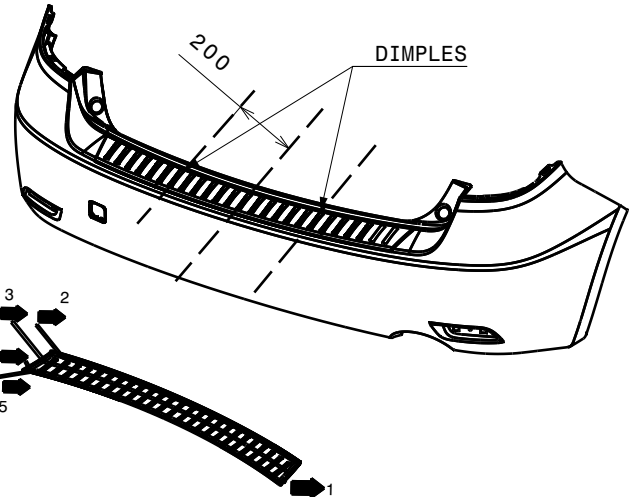
NOTE:  
IF THE TEMPERATURE IS BELOW 60°F (15°C), HEAT  
THE DOUBLE SIDED TAPE AND BUMPER SURFACE TO A  
TEMPERATURE OF 80°F (27°C)

3



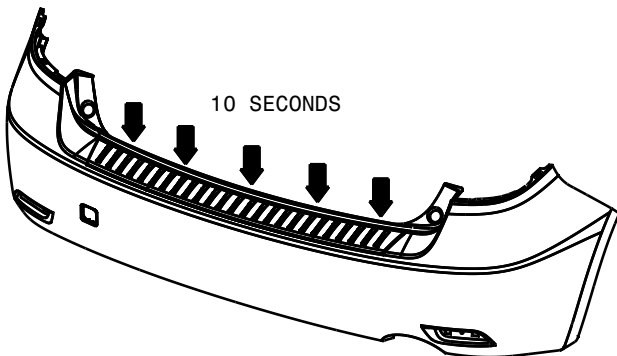
NOTE:  
PLACE THE BUMPER COVER ONTO THE BUMPER AND PERFORM A  
TRIAL FIT BEFORE REMOVING ADHESIVE BACKING. ALIGN  
TRIANGLE MARKS ON BUMPER (UNDER GASKET) TO DIMPLES ON  
BUMPER COVER (200 MM FROM CENTERLINE). ON STI MODELS,  
BUMPER PRE-MARKINGS MAY NOT BE PRESENT. ON THOSE  
MODELS, ALIGN THE BUMPER COVER RIBS WITH RIBS ON  
INTERIOR TRIM PANEL.

4



NOTE:  
WITH BUMPER COVER ALIGNED IN FINAL POSITION  
PER STEP #3, CAREFULLY REMOVE ADHESIVE BACKING  
IN THE ORDER SHOWN ABOVE.

5



NOTE:  
AFTER ATTACHING BUMPER COVER TO BUMPER, PRESSURE  
MUST BE APPLIED ALONG ENTIRE PART FOR 10 SECS. TO  
ENSURE PROPER ADHESION.

PART NUMBER  
E771SFG000

ISSUE  
01

DATE  
10/31/2007

SUBARU OF AMERICA

PAGE  
2/2

SPN0000075





# INSTALLATION INSTRUCTIONS

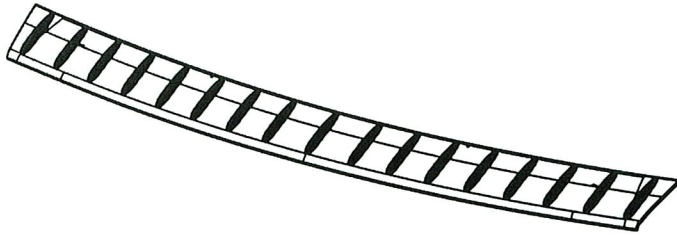
PART NUMBER:

E771SXA100

DESCRIPTION:

BUMPER COVER - TRIBECA

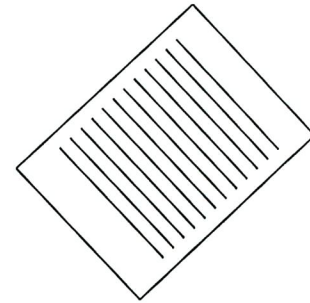
## A KIT CONTENTS



BUMPER COVER

1x

## B



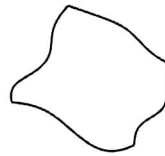
INSTALLATION INSTRUCTIONS

1x

## TOOLS REQUIRED



100% (RUBBING)ALCOHOL



CLEAN CLOTH



DRYER

## MEANING OF CHARACTERS

: REMOVE

: INSTALL

: DISCONNECT

: CONNECT

: LOCATION OF CLIP OR SCREW

**T** : TIGHTEN

: LOOSEN

: DISCARD

: RE USE

## NOTE:

DO NOT WASH THE VEHICLE FOR 24 HOURS FOLLOWING INSTALLATION OF BUMPER COVER.

IF BUMPER COVER REQUIRES CLEANING AFTER INSTALLATION, WIPE WITH A SOFT CLOTH OR SPONGE AND MILD SOAP AND WIPE THOROUGHLY WITH A DRY CLOTH. DO NOT USE GASOLINE, THINNER, ACID, ALKALI OR OTHER SOLVENT BASED PRODUCTS.

IF THE TEMPERATURE IS BELOW 60°F (15°C), HEAT THE DOUBLE SIDED TAPE AND BUMPER SURFACE TO A TEMPERATURE OF 80°F (27°C).

BUMPER COVER SHOULD BE INSTALLED ON THE BUMPER WITHIN 5 MINUTES OF PARTING PAPER REMOVAL.

PART NUMBER  
E771SXA100

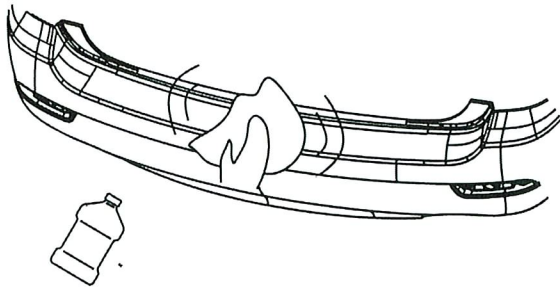
ISSUE  
01

DATE  
01/22/2007

SUBARU OF AMERICA

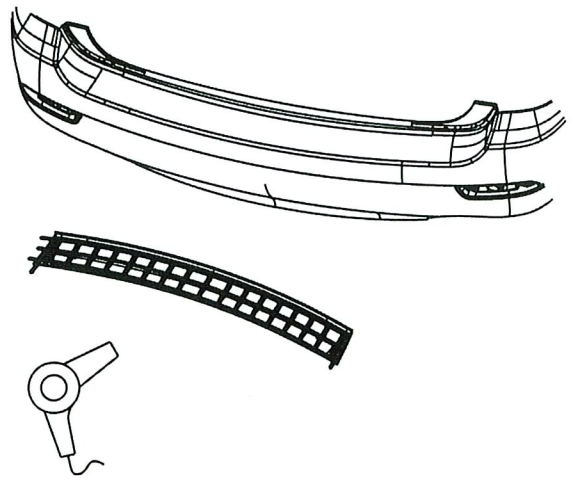
PAGE  
1/2

1



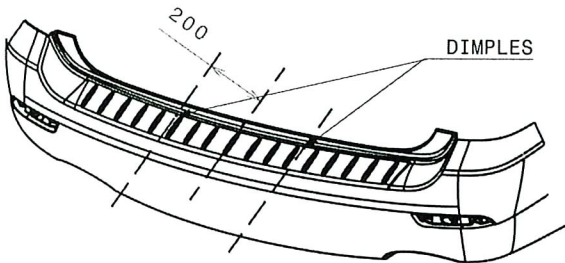
NOTE:  
CLEAN ANY DIRT, OIL OR WAX FROM ATTACHING AREA OF BUMPER WITH A CLEAN CLOTH AND 100% ALCOHOL.

2



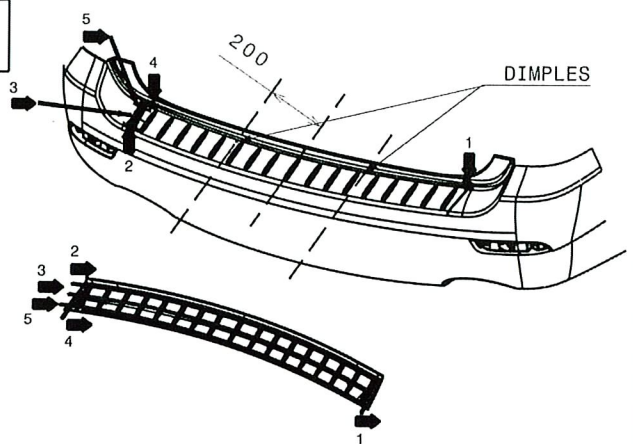
NOTE:  
IF THE TEMPERATURE IS BELOW 60°F (15°C), HEAT THE DOUBLE SIDED TAPE AND BUMPER SURFACE TO A TEMPERATURE OF 80°F (27°C)

3



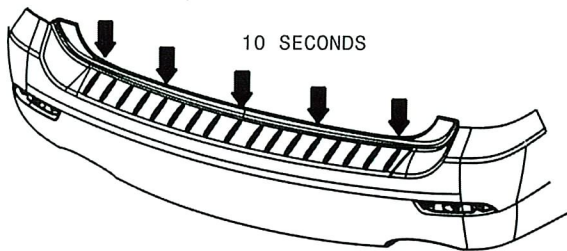
NOTE:  
PLACE THE BUMPER COVER ONTO THE BUMPER AND PERFORM A TRIAL FIT BEFORE REMOVING ADHESIVE BACKING. ALIGN TRIANGLE MARKS ON BUMPER (UNDER GASKET) TO DIMPLES ON BUMPER COVER. (200mm FROM CENTERLINE)

4



NOTE:  
WITH BUMPER COVER ALIGNED IN FINAL POSITION PER STEP #3, CAREFULLY REMOVE ADHESIVE BACKING IN THE ORDER SHOWN ABOVE.

5



NOTE:  
AFTER ATTACHING BUMPER COVER TO BUMPER, PRESSURE MUST BE APPLIED ALONG ENTIRE PART FOR 10 SECS. TO ENSURE PROPER ADHESION.

PART NUMBER  
E771SXA100

ISSUE  
01

DATE  
01/22/2007

SUBARU OF AMERICA

PAGE  
2/2



**SUBARU.**

# CAR COVER

INSTALLATION  
INSTRUCTIONS

## IMPREZA<sup>®</sup>

Sedan  
M001SFG500



5 Door  
M001SFG800

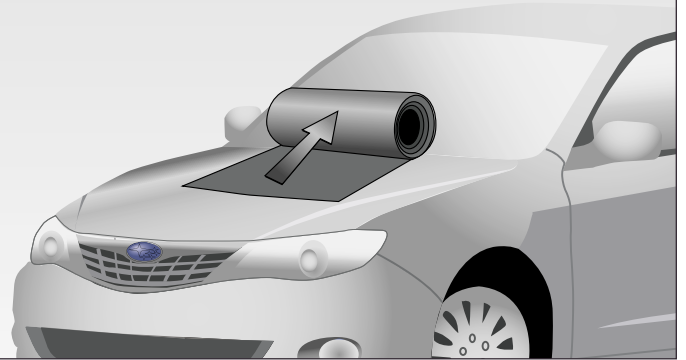


### PACKAGE CONTENTS: CAR COVER (QTY. 1)

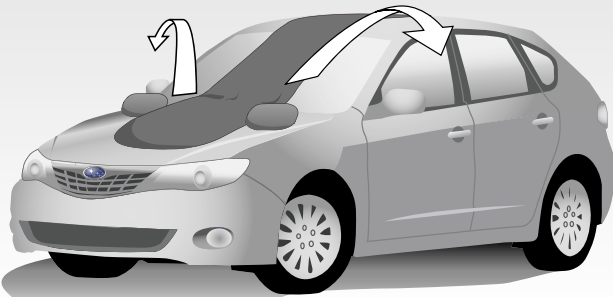
- 1** a. Make sure car is clean and dry.  
b. Remove Antenna.



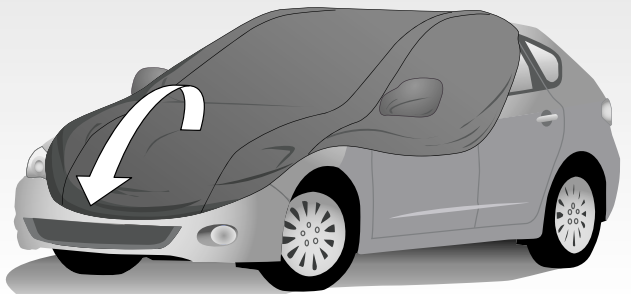
- 2** Unfold car cover from front to back.



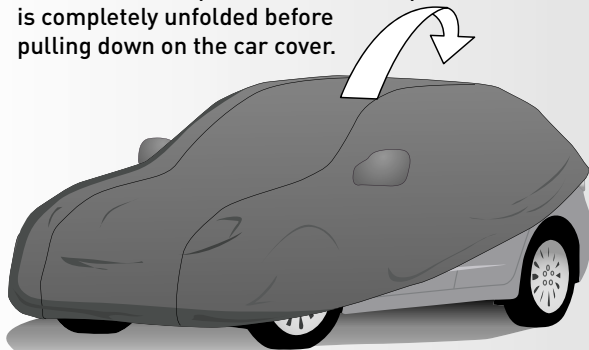
- 3** Open car cover outward. Apply side mirror pockets.



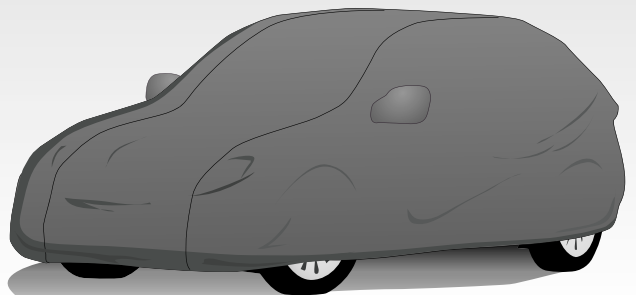
- 4** Unfold and secure car cover over the front end of car.



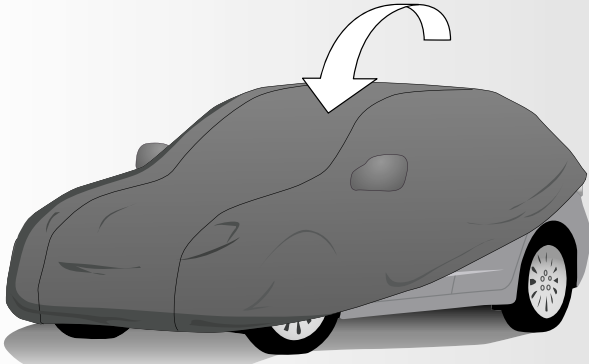
- 5** a. Unfold and secure car cover over the rear end of car.  
b. Make sure clear plastic rear license plate window is completely unfolded before pulling down on the car cover.



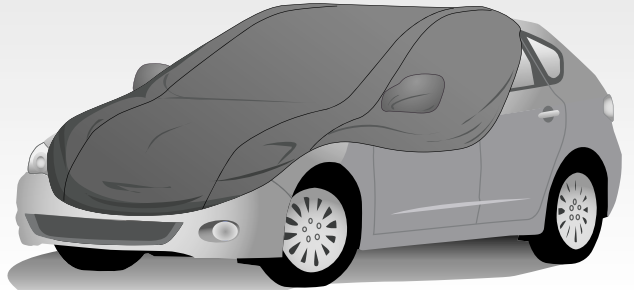
- 6** Make sure bottom edge of cover is secure all around.



## 7 REMOVING YOUR CAR COVER



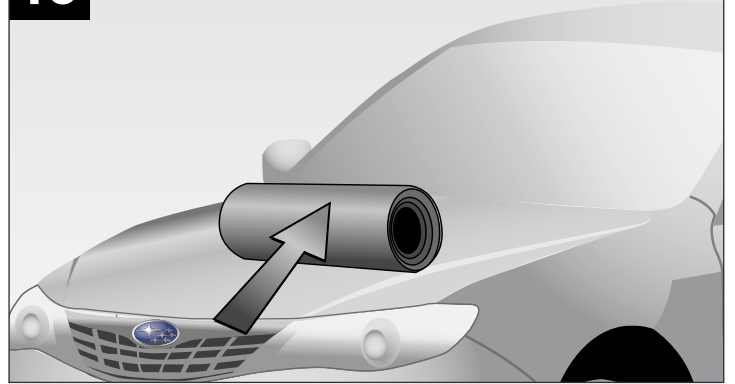
8



9



10



## 11 CLEANING YOUR CAR COVER

### HAND WASHING

HAND WASH WITH MILD DETERGENT AND RINSE WITH PLENTY OF WATER TO REMOVE SOAP RESIDUE. AIR DRY ONLY. DO NOT MACHINE DRY.

### MACHINE WASHING

USE FRONT LOADING 'LAUNDROMAT' STYLE WASHING MACHINE ONLY. USE MILD DETERGENT AND DOUBLE RINSE TO TAKE OUT SOAP RESIDUE COMPLETELY. AIR DRY ONLY. DO NOT USE MACHINE DRYER.



**SUBARU.**

# CAR COVER

INSTALLATION  
INSTRUCTIONS

## IMPREZA®

Sedan  
M001SFG500



5 Door  
M001SFG800

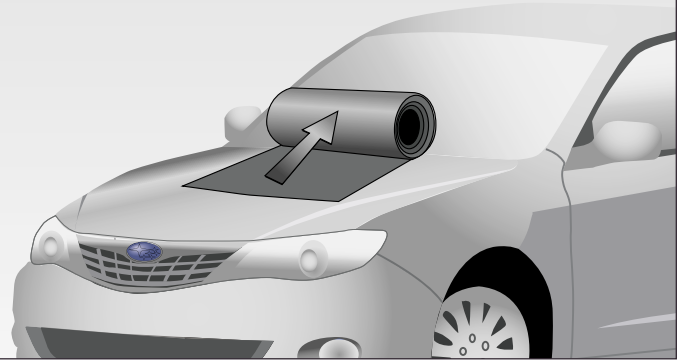


### PACKAGE CONTENTS: CAR COVER (QTY. 1)

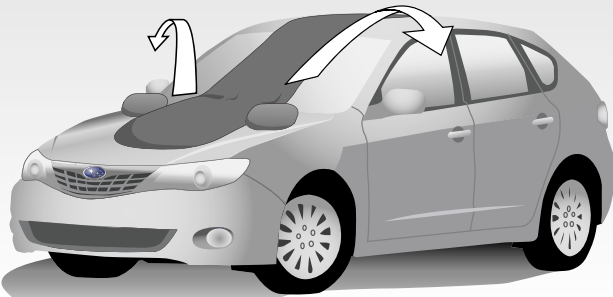
- 1** a. Make sure car is clean and dry.  
b. Remove Antenna.



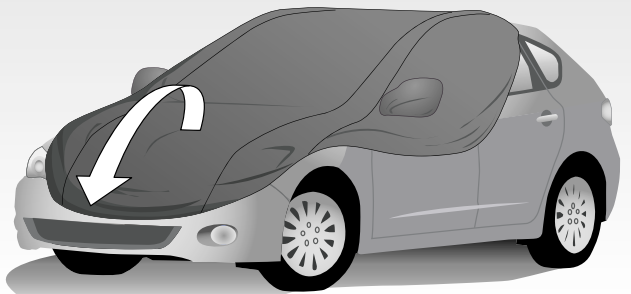
- 2** Unfold car cover from front to back.



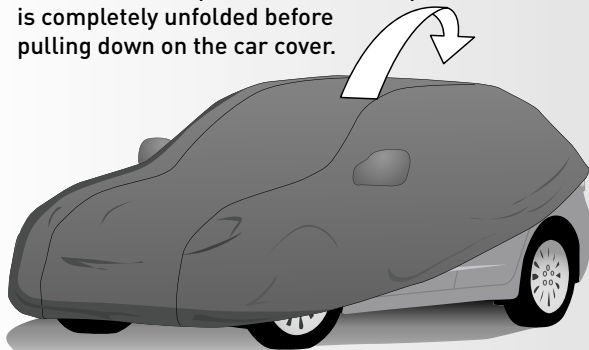
- 3** Open car cover outward. Apply side mirror pockets.



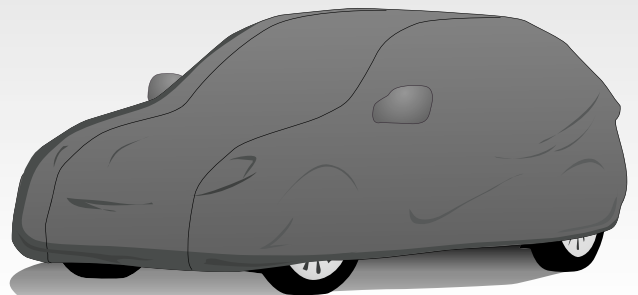
- 4** Unfold and secure car cover over the front end of car.



- 5** a. Unfold and secure car cover over the rear end of car.  
b. Make sure clear plastic rear license plate window is completely unfolded before pulling down on the car cover.

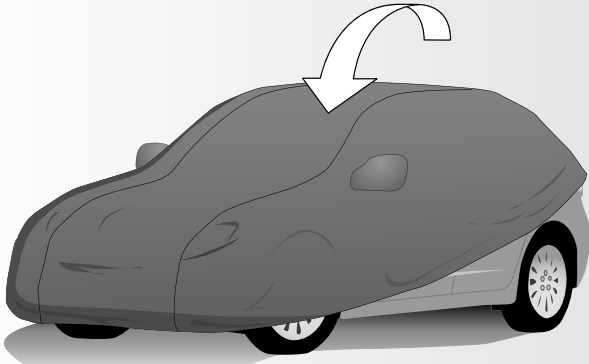


- 6** Make sure bottom edge of cover is secure all around.

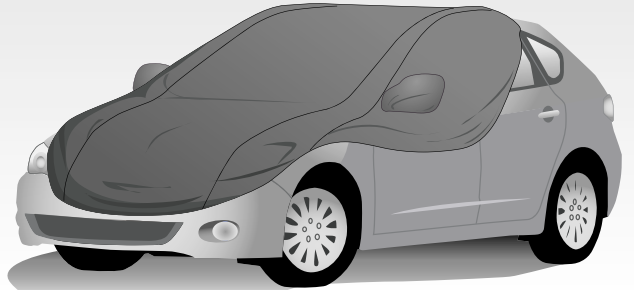




## 7 REMOVING YOUR CAR COVER



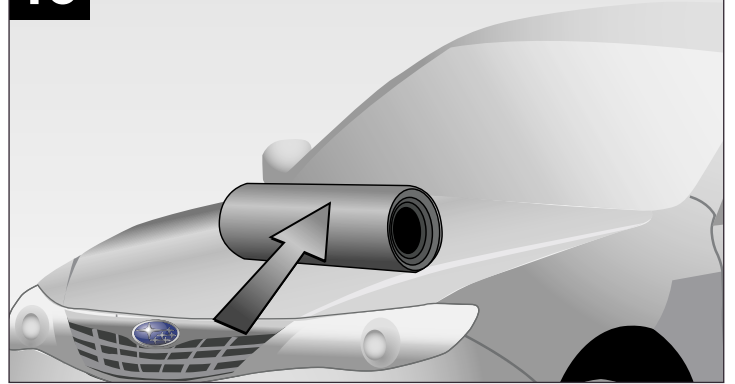
8



9



10



## 11 CLEANING YOUR CAR COVER

### HAND WASHING

HAND WASH WITH MILD DETERGENT AND RINSE WITH PLENTY OF WATER TO REMOVE SOAP RESIDUE. AIR DRY ONLY. DO NOT MACHINE DRY.

### MACHINE WASHING

USE FRONT LOADING 'LAUNDROMAT' STYLE WASHING MACHINE ONLY. USE MILD DETERGENT AND DOUBLE RINSE TO TAKE OUT SOAP RESIDUE COMPLETELY. AIR DRY ONLY. DO NOT USE MACHINE DRYER.

# SUBARU®

INSTALLATION  
INSTRUCTIONS

# CAR COVER

TRIBECA M001SXA100

PACKAGE CONTENTS:

CAR COVER (QTY. 1)

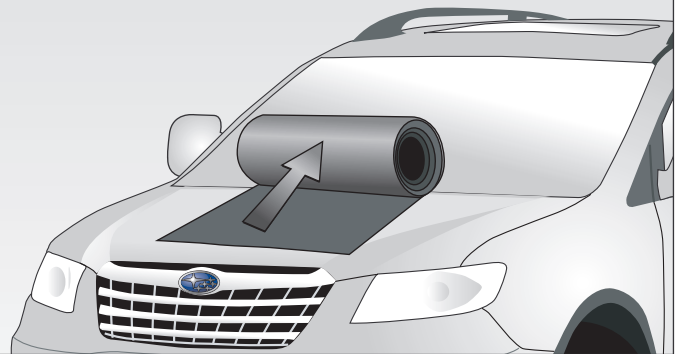
**1**

Make sure car is clean and dry.



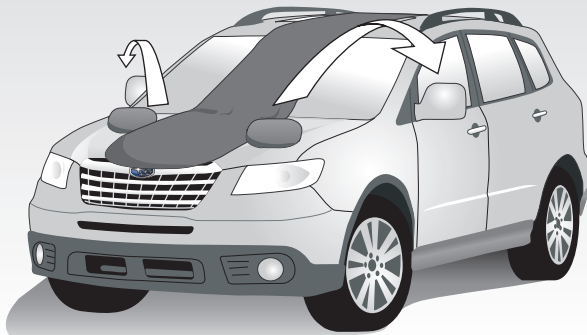
**2**

Unfold car cover from front to back.



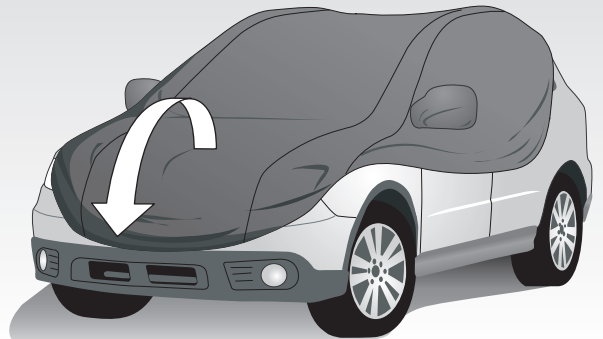
**3**

Open car cover outward. Apply side mirror pockets.



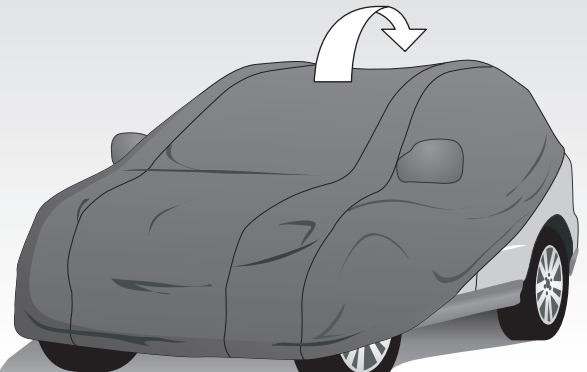
**4**

Unfold and secure car cover over the front end of car.



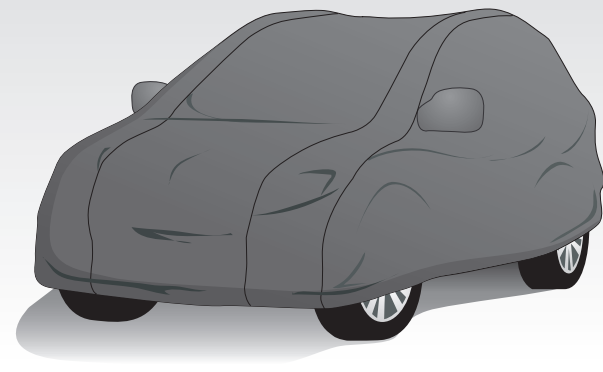
**5**

Unfold and secure car cover over the rear end of car.

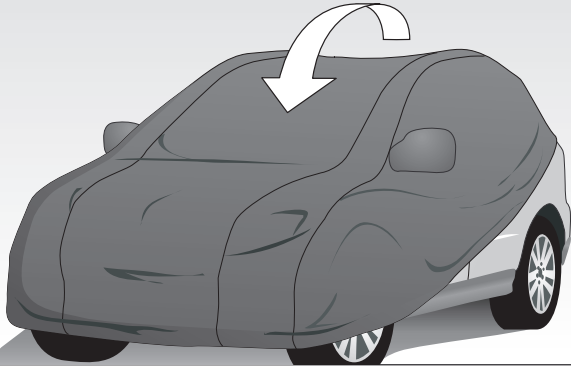


**6**

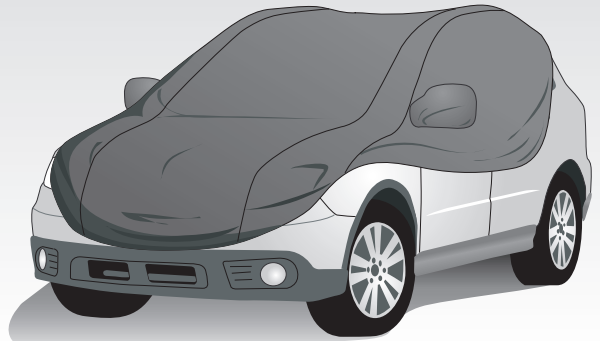
Make sure bottom edge of cover is secure all around.



## 7 REMOVING YOUR CAR COVER



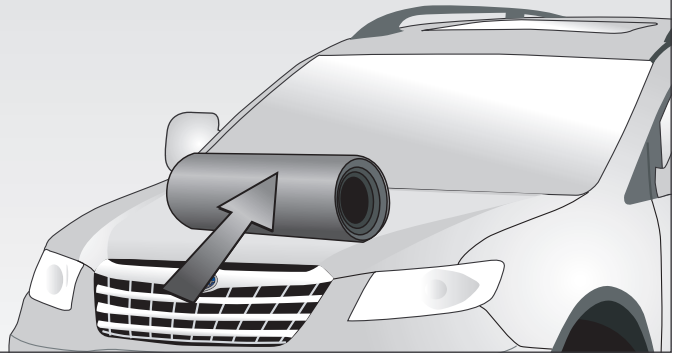
8



9



10



## 11 CLEANING YOUR CAR COVER

### HAND WASHING

HAND WASH WITH MILD DETERGENT AND RINSE WITH PLENTY OF WATER TO REMOVE SOAP RESIDUE. AIR DRY ONLY. DO NOT MACHINE DRY.

### MACHINE WASHING

USE FRONT LOADING 'LAUNDROMAT' STYLE WASHING MACHINE ONLY. USE MILD DETERGENT AND DOUBLE RINSE TO TAKE OUT SOAP RESIDUE COMPLETELY. AIR DRY ONLY. DO NOT USE MACHINE DRYER.

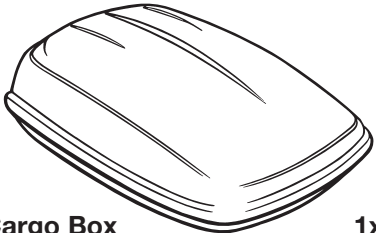


INSTALLATION INSTRUCTIONS

PART NUMBER: E361SAG200

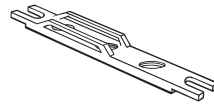
DESCRIPTION: Roof Mounted Cargo Box (16 cu. ft.)

**A** Kit Contents:



Cargo Box 1x

**B**



Bracket 4x

**C**

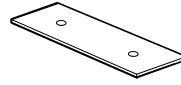
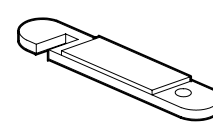


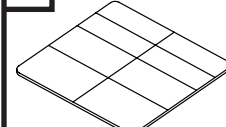
Plate 4x

**D**




Quick-Mount Bracket 4x

**E**




Pads 8x

**F**




Installation Instructions 1x

**G**



Sealant Decals 1x

**H**



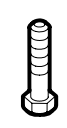
Knob 8x

**I**



Washer 8x

**J**



Carriage Bolt 8x

**K**



Strap 2x

**L**

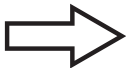


Key 2x

Meaning of characters:



Open or close

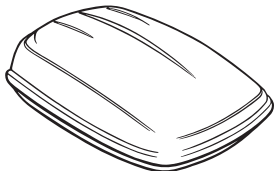


Install



Move

WARNING: DO NOT EXCEED THE WEIGHT LIMIT OF YOUR ROOF RACK



Cargo Box 29lbs. (17.7 kg)



Cargo Box contents



Total Must be less than or equal to the rack weight limit specified in the vehicle owners manual

Part Number E361SAG200

Issue

Date 9/7/06

Subaru of America

Page 1 of 5

## **GUIDELINES:**

**When using carriers and accessories, the user must understand the precautions. The points listed below will assist you in using the rack system and will encourage safety.**

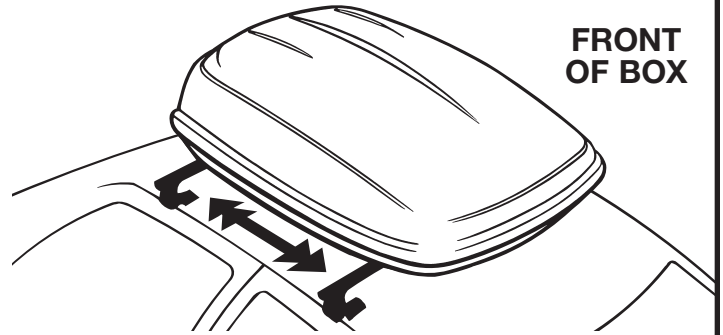
- **Do not carry more than 45 kg (100 lbs.) in the box. Loads that exceed this limit are not covered by the warranty.**
- **Do not exceed the weight limit of your roof rack. Total load = cargo weight plus luggage box (29lbs.) used to carry cargo.**
- **Make sure all knobs, bolts and locks are firmly attached, tightened and locked before every trip. Knobs, bolts and locks must be periodically inspected for signs of wear, corrosion and fatigue. Check your load at stops during the trip to ensure continued fastening security.**
- **Be aware of the width and height of your cargo since low clearance bridges, bridges, and parking garages can damage the load. All cargo will affect the vehicle's driving behavior. Never drive with any lock, knob, or rack in an open, unlocked or loose position.**
- **To prevent damage to your cargo box and/or vehicle remove your box before entering automatic car washes.**
- **All locks must be turned and moved periodically to ensure smooth operation. Use graphite or similar dry lubricant to help this. The locks are designed to deter vandalism and theft. Remove valuable gear if your vehicle is unattended for an extended period. Place at least one key in the glove compartment. Replacement keys are available through Thule direct at [www.thuleracks.com](http://www.thuleracks.com)**
- **For safety to your vehicle and rack system, obey all posted speed limits and traffic cautions. Adapt your speed to the conditions of the road and the load being carried.**
- **Do not use load carriers and accessories for purposes other than those for which they were designed. Do not exceed their carrying capacity. Failure to follow these guidelines or the product's instructions will void the warranty.**
- **Consult with your dealer if you have any questions regarding the operations and limits of these products. Review all instructions and warranty information carefully.**



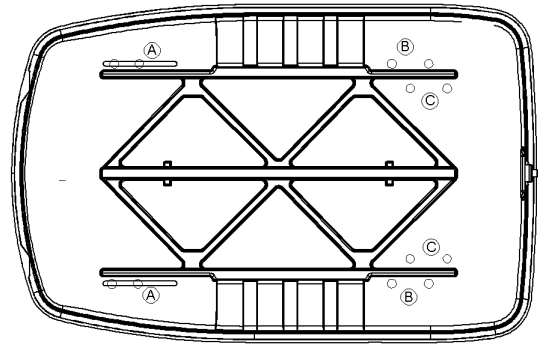
**BEFORE YOU BEGIN...** Please read the assembly instructions carefully. Make sure all parts are included in the package. Assemble step by step.

**1.**

If necessary, adjust the distance between the load bars to match the pattern of the ready-drilled holes in the roof box. The maximum possible distance between the load bars should be used.

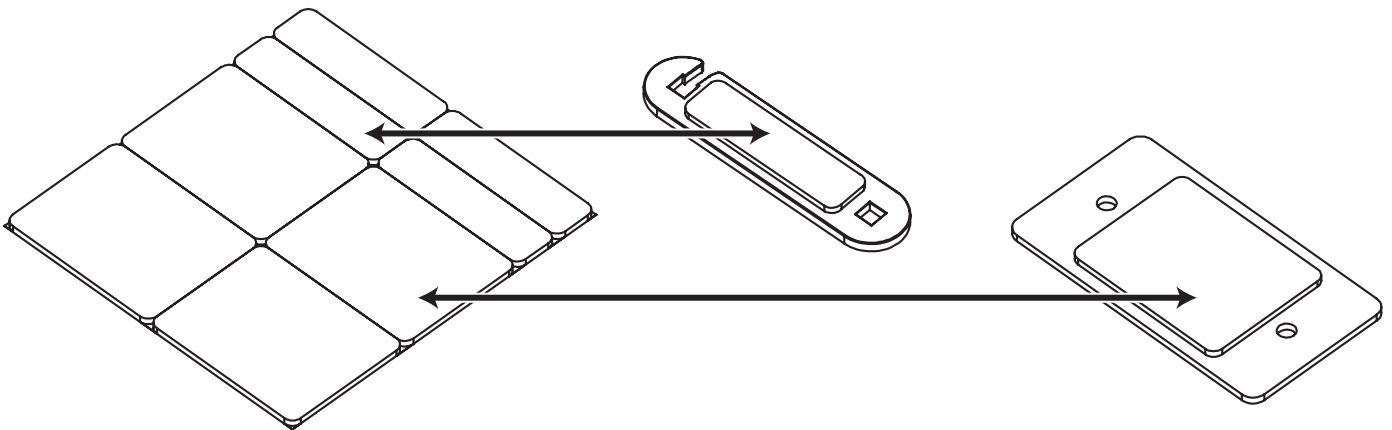


**Note:** For Outback models, use mounting locations (A) and (C). For all other Subaru models, use mounting locations (A) and (B).

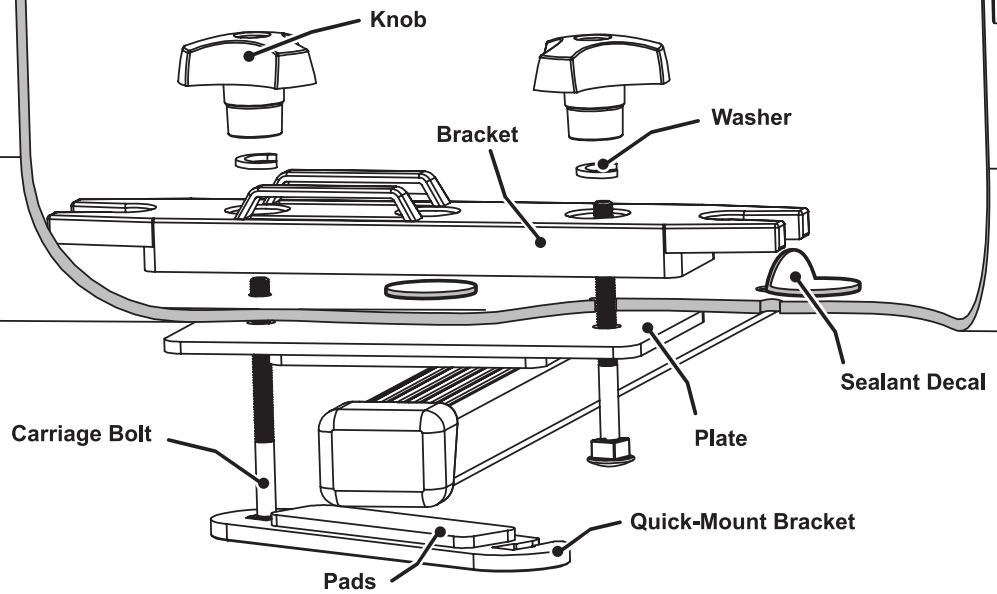


**2.**

Place adhesive pads on plate and Quick-Mount bracket to protect crossbar finish and provide shock dampening of mounts.

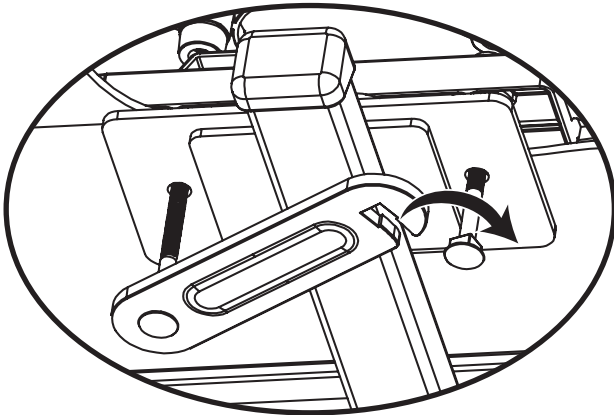


3.

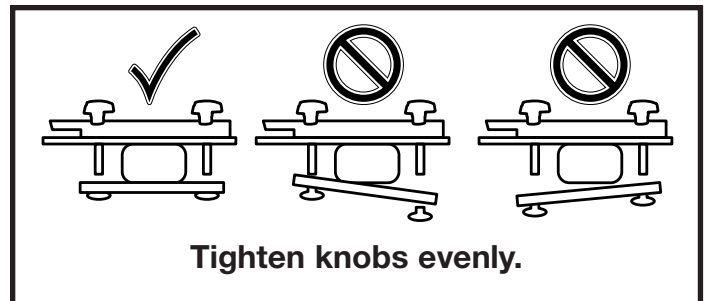


Open box. Assemble hardware into box following diagrams, using selected holes. Cover unused holes with sealant decals. For ease of assembly, mounting hardware may be installed before placing box on vehicle.

4.



Swing the Quick-Mount bracket into place under the crossbar and engage with carriage bolt head at each position.

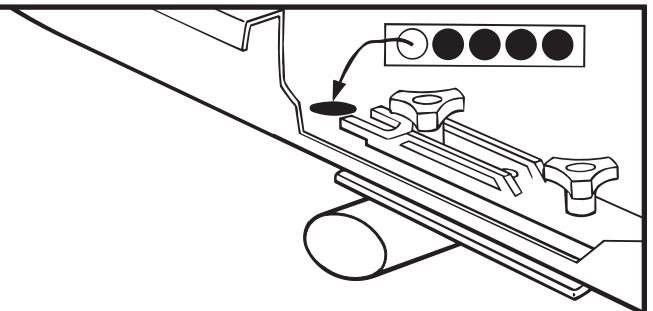


**Tighten knobs evenly.**

**Note:** To remove box do not fully remove Quick-Mount hardware. Simply loosen enough to disengage Quick-Mount bracket.

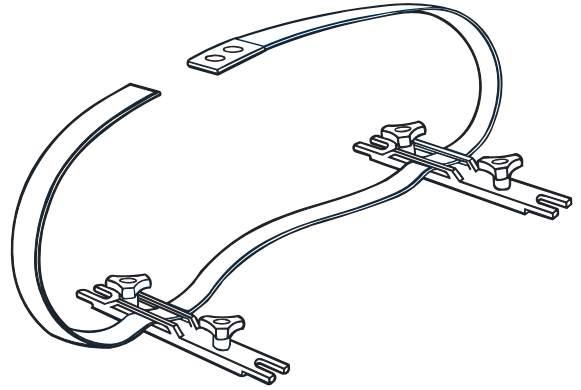
5.

Place adhesive pads on plate and Quick-Mount bracket to protect crossbar finish and provide shock dampening of mounts.



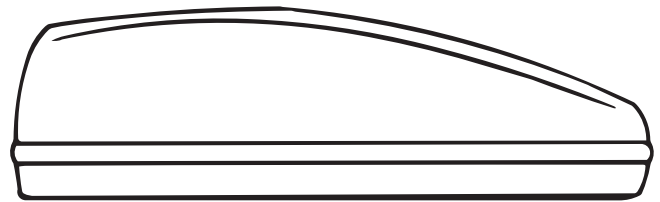
6.

Insert the straps through the eyes of the brackets. Loads must be secured with the help of straps to prevent them from sliding. Fastenings should be checked at regular intervals.



7.

Make sure that loads are evenly distributed inside the roof box. Do not exceed the maximum permitted load for the roof as recommended by the vehicle manufacturer. Do not exceed the maximum recommended weight for the rack system.



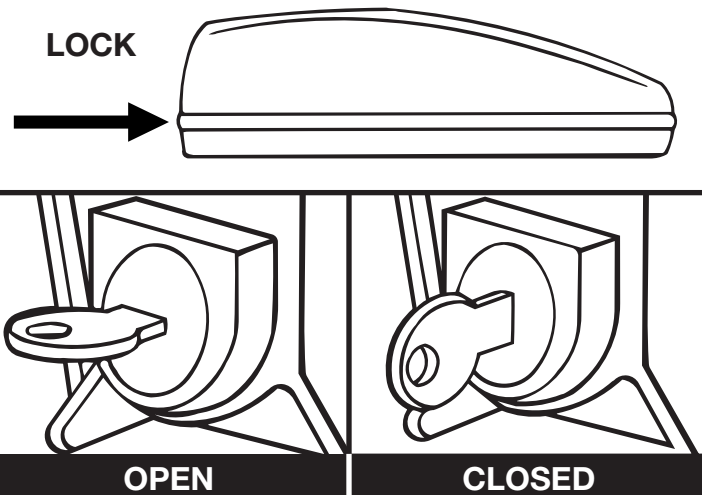
= 100lbs. (45 kg) max.

8.

### UNLOCKING/LOCKING THE BOX

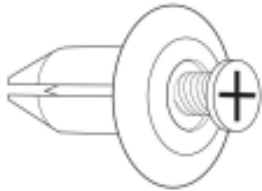
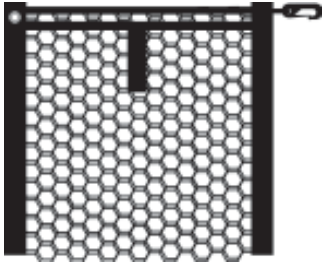
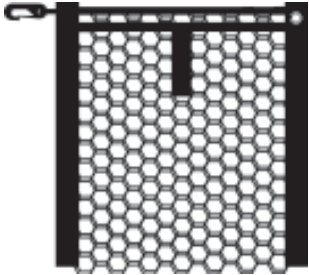

**Unlocking:** Using the key attached to the inside of your box, insert and turn clockwise at locking points. Depress the button in the center of the locks while lifting the lid of the box.

**Locking:** Press down the lid – in most cases there will be an audible click. Assure latching by attempting to lift the lid. For maximum security, lock the box and remove the key while not in use.

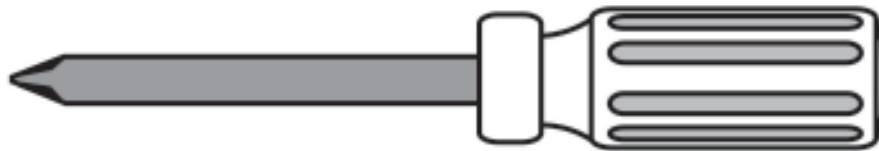


*INSTALLATION  
INSTRUCTIONS*













DESCRIPTION: SIDE NETS


A	<b>KIT CONTENTS:</b>	B		C	
 <b>DRIVER SIDE</b>		 <b>PASSENGER SIDE</b>		<b>2X</b>	
				D	
				<b>2X</b>	

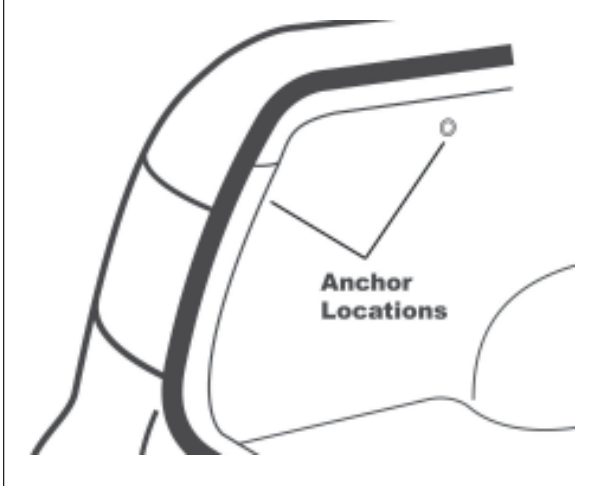
**TOOLS REQUIRED:**



**Meaning of Characters:**

-  : Remove
-  : Install
-  : Disconnect
-  : Connect
-  : Location of pre-arranged mark
-  : Driver side rear cargo area
-  : Passenger side rear cargo area
-  : Tightening Torque
-  : Loosen
-  : Discard
-  : Recyclable
-  : View


1 

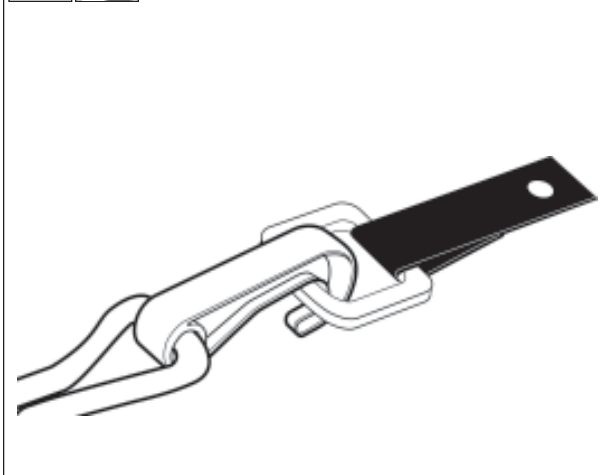


Note: Driver's side assembly.

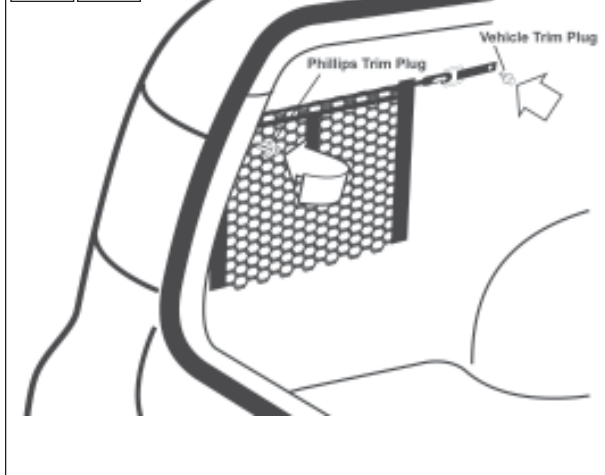
2 



3 

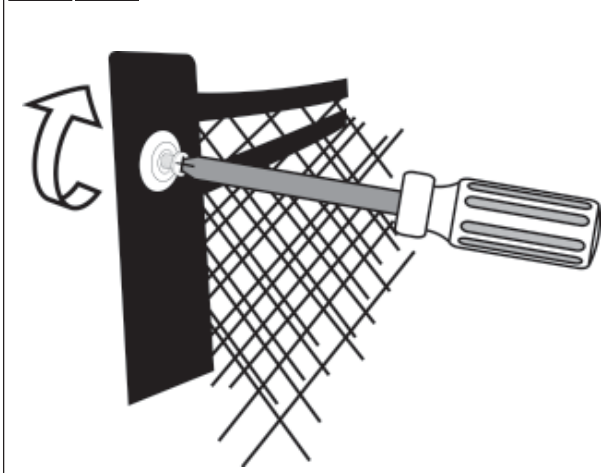


4 

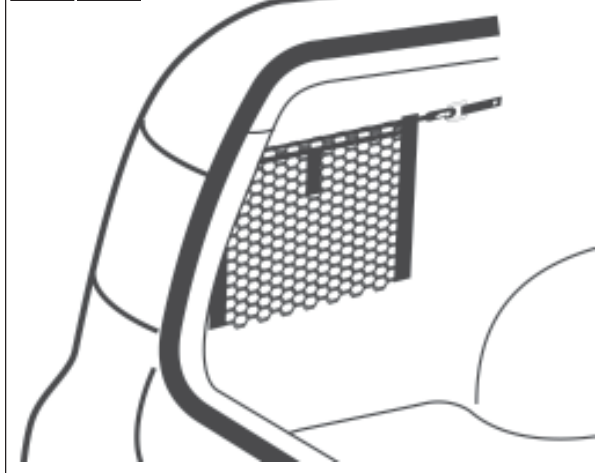


Note: Driver's side net is larger than the Passenger's side net.

5 



6 



Note: Installation operation identical for opposite side of the vehicle.



## NL

OPMERKING

Gelieve deze handleiding steeds bij Uw instructieboekje te bewaren

**\* De maximaal toelaatbare belasting bedraagt 80 kg (inclusief het gewicht van de bagagedrager: 5 kg). Raadpleeg Uw instructieboekje voor de maximale dakbelasting van Uw auto. Overschrijd deze limiet niet.**

Maak de lading stevig vast, zodat deze niet los kan raken en schade kan veroorzaken. Zorg ervoor dat de lading niet zijdelings of in de rijrichting kan verschuiven.

Wanneer de bagagedrager beladen wordt, zorgt u er dan voor dat het gewicht van de last gelijkmatig verdeeld is. Hou het zwaartepunt van de last zo laag mogelijk. Wanneer kleine, zware lasten vervoerd moeten worden, raden wij u aan deze aan 1 zijde van de draagstang te plaatsen, en niet in het midden.

De bagage mag niet over de wagenomtrek reiken, dit om het verkeer niet te hinderen.

Gelieve voor iedere rit alle bevestigingspunten te controleren. Controleer ook of te lading goed werd vastgemaakt.

Stop even na een korte rit om moer- en vooral voetbevestigingen van de bagage-drager te controleren. Doe dit steeds vooraleer te rijden met een gemonteerde bagagedrager.

Het is mogelijk dat de lak onder de dakplaten na verloop van tijd iets matter wordt. Om dit te voorkomen dient zowel dak als drager vrij te zijn van stof en vuil, voordat er geplaatst wordt. Bij langduring gebruik is het aan te bevelen op de bevestigingsplaatsen dak en drager regelmatig goed schoon te maken.

Gelieve rekening te houden met het veranderde rijgedrag van de wagen (door zijwindgevoeligheid, bij bochten en remmen) wanneer u een wagen met gemonteerde (beladen) bagagedrager bestuurt.

Voor de veiligheid van andere weggebruikers en om de luchtweerstand te verminderen wordt de bagagedrager best gedemonteerd wanneer hij niet gebruikt wordt.

**Veiligheidstip**

Dit model dakdrager is speciaal voor Uw auto ontwikkeld, bij inruil dient meestal een andere drager toegepast te worden. Raadpleeg hierover Uw leverancier. Testrapporten uit de autoindustrie en vakbladen tonen aan dat wanneer voorwerpen met een groot oppervlak worden vervoerd (bv. surfplank, ski-/transportbox) het dak van de wagen extra belast wordt wegens een sterk verhoogde luchtweerstand.Wanneer u een windsurfplank vervoert, moet de punt van de boeg naar beneden wijzen.

Het rijgedrag van de wagen verandert eveneens; daarom is het raadzaam uw snelheid aan te passen. Stuur de wagen niet door een carwash wanneer de allesdrager geïnstalleerd is.

**De fabrikant is niet aansprakelijk voor schade onstaan door een niet juist gemonteerde drager en accessoires.**

**LET OP!**

**Het is mogelijk dat U windgeruis hoort als U deze dakdrager gebruikt. Plaats daarom alleen als U iets te vervoeren heef de dakdrager op het dak.**

### FIN

**HUOMAUTUKSIA**

Säilytä nämä asennusohjeet auton asiakirjojen kanssa.

Huomioi seuraavat seikat:

**\* Suurin sallittu kuorma on 80 kg (sis. telineen paino: 5 kg). Älä ylitä tätä rajaa. Tarkista auton ohjekirjasta taakkatelineen sijainti sekä suurin sallittu kattokuorma. (Tarkista myös mahdollinen oheistettu lisälehti koskien sallittua kattokuormaa).**

Kiinnitä kuorma niin, että se ei irtoa eikä aiheuta vaurioita. Ole tarkka kiinnittäessäsi kuormaa, että se ei siirry pituus- eikä sivusuuntaan. Kiinnitä huomiota siihen, että kuorma on jaettu mahdollisimman tasaisesti ja että painopiste on mahdollisimman alhaalla. Kun kuljetat pieniä, hyvin painavia kuormia on ne sijoitettava kannatinkiskon toiselle puolelle eikä sen keskelle. Liikenneturvallisuussyistä kuorma ei saa ylittää auton leveyttä.

Tarkista ennen liikkelle lähtöä että kaikki telineet ja lisävarusteet on kiinnitetty ohjeiden mukaan. Tarkista myös että kuorma on kunnolla kiinnitetty. Pysähdy lyhyen ajomatkan jälkeen tarkistamaan että kaikki ruuvit ja erityisesti jalkalevyt ovat tukevasti paikallaan. Tarkista sen jälkeen aina ennen seuraavaa liikkeellelähtöä.

On olemassa vaara että lakkaus himmenee jalkalevyjen kohdalla. Tämän välttämiseksi suosittelemme että katto puhdistetaan pölystä ja liasta ennen asennusta sekä että taakkateline irroitetaan aika ajoin katon puhdistusta varten.

Huomioi että ajo-ominaisuudet muuttuvat ajettaessa taakkatelineillä etenkin kuormattuna (sivutuulialttius, kaarre- ja jarrutusolosuhteet). Muiden tienkäyttäjien turvallisuussyistä sekä polttoainekulutuksen johdosta on taakkatelineet irrotettava kun ne eivät ole käytössä.

**Neuvoja oman turvallisuuden takia**

**TÄRKEÄTÄ:** Tämä taakkateline on suunniteltu Sinun automalliisi. Kysy siksi, kun vaihdat autoa, jälleenmyyjältä tarvittavaa taakkatelinettä. Autoteollisuuden ja alan lehdistön testitulokset osoittavat että auton kattoon kohdistuu lisärasitusta kun kuljetetaan suuria tai pitkiä esineitä (esim. purjelautoja, suksi-/kuljetuslaatikoita) suuresti lisääntyvän ilmastuksen johdosta.

Purjelaudan kuljetuksessa tulee käyra pää olla suunnattu eteenpäin ja alas. Auton ajo-ominaisuudet muuttuvat myöskin - joten suosittelemme nopeuden rajoittamista.Älä käytä autoa pikapesussa kun taakkateline on asennettuna. **Vaimistaja ei vastaa virheellisen telineen tai lisätarvikkeen asennuksen aiheuttamista vahingoista.**
**HUOM:**
**Kun teline on asennettu ajoneuvoon voi esiintyä lisääntynyt ajoviiman aiheuttamaa suhinaa. Jos meteli on epämiellyttävä, tulisi teline irroittaa ja asennettava uudelleen, vasta kun sitä tarvitaan varsinaiseen kuljetukseen.**

## E

**AVISO:**

Guarde estas instrucciones de montaje junto con los documentos del automóvil.

Tenga en cuenta los siguientes puntos:

**\* La carga máxima permitida es de 80 kg (peso del portaequipajes incluido, 5 kg). No sobrepase el peso indicado. Asegúrese consultando el libro de instrucciones del sitio adecuado para montar el portaequipajes y de la carga admitida.**

Amarre bien la carga para mediar que se afloje y cause daños. Tenga cuidado que no se desvie hacia los lados. Considere que la carga debe estar repartida proporcionalmente encima del techo y que el punto de gravedad sea lo más bajo posible. No situe nunca pegueñas ó demasiado pesadas cargas en el centro del portaequipajes sino en una parte del mismo. Está prohibido que los bultos sobresalgan del contorno del vehículo, de manera que puedan perjudicar el tráfico.

Antes de emprender el viaje, asegúrese de la correcta fijación de los bultos según las instrucciones. Controle después de un corto recorrido el acoplamiento de los tornillos y sobre todo de los soportes. Este control se debe hacer antes de cualquier viaje.

Existe la posibilidad que la pintura debajo de los soportes se corra. Para evitarlo, le recomendamos que limpie el techo de polvo y suciedad antes de colocar las barras, así como quitarlas cada cierto tiempo para limpiar las áreas donde los pies estan situados.

Observe que la conducción no será la misma cuando conduzca con barras de carga y sobre todo con carga sobre estas (la resistencia del aire en las partes laterales al tomar las curvas, la distancia de frenado, etc. será diferente a lo normal). Por motivos de seguridad ante los demás usuarios y para reducir la resistencia del aire deberá desmontar las barras del techo si no van a ser utilizadas.

**Consejo para su seguridad**

**IMPORTANTE:** Este portaequipajes está especialmente diseñado para su vehículo. Por favor, controle qué barras necesita si cambia de coche. Según informes de la industria automovilística y de revistas técnicas la capacidad de carga del techo del automóvil transportando por ejemplo tablas de navegación, cajas de transporte, etc. es más baja debido a la fuerte resistencia del aire. (En el transporte de una tabla de navegación se debe poner la parte doblada hacia abajo.)

Es recomendable adaptar la velocidad a estas circunstancias. El coche no debe pasar por el tren de lavado con el portaequipajes montado. **El fabricante no se responsabiliza de los daños causados por un montaje incorrecto del portaequipajes y demás accesorios.**

**NOTA:**

**La instalación de este portaequipajes comportará un incremento del ruido del viento en el vehículo. Si el nivel sonoro producido fuera molesto, el portaequipajes debería desmontarse e instalarse solamente cuando se tenga que transportar algún objeto.**

## J

注意!

注意!

この取扱説明書は車内に保管しておいてください。

キャリアベースに積載できる最大積載重量は75kgです。積載物を搭載する時は、必ず別売の専用アタッチメントをご購入のうえキャリアベースに取付けてご使用ください。

積載物は重心がなるべく低くなるように、バランスよく積載してください。また、緩まないようにしっかり固定してください。非常に小さい物や重い物を積載する場合は、バーの中央でなくフット部側に寄せて積載するようにしてください。

ルーフボックス、長尺物等積載時は、バックドア全開時に当たる場合がありますので、開閉時には充分ご注意ください。また、積載物が車幅よりはみ出さないようにご注意ください。

取付け作業終了後、スクリューの締付け状態・ガタツキが無いことを確認してください。またスクリューの緩み等は、定期的に点検を行ない、必ず増し締めを行ってください。

キャリアベースを取り付ける前には、クッションゴムが接するルーフの汚れを落としてください。

積載時には最高速度は法定速度以下に抑え、急発進、急ハンドル、急ブレーキは避け、運転には充分ご注意ください。自転車等、風圧を受ける荷物を積載した時及び、急カーブや悪路走行、強い横風を受ける場合は運転を損なうことがありますので、スピードを充分に抑えて走行してください。また、立体駐車場等の高さ制限がある場所では、制限高さ内であることを確認してください。

荷物を積載しない時は、キャリアベースを取り外してください。キャリアベースだけを装着して走行すると、風切り音が発生しますので、お止めください。1#むを得ずキャリアベースだけを装着して走行する場合は、図　のモールを貼ってください。

キャリアベース装着時は自動洗濯機における洗車はできません。自動洗濯機使用時はキャリアベースを外してください。

この取扱説明書に記載されていない取付け、及び使用方法や改造は絶対に行わないでください。記載事項を守らなかったために発生した不具合につきましては、責任を負いかねる場合がありますのであらかじめご了承ください。

取り外したキャリアベースは、きれいに清掃してから保管してください。外した部品やキーは紛失しないように注意してください。キャリアベースの汚れを拭き取る場合は、中性洗剤を使用して柔らかいスポンジで拭き取ってください。シンナー等の有機溶剤は使用しないでください。



**SUBARU**

**IMPREZA**

## E3610FG500

**(D)**

### LASTENTRÄGER

**(GB/USA)**

### LOAD CARRIER

**(S)**

### LASTHÅLLARE

**(F)**

### PORTE-TOUT

**(FIN)**

### TAAKKATELINE

**(NL)**

### ALLESDRAGER

**(E)**

### PORTAEQUIPAJES

**(J)**

### キャリアベース

**(D)**

### MONTAGEANLEITUNG

**(GB/USA)**

### FITTING INSTRUCTIONS

**(S)**

### MONTERINGSANVISNING

**(F)**

### INSTRUCTIONS DE MONTAGE

**(FIN)**

### ASENNUSOHJEET

**(NL)**

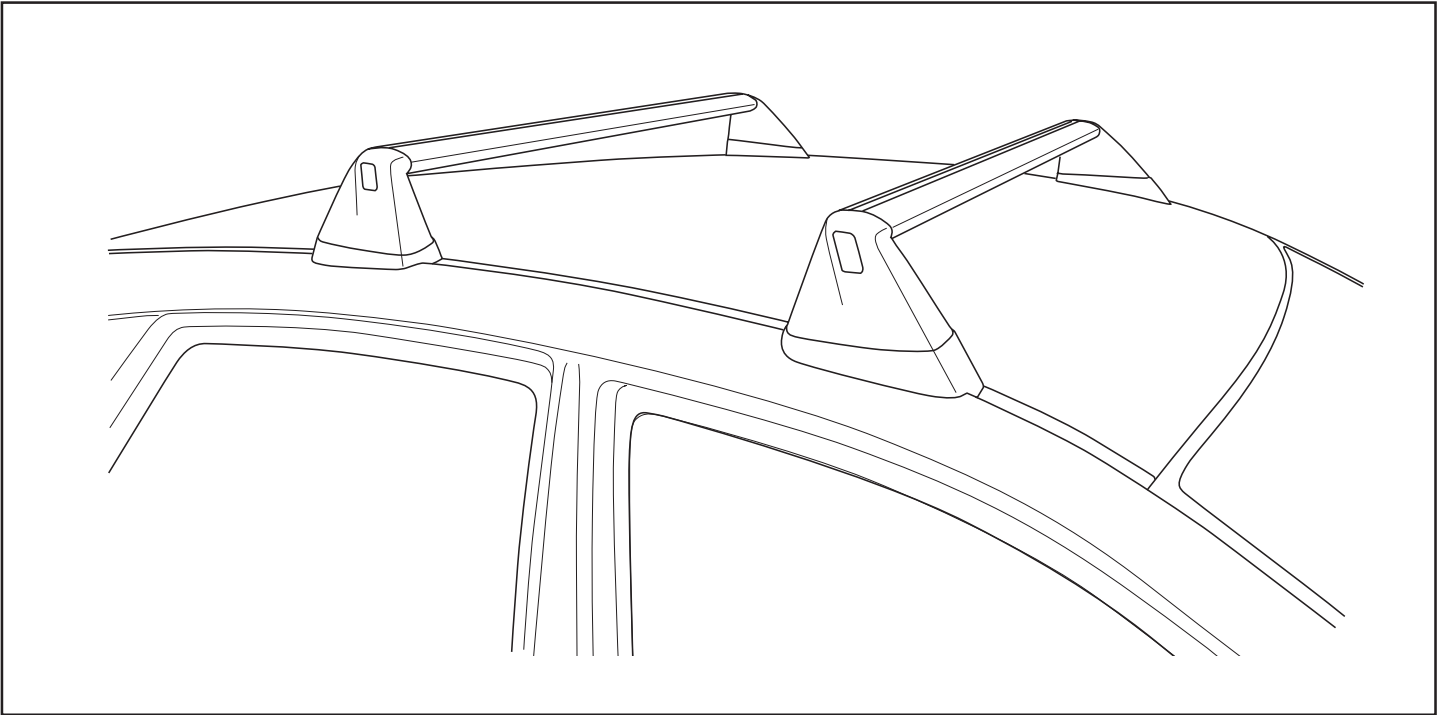
### MONTAGEVOORSCHRIFT

**(E)**

### INSTRUCCIONES DE MONTAJE

**(J)**

### 取扱い・取付説明書



### DIN 75302 / ISO 11154-1

### Impreza 2007->

### IMPREZA-3A-2023

**D** **WICHTIG!**  
Vor Erstgebrauch lesen.  
Montage nur nach dieser Vorlage durchführen.  
Vorlage im Fahrzeug mitführen.  
Wir empfehlen nicht schneller als richtgewindigkeit 130 km/h zu fahren.  
Zu montage und Anwendung diese Montageanleitung sehr genau durch lesen.  
Bei eventuellen Unklarheiten bitten wir Sie, sich mit Ihrem Händler, für weitere Informationen, in Verbindung zu setzen

**GB/USA** **IMPORTANT!**  
Read these instructions carefully before using the product for the first time.  
Fit the rack using these instructions only.  
Keep instructions in car.  
Do not drive faster than 130 km/h (80 mph) with load.  
Do not assemble or use this product unless you have understood the fitting instruction.  
If you have any questions, please contact your local dealer for further information.

**S** **VIKTIG!**  
Läs igenom anvisningen noggrant innan produkten tas i bruk.  
Montera endast enligt denna beskrivning.  
Monteringsanvisningen skall medföras i bilen.  
Vi rekommenderar att inte överskrida 130 km/h med last.  
Montera och använd inte produkten förrän du har förstått monteringsanvisningen.  
Vid eventuella oklarheter, kontakta återförsäljaren.

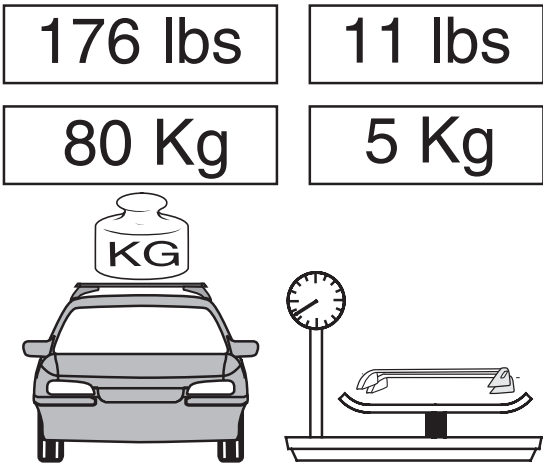
**F** **IMPORTANT!**  
A lire soigneusement avant la première utilisation.  
Pour le montage, se conformer strictement aux présentes instructions.  
Les instructions doivent nécessairement se trouver dans le véhicule.  
Ne pas dépasser 130 km/h avec charge sur le toit.  
Ne pas assembler et ne pas utiliser le produit avant de lire les instructions de montage.  
Prendre contact avec le fournisseur lors de problèmes éventuels.

**FIN** **TÄRKEÄ!**  
Luettava ennen ensimmäistä käyttöönottoa.  
Asennus vain tämän ohjeen mukaan.  
Pidettävä mukana ajoneuvossa.  
Älä kuormalla ylitä 130 km/h nopeutta.  
Älä asenna äläkä käytä tuotetta ennen kuin olet ymmärtänyt asennusohjeet.  
Ota yhteys jälleenmyyjään epäselvissä tapauksissa.

**NL** **BELANGRIJK!**  
Voor gebruik goed doorlezen.  
Montage alleen volgens dit voorbeeld uitvoeren.  
Montagevoorschrift in de auto bewaren.  
Niet harder dan 130 km/h rijden met lasten.  
Dit produkt niet monteren en gebruiken voordat het montagevoorschrift geheel duidelijk is.  
Wend U met eventuele vragen tot de plaatselijke dealer.

**E** **IMPORTANTE!**  
Leer antes del primer uso.  
Realizar el montaje unicamente conforme a estas instrucciones.  
Llevar las instrucciones en el vehículo.  
No conducir a más de 130 km/h con carga.  
No monte o utilice este producto hasta que haya comprendido las instrucciones de montaje.  
Si tiene alguna pregunta, por favor pongase en contacto con su distribuidor para más información.

**J** お客様へ  
ご使用の前に、この取扱説明書をお読みいただき、いつもお手元に置いて、常に正しい取扱い方法により、長くご愛用くださるようお願い申し上げます。  
キャリアを積載した時は法定速度以下で運転してください。  
取り付けミスを避けるために、取り付けはスバル特約店またはスバル特約店が指定した販売店でお願いたします。  
商品、取扱い・取付け内容につきまして、ご不明な点がございましたら、商品購入先の販売店にお問合せいただき、ご理解されたくうえでお取扱いください。



**D** **ANMERKUNGEN**  
Diese Montageanleitung zusammen mit den Fahrzeugpapieren aufbewahren.  
Folgende Punkte beachten:  
**\*Die höchste Belastung ist 80 kg (einschl. Gewicht des Lastenträgers, 5 kg). Dieses Gewicht darf nicht überschritten werden. Im Instruktionsbuch den Montageplatz des Lastenträgers und die höchste zugelassene Dachlast des Autos kontrollieren. (Eventuell das beigefügte Extrablatt für zugelassene Dachlast kontrollieren.)**

Die Last ordentlich verankern, damit diese sich nicht lockern und eventuelle Schäden verursachen kann. Aufpassen, daß sich die Last in Fahrtrichtung und seitlich nicht verschieben kann. Die Last gleichmäßig auf dem Lastenträger verteilen und der Schwerpunkt soll so niedrig wie möglich sein. Kleine und sehr schwere Lasten nie in der Mitte des Lastenträgers anbringen, sondern nur auf die eine Seite des Trägers.  
Auf Grund der Verkehrssicherheitsvorschriften darf die Last nicht über die Außenseiten des Autos hervorragen.

Vor der Fahrt, alle Befestigungsanordnungen genau kontrollieren, ob diese gemäß den Vorschriften fixiert sind. Kontrolliere ebenfalls die Verankerung der Last, diese muß ordentlich ausgeführt sein. Nach einer kurzen Fahrstrecke die Fahrt unterbrechen und dann alle Schraubverbindungen und besonders die Befestigung der Fußstütze kontrollieren. Diese Kontrolle soll vor jeder Fahrt durchgeführt werden.

Abmattungen der Lackoberfläche können in dem Bereich der Fußplattenauflagen auftreten. Um dieses zu vermeiden, empfehlen wir vor jeder Montage des Lastenträgers zu kontrollieren, daß die Lastenträgerbefestigungspunkte frei von Staub und Schmutz sind. Bei längerer Anwendung ist es ratsam den Lastenträger in regelmässigen Zeitabständen zu demontieren und reinigen.

Das veränderte Fahrverhalten mit montiertem Lastenträger beachten (Seitenwindempfindlichkeit, Fahren in den Kurven und beim Einbremsen).  
Mit Hinsicht auf die Verkehrssicherheitsvorschriften und Reduzierung des Luftwiderstandes, sollte der Lastenträger nach Gebrauch demontiert werden.

**Ratschläge für Ihre eigene Sicherheit**  
**WICHTIG:** Dieser Lastenträger ist speziell für Ihr Auto angepaßt. Bitte mit Ihrem Lieferanten kontrollieren welches Modell benötigt wird wenn Sie Ihren Wagen tauschen.  
Aus Testberichten von der Autoindustrie und Fachzeitschriften geht hervor, daß beim Transport von verschiedenen Gegenständen (z.B. Surfbrettern, Transport-/Skiboxen) das Autodach noch mehr, durch den stark auftretenden Luftwiderstand, belastet wird.  
(Beim Transport vom Surfbrett, soll das gebogene Ende in Fahrtrichtung, nach unten gerichtet sein.)  
Auch das Fahrverhalten des Autos wird beeinträchtigt - deshalb empfehlen wir, die Geschwindigkeit den entsprechenden Verhältnissen anzupassen.  
Das Auto nicht durch eine automatische Waschanlage mit montiertem Lastenträger fahren.

**Der Hersteller reserviert sich gegen Schäden, verursacht durch falsche Montage des Lastenträgers und den Zubehöerteilen.**

**BEMERKUNG:**  
**Mit montiertem Lastenträger können Windgeräusche entstehen. Wenn die Geräuschbelästigung störend ist, empfehlen wir den Lastenträger bei Nichtbenutzung abzubauen.**

**F** **REMARQUES**  
Veuillez conserver les instructions de montage avec vos documents de bord.  
Veuillez considérer les points suivants:  
**\* La charge admissible est de 80 kg (le poids du porte-bagages de 5 kg inclus). Ne surcharger jamais. Contrôler dans le manuel l'endroit où le porte-bagages doit être monté ainsi que le poids maximum de charge utile permise. (Contrôler aussi dans l'annexe éventuelle de ces instructions de montage le poids maximum de charge utile permise.)**

Assurez-vous que la charge ne puisse pas se dégager ou causer des dégâts. La charge ne doit pas pouvoir se déplacer d'aucune direction.  
Lors du chargement du porte-bagages, veiller à ce que la charge soit répartie uniformément. Le centre de gravité de la charge doit se trouver le plus bas possible. En cas de petites charges très lourdes, il est conseillé de les mettre d'un côté de la barre au lieu de les mettre au milieu de la barre.  
En aucun cas la charge ne peut dépasser le contour de la voiture afin de ne pas entraver la circulation.

Veuillez contrôler tous les points de fixation avant chaque trajet. Veiller également à la bonne fixation de la charge. Contrôler la fixation des écrous et des attaches du porte-bagages après un court trajet d'essai. Exécuter ce contrôle avant chaque départ.

Une certaine usure de la peinture peut être provoquée à l'endroit où les plaques-supports reposent sur le toit. Pour éviter cela nous recommandons que le toit soit bien nettoyé (poussières et autres saletés) avant le montage du porte-bagages. Il est aussi recommandé d'enlever le porte-bagages à intervalles réguliers pour nettoyer le toit.

Soyez conscient que le comportement de la voiture est différent (sensibilité au vent latéral, tenue de route en virage et freinage) lors de la conduite avec un porte-bagages monté (chargé).  
Afin d'assurer la sécurité des autres usagers de la route et d'économiser du carburant, il est conseillé de démonter le porte-bagages quand il n'est plus utilisé.

**Avis de sécurité**  
**IMPORTANT:** Ce porte-bagages est spécialement adapté à votre voiture. En cas de changement du modèle de voiture, il faut contrôler chez le vendeur quel type de porte-bagages est adéquat.  
Il résulte de rapports d'essai de l'industrie automobile et des revues professionnelles que, lorsque le porte-bagages est utilisé pour le transport d'objets de grande surface (par exemple planche à voile, skibox), les forces sur le toit de la voiture augmentent à cause de l'augmentation de la résistance d'air. (Si vous transportez une planche à voile, le nez de la planche doit être dirigé vers le bas dans la direction de conduite.)  
La tenue de route de la voiture change également; il est donc conseillé d'adapter votre vitesse.  
Ne conduire pas la voiture dans un carwash quand le porte-bagages est installé.

**Le constructeur se décharge de toute responsabilité en cas de dommages causés par un porte-bagages et accessoires montés de façon non conformes aux instructions de montage.**

**REMARQUE:**  
**Il est possible que vous entendiez davantage de bruits aérodynamique ou de bruits de frontement dus au vent suite à l'installation de cette galerie sur votre véhicule. Si le niveau de bruit est désagréable , il faut démonter la galerie et ne l'utiliser que lorsque vous transportez des objets.**

## GB/USA

**CAUTION NOTES**  
Please keep this installation manual with your car papers.  
Please take the following points into account:  
**\*Maximum permissible load is 80 kg/176 lbs(incl the weight of the load carrier, 5 kg/11 lbs). Do not exceed this weight. Check in the appendix to these instructions and in the car instruction manual to see where the load carrier should be fitted and to ascertain the maximum permissible load.**

Make sure to fasten the load so that it cannot come loose or cause damage. Be careful to secure the load against movement in driving direction or sideways movements.  
When using the load carrier, please make sure that the weight is evenly distributed and that the centre of gravity of the load is kept as low as possible. If small, very heavy loads have to be carried, please put them on one side of the bar and not in the middle.  
The load must not protrude from the vehicle outline, in order not to endanger traffic.

Before driving, make sure that all fastening parts are fixed according to regulations. Please check also that the load is fastened properly. Stop after a short drive to check all screw connections, and especially the foot attachments, then check every time before driving.

There is some risk that the paint under these foot plates may fade. To avoid this, we recommend to clean the roof from dust or dirt before attaching the load carrier and to remove the load carrier at suitable intervals to clean the areas where the foot plates rest on the roof.  
Please pay attention to the altered behaviour of the vehicle (due to sidewind sensitivity, when driving in bends and when braking) when you drive a mounted (loaded) load carrier. To safeguard other road users, and in order to reduce air resistance, the load carrier should be dismantled if it is not used.

**Advice for your own security**  
**IMPORTANT:** This load carrier is especially designed for your car model. Please therefore check with your retailer which type of load carrier is needed when changing your car.  
Test reports from the automotive industry and trade journals prove that when objects with large surfaces are transported, (eg. surfboards, ski/transport boxes) the roof of the vehicle will be additionally strained due to the strongly increased air resistance. (When transporting a windsurfboard, the bow should point downwards in the driving direction.)  
The driving characteristics change as well; therefore we recommend you to adjust your speed accordingly.  
Do not put the car through an automatic car wash when the load carrier is mounted.  
**The manufacturer takes no responsibility for damage caused by an incorrectly fitted load carrier.**

**NOTICE:**  
**You may hear an increased level of wind noise or wind rush as a result of installing this rack on your vehicle. If the noise level is objectionable, the rack should be removed and installed only when utilized to transport something.**  
**When you mount the load carrier only, please stick the spoilers on the specified position in fig. 14.**

## S

**ANMÄRKNINGAR**  
Förvara denna monteringsanvisning tillsammans med fordonshandlingarna.  
Notera följande punkter:  
**\* Högsta tillåtna last är 80 kg (inkl lasthållarens vikt, 5 kg). Överskrid inte denna vikt. Kontrollera i bilens instruktionsbok var lasthållaren skall monteras samt bilens tillåtna taklast. (Kontrollera också eventuellt bifogat extrablad för tillåten taklast).**

Förankra lasten så att den inte kan lossna eller orsaka skada. Var noga med att surra lasten så att den inte kan röra sig i någon riktning.  
Var noga med att lastens vikt blir jämnt fördelad på lasthållaren och att tyngdpunkten blir så låg som möjligt. Vid transport av små, mycket tunga laster skall dessa placeras på lastskenans ena sida och inte på dess mitt.  
Av trafiksäkerhetsskäl får lasten inte skjuta ut utanför bilens utsidor.

Kontrollera före färd att alla fästansordningar är fixerade enligt föreskrift. Kontrollera också att lasten är surrad ordentligt. Stanna efter en kort körsträcka och kontrollera att alla skruvförband, och då speciellt fotstöden, sitter fast. Kontrollera därefter före varje färd.

Viss risk föreligger att avmattnig i lacken kan uppstå där fotplattorna vilar mot taket. För att undvika detta rekommenderar vi att taket görs helt rent från damm och smuts före montering samt att lasthållaren tas av med jämna intervaller för rengöring av taket.

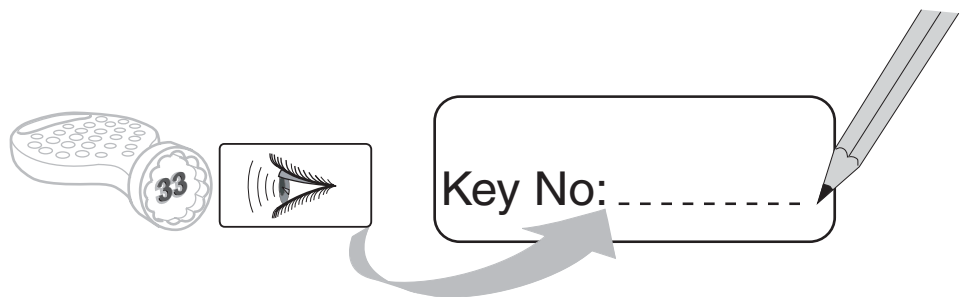
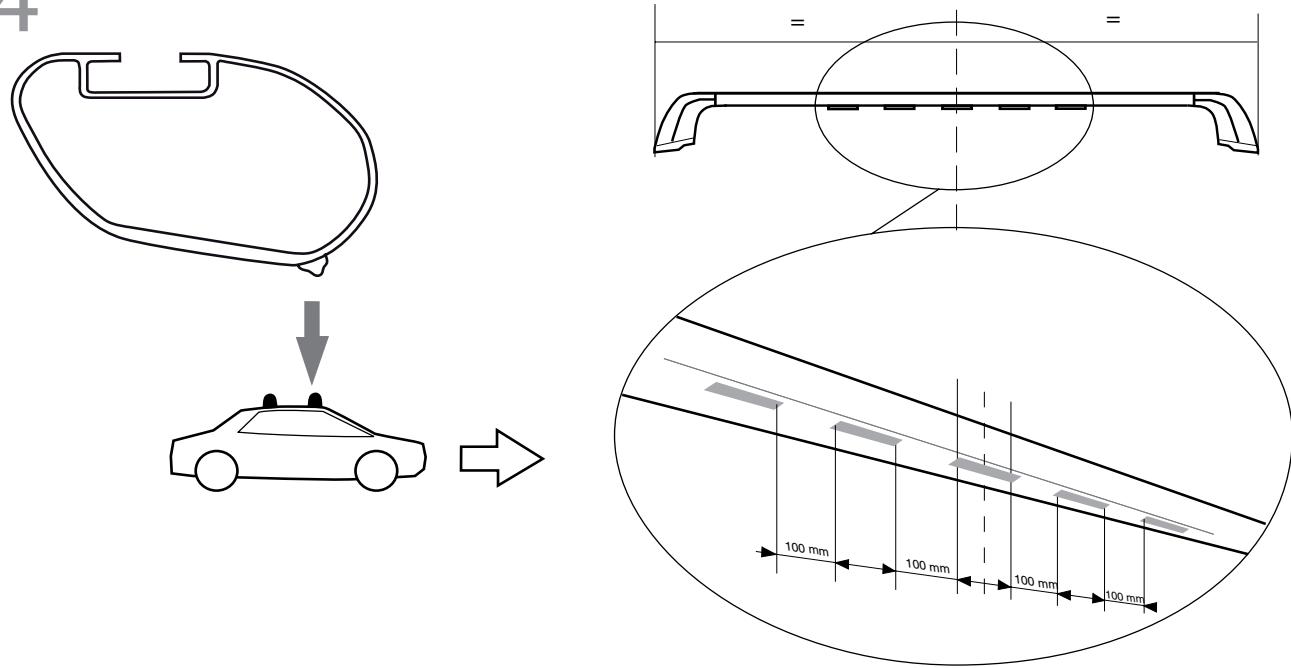
Observera bilens förändrade köregenskaper (sidvindskänslighet, vid kurvor och inbromsningar) vid färd med monterad (lastad) lasthållare.  
Av trafiksäkerhetsskäl och för att minska luftmotståndet, bör lasthållaren monteras av när den inte används.

**Råd för Er egen säkerhet**  
**VIKTIGT:** Denna lasthållare är anpassad för Din bilmodell. Kontrollera därför med återförsäljaren vilken typ av lasthållare som erfordras vid byte av bilmodell.  
Testrapporter från bilindustrin och facktidskrifter visar att när omfångsrika föremål transporteras (t ex surfbådor, skid-/transportboxar) utsätts bilaket för ytterligare belastning p g a det starkt ökade luftmotståndet.  
(Vid transport av vindsurfbråda skall den böjda änden peka neråt i körriktningen.)  
Bilens köregenskaper förändras också - därför rekommenderar vi att anpassa hastigheten.  
Låt inte bilen genomgå automatvätt när lasthållaren är påmonterad.

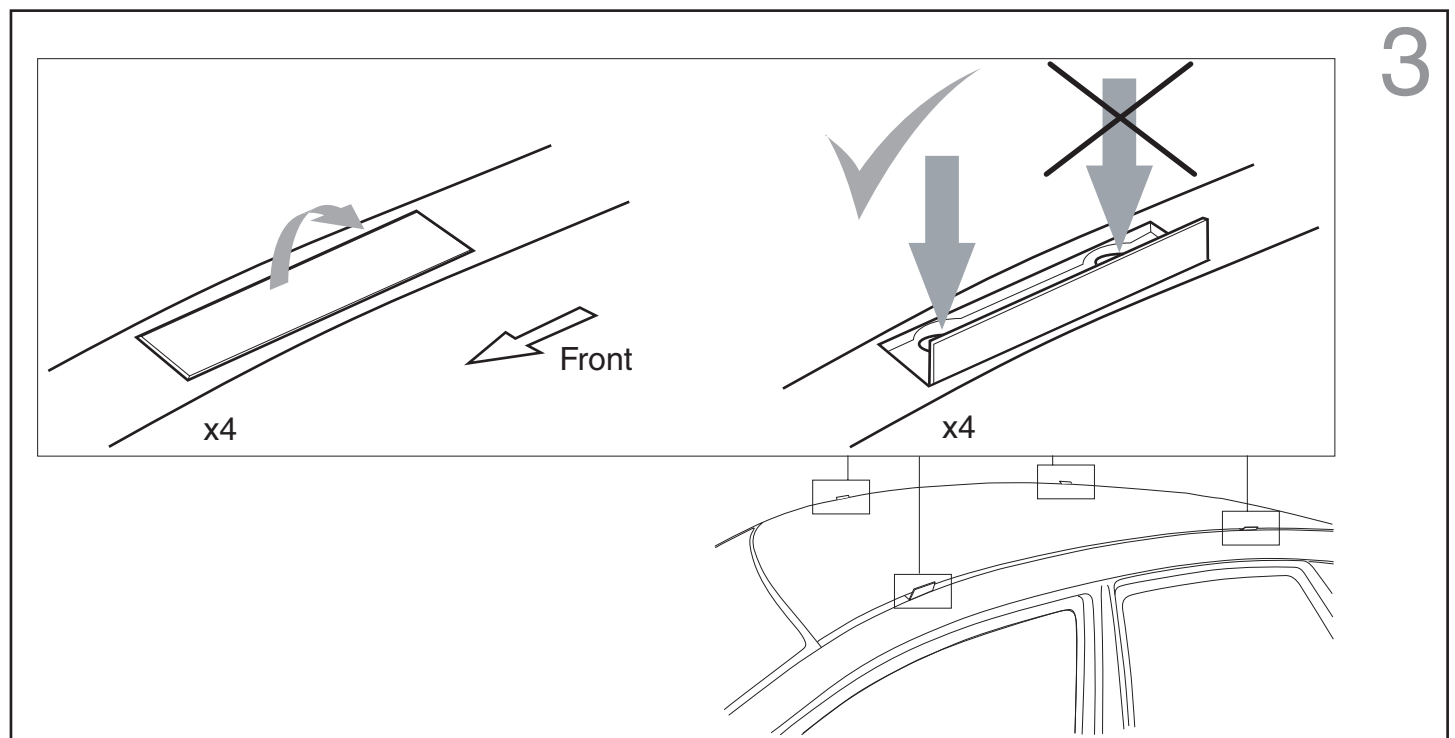
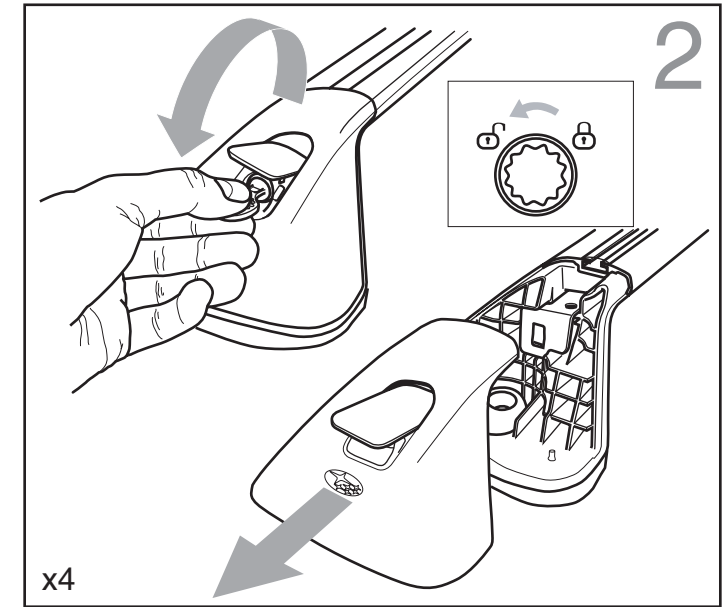
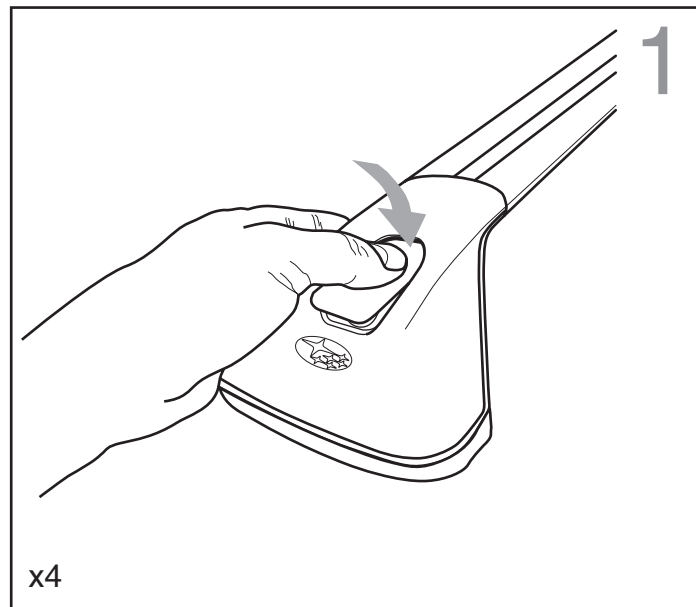
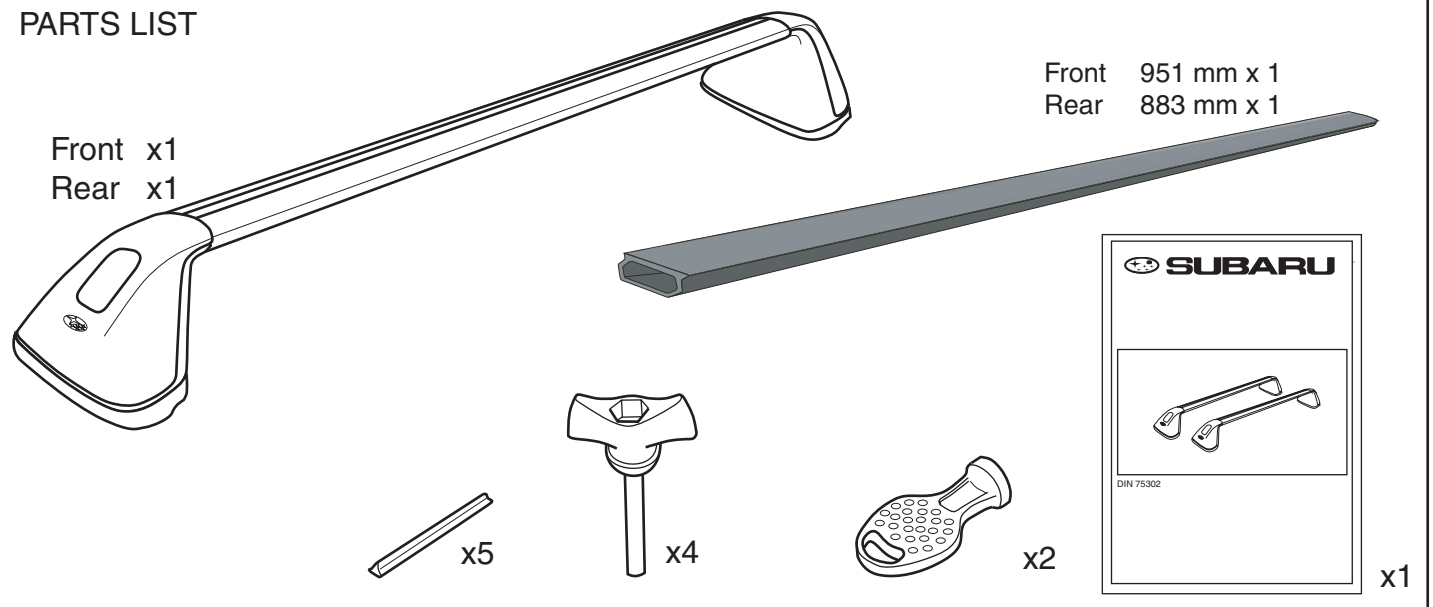
**Tillverkaren reserverar sig mot skador orsakade av felaktigt monterad lasthållare och tillbehör.**

**MEDDELANDE:**  
**Ett ökat störande ljud kan förekomma på grund av lasthållarens montering på bilen. Det är indikerat att ta bort hållaren från taket och montera den på bilen enbart vid behov om ljudnivån är obehaglig.**

14

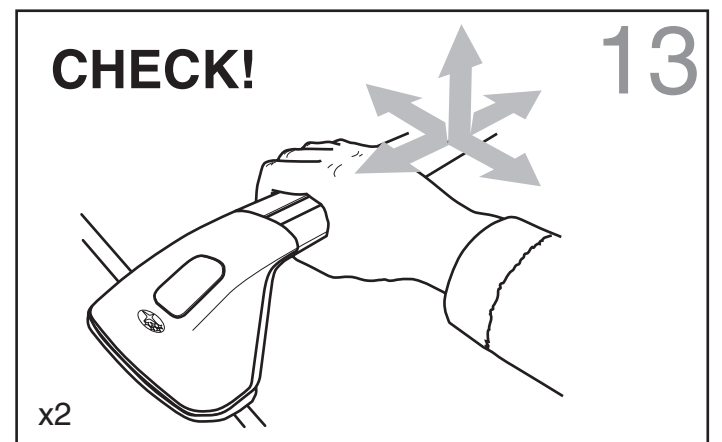
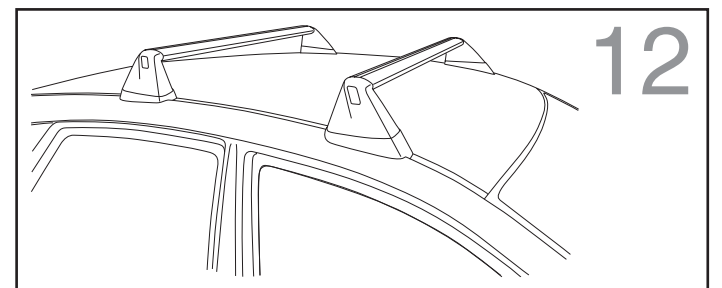
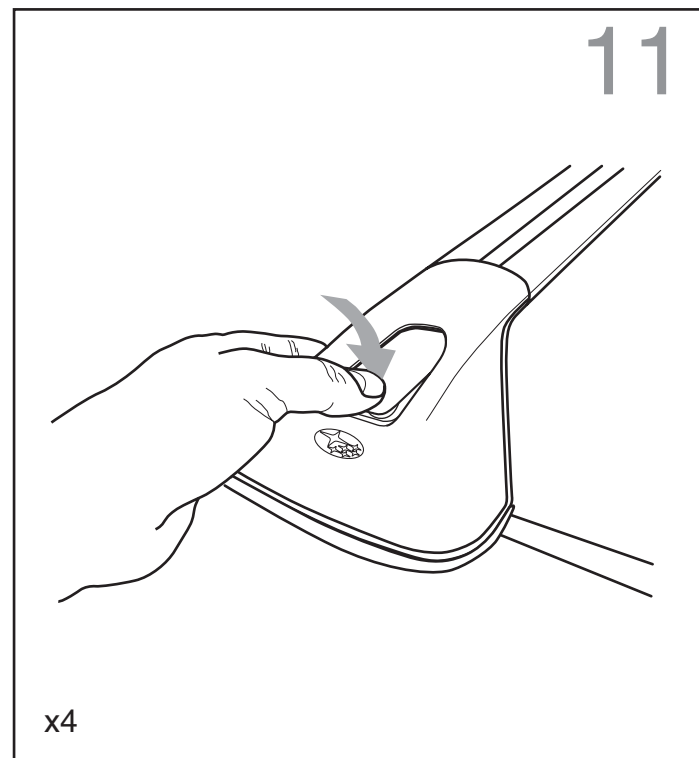
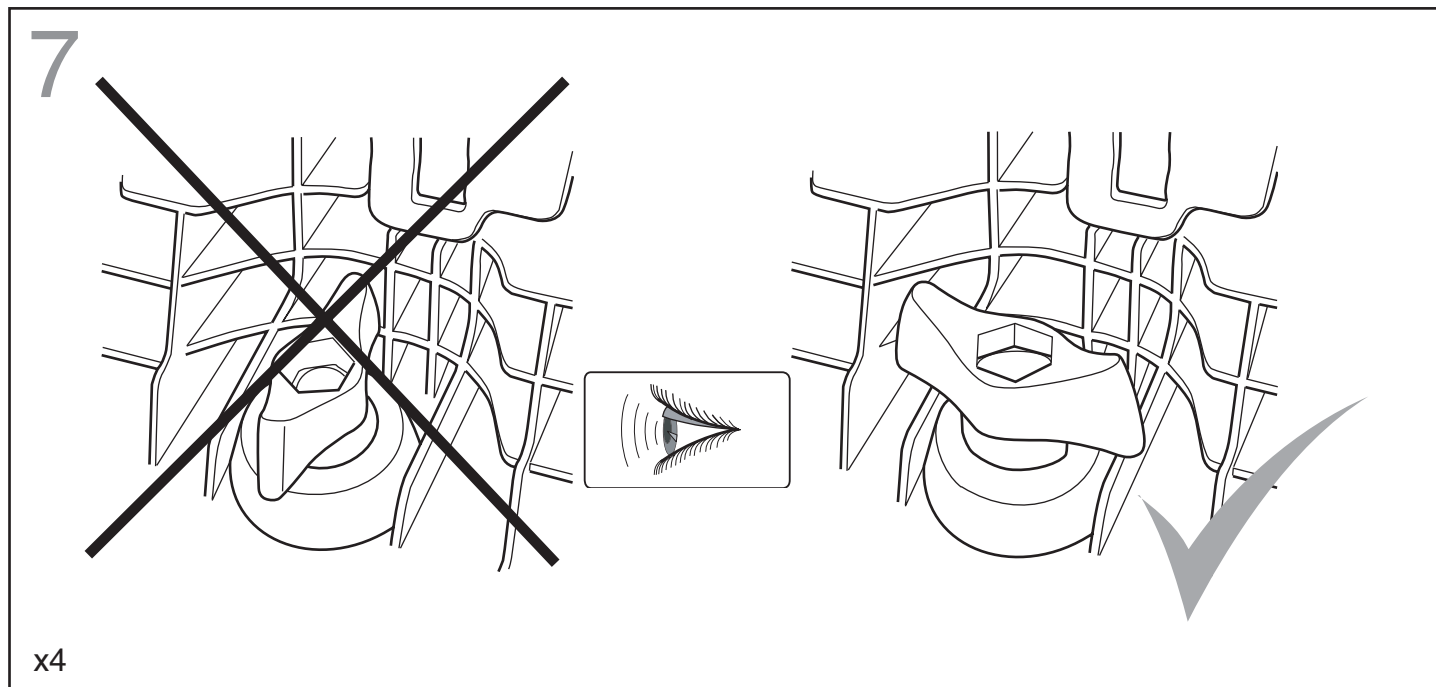
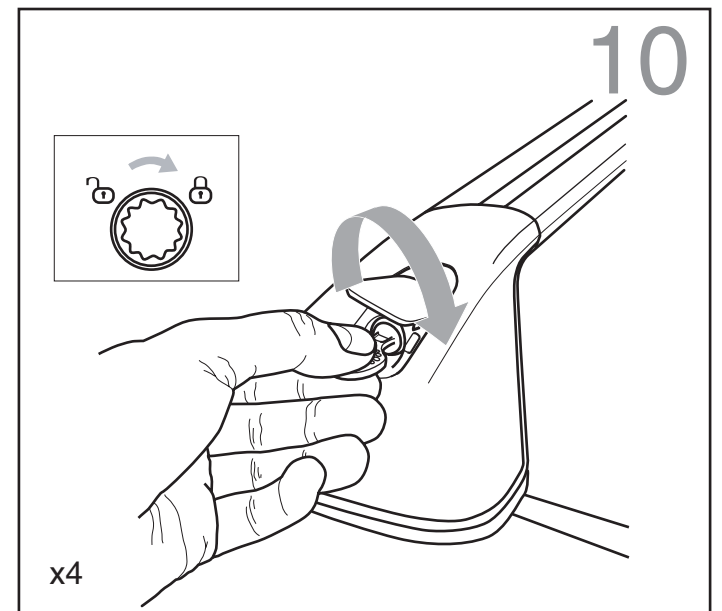
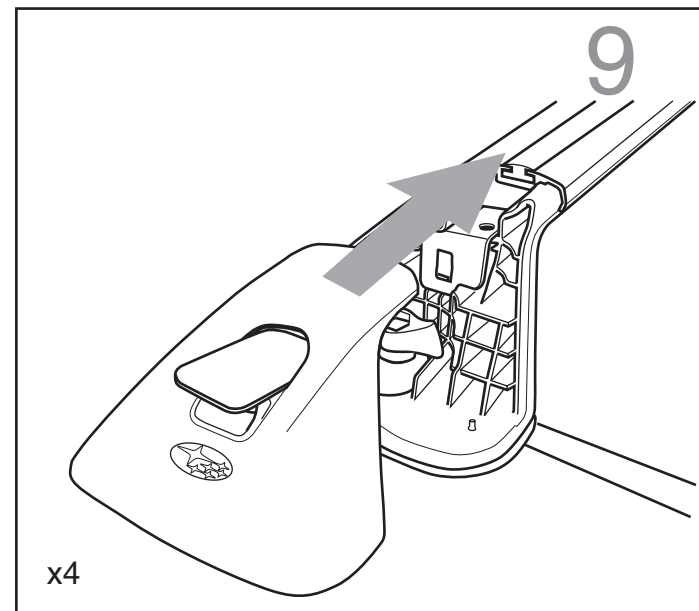
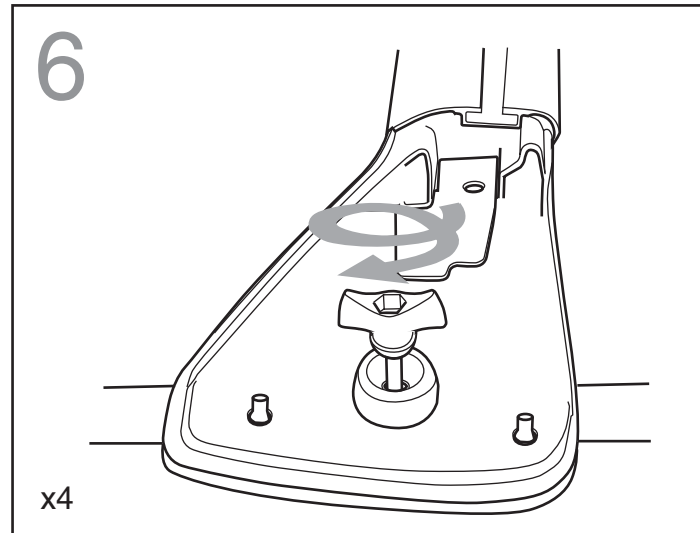
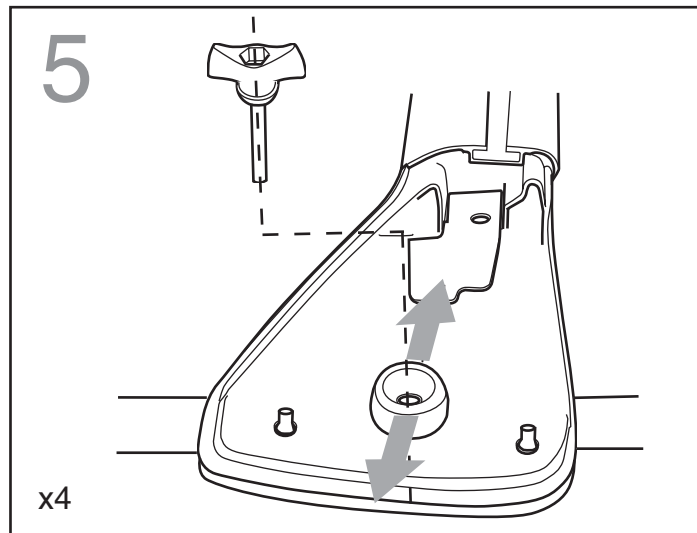
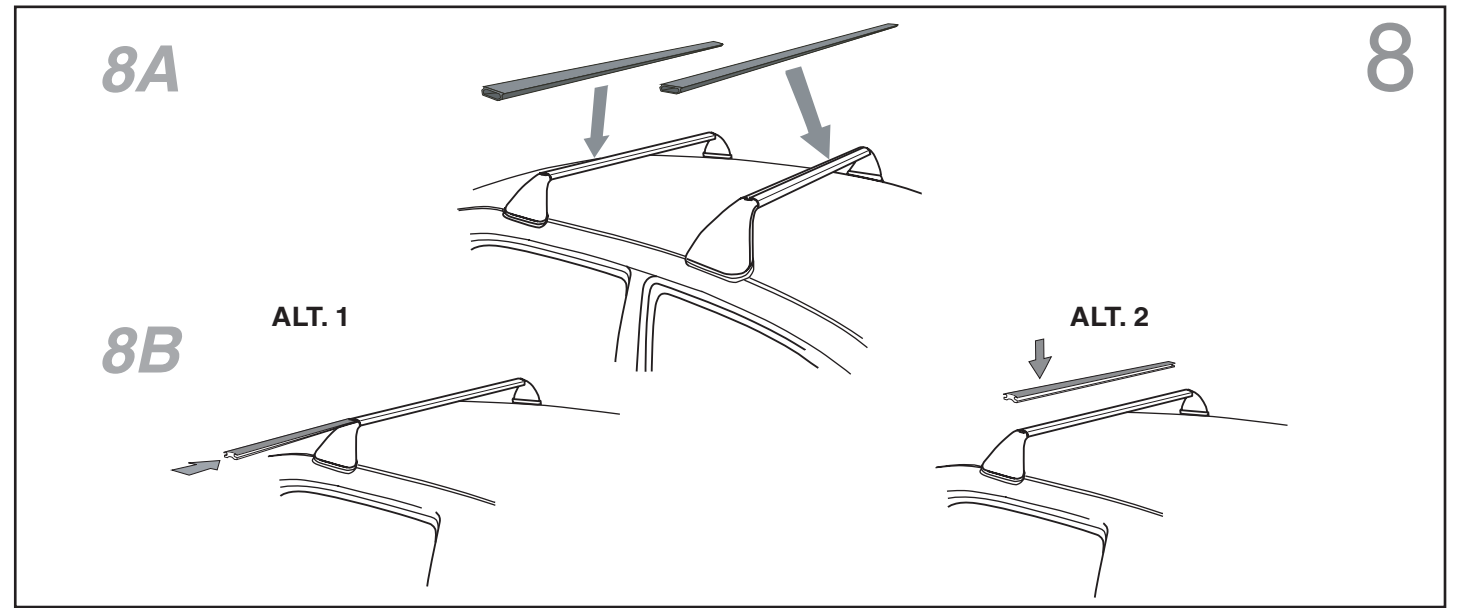
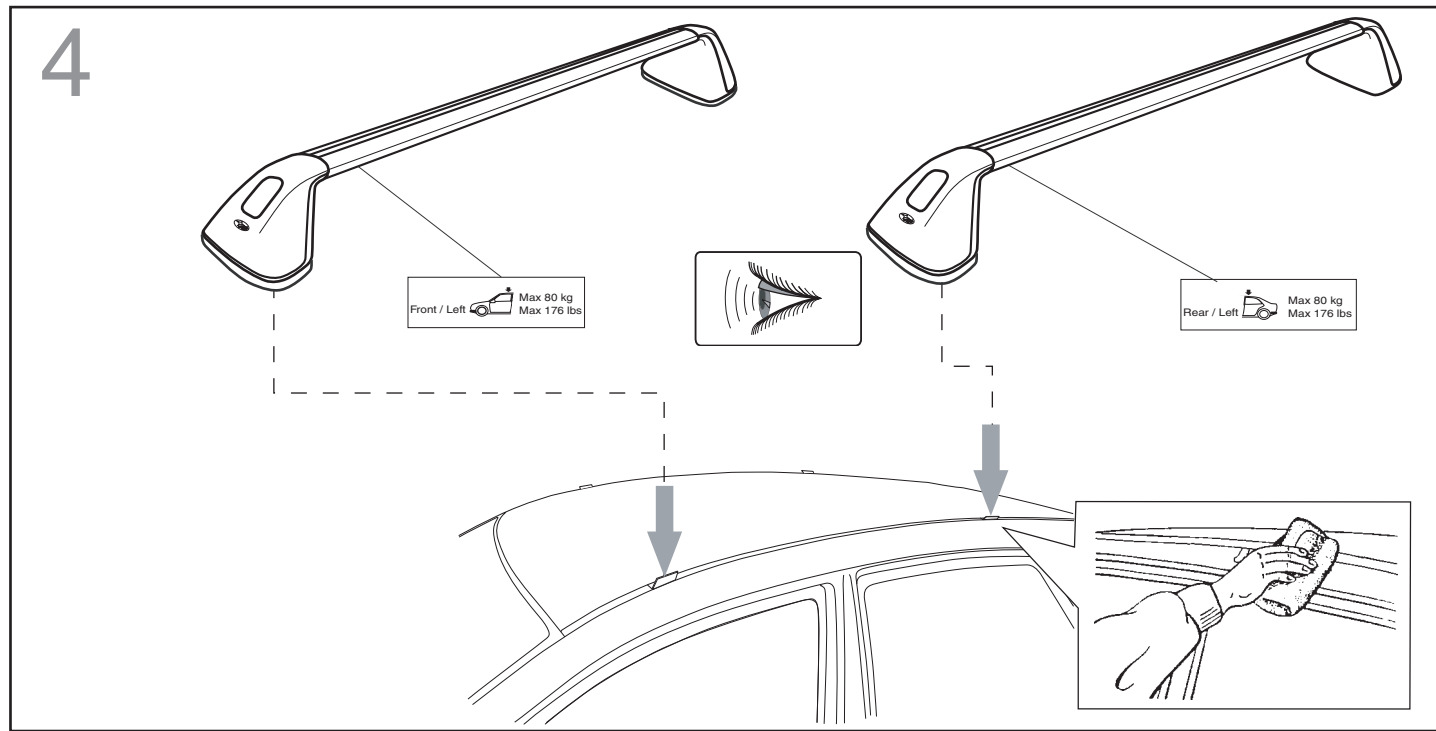


PARTS LIST



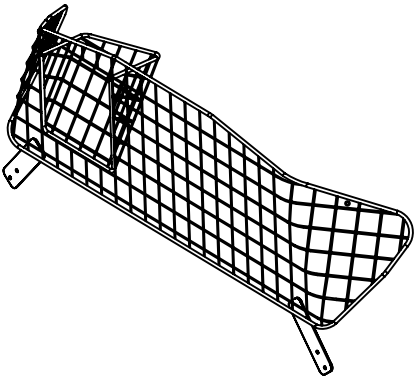

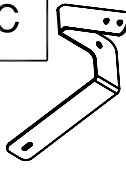
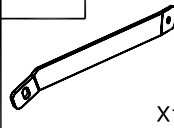








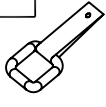

- (D) Geltende Rechte und Vorschriften müssen verfolgt werden bezüglich Verwendungsweise für Lastenträger und Zubehör.
- (GB/USA) Be sure to follow the national rules and legislations in force regarding method of application of load carriers and accessories.
- (S) Gällande nationella lagkrav och föreskrifter skall följas vad avser användningssätt för lasthållare och tillbehör.
- (F) Les arrêtés et lois nationaux en vigueur doivent être suivis lors de l'emploi du porte-bagages et des ses accessoires.
- (FIN) Taakkatelineiden ja niiden lisätarvikkeiden käyttöä koskevia kansallisia lakeja ja muita säännöksiä on aina noudatettava.
- (NL) Wettelijke regels en voorschriften ten aanzien van gebruik van allesdragers en accessoires moeten in acht worden genomen.
- (E) Reglas nacionales exigidas e instrucciones vigentes tienen que ser cumplidas al respecto del modo de uso de carga equipajes y accesorios.
- (J) 積載物の大きさは、道路交通法施行令第2条3項に従ってください。



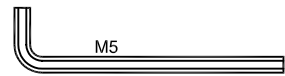
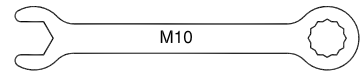
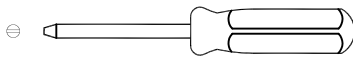
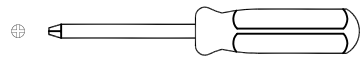


## INSTALLATION INSTRUCTIONS

DESCRIPTION: COMPARTMENT SEPARATOR

A					B	C	D	E
					 X1	 X1	 X1	 X1
J	K	L	M	N	F	G	H	I
					 X2	 X2	 X2	 X6
 X2	 X2	 X2	 X2	 X2				

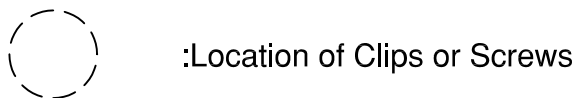
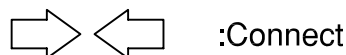
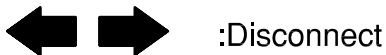
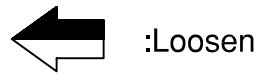
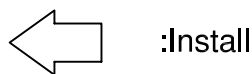
### TOOLS REQUIRED



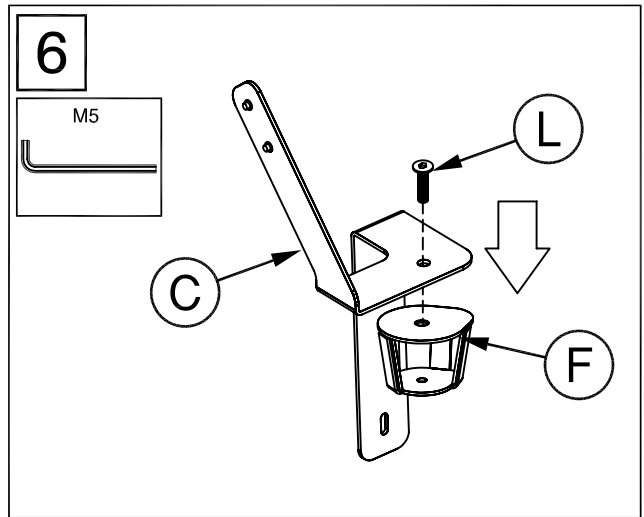
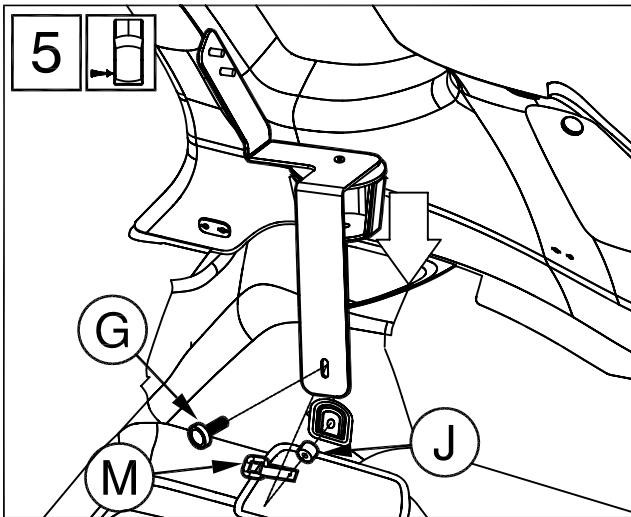
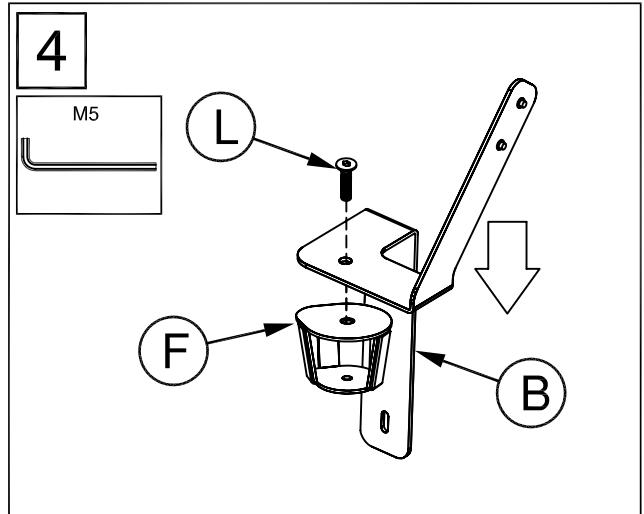
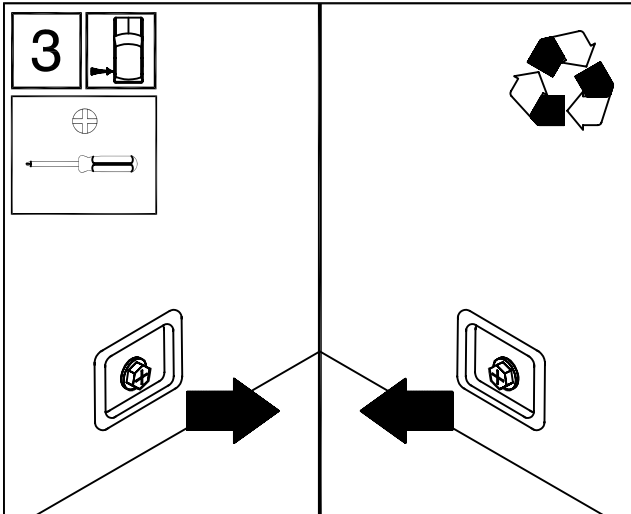
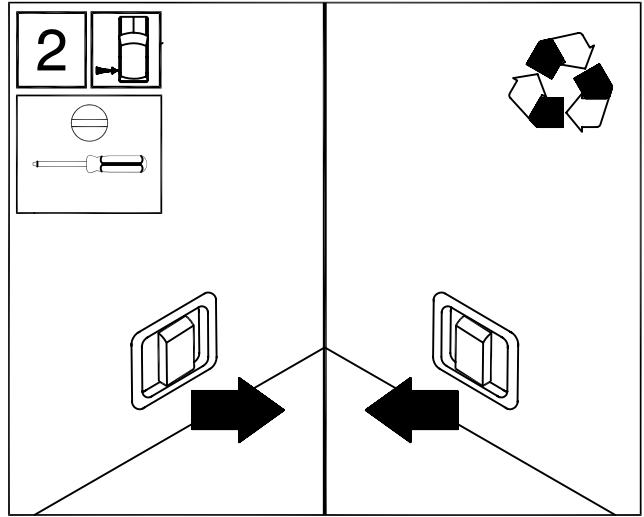
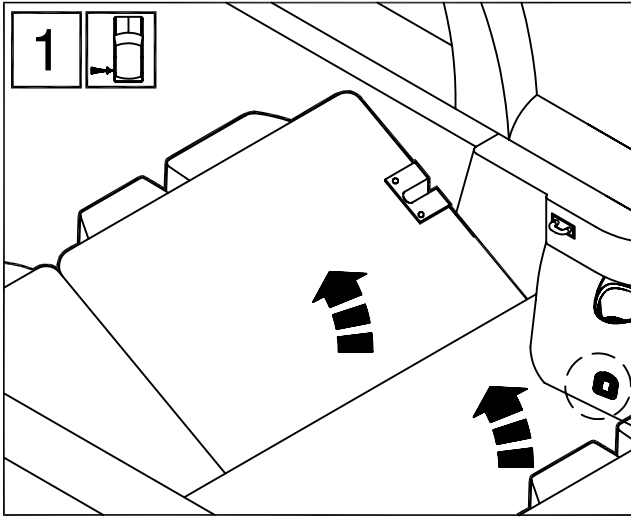
### Meaning of Characters:

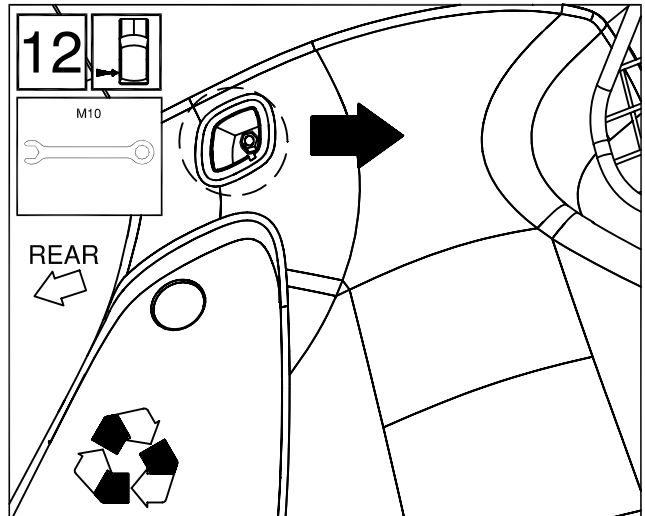
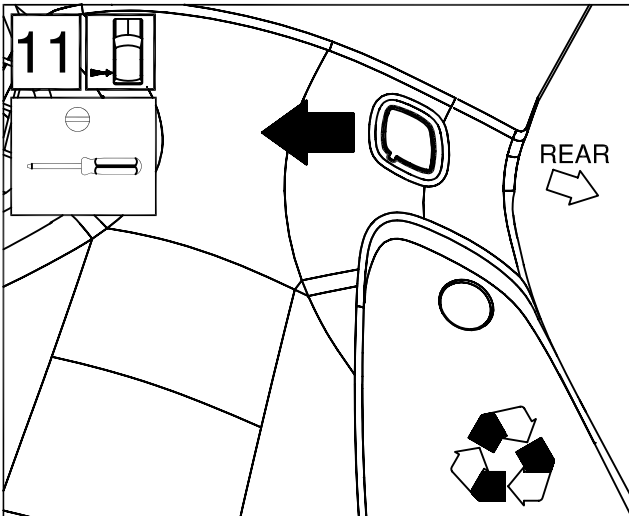
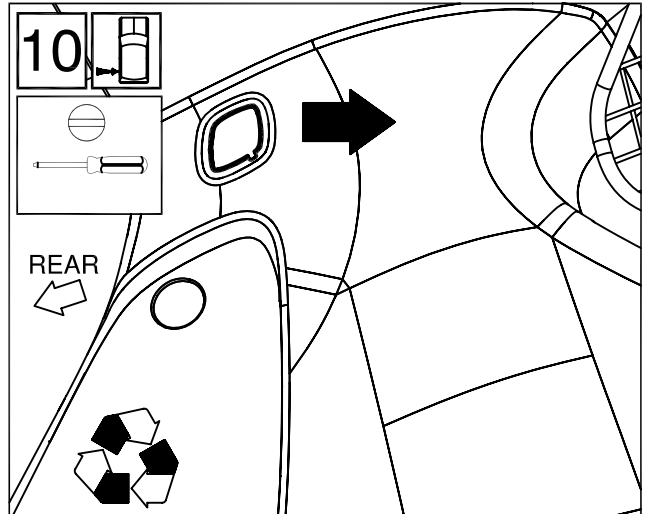
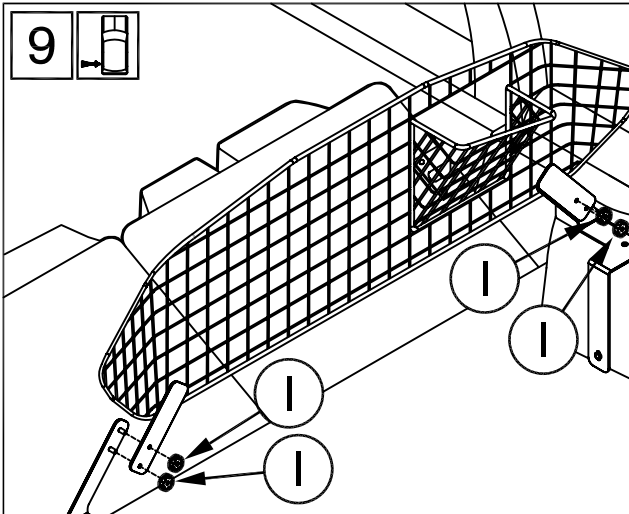
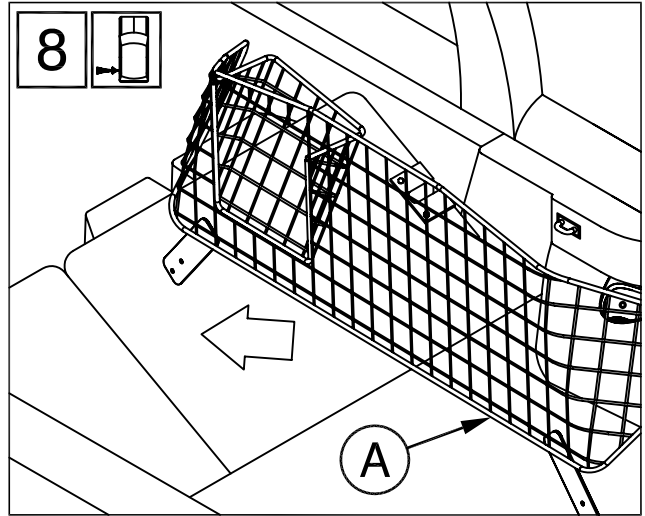
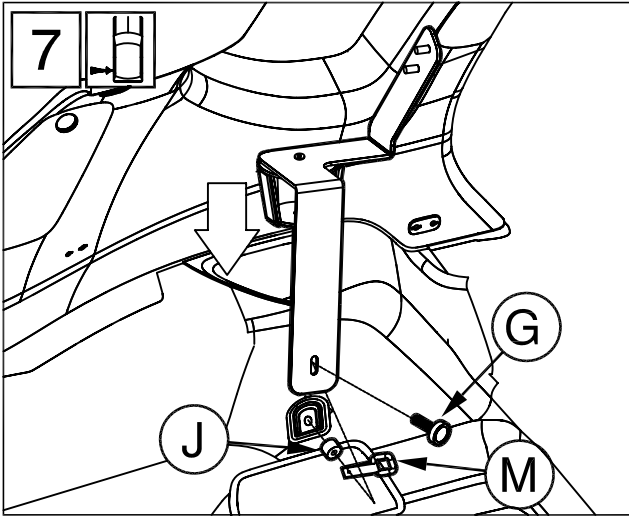


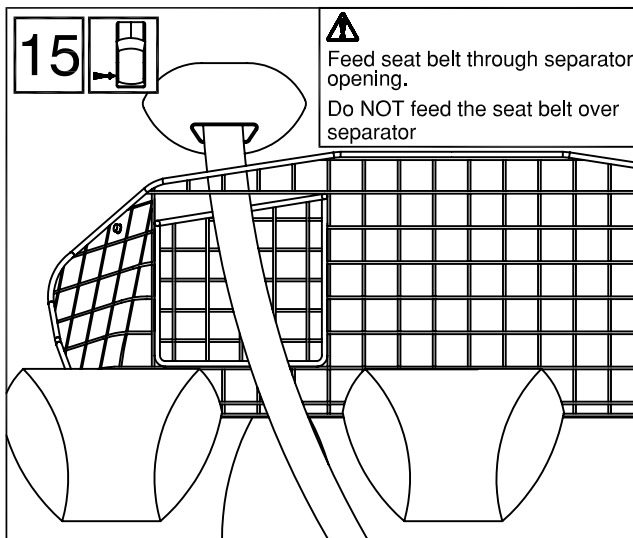
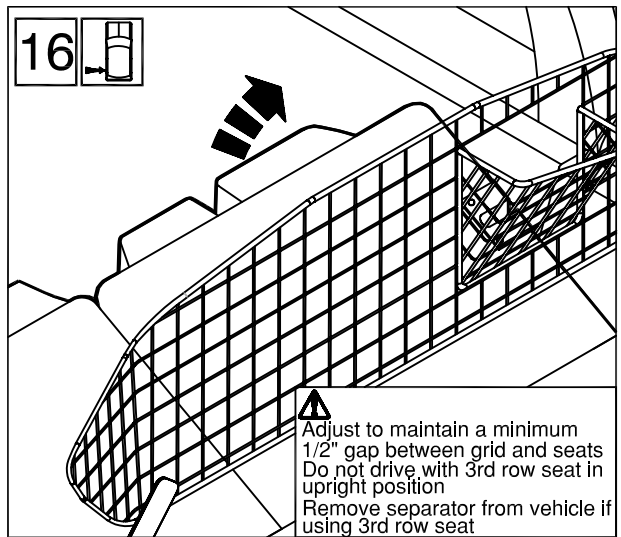
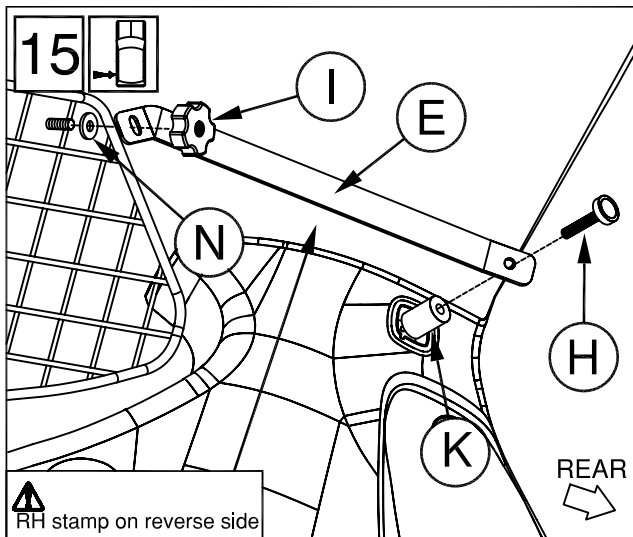
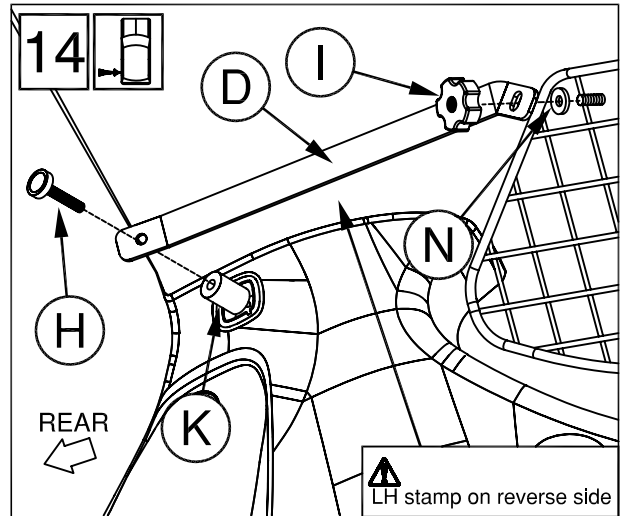
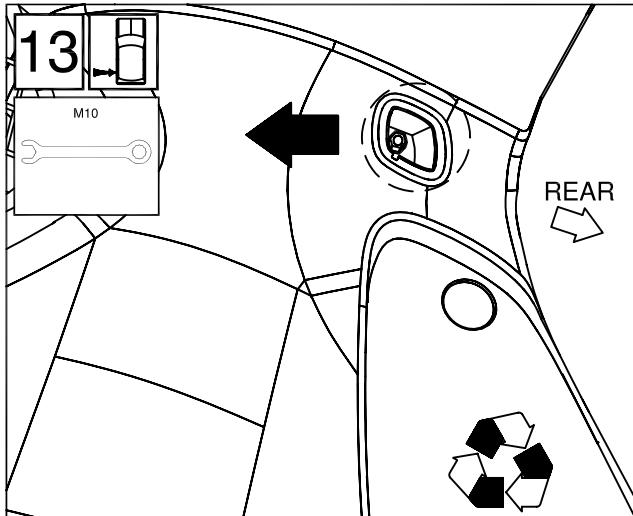
T :Tightening Torque













**SUBARU**

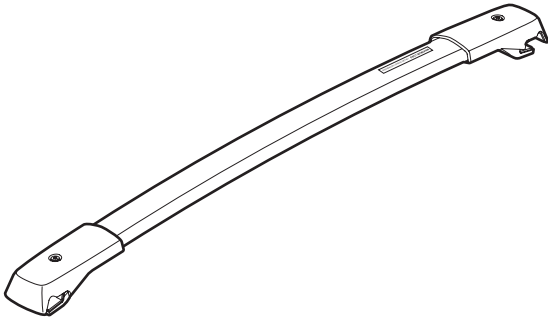
PART NUMBER: E361SXA400

DESCRIPTION: CROSSBAR KIT

**INSTALLATION  
INSTRUCTIONS**

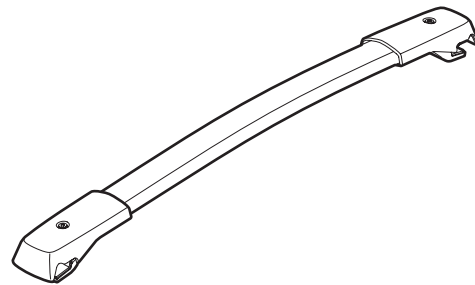
FOR TRIBECA ROOF RAILS

**A KIT CONTENTS:**



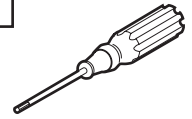
Front Crossbar Assembly 1x

**B**



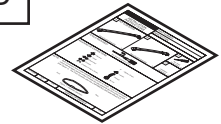
Rear Crossbar Assembly 1x

**C**



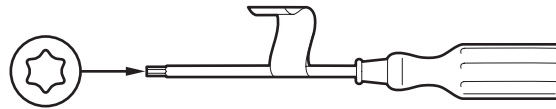
Torx Head  
Screw Driver 1x

**D**



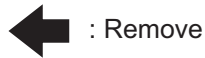
Installation  
Instructions 1x

**TOOLS REQUIRED**



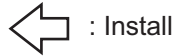
Torx Head Screwdriver (T-30)

**MEANING OF CHARACTERS:**

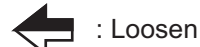


: Remove

T : Tighten Torque



: Install



: Loosen



: Disconnect



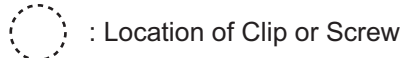
: Discard



: Connect



: Re use



: Location of Clip or Screw

**NOTE:** Both Crossbars have a label indicating the direction of mount. If they are not present, orient with the larger section of the Crossbar towards the front of vehicle (see Figure 1). The Front Crossbar has a MAXIMUM LOAD label affixed to it.



Figure 1 - Crossbar (section)

PART NUMBER  
E361SXA400

ISSUE  
01

DATE  
02/12/07

**SUBARU OF AMERICA**

PAGE  
1/2

**1 Front Crossbar**

MAXIMUM LOAD 150 LBS. EVENLY DISTRIBUTED

Note:  
Front Crossbar has Load Sticker and is longer than the Rear Crossbar.

**2 Front Crossbar**

**3 Front Crossbar**

Torque:  
30-35 in./lbs

Front of Vehicle

**4 Front Crossbar**

12"  
(300 mm)

Front of Vehicle

**5 Rear Crossbar**

Note:  
Rear Crossbar is shorter than the Front Crossbar.

**6 Rear Crossbar**

**7 Rear Crossbar**

Torque:  
30-35 in./lbs

Front of Vehicle

**8 Rear Crossbar**

2"  
(50 mm)

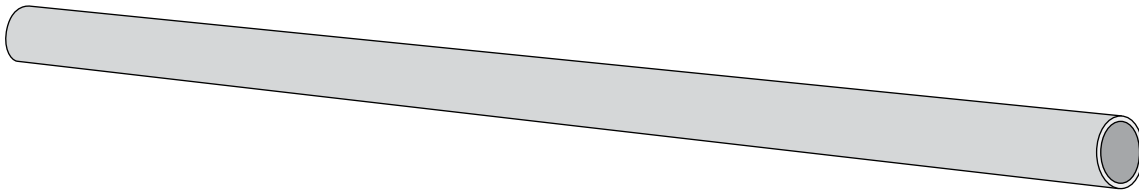
Front of Vehicle



## INSTALLATION INSTRUCTIONS

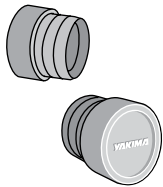
### KIT CONTENTS:

①



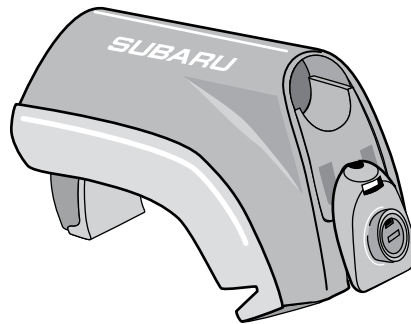
Crossbar 2x

②



Endcap 4x

③



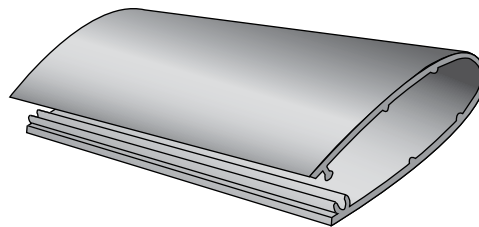
Tower 4x

④



Key 2x

⑤



Air Deflector 2x

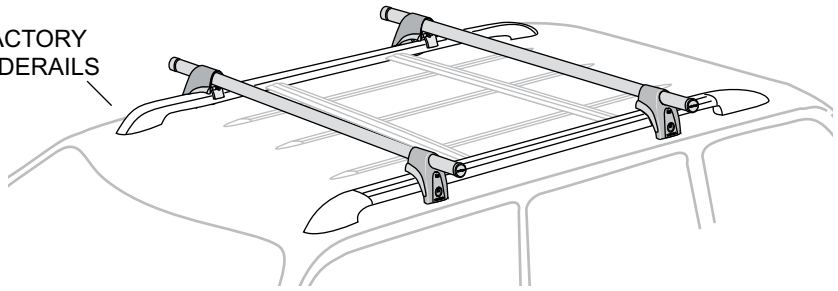
### TOOLS REQUIRED:

(none)

# 1. IMPORTANT NOTE: THIS PRODUCT IS DESIGNED FOR ASSEMBLY ON GENUINE SUBARU ROOF RAILS ONLY.

DUE TO POSSIBLE IMPROPER FIT AND THE DANGER THAT IT MAY DETACH, INSTALLATION ON OTHER ROOF RACKS IS NOT RECOMMENDED.

FACTORY  
SIDERAILS



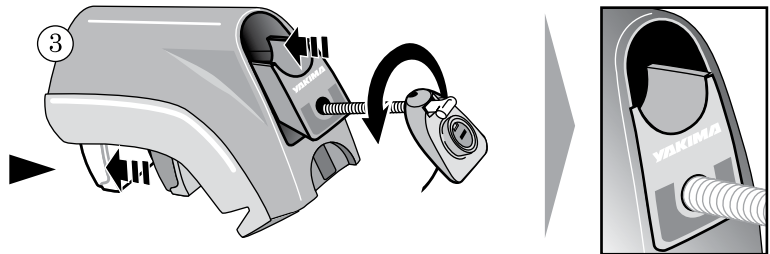
## MAXIMUM LOAD MUST NOT BE EXCEEDED.

THE LOAD LIMIT FOR THIS PRODUCT ON YOUR SUBARU SHOULD NOT EXCEED THE LOAD LIMIT SPECIFIED IN THE VEHICLE OWNER'S MANUAL, EVENLY DISTRIBUTED.

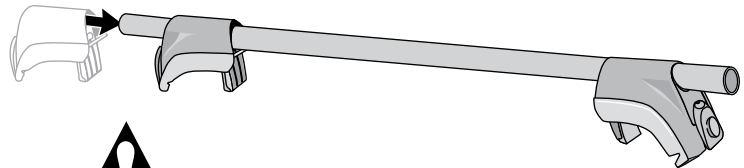
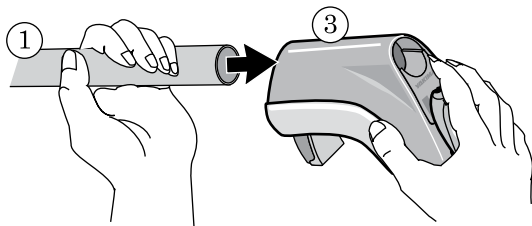
## 2. PREPARE TOWERS:

- LOOSEN KNOB, DO NOT REMOVE.
- MAKE SURE THE WEDGES ARE INSIDE THE TOWERS AND FLUSH WITH OUTER EDGES.

THE CLAMP SHOULD BE AS FAR BACK AS POSSIBLE.

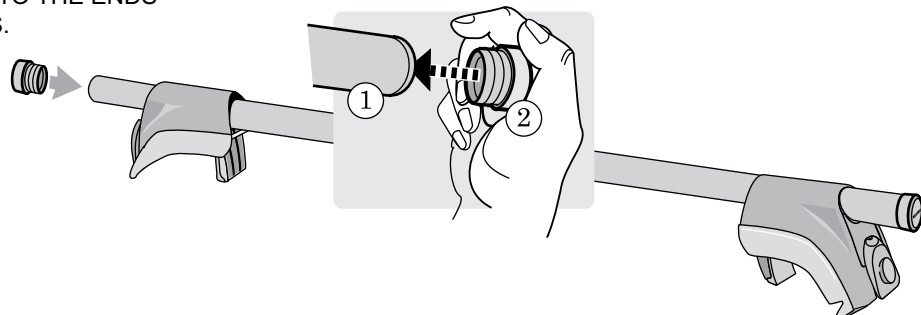


## 3. SLIDE TWO TOWERS ONTO EACH CROSSBAR WHILE KEEPING THE WEDGES IN PLACE.



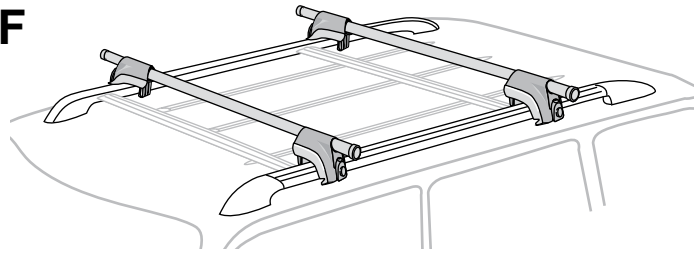
BE CAREFUL TO KEEP THE BARS HORIZONTAL; THE LOOSE TOWERS COULD SLIDE FROM THE BAR AND FALL.

## 4. PUSH END CAPS ONTO THE ENDS OF THE CROSSBARS.

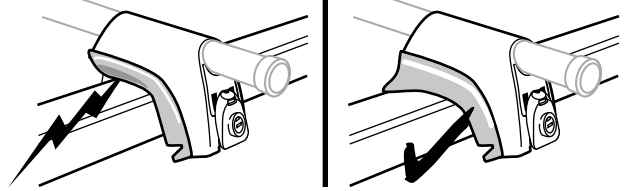


## 5. ON THE CAR'S ROOF

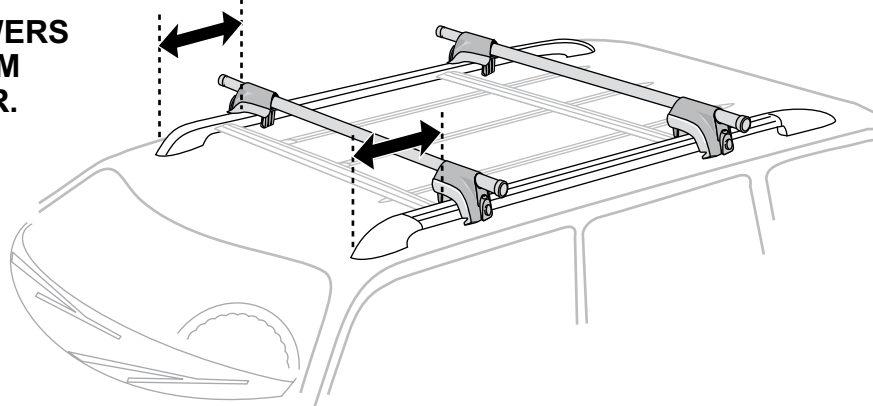
SET THE TOWERS AND BARS  
ONTO YOUR CAR'S ROOF RAILS.



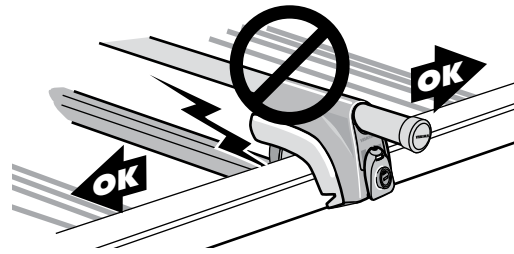
**KEEP THE PADS FROM  
CURLING AT THE SIDES WHEN  
POSITIONING THE TOWERS.**



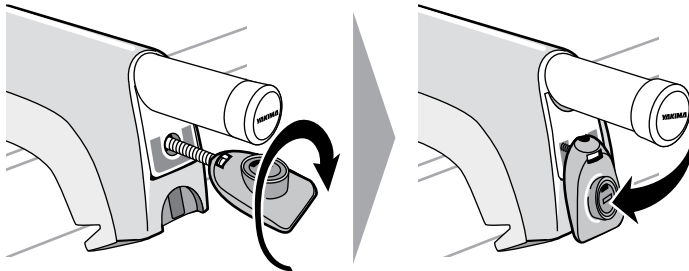
## 6. POSITION TOWERS EQUALLY FROM FRONT OF CAR.



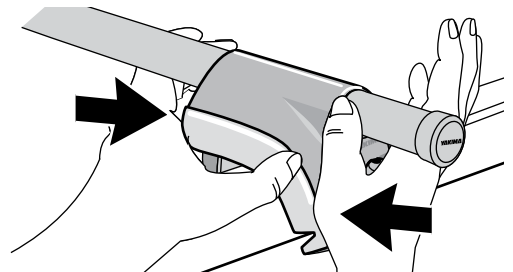
**YOU MAY NEED TO MOVE OR REMOVE THE  
EXISTING CROSSBARS IF THERE IS ANY  
INTERFERENCE WITH THE TOWERS.**



## 7. TIGHTEN THE FRONT TOWERS BY ROTATING THE LEVER UNTIL IT CLOSES WITH FIRM RESISTANCE.

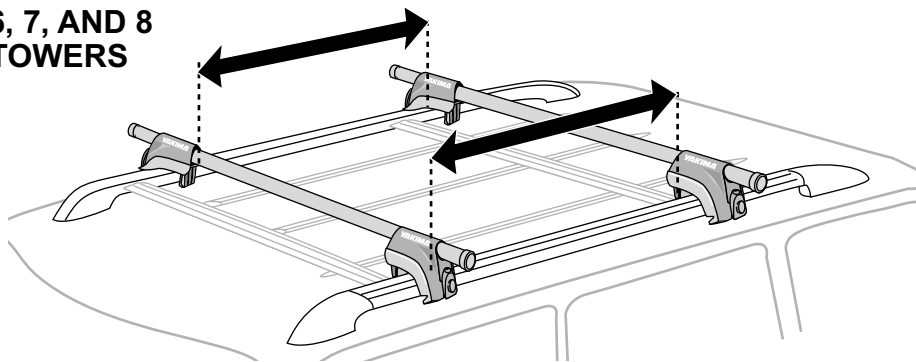


**WHEN TIGHTENING, MAKE  
SURE THE TOWERS GRIP THE  
FACTORY RAILS SECURELY.**



**8. REPEAT STEPS 5, 6, 7, AND 8 TO ATTACH REAR TOWERS AND CROSSBAR.**

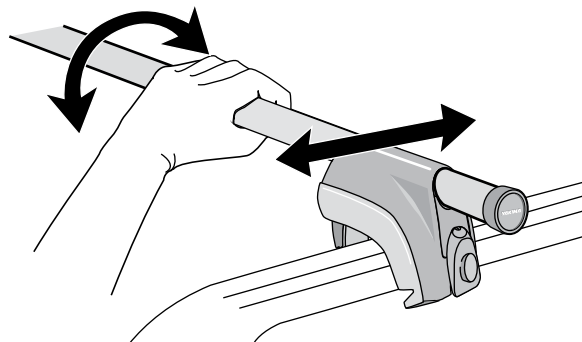
POSITION TOWERS  
EQUAL DISTANCE  
FROM FRONT TOWERS.



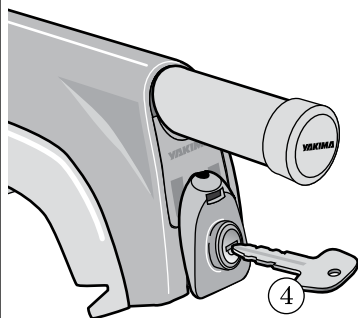
**9.  IMPORTANT! TEST THE INSTALLATION:**

**GRAB THE CROSSBAR NEAR THE TOWERS AND PULL BACK AND FORTH.**

**IF THE TOWER SLIDES OR CROSSBAR CAN ROTATE, CHECK TOWER FOR TIGHTNESS AND RETIGHTEN LEVER.**

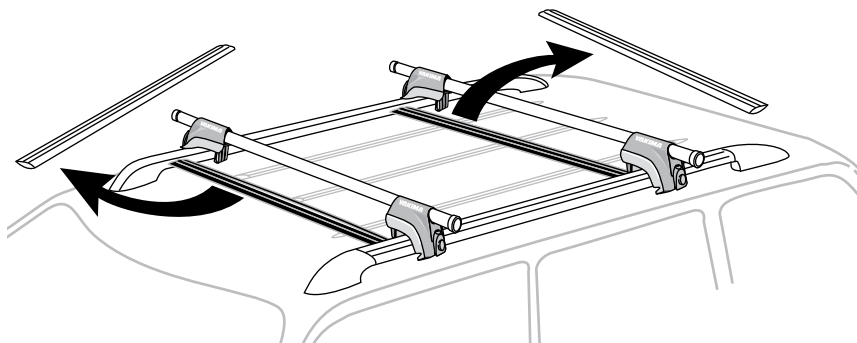


**10. LOCK THE RACKS TO THE FACTORY BARS.**



**11. PREVENT BAR INTERFERENCE:**

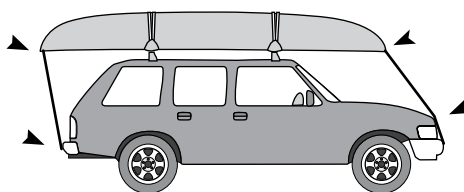
**IF ANY PART OF AN ACCESSORY OR TOWER CONTACTS THE EXISTING CROSSBARS, AND THE EXISTING BARS CANNOT MOVE OUT OF THE WAY, REMOVE THEM COMPLETELY.**



**12. ALWAYS SECURE LONG LOADS!**



**SECURE FRONT AND REAR OF LONG LOADS TO ENDS OF VEHICLE.**  
**FAILURE TO DO SO COULD RESULT IN PROPERTY DAMAGE, PERSONAL INJURY, OR DEATH.**



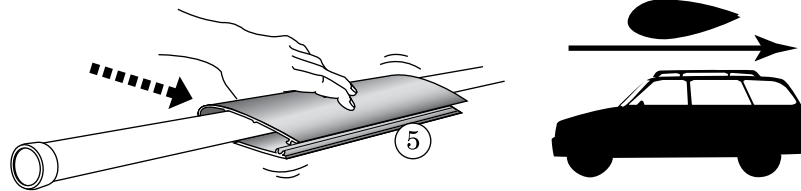
### 13. NOTICE:

THIS CLAMP-ON RACK IS INTENDED FOR USE WITH OTHER GENUINE SUBARU RACK MOUNTED ACCESSORIES, SUCH AS THE BIKE RACK, SKI RACK, KAYAK STACKER, AND ROOF CARGO BASKET.

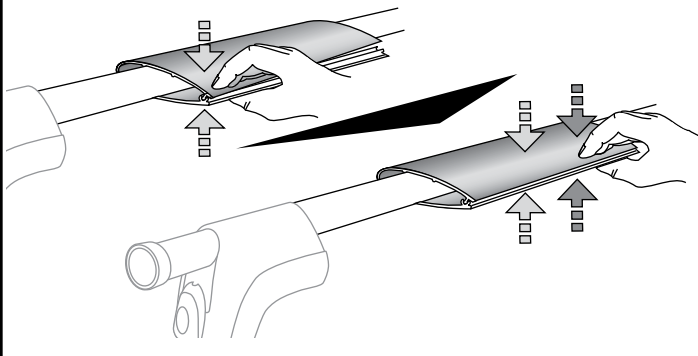
YOU MAY HEAR AN INCREASED LEVEL OF WIND NOISE OR WIND RUSH SOUND AS A RESULT OF INSTALLING THIS RACK ON YOUR VEHICLE. IF THE NOISE LEVEL IS OBJECTIONABLE, THE RACK BARS SHOULD BE MOVED REARWARD ON THE VEHICLE OR REMOVED AND INSTALLED ONLY WHEN UTILIZED TO TRANSPORT SOMETHING.

### 14. INSTALL AIR DEFLECTORS TO FRONT AND REAR CROSSBARS.

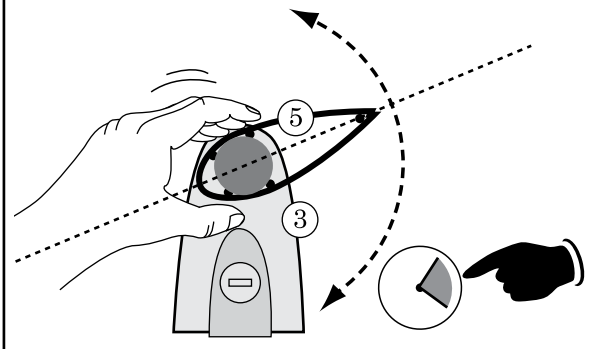
FACE AIR DEFLECTORS OPENING TO REAR OF VEHICLE.



### 15. PRESS EDGES TO CLOSE DEFLECTORS.



### 16. ANGLE UPWARD SLIGHTLY.



### 17. CAUTION

ATTACHMENT HARDWARE CAN LOOSEN OVER TIME.  
CHECK AND TIGHTEN IF NECESSARY, BEFORE EACH USE.

### 18. REMOVING THE RACKS

LOOSEN THE TOWERS BY ROTATING EACH LEVER UNTIL THE CLAW IS DISENGAGED FROM THE RAIL.

### INSTALLING RACKS AGAIN

- BEGIN AT STEP 5.
- PERFORM SAFETY CHECKS ON ALL TOWERS AFTER INSTALLATION (STEP 9)!

### 19. MAINTENANCE

USE NON-WATER SOLUBLE LUBRICANT ON BOLTS. USE A SOFT CLOTH WITH WATER AND MILD DETERGENT TO CLEAN PLASTIC PARTS.

### AUTOMATIC CAR WASH

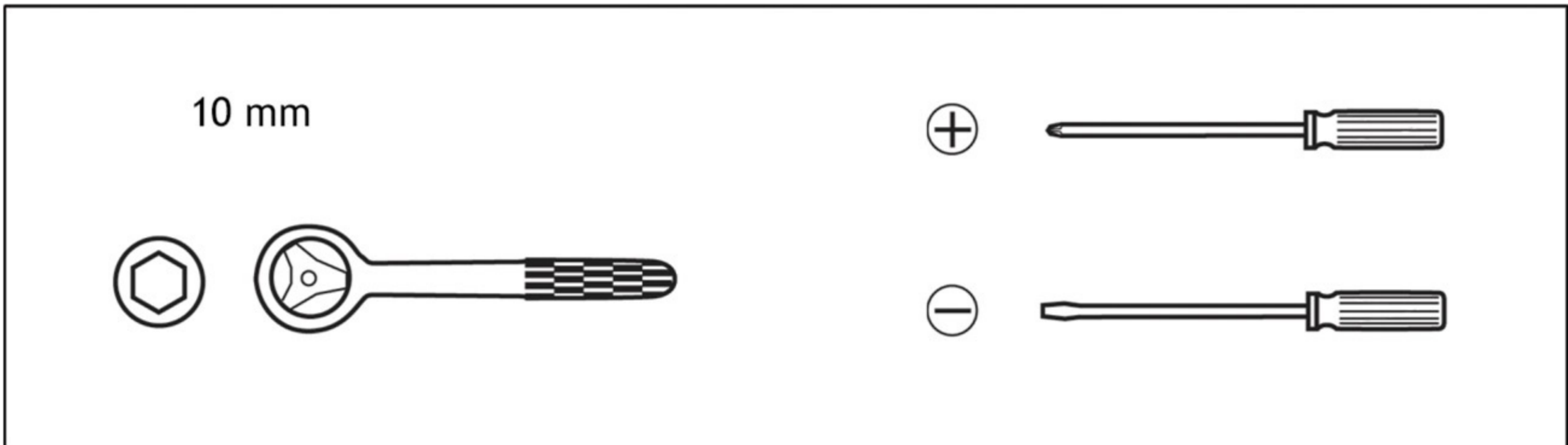
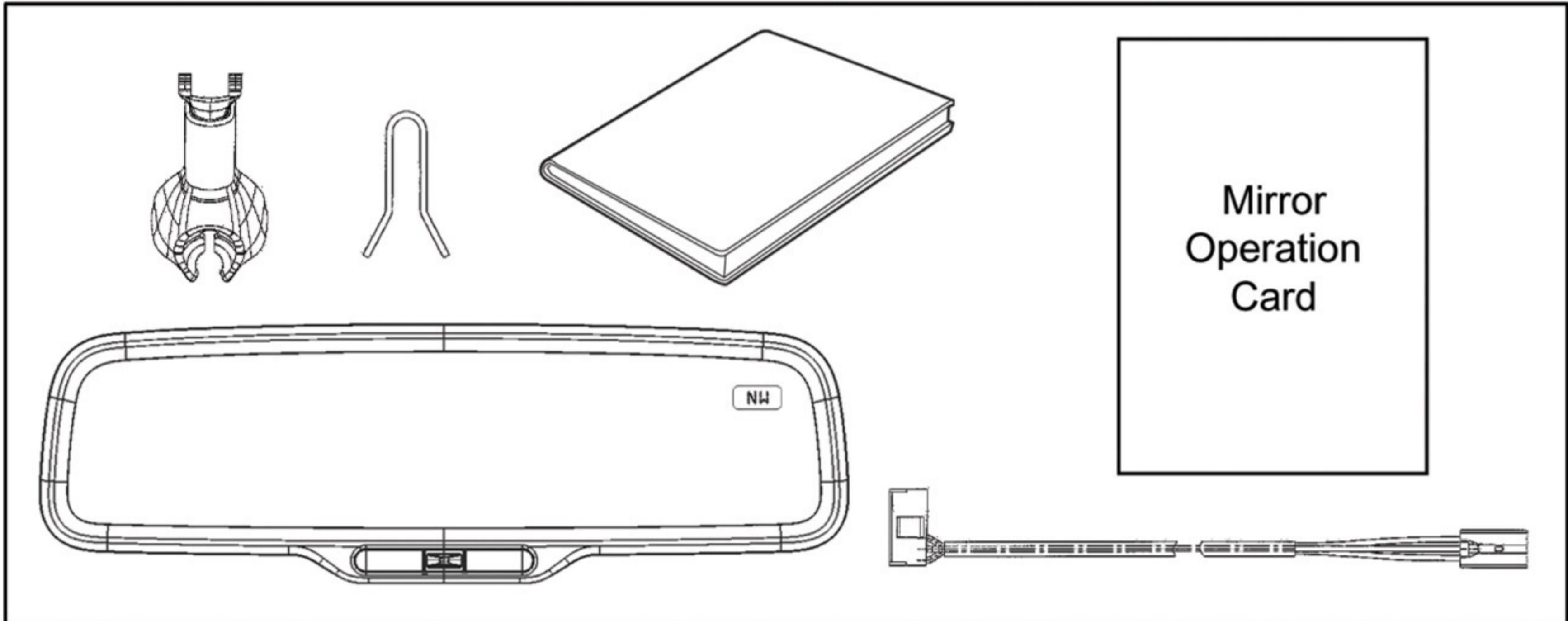
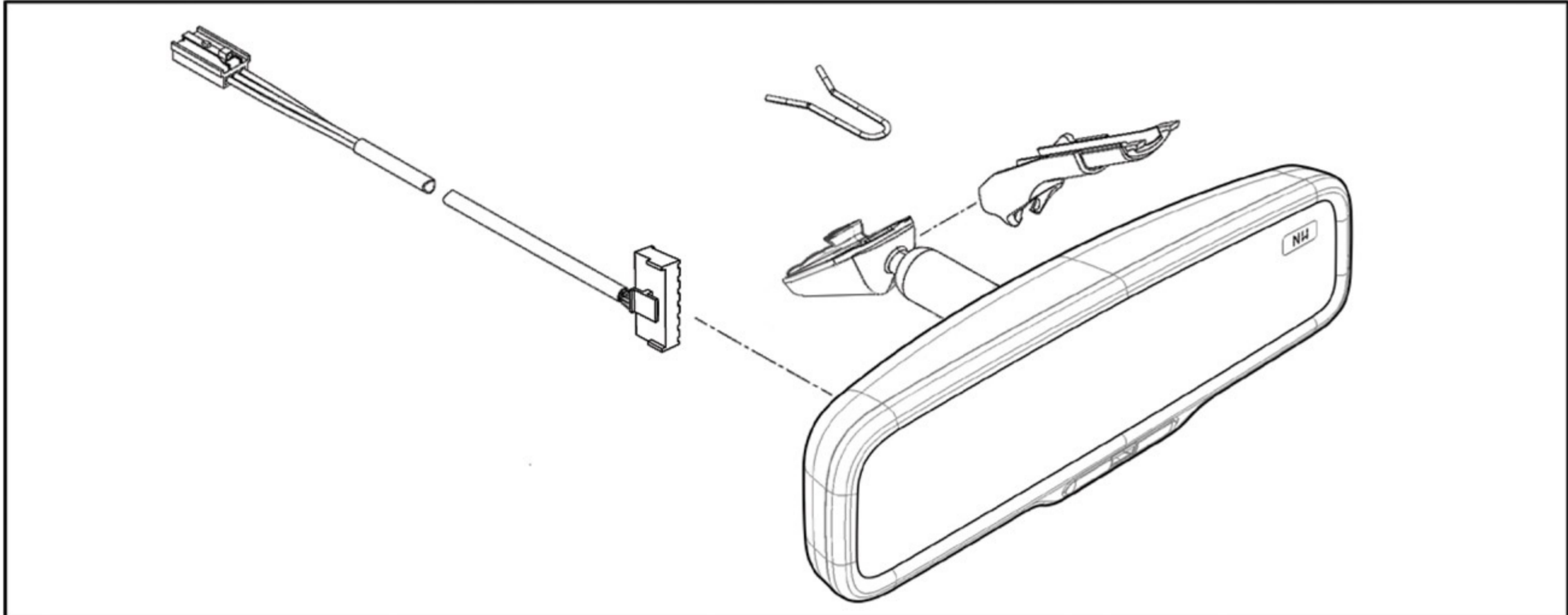
REMOVE RACKS BEFORE ENTERING AN AUTOMATIC CAR WASH.

RETAIN THIS INSTRUCTION SHEET FOR FUTURE REFERENCE.

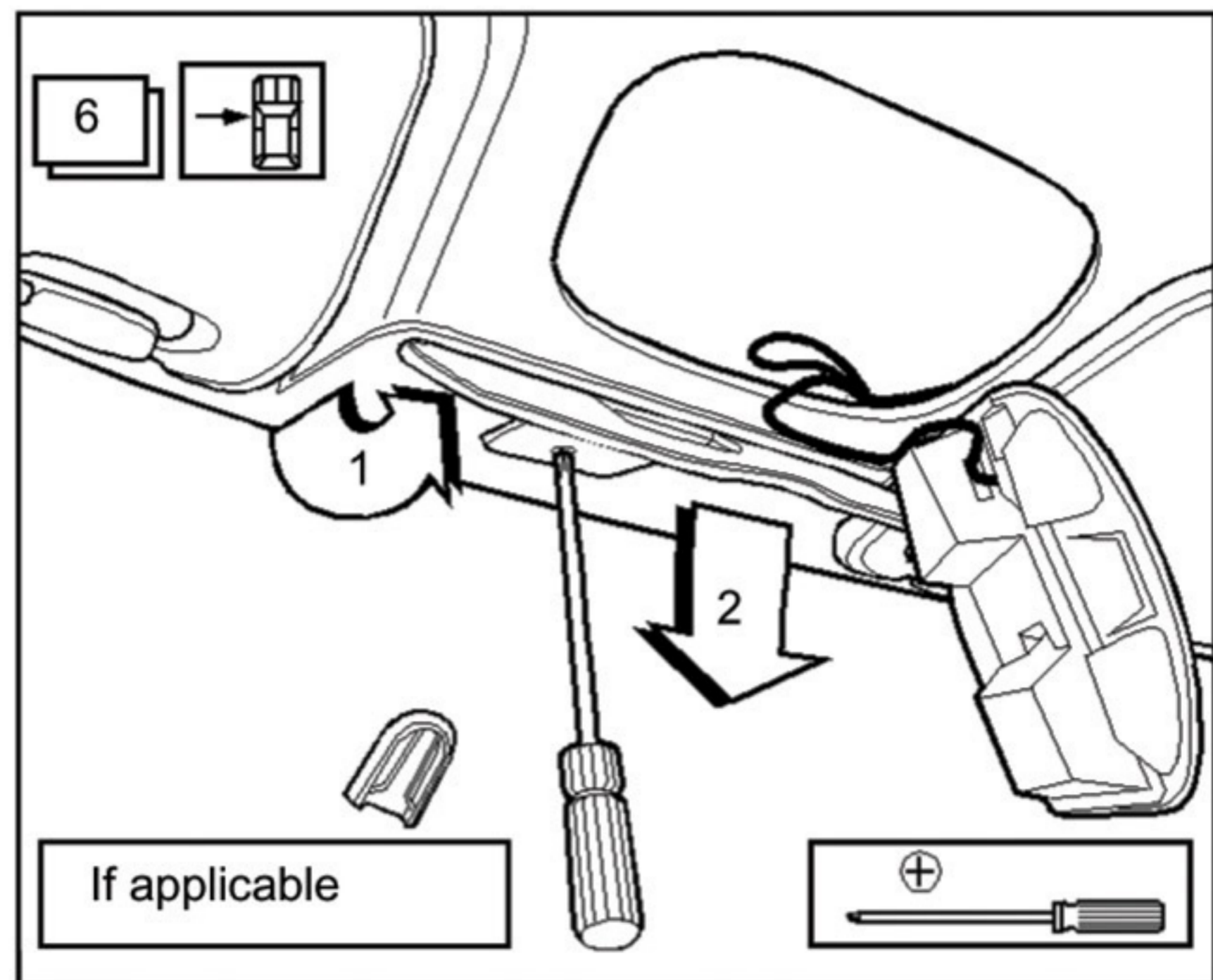
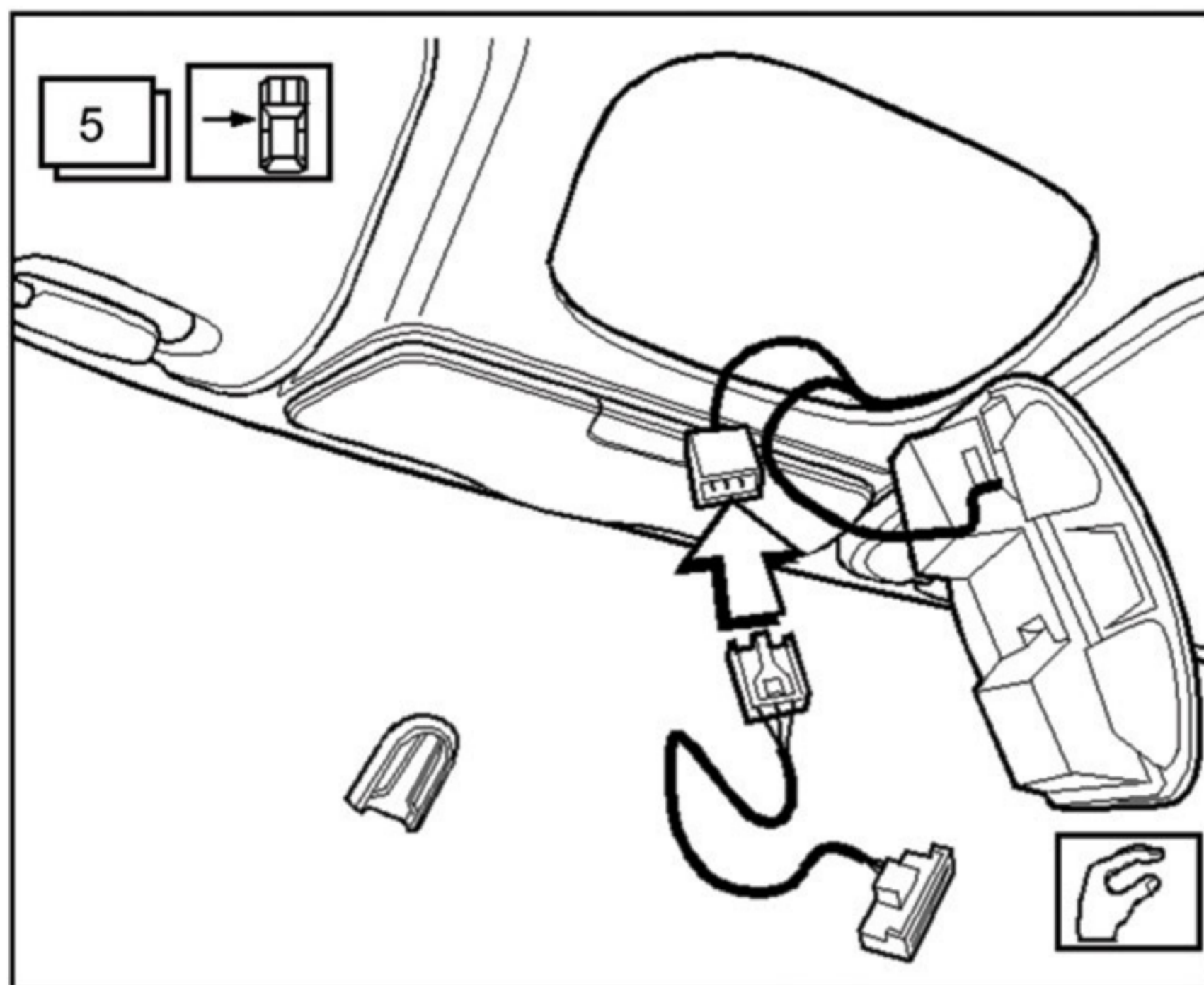
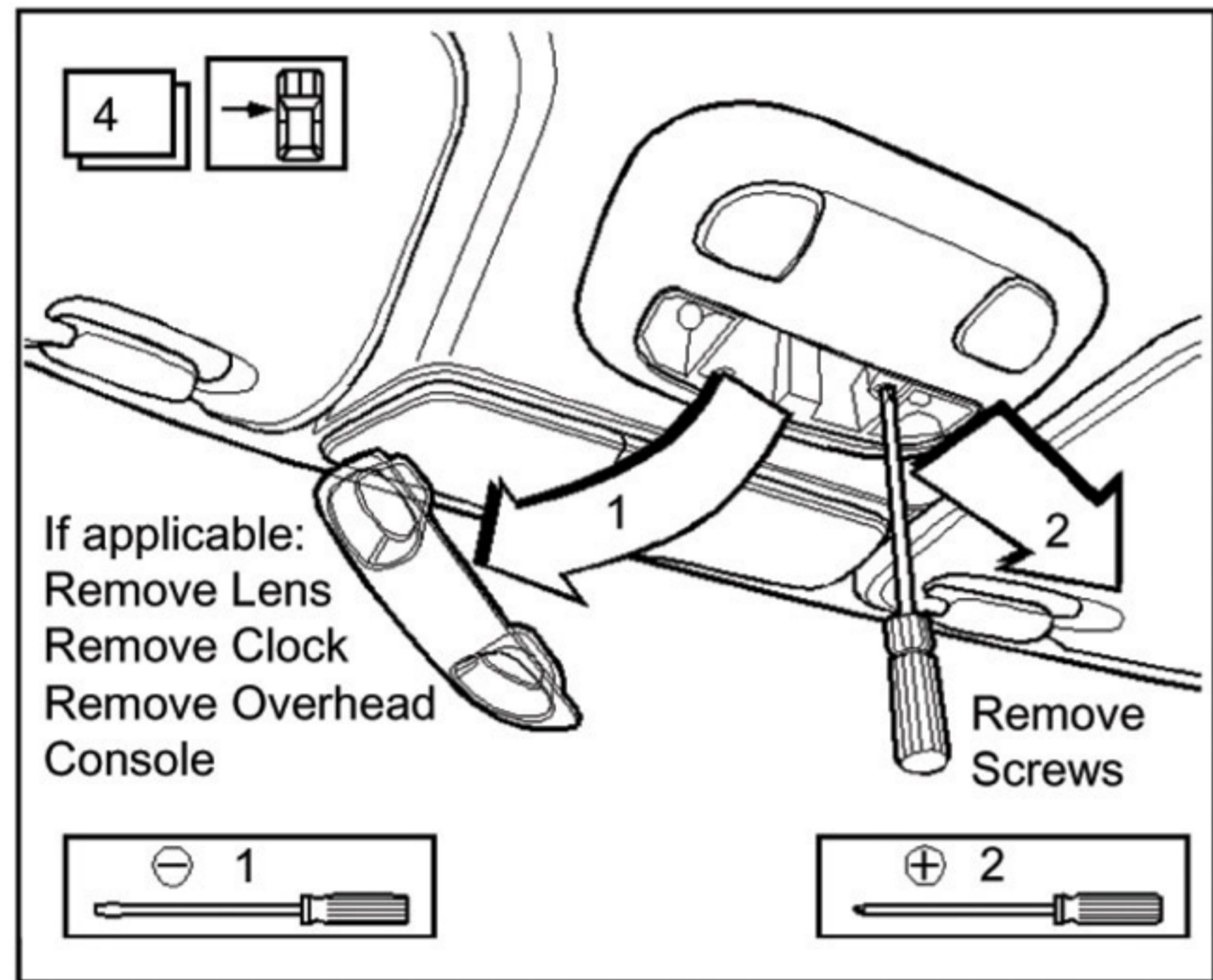
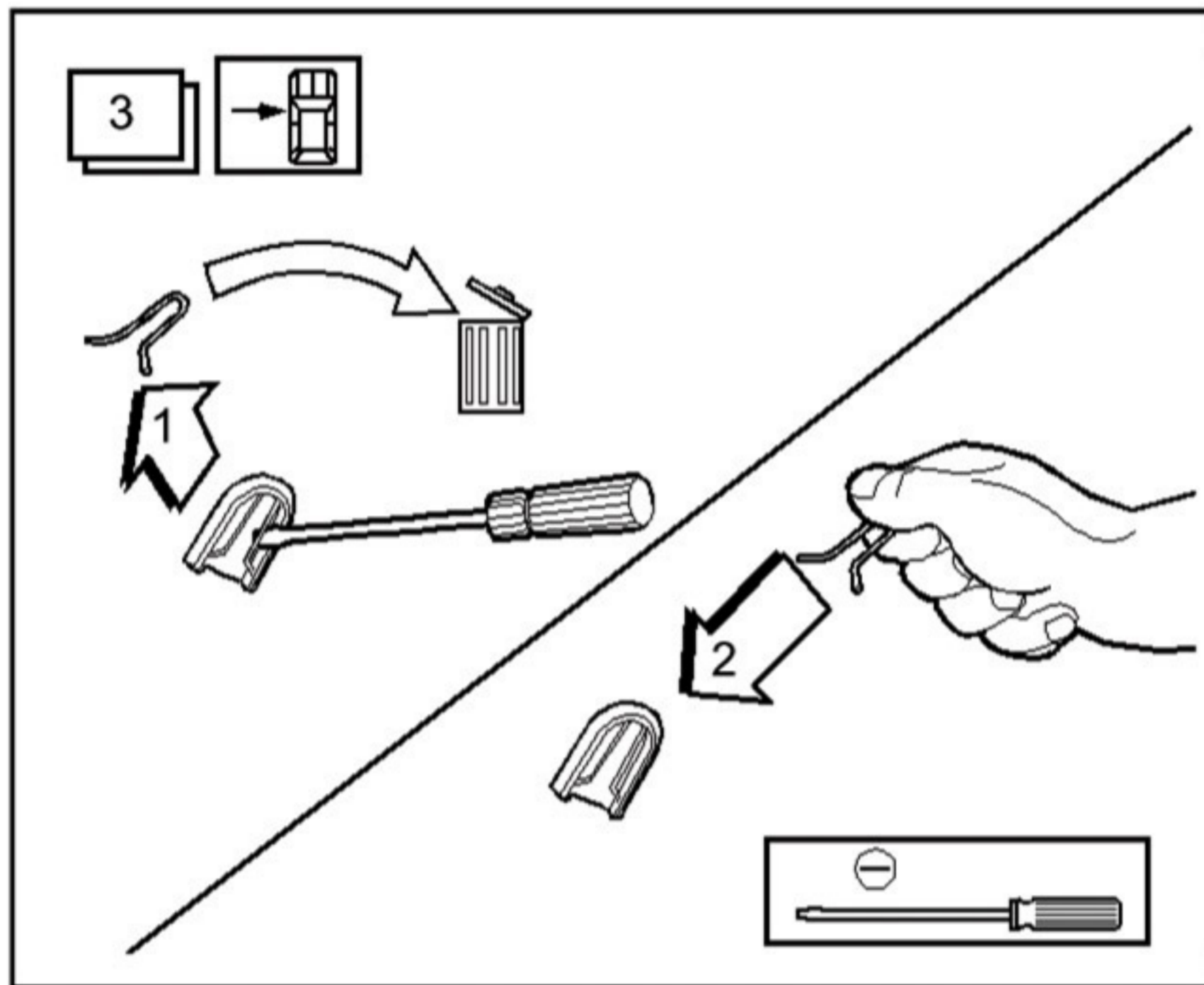
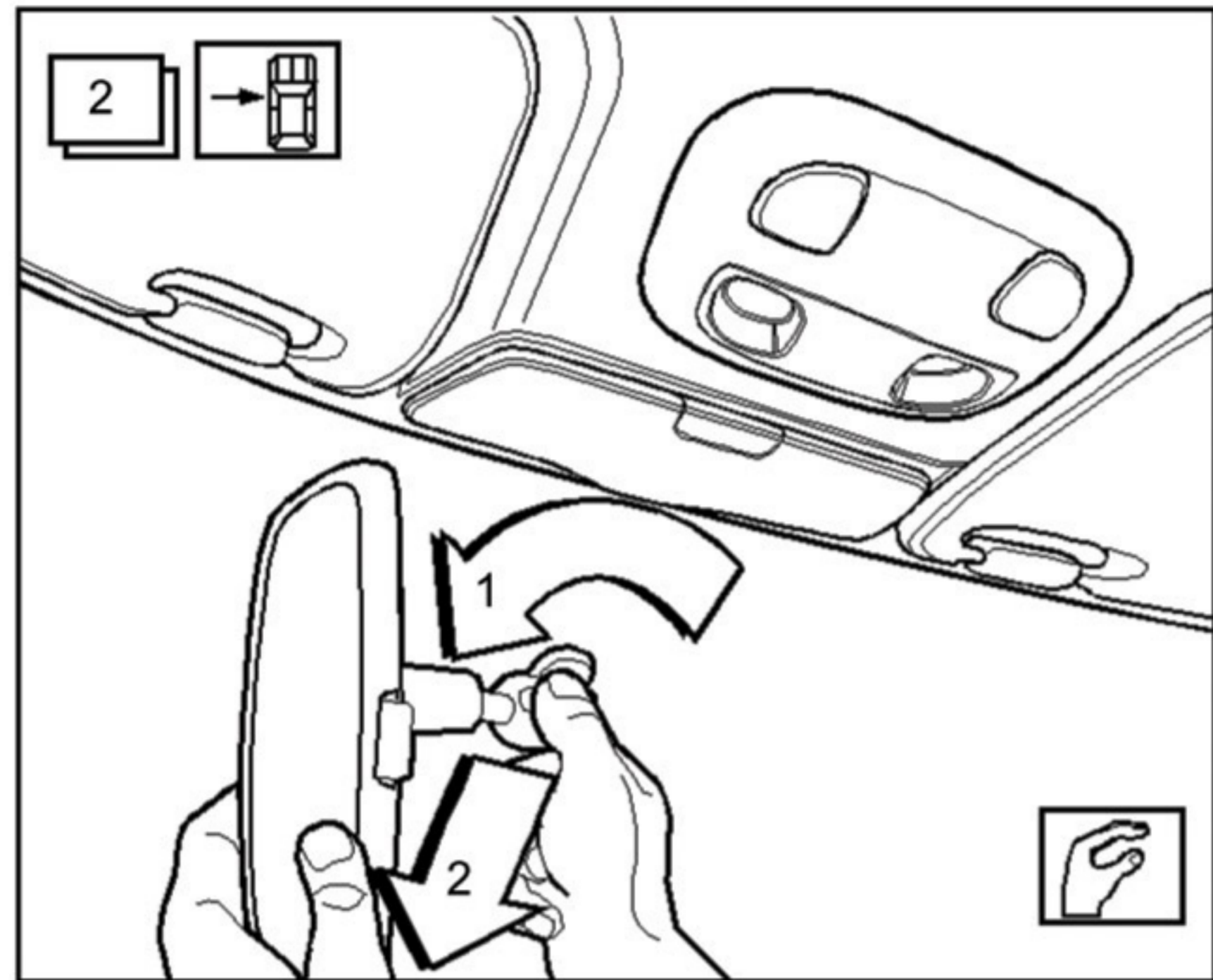
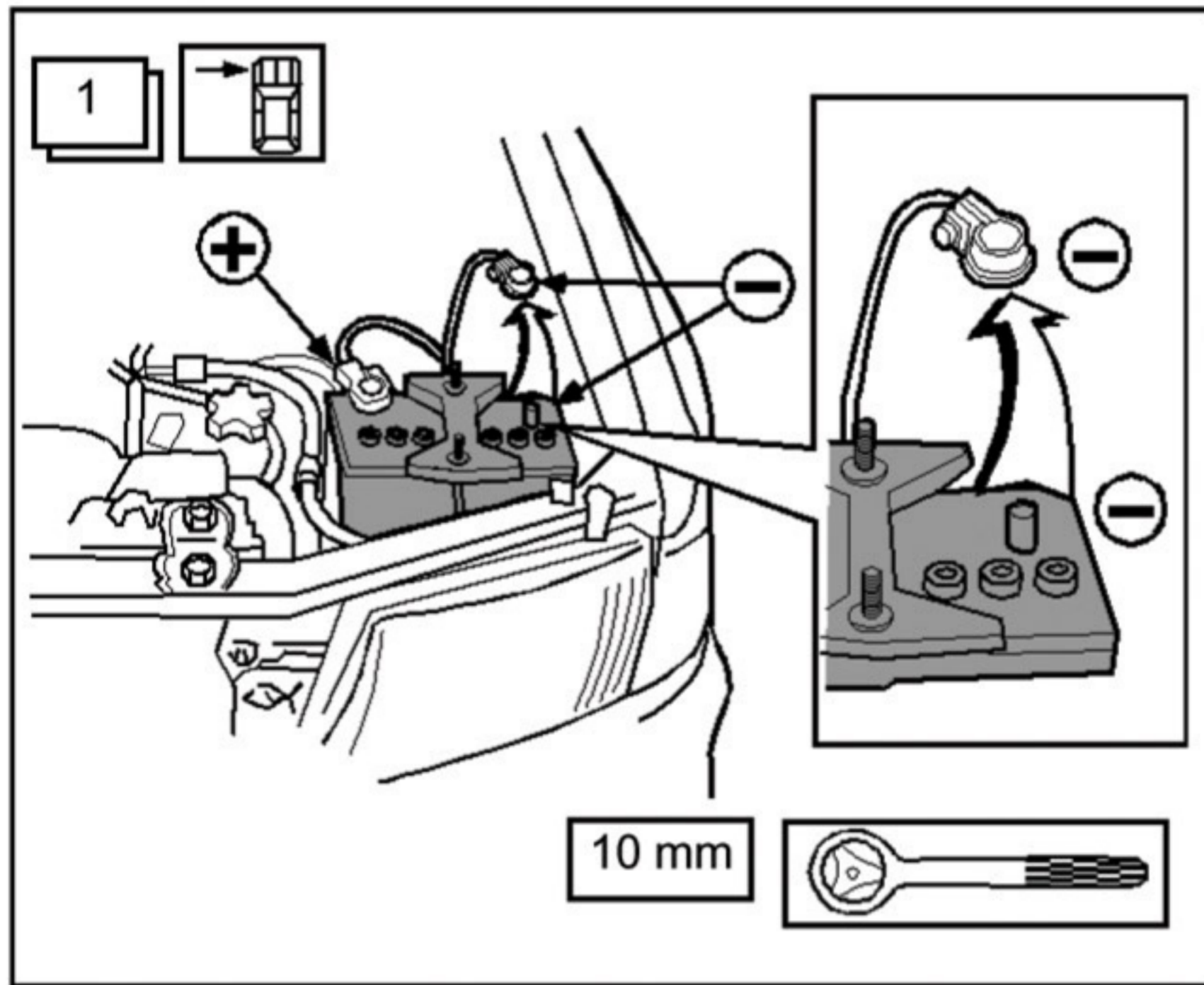




Installation Instructions For: **Electrochromic Mirror with Compass**



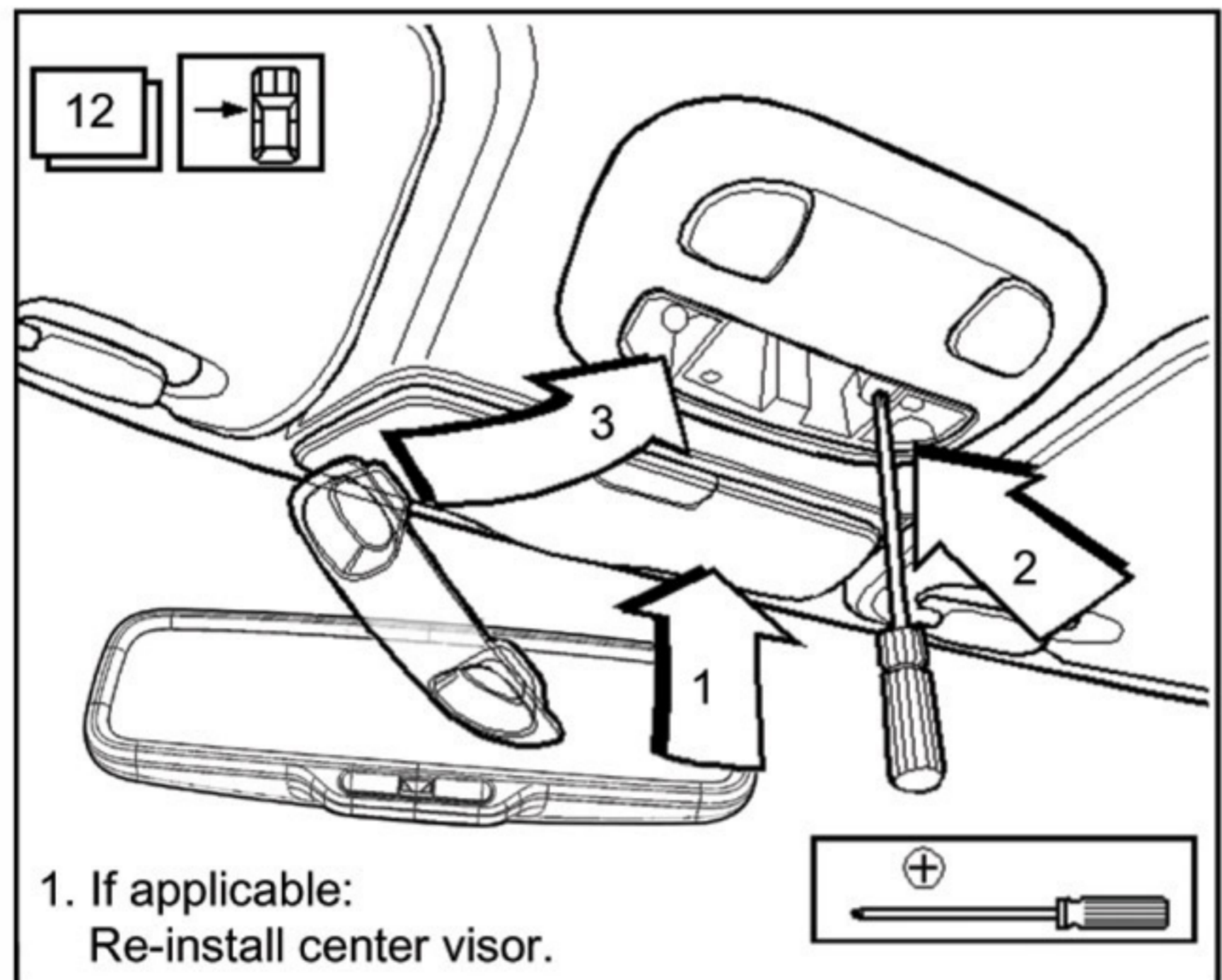
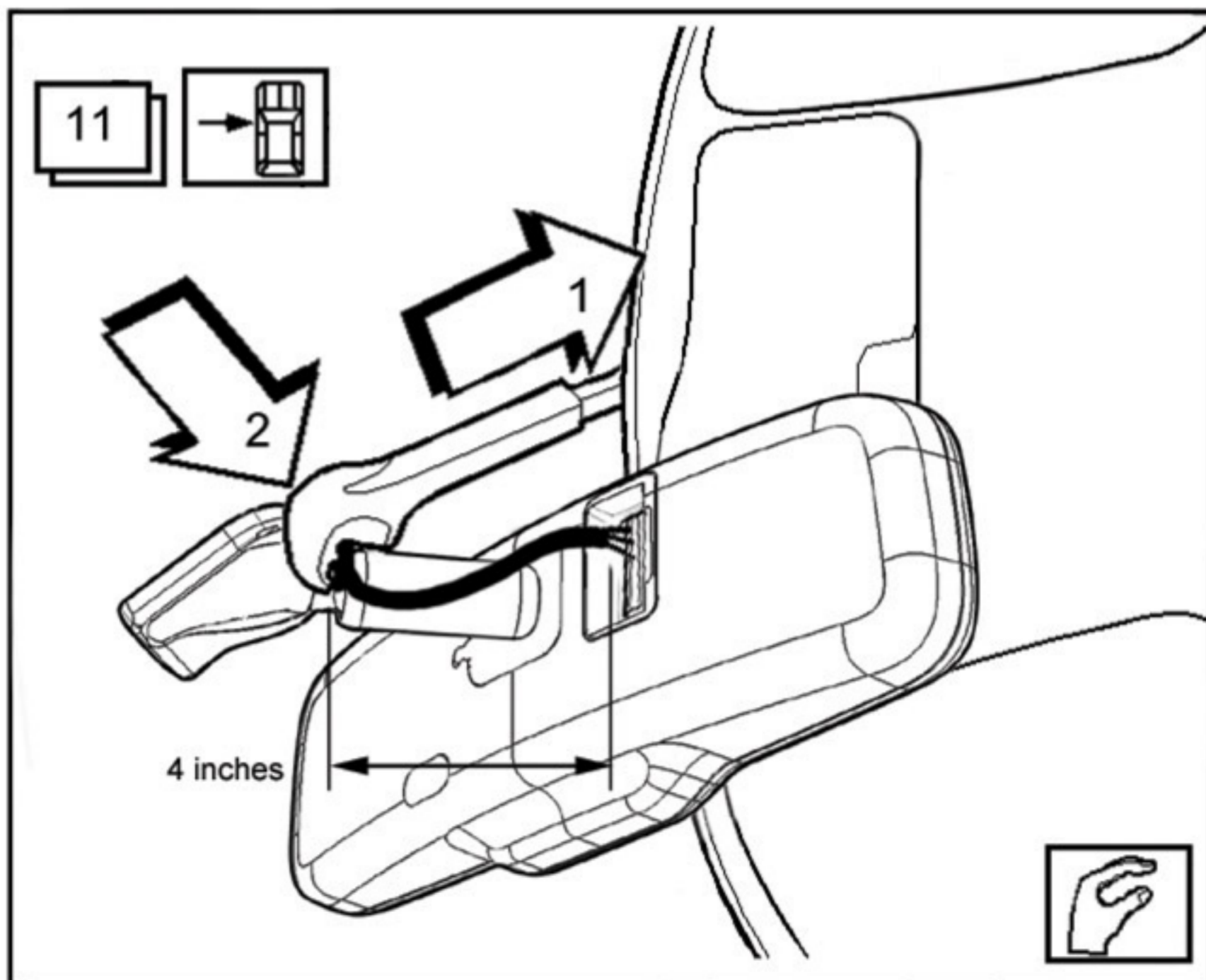
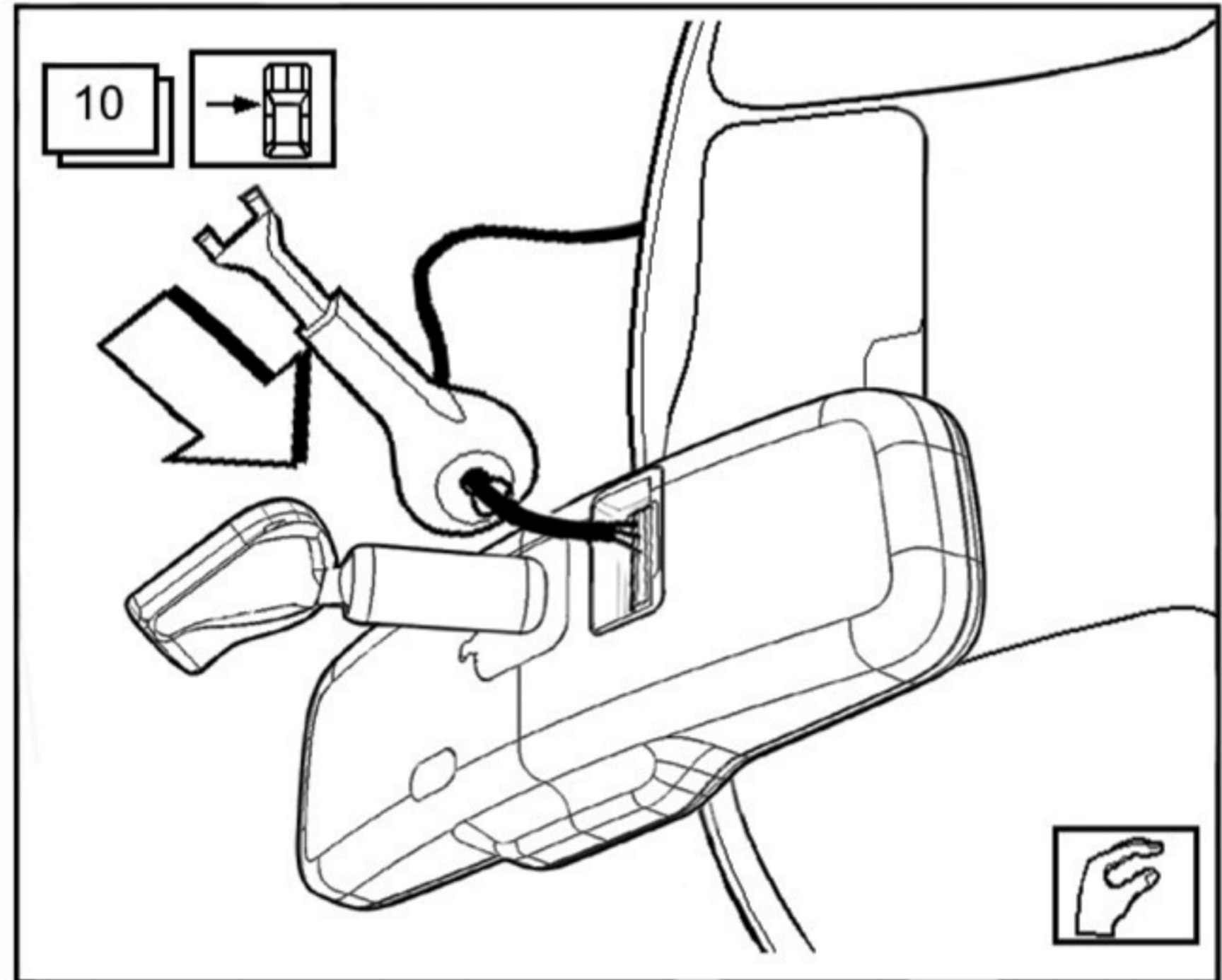
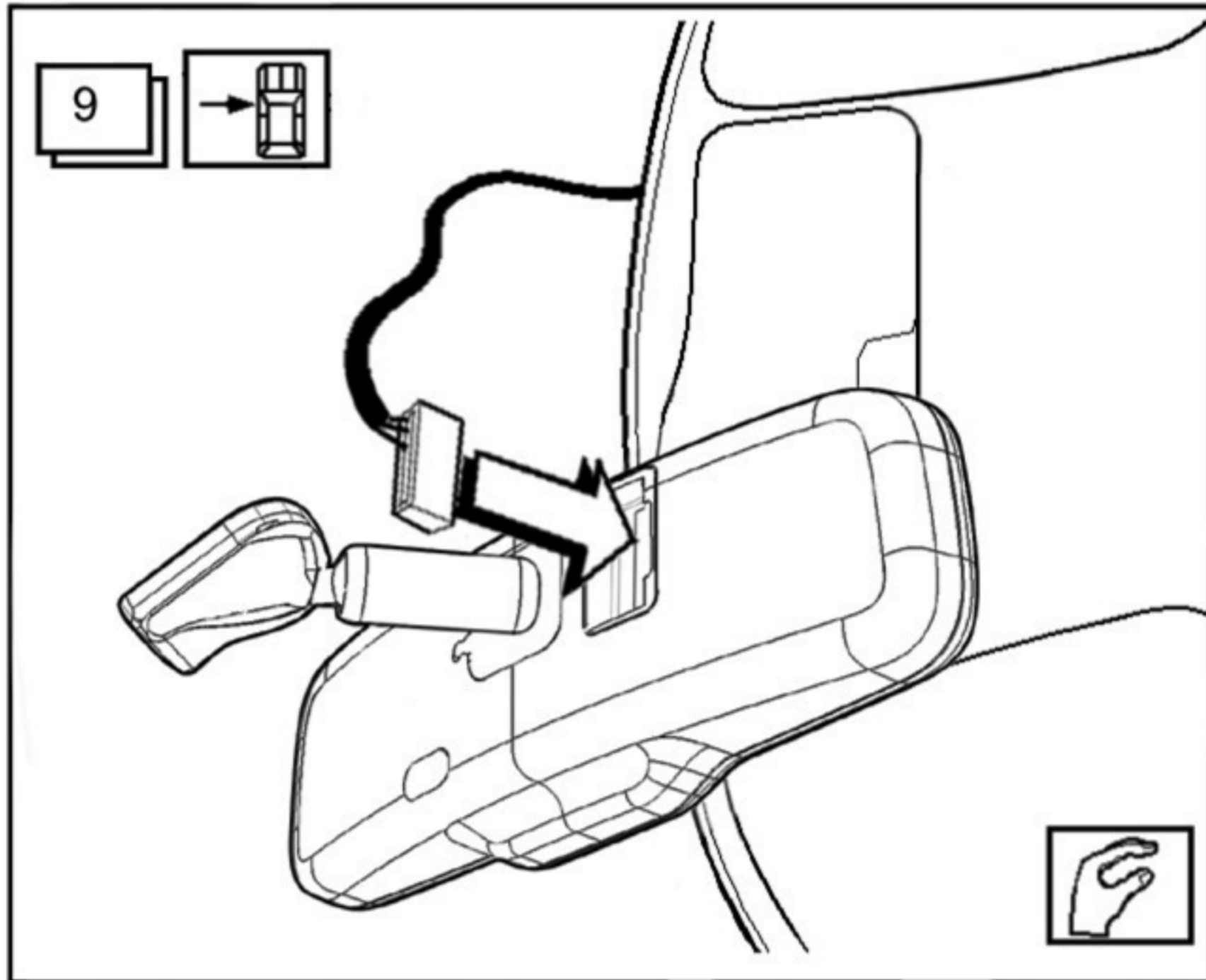
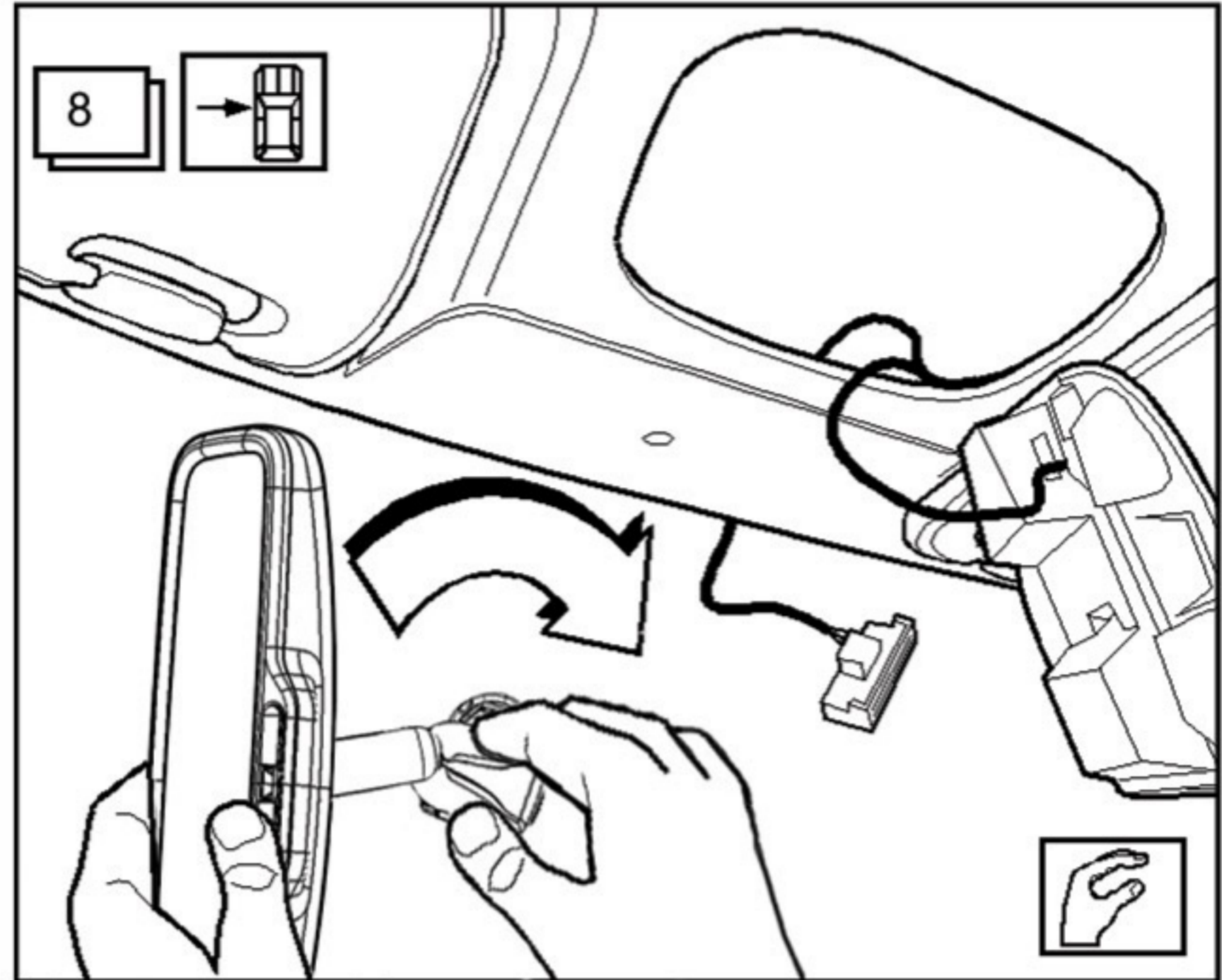
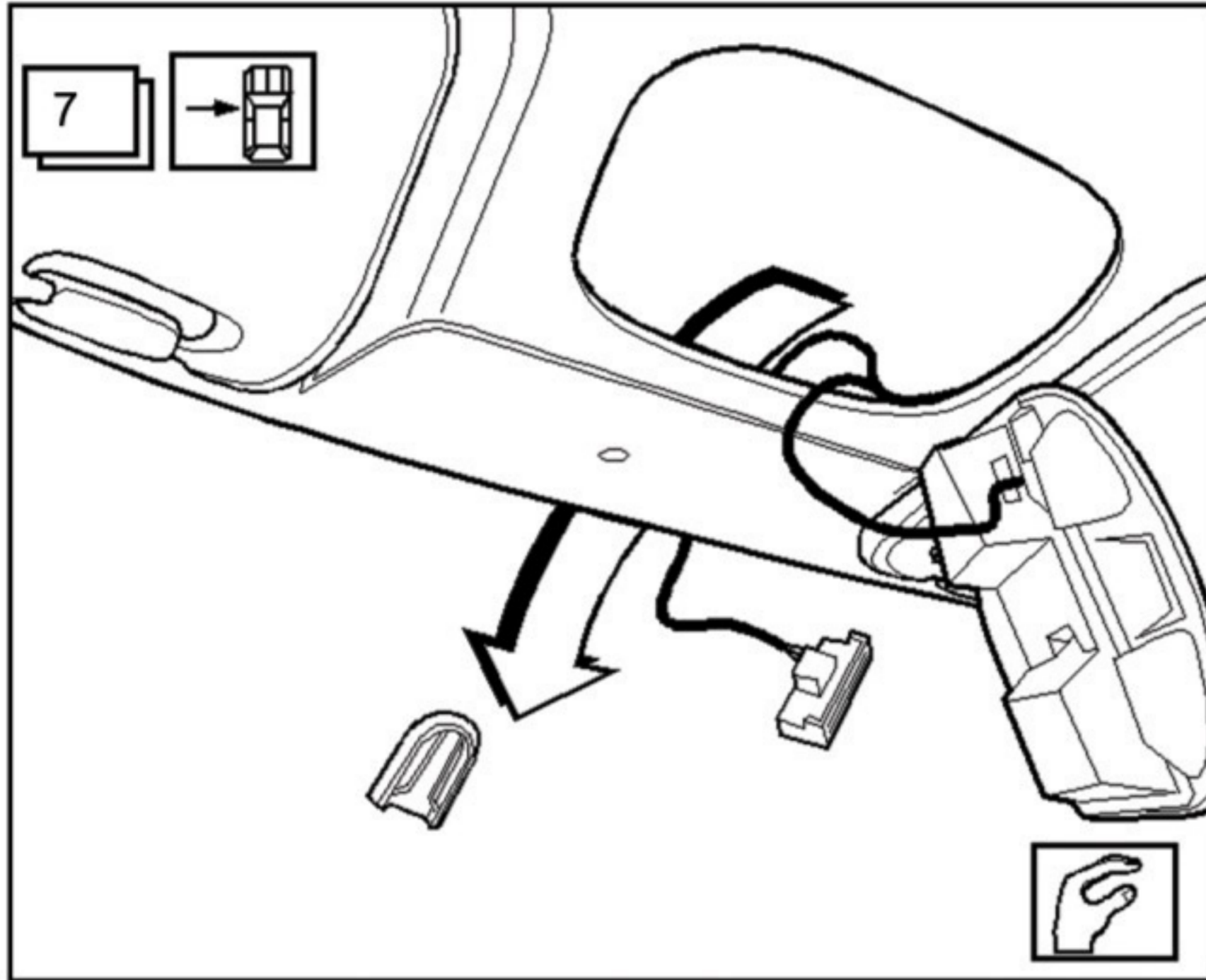






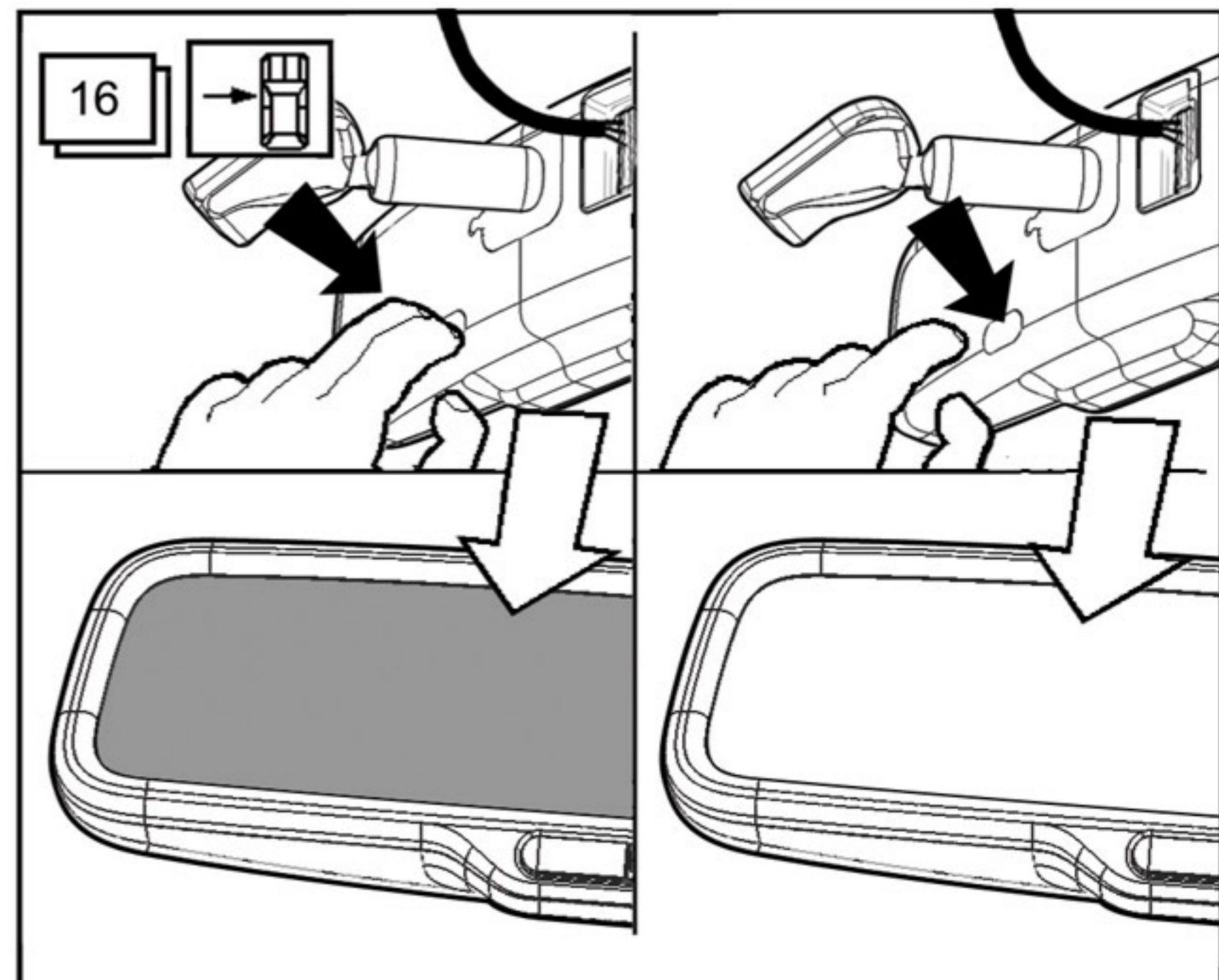
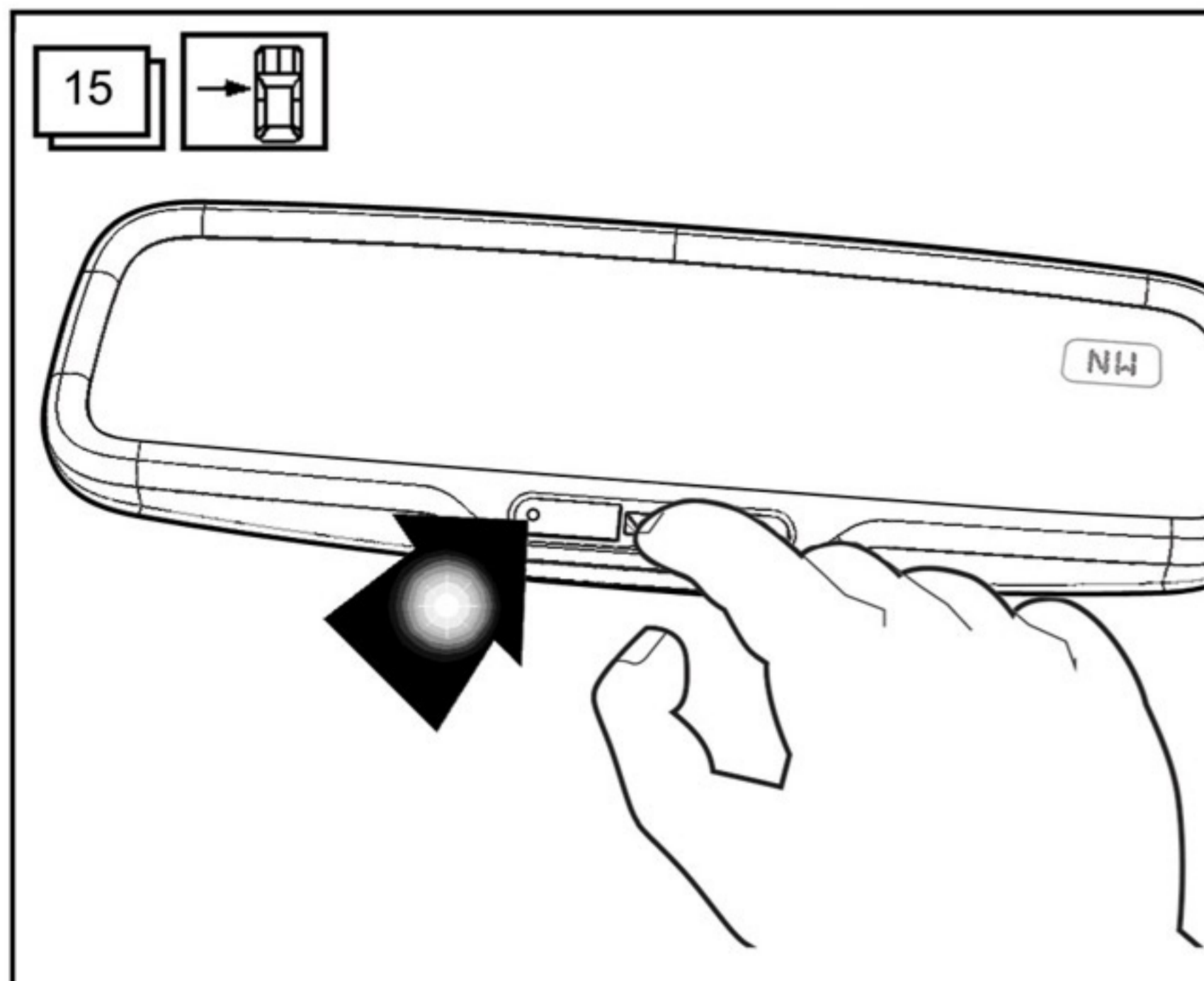
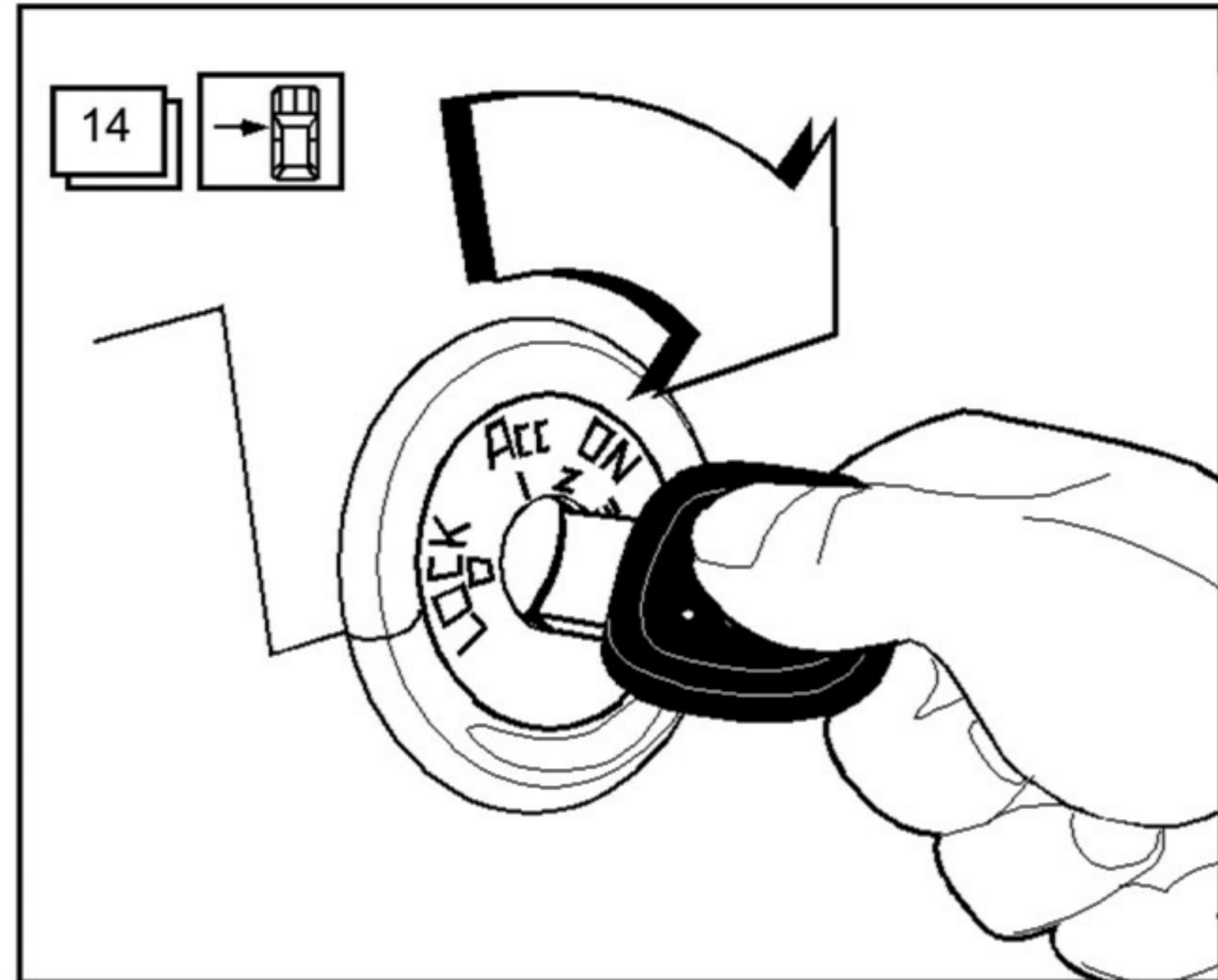
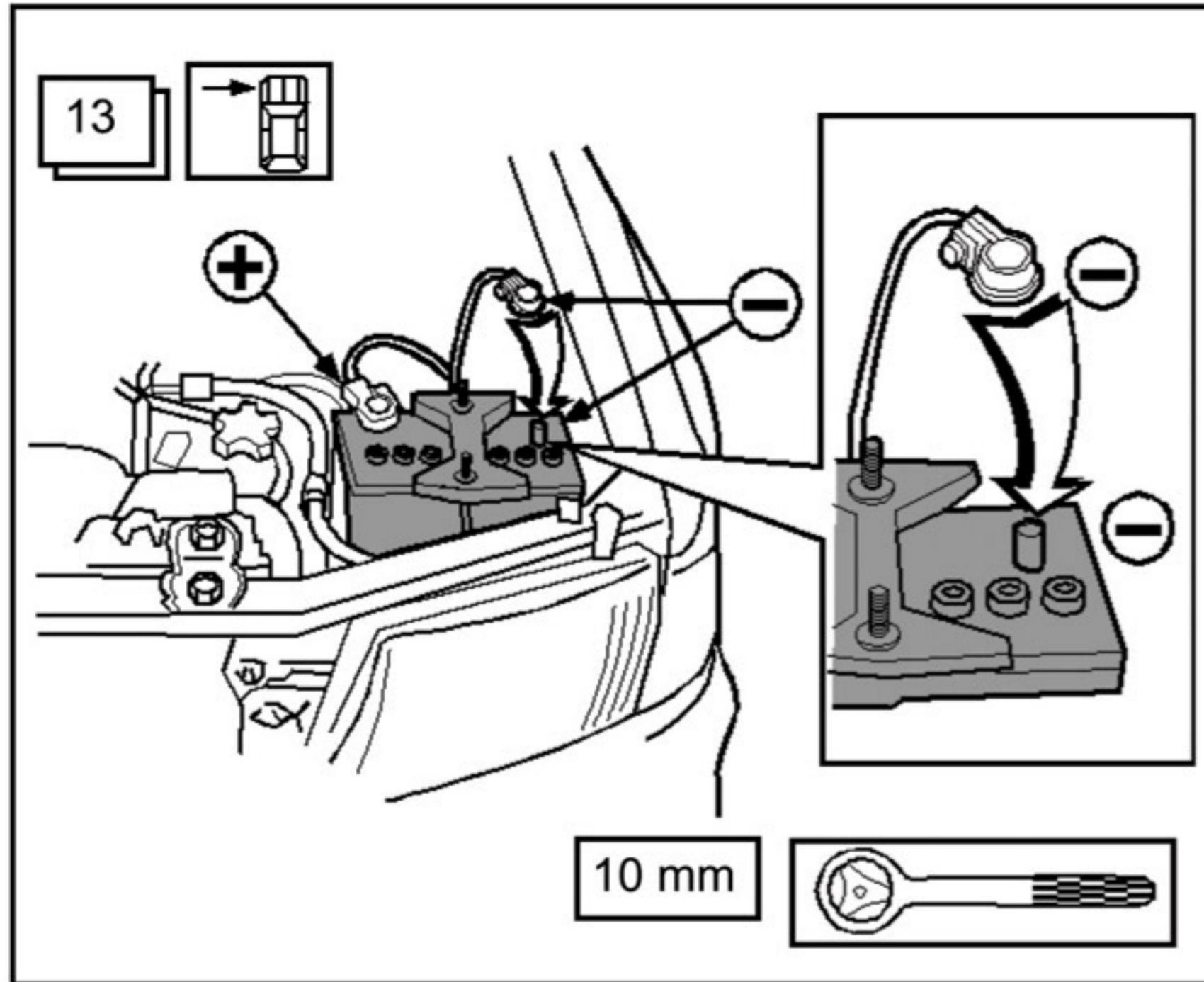


**SUBARU**



Part number H501SFG000	Date 2007/3/12	<b>Subaru of America</b>	Page 3/4
---------------------------	-------------------	--------------------------	-------------



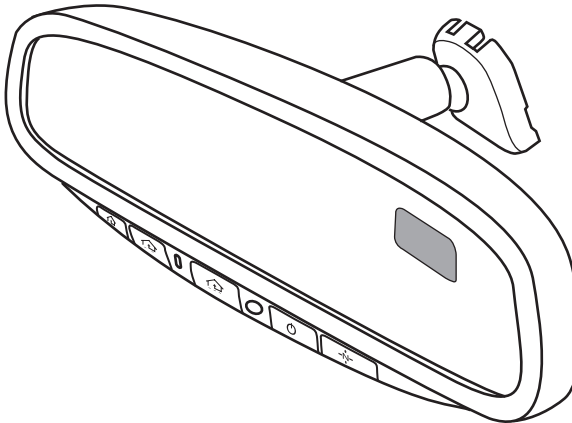
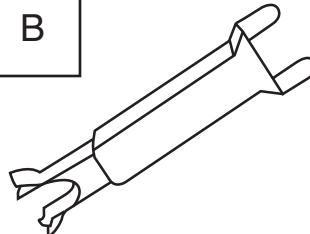
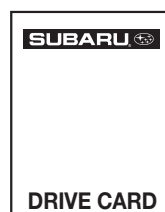
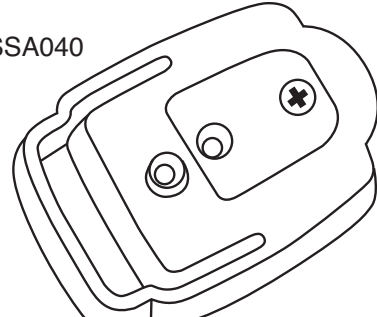
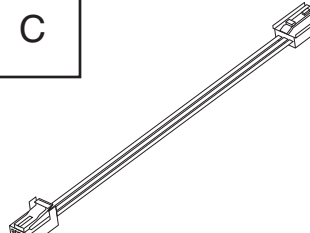








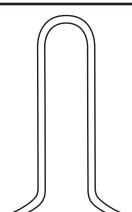
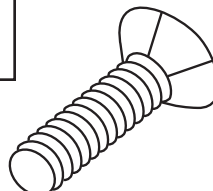








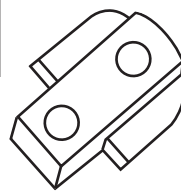



17

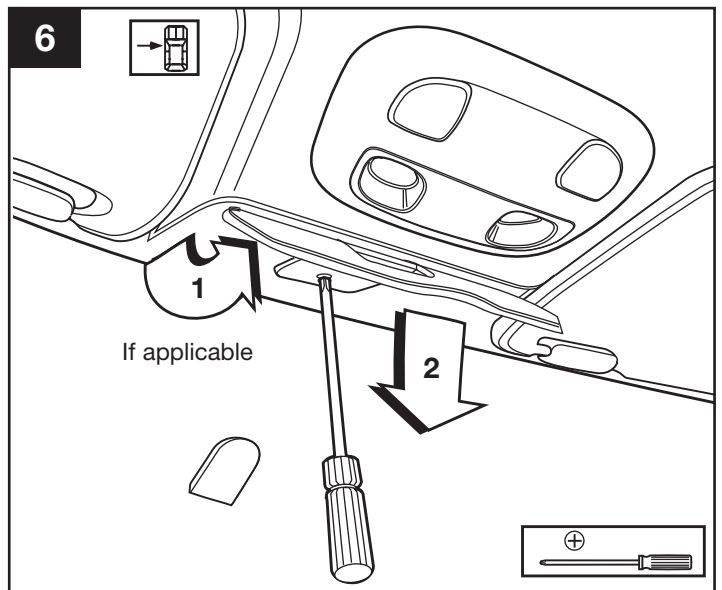
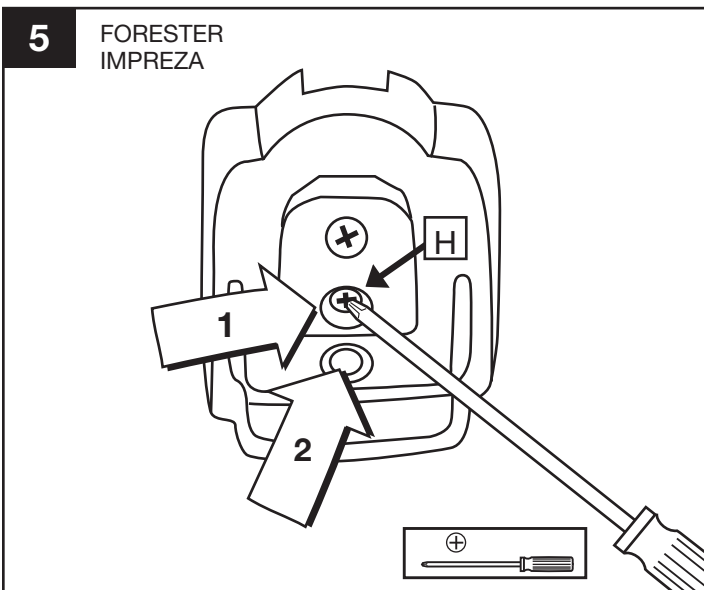
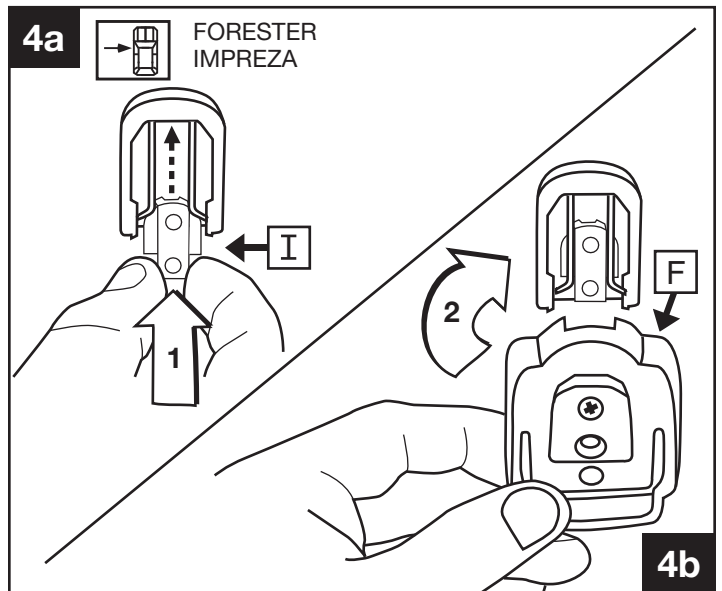
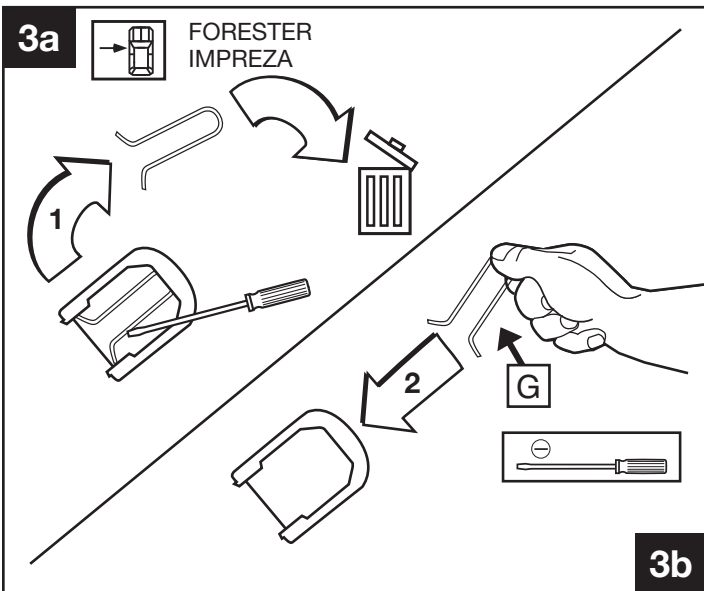
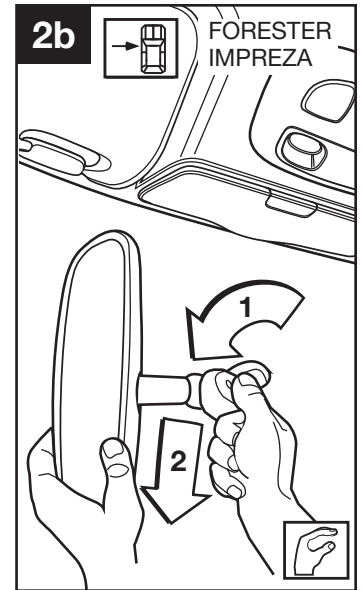
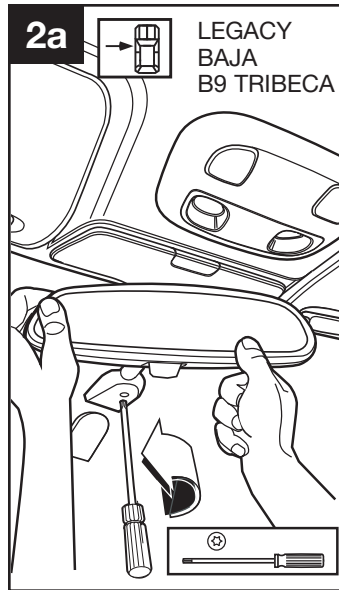
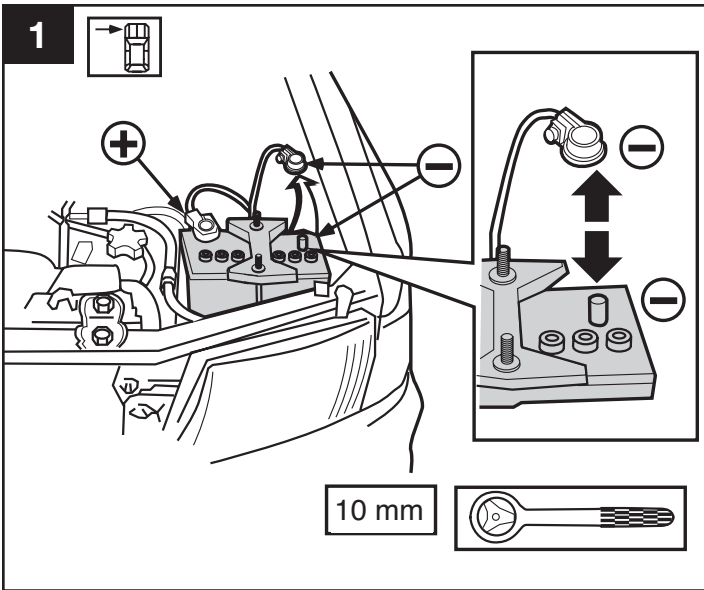
For calibration, see  
the vehicle owner's  
manual

**INSTALLATION  
INSTRUCTIONS**

**DESCRIPTION:** ELECTROCHROMIC MIRROR  
with Compass and HomeLink®

<p><b>A KIT CONTENTS:</b></p>  <p>1X</p>	<p><b>B</b></p>  <p>1X</p>	<p><b>D</b></p>  <p>1X</p>
<p><b>F ADDITIONAL REQUIREMENTS: (FORESTER AND IMPREZA ONLY)</b></p> <p>PT# H501SSA040</p>  <p>1X</p>	<p><b>C</b></p>  <p>1X</p>	<p><b>E B9 TRIBECA ONLY</b></p>  <p>1X</p>
<p><b>TOOLS REQUIRED:</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li> </li> <li> </li> <li>T-20 </li> <li> </li> </ul>	<p><b>G</b></p>  <p>1X</p>	<p><b>H</b></p>  <p>2X</p>
<p><b>MEANING OF CHARACTERS:</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li> : Remove</li> <li> : Install</li> <li> : Disconnect</li> <li> : Connect</li> <li> : Location of Clip or Screw</li> <li><b>T</b> : Tightening Torque</li> <li> : Loosen</li> <li> : Discard</li> <li> : Reuse</li> </ul>	<p><b>I</b></p>  <p>1X</p>	<p><b>J</b></p>  <p>1X</p>





**7a** 2009 AND LATER MODEL FORESTER

1 Remove screws

2 Pull lamp assembly down

**7b** FOR ALL OTHER MODELS

1 Remove screws

2

If applicable:  
Remove Lens per Vehicle Owner's Manual, Remove Clock, Remove Overhead Console

**8a** B9 TRIBECA

C

1

2

**8b** FORESTER IMPREZA LEGACY BAJA

C

1

2

**9** B9 TRIBECA

A

E

C

Wrap foam tape around connector on harness C

**10** LEGACY BAJA FORESTER IMPREZA

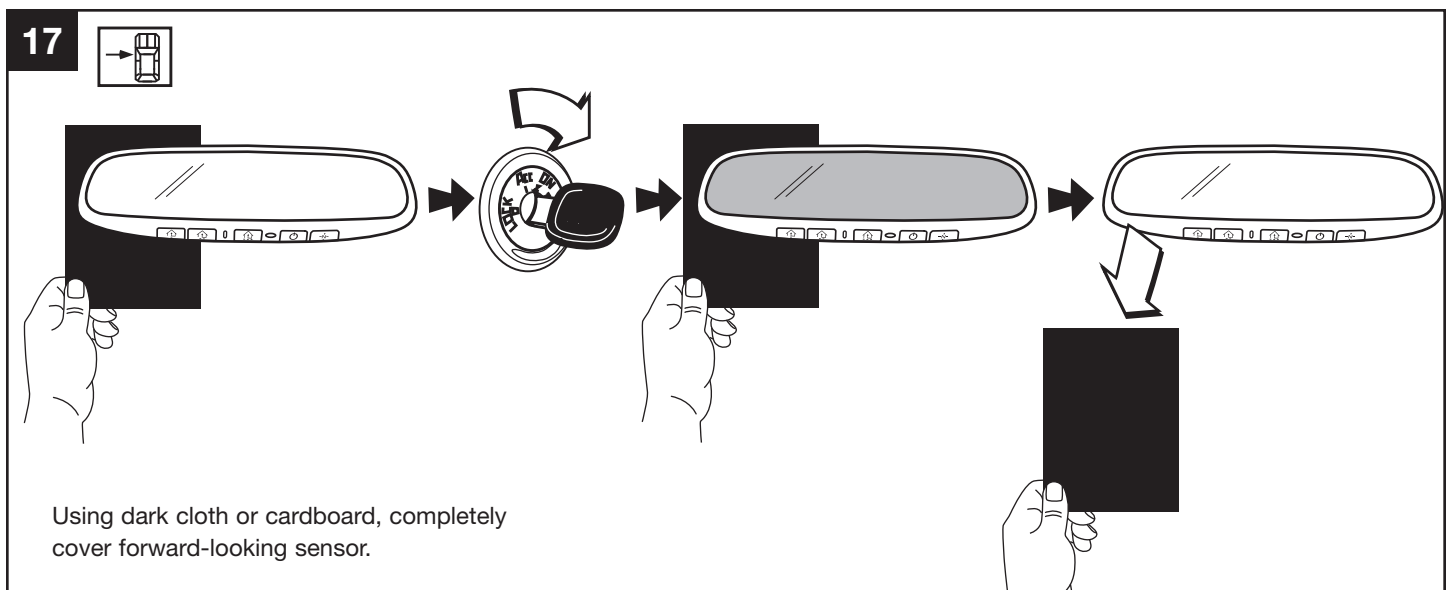
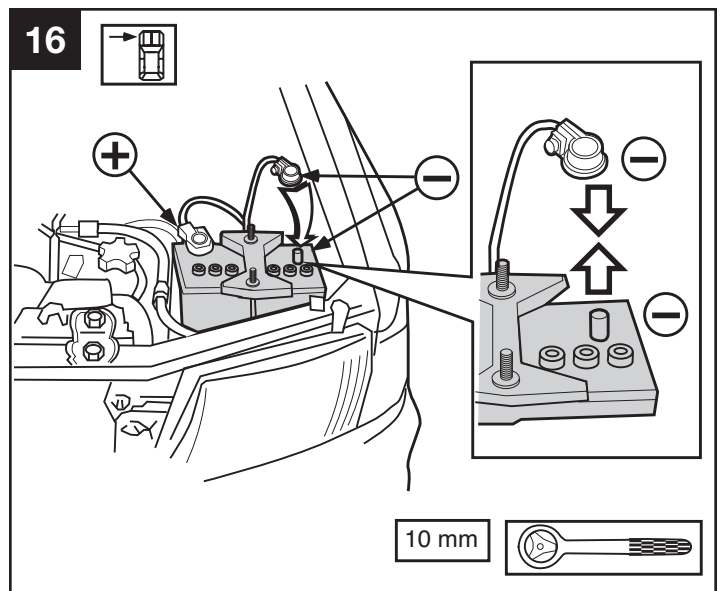
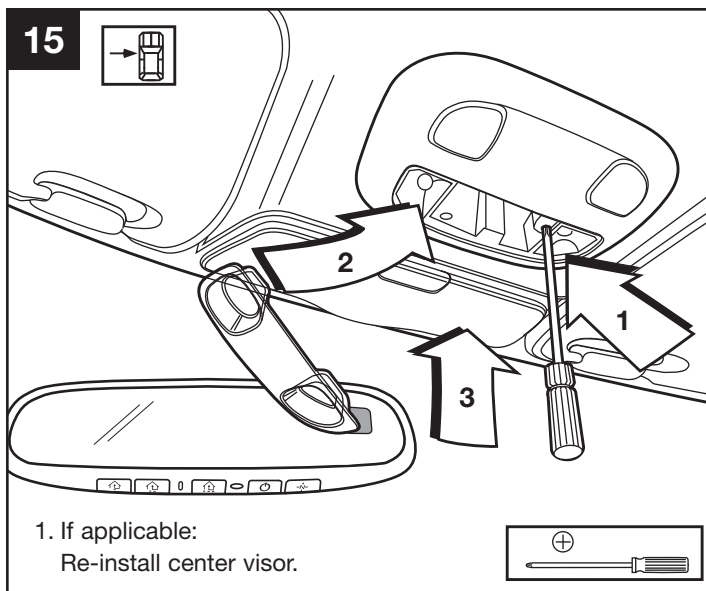
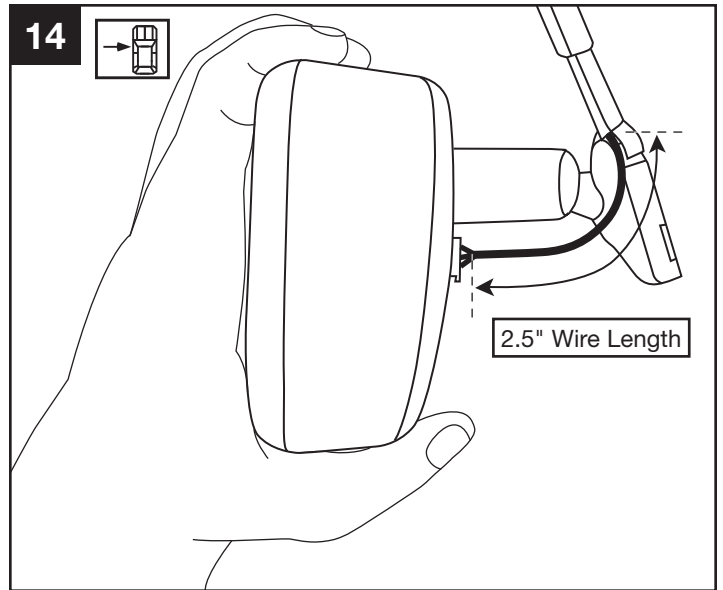
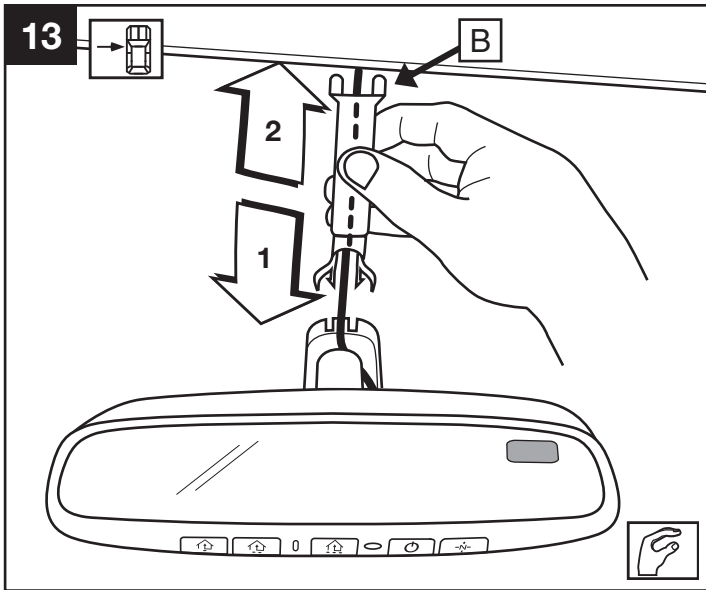
C

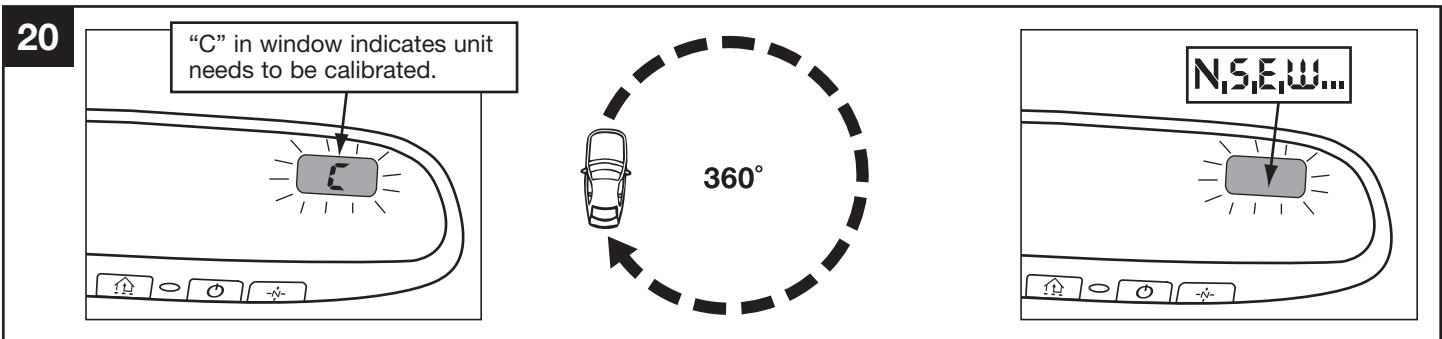
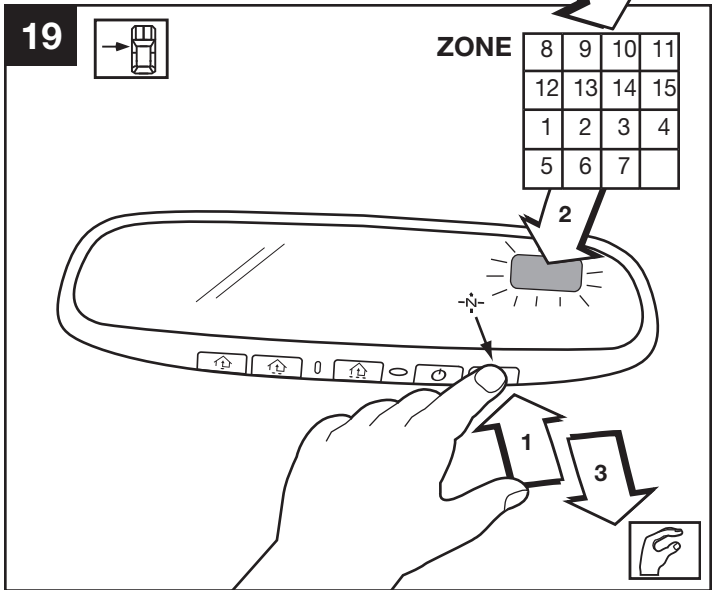
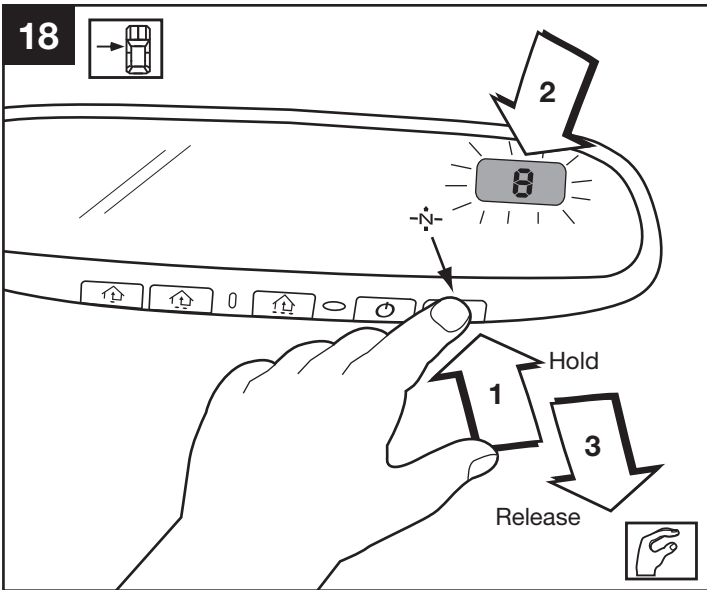
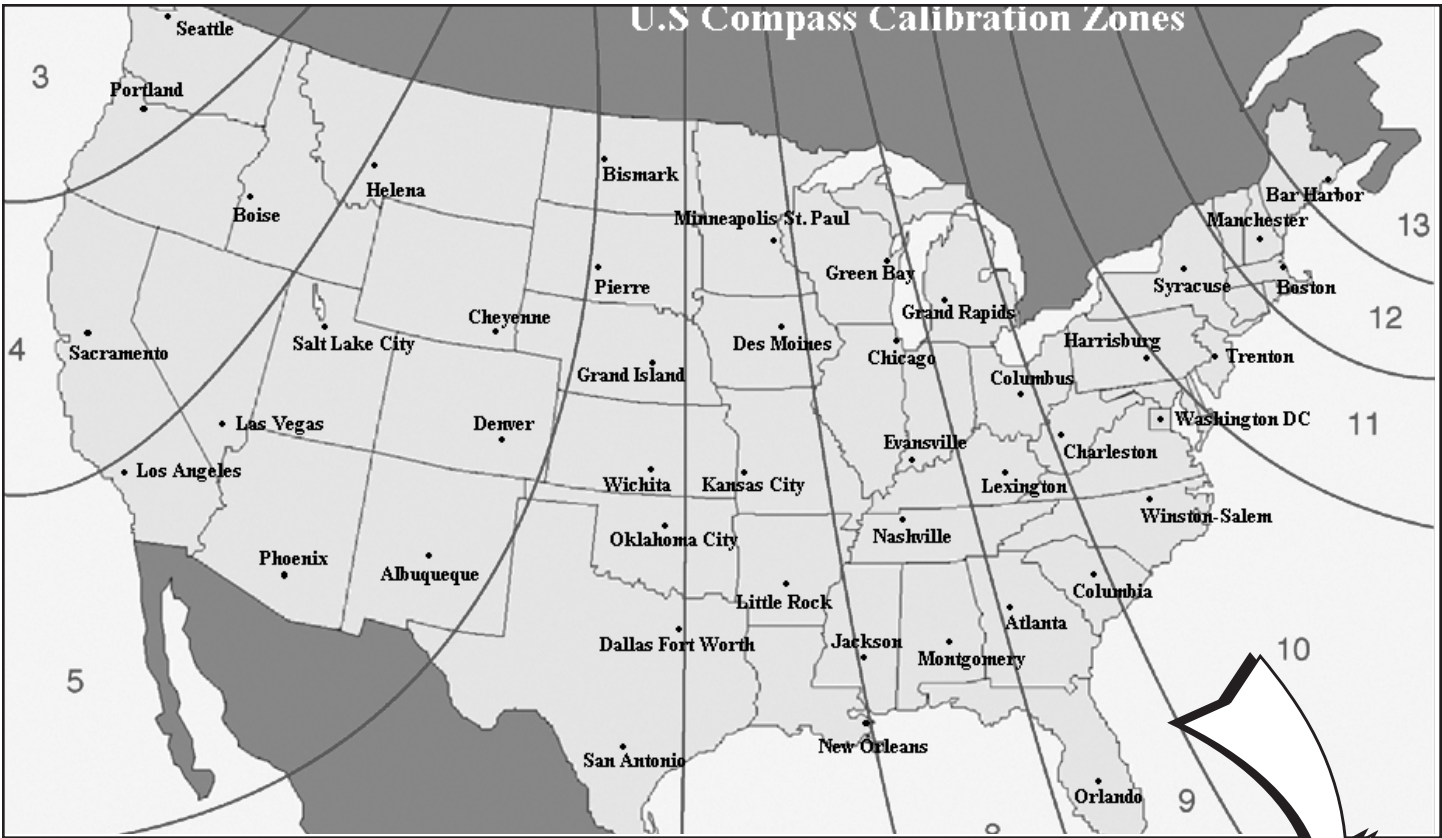
**11a** LEGACY BAJA B9 TRIBECA

**11b** FORESTER IMPREZA

**12**

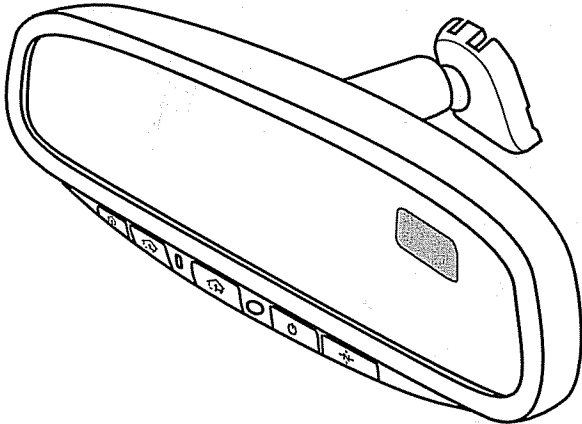
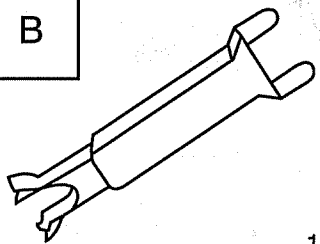

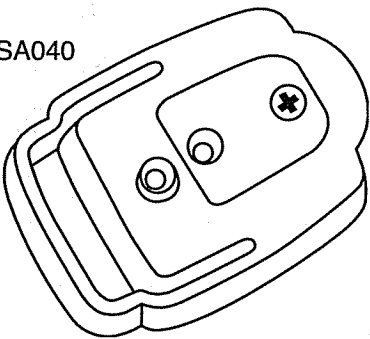
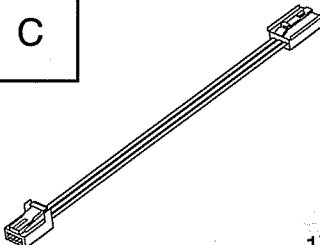
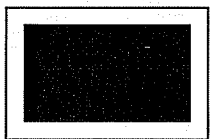
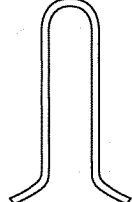
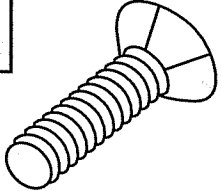
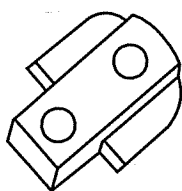
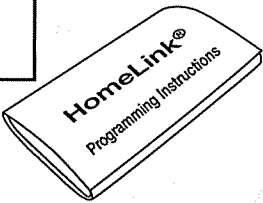
Torque = 13.3-17.7 in.-lbs.





**INSTALLATION INSTRUCTIONS**

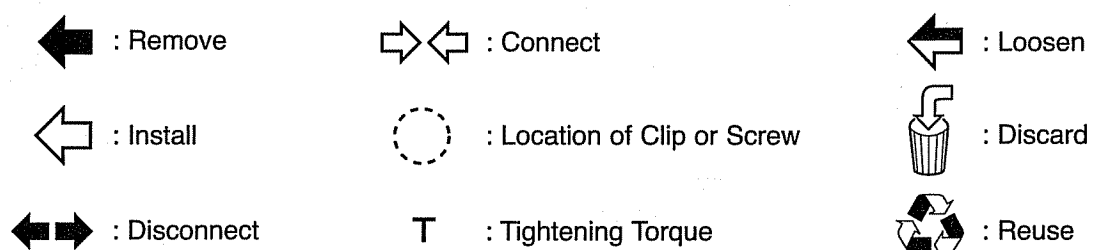
**DESCRIPTION:** ELECTROCHROMIC MIRROR with Compass and HomeLink®

<p><b>A KIT CONTENTS:</b></p>  <p>1X</p>	<p><b>B</b></p>  <p>1X</p>	<p><b>D</b></p>  <p>1X</p>
<p><b>F ADDITIONAL REQUIREMENTS: (FORESTER AND IMPREZA ONLY)</b></p> <p>PT# H501SSA040</p>  <p>1X</p>	<p><b>C</b></p>  <p>1X</p>	<p><b>E B9 TRIBECA ONLY</b></p>  <p>1X</p>
	<p><b>G</b></p>  <p>1X</p>	<p><b>H</b></p>  <p>2X</p>
	<p><b>I</b></p>  <p>1X</p>	<p><b>J</b></p>  <p>1X</p>

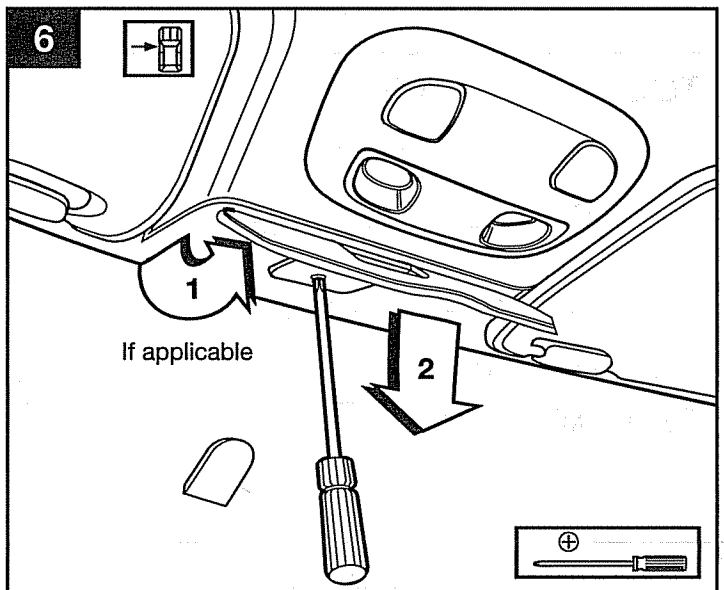
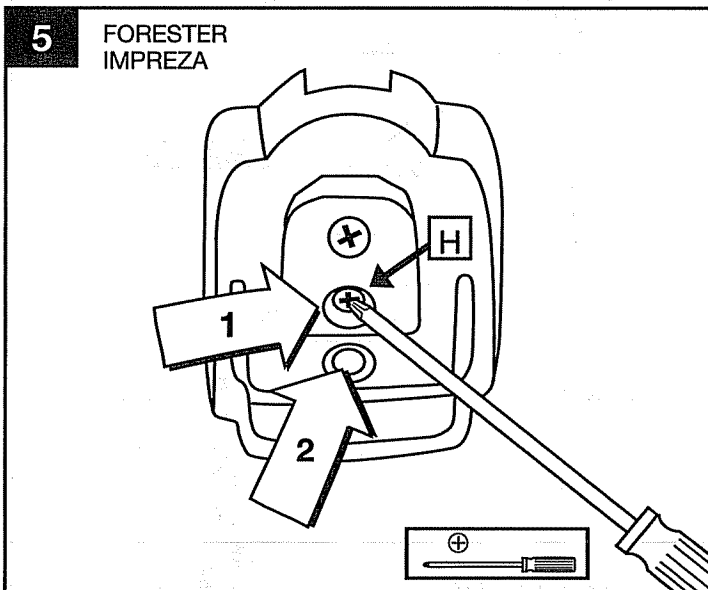
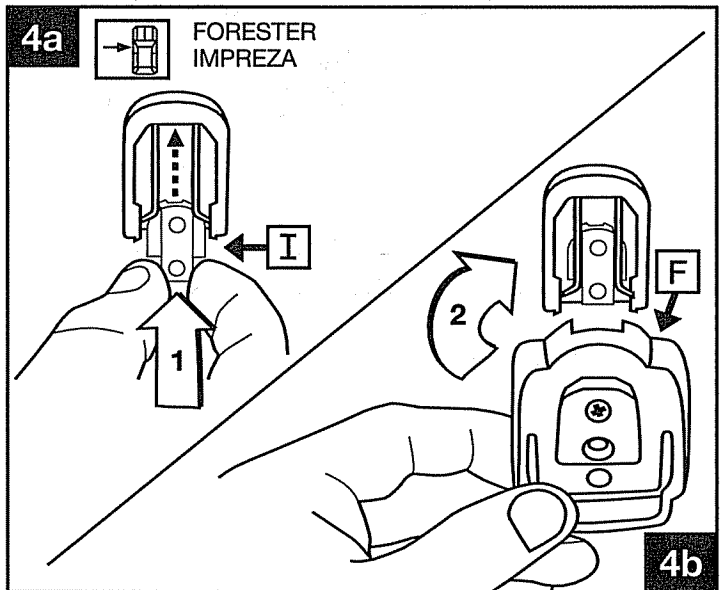
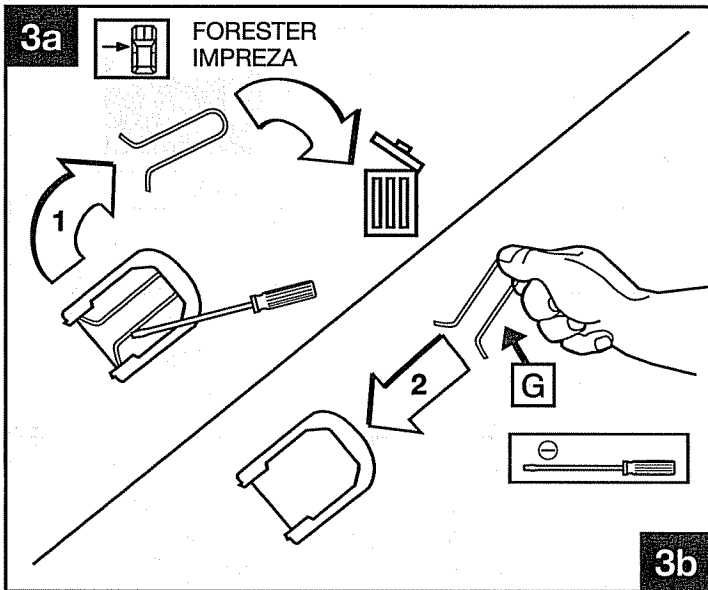
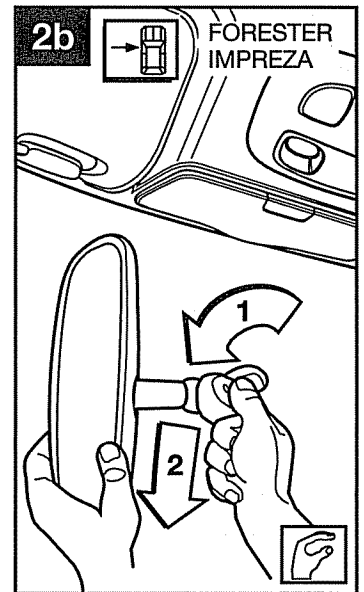
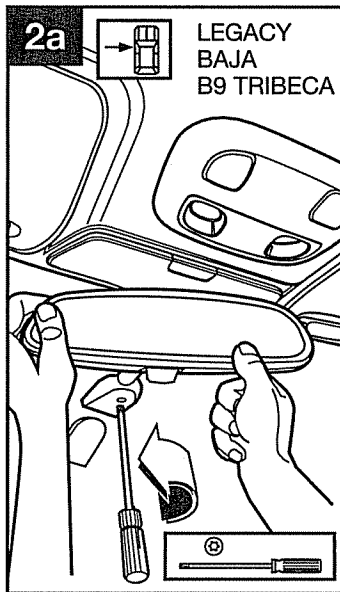
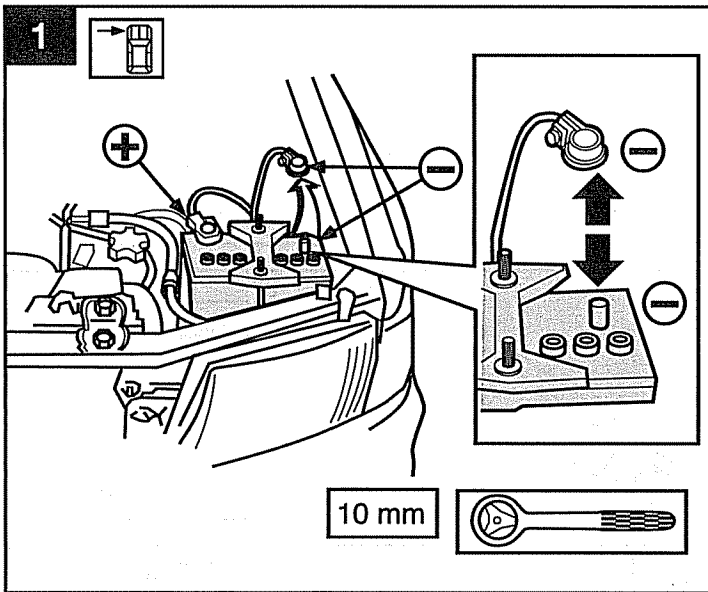
**TOOLS REQUIRED:**

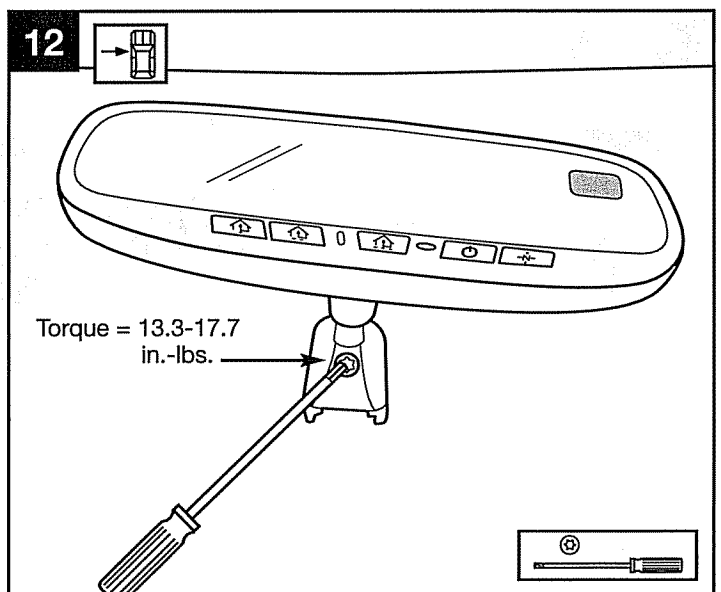
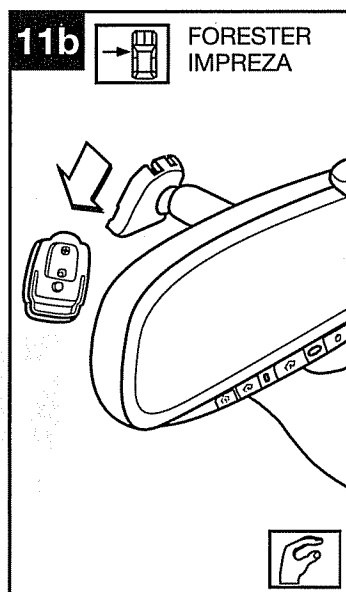
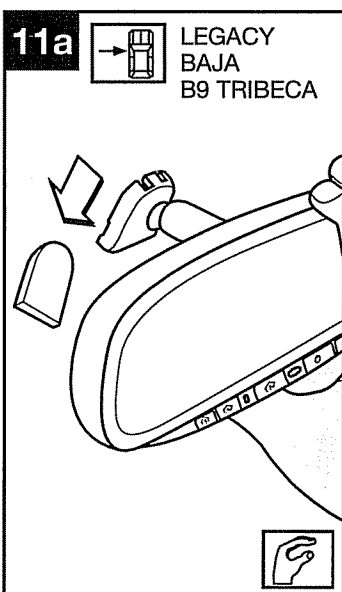
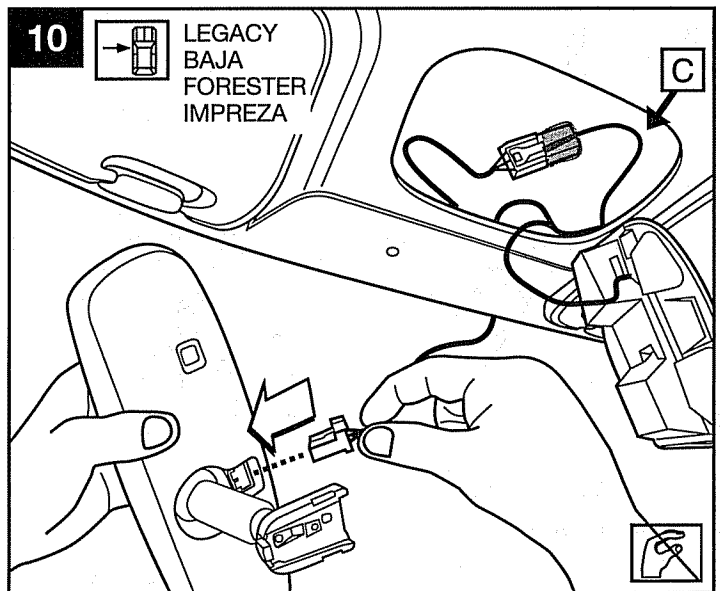
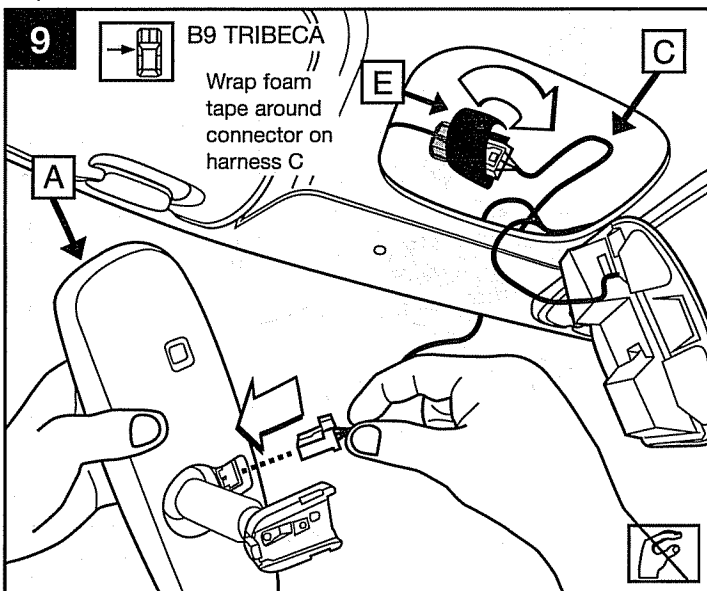
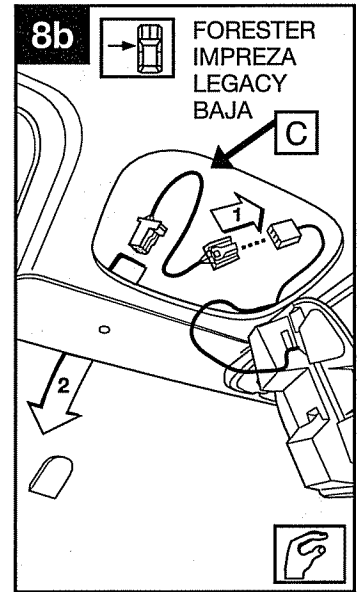
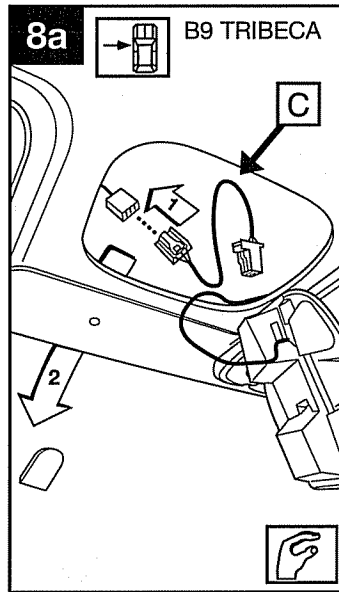
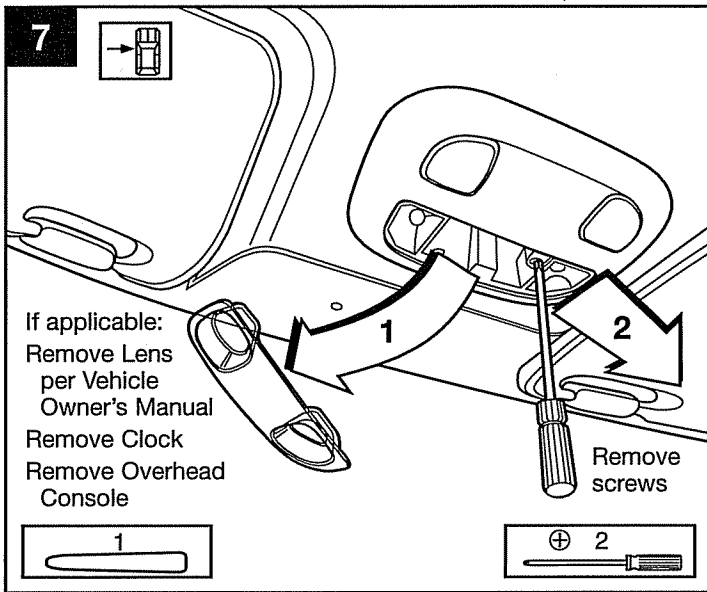


**MEANING OF CHARACTERS:**









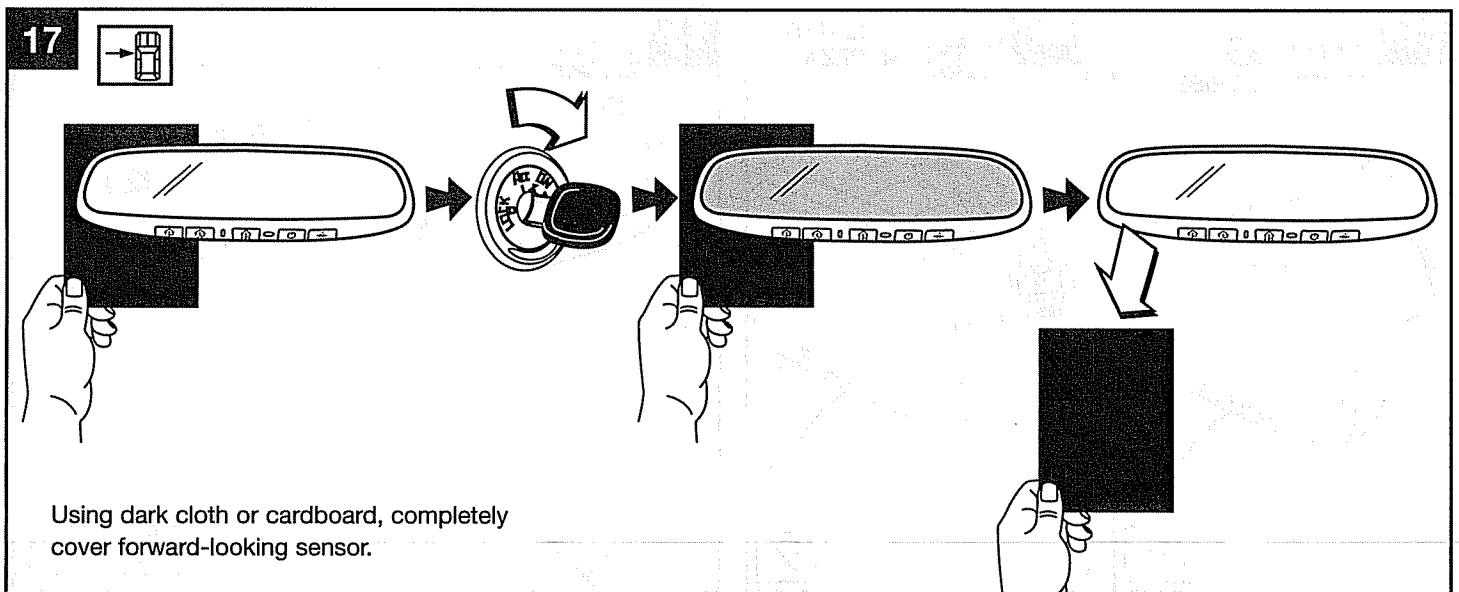
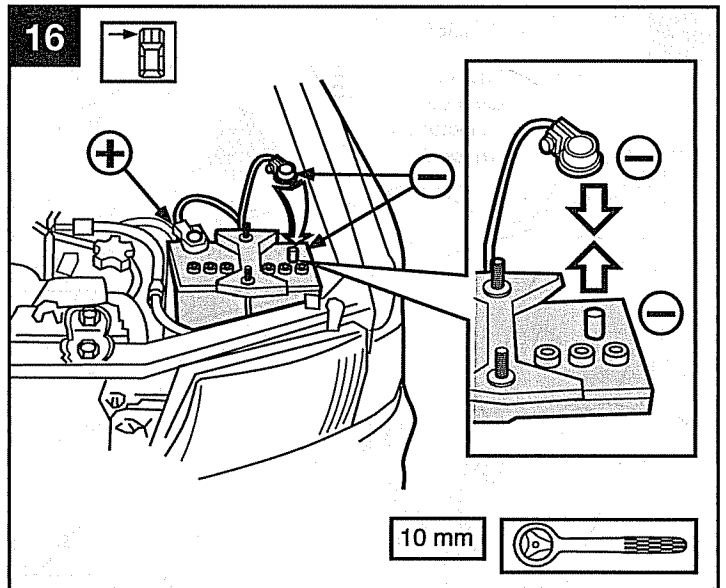
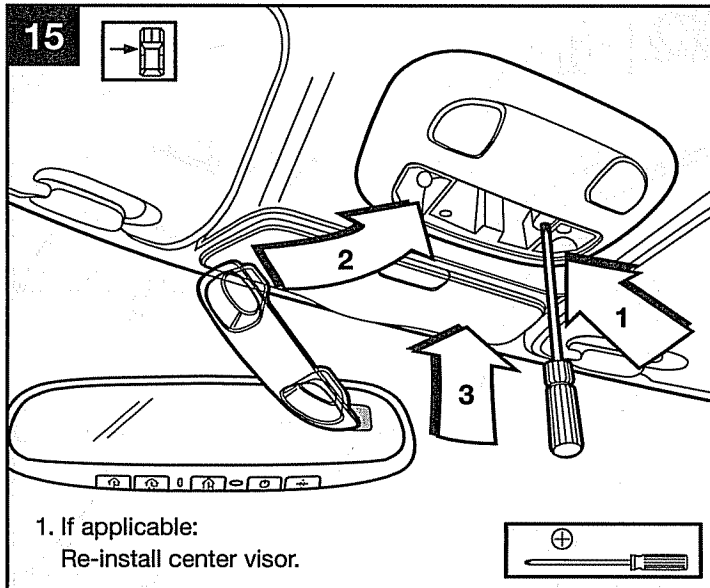
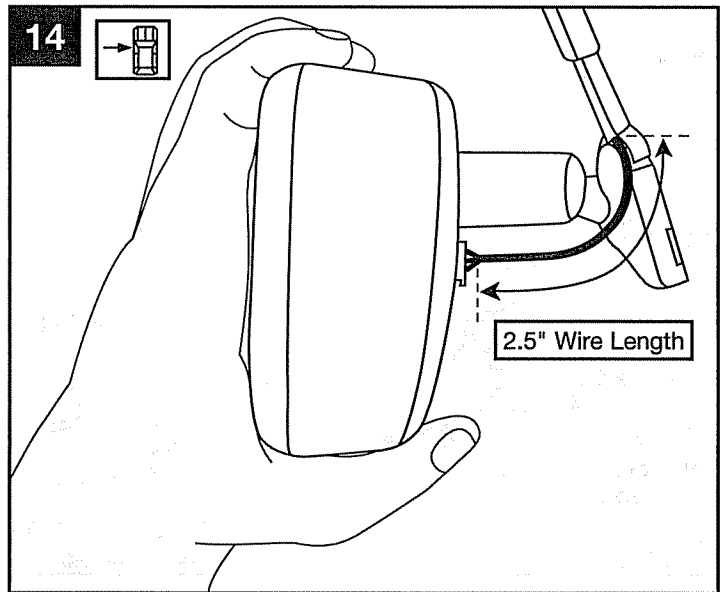
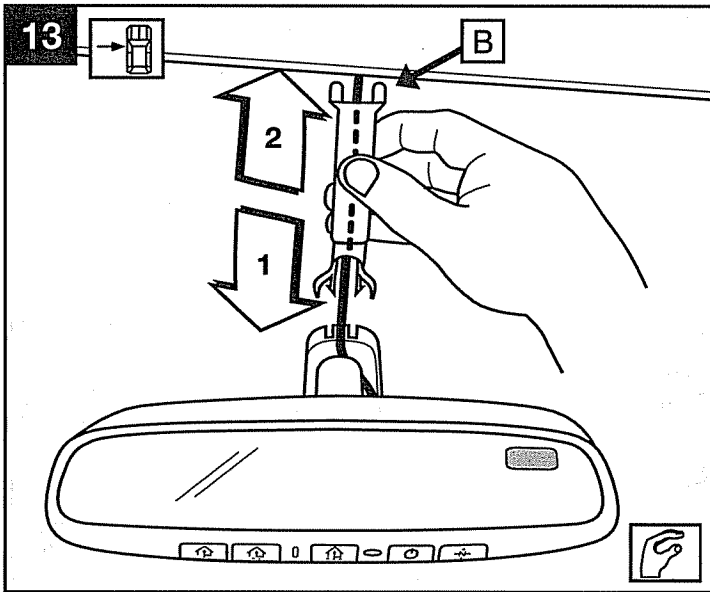
PART NUMBERS  
H501SXA200, H501SAG100

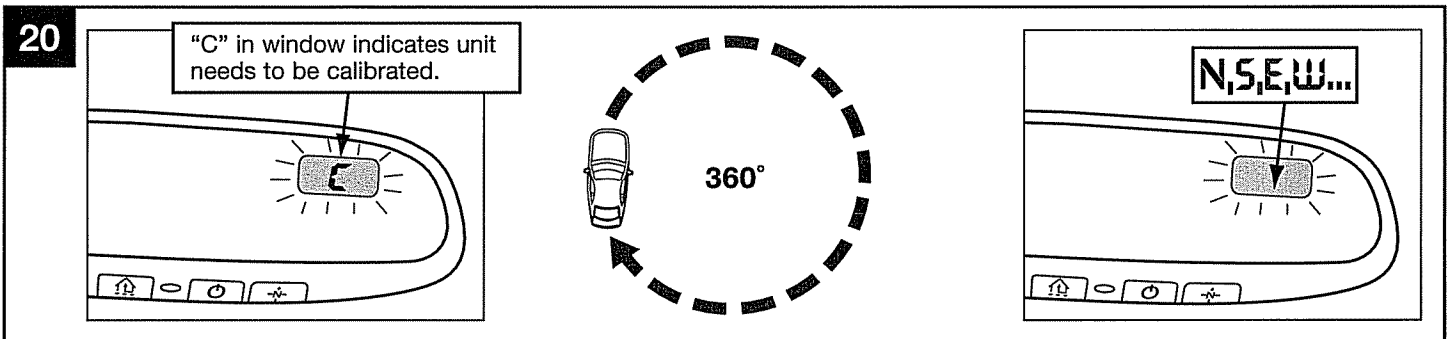
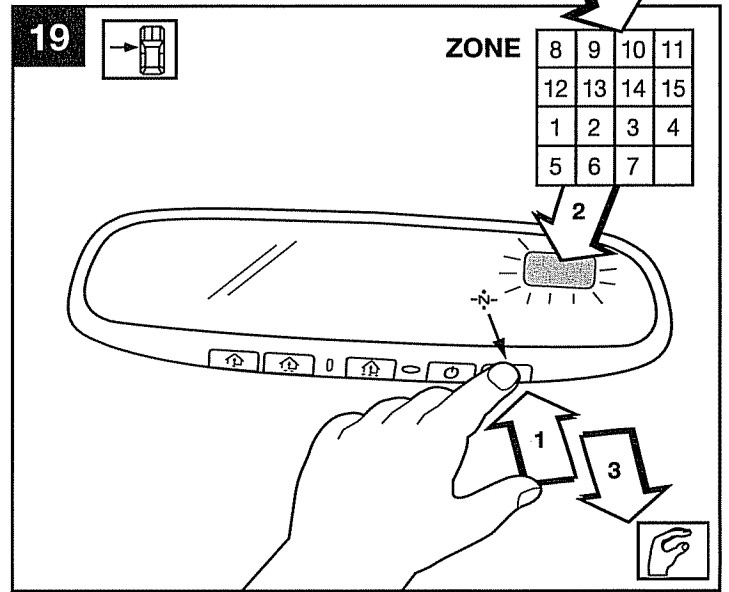
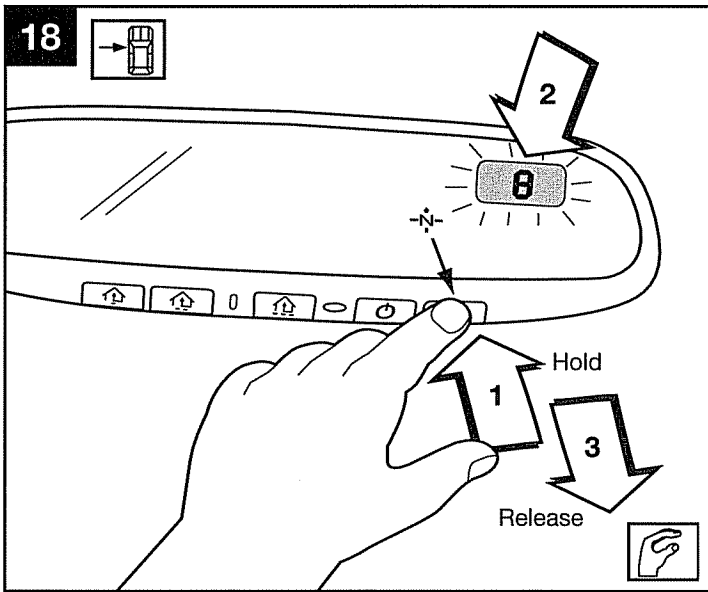
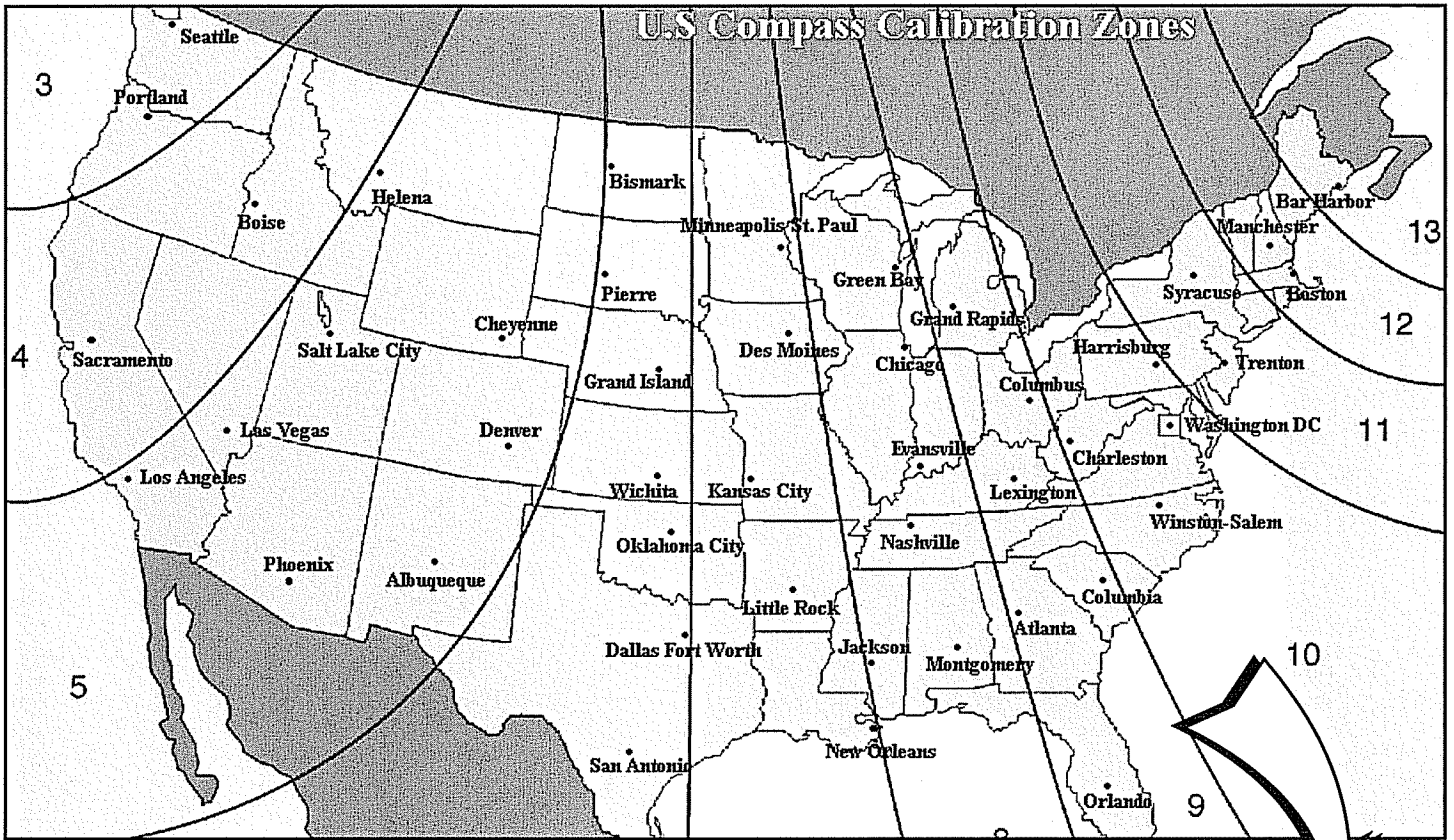
ISSUE  
E

DATE  
2007/02/28

SUBARU OF AMERICA

PAGE  
3/5



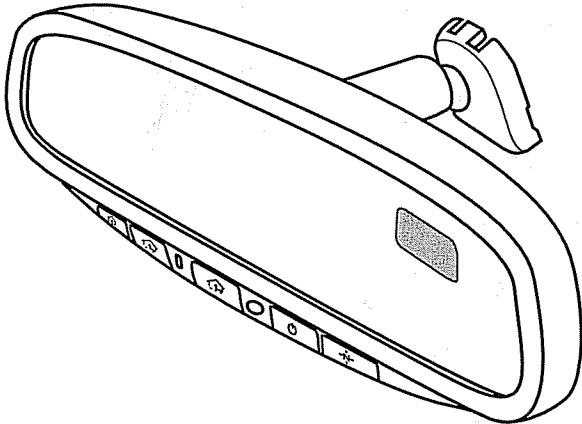
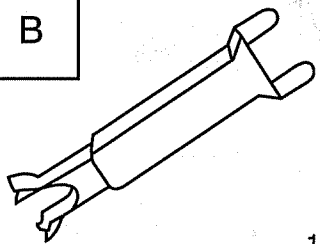

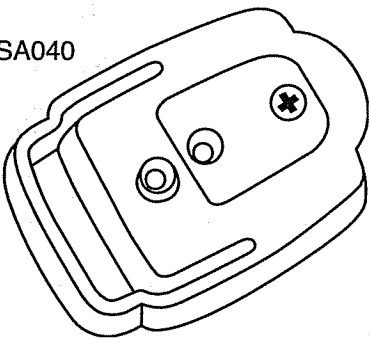
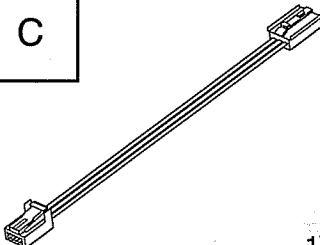
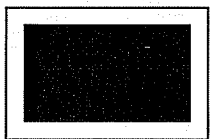
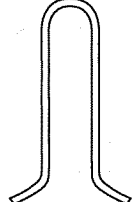
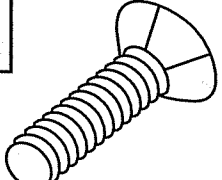
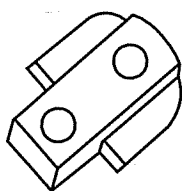
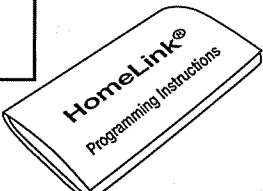






**INSTALLATION INSTRUCTIONS**

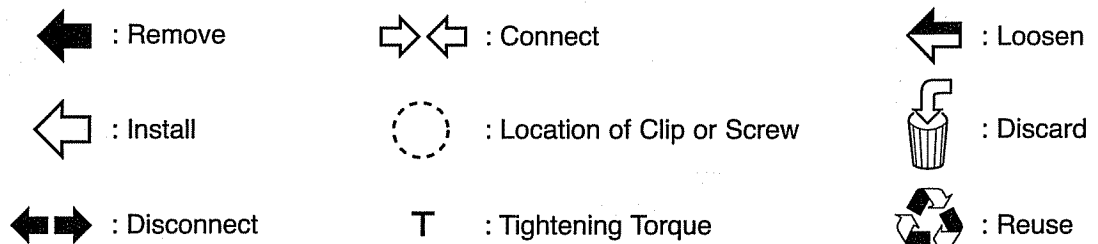
**DESCRIPTION:** ELECTROCHROMIC MIRROR with Compass and HomeLink®

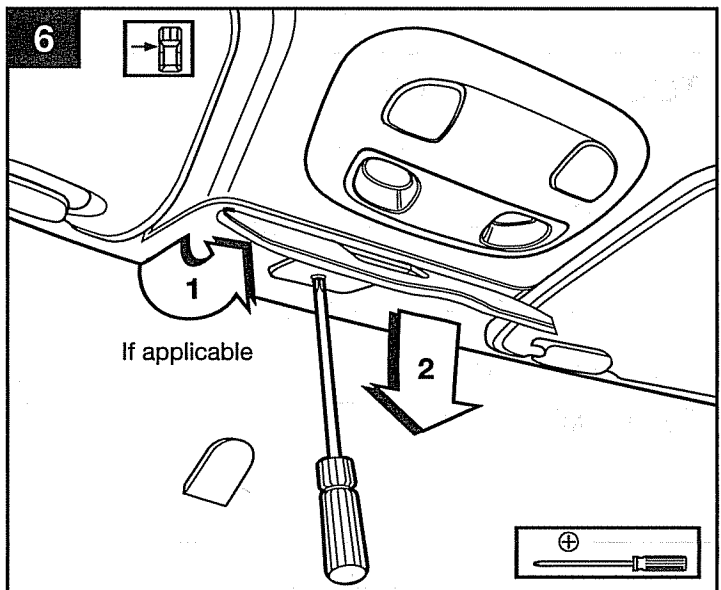
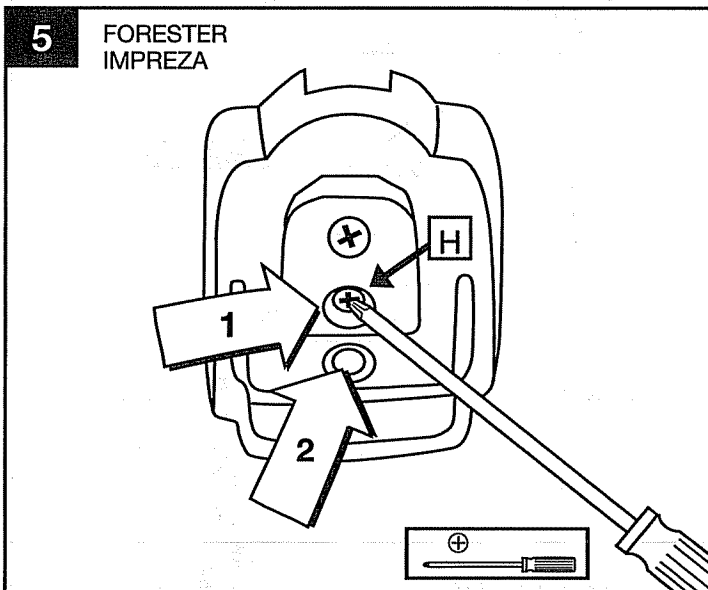
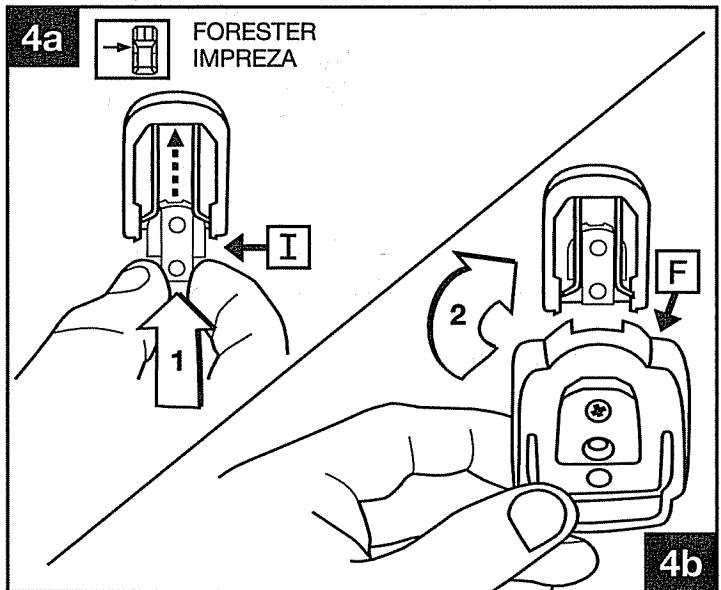
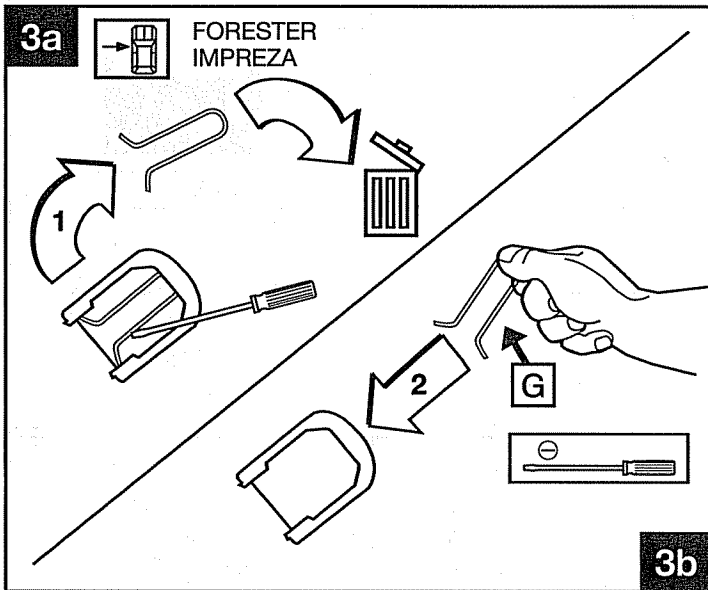
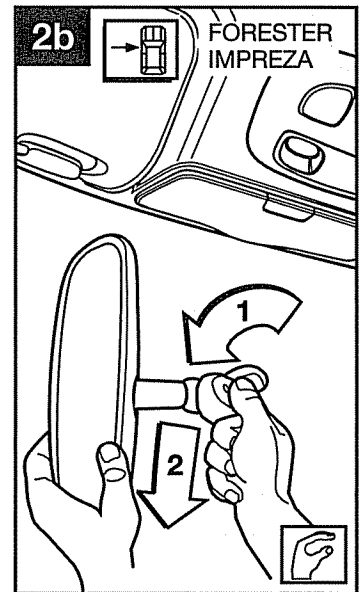
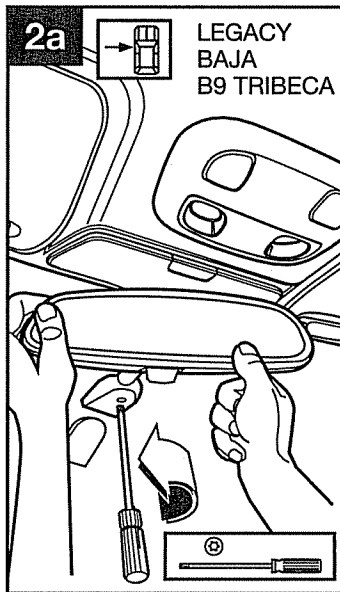
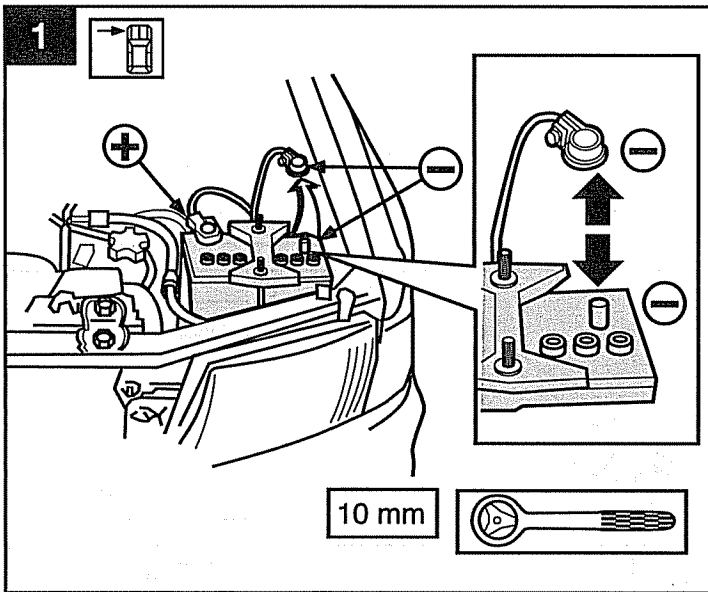
<p><b>A KIT CONTENTS:</b></p>  <p>1X</p>	<p><b>B</b></p>  <p>1X</p>	<p><b>D</b></p>  <p>1X</p>
<p><b>F ADDITIONAL REQUIREMENTS: (FORESTER AND IMPREZA ONLY)</b></p> <p>PT# H501SSA040</p>  <p>1X</p>	<p><b>C</b></p>  <p>1X</p>	<p><b>E B9 TRIBECA ONLY</b></p>  <p>1X</p>
	<p><b>G</b></p> 	<p><b>H</b></p>  <p>2X</p>
	<p><b>I</b></p>  <p>1X</p>	<p><b>J</b></p>  <p>1X</p>

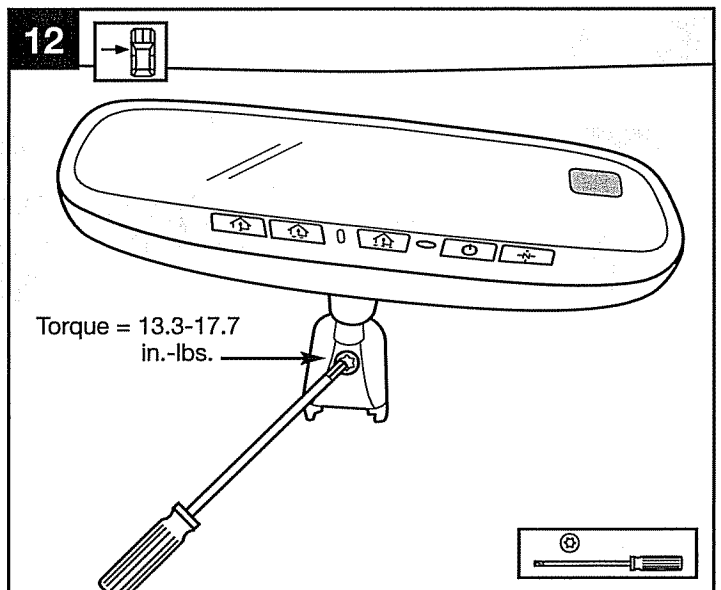
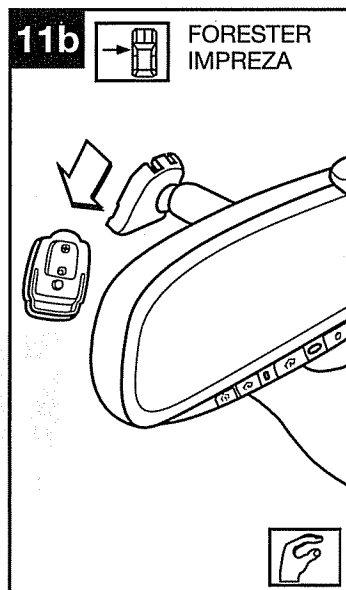
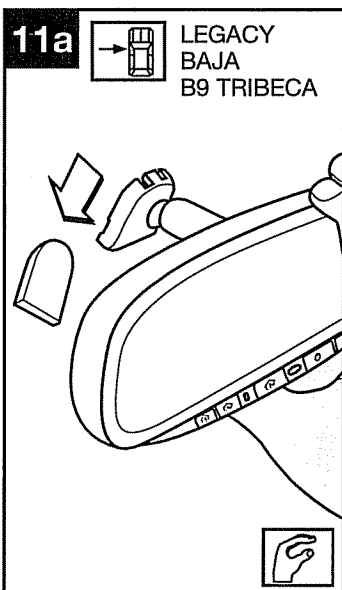
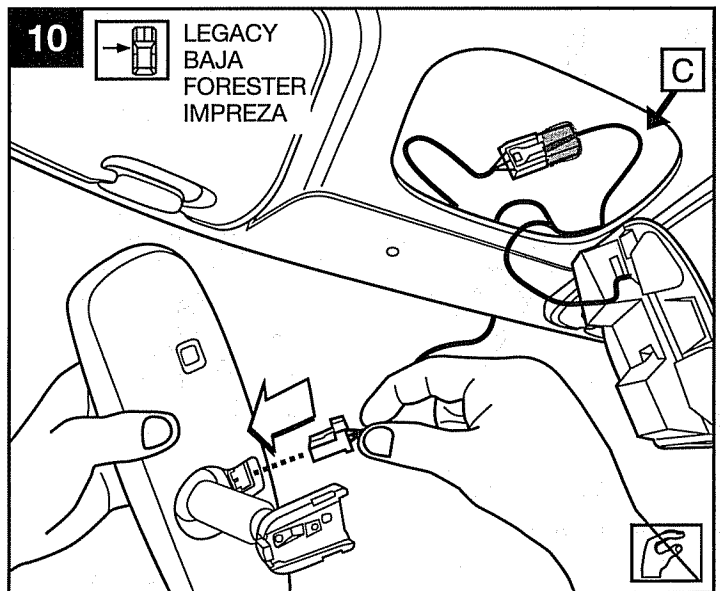
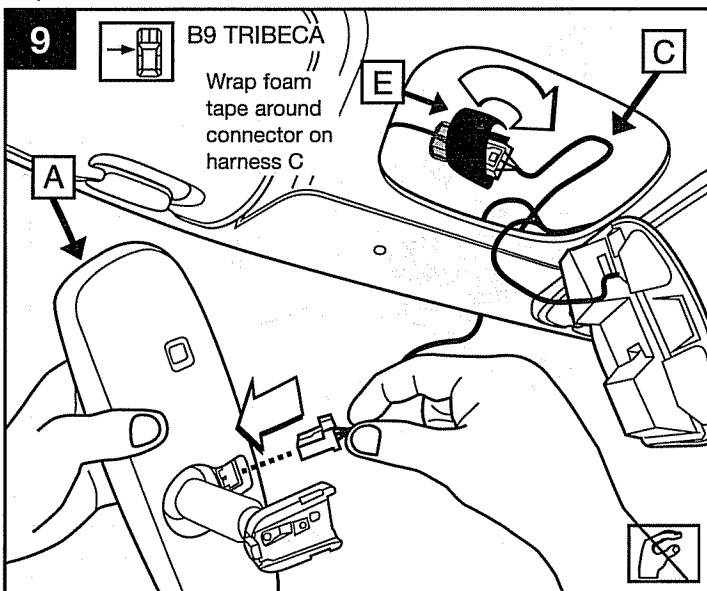
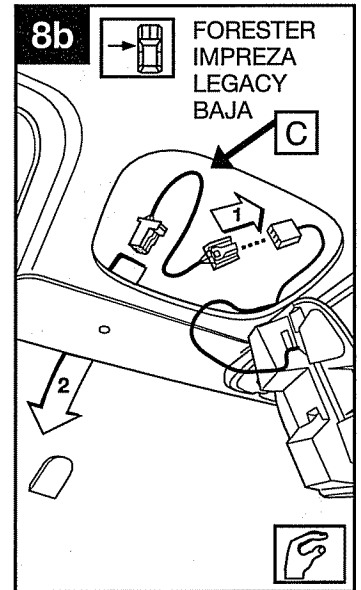
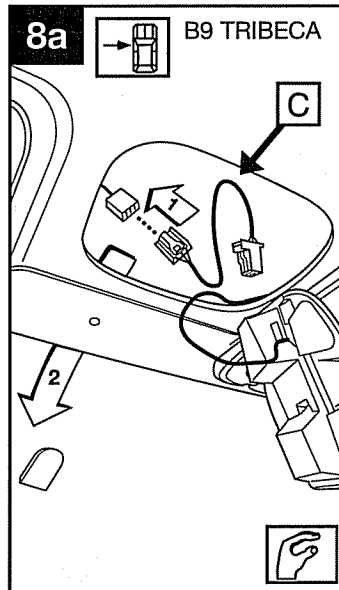
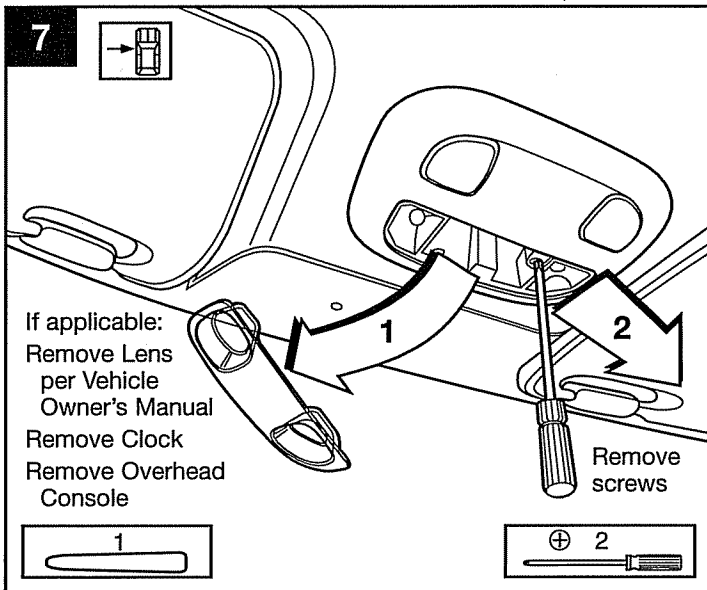
**TOOLS REQUIRED:**

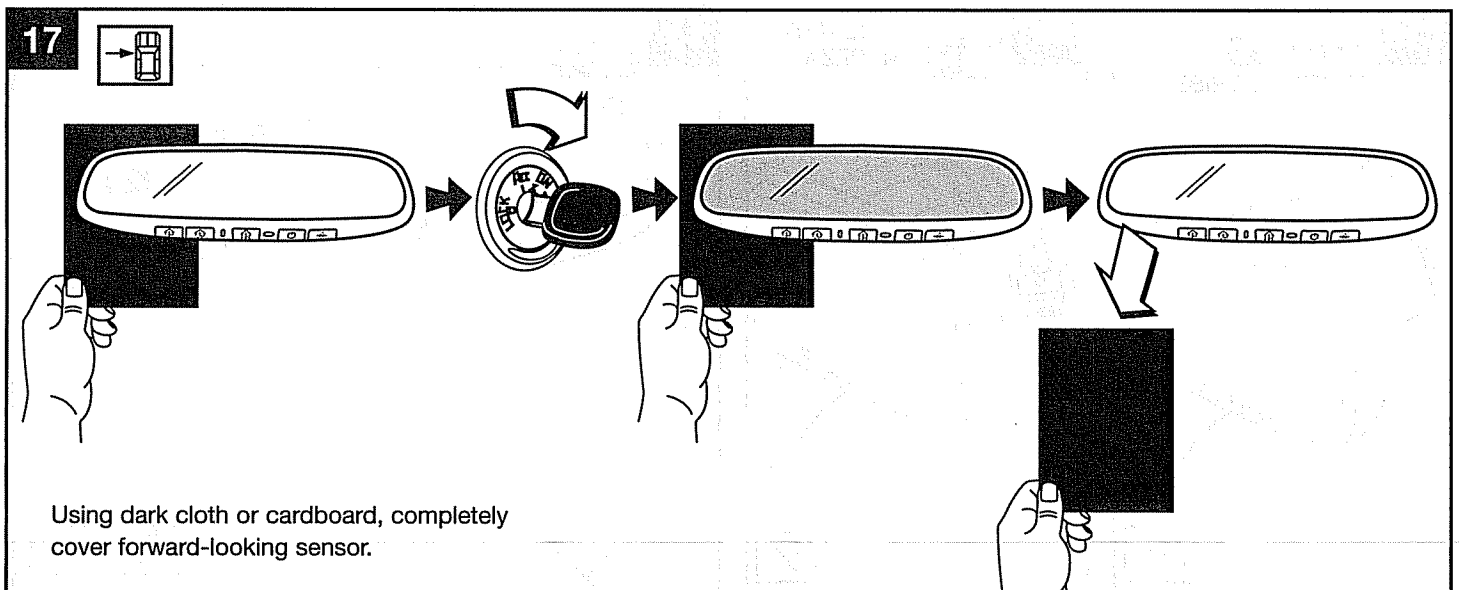
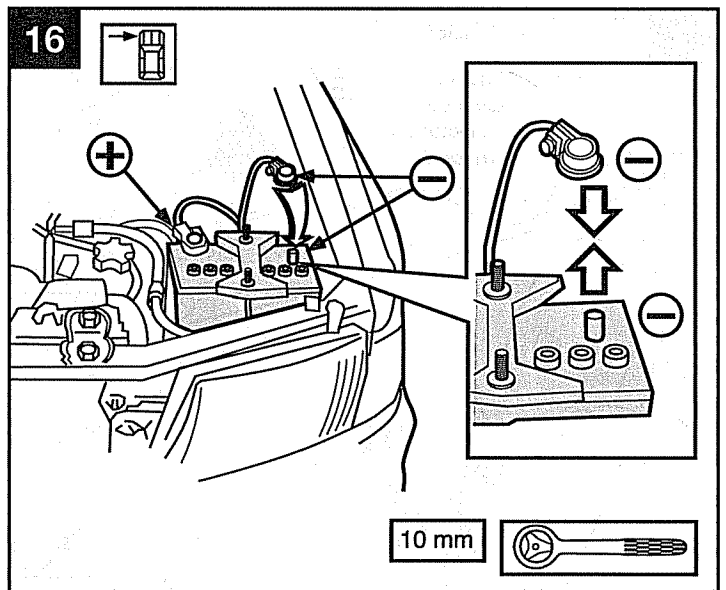
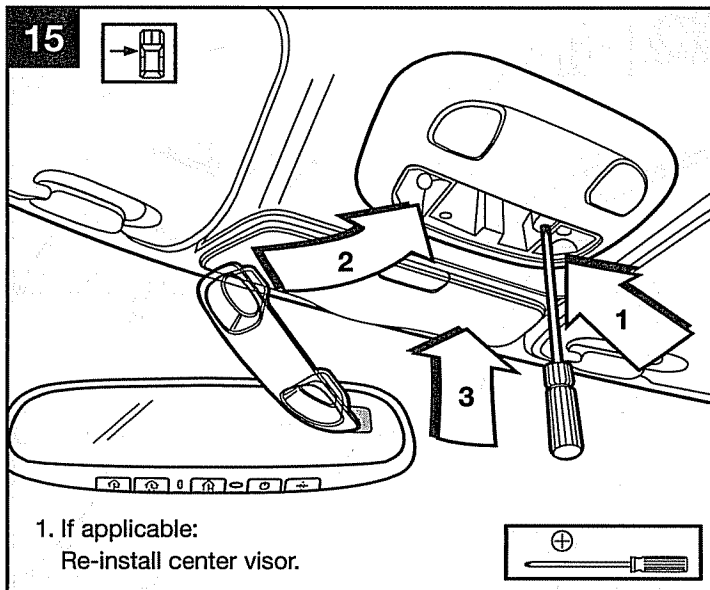
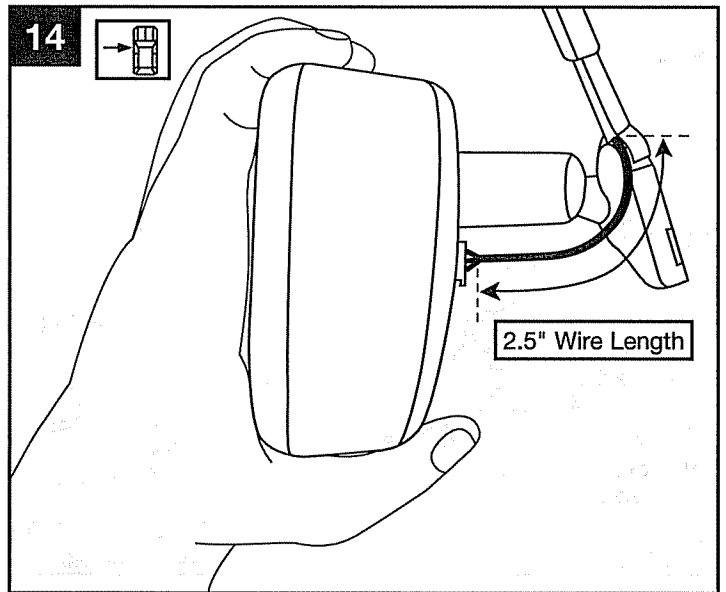
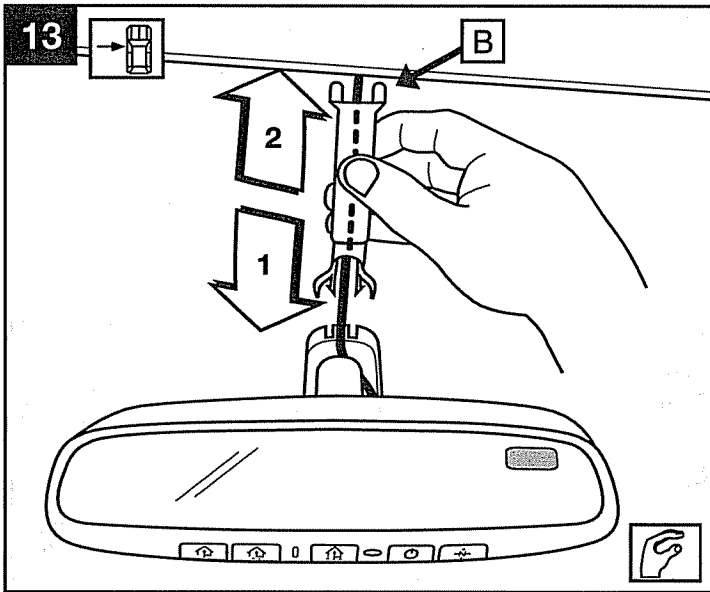


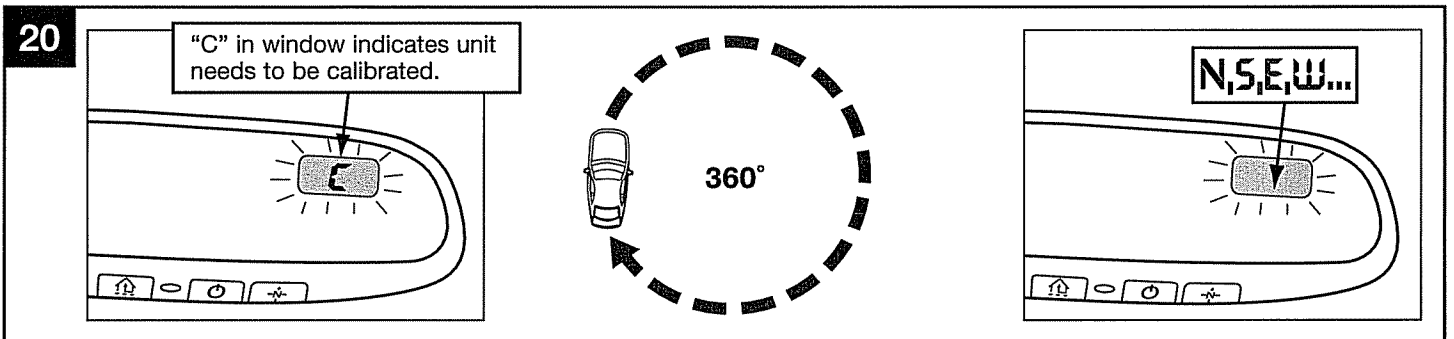
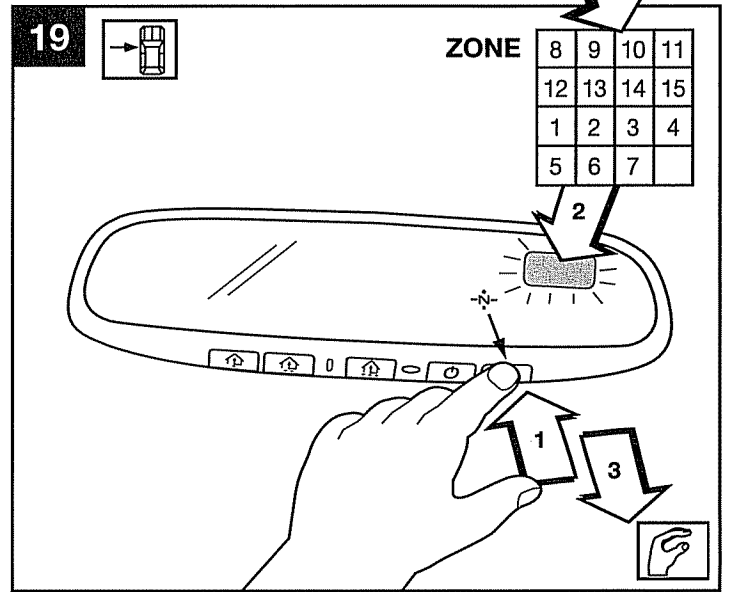
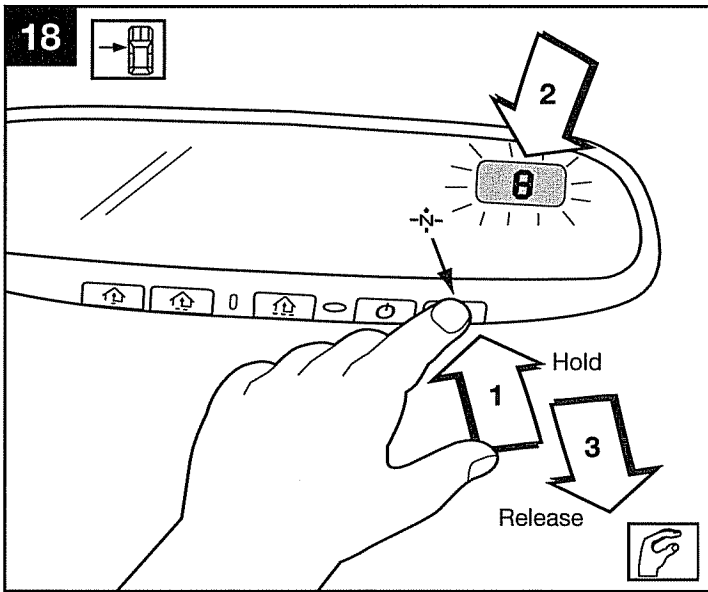
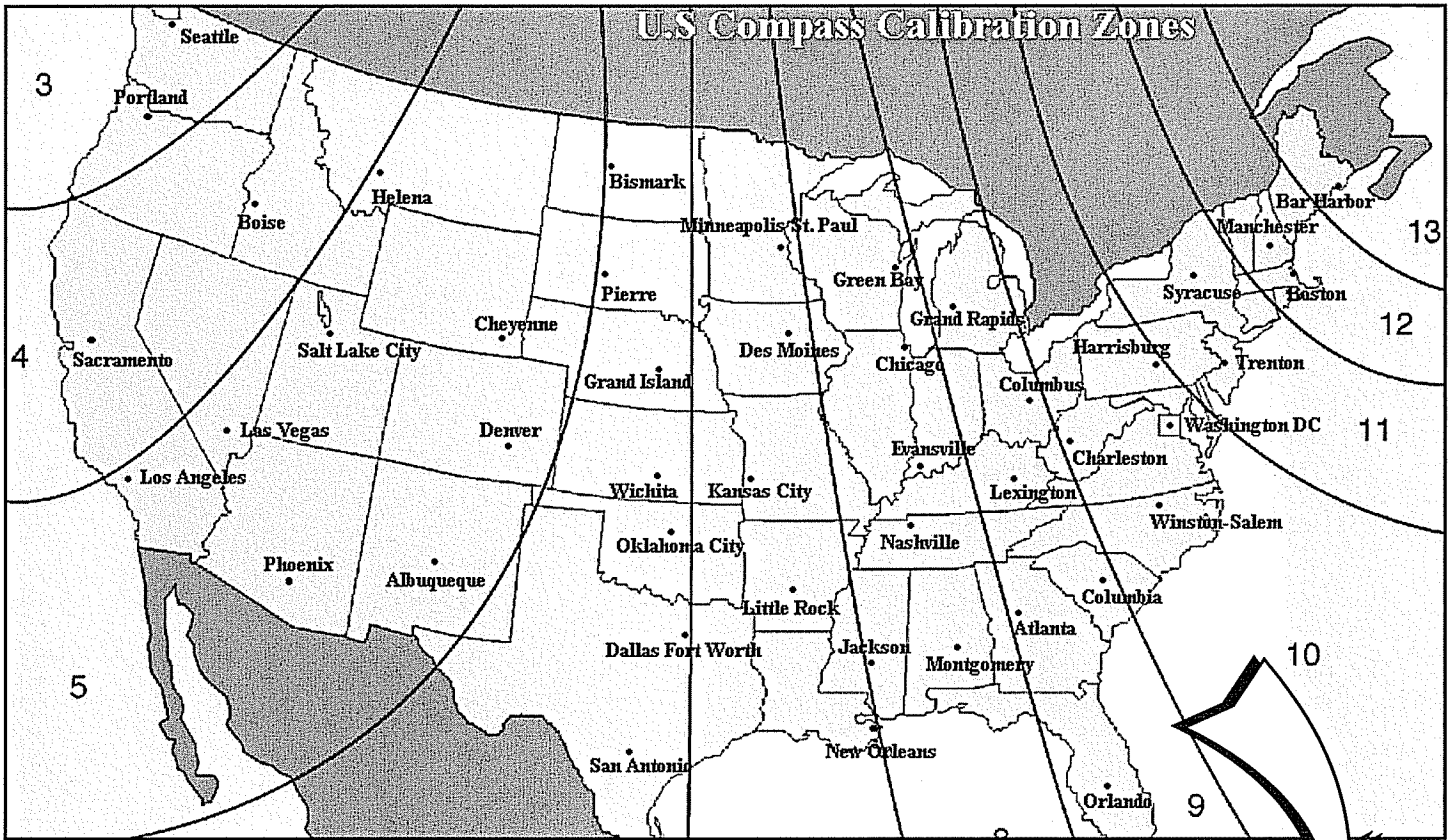
**MEANING OF CHARACTERS:**

















**SUBARU**

999995247

**IMPREZA フォグランブ キット**  
**IMPREZA FOG LAMP KIT**  
**IMPREZA NEBEL LAMPENWERKZEUG**  
**IMPREZA VOILEZ L'EQUIPEMENT DE LA LAMPE**  
**IMPREZA EQUIPAGGIAMENTO DI LAMPADA DI NEBBIA**  
**IMPREZA EQUIPO DE LAMPARA DE NIEBLA**

取付説明書  
 INSTALLATION INSTRUCTION  
 GUIDE D'INSTALLATION  
 EINBAUANLEITUNG  
 MANUALE D'INSTALLAZIONE  
 MANUALE DE INSTALACION

PART No. H4518 FG000 / H4518 FG100 / H4510 FG030 / H4510 FG040 / H4510 FG050 / H4510 FG060

J : お客様へ  
 フォグランブの使用法については、車両の取扱説明書をご覧ください。  
 GB : To customers  
 For usage of the fog lamp, refer to the Owner's Manual.  
 D : Für Kunden  
 Zur Verwendung der Nebelleuchten siehe Betriebsanleitung.  
 F : à notre clientèle  
 Concernant l'usage du feu de brouillard, reportez-vous au Manuel du conducteur.  
 I : Ai clienti  
 Per l'uso del fendinebbia, fare riferimento al Libretto di uso e manutenzione.  
 E : A los clientes  
 Para el uso de la luz antinieblas, consulte el Manual del propietario.



J : 取付作業の方へ

**重要**

1. 取付けは、スバル販売店にて行うことをお勧めします。不適切な組み立てによる損傷および傷害については保証しかねます。
2. 車両部品の取付け・取外しの際は、部品を傷付けないよう細心の注意を払ってください。
3. ハーネス類は、ボディパネルなどのとがった角によって短絡しないよう、安全かつ確実に配線してください。

GB : To technicians

**IMPORTANT**

1. We recommend that the assembly be carried out in a Subaru workshop. No guarantee in case of improper assembly.
2. Pay special attention not to damage vehicle components when removing / installing them.
3. Route cord assy so safe and reliable that sharp edges of the body panels etc, will not cause an electrical short circuit.

D : Für Techniker

**WICHTIG**

1. Wir empfehlen, daß der Einbau in einer Subaru-Werkstatt ausgeführt wird. Bei falschem Einbau wird keine Garantie übernommen.
2. Beim Ein- und Ausbau der Nebelscheinwerfer unbedingt darauf achten, daß es nicht zur Beschädigung anderer Bauteile kommt.
3. Die Kabel sind dabei so zu verlegen, daß sie nicht an den scharfen Kanten der Karosseriebleche anliegen und keinen Kurzschluß verursachen.

F : Aux techniciens

**IMPORTANT**

1. Nous recommandons de faire entreprendre le montage par un atelier Subaru. Aucune garantie n'est accordée en cas de montage défectueux.
2. Prendre particulièrement garde de ne pas endommager les éléments du véhicule lors du démontage ou remontage.
3. Bien acheminer les fils conducteurs de sorte que les arêtes tranchantes des panneaux de carrosserie, etc., ne provoquent pas de court-circuit.

I : Ai tecnici

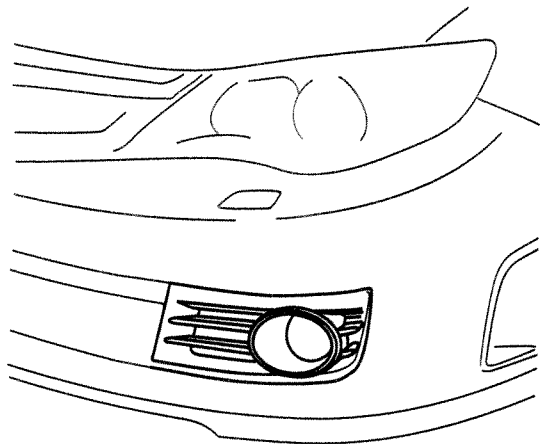
**IMPORTANTE**

1. Raccomandiamo che il montaggio venga eseguito in una officina Subaru. In caso di montaggio non corretto la garanzia è invalidata.
2. Fare molta attenzione a non danneggiare i componenti del veicolo durante la loro rimozione o installazione.
3. Instradare i cablaggi elettrici in modo sicuro e affidabile così che i bordi taglienti dei pannelli della carrozzeria, etc. non possano causare cortocircuiti.

E : A los técnicos

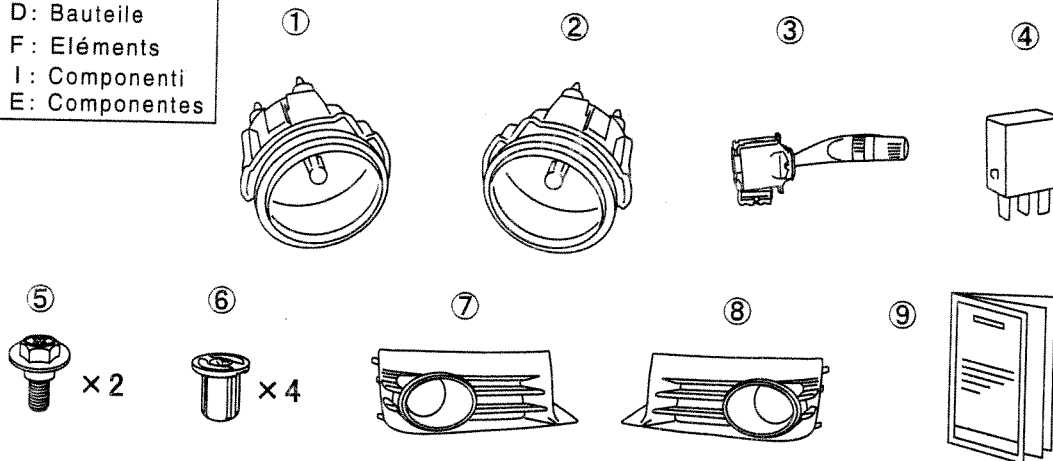
**IMPORTANTE**

1. Recomendamos llevar a cabo el montaje en un taller de Subaru. No se da ninguna garantía en caso de un montaje incorrecto.
2. Preste especialmente atención para no dañar los componentes del vehículo durante la extracción y la instalación.
3. Haga pasar el conjunto de cables por un lugar seguro que no cause interferencias evitando las esquinas afiladas de los paneles de la carrocería, etc. Tenga cuidado de que no se produzca ningún cortocircuito.



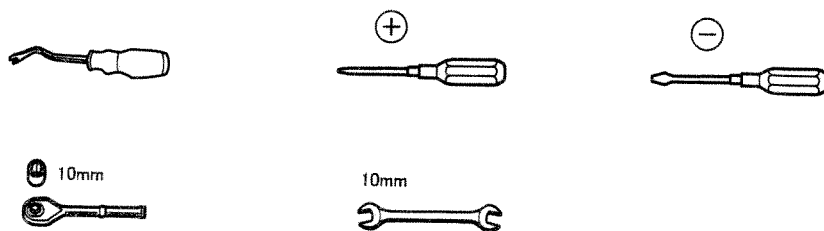
OP-00112

J: 構成部品  
 GB: Components  
 D: Bauteile  
 F: Eléments  
 I: Componenti  
 E: Componentes



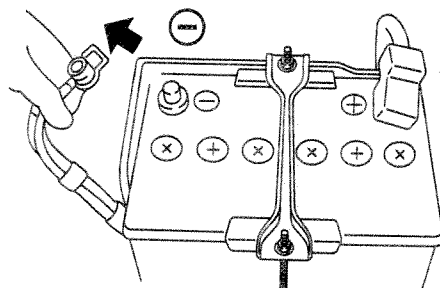
OP-00113

工具  
 Tools  
 Werkzeuge  
 Outils  
 Attrezzi  
 Herramientas



OP-00114

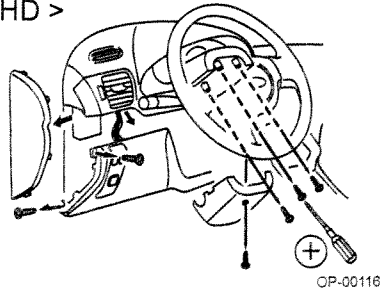
1



OP-00115

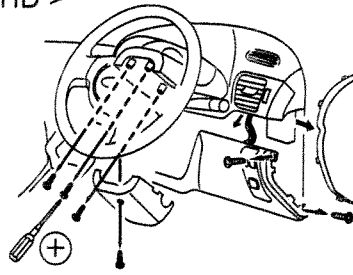
2

< LHD >



OP-00116

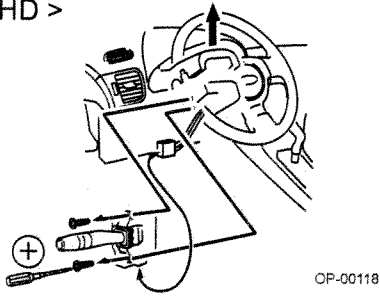
< RHD >



OP-00117

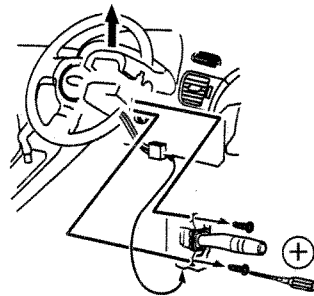
3

< LHD >



OP-00118

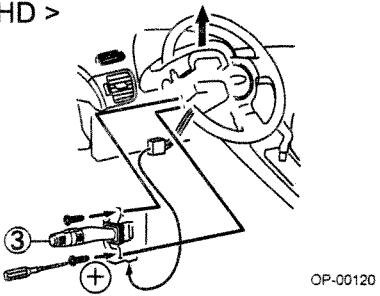
< RHD >



OP-00119

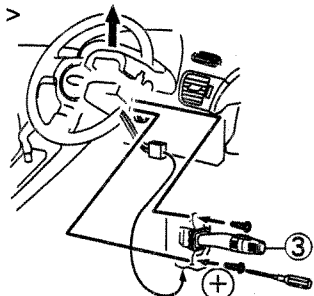
4

< LHD >



OP-00120

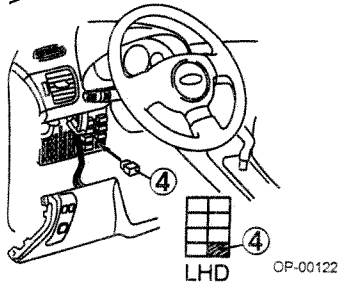
< RHD >



OP-00121

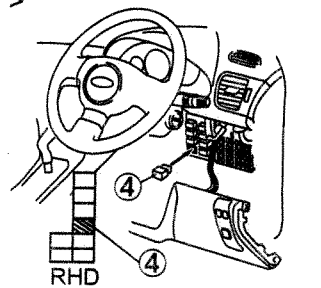
5

< LHD >



OP-00122

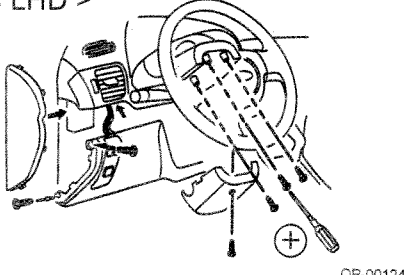
< RHD >



OP-00123

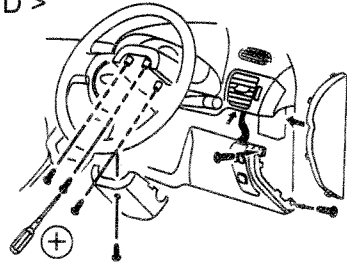
6

< LHD >



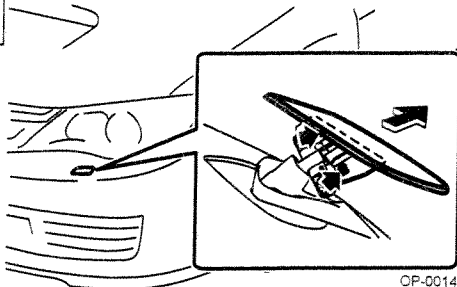
OP-00124

< RHD >

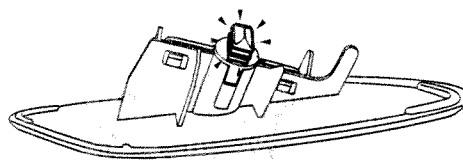


OP-00125

7



OP-00145



OP-00146

J : 注意

ヘッドランプウォッシャーノズルカバーとホルダーと一緒に外れてしまった場合は、ヘッドランプウォッシャーノズル ASSY を新品のものに交換すること。再使用すると、ヘッドランプウォッシャーが正しく作動しなくなります。

GB : CAUTION

If the headlight washer nozzle cover and holder are dislocated together, replace the headlight washer nozzle assembly with a new part. Reusing it will cause a washer malfunction.

D : VORSICHT

Wenn Düsenabdeckung und Halter der Scheinwerfer-Waschanlage zusammen verschoben werden, die Waschdüsenbaugruppe durch ein Neuteil ersetzen. Eine Wiederverwendung führt zur Fehlfunktion der Waschanlage.

F : ATTENTION

Si le couvercle de gicleur de lave-phares et son support sont déplacés, remplacez l'ensemble de gicleur de lave-phares. Une réutilisation provoquerait le dysfonctionnement du gicleur de lave-phares.

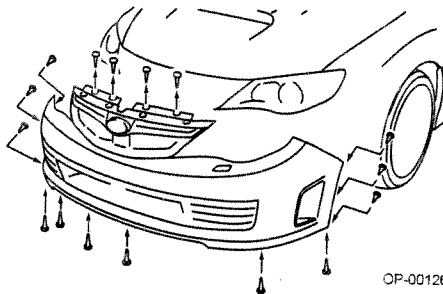
I : ATTENZIONE

Se il copriugello e il portaugello del lavafari risultano dislocati l'uno rispetto all'altro, sostituire l'intero gruppo dell'ugello lavafari con un pezzo nuovo. Riutilizzandolo, si possono causare anomalie di funzionamento del lavafari.

E : PRECAUCIÓN

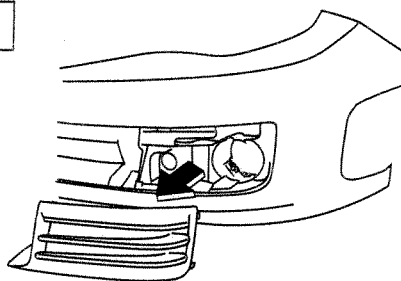
Si la cubierta y el soporte de la boquilla del lavafaros se desprenden, reemplace el ensamble de la boquilla del lavafaros por una pieza nueva. Si vuelve a utilizarlo, es posible que se produzca un mal funcionamiento del lavador.

8



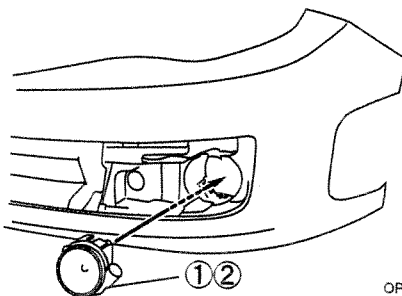
OP-00126

9



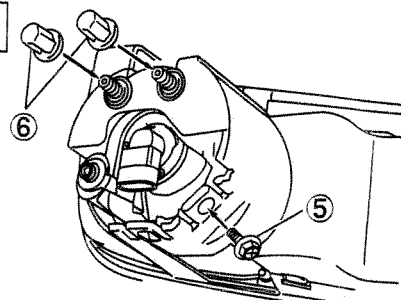
OP-00133

10



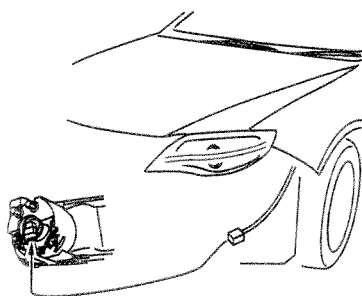
OP-00127

11



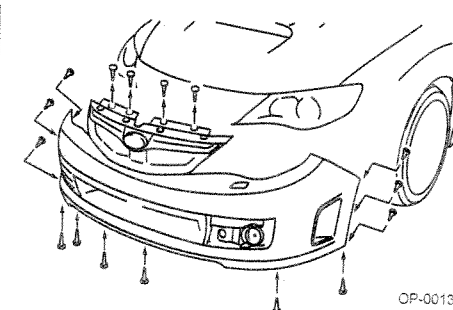
OP-00128

12



OP-00129

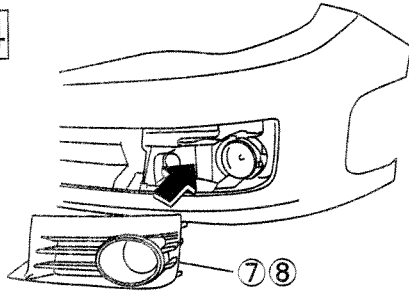
13



OP-00130

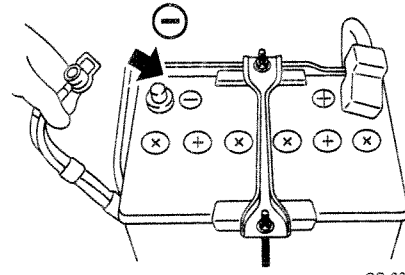


14



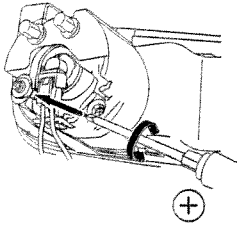
OP-00134

15

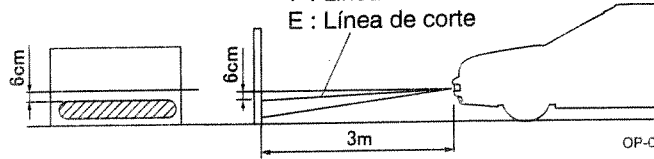


OP-00131

16



- J : 光軸調整
- GB : cut off line
- D : Hell-Dunkelgrenze
- F : Ligne de coupure
- I : Linea di demarcazione
- E : Linea de corte



OP-00132



**SUBARU**

# Installation Instructions: Outback Fog Lamp Kit

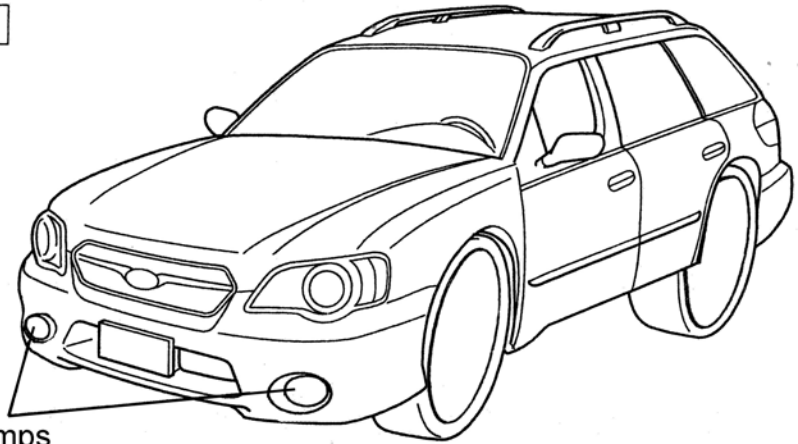
PART.No H451SAG000

## IMPORTANT



1. The installation should be carried out by an authorized Subaru dealer.
2. Take care not to damage any vehicle components during the installation process.
3. Route the wiring so that it cannot be abraded against any sharp edges.

## Installation drawing



Fog lamps

## Components

No.	Part	Qty	No.	Part	Qty
①	Fog lamp (RH)	1	⑤	Clip	4
②	Fog lamp (LH)	1	⑥	Installation instructions	1
③	Switch	1	⑦	Relay	1
④	Nut	4			

①



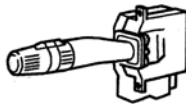
84501AG10A

②



84501AG11A

③



83115AG141

④



023806007

⑤



909140051

⑥

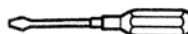
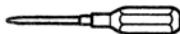


⑦



82501AG05B

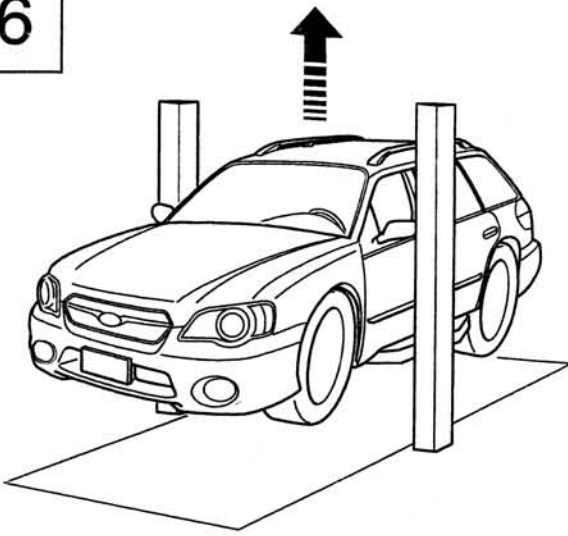
## Tools



10mm

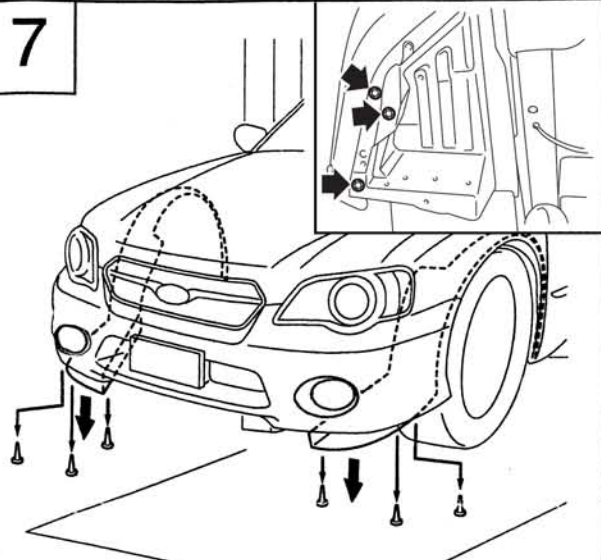


6



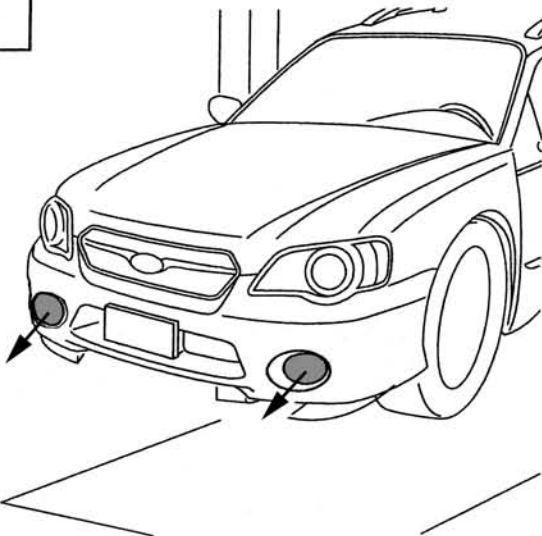
Safely raise vehicle.

7



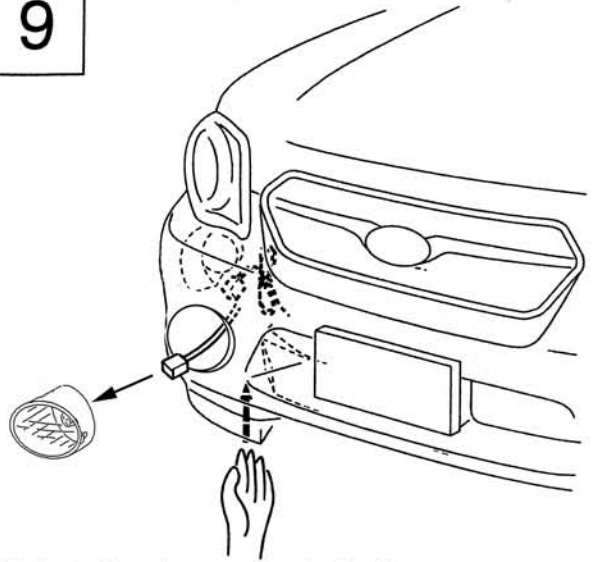
Remove indicated clips. Lower splash shields for access.

8



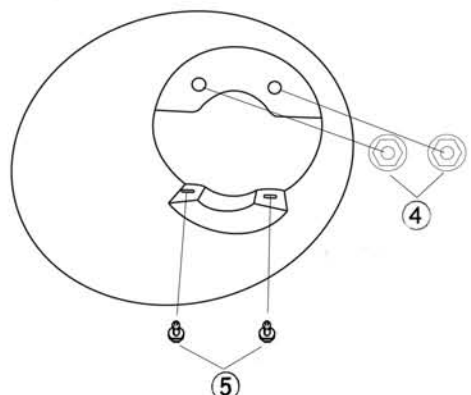
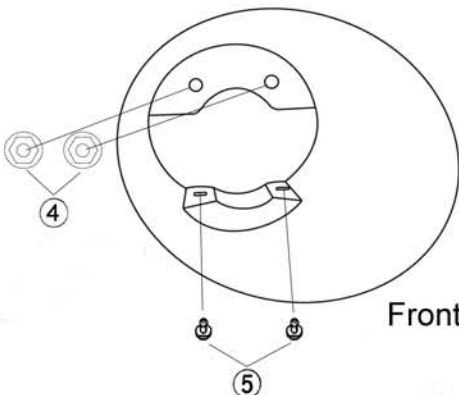
Remove fog lamp blanks.

9



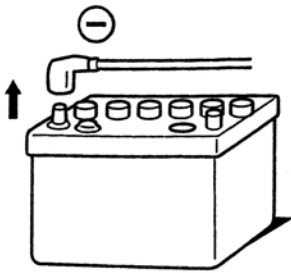
Obtain fog lamp harness from behind bumper cover. Connect to back of fog lamp. Repeat for other side.

10



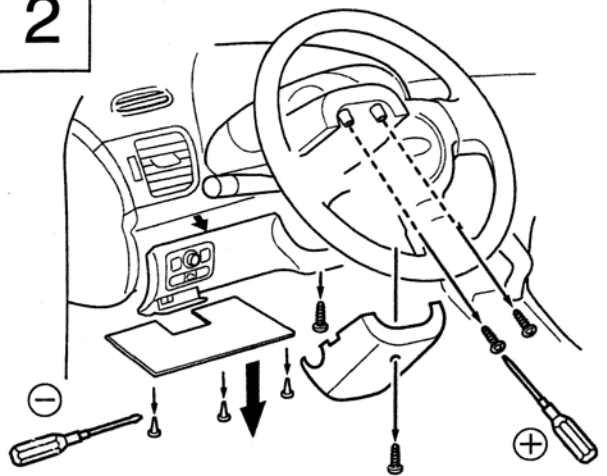
Attach each fog lamp with 2 clips and 2 nuts. Ensure that the wiring harness is not crushed.

1



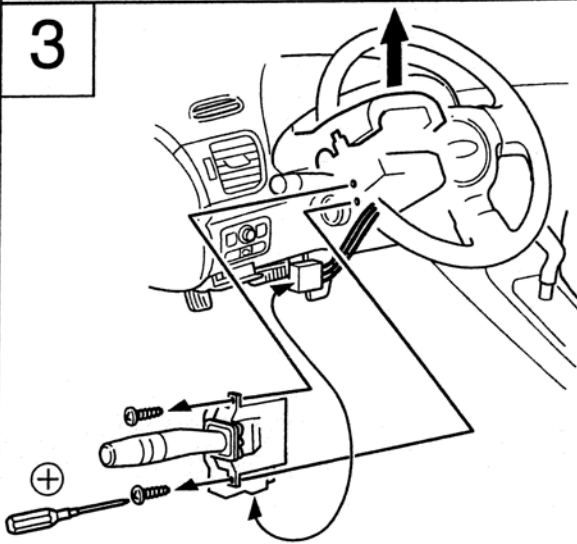
Disconnect negative terminal from battery.

2



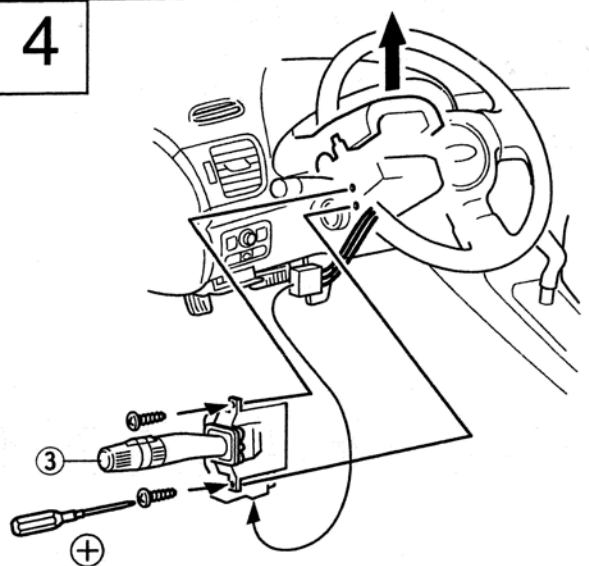
Remove lower dashboard panels.  
Remove lower and upper steering column covers.

3



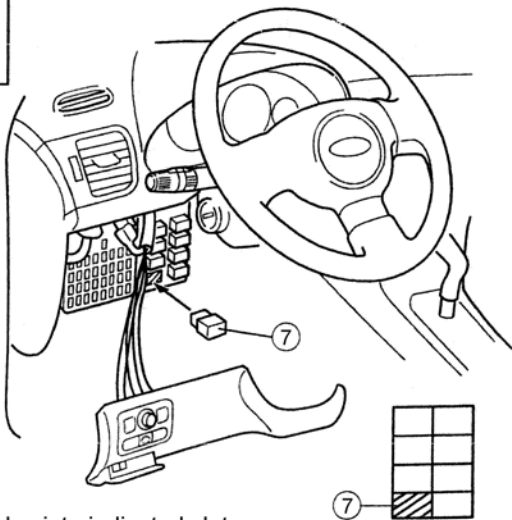
Remove turn signal stalk.

4



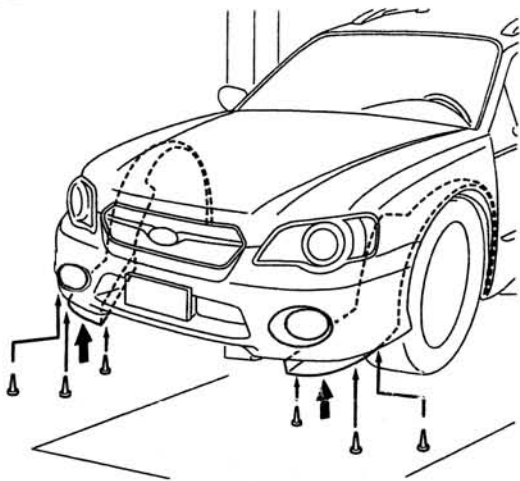
Install new turn signal stalk.

5



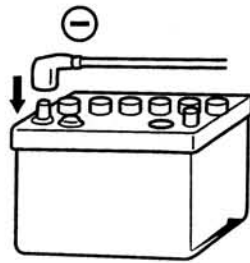
Insert relay into indicated slot.  
Replace lower and upper steering column covers.  
Replace lower dashboard panels.

11



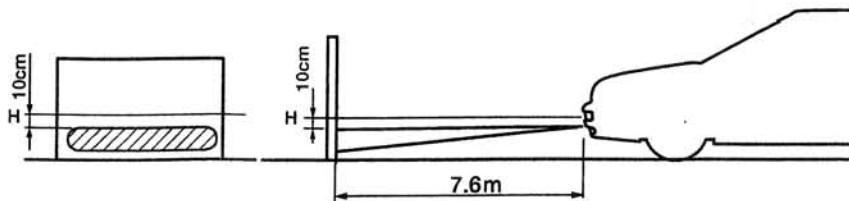
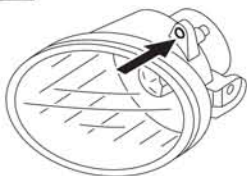
Replace splash shields.

12



Reconnect negative terminal on battery.

13



Aim fog lamps.





**SUBARU**

# Installation Instructions: Outback Fog Lamp Kit

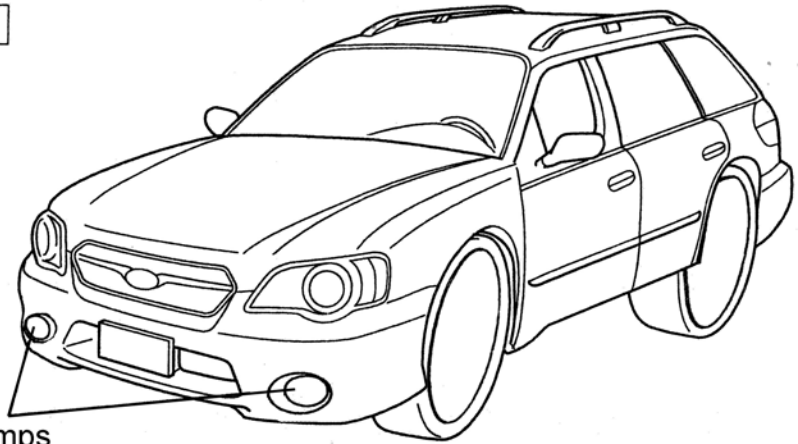
PART.No H451SAG000

## IMPORTANT



1. The installation should be carried out by an authorized Subaru dealer.
2. Take care not to damage any vehicle components during the installation process.
3. Route the wiring so that it cannot be abraded against any sharp edges.

## Installation drawing



Fog lamps

## Components

No.	Part	Qty	No.	Part	Qty
①	Fog lamp (RH)	1	⑤	Clip	4
②	Fog lamp (LH)	1	⑥	Installation instructions	1
③	Switch	1	⑦	Relay	1
④	Nut	4			

①



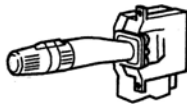
84501AG10A

②



84501AG11A

③



83115AG141

④



023806007

⑤



909140051

⑥

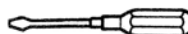
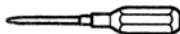


⑦



82501AG05B

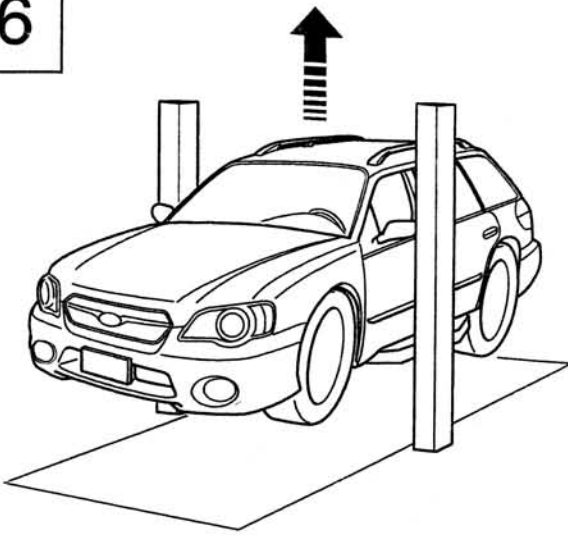
## Tools



10mm

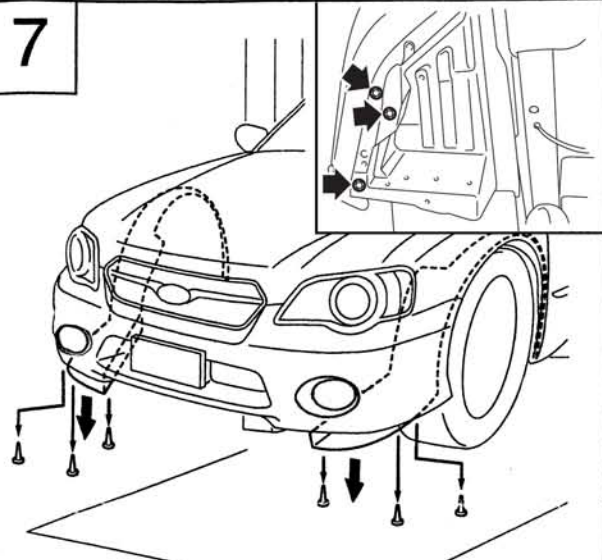


6



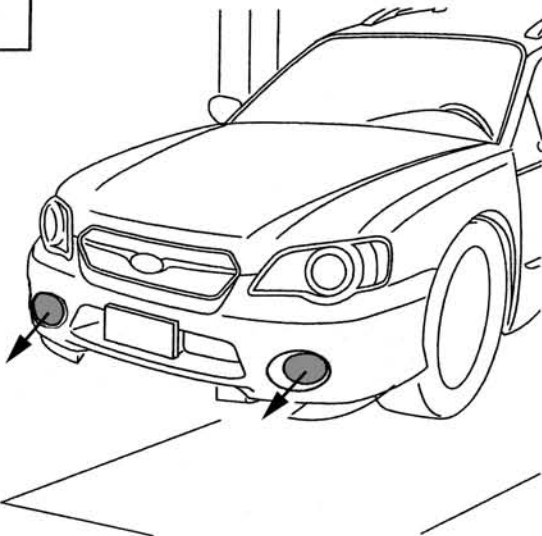
Safely raise vehicle.

7



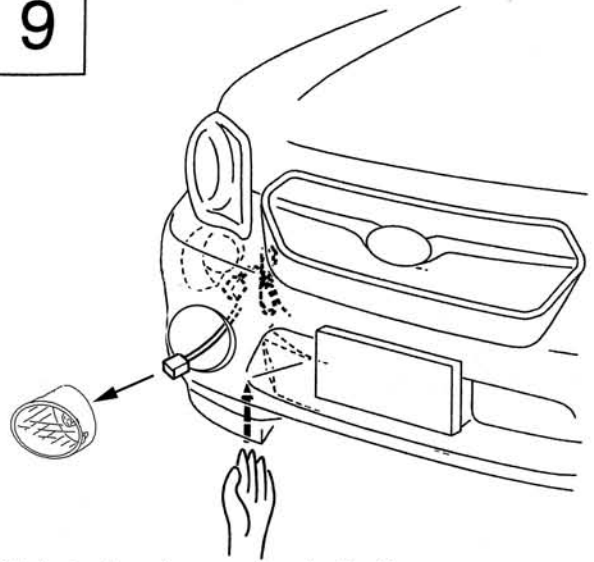
Remove indicated clips. Lower splash shields for access.

8



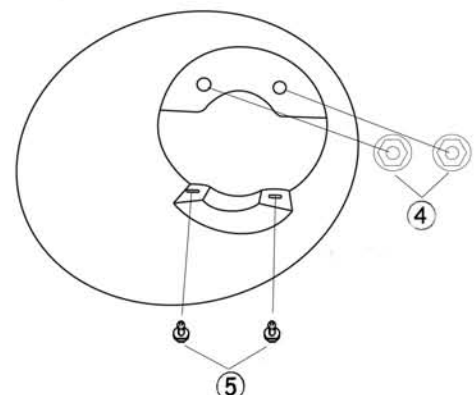
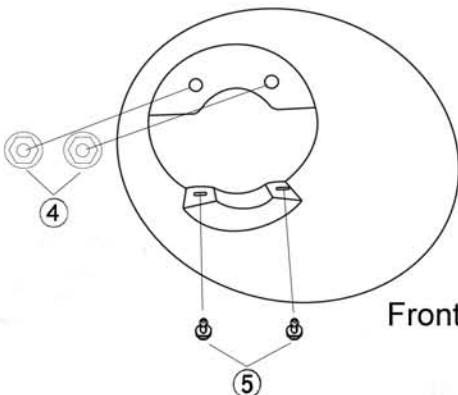
Remove fog lamp blanks.

9



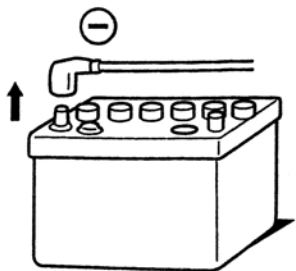
Obtain fog lamp harness from behind bumper cover. Connect to back of fog lamp. Repeat for other side.

10



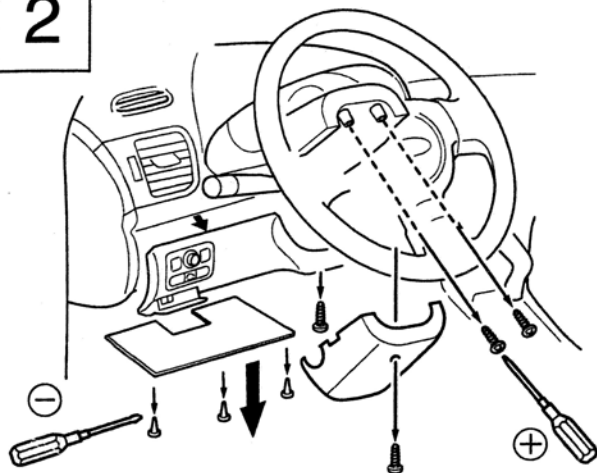
Attach each fog lamp with 2 clips and 2 nuts. Ensure that the wiring harness is not crushed.

1



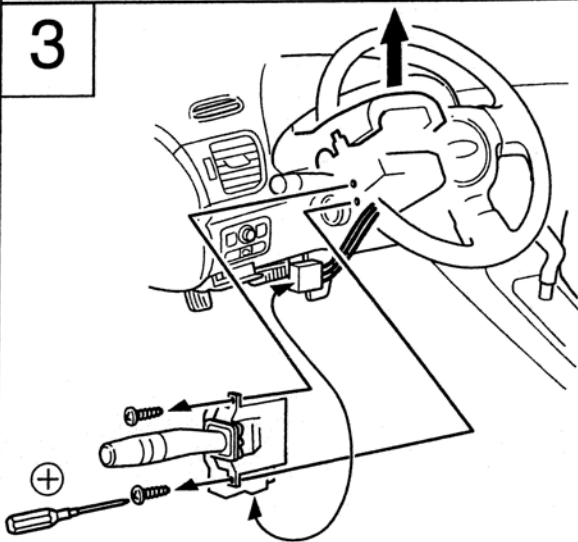
Disconnect negative terminal from battery.

2



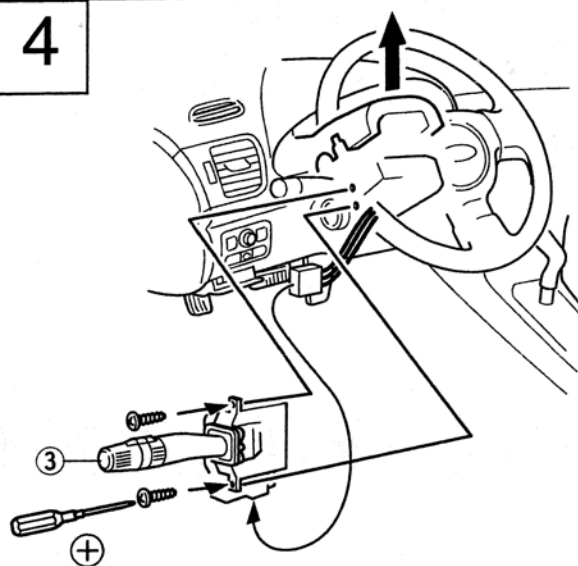
Remove lower dashboard panels.  
Remove lower and upper steering column covers.

3



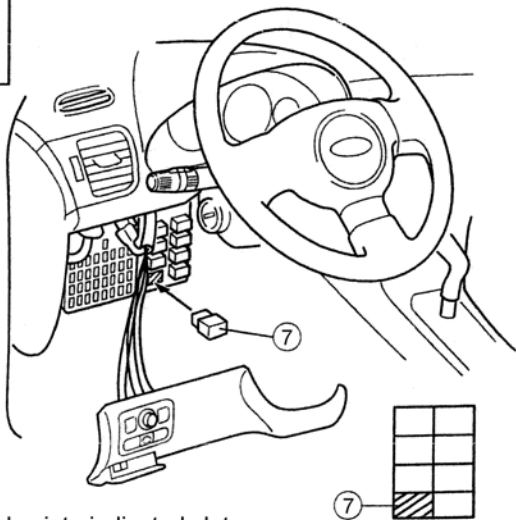
Remove turn signal stalk.

4



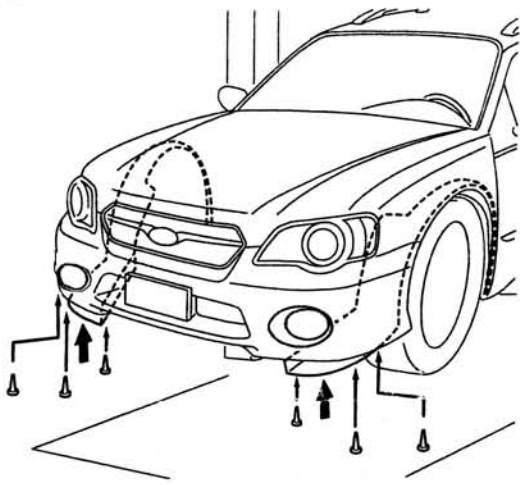
Install new turn signal stalk.

5



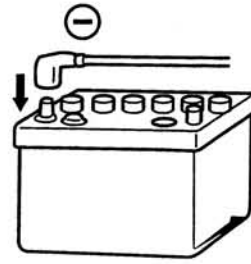
Insert relay into indicated slot.  
Replace lower and upper steering column covers.  
Replace lower dashboard panels.

11



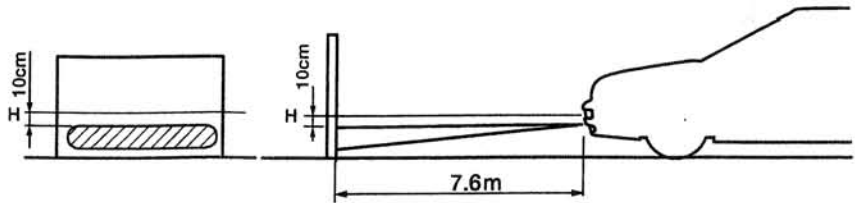
Replace splash shields.

12



Reconnect negative terminal on battery.

13



Aim fog lamps.

# SUBARU®

## INSTALLATION INSTRUCTIONS

# SECURITY SYSTEM UPGRADE

## FORESTER

### P/N: H711SSA300

This device complies with FCC rules part 15. Operation is subject to the following two conditions: (1) this device may not cause harmful interference and (2) this device must accept any interference that may cause undesired operation.

### **Kit Contents:**

- Security Control Module with Integral Bracket ...X 1
- Starter Interrupt Relay with Integral Bracket ...X 1
- Horn Relay with Integral Bracket ...X 1
- Security Horn with Integral Bracket ...X 1
- M8 Flange Nut (For Install Security Control Module) ...X 2
- M8 Flange Nut (For Install Security Horn) ...X 2
- Window Decal ...X 2
- Installation Manual ...X 1

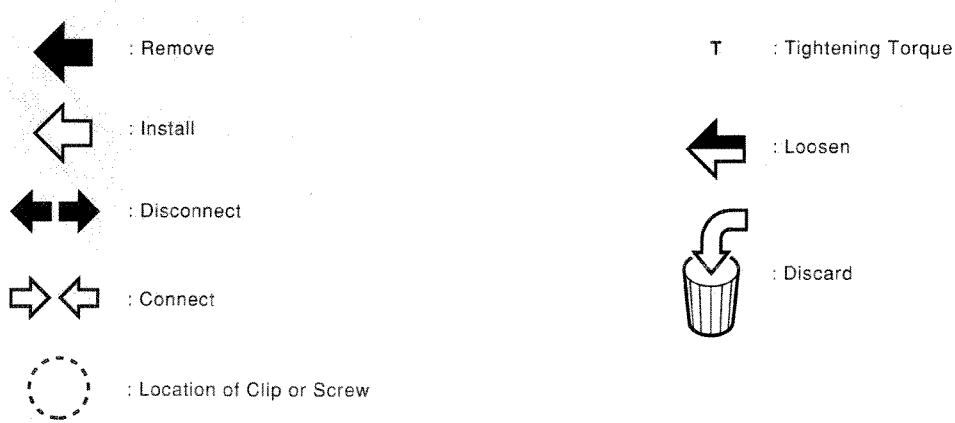
### **Preparation Tools:**

- #2 Phillips Head Screwdriver (+)
- 1/4" Drive Ratchet with 10 and 12 mm Socket and 6" Extension
- Torque Wrench

## A. Installation

**NOTE: Installation of each part is in the reverse order of removal.**

### **Meaning of Characters:**



Y0119

04.01  
UT31E-11  
Printed in Japan





**SUBARU**

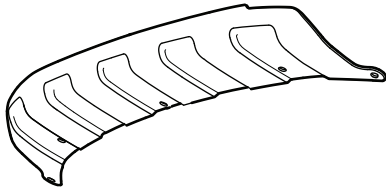
PART NUMBER : E551SAG000

**INSTALLATION  
INSTRUCTIONS**

DESCRIPTION : OUTBACK FRONT BUMPER UNDER GUARD

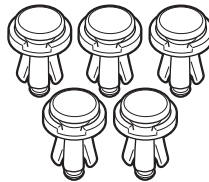
**KIT CONTENTS**

**A**



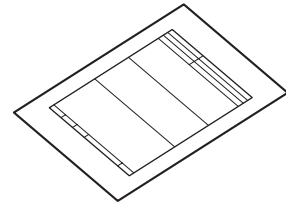
Bumper Under Guard - 1x

**B**



Clip - 5x

**C**

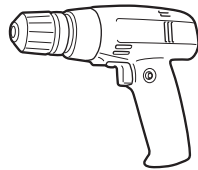


Installation Instructions - 1x

**TOOLS REQUIRED**



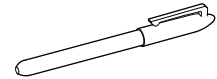
Clean Cloth



Drill



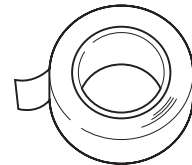
3mm (1/8") Drill Bit



Marker



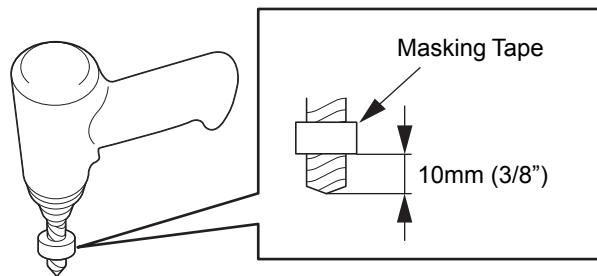
10mm (3/8") Drill Bit



Masking Tape

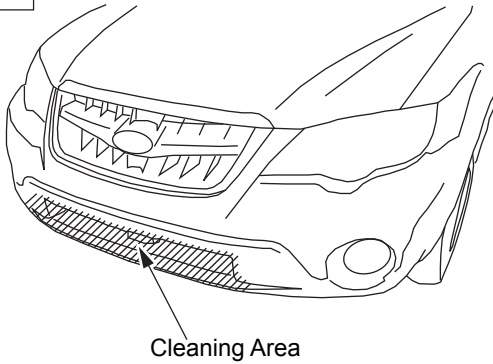
**NOTE:**

To prevent the drill bits from reaching the back of the front bumper when drilling, wind masking tape around each drill bit to the length shown in the figure below.



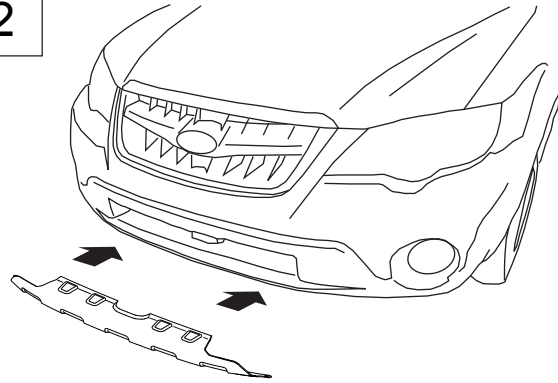
## FRONT BUMPER UNDER GUARD INSTALLATION

1



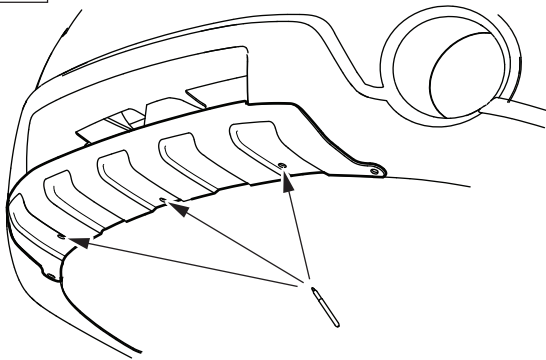
Clean any dirt from the attachment area of bumper with a clean cloth.

2



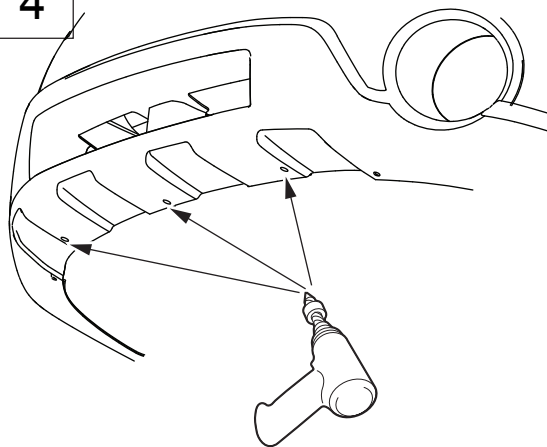
Place the bumper guard firmly onto the bumper, but do not fully seat the top six clips.

3



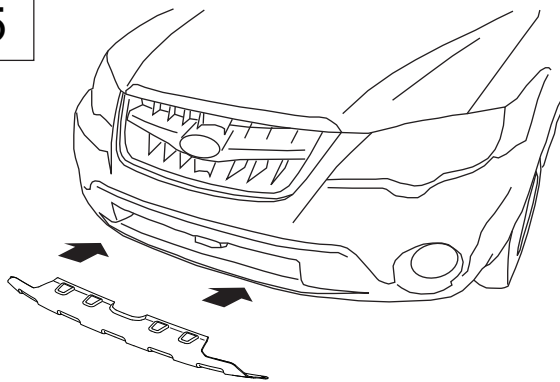
While pressing the under guard firmly to the bumper, mark the 3 drilling locations and remove the front bumper under guard from the vehicle.

4



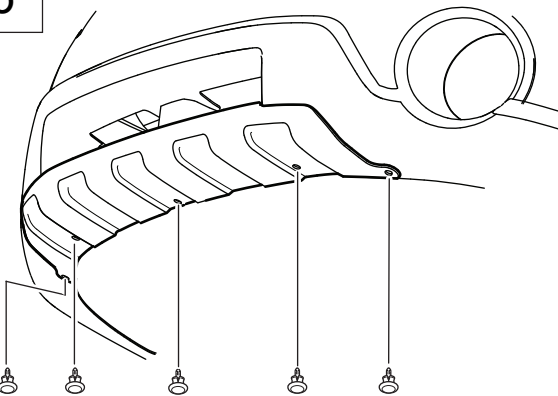
Drill the 3 attachment holes first with a 3 (1/8") mm bit, then with the 10 (3/8") mm bit.

5



Place the bumper guard firmly onto the bumper, and fully seat the top six clips.

6



Attach 5 clips to the under side of the bumper guard.

PART NUMBER  
E551SAG000

ISSUE  
01

DATE  
03/09/2007

SUBARU OF AMERICA

PAGE  
2/2



**SUBARU**

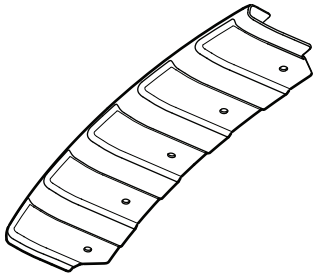
PART NUMBER : E551SXA000

**INSTALLATION INSTRUCTIONS**

DESCRIPTION : TRIBECA FRONT BUMPER UNDER GUARD

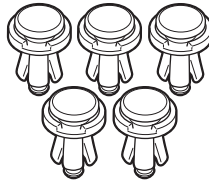
**KIT CONTENTS**

**A**



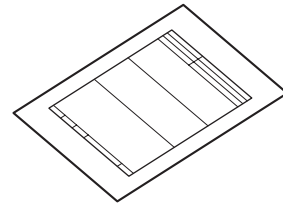
Bumper Under Guard - 1x

**B**



Clip - 5x

**C**

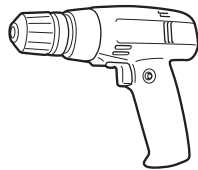


Installation Instructions - 1x

**TOOLS REQUIRED**



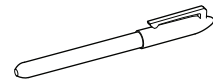
Clean Cloth



Drill



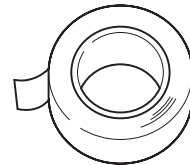
3mm (1/8") Drill Bit



Marker



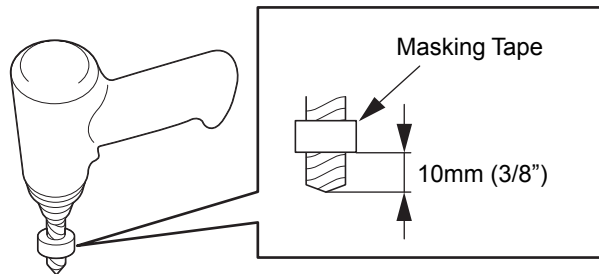
10mm (3/8") Drill Bit



Masking Tape

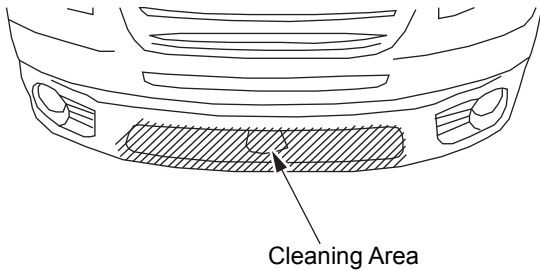
**NOTE:**

To prevent the drill bits from reaching the back of the front bumper when drilling, wind masking tape around each drill bit to the length shown in the figure below.



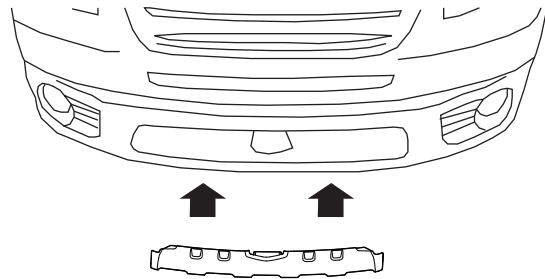
## FRONT BUMPER UNDER GUARD INSTALLATION

1



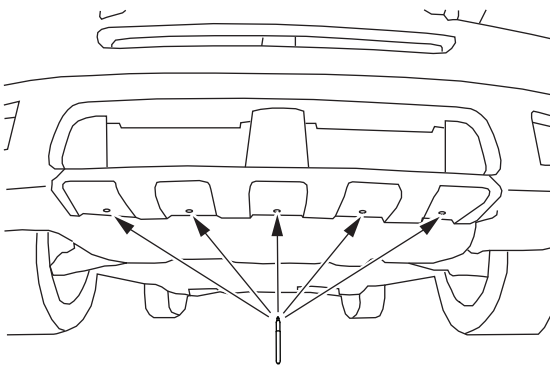
Clean any dirt from the attachment area of bumper with a clean cloth.

2



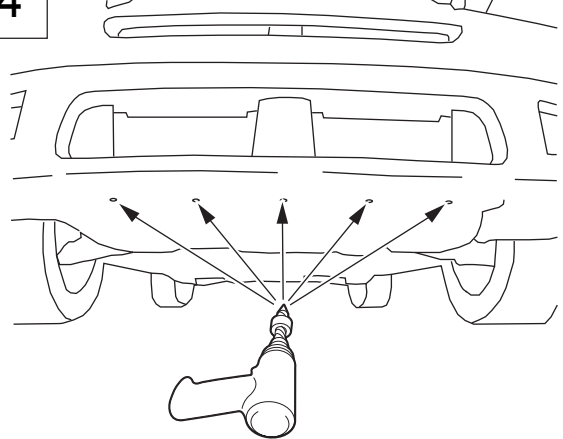
Place the bumper guard firmly onto the bumper, but do not fully seat the top six clips.

3



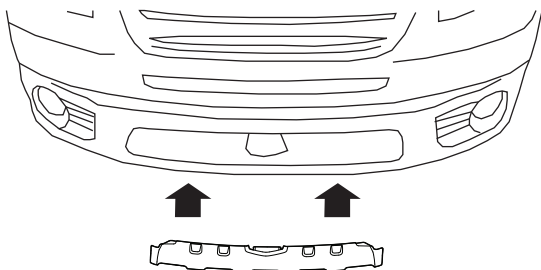
While pressing the under guard firmly to the bumper, mark the 5 drilling locations and remove the front bumper under guard from the vehicle.

4



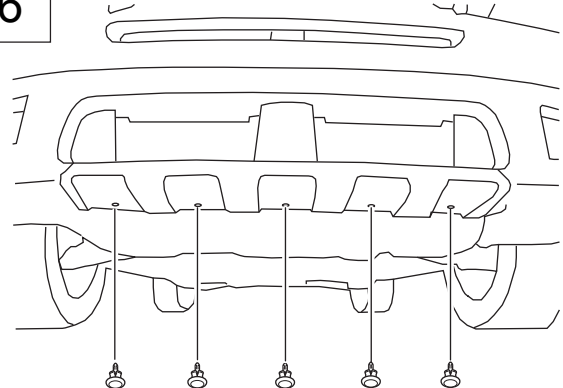
Drill the 5 attachment holes first with a 3 (1/8") mm bit, then with the 10 (3/8") mm bit.

5



Place the bumper guard firmly onto the bumper, and fully seat the top six clips.

6



Attach 5 clips to the under side of the bumper guard.

PART NUMBER  
E551SXA000

ISSUE  
01

DATE  
03/09/2007

SUBARU OF AMERICA

PAGE  
2/2

# SUBARU®

INSTALLATION  
INSTRUCTIONS

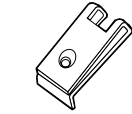
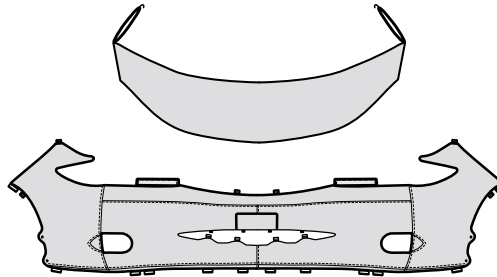
## FRONT END COVER

IMPREZA M001SFG000

### KIT CONTENTS:

1 x FRONT END HOOD COVER

1 x FRONT END BUMPER COVER



U-Nut (Qty. 4)



Washers (Qty. 4)



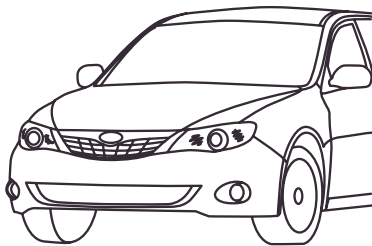
Snap Head Screw (Qty. 4)



### PRE INSTALLATION NOTES:

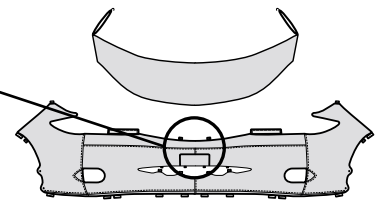
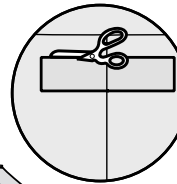
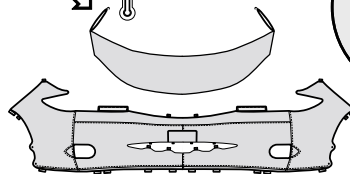


CLEAN  
WAX  
POLISH

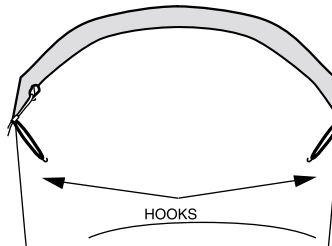
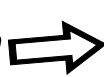
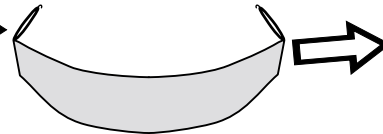
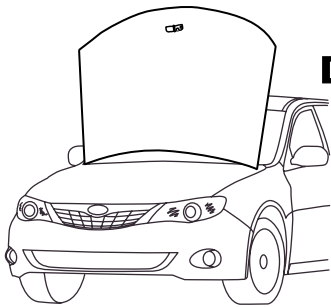


SOFTEN VINYL

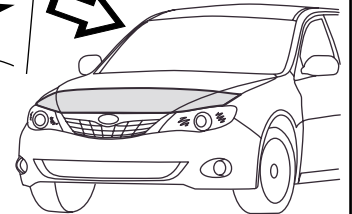
70° F (21° C)



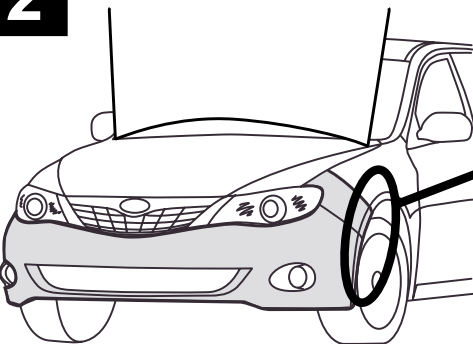
1



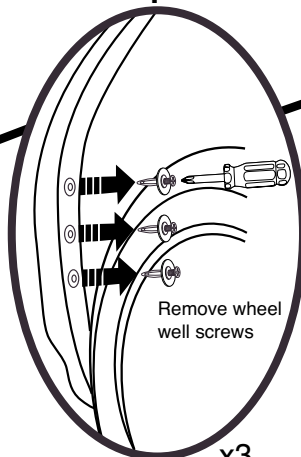
HOOKS



2



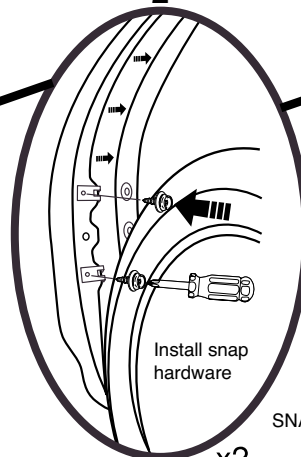
1



Remove wheel  
well screws

x3

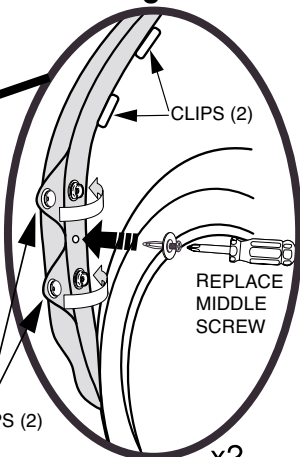
2



Install snap  
hardware

x2

3



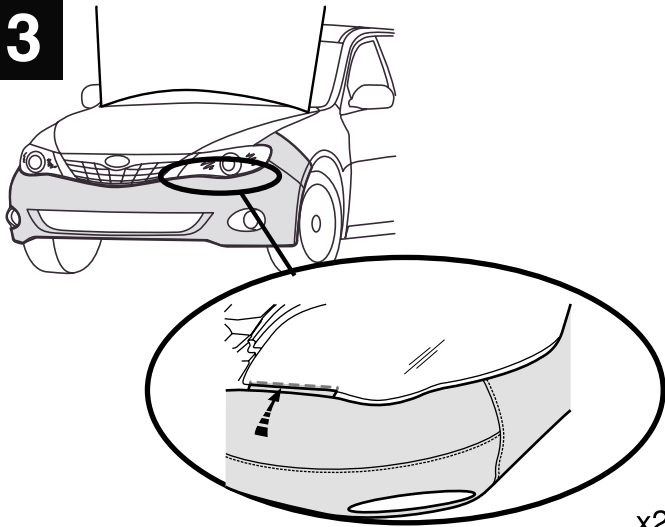
CLIPS (2)

REPLACE  
MIDDLE  
SCREW

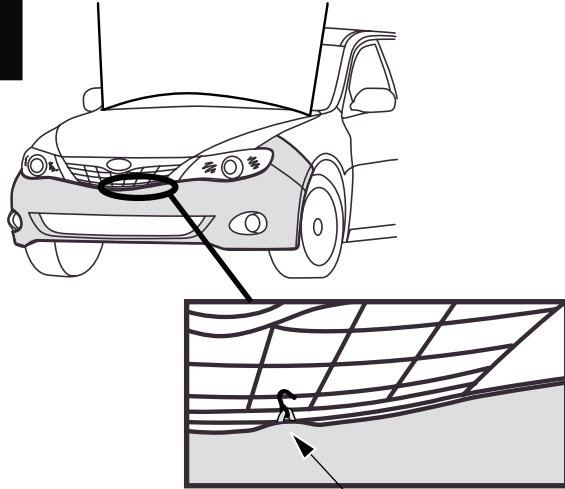
SNAPS (2)

x2

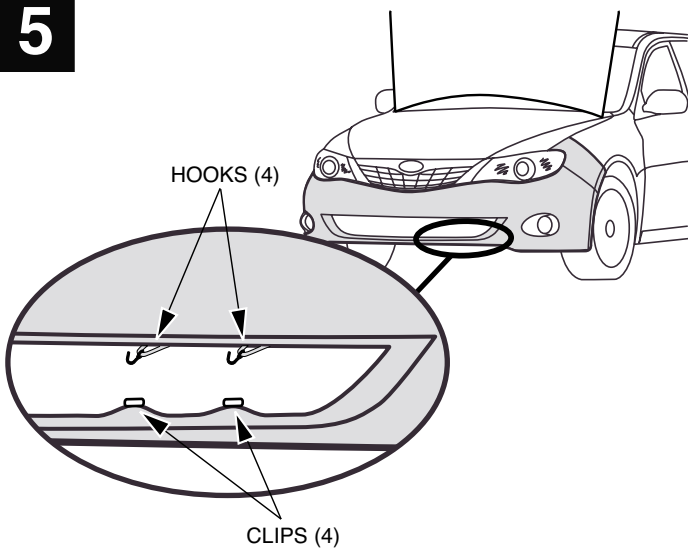


**3**

x2

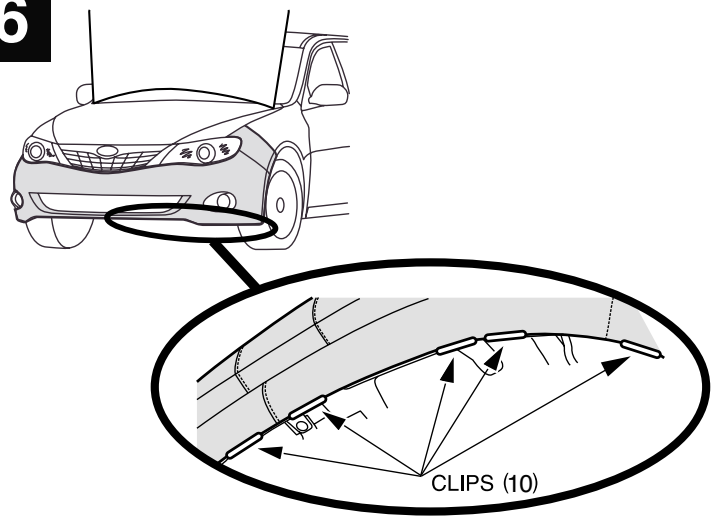
**4**

HOOKS (2)

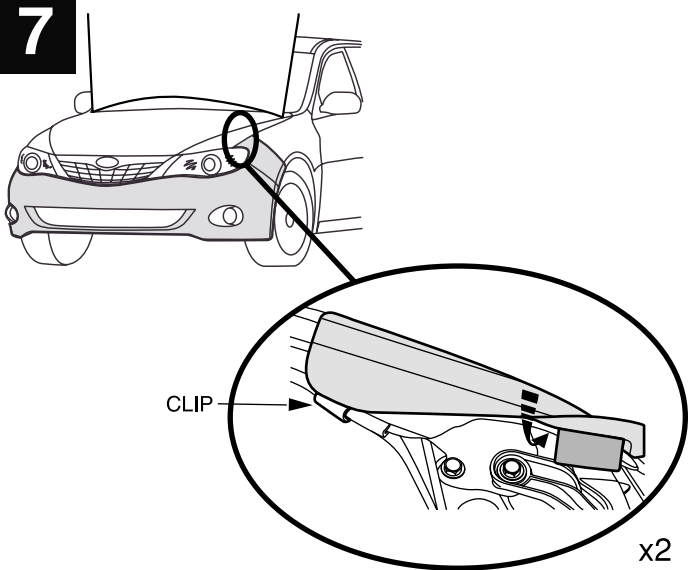
**5**

HOOKS (4)

CLIPS (4)

**6**

CLIPS (10)

**7**

CLIP

x2

## CARE INSTRUCTIONS

Wipe the smooth side of the cover with a damp cloth. Do not use petroleum based cleaners. Vacuum or brush lightly with a stiff nylon brush the felt backing to remove debris. Do not install damp cover on your vehicle. Dry completely before reinstallation..

# SUBARU®

INSTALLATION  
INSTRUCTIONS

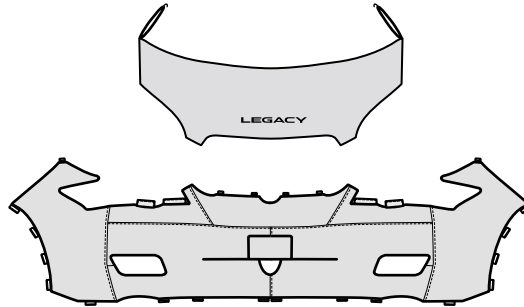
## FRONT END COVER

LEGACY M001SAG300

KIT CONTENTS:

1 x FRONT END HOOD COVER

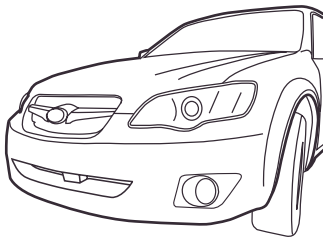
1 x FRONT END BUMPER COVER



### PRE INSTALLATION NOTES:

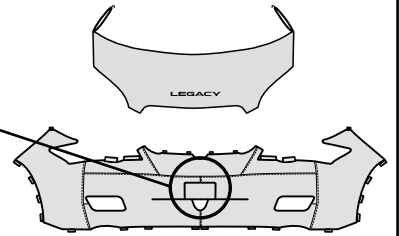
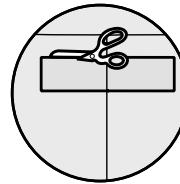
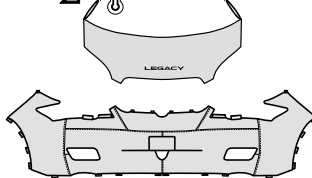


CLEAN  
WAX  
POLISH ✓

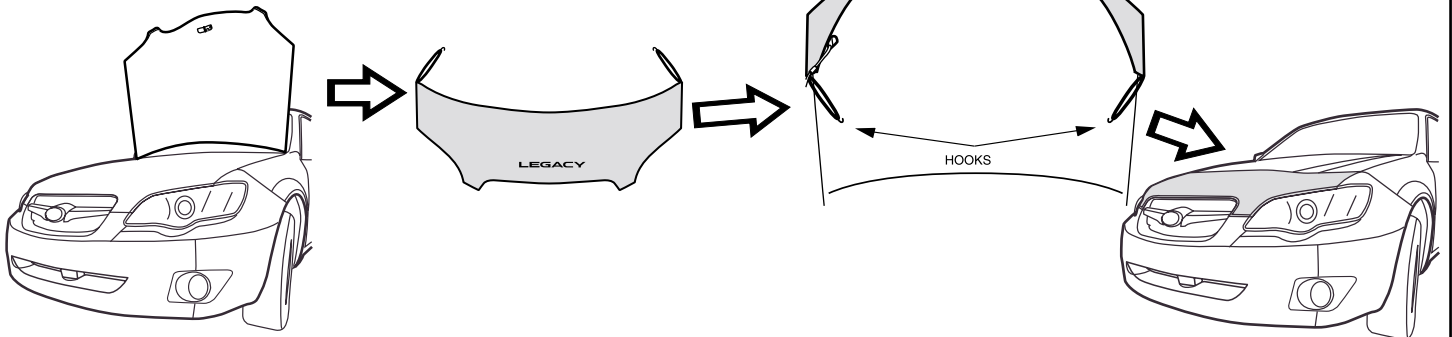


SOFTEN VINYL

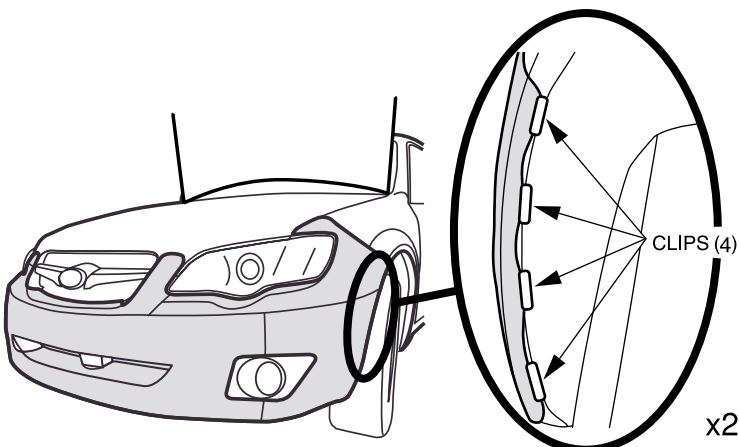
70° F (21° C)



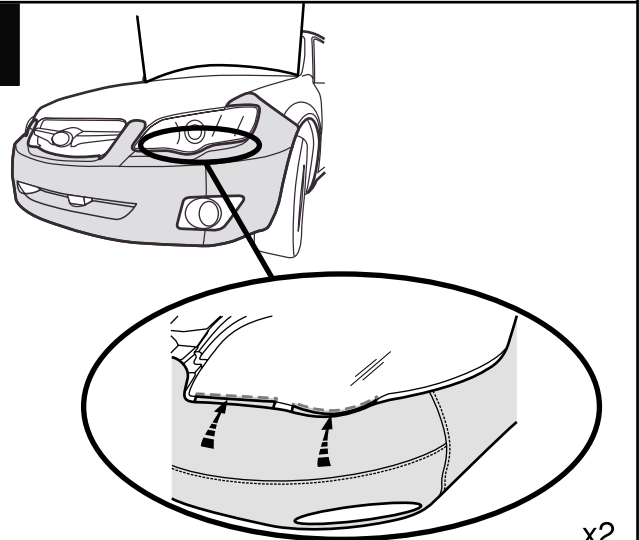
1

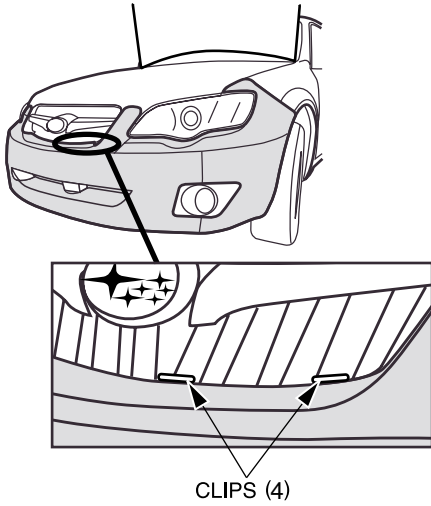
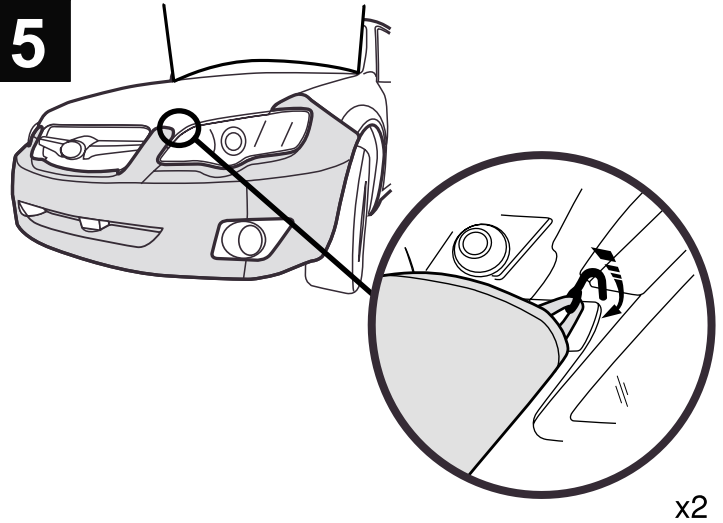
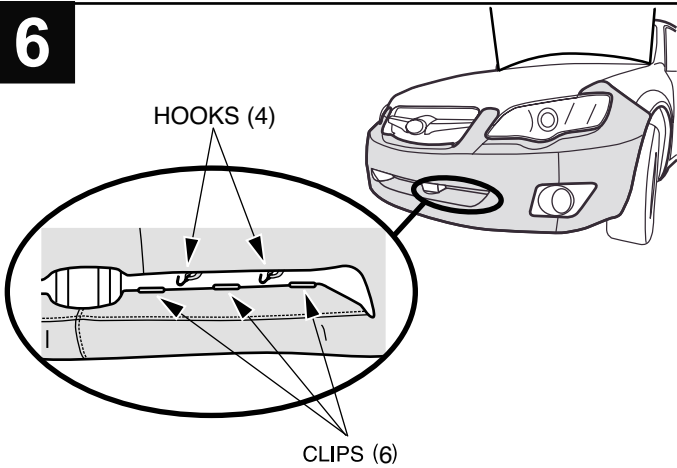
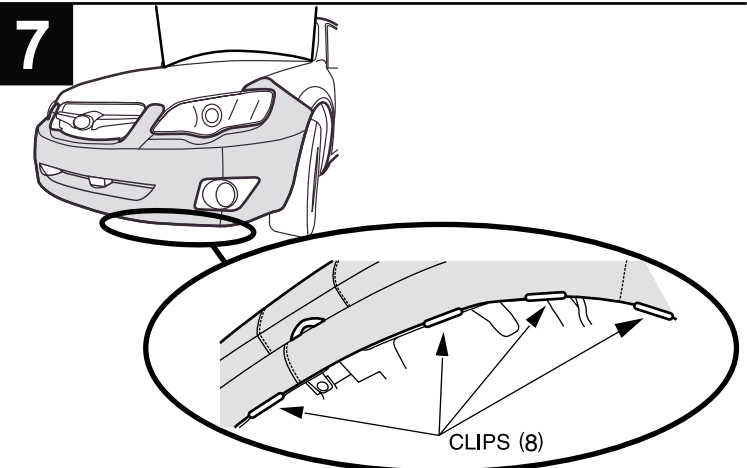
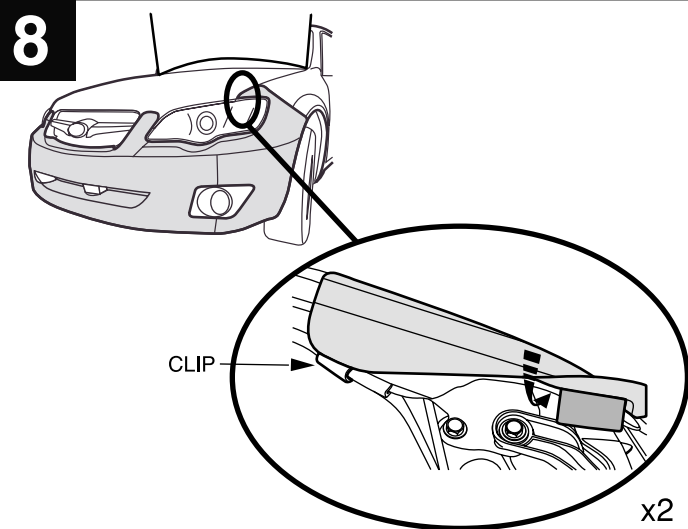


2



3



**4****5****6****7****8**

## CARE INSTRUCTIONS

Wipe the smooth side of the cover with a damp cloth. Do not use petroleum based cleaners. Vacuum or brush lightly with a stiff nylon brush the felt backing to remove debris. Do not install damp cover on your vehicle. Dry completely before reinstallation..

# SUBARU®

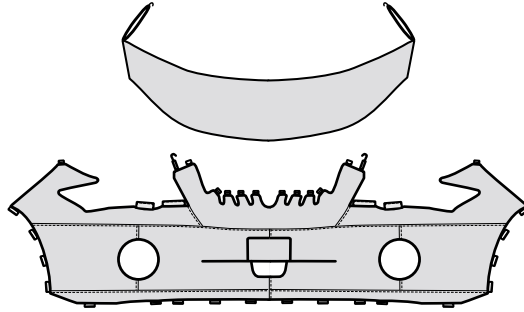
INSTALLATION  
INSTRUCTIONS

## FRONT END COVER OUTBACK M001SAG400

KIT CONTENTS:

1 x FRONT END HOOD COVER

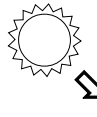
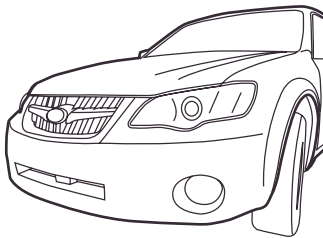
1 x FRONT END BUMPER COVER



### PRE INSTALLATION NOTES:

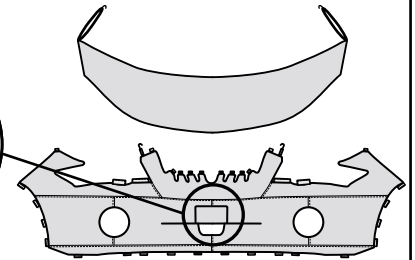
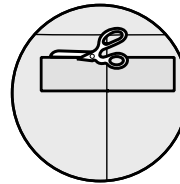
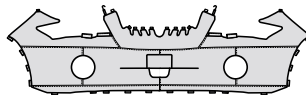


CLEAN  
WAX  
POLISH ✓

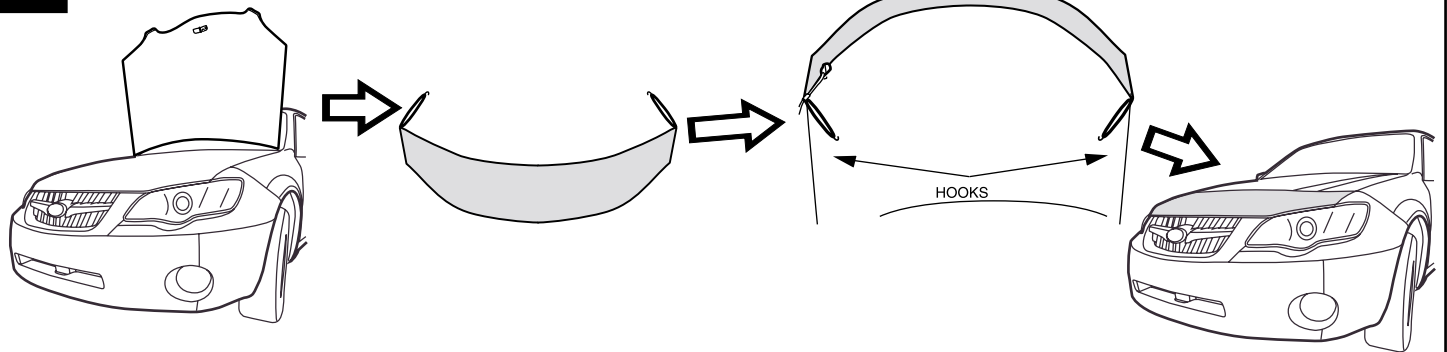


SOFTEN VINYL

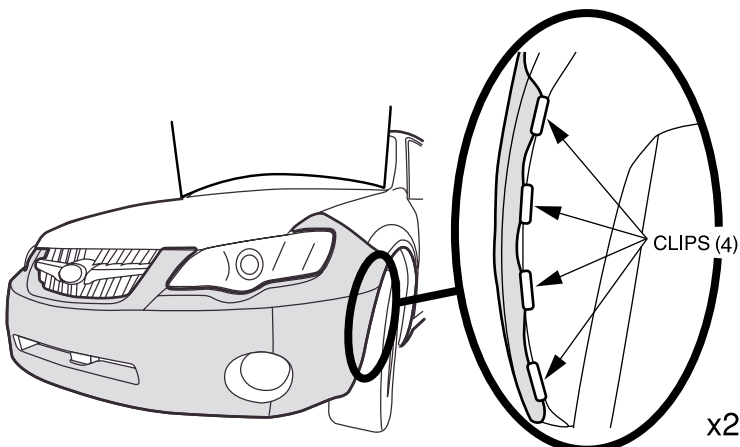
70° F (21° C)



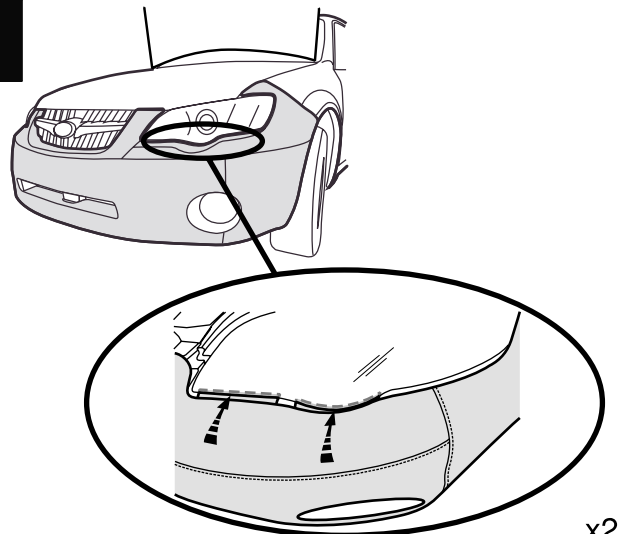
1



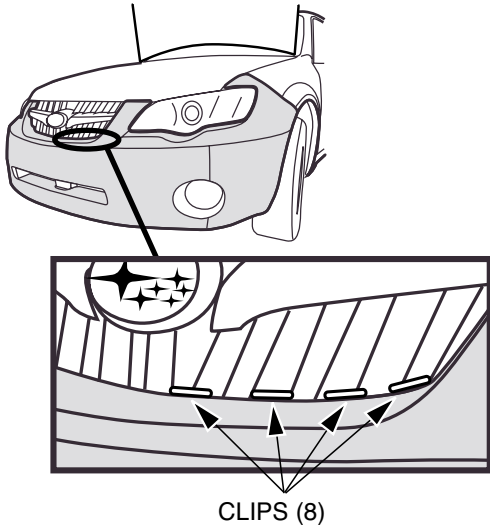
2



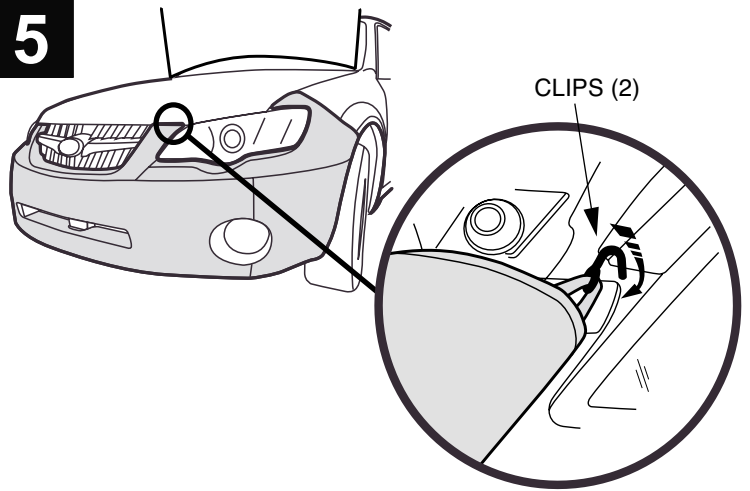
3



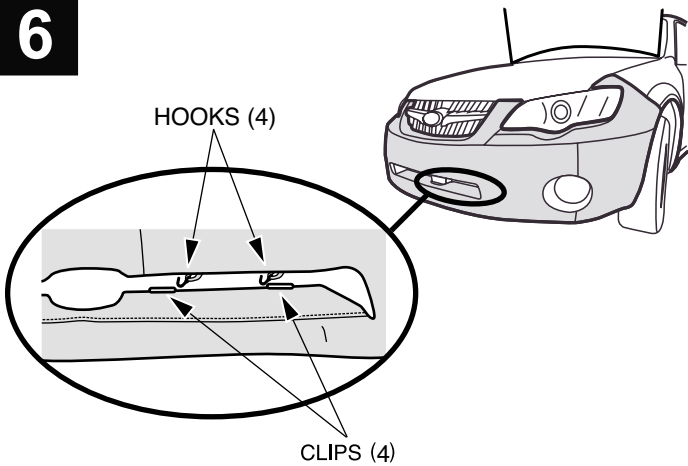
4



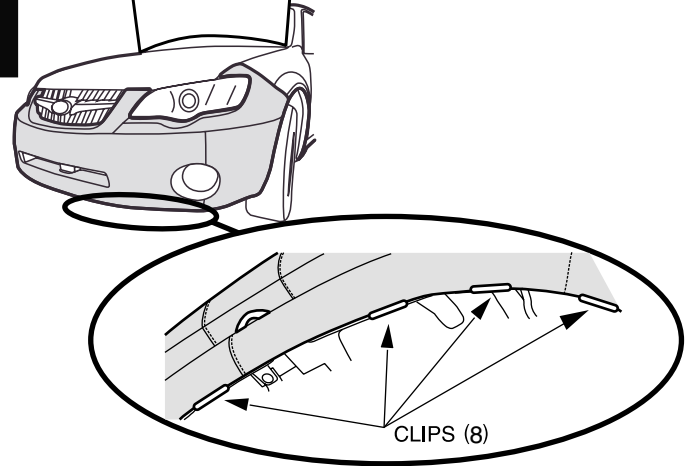
5



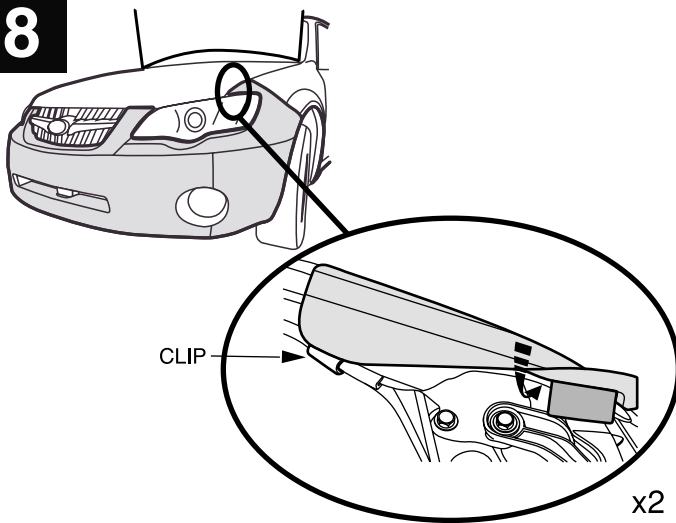
6



7



8



### CARE INSTRUCTIONS

Wipe the smooth side of the cover with a damp cloth. Do not use petroleum based cleaners. Vacuum or brush lightly with a stiff nylon brush the felt backing to remove debris. Do not install damp cover on your vehicle. Dry completely before reinstallation..





# SUBARU

## INSTALLATION INSTRUCTION FRONT UNDER SKIRT

(06MY~)

PART.No

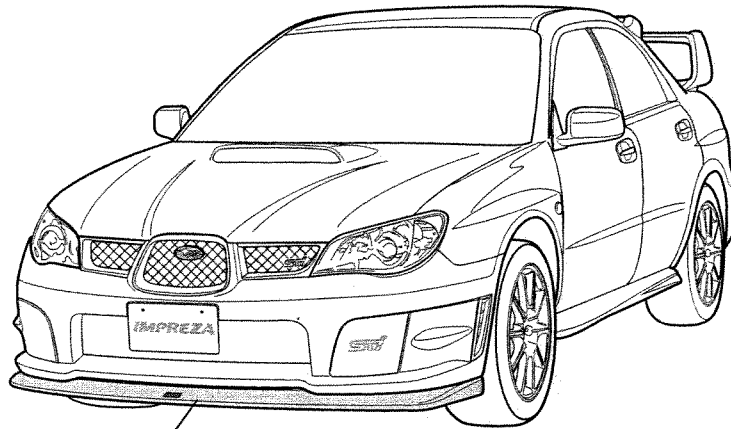
E7710FE310

### IMPORTANT



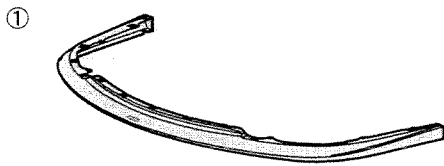
1. We recommend that the assembly be carried out in a Subaru workshop. No guarantee in case of improper assembly.
2. Pay special attention not to damage vehicle components when removing / installing them.

### Installation drawing

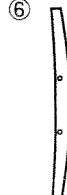
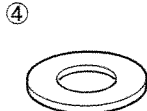
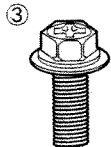
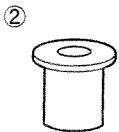


FRONT UNDER SKIRT

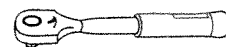
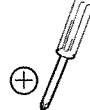
### Components



No.	PART NAME	Q'TY
①	Front under skirt	1
②	Well nut	13
③	Bolt	13
④	Washer	13
⑤	Clip	2
⑥	Template(Center)	1
⑦	Template(LH)	1
⑧	Installation instruction	1

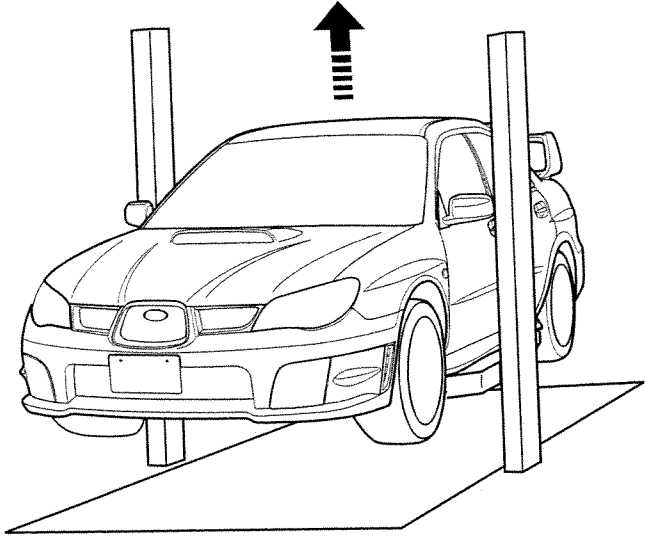


### Tools

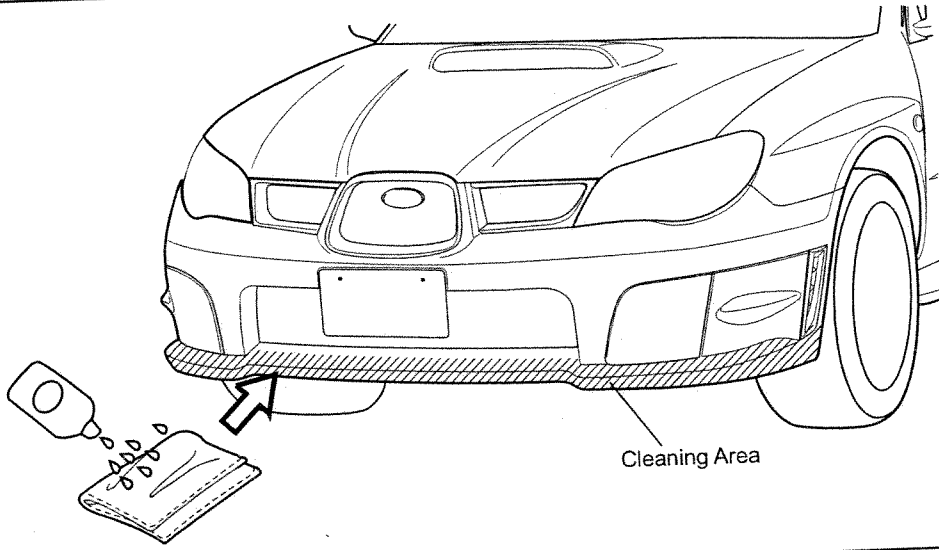


8mm

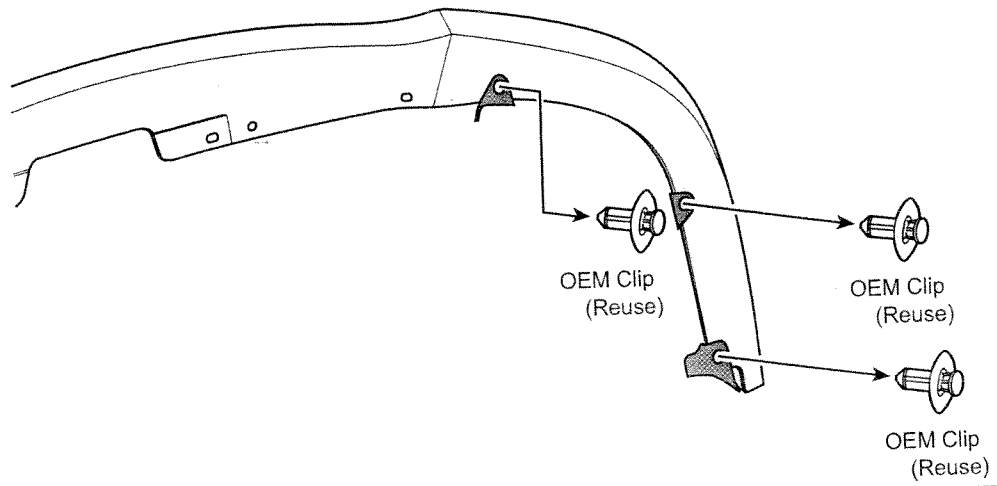
1

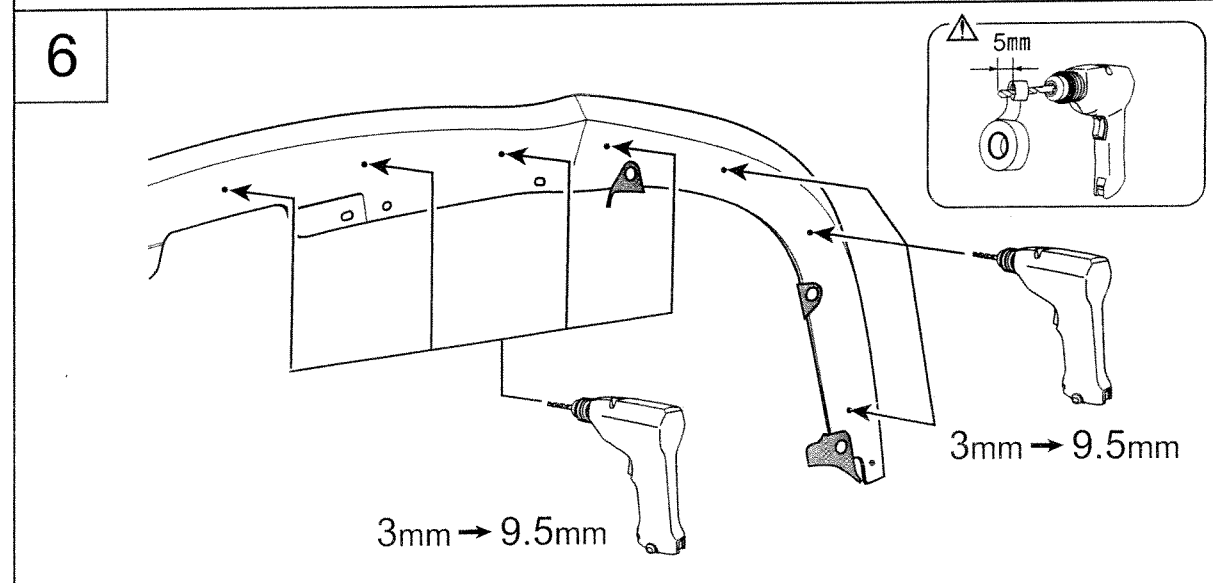
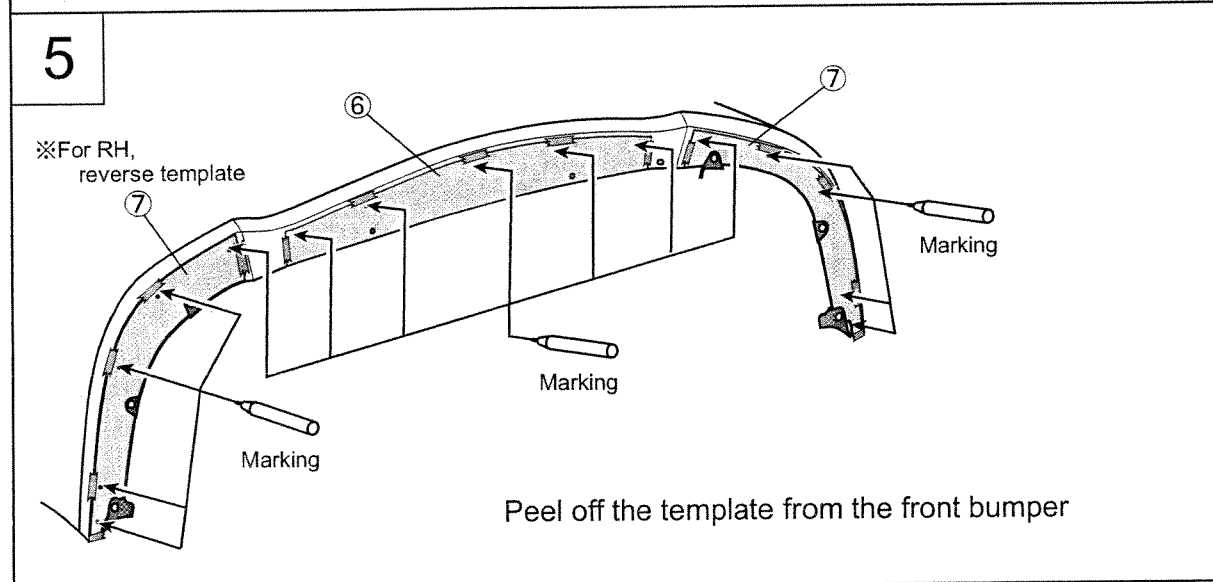
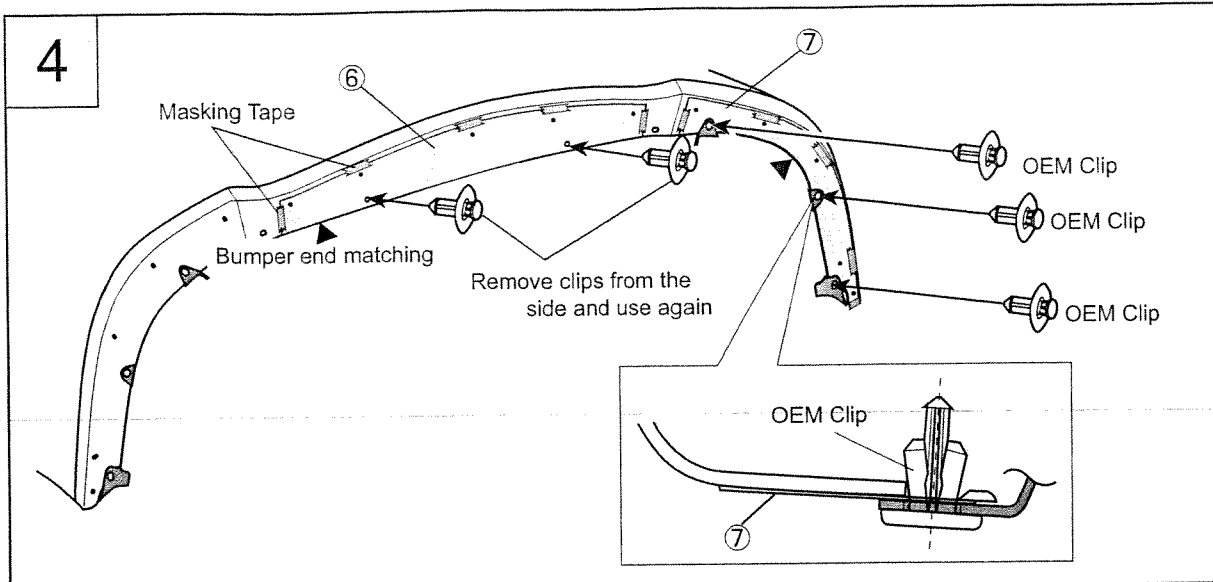


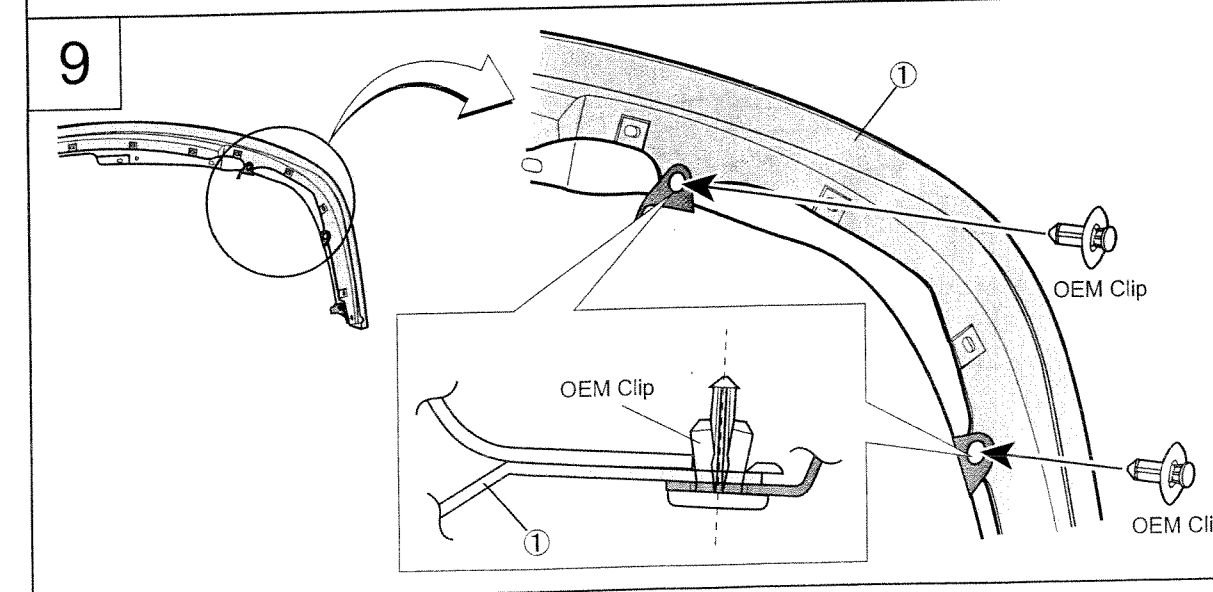
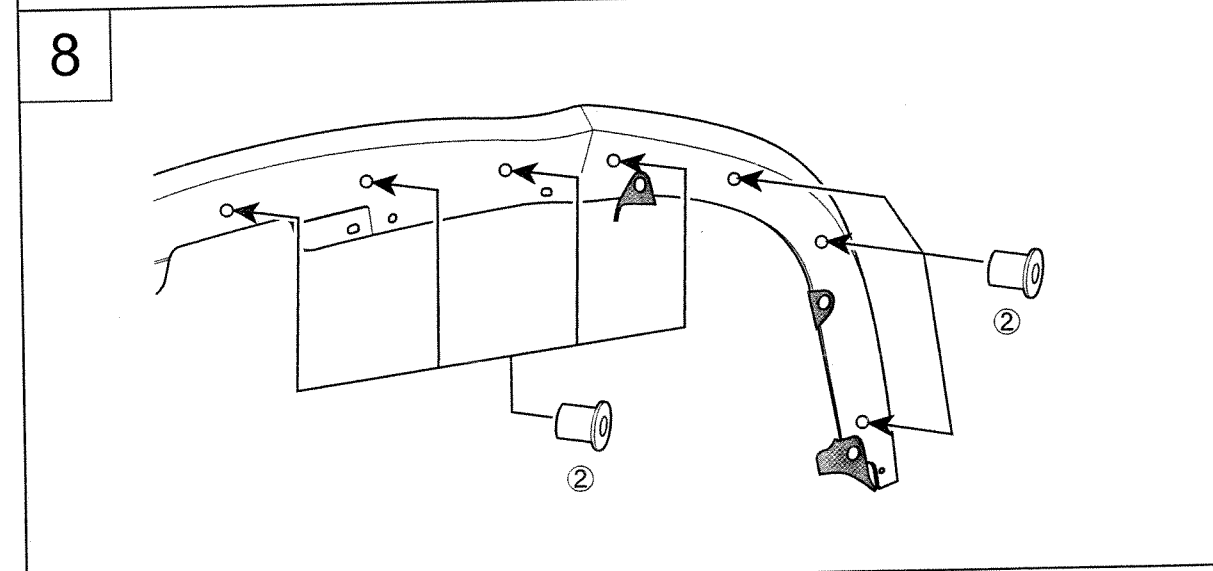
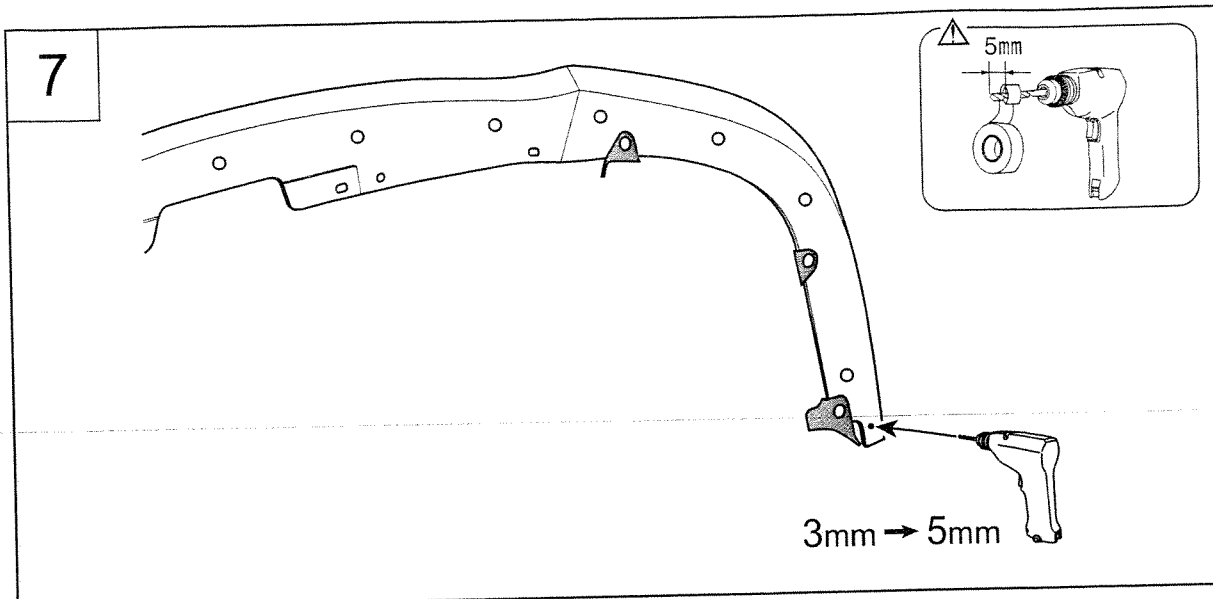
2

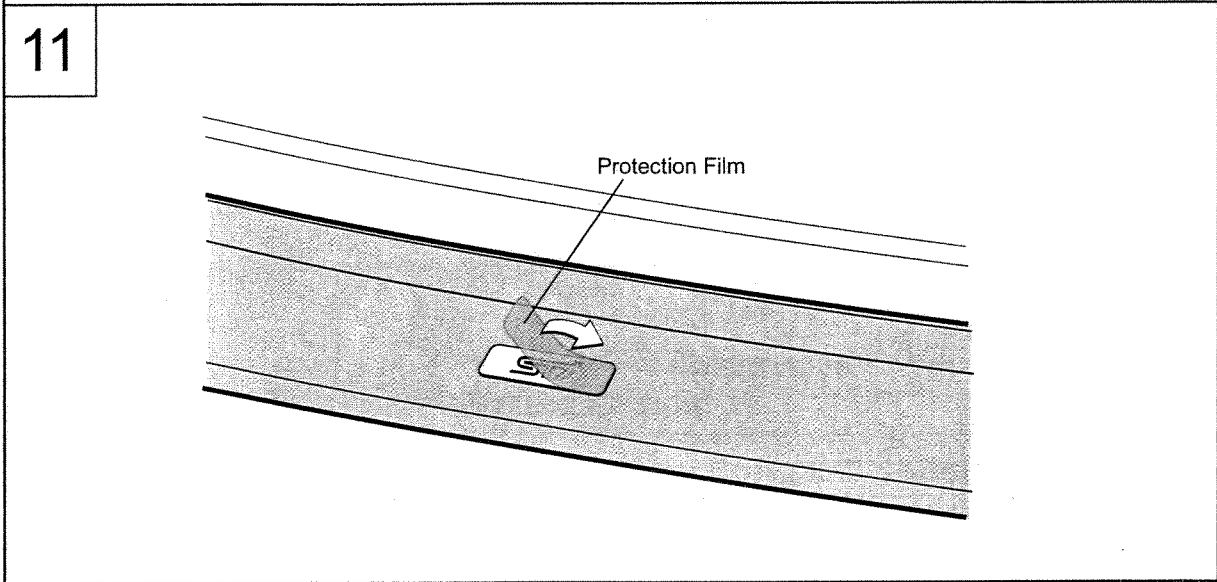
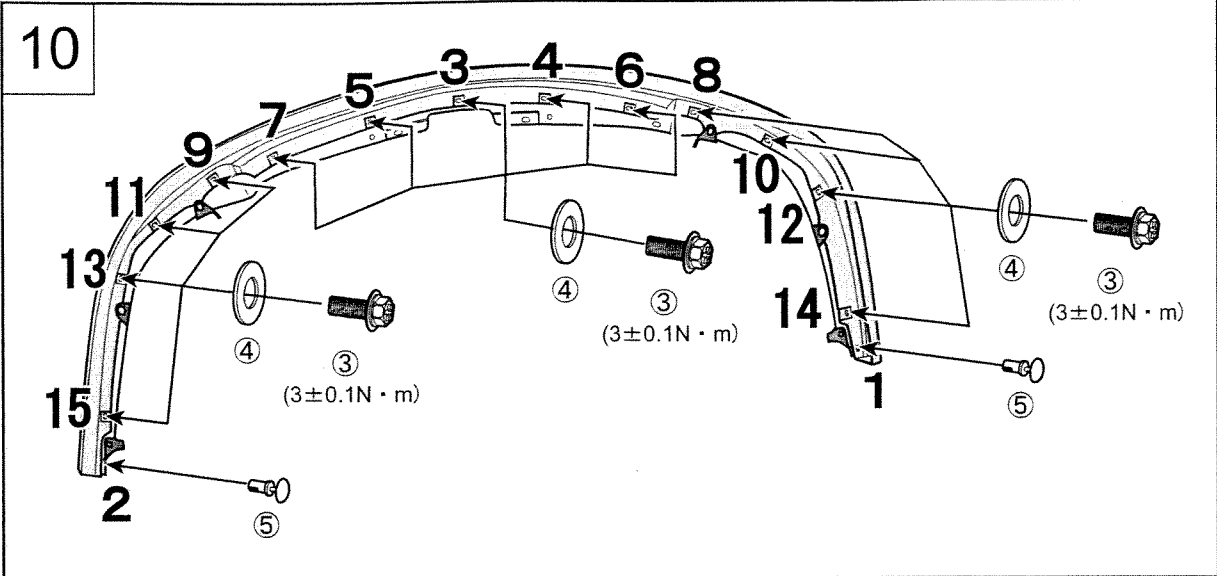


3












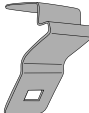







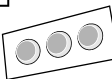
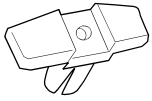

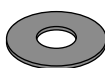


INSTALLATION INSTRUCTIONS

PART NUMBER: E231SXA100

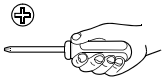
DESCRIPTION: HOOD DEFLECTOR

VEHICLE DESCRIPTION: SUBARU TRIBECA

<b>A</b>  1x	<b>B</b>  2x	<b>C</b>  6x	<b>D</b>  6x		
<b>E</b>  4x	<b>F</b>  1x	<b>G</b>  6x	<b>H</b>  6x	<b>I</b>  10x	<b>J</b>  3x
<b>K</b>  2x	<b>L</b>  2x	<b>M</b>  2x			

**Tools Required**

Phillips head screwdriver

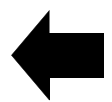


Pencil or non-permanent marker

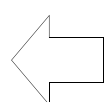


NO POWER TOOLS

**Meaning of Characters:**



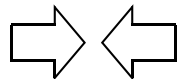
:Remove



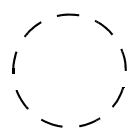
:Install



:Disconnect



:Connect



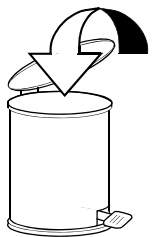
:Location of Clips or Screws

T

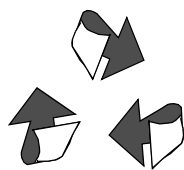
:Tightening Torque



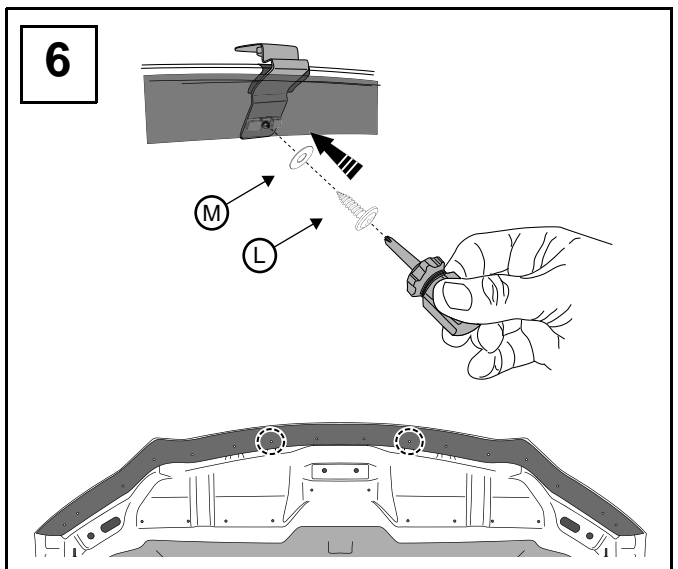
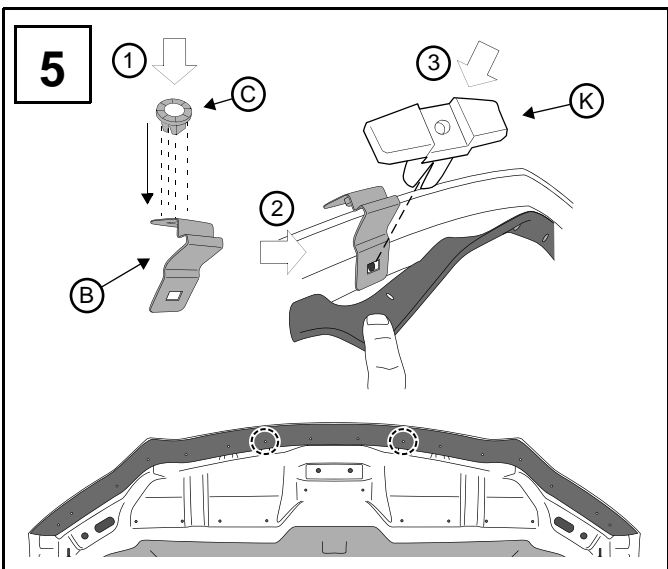
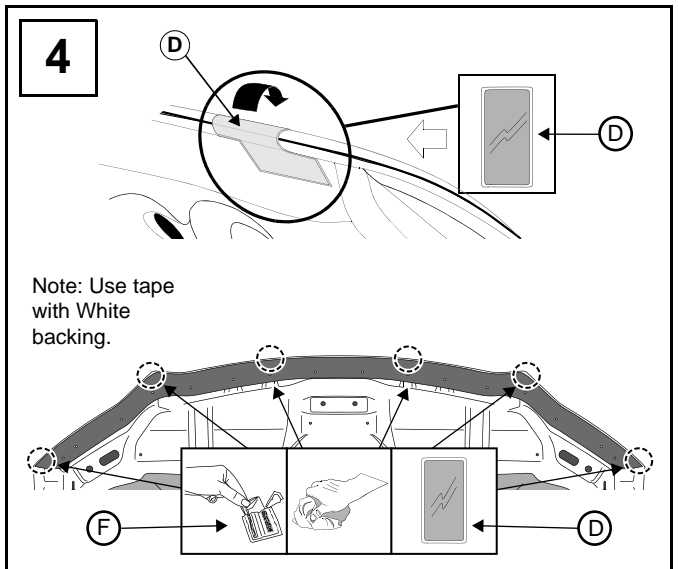
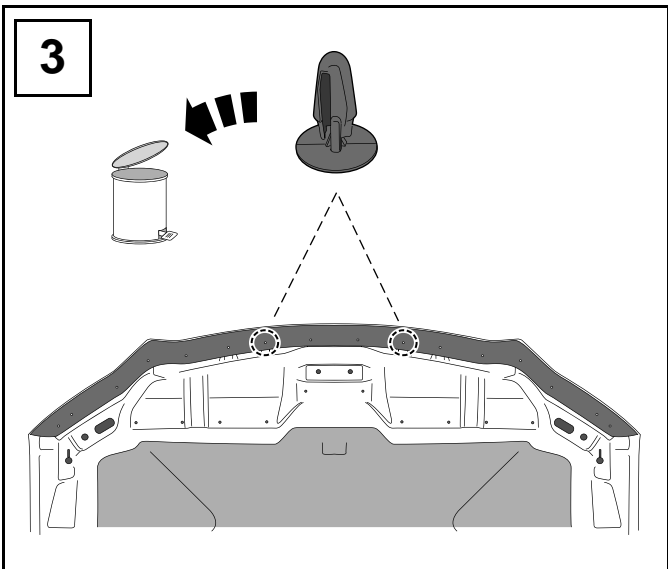
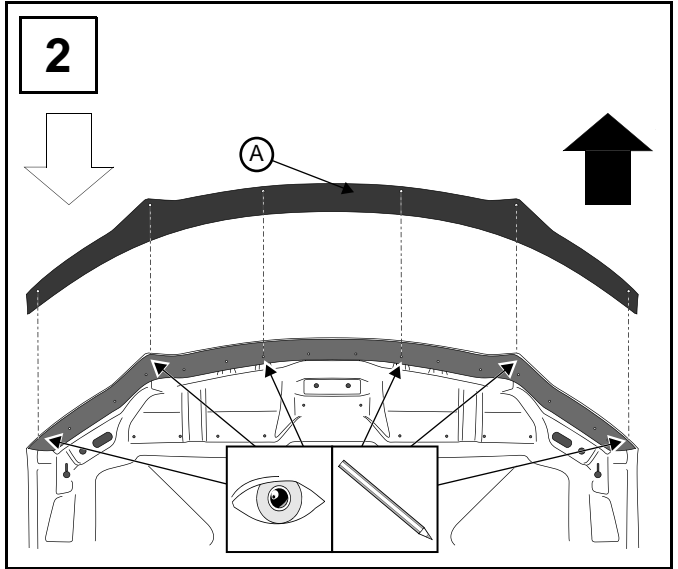
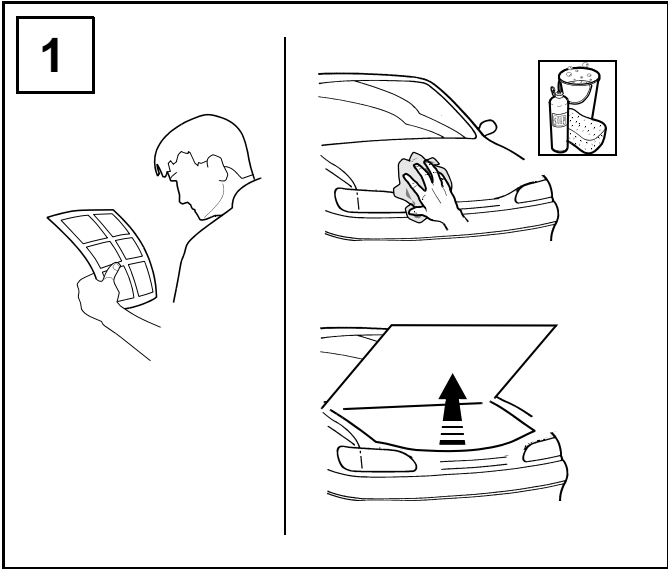
:Loosen

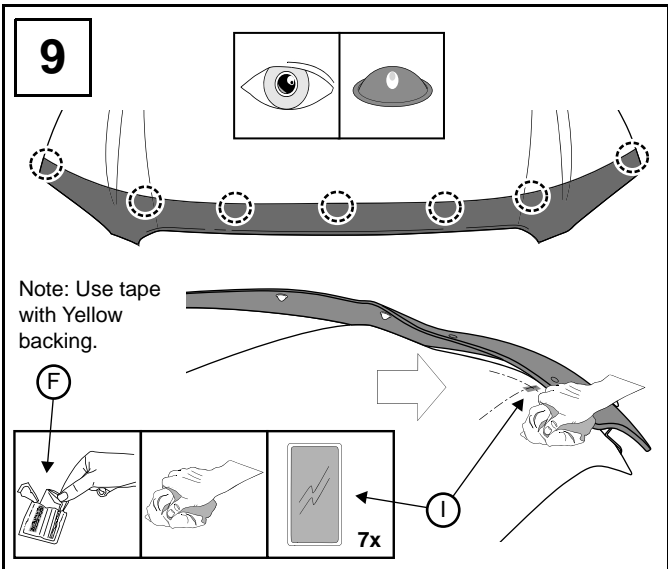
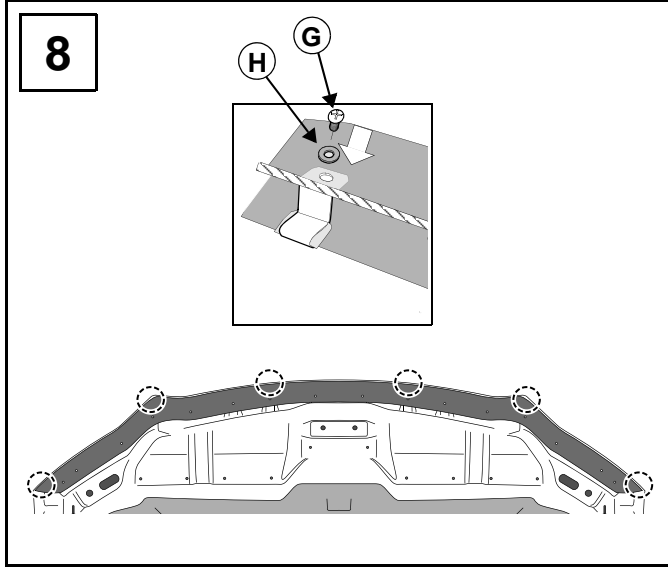
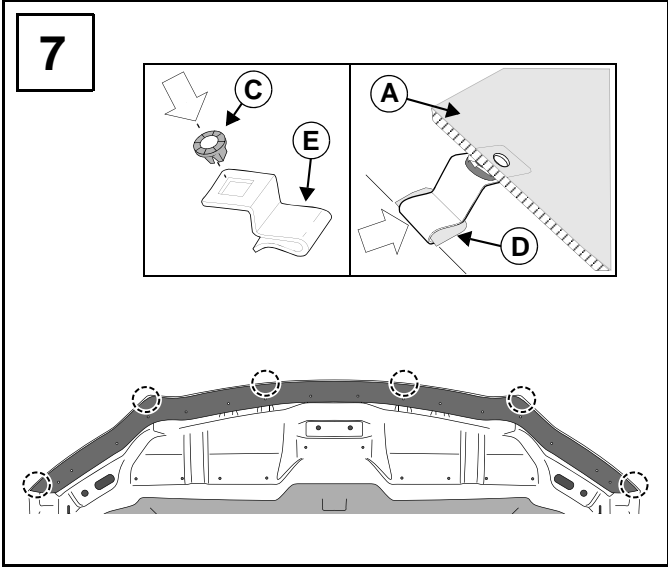


:Discard



:Re - use





**10**

- PLACE INSTRUCTIONS IN GLOVE BOX.
- PERIODICALLY CHECK BUMPONS AND TAPE.

**DO NOT USE** solvent based cleaners on Hood Deflector.  
**USE** soap and water only to clean Hood Deflector.

**DO NOT SLAM HOOD.**

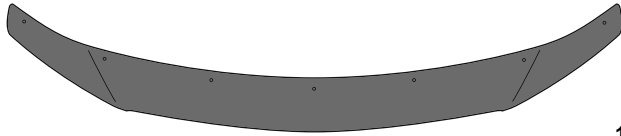
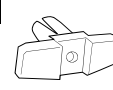






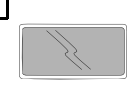
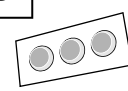
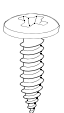

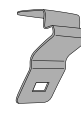


INSTALLATION INSTRUCTIONS

PART NUMBER: E231SFG010

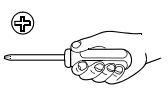
DESCRIPTION: HOOD DEFLECTOR

VEHICLE DESCRIPTION: SUBARU IMPREZA

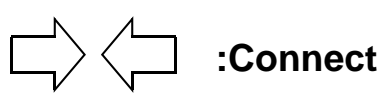
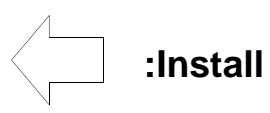
<b>A</b>  1x	<b>B</b>  2x	<b>C</b>  6x	<b>D</b>  6x		
<b>E</b>  4x	<b>F</b>  1x	<b>G</b>  6x	<b>H</b>  6x	<b>I</b>  10x	<b>J</b>  1x
<b>K</b>  2x	<b>L</b>  2x	<b>M</b>  2x			

**Tools Required**

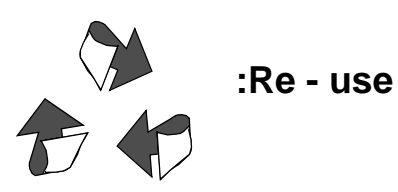
Phillips head screwdriver

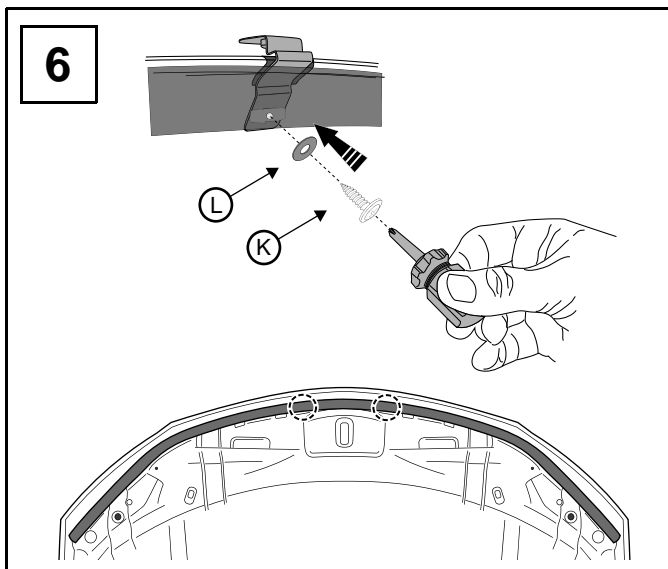
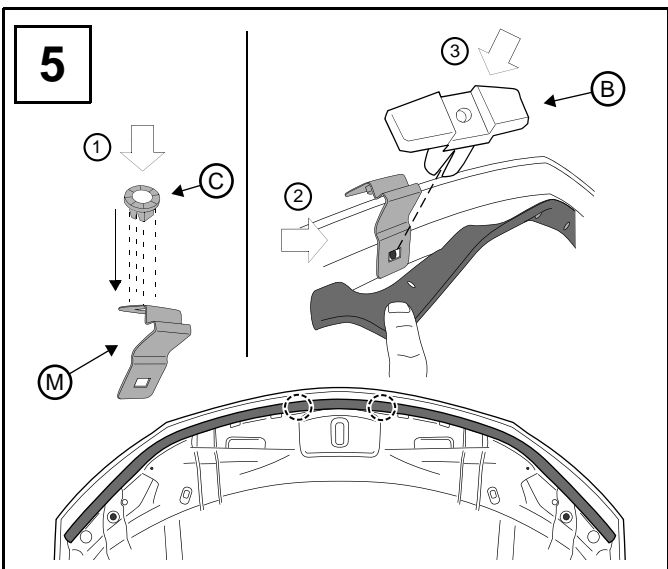
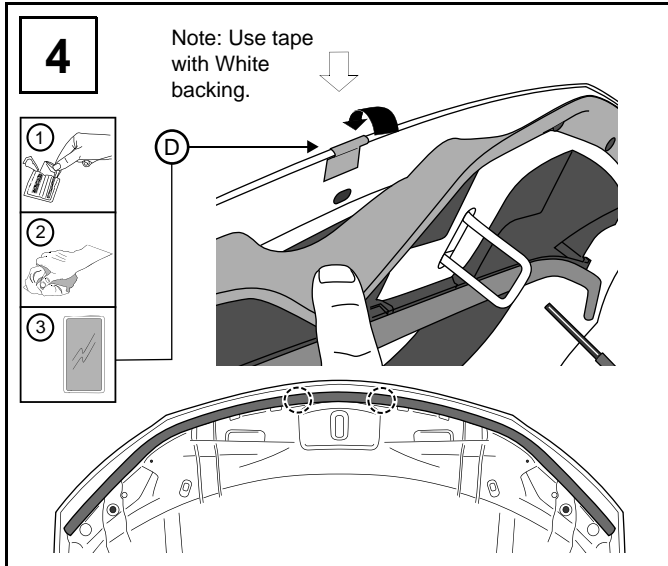
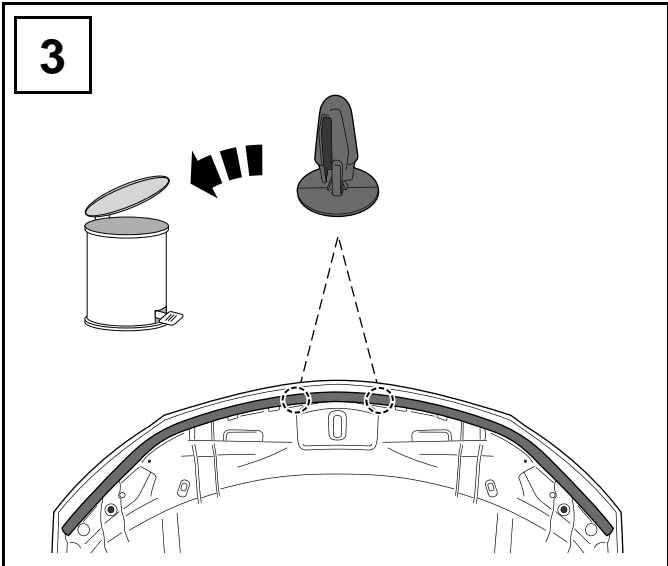
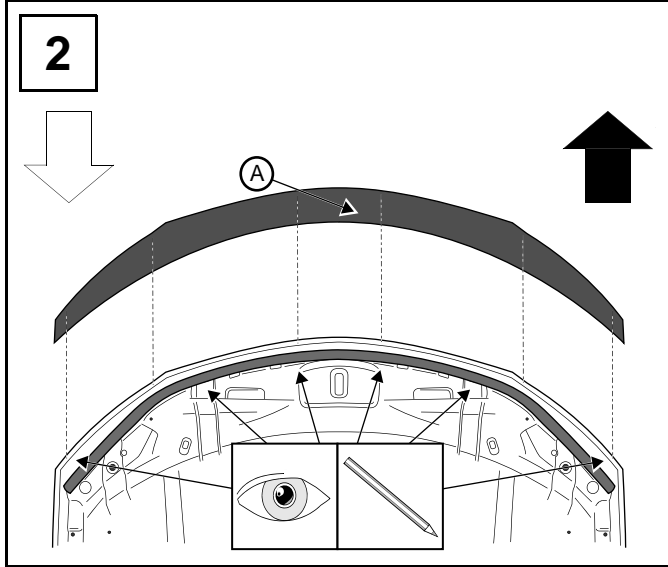
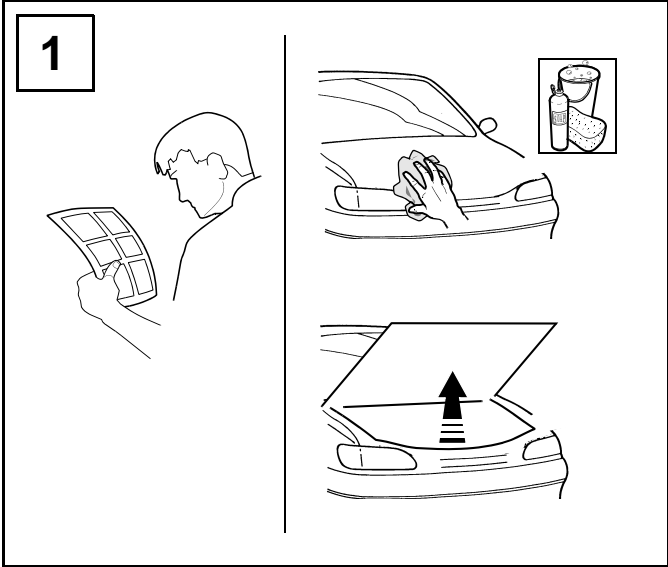


**Meaning of Characters:**



**T** :Tightening Torque







**7**

Note: Use tape with White backing.

**8**

**9**

**10**

Note: Use tape with Yellow backing.

**11**

- PLACE INSTRUCTIONS IN GLOVE BOX.
- PERIODICALLY CHECK BUMPONS AND TAPE.

**DO NOT USE** solvent based cleaners on Hood Deflector.  
**USE** soap and water only to clean Hood Deflector.

**DO NOT SLAM HOOD.**


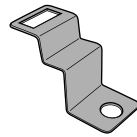




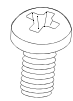


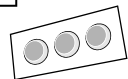


INSTALLATION INSTRUCTIONS

PART NUMBER: E231SAG300

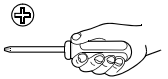
DESCRIPTION: HOOD DEFLECTOR

VEHICLE DESCRIPTION: SUBARU OUTBACK

<b>A</b>  1x	<b>B</b>  2x	<b>C</b>  6x	<b>D</b>  6x
<b>E</b>  4x	<b>F</b>  1x	<b>G</b>  6x	<b>H</b>  6x
<b>I</b>  11x	<b>J</b>  3x		

**Tools Required**

Phillips head screwdriver



Pencil or non-permanent marker

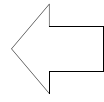


8mm wrench

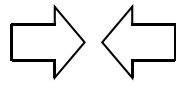


**Meaning of Characters:**

 :Remove


 :Install

 :Disconnect

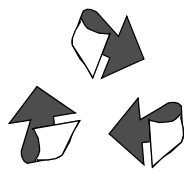
 :Connect

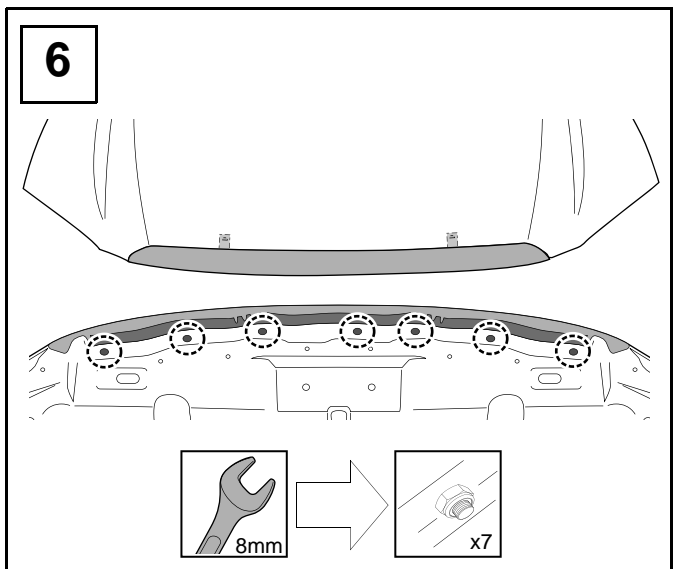
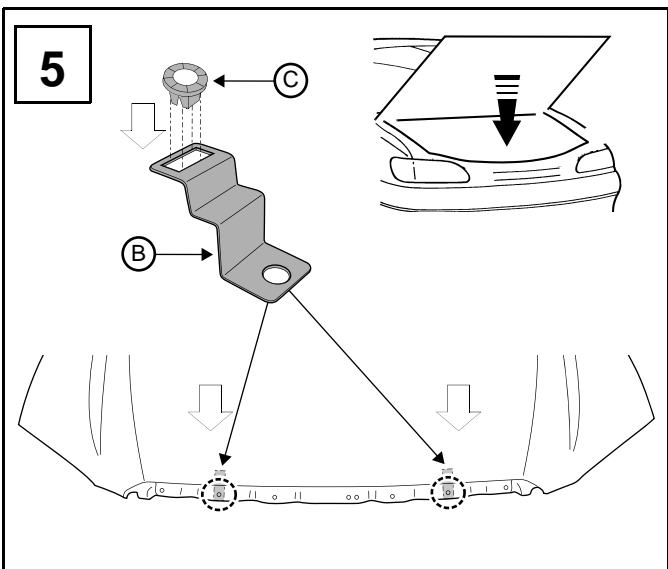
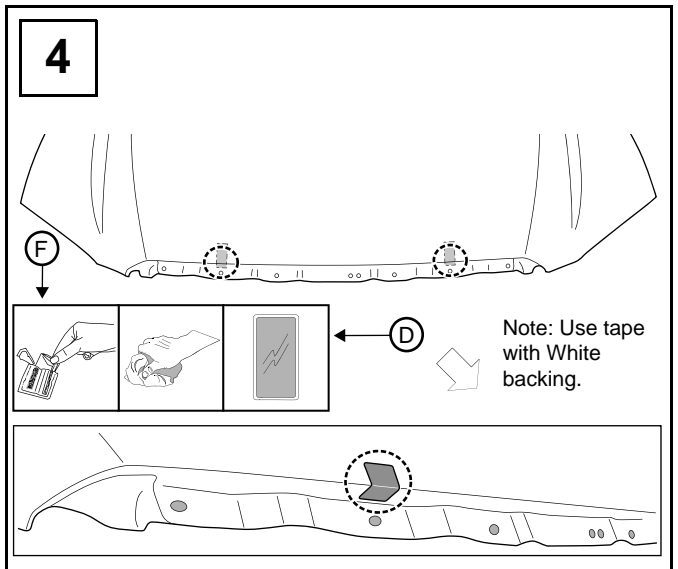
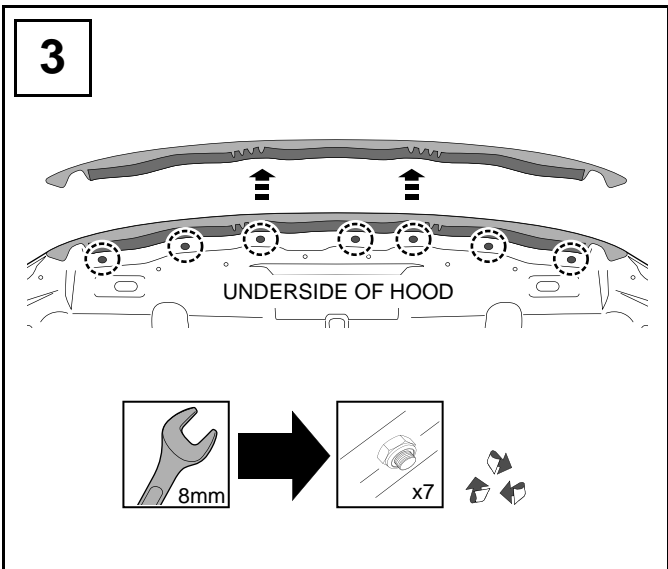
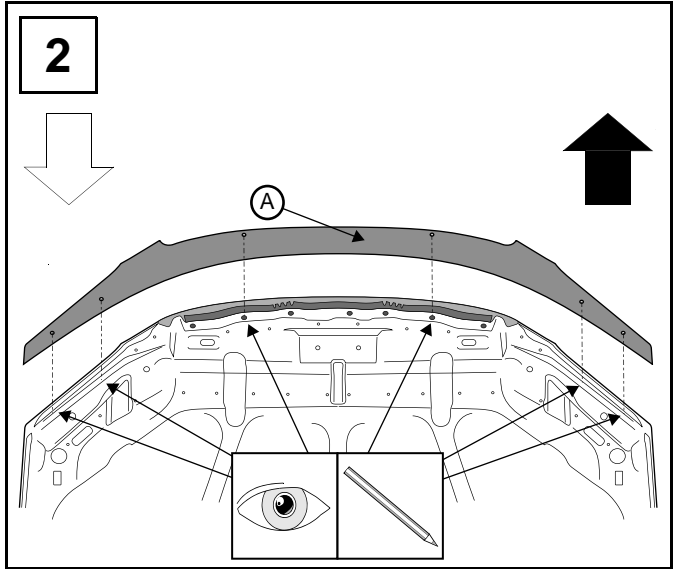
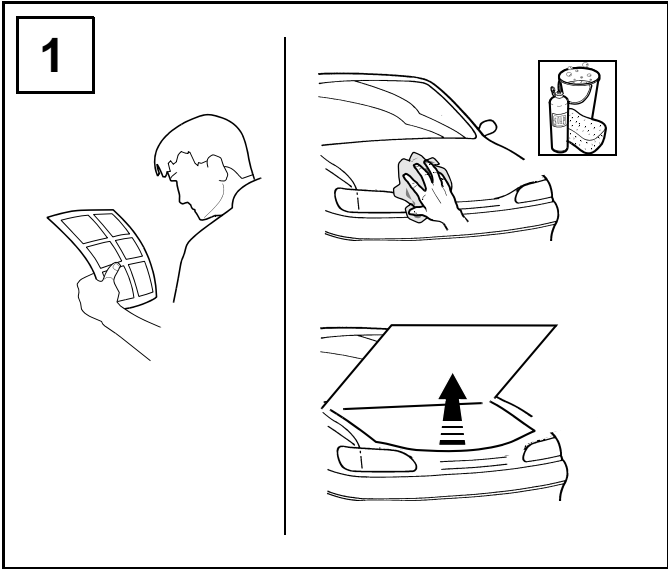
 :Location of Clips or Screws

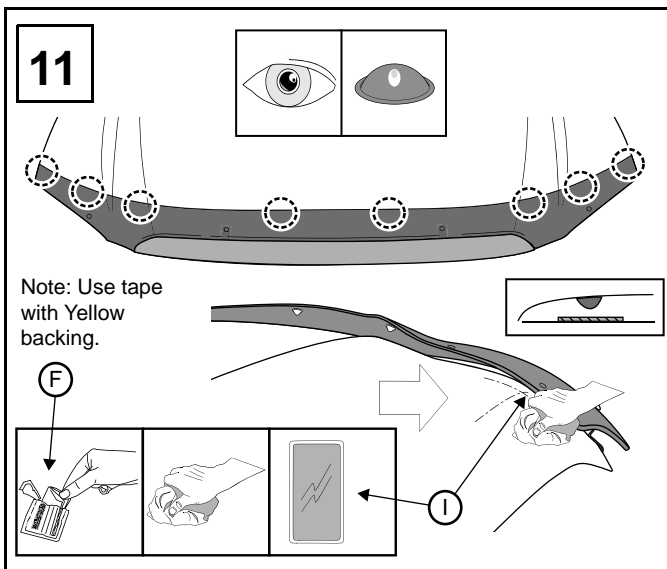
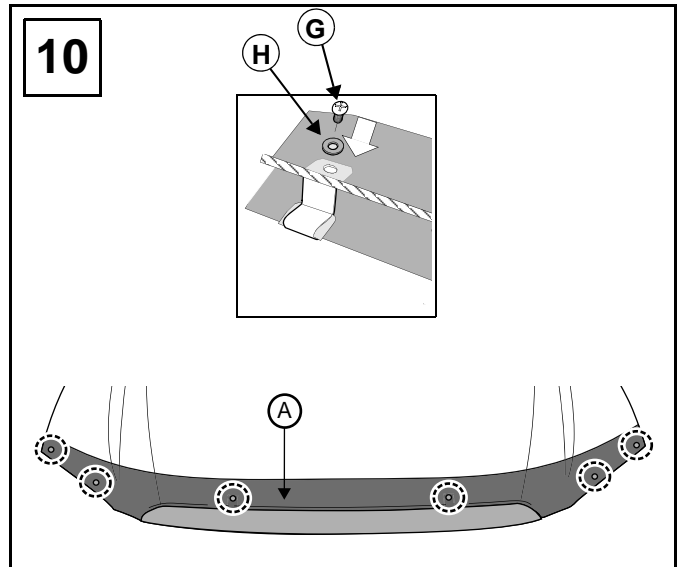
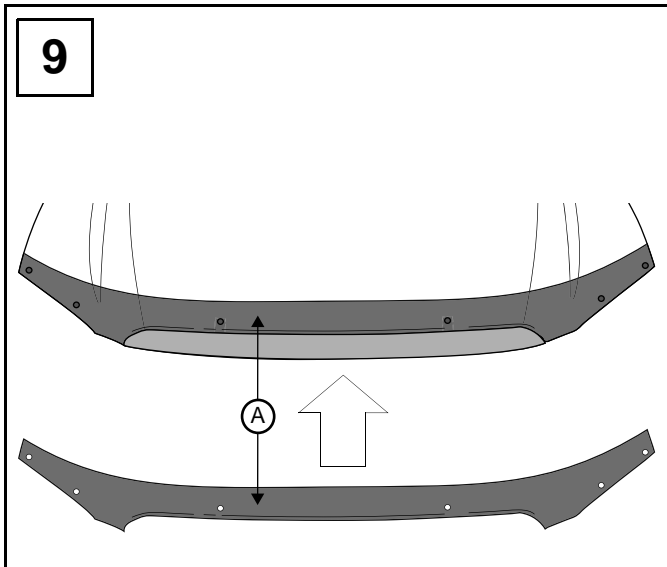
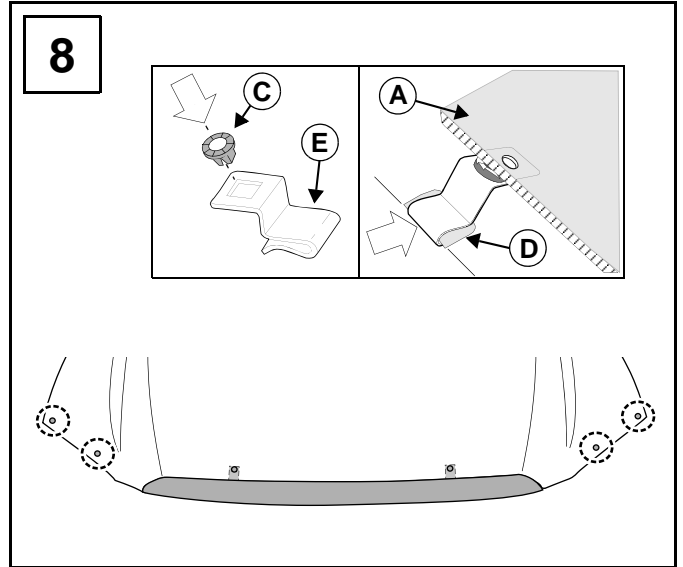
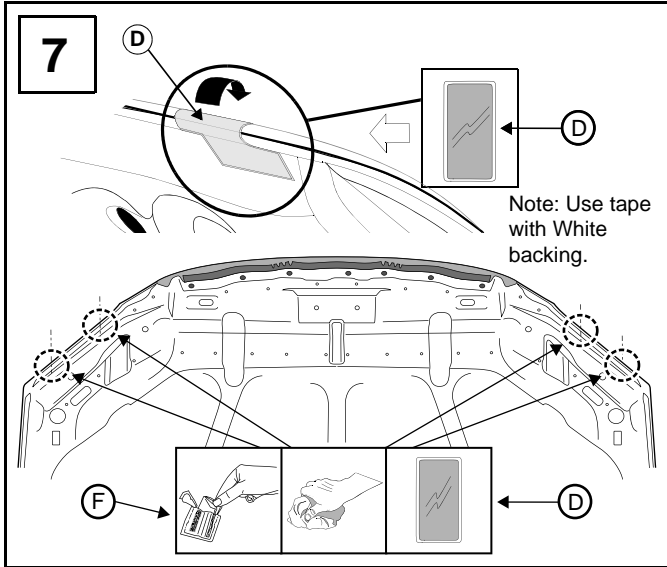
**T** :Tightening Torque

 :Loosen

 :Discard

 :Re - use





**12**

- PLACE INSTRUCTIONS IN GLOVE BOX.
- PERIODICALLY CHECK BUMPONS AND TAPE.

**DO NOT USE** solvent based cleaners on Hood Deflector.  
**USE** soap and water only to clean Hood Deflector.

**DO NOT SLAM HOOD.**


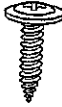

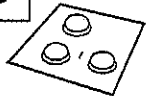







**SUBARU** 

PART NUMBER: E231SSA100

DESCRIPTION: FORESTER

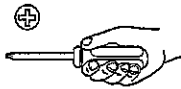
**INSTALLATION  
INSTRUCTIONS**

**HOOD DEFLECTOR**

<p><b>A</b></p>  <p>1x</p>	<p><b>B</b></p>  <p>4x</p>	<p><b>C</b></p>  <p>4x</p>	<p><b>D</b></p>  <p>3x</p>		
<p><b>E</b></p>  <p>7x</p>	<p><b>F</b></p>  <p>1x</p>	<p><b>G</b></p>  <p>4x</p>	<p><b>H</b></p>  <p>4x</p>	<p><b>I</b></p>  <p>4x</p>	<p><b>J</b></p>  <p>4x</p>
<p><b>K</b></p>  <p>4x</p>					

**Tools Required**

Phillips head screwdriver



**Meaning of Characters:**



:Remove

T

:Tightening Torque



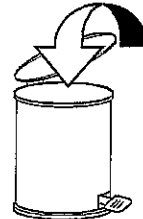
:Install



:Loosen



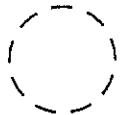
:Disconnect



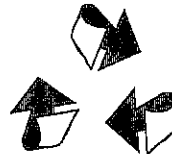
:Discard



:Connect

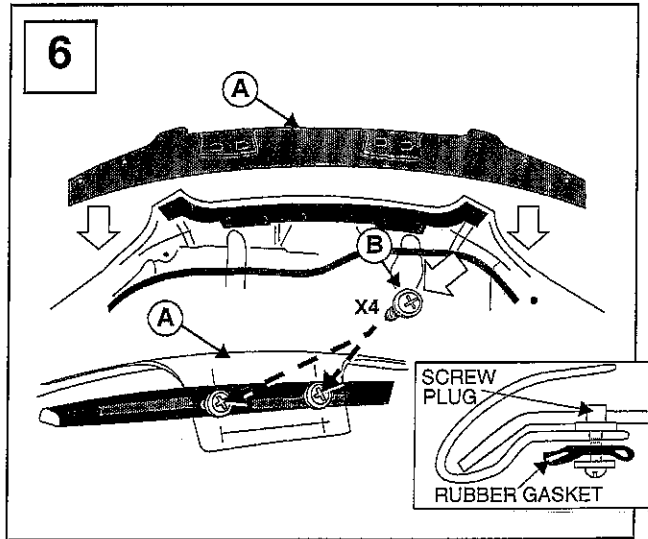
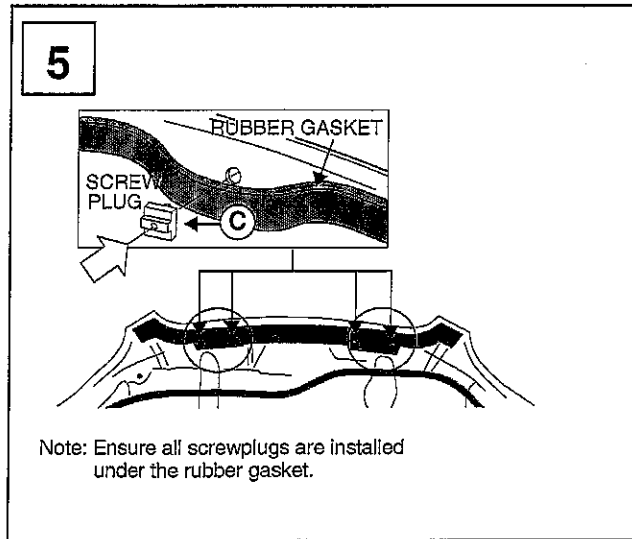
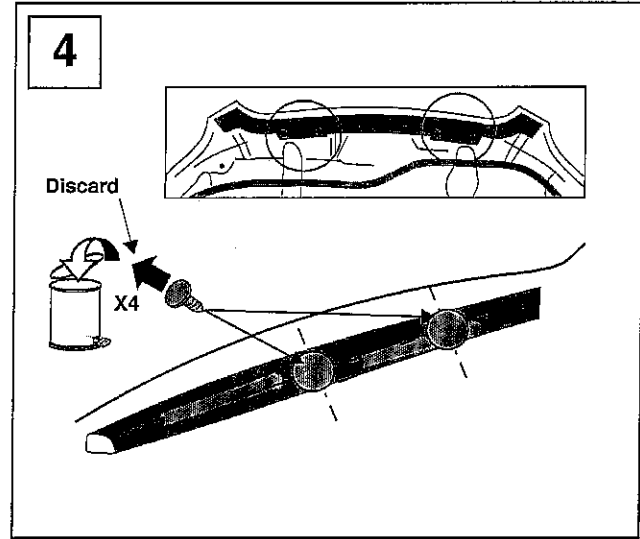
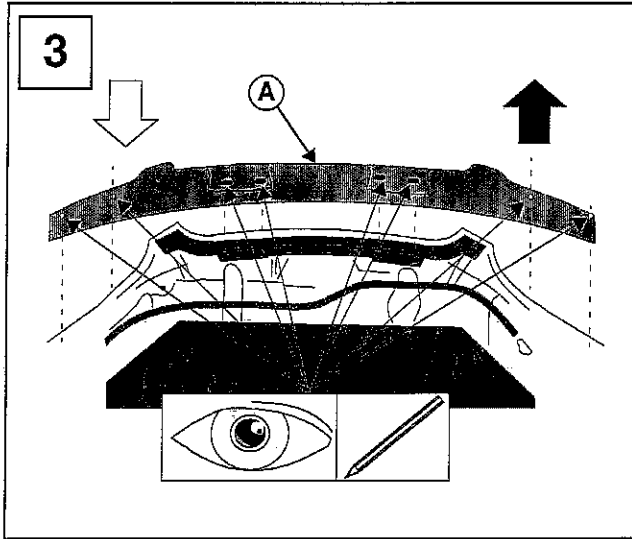
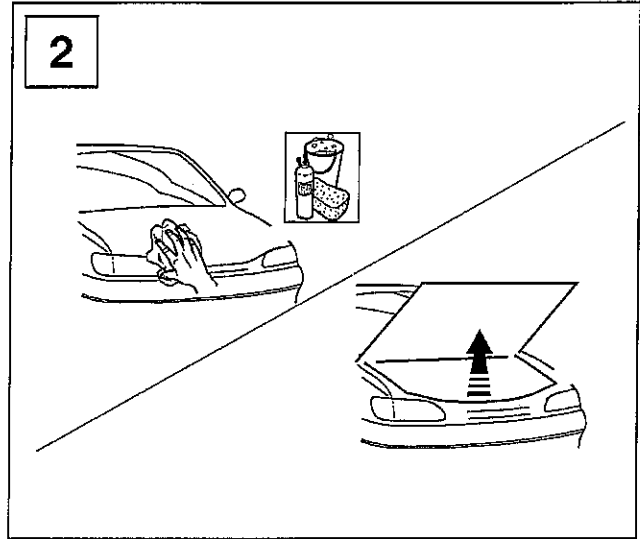
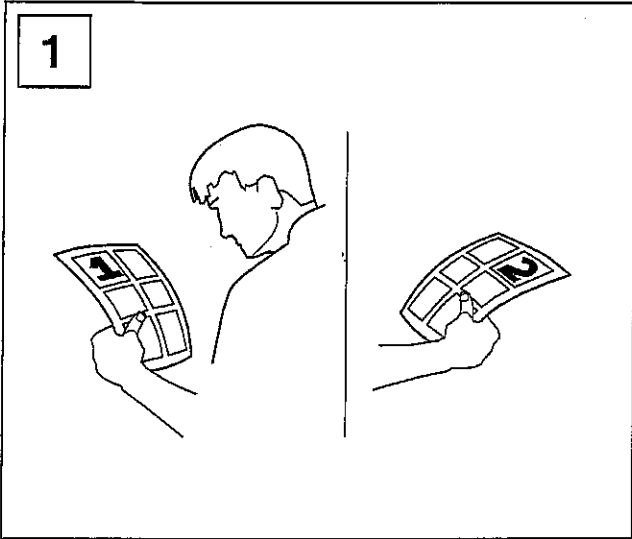


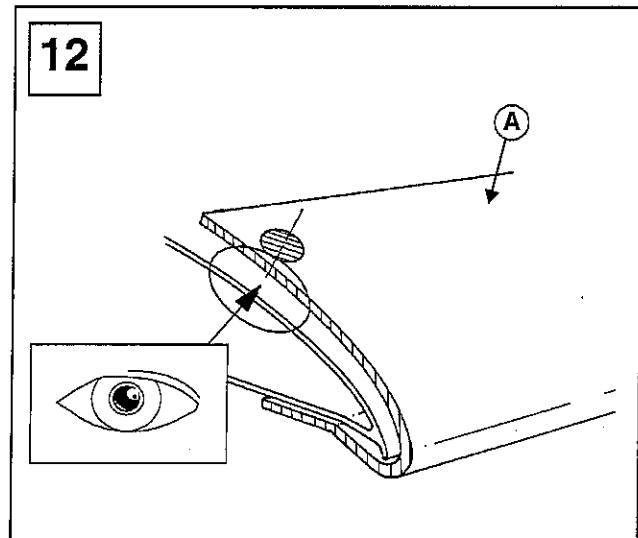
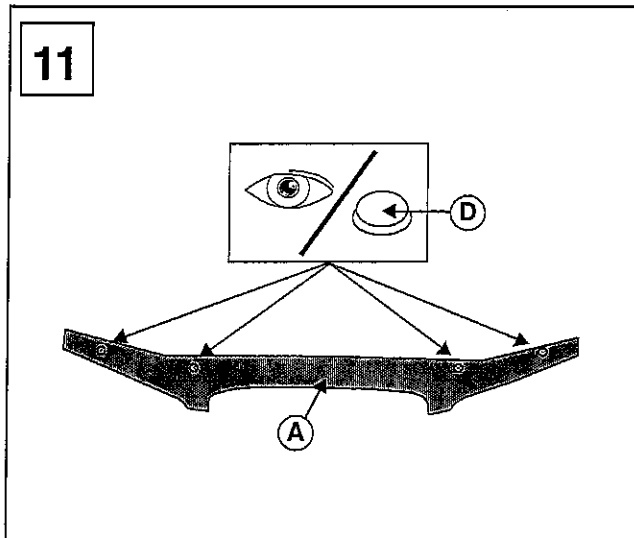
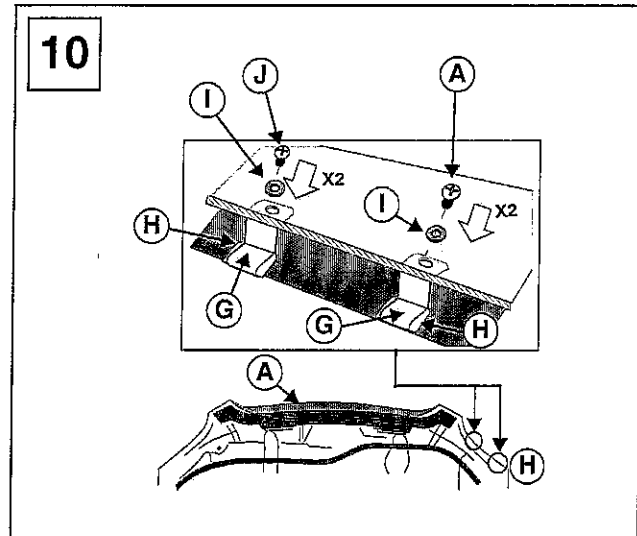
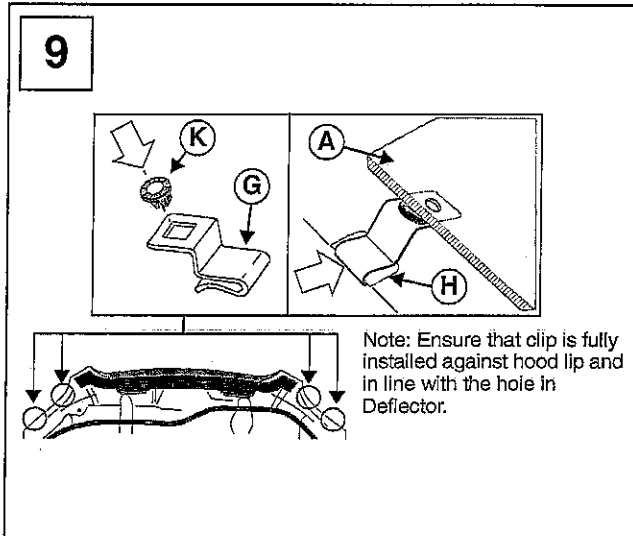
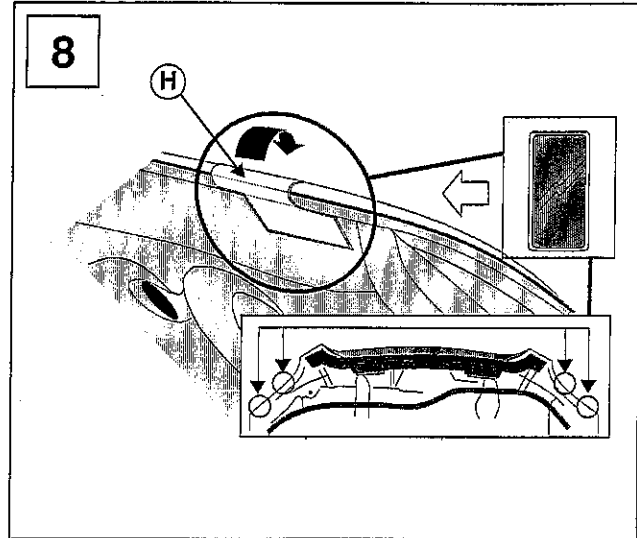
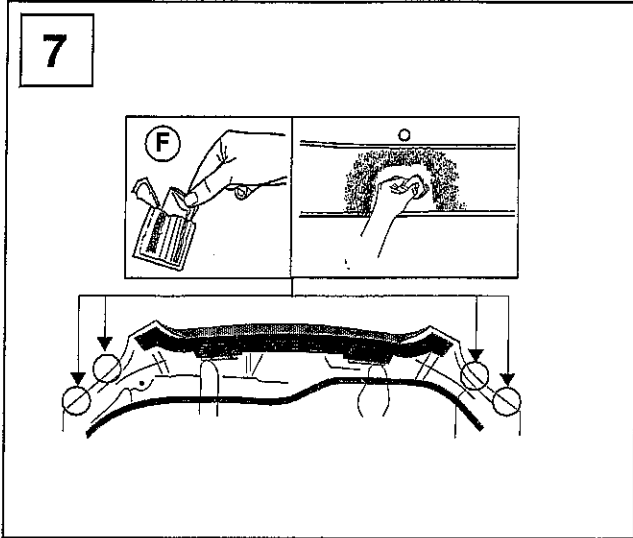
:Location of Clips or Screws

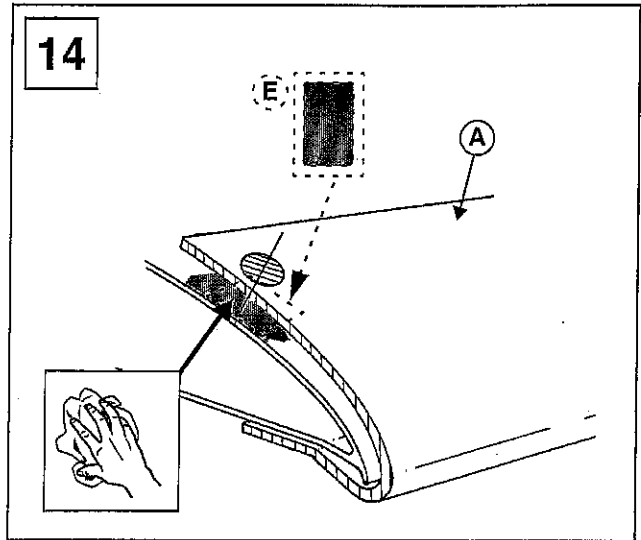
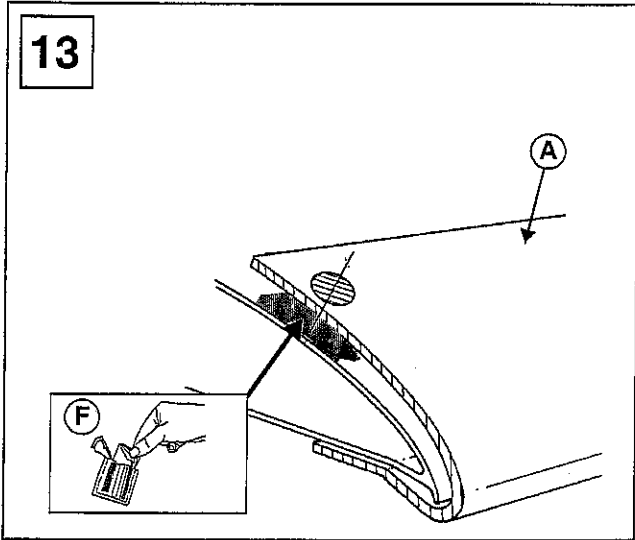


:Re - use









**15**

**DO NOT USE** solvent based cleaners on Hood Deflector.  
**USE** soap and water only to clean Hood Deflector.

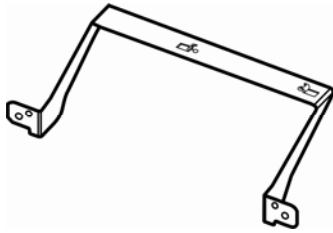


PART NUMBER: H621SFG501

DESCRIPTION: Impreza integration kit for iPod

KIT CONTENTS:

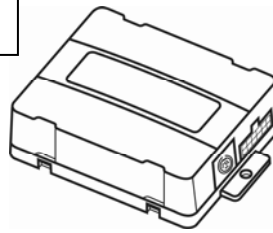
A



Mounting bracket

1x

B



iPod interface

1x

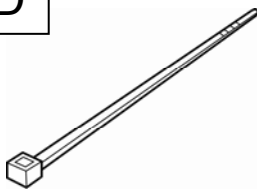
C



iPod dock cable

1x

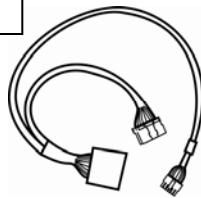
D



Cable tie

5x

E



Bus cable

1x

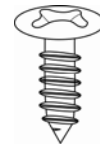
F



Plastic clip

2x

G



Screw

2x

H



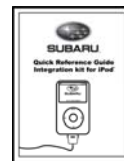
Console bin grommet 1x

I



User guide 1x

J



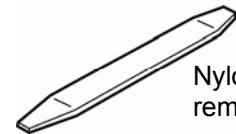
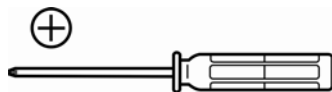
Quick reference guide 1x

K

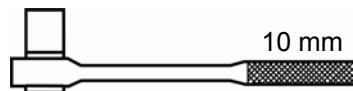


Install manual 1x

TOOLS REQUIRED:



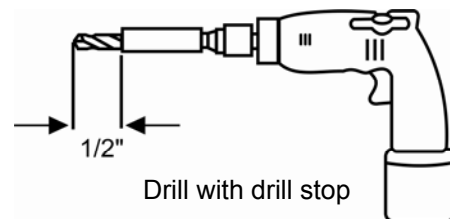
Nylon trim removal tool



10 mm



14 mm drill bit (9/16")



Drill with drill stop

ICON LEGENDS:

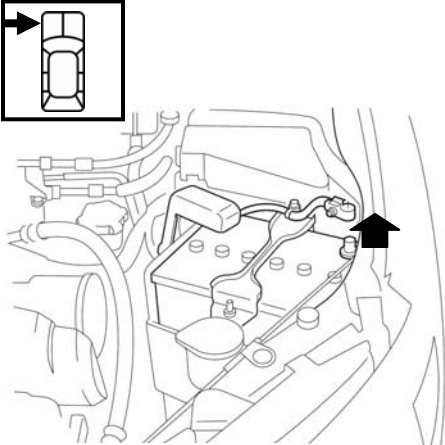


: Remove/Disconnect




: Location of clip or screw

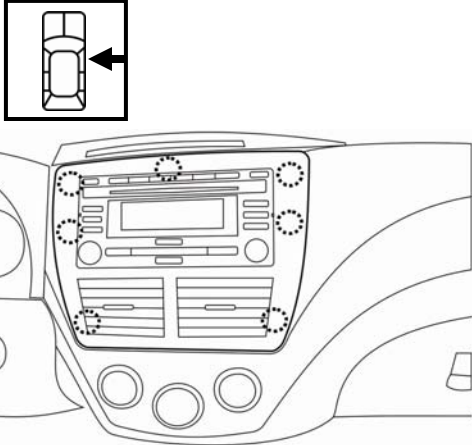
**1**




Note: Ignition should be off when disconnecting negative battery terminal.



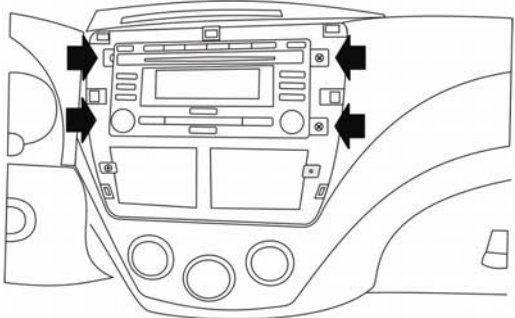
**2**



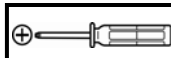
Starting from bottom, pry carefully along edges to remove trim panel.



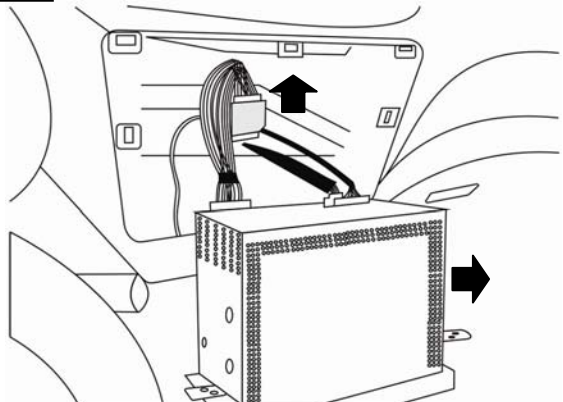
**3**



Remove 4 radio screws.

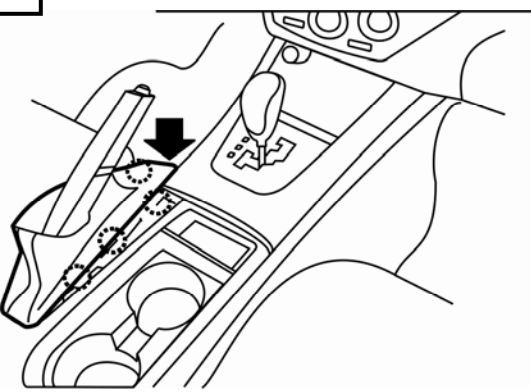


**4**

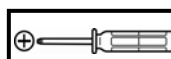


Carefully disconnect wire harnesses and remove radio.

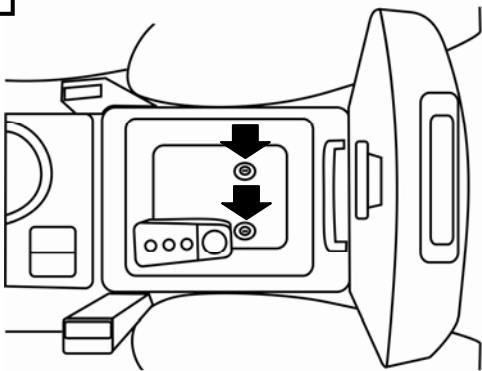
**5**



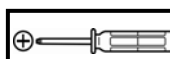
Carefully remove parking brake boot. Remove console screw.

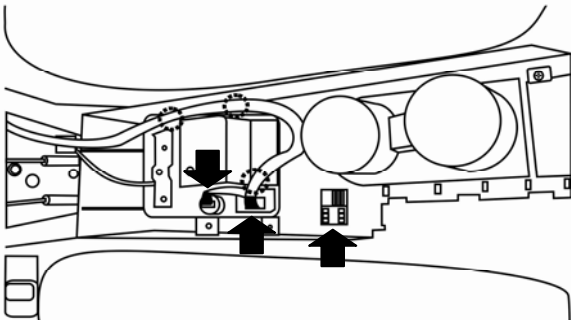


**6**



For STI models, remove liner from bottom of console bin.

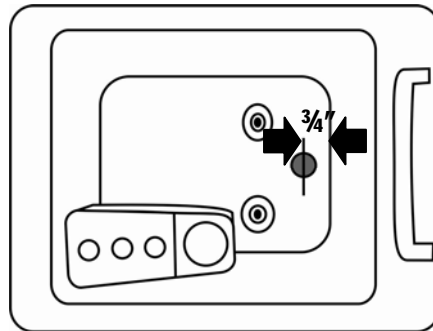


**7**


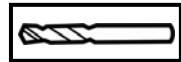
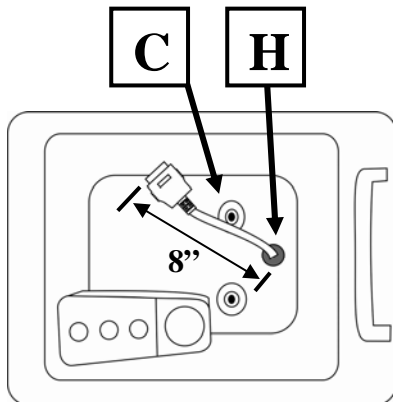
Tilt console back. Disconnect wire harness and remove console from vehicle. Note: For STI models, wire routing and connections will differ slightly.

**8**

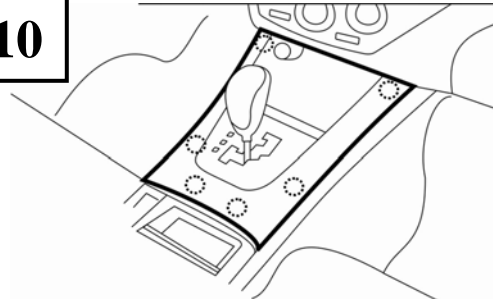
Note: It is recommended to drill from the underside of the console to prevent damage to the console bin from the drill.



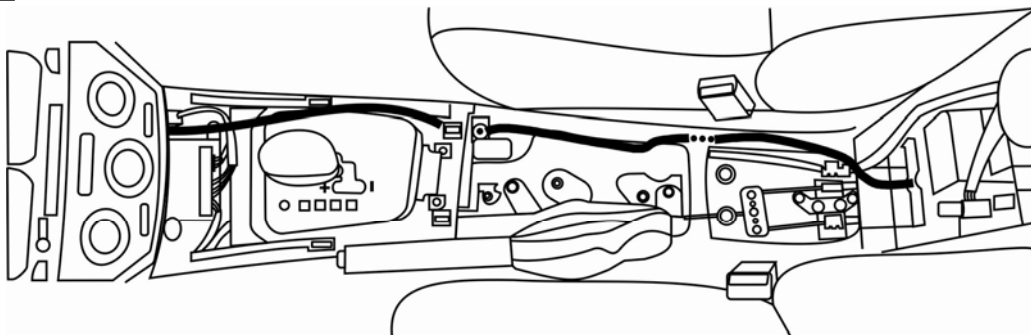
Using a 14 mm (9/16 inch) drill bit, drill a hole in console bin, about 19 mm (3/4 inch) from back edge.


**9**


Feed dock cable (C) through hole, leaving 8-9" in the console bin. Secure cable to console bin with grommet (H). Place console back in position as shown in slide 7.

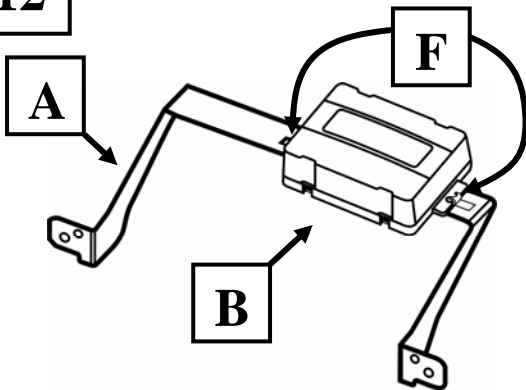
**10**


Pry gently around edges to remove trim panel. For STI models, disconnect electrical connection. Note: Gear selector must be in "N" with parking brake set, ignition off and vehicle on level ground. For manual transmission vehicles, shift knob must be removed by unscrewing in a counter clockwise direction.

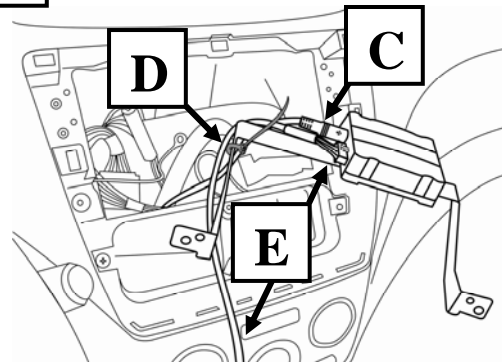

**11**


Route dock cable towards front of vehicle as shown. Dock cable should be routed behind HVAC controls and up to the radio opening.

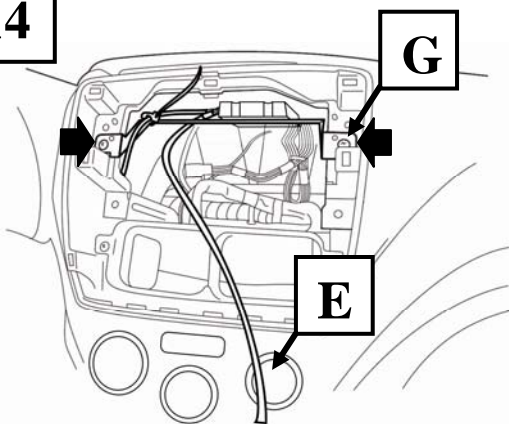


**12**


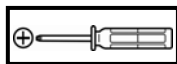
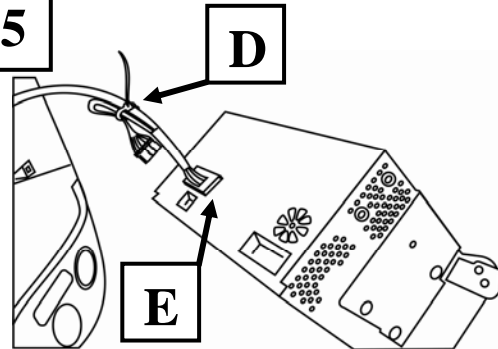
Attach module (B) to bracket (A) as shown. Insert plastic clips to (F) placing from the bottom up.

**13**


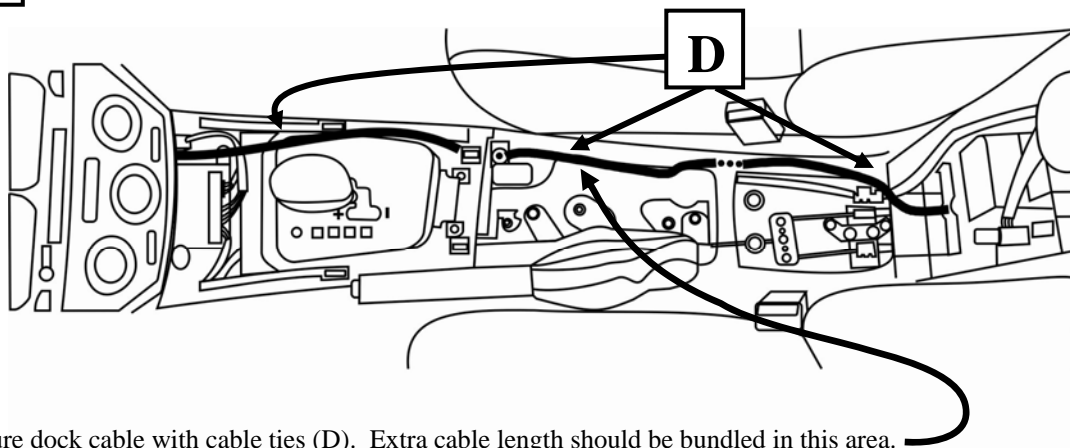
Connect dock cable (C) to module. Secure dock cable to bracket leg with cable tie (D). Connect bus cable (E) to module and route *behind* bracket as shown.

**14**


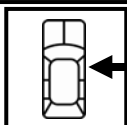
Use screws (G) to attach bracket/module assembly to vehicle as shown.


**15**


Connect bus cable (E) to radio. Use the "Y" harness to reconnect any factory harness occupying the bus connector, when applicable. Reseat all other connections removed in step 4, secure the unused portion of the harness with a cable tie (D) and reinstall radio.

**16**


Secure dock cable with cable ties (D). Extra cable length should be bundled in this area.

**18**

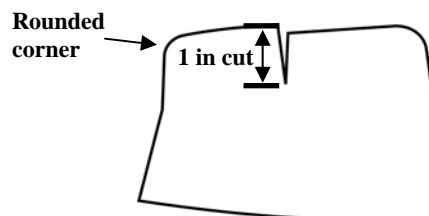
Perform iPod kit post installation check, reassemble vehicle by following steps 1-7, 10 in reverse.

For STI models, cut console bin liner as shown at right.

For operation, consult User manual.

To provide wire harness access through the liner on STI models:

- 1) Fold pad in half to find pad center
- 2) At rear edge of pad (edge with two rounded corners) cut 1 inch long slit into pad
- 3) Reinstall pad to console bin





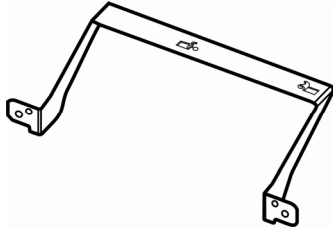
**SUBARU**

PART NUMBER: H621SFG501

DESCRIPTION: Forester integration kit for iPod

**KIT CONTENTS:**

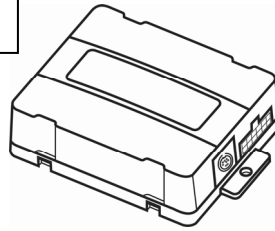
**A**



Mounting bracket

1x

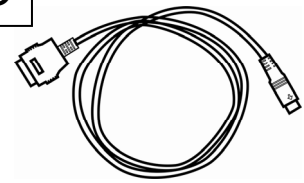
**B**



iPod interface

1x

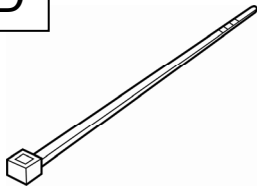
**C**



iPod dock cable

1x

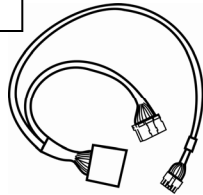
**D**



Cable tie

5x

**E**



Bus cable

1x

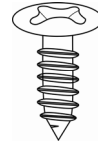
**F**



Plastic clip

2x

**G**



Screw

2x

**H**



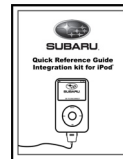
Console bin grommet 1x

**I**



User guide 1x

**J**



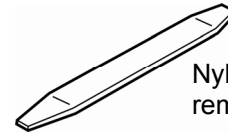
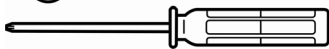
Quick reference guide 1x

**K**

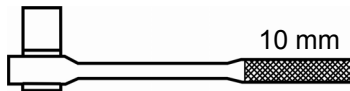


Install manual 1x

**TOOLS REQUIRED:**



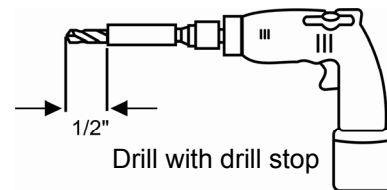
Nylon trim removal tool



10 mm



14 mm drill bit (9/16")



Drill with drill stop

**ICON LEGENDS:**

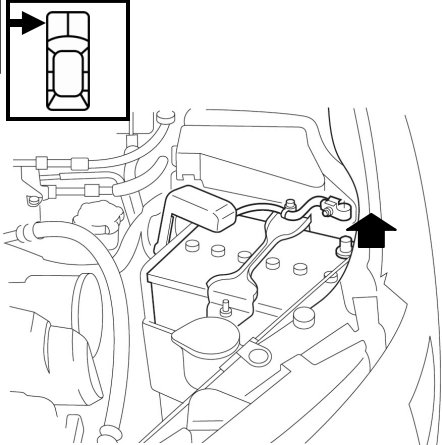


: Remove/Disconnect




: Location of clip or screw

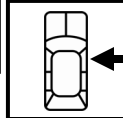
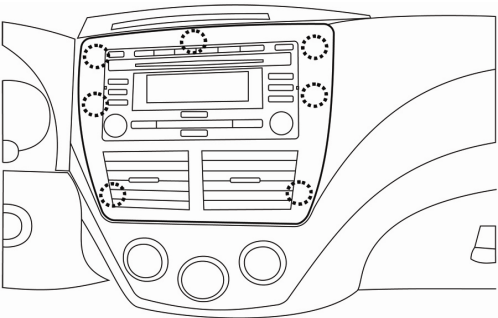
**1**



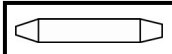
Note: Ignition should be off when disconnecting negative battery terminal.



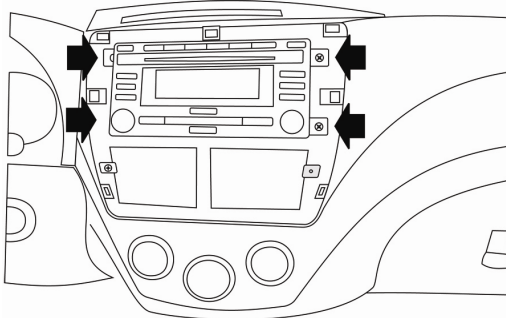
**2**

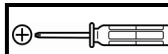
Starting from bottom, pry carefully along edges to remove trim panel.



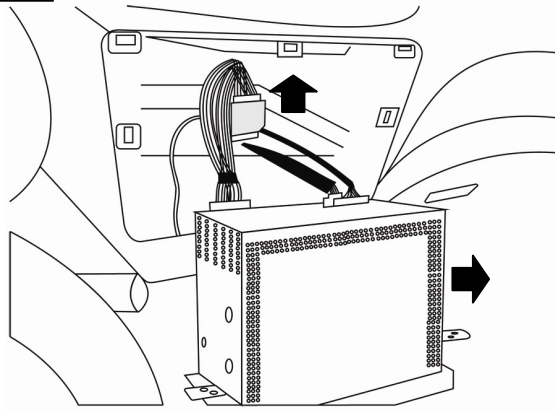
**3**



Remove 4 radio screws.

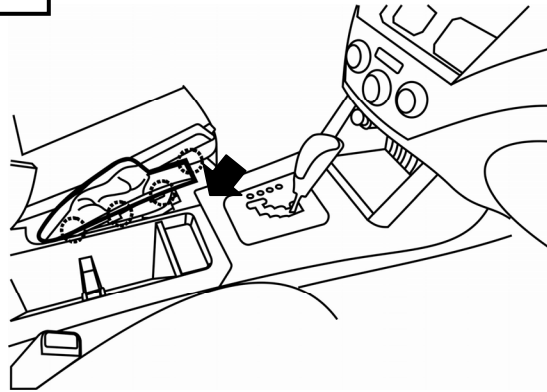


**4**

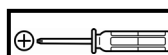


Carefully disconnect wire harnesses and remove radio.

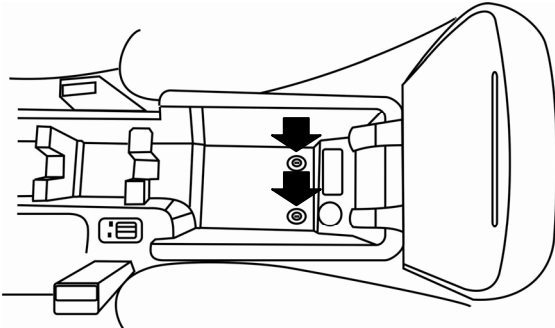
**5**



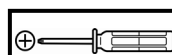
Carefully remove parking brake boot. Remove console screw.



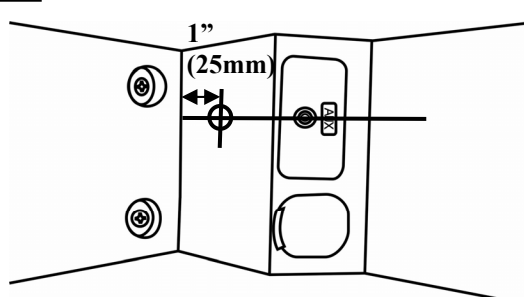
**6**



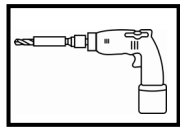
Remove 2 screws from console bin.



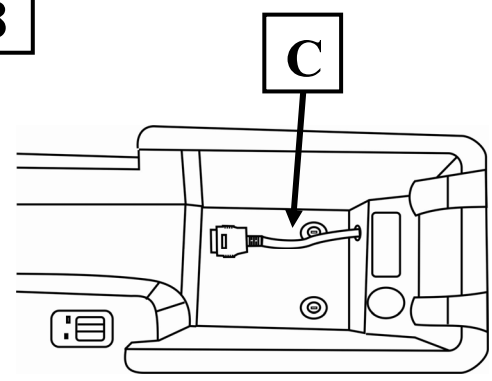
**7**



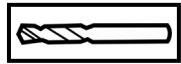
Using 14 mm (9/16") drill bit and drill stop set to 1/2" drill a hole in console bin as shown. **Caution: failure to use drill stop may result in damage to vehicle.**



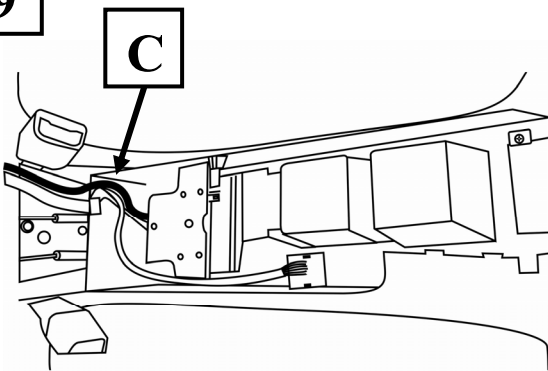
**8**



Feed dock cable (C) through hole and tilt console upright as shown in slide 9.

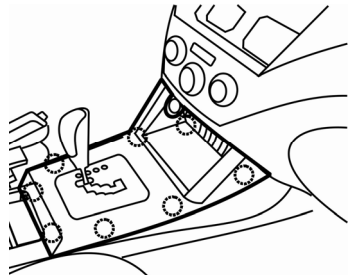


**9**

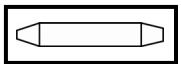


Route dock cable from bottom of console bin along existing wire harnesses as shown (C).

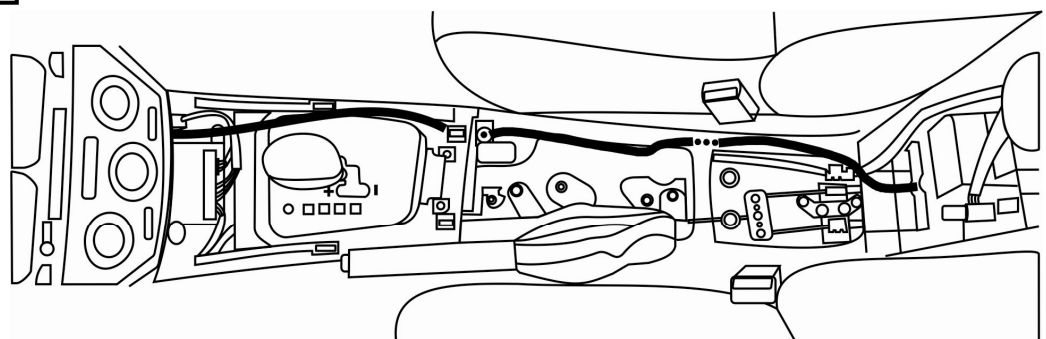
**10**



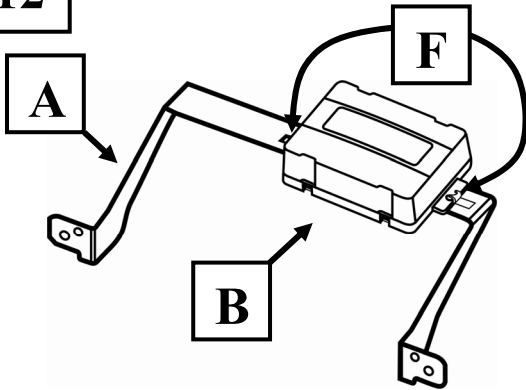
Pry gently around edges to remove trim panel. Note: Gear selector must be in "N" with parking brake set, ignition off and vehicle on level ground. For manual transmission vehicles, shift knob must be removed by unscrewing in a counter clockwise direction.



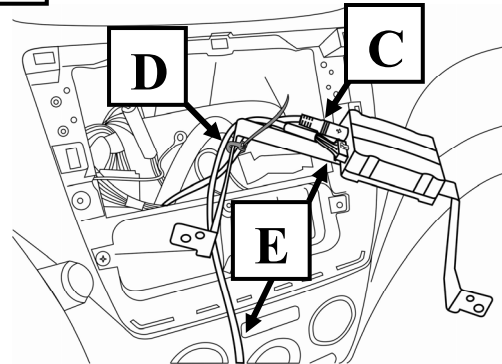
**11**



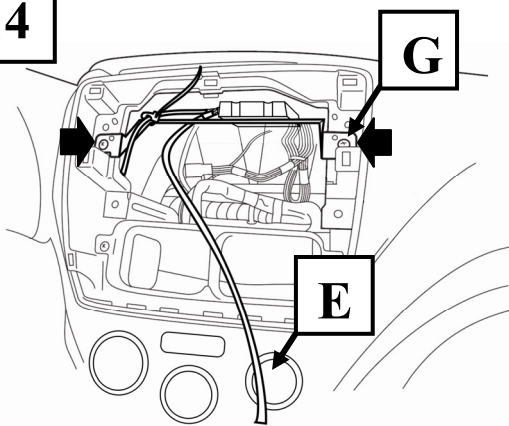
Route dock cable towards front of vehicle as shown. Dock cable should be routed behind HVAC controls and up to the radio opening.

**12**


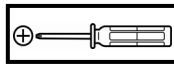
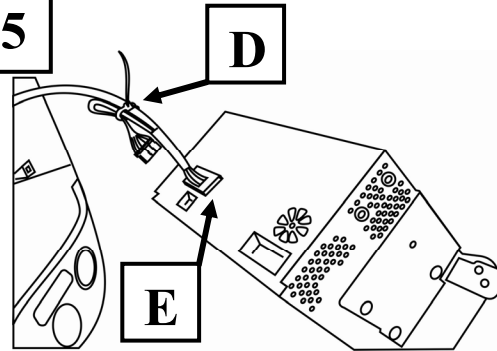
Attach module (B) to bracket (A) as shown. Insert plastic clips to (F) placing from the bottom up.

**13**


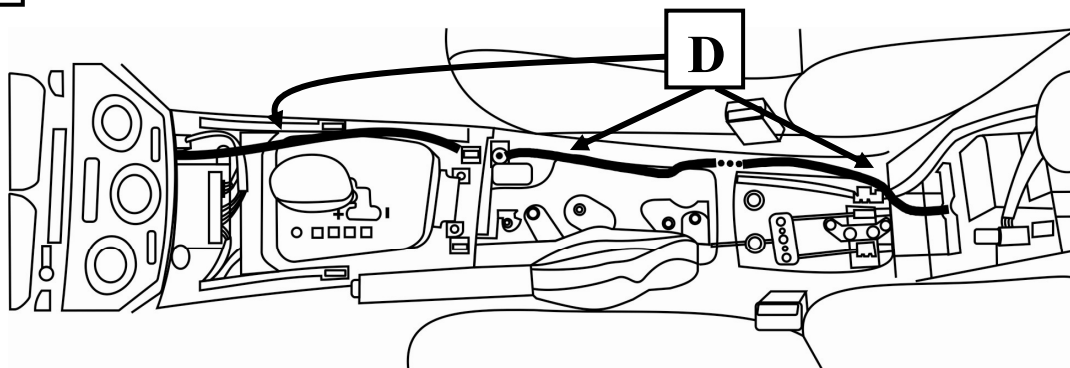
Connect dock cable (C) to module. Secure dock cable to bracket leg with cable tie (D). Connect bus cable (E) to module and route *behind* bracket as shown.

**14**


Use screws (G) to attach bracket/module assembly to vehicle as shown.

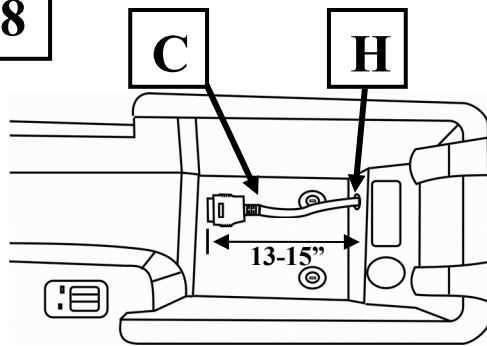

**15**


Connect bus cable (E) to radio. Use the "Y" harness to reconnect any factory harness occupying the bus connector, when applicable. Reseat all other connections removed in step 4, secure the unused portion of the harness with a cable tie (D) and reinstall radio.

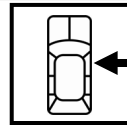
**16**


Secure dock cable with cable ties (D).



**18**

Lower the console back into position. Gently remove excess slack from dock cable (C). Secure into console bin with grommet (H), as shown.

**19**

Perform iPod kit post installation check, reassemble vehicle by following steps 1-6, 8-10 in reverse.

For operation, consult User manual.

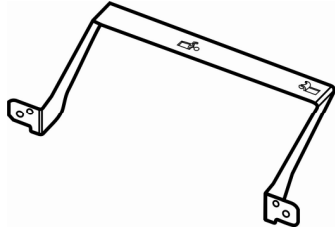


PART NUMBER: H621SFG500

DESCRIPTION: iPod integration kit

KIT CONTENTS:

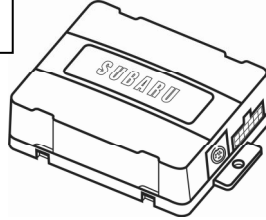
A



Mounting bracket

1x

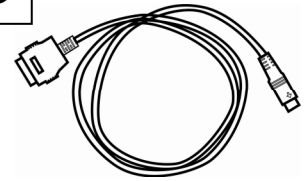
B



iPod interface

1x

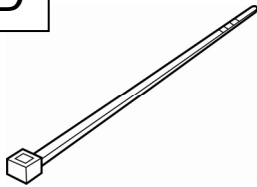
C



iPod dock cable

1x

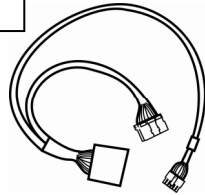
D



Cable tie

4x

E



Bus cable

1x

F



Plastic clip

2x

G



Screw

2x

H



Console bin grommet

1x

I



User guide

1x

J



Quick reference guide

1x

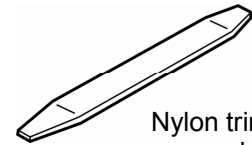
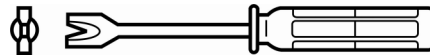
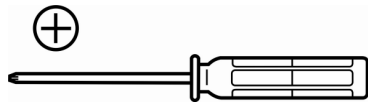
K



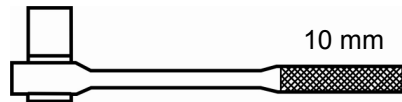
Install manual

1x

TOOLS REQUIRED:



Nylon trim removal tool



10 mm



14 mm drill bit (9/16")

ICON LEGENDS:

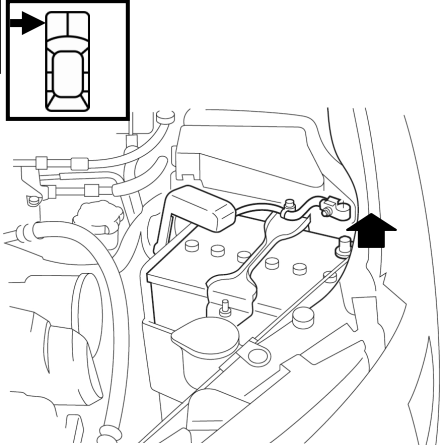


: Remove/Disconnect




: Location of clip or screw

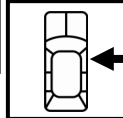
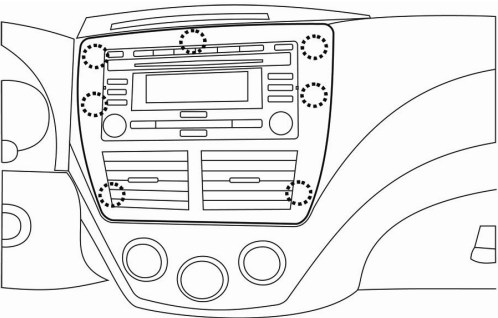
**1**



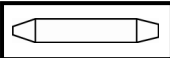
Note: Ignition should be off when disconnecting negative battery terminal.



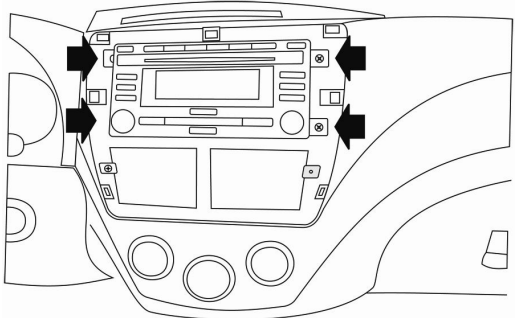
**2**

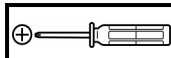
Starting from bottom, pry carefully along edges to remove trim panel.



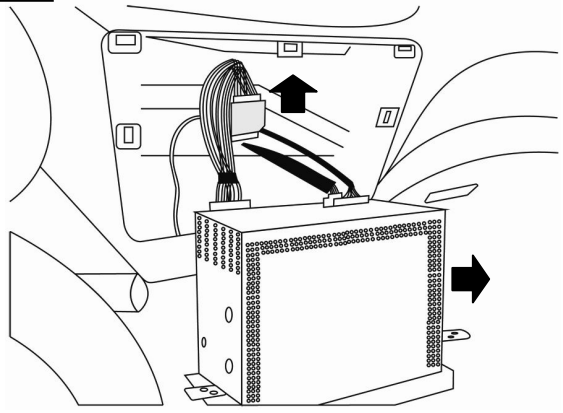
**3**



Remove 4 radio screws.

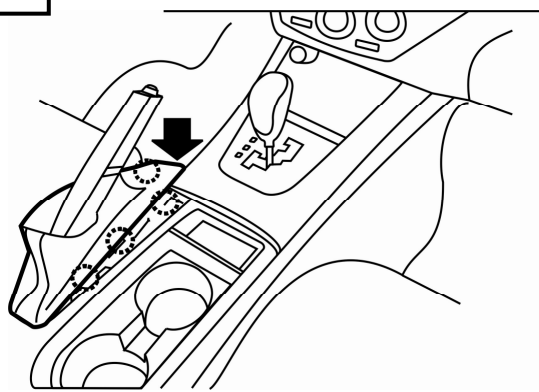


**4**

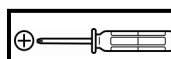


Carefully disconnect wire harnesses and remove radio.

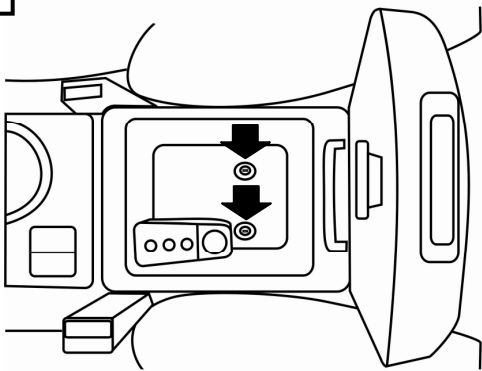
**5**



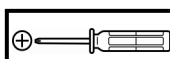
Carefully remove parking brake boot. Remove console screw.



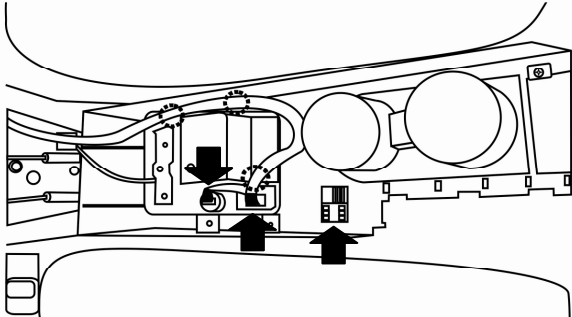
**6**



Remove 2 screws from console bin.

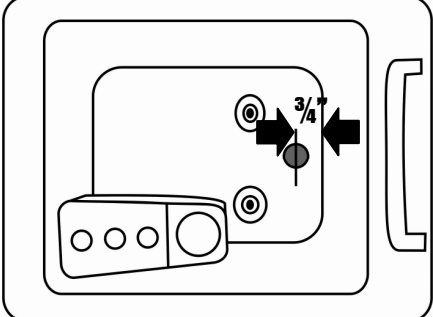


**7**



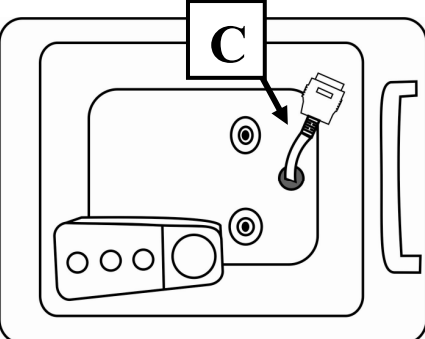
Tilt console back. Disconnect wire harness and remove console from vehicle.

**8**



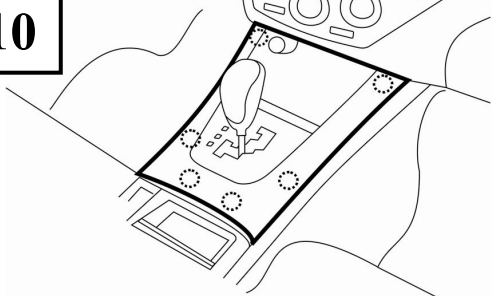
Using a 14 mm (9/16 inch) drill bit, drill a hole in console bin, about 19 mm (3/4 inch) from edge.

**9**



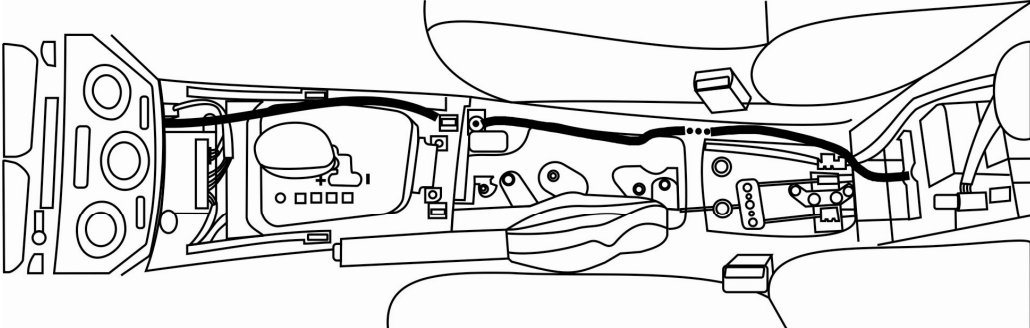
Feed dock cable (C) through hole and place console bin back in vehicle in upright position as shown in slide 7.

**10**

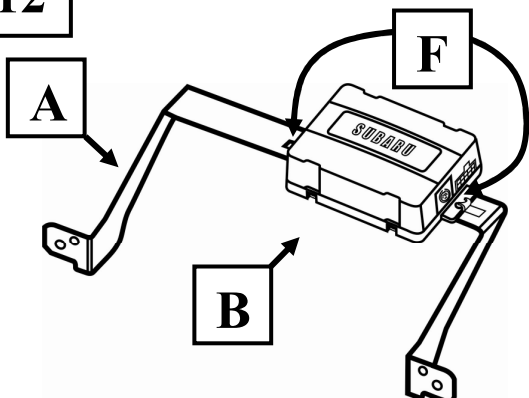


Pry gently around edges to remove trim panel. Note: Gear selector must be in "N" with parking brake set, ignition off and vehicle on level ground. For manual transmission vehicles, shift knob must be removed by unscrewing in a counter clockwise direction.

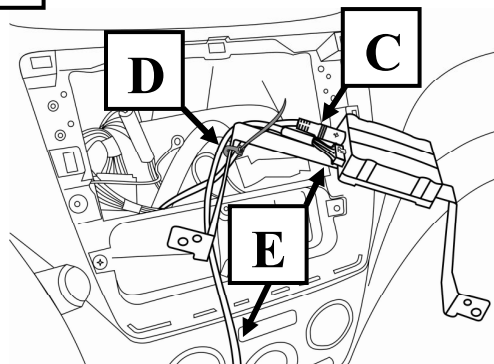
**11**



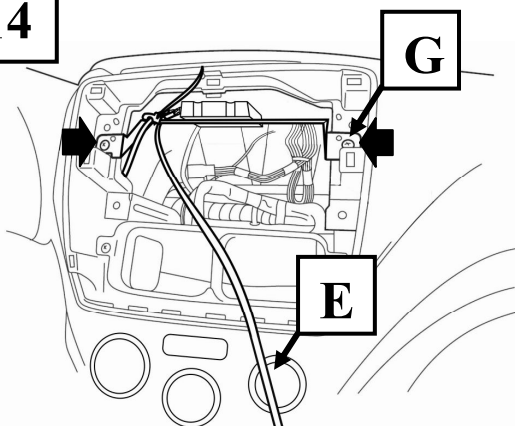
Route dock cable towards front of vehicle as shown. Dock cable should be routed behind HVAC controls and up to the radio opening.

**12**


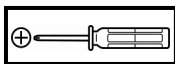
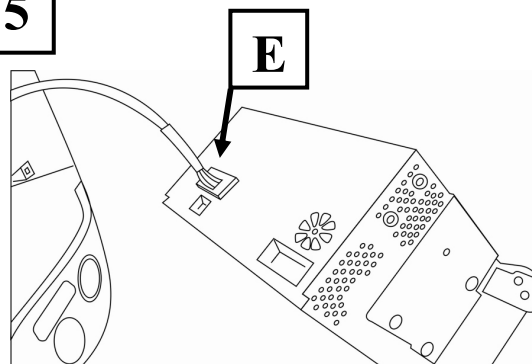
Attach module (B) to bracket (A) as shown. Insert plastic clips to (F) placing from the bottom up.

**13**


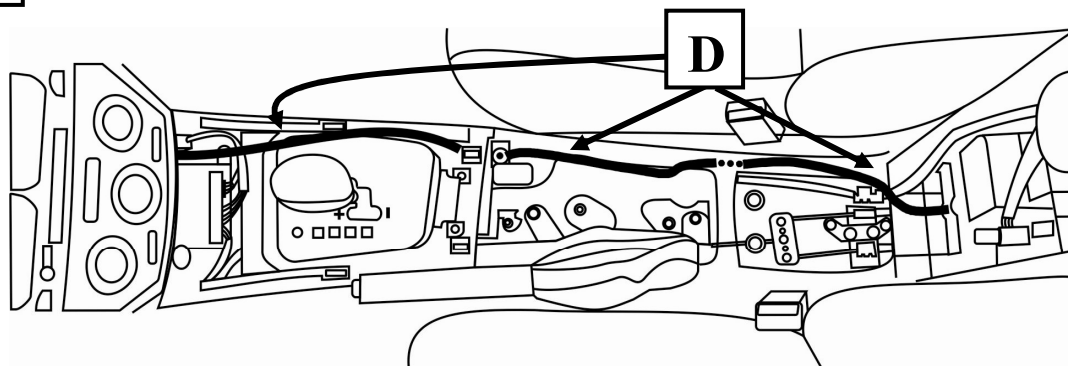
Connect dock cable (C) to module. Secure dock cable to bracket leg with cable tie (D). Connect bus cable (E) to module and route *behind* bracket as shown.

**14**


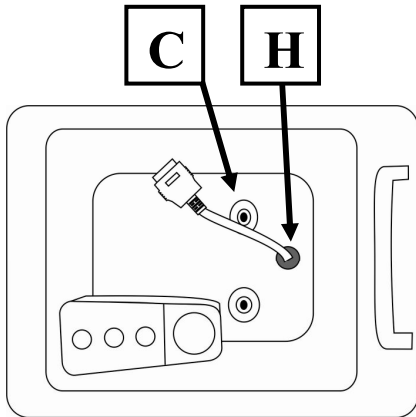
Use screws (G) to attach bracket/module assembly to vehicle as shown.


**15**


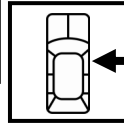
Connect bus cable (E) to radio. Use the "Y" harness to reconnect any factory harness occupying the bus connector, when applicable. Reseat all other connections removed in step 4 and reinstall radio.

**16**


Secure cable with cable ties (D). If necessary, bundle any excess cable in this area.

**17**

Lower the console back into position. Gently remove excess slack from dock cable (C). Secure into console bin with grommet (H).

**18**

Reassemble vehicle by following steps 1-7, 10 in reverse.

For operation, consult User manual.





**SUBARU**®

**iPod® Integration Kit**



SUBARU.

## Introduction

Thank you for purchasing the Subaru® iPod® integration kit. Please review this user's guide for safety warnings and operating tips.

## Warning!

Do not allow the Apple iPod to distract you from driving! Only operate the unit when stationary or ask passengers to operate it for you. Neither Subaru nor Apple Inc., its regional offices, distributors or resellers accept any responsibility for any damage or injury as a result of using the Subaru iPod Integration Kit. Exercise good judgment and keep your eyes on the road at all times!



## Icon legends



Turn jog dial



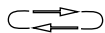
Turn jog dial repeatedly



Press button



Press button repeatedly



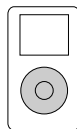
Scroll

## Preface

### Is Your iPod Up To Date?

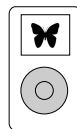
Before you start, please check your iPod firmware version. Go to Settings → About - look for the number next to Version. Minimum Firmware Versions for each iPod are shown below.

FW:3.1.1



4th Gen.

FW:1.2.1



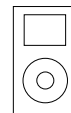
4th Gen.  
Color

FW:1.1.1



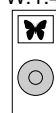
Video

FW:1.1.1



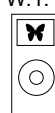
mini

FW:1.4.1



nano

FW:1.1.1



2nd Gen.  
nano

- color

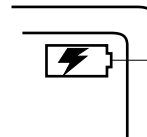
Compatibility information is based on data available at time of printing. For up to date information on newer iPod compatibility, please visit <http://www.subaru.com/ipod>

## iPod adapter information

It is not possible to run the iPod adapter parallel with a Satellite Radio tuner module. However, a portable satellite radio unit can be connected to the head unit through the "AUX" port.

## Charging

The interface automatically charges the iPod's battery when connected and the key is in the ACC/ON position.



The icon appearing on the upper right corner of the iPod screen indicates charging.



SUBARU.

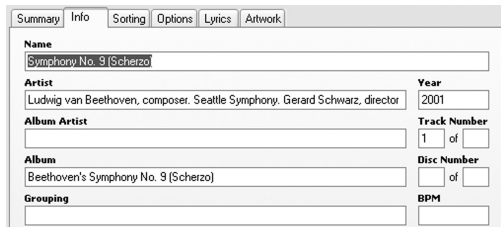


## Browsing hierarchy structure

Music stored on the iPod is classified based on the Song name, Artist and Album information contained within each Track. Music purchased from online stores comes with accurate Track information, but you may need to update these fields\* if music content originates from ripping CD. A large music collection typically results in having 100s of Artists with 1000s of Albums. An arbitrary list of Songs maybe organized into a Playlist (using iTunes); you may have many Playlists.

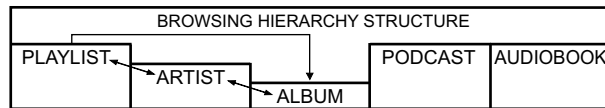
To play a desired Song within an Album, you may browse through a long list of Albums. Alternatively, you may narrow down the selection using Playlist as the primary filter, Artist as the 2nd level filter and Album as the 3rd and final filter. This type of approach is a more efficient way to get to a desired music selection.

\* Artist and Album tag info are embedded in each song. Please refer to iTunes' info tag screen (CTRL+I on a PC, on a Mac) to verify and correct Song information as needed.



## Hierarchy structure of the iPod interface

By default, the iPod interface creates a Playlist having a name that is the same as the iPod's. This Playlist is the very first on the list of Playlists shown while browsing with the category select keys in Playlist Mode. Note that this "all content" Playlist may have as many as several thousand songs, therefore it should not be used for general browsing, but for random content playback with the Shuffle Mode engaged, or for further filtering by Artist and Album. Once a Playlist is active an Artist maybe selected within that Playlist using the Artist Mode. Albums by the selected Artist and within the selected Playlist may be selected in Album Mode. "ALL ARTIST" and "ALL ALBUM" designate all available content in those categories.



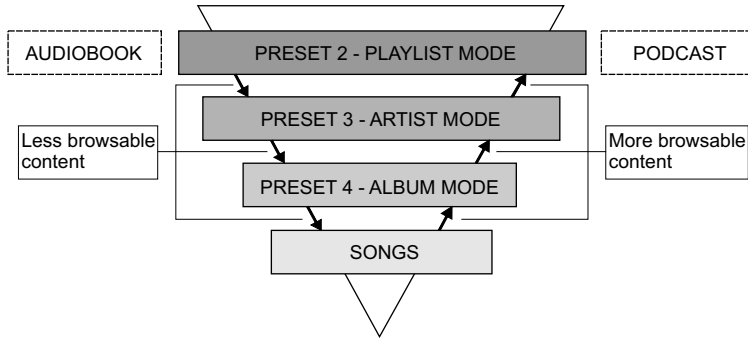
To select an Album that is not in the current list, you must go back one filter level and select the Artist having the desired album first, before the actual Album could be selected. You may also go back to the top filter level by selecting a different Playlist having the content.

We do not recommend putting Podcast and Audiobook content into a Playlist because if an Audiobook is added to a Playlist then tune dial will not take you to the next Chapter but to the following entry of the Playlist. Playlists can only contain Episodes of a Podcast.



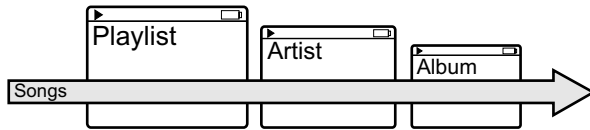
SUBARU.

## Browsing hierarchy



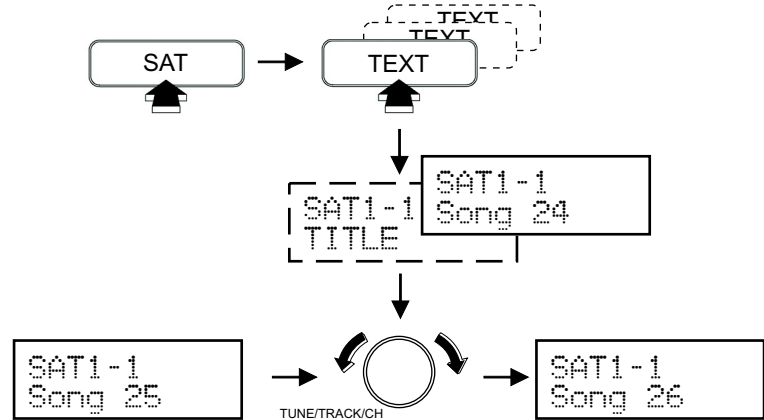
### An example of the browsing hierarchy

The first Playlist is the name of the iPod and contains all music on the iPod. According to the selected Playlist, the following browsing hierarchy is true:



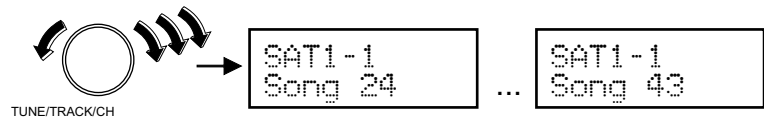
## Easy access - Enjoy your iPod on the road

Follow these steps to operate your iPod integration kit.

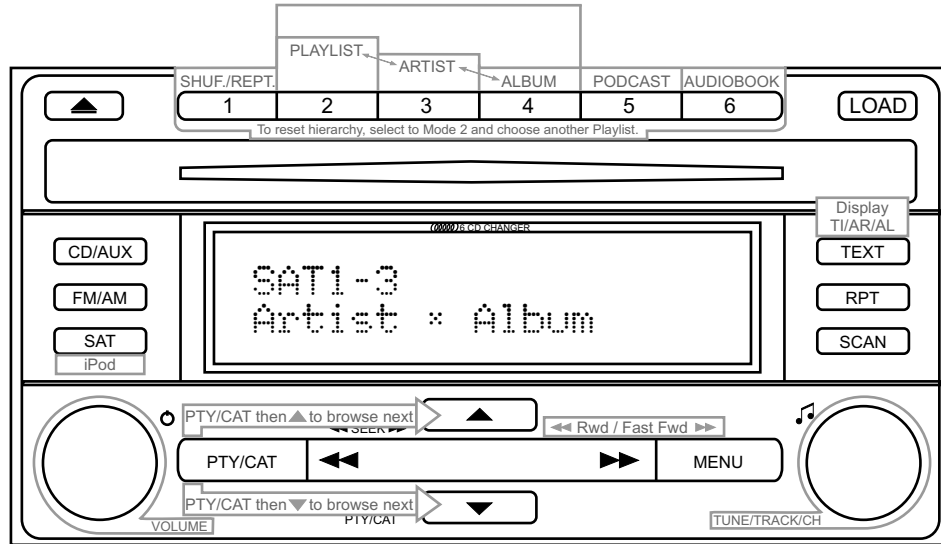


### QUICK BROWSE

Turn the dial until the desired selection is reached. 1 second after the dial is released the iPod will execute the selection.



### Subaru radio controls



Note that the LOAD button is only present on the 6 CD changer radios.  
 The radio will only display ASCII characters, accented characters displayed without the accent; other characters will be substituted by "?"



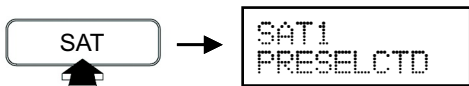
SUBARU



## Radio controls

### SAT button - source selector

Press the SAT button to access the iPod.



Display shows the last text field information. See page 8 for details.

### TEXT button

Press the TEXT button repeatedly to cycle through the available TEXT fields:

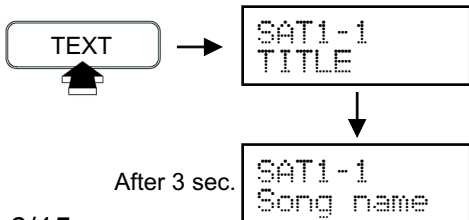
CH NUMBER = CH 001

CH NAME = \*\* iPod \*\*

TITLE = Song title

NAME = Artist \* Album

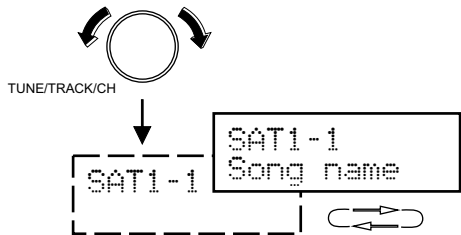
CATEGORY = Displays the selected mode. (See page 7 for details.)



After 3 sec.

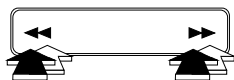
### SEEK TRACK/QUICK BROWSE button

Turn the dial to go to the next/previous Track or to browse between Songs, Episodes or Chapters. Long text will start scroll in about 3 seconds. To browse Songs turn the dial until you reach the desired item. 1 second after the dial is released, the iPod will execute the jump.



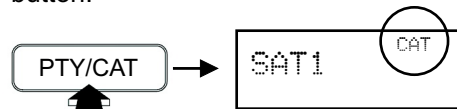
### REWIND and FAST FORWARD button

Press and hold to rewind or fast forward a Song. To disengage the beep, select "beep off" from the menu of the radio.



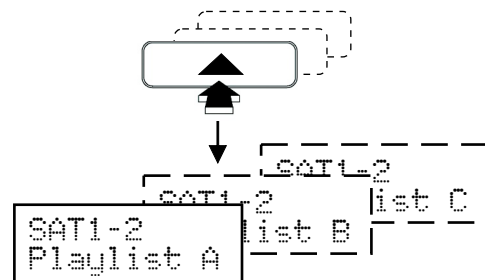
### PROGRAM TYPE/CATEGORY button

Press this button to enable the CATEGORY  $\blacklozenge$  buttons. Note that the second line of the display keeps blinking for about 3 seconds after pressing this button.



### CATEGORY $\blacklozenge$ buttons

Within 5 seconds press one of these buttons to select Shuffle/Repeat option, browse between Playlists, Artists, Albums, Podcast Episodes, Audiobook Chapters according to the selected Mode. After 2 seconds of waiting your selection will be confirmed.







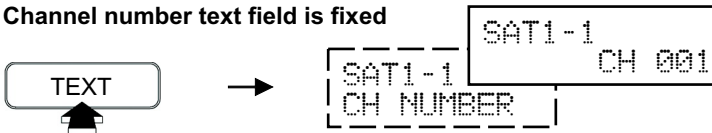
SUBARU.



## Text fields

Press the TEXT button repeatedly to cycle through the available text fields.

Channel number text field is fixed



Channel name text field is fixed



Title text field displays the Song name in Preset 1-4



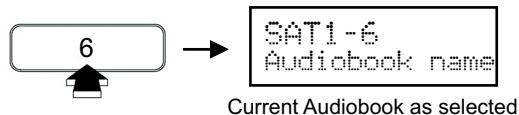
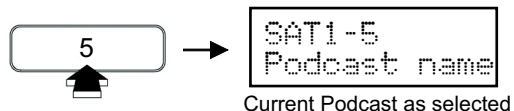
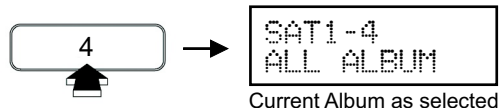
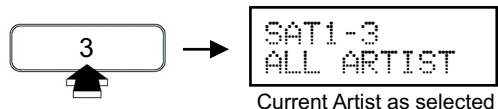
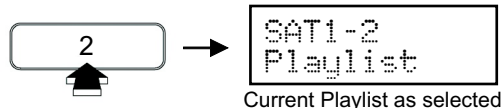
Name text field displays the Artist \* Album in Preset 1-4



## Category text field



The displayed text changes according to the selected Preset in the Category text field.



Current Audiobook as selected

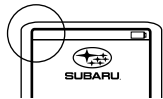
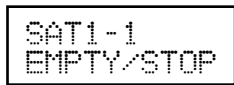


SUBARU.

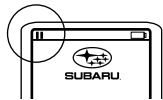
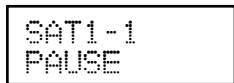


## Text messages

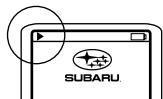
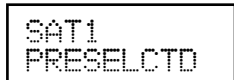
When the end of a selected item is reached the "EMPTY/STOP" message will be displayed in Title, Name and Category text fields.



"PAUSE" message may be displayed when iPod is connected and it was already paused. If in pause rotate the dial to resume playback.

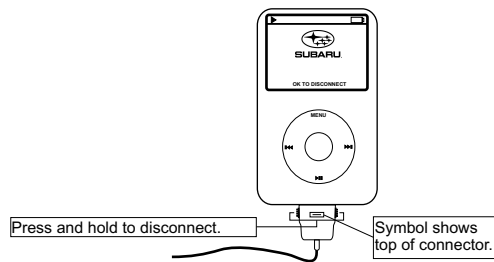


When the iPod is connected while playing, the selected content will continue to be played and next/previous track controls will work as expected. The "PRESELCTD" message will be displayed in the Category text field. When engaging the browse mode with the CATEGORY button, "PRESELCTD" is only shown until the user presses buttons 1-6 to confirm the desired Browse Mode.

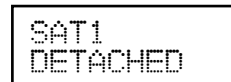


## Connecting and disconnecting the iPod

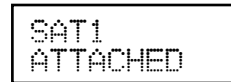
Before connecting your iPod, make sure all EQ settings on the iPod are set to default to avoid possible distortion. The buttons on the iPod are deactivated when connected to the Subaru iPod kit, and a Subaru logo will appear on the iPod's screen. To remove the iPod, simply disconnect the dock connector from the iPod.



When the iPod is disconnected, the "DETACHED" message will be displayed in the Title, Name and the Category text fields.



When the iPod is connected, the "ATTACHED" message will temporarily be displayed in the Title, Name and the Category text fields.

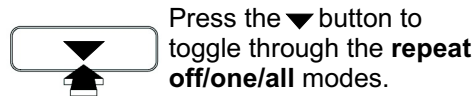
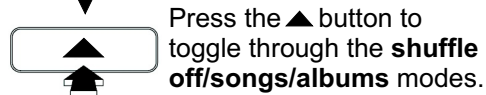
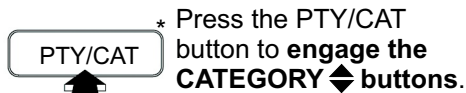
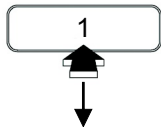




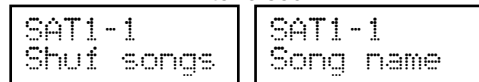
SUBARU.

### SHUFFLE / REPEAT MODE - PRESET 1

In this mode you can change Shuffle/Repeat options.

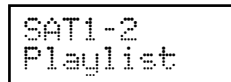
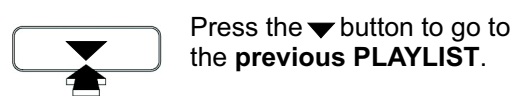
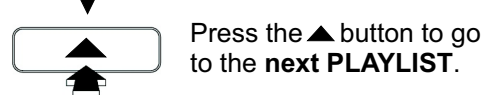
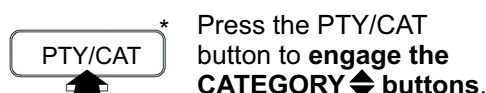
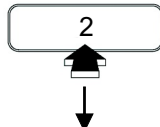


After 5 sec.



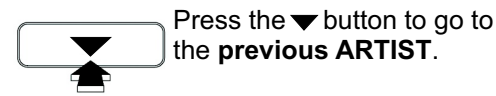
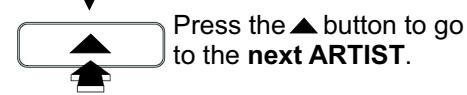
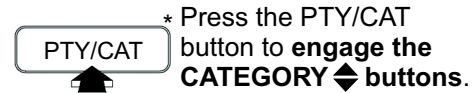
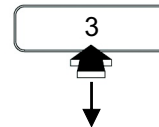
### PLAYLIST MODE - PRESET 2

In this mode, you can browse by Playlists.



### ARTIST MODE - PRESET 3

In this mode, you can browse by Artists in the selected Playlist! To reset this Mode go to Playlist Mode and select another Playlist.



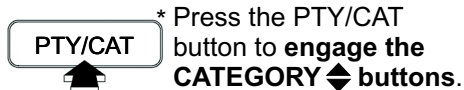
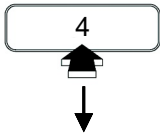
\* Category selection times out 5 second after the last button press.



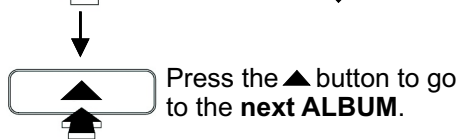
SUBARU.

### ALBUM MODE - PRESET 4

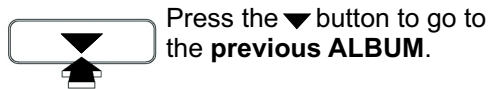
In this mode, you can browse by Albums within the selected Artist and within the selected Playlist. To reset this Mode go to Playlist/Artist Mode and select new content.



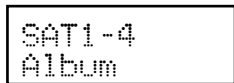
\* Press the PTY/CAT button to **engage the CATEGORY** buttons.



Press the button to go to the **next ALBUM**.

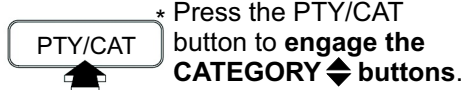
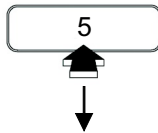


Press the button to go to the **previous ALBUM**.

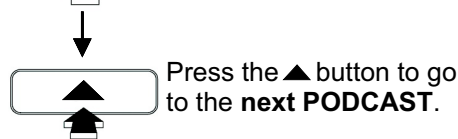


### PODCAST MODE - PRESET 5

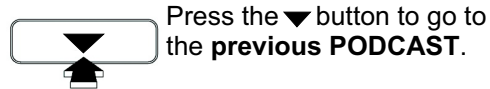
In this mode, you can browse by Podcasts.



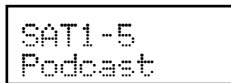
\* Press the PTY/CAT button to **engage the CATEGORY** buttons.



Press the button to go to the **next PODCAST**.

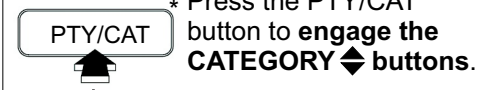
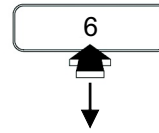


Press the button to go to the **previous PODCAST**.

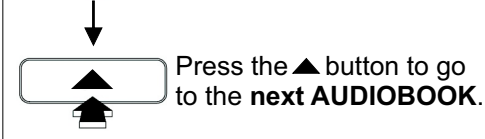


### AUDIOBOOK MODE - PRESET 6

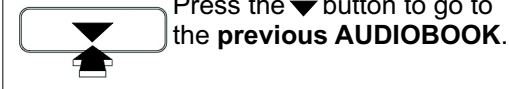
In this mode, you can browse by Audiobooks.



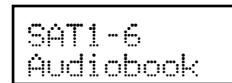
\* Press the PTY/CAT button to **engage the CATEGORY** buttons.



Press the button to go to the **next AUDIOBOOK**.



Press the button to go to the **previous AUDIOBOOK**.




\* Category selection times out 5 second after the last button press.

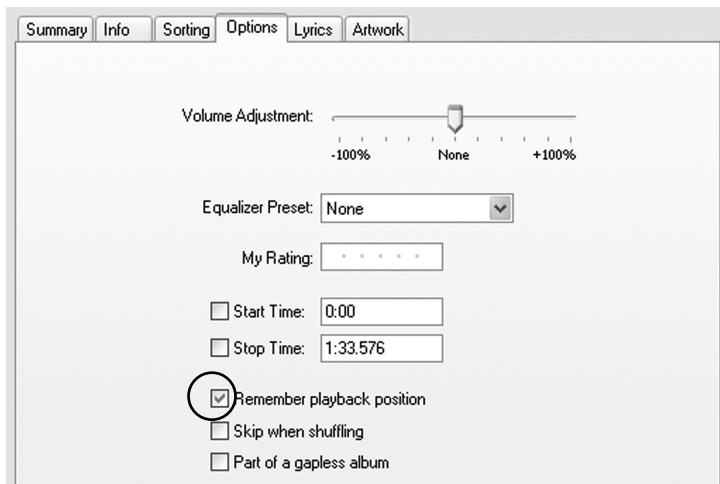


SUBARU.



## PODCASTS - PRESET 5

Podcasts by default “remember playback position,” and therefore will resume playback from where it was left off. You may change this setting under the Options tab of the iTunes song information screen (CTRL+I on a PC,  + I on a Mac).



Use the tune dial to go from one Episode to the other within the selected Podcast.



When there is no Podcast present on the iPod, the "No Podcast" message will be displayed.



## AUDIOBOOKS - PRESET 6

Audiobooks will always “remember playback position,” and this setting cannot be changed.

After connected to the radio, Chapters previously played on the iPod will resume playback where they were left off.

Use the tune dial to go from one Chapter to the other within the selected Audiobook.



When there is no Audiobook present on the iPod, the "No Audiobk" message will be displayed.



SUBARU.

### Scenario



Radio display shows "EMPTY/STOP" and no music plays.

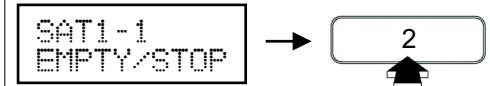
## Operation tips

### Recommended action



The iPod has reached the end of a playlist or there is no music contained within the currently selected Playlist. Please select a new Playlist using Preset 2.

### Illustration



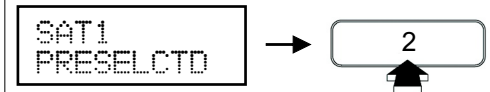
See page 8 for details.



Category reads "PRESELCTD".



When the iPod is connected to the interface, it will continue in it's current operating mode. To change the operating mode, please select a new Playlist.



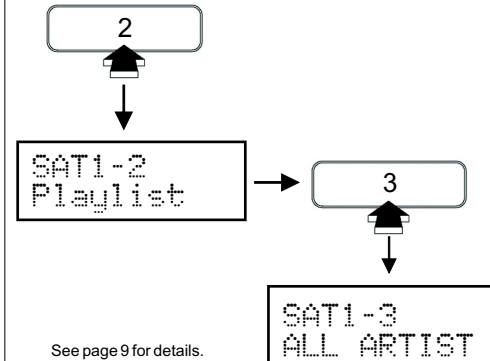
See pages 8 for details.



Not all Artist names are displayed.



When browsing by Artist, the iPod interface will list all artists within the current selected Playlist. If the Artist is not in the current Playlist, it will not be shown. To display "ALL ARTIST", please select the first Playlist in Preset 2, which contains all Songs on the iPod. This Playlist will have the same name as the iPod. You may then go directly to Preset 3, browse by Artist, and "ALL ARTIST" will be displayed.



See page 9 for details.





SUBARU.

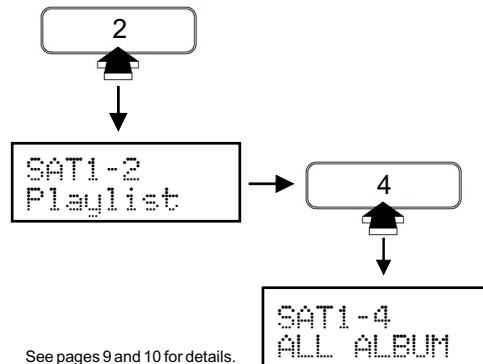


Not all Album names are displayed.



When browsing by Artist, the iPod interface will list all Albums by the selected Artist within the selected Playlist. To display all Albums, please select the first Playlist in Preset 2, which contains all music on the iPod. This Playlist will have the same name as the iPod. You may then go to Preset 4, and "ALL ALBUM" will be displayed.

You may also use the browsing hierarchy to speed up your Album/Artist search. See details below.



See pages 9 and 10 for details.

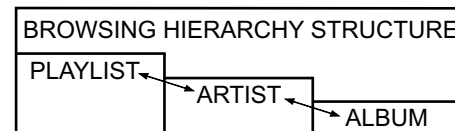


It takes too long to find a particular Artist/Album/Song.



Use the browsing hierarchy to speed your search. For Example: From Mode 2 (Playlist Mode), select the smallest Playlist containing the desired Song/Artist/Album. Then press Preset 3 (Artist Mode) and browse to the desired Artist. Use Tune/Track to move between Songs by the selected Artist. The search can be further narrowed by pushing Preset 4 (Album Mode) and then browsing through the Albums by the selected Artist.

Continued on page 14.



See page 3 for details.



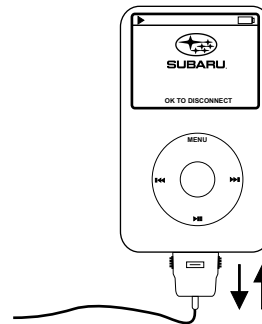
**SUBARU.**



Continued from previous page: It takes too long to find a particular Artist/Album/Song.



Use Tune/Track to move between Songs on the Album. To reset the browsing hierarchy, return to Playlist Mode and select another Playlist. Alternatively, you can disconnect the iPod, select the desired Artist/Album/Song and the interface will resume playing the selected Artist/Album/Song when it is reconnected to the dock connector. The iPod interface will work best with multiple Playlists. Please do not attempt browsing while the vehicle is in motion.



The Artist name is incorrect or not displayed.



To display properly, the text information must be contained within the music file on the iPod. Please verify that the text is included within the music file by checking either the iPod or iTunes.

Go to [www.apple.com](http://www.apple.com) or use your iTunes software.

See pages 3for details.



The Album name is incorrect or not displayed.



To display properly, the text information must be contained within the music file on the iPod. Please verify that the text is included within the music file by checking either the iPod or iTunes.

Go to [www.apple.com](http://www.apple.com) or use your iTunes software.

See pages 3 for details.



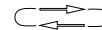
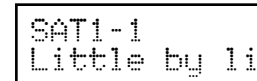
SUBARU.



The text is not scrolling.



Text scrolling only occurs for longer text strings. Only the first 24 ch. of a max. 240 is displayed in the Artist, Album, Title fields.



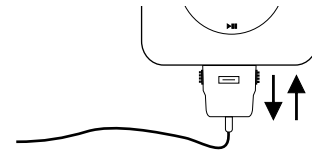
See page 6 for details.



The interface is not controlling the iPod.



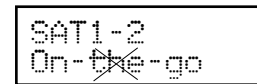
Please disconnect and reconnect the iPod. If operation does not resume, please reset the iPod.



Not all Playlists are listed when browsing by Playlists.



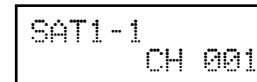
The iPod interface will ignore empty Playlists. The maximum elements within a Playlist is 65000.



SAT1 or Channel number (CH001) does not change.



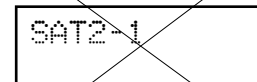
These fields are not used by the iPod interface and they remain constant.



SAT2 and SAT3 are not available.



These modes are not used by the iPod interface.



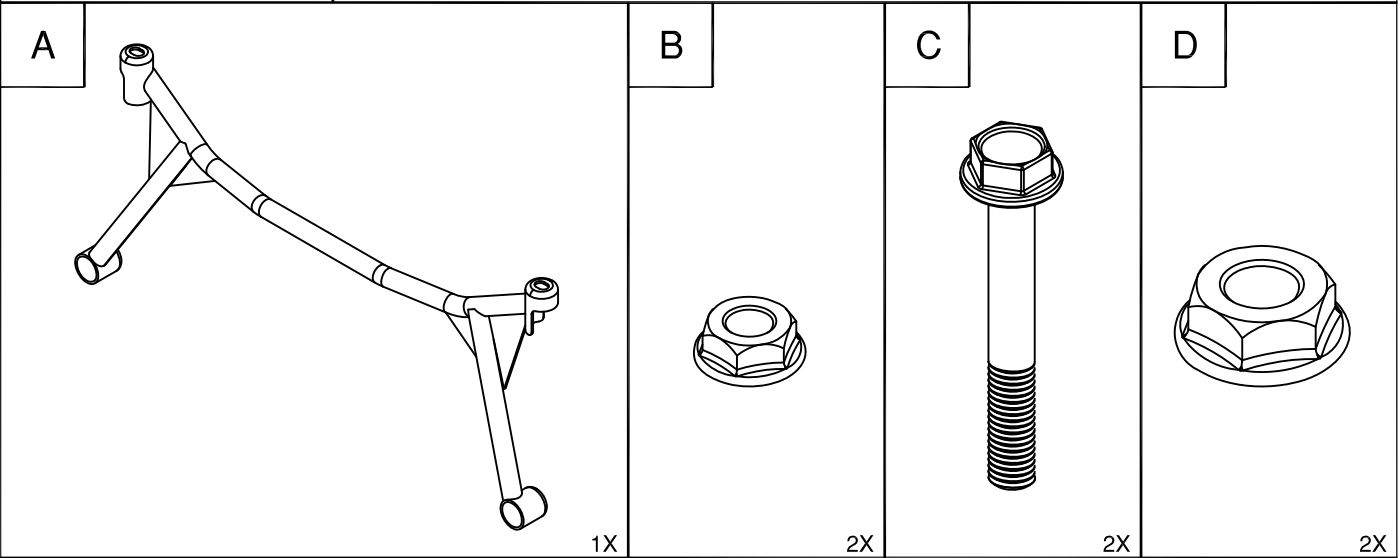


**IMPORTANT INFORMATION REGARDING  
YOUR SOA8431120, 08 IMPREZA WRX, 08  
IMPREZA WRX STI, 05-08 LEGACY 2.5GT,  
06-08 LEGACY SPEC B, AND 09 FORESTER  
XT SPT LOWER CHASSIS BRACE.**

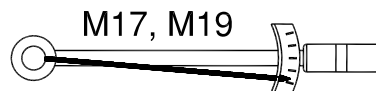
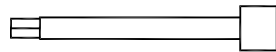
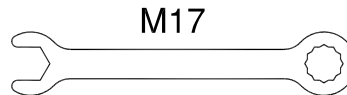
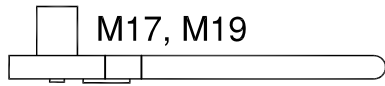
**“This part is covered by the Parts Only Limited  
Warranty for Select Genuine Subaru  
Performance Parts (Labor Excluded). Parts  
intended for off-highway application only. May  
bring vehicle out of compliance with  
safety/emissions standards. Can only be lawfully  
installed by end user. See dealer for complete  
warranty details.”**

## INSTALLATION INSTRUCTIONS

DESCRIPTION: SPT FRONT LOWER CHASSIS BRACE  
 08 IMPREZA WRX, 08 IMPREZA WRX STI, 05-08 LEGACY 2.5GT, 06-08 LEGACY SPEC B, AND 09 FORESTER XT



### TOOLS REQUIRED



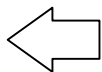
### Meaning of Characters:



:Remove

T

:Tightening Torque



:Install



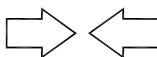
:Loosen



:Disconnect



:Discard



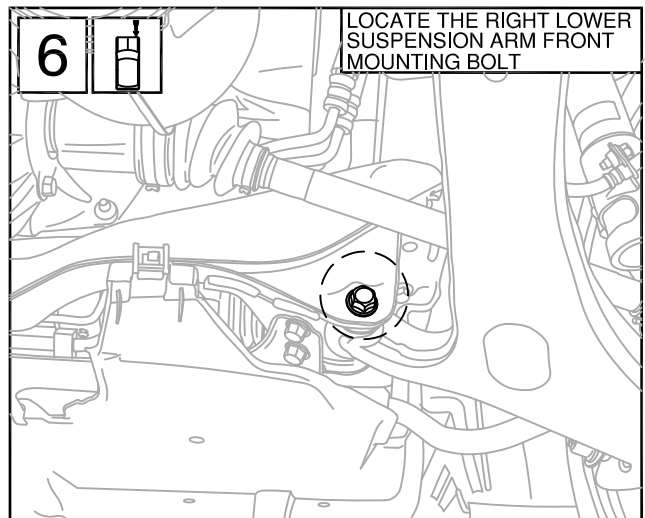
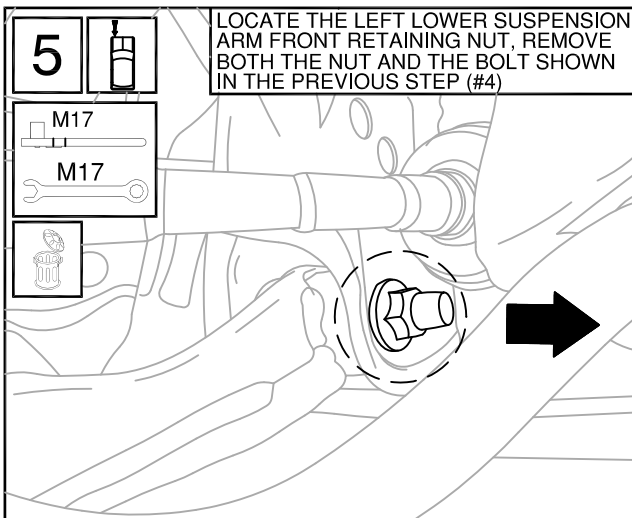
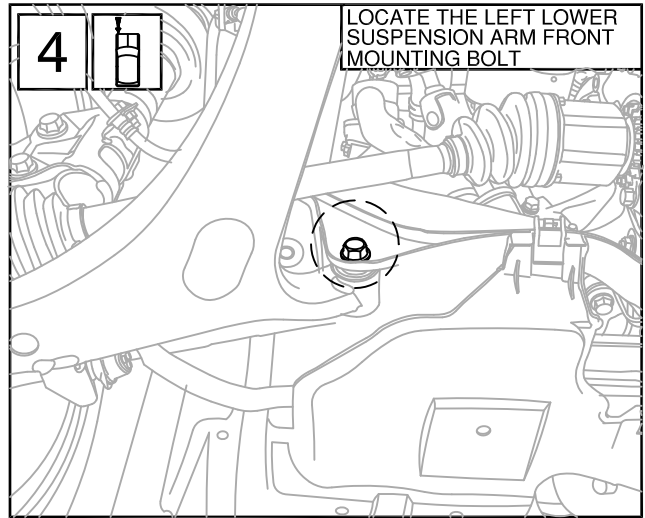
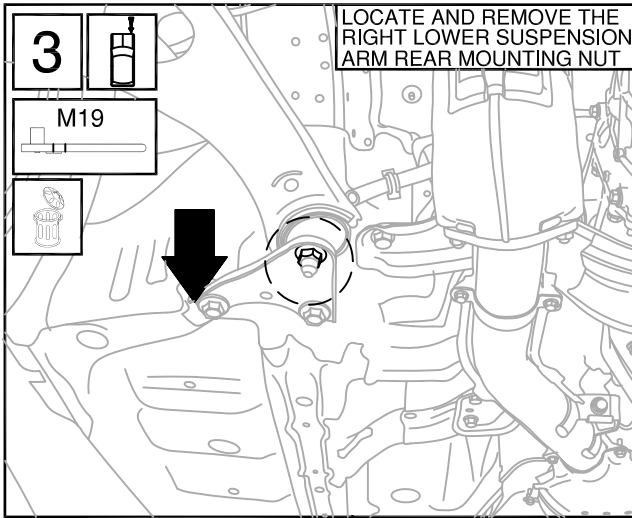
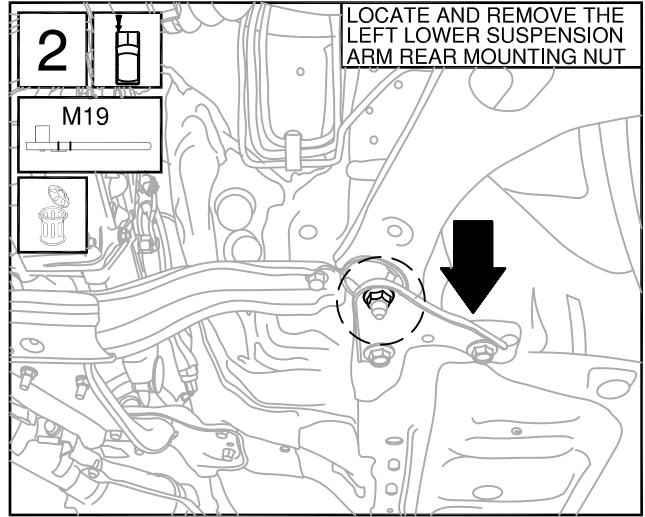
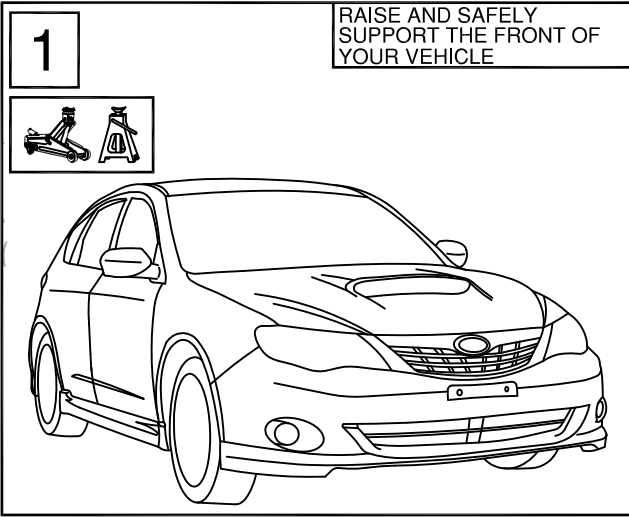
:Connect



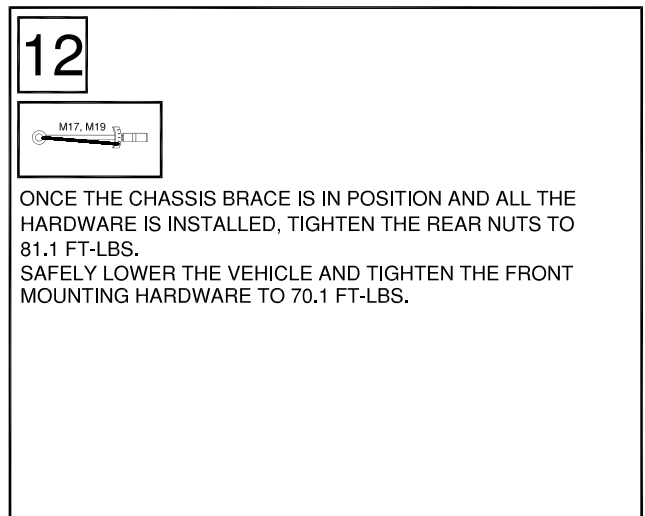
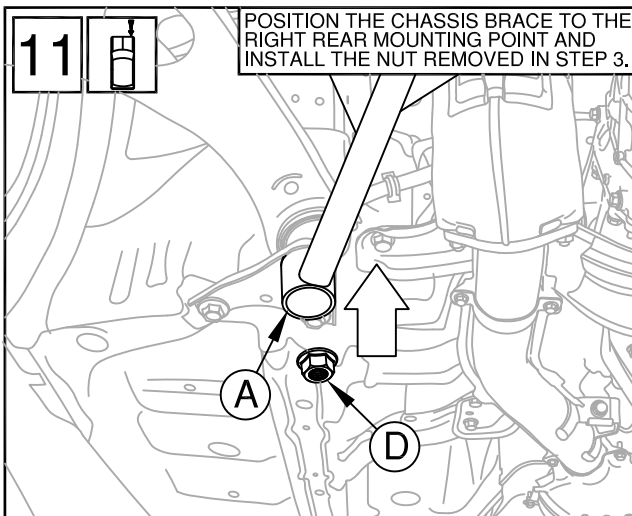
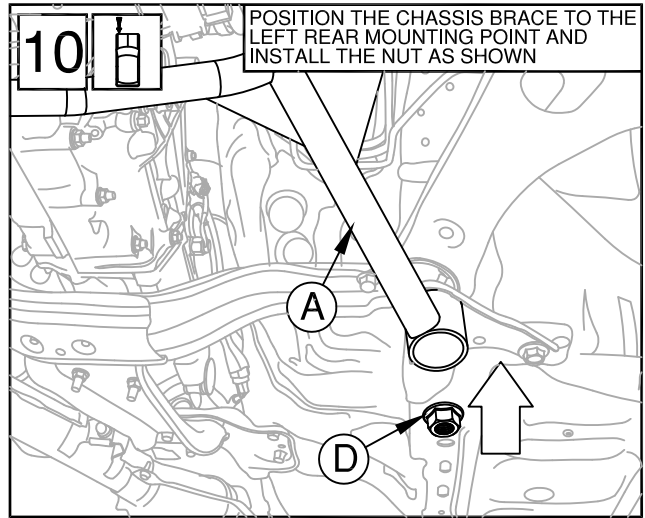
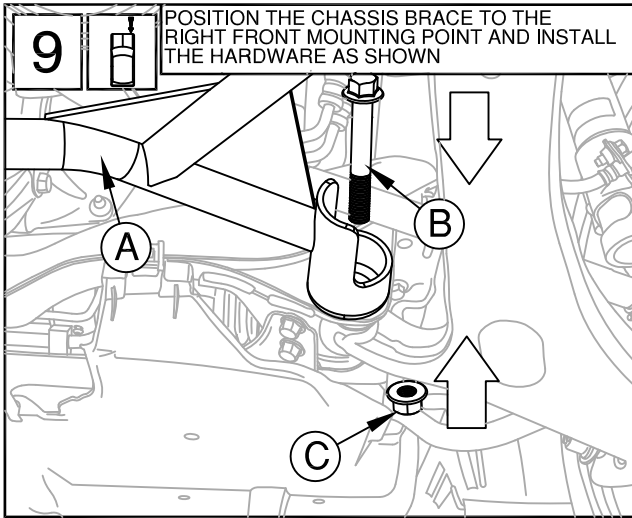
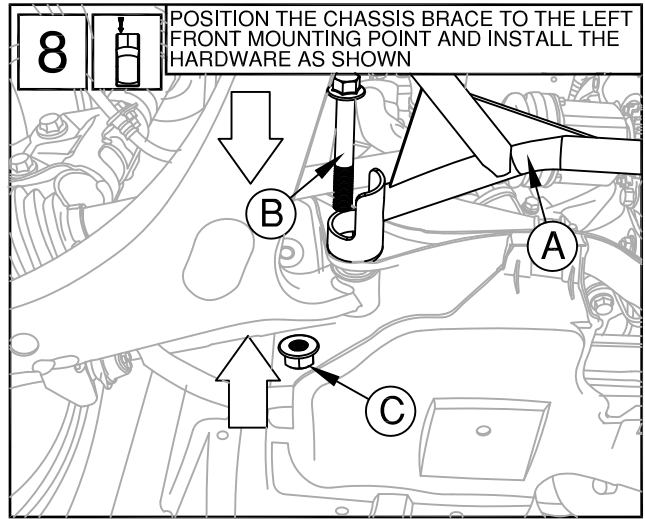
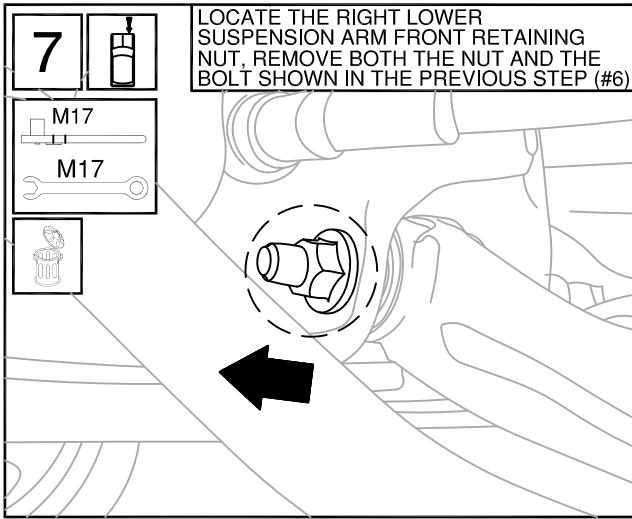
:Location of Clips or Screws



:Re-use



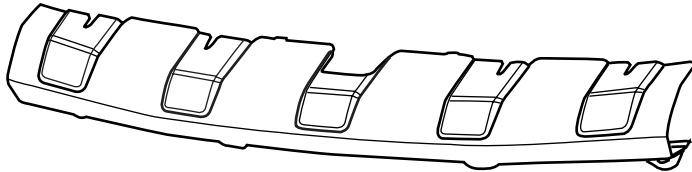




## INSTALLATION INSTRUCTION

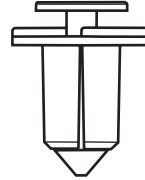
DESCRIPTION: Front Fascia

### A KIT CONTENTS:



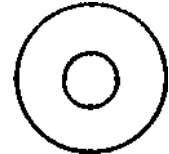
Front Fascia x1

### B



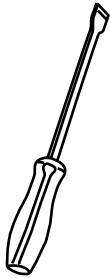
9mm Ratchet Fastener x2

### C



Flatwasher x2

### TOOLS REQUIRED:




Slotted  
Screwdriver

Installation  
Instructions


Installation Instructions x 1


### MEANING OF CHARACTERS:

 : Remove


 : Install


 : Disconnect

 : Connect

 : Location of Clip or Screw

**T** : Tighten Torque

 : Loosen

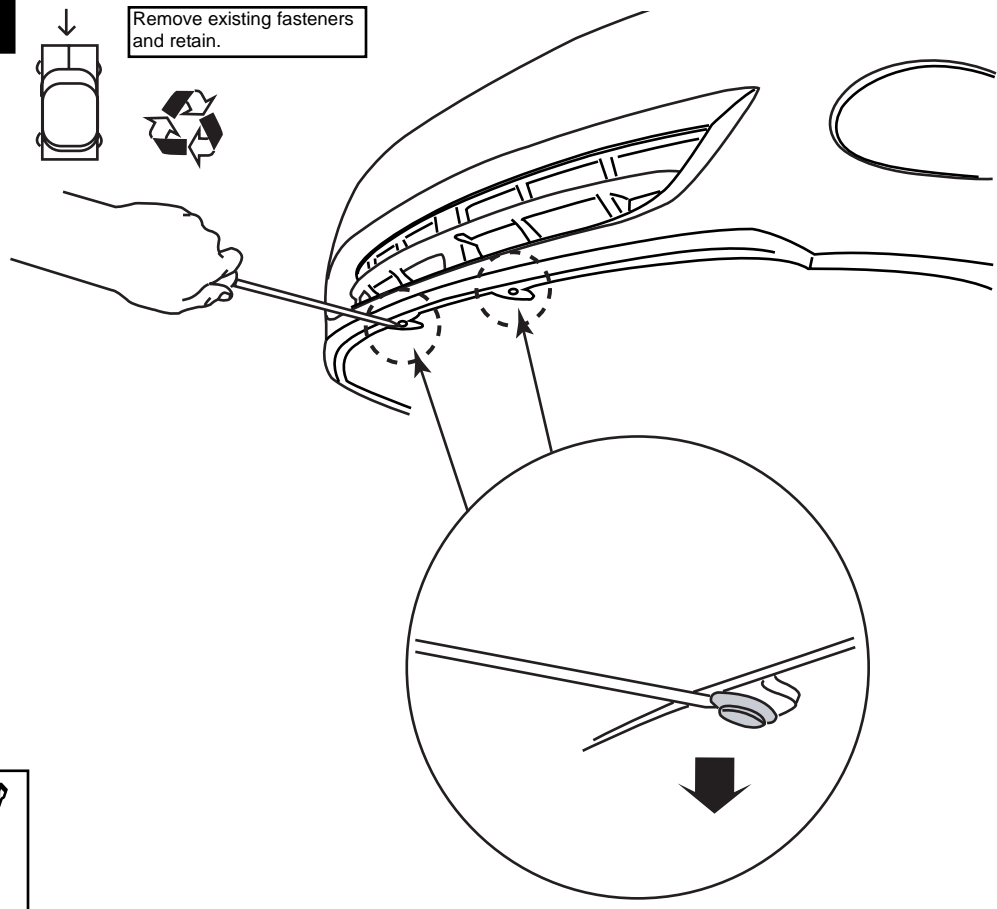
 : Discard

 : Re use

1



Remove existing fasteners and retain.



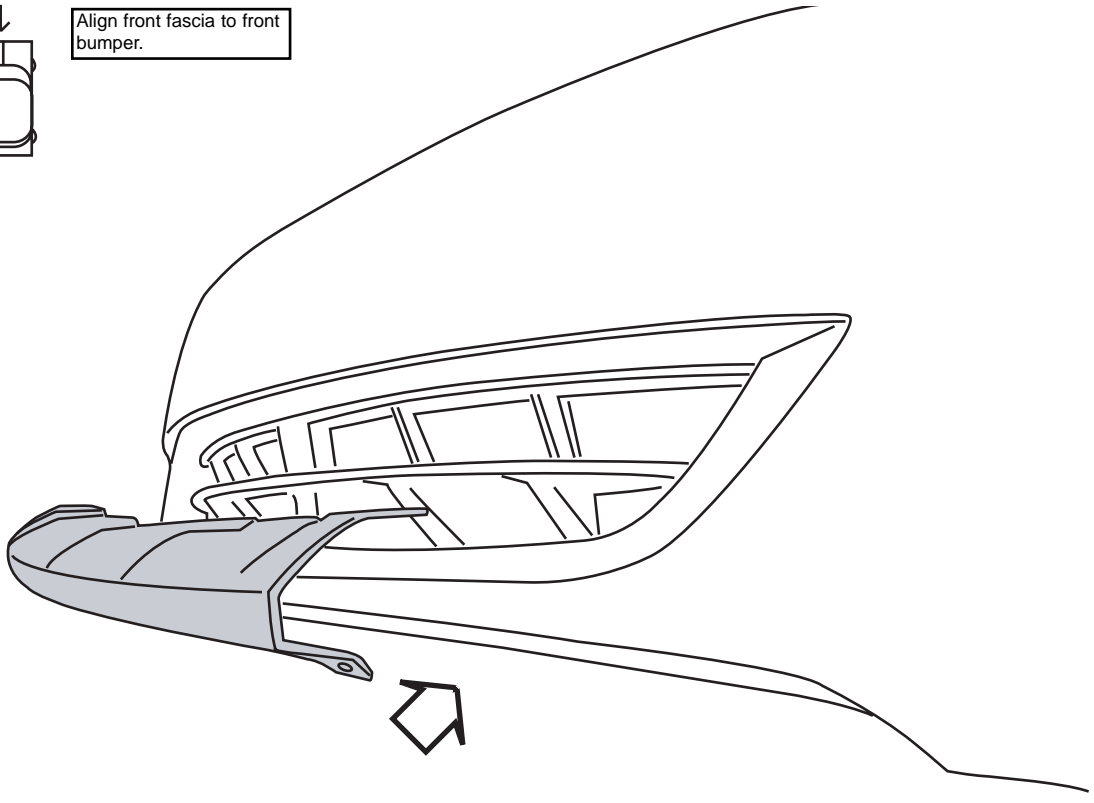
Before beginning, vehicle must be at room temperature. If the temperature is below 70°F (21°C) let vehicle sit indoors until the bumper is room temperature.



2



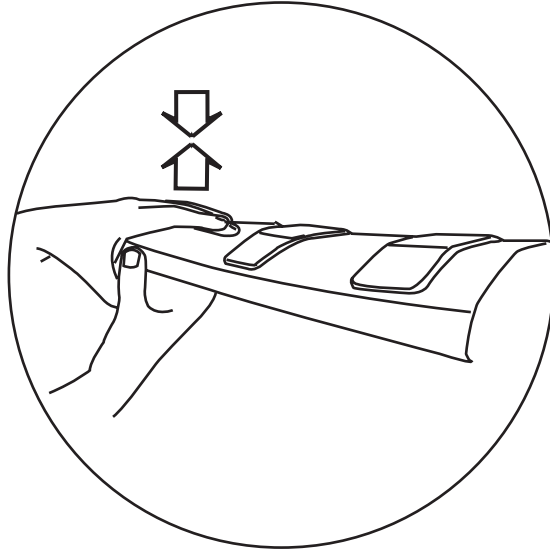
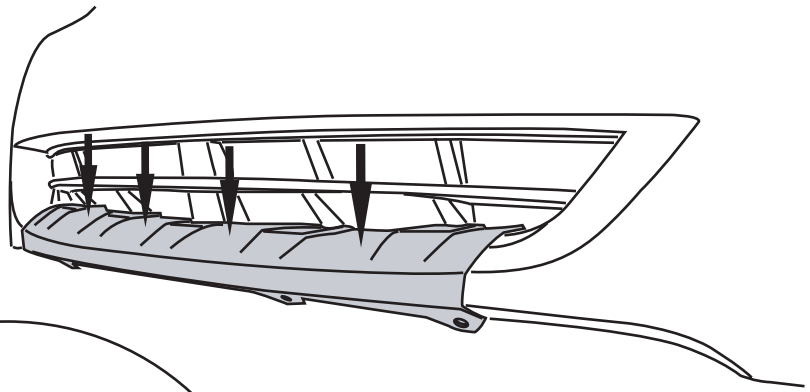
Align front fascia to front bumper.



3



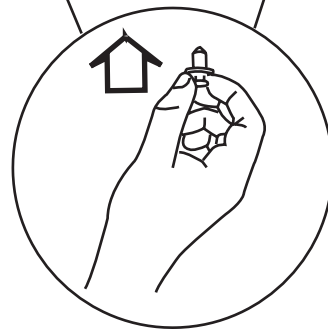
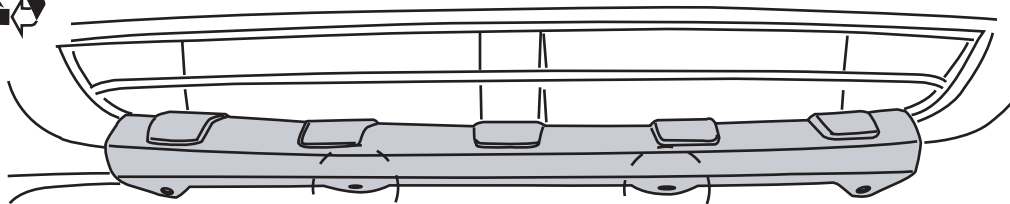
Snap fascia to bumper in 4 locations.  
Snap the 2 middle locations first.



4



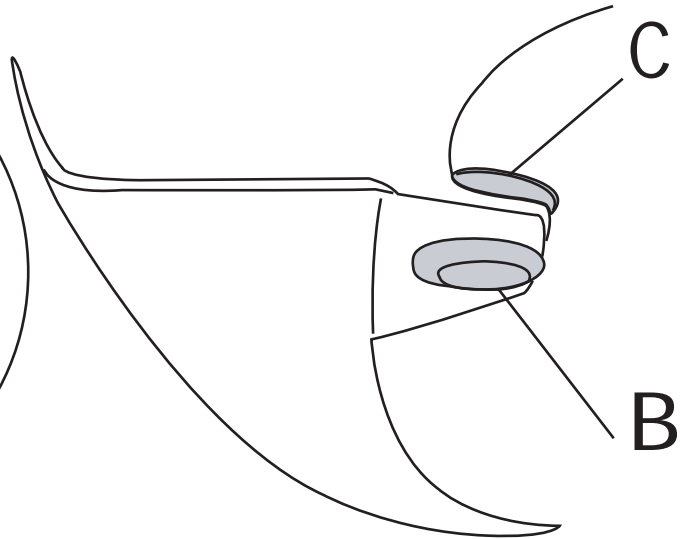
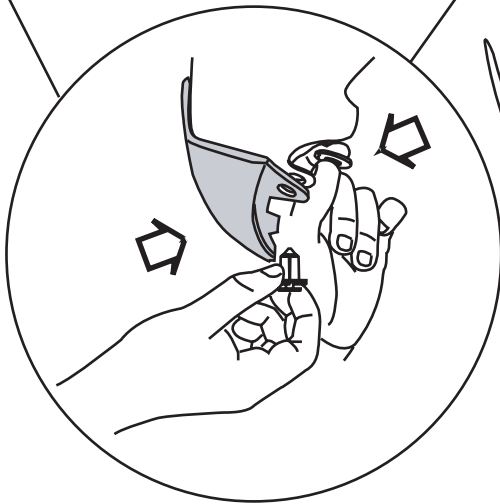
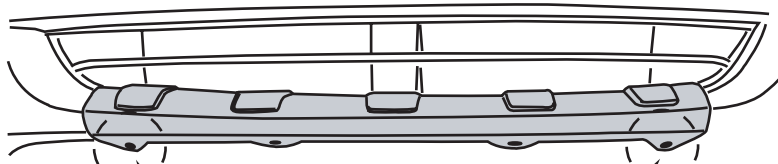
Insert retained fasteners.



5



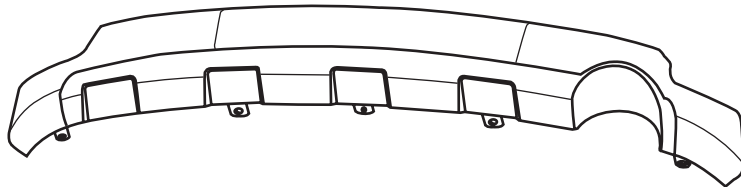
Connect washer and fastener together to join the fascia to the bumper



## INSTALLATION INSTRUCTION

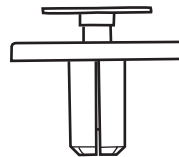
DESCRIPTION: REAR FASCIA

### A KIT CONTENTS:



Rear Fascia x1

### B



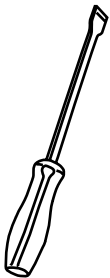
6mm Ratchet Fastener x3

### C



Alcohol Wipe x1

### TOOLS REQUIRED:




Slotted  
Screwdriver

Installation  
Instructions


Installation Instructions x 1


### MEANING OF CHARACTERS:

 : Remove


 : Install


 : Disconnect

 : Connect

 : Location of Clip or Screw

**T** : Tighten Torque

 : Loosen

 : Discard

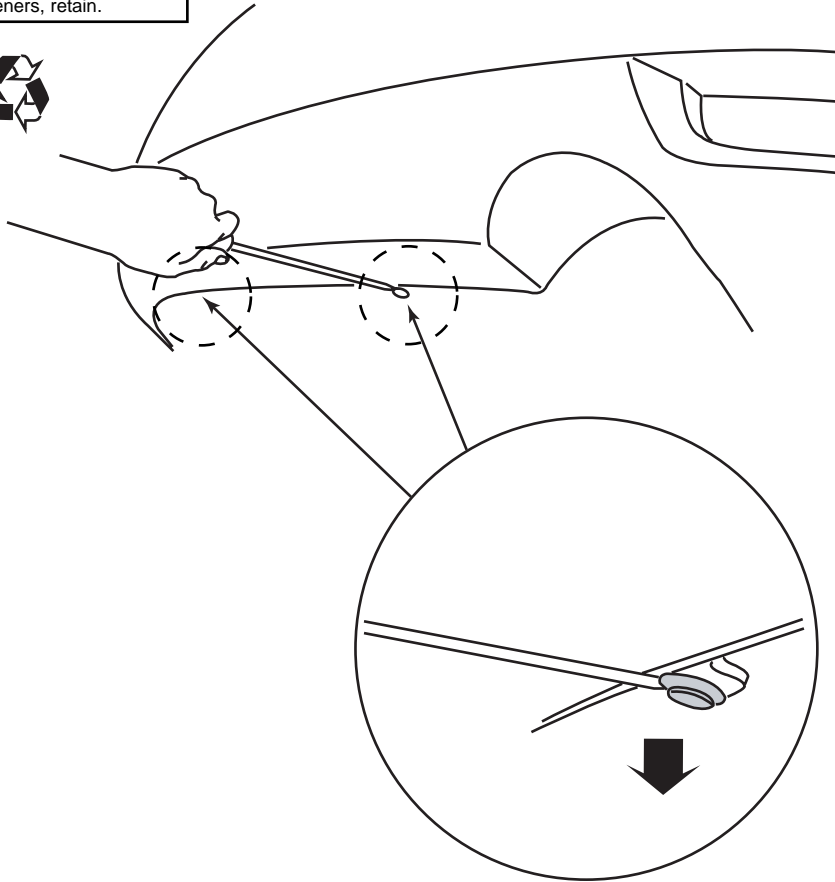
 : Re use



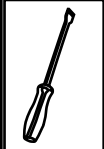
1



Remove existing 2 ratchet fasteners, retain.



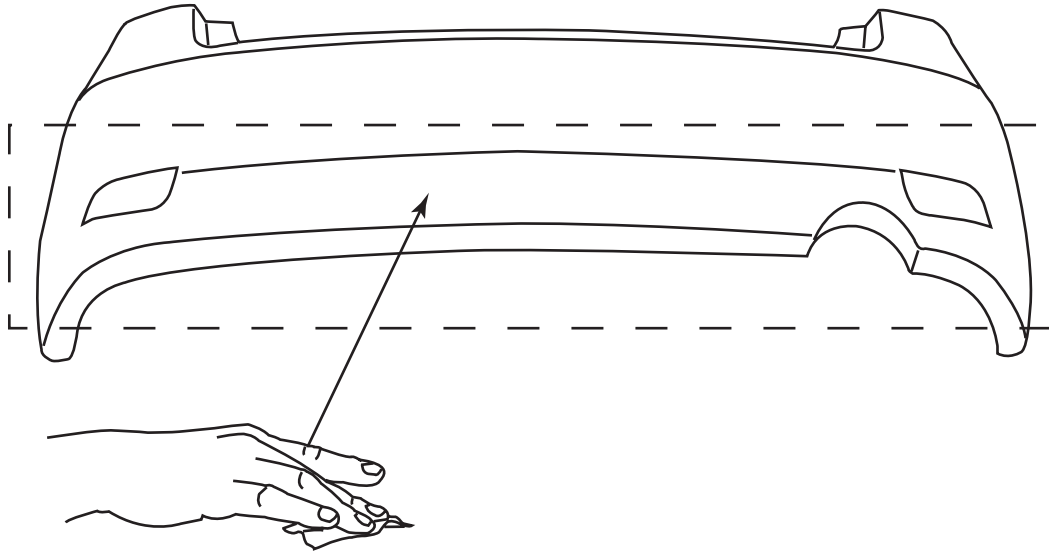
Before beginning, vehicle must be at room temperature. If the temperature is below 70°F (21°C) let vehicle sit indoors until the bumper is room temperature.



2



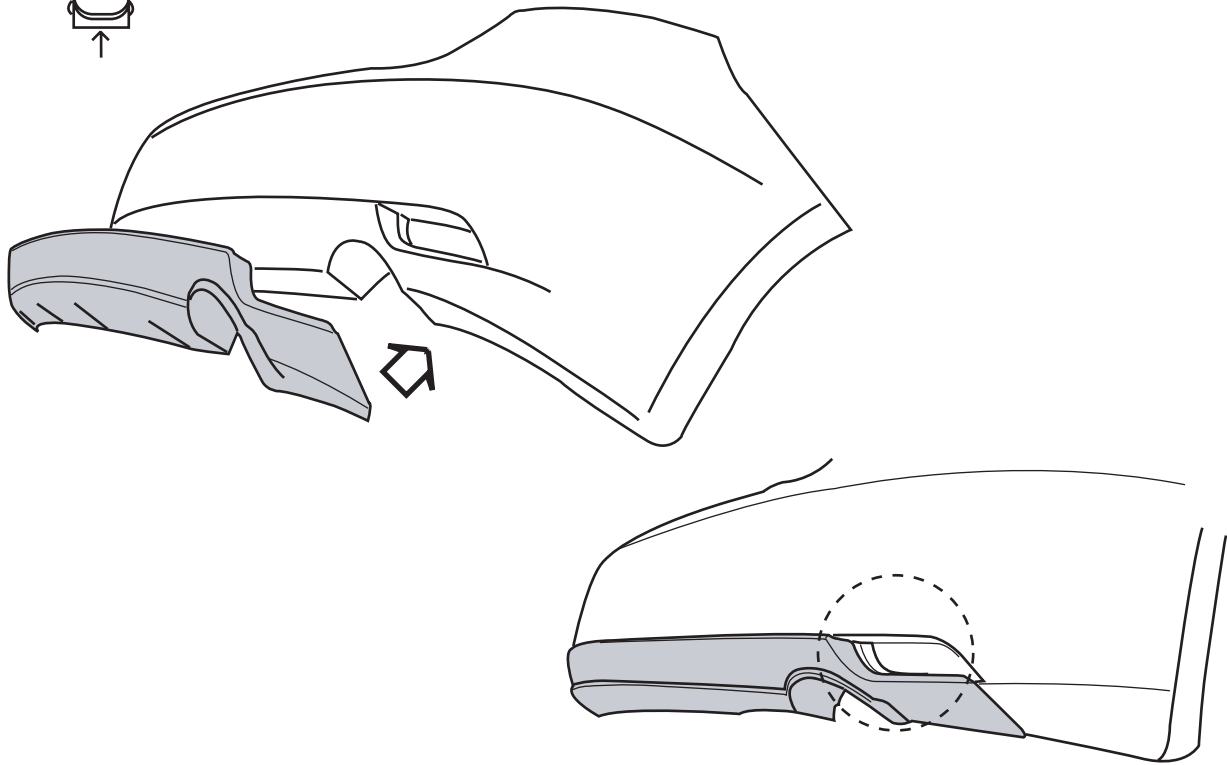
Wipe area with alcohol wipe.



3



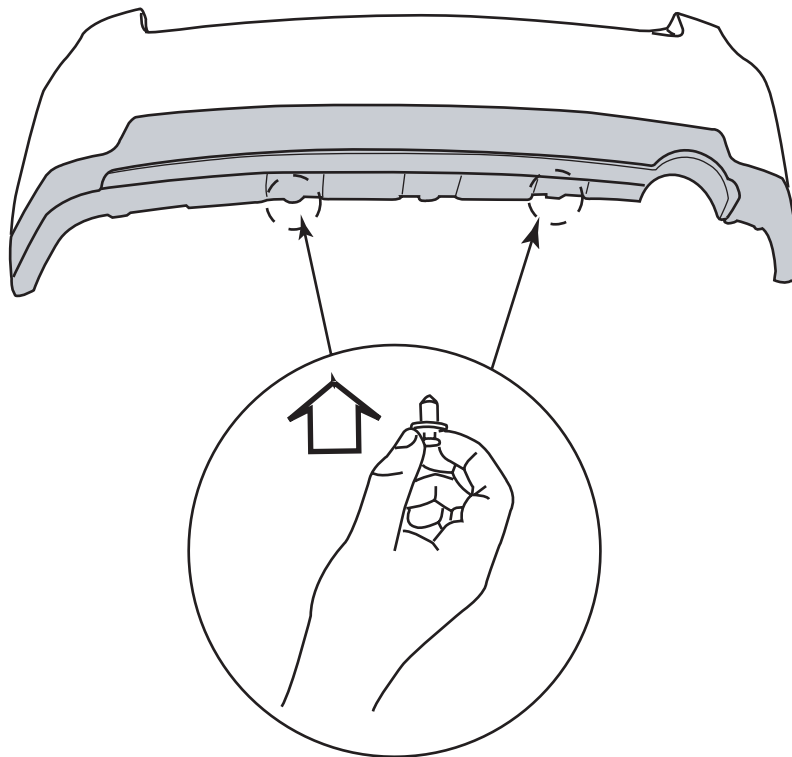
Align rear fascia to rear bumper.



4



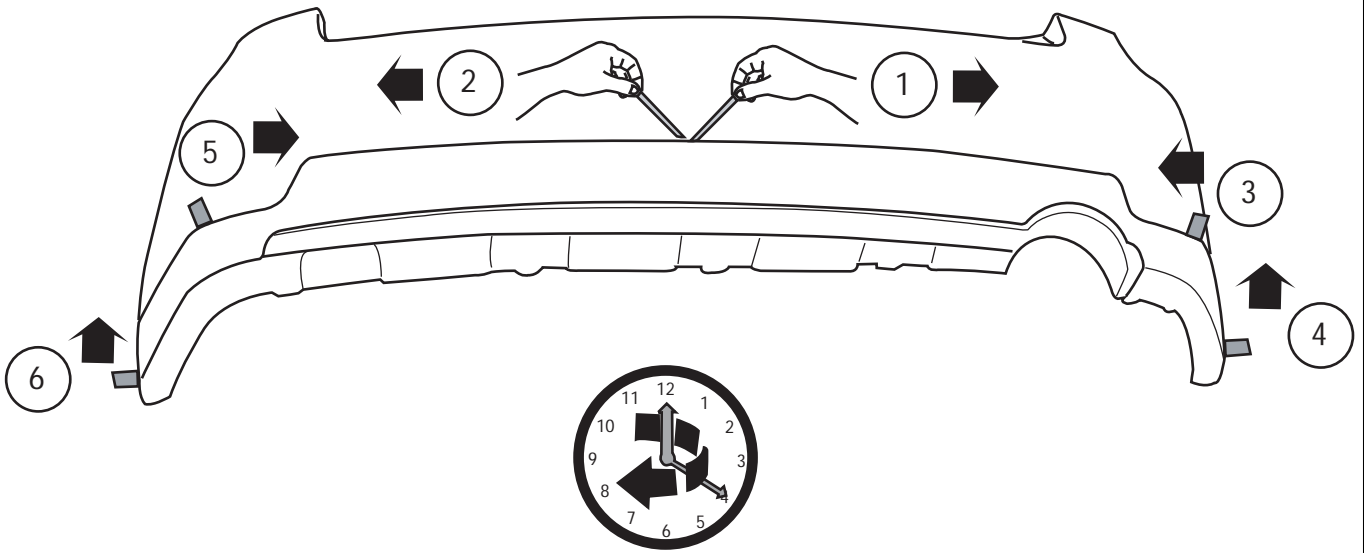
Insert kept 2 ratchet fasteners



5



Remove tape tabs in order as per illustration. Apply pressure of 12 pounds over entire surface of part for 10 seconds during removal of tape.

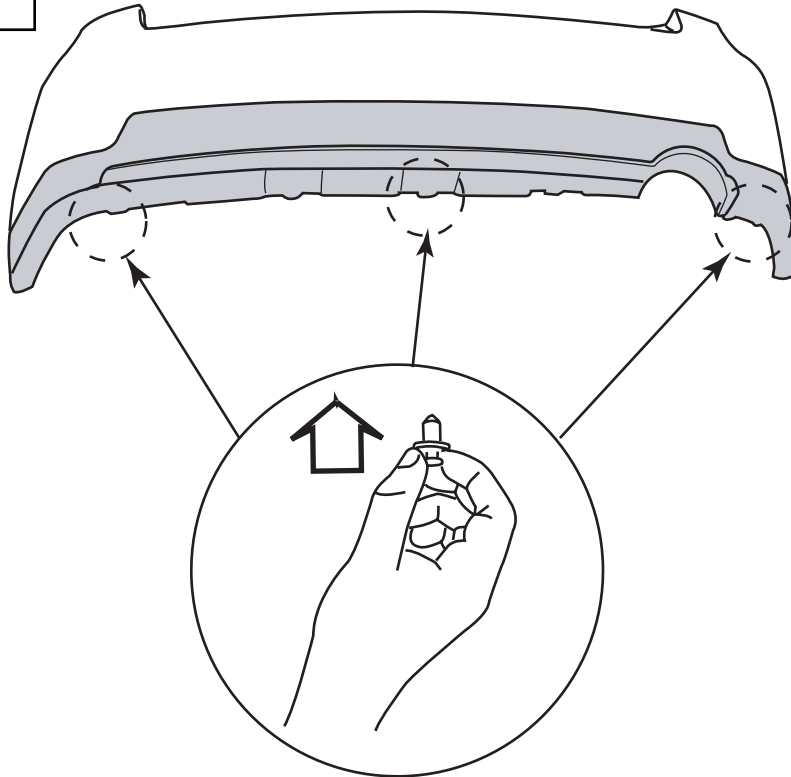


10 seconds

6



Instal provided 3 ratchet fasteners.





PART NUMBER : H7110FG000 , H7110FG010

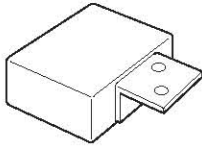
# INSTALLATION INSTRUCTIONS

DESCRIPTION : SECURITY SYSTEM UPGRADE BLK , SECURITY SYSTEM UPGRADE

APPLICATION : IMPREZA

## KIT CONTENTS :

**A**



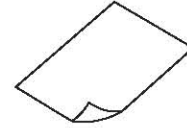
Shock Sensor Module with Integral Bracket

1X



Bolt

1X



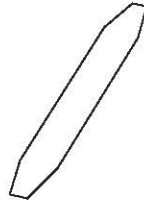
Installation Manual

1X

## TOOLS REQUIRED :



Torque Wrench



Nylon Trim Removal Tool



1/4" Drive Ratchet



Extension



10mm Socket

## MEANING OF CHARACTERS :



: Remove



: Install



: Disconnect



: Connect



: Location of Clip or Screw

T

: Tightening Torque



: Loosen



: Discard

## NOTE :

This device complies with FCC rules part 15. Operation is subject to the following two conditions: (1) this device may not cause harmful interference and (2) this device must accept any interference that may cause undesired operation.

This product should be installed by a trained technician at a Subaru Dealership if you decide to install this product it must be activated by a trained technician at a Subaru Dealership utilizing a Subaru Select Monitor. The perimeter alarm (shock sensor) will not function until and unless it is activated.

PART NUMBER  
H7110FG000  
H7110FG010

ISSUE  
01

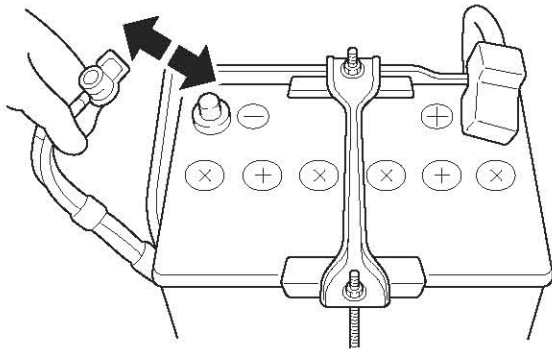
DATE  
06/2007

SUBARU OF AMERICA

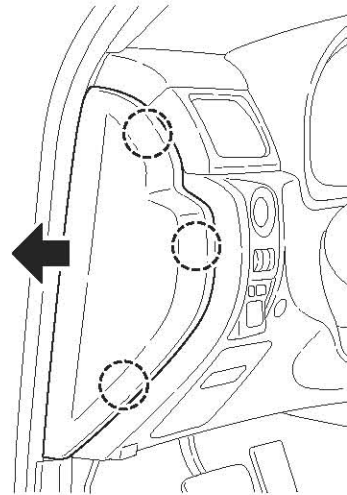
PAGE  
1/2

**NOTE : Installation of each part is in the reverse order of removal.**

**1**

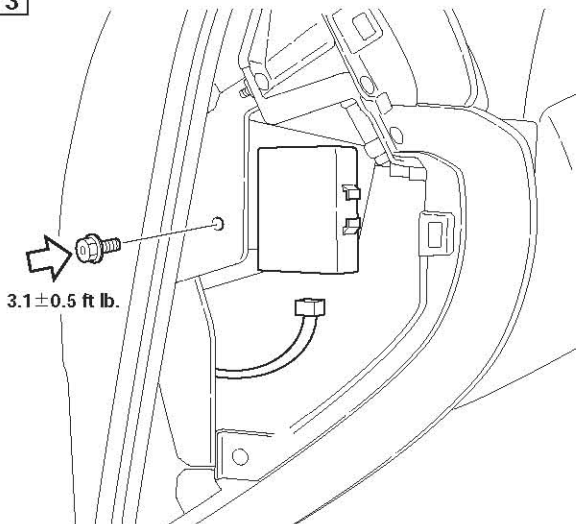


**2**

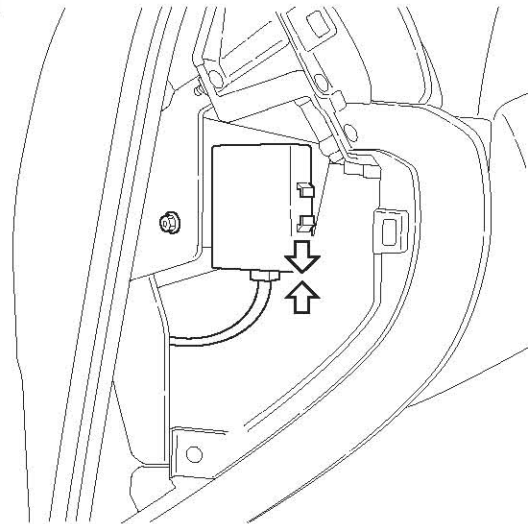


Using nylon trim removal tool, carefully remove driver's side trim panel.

**3**



**4**



### Notes on System Operation

1. Please refer to vehicle owner's manual for detail System Function and Test Information.
2. Impact Sensor set up procedure. (Subaru Select Monitor required)
  - a. Select "Subaru Vehicle"
  - b. Select "System Check"
  - c. Select "Integrated Unit"
  - d. Select "Customizing"
  - e. Select "Impact Sensor" and change to "ON"
  - f. Select "Impact Sensor Setup" and change to "ON"Note: Sensitivity can be adjusted using the vehicle's navigation display (if equipped).
3. The Impact Sensor has two levels, warning and alarm. In warning mode (light impact) the alarm will not trigger but instead will give two horn chirps and two light flashes. This is a feature of the system and is not to be regarded as a malfunction. Only in alarm mode (heavy impact) will be triggered. Please check that the impact sensor is functioning by applying light & heavy shocks.

Note: The impact sensor module is also equipped with a tilt sensor. The vehicle's alarm will sound if the vehicle tilts, such as when being towed away.

PART NUMBER  
H7110FG000  
H7110FG010

ISSUE  
01

DATE  
06/2007

SUBARU OF AMERICA

PAGE  
2/2



**INSTALLATION  
INSTRUCTIONS**

PART NUMBER:

**H711SAG400**

DESCRIPTION:

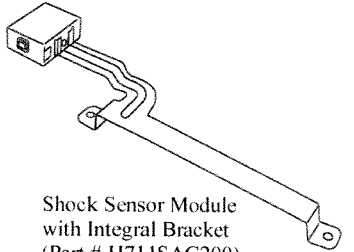
SECURITY SYSTEM MOUNTING KIT

APPLICATION:

**LEGACY**

**KIT CONTENTS:**

**A**



Shock Sensor Module  
with Integral Bracket  
(Part # H711SAG200)  
Not included in this kit

1X

**B**



M6 Flange Nut  
(for use on 2009MY  
Legacy Vehicles)

2X

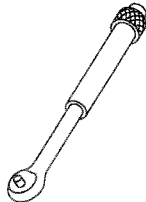


Installation Manual

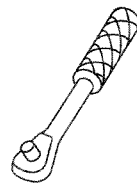
1X

Y0328

**TOOLS REQUIRED:**



Torque Wrench



1/4" Drive Ratchet



10mm Socket

Y0329

**MEANING OF CHARACTERS:**



: Remove



: Install



: Disconnect



: Connect



: Location of Clip or Screw

T

: Tightening Torque



: Loosen



: Discard

Y0119

**NOTE:**

This device complies with FCC rules part 15. Operation is subject to the following two conditions: (1) this device may not cause harmful interference and (2) this device must accept any interference that may cause undesired operation.

This product should be installed by a trained technician at a Subaru Dealership. If you decide to install this product it must be activated by a trained technician at a Subaru Dealership utilizing a Subaru Select Monitor. The perimeter alarm (shock sensor) will not function until and unless it is activated.

PART NUMBER  
H711SAG400

ISSUE  
01

DATE  
02/2008

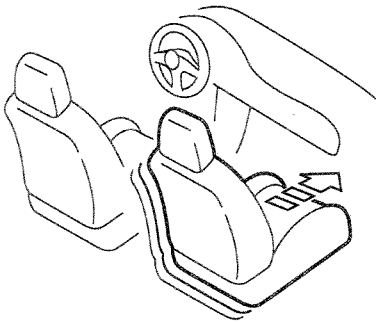
SUBARU OF AMERICA

PAGE  
1/2



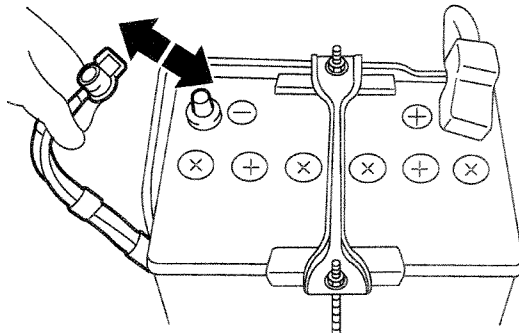
NOTE: Installation of each part is in the reverse order of removal.

1



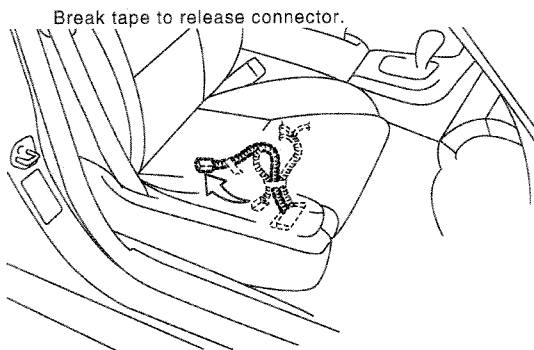
Y0277

2



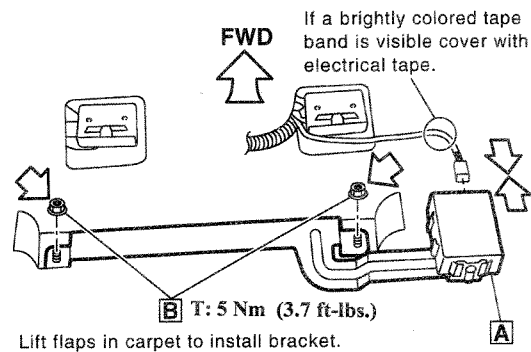
Y0002

3



Y0278

4



Y0330

### Notes on System Operation

1. Please refer to vehicle owner's manual for detail System Function and Test Information.
2. Impact Sensor set up procedure. (Subaru Select Monitor required)
  - a. Select "Vehicle Integrated Unit" // "Unit customize"
  - b. Select "Impact Sensor equipage" and choose "ON" state.
  - c. Select "Impact Sensor activation" and choose "ON" state.
3. The Impact Sensor has two levels, warning and alarm. In warning mode (light impact) the alarm will not trigger but instead will give two horn chirps and two light flashes. This is a feature of the system and is not to be regarded as a malfunction. Only in alarm mode (heavy impact) will be triggered. Please check that the impact sensor is functioning by applying light & heavy shocks.



# INSTALLATION INSTRUCTIONS

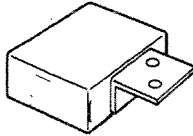
PART NUMBER : H7110FG000 , H7110FG000

DESCRIPTION : SECURITY SYSTEM UPGRADE BLK , SECURITY SYSTEM UPGRADE

APPLICATION : IMPREZA

## KIT CONTENTS :

**A**



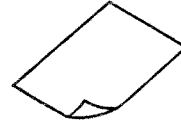
Shock Sensor Module with Integral Bracket

1X



Bolt

1X



Installation Manual

1X

## TOOLS REQUIRED :



Torque Wrench



Nylon Trim Removal Tool



1/4" Drive Ratchet



Extension



10mm Socket

## MEANING OF CHARACTERS :



: Remove



: Install



: Disconnect



: Connect



: Location of Clip or Screw

T

: Tightening Torque



: Loosen



: Discard

## NOTE :

This device complies with FCC rules part 15. Operation is subject to the following two conditions: (1) this device may not cause harmful interference and (2) this device must accept any interference that may cause undesired operation.

This product should be installed by a trained technician at a Subaru Dealership, if you decide to install this product it must be activated by a trained technician at a Subaru Dealership utilizing a Subaru Select Monitor. The perimeter alarm (shock sensor) will not function until and unless it is activated.

PART NUMBER  
H7110FG000  
H7110FG010

ISSUE  
01

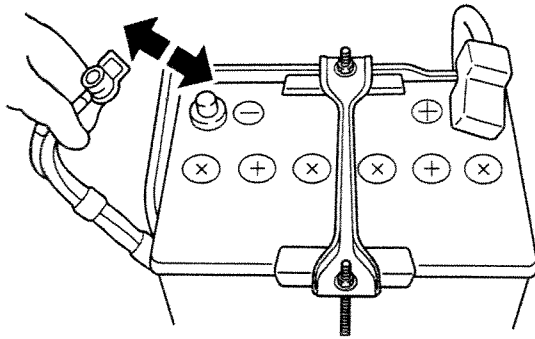
DATE  
06/2007

SUBARU OF AMERICA

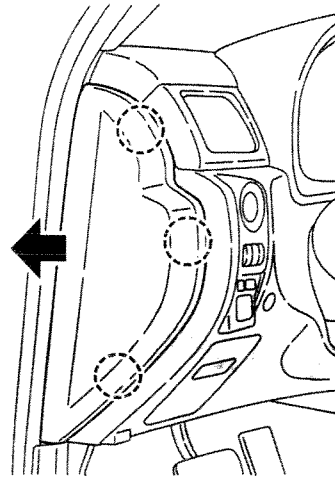
PAGE  
1/2

**NOTE :** Installation of each part is in the reverse order of removal.

**1**

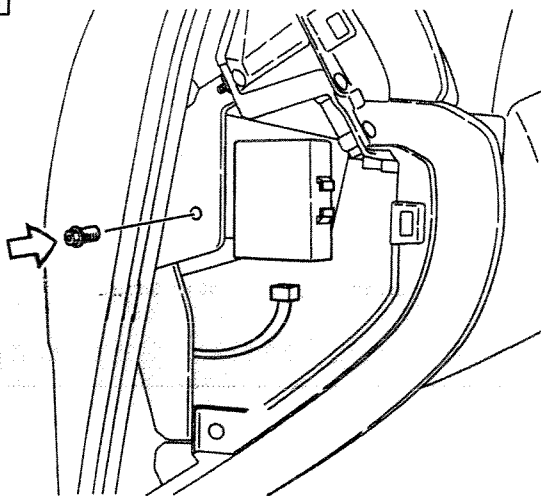


**2**

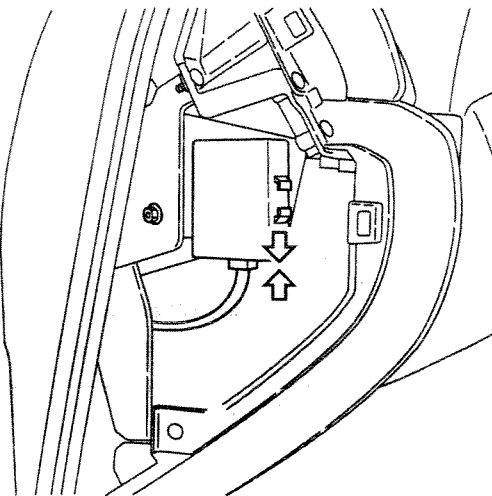


Using nylon trim removal tool, carefully remove driver's side trim panel.

**3**



**4**



### Notes on System Operation

1. Please refer to vehicle owner's manual for detail System Function and Test Information.
2. Impact Sensor set up procedure. (Subaru Select Monitor required)
  - a. Select "Subaru Vehicle"
  - b. Select "System Check"
  - c. Select "Integrated Unit"
  - d. Select "Customizing"
  - e. Select "Impact Sensor" and change to "ON"
  - f. Select "Impact Sensor Setup" and change to "ON"Note: Sensitivity can be adjusted using the vehicle's navigation display (if equipped).
3. The Impact Sensor has two levels, warning and alarm. In warning mode (light impact) the alarm will not trigger but instead will give two horn chirps and two light flashes. This is a feature of the system and is not to be regarded as a malfunction. Only in alarm mode (heavy impact) will be triggered. Please check that the impact sensor is functioning by applying light & heavy shocks.

Note: The impact sensor module is also equipped with a tilt sensor. The vehicle's alarm will sound if the vehicle tilts, such as when being towed away.

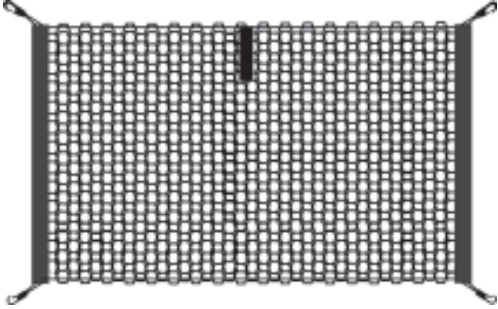
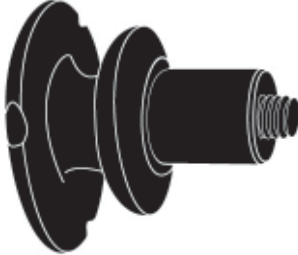

PART NUMBER  
H7110FG000  
H7110FG010

ISSUE  
01

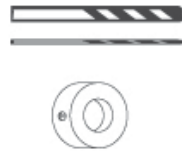
DATE  
06/2007

SUBARU OF AMERICA

PAGE  
2/2













A	<b>KIT CONTENTS:</b>	B	<b>2x</b>	C	<b>2x</b>
					

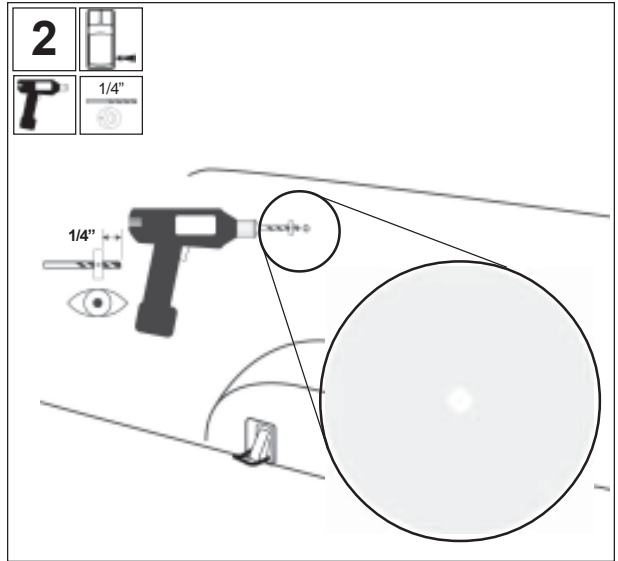
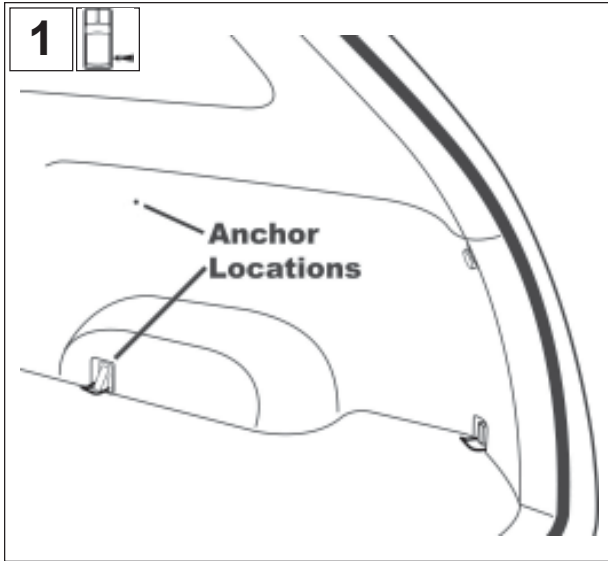
**TOOLS REQUIRED:**



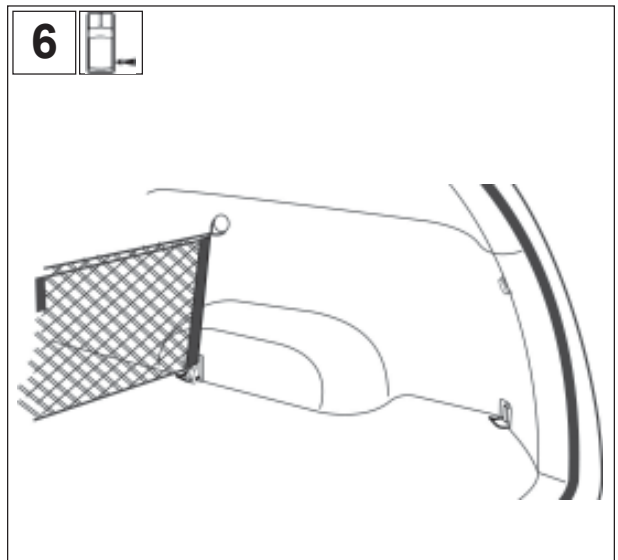
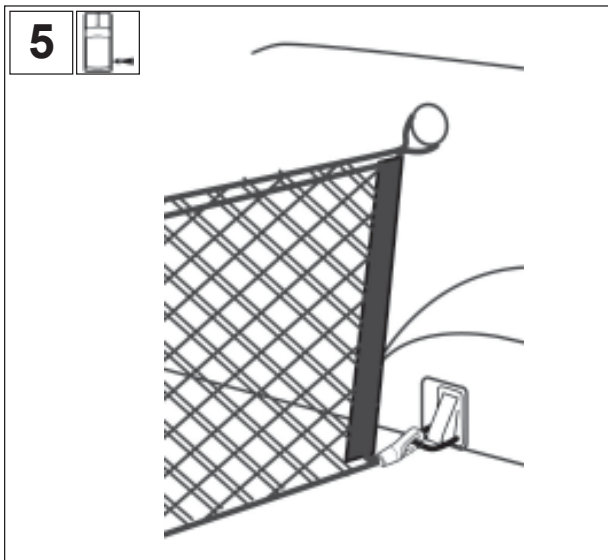
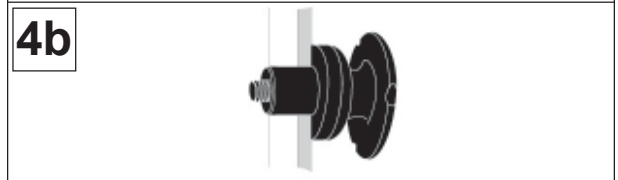
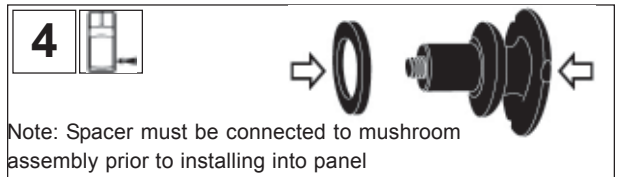
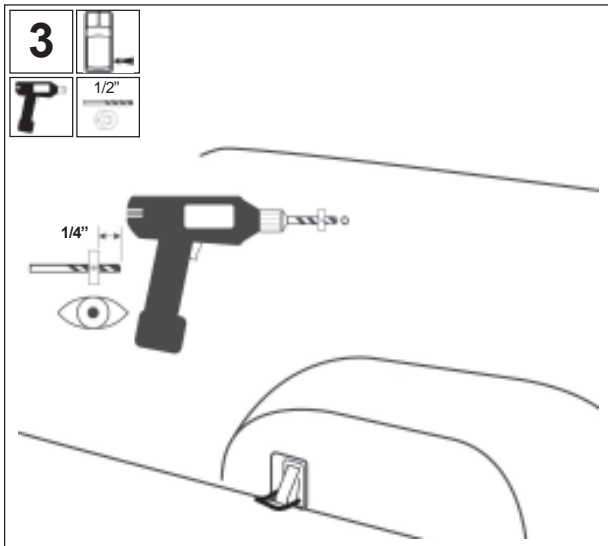
1/2" Drill Bit  
1/4" Drill Bit  
Drill Stop

**Meaning of Characters:**

-  : Remove
-  : Install
-  : Disconnect
-  : Connect
-  : Location of pre-arranged mark
-  : Driver side rear cargo area
-  : Passenger side rear cargo area
-  : Tightening Torque
-  : Loosen
-  : Discard
-  : Recyclable
-  : View



Note: Look for dimpled, untextured area.



Note: Installation is identical for opposite side of vehicle.



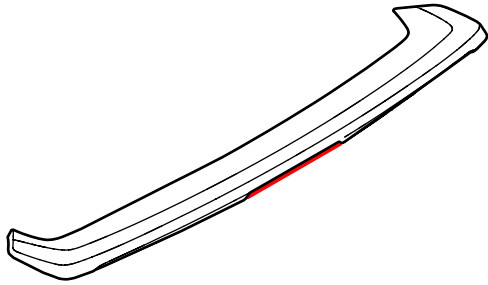
PART NUMBER : E721SFG000XX

# INSTALLATION INSTRUCTIONS

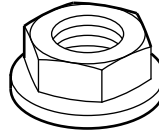
DESCRIPTION : IMPREZA

REAR SPOILER ASSY

## A KIT CONTENTS

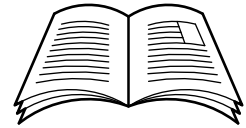


## B



5X

## C



1X

## D

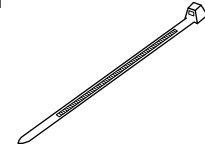


1X RH



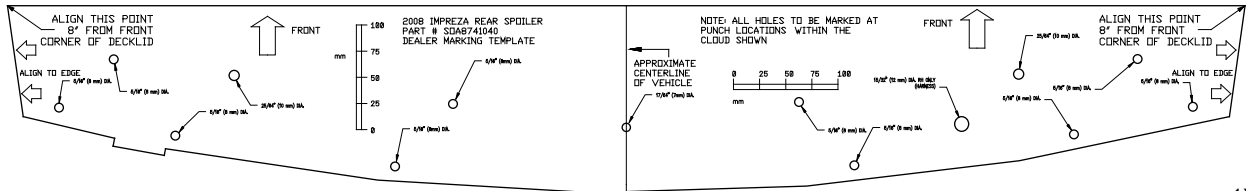
1X LH

## E



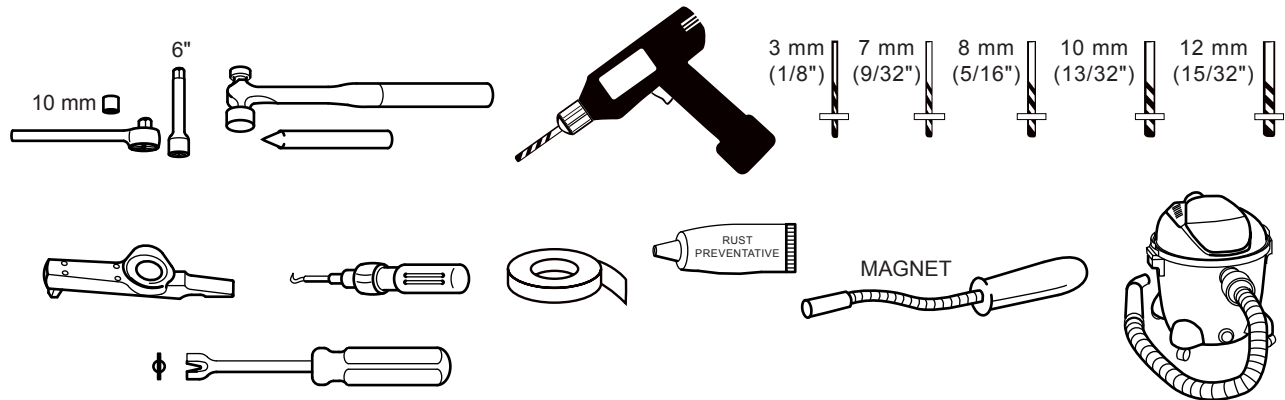
1X Wire Tie

## F



1X

## TOOLS REQUIRED:



## Meaning of Characters:



: Install



: Connect



: Remove



: Location of clip or screw



: Do Not Discard

T

: Tightening Torque



: Re use

PART NUMBER  
E721SFG000XX

ISSUE  
01

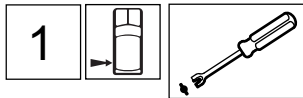
DATE  
05/29/2007

SUBARU OF AMERICA

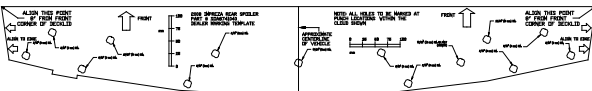
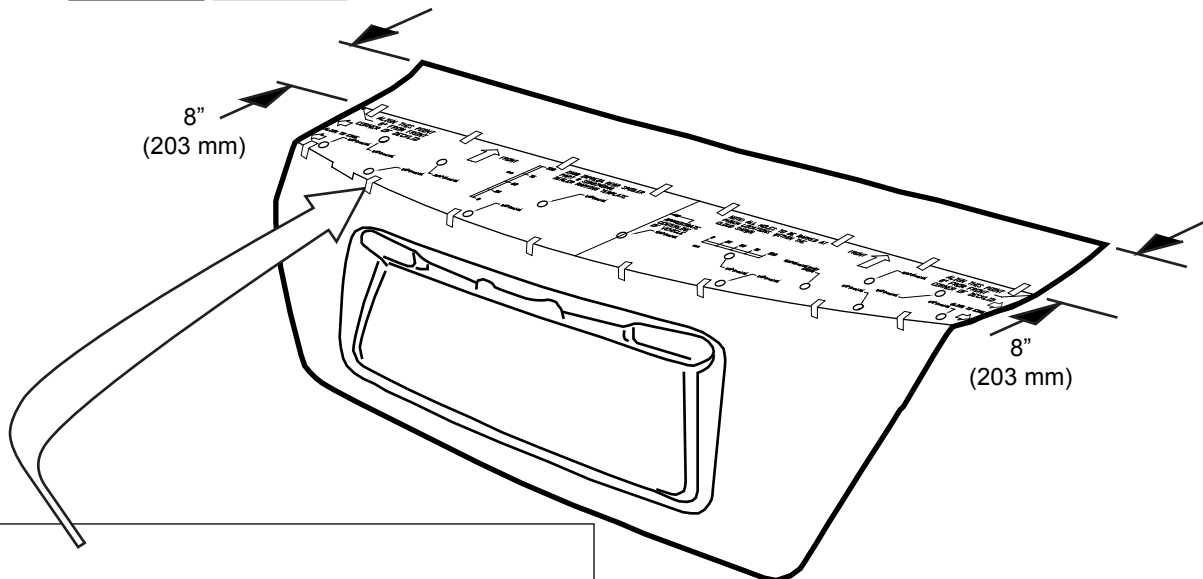
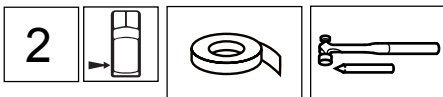
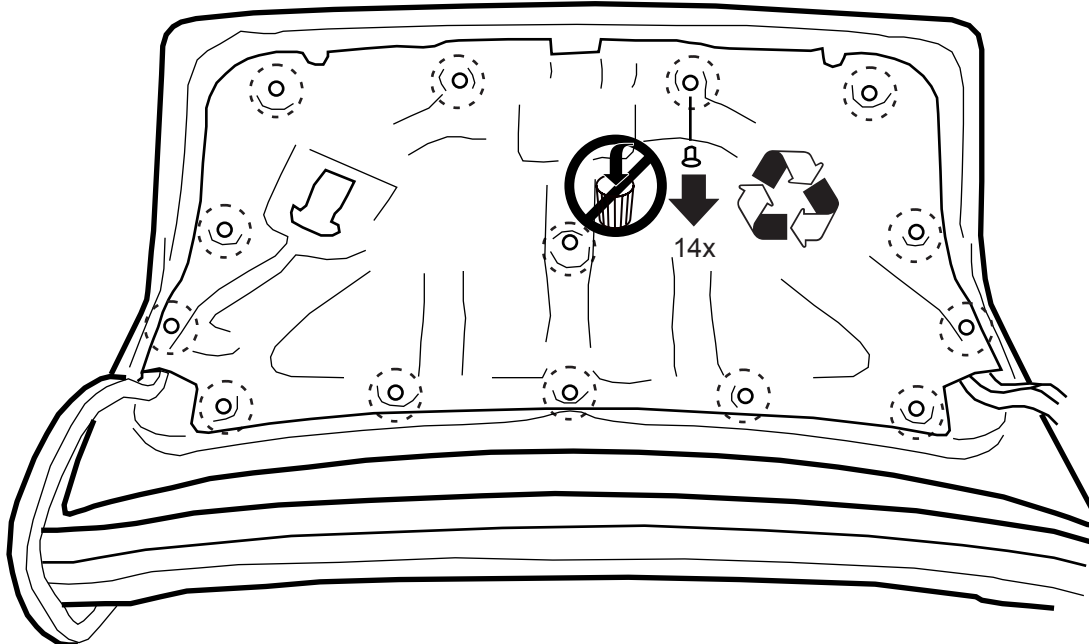
PAGE  
1/6



# REAR SPOILER ASSEMBLY



1 ) Remove deck lid carpet panel by removing 14 push pins.



PART NUMBER  
E721SFG000XX

ISSUE  
01

DATE  
05/29/2007

SUBARU OF AMERICA

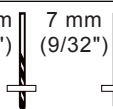
PAGE  
2/6

## REAR SPOILER ASSEMBLY

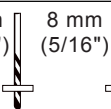
3



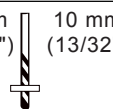
3 mm  
(1/8")



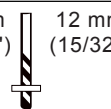
7 mm  
(9/32")



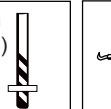
8 mm  
(5/16")



10 mm  
(13/32")



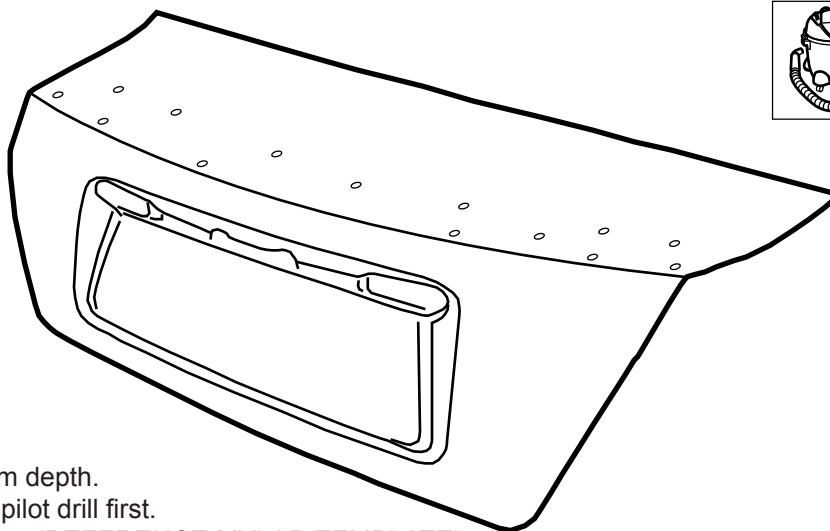
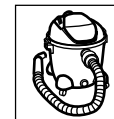
12 mm  
(15/32")



MAGNET



RUST  
PREVENTATIVE



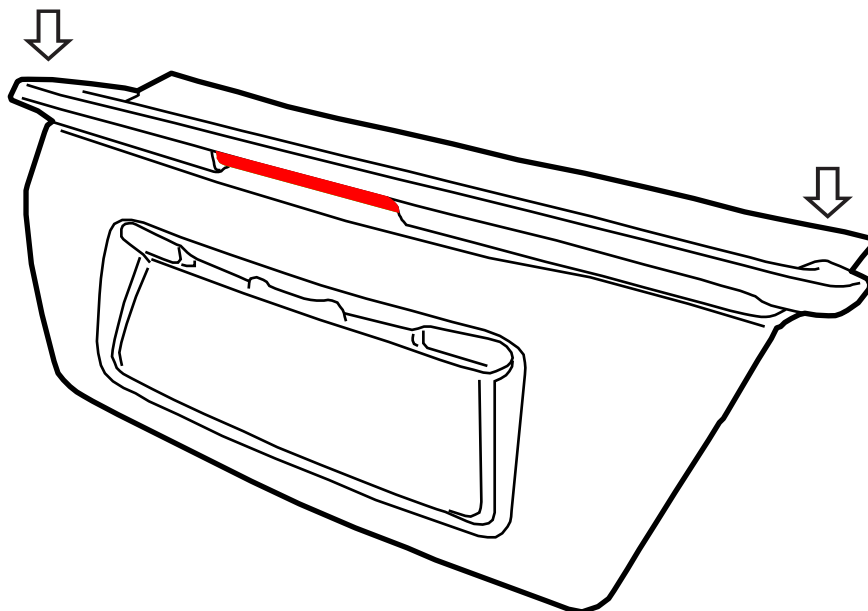
### PROCEDURES:

- 1 ) Set all drill stops to 1/4" or 6mm depth.
- 2 ) Drill all 14 locations with 3mm pilot drill first.
- 3 ) Open all holes to final dimension (REFERENCE MYLAR TEMPLATE).
- 4 ) Remove all metal chips with vacuum and magnet.  
(USE CAUTION NOT TO SCRATCH THE VEHICLE PAINT SURFACE).
- 5 ) Remove all burrs from holes and apply rust preventative.

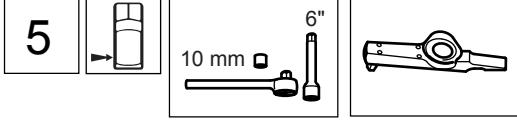
4



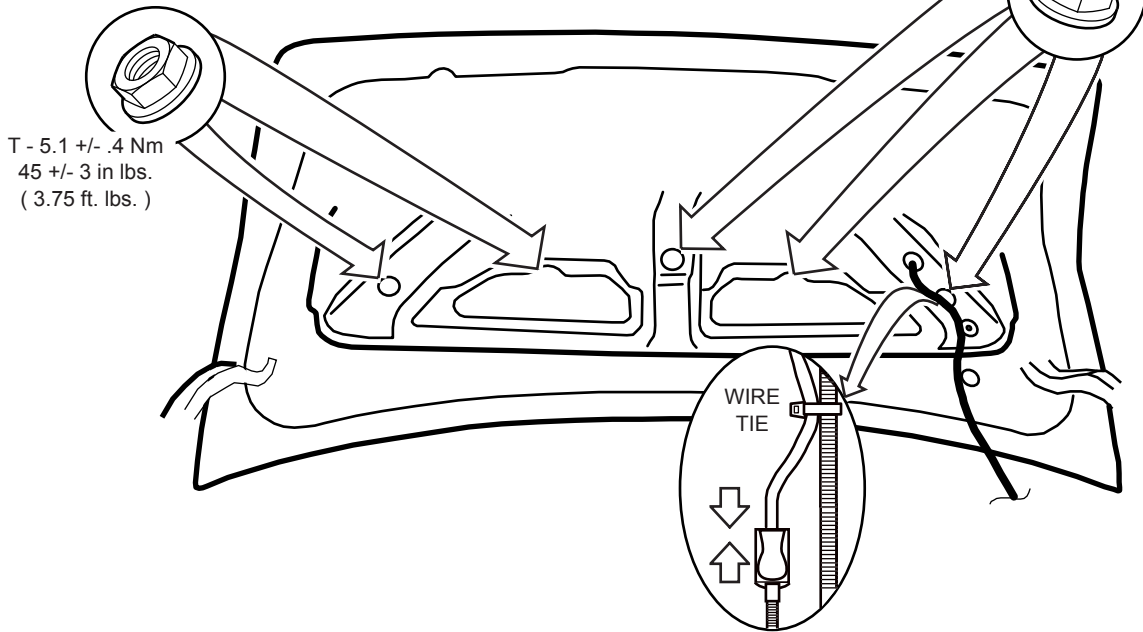
- 1 ) Check alignment of plastic holding clips.
- 2 ) Check to make certain electrical cable will not be pinched between spoiler mounting surface and deck lid.
- 3 ) Apply firm downward force at eight clip locations.
- 4 ) Audible "click" should be heard at each clip location to indicate engagement.



## REAR SPOILER ASSEMBLY



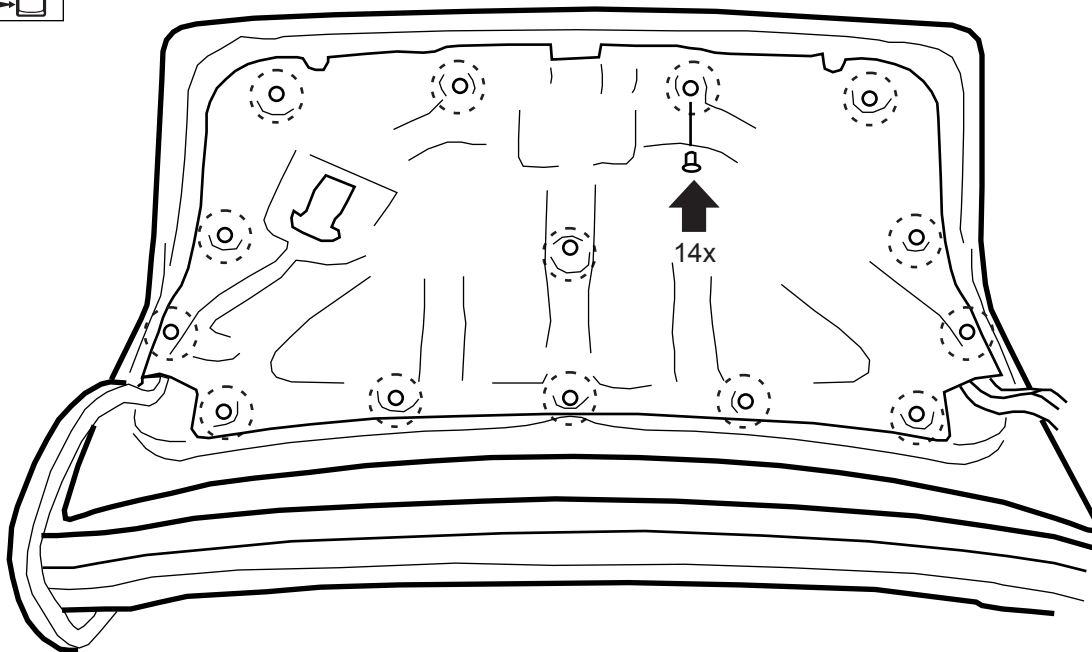
T - 5.1 +/- .4 Nm  
45 +/- 3 in lbs.  
( 3.75 ft. lbs. )



### SPOILER HIGH MOUNT STOP LAMP WIRE HARNESS CONNECTION POINT



1 ) Re-install deck lid carpet panel with the 14 recycled push pins.

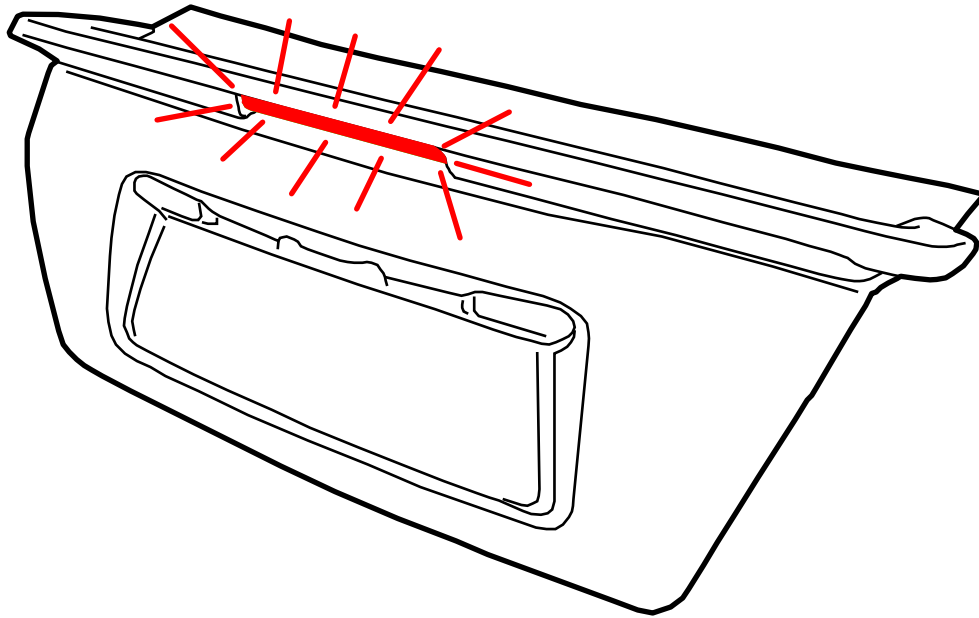


## REAR SPOILER ASSEMBLY

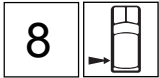
7



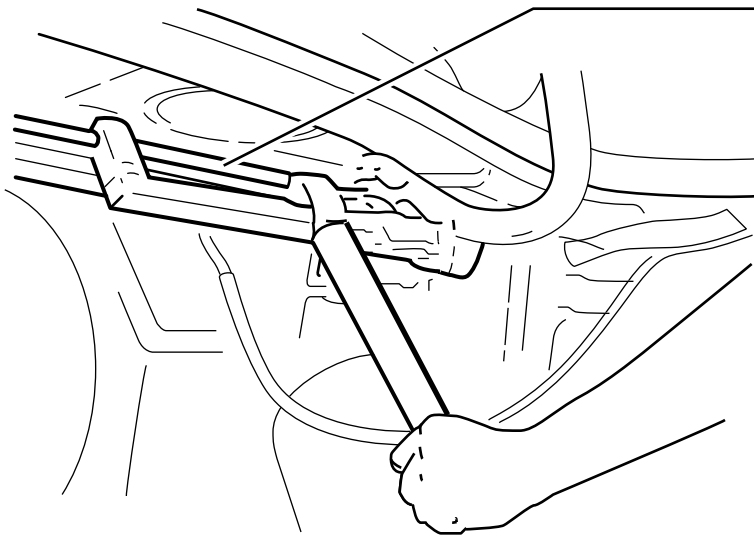
**CHECK THAT SPOILER HIGH MOUNT STOP LAMP PROPERLY ILLUMINATES WHEN BRAKE PEDAL IS DEPRESSED.**



 **CHANGE THE TORSION BARS IN ACCORDANCE WITH THE FOLLOWING PROCEDURE.**



REMOVER NO.SOA321041  
TORSION BAR RIGHT SOA8741020  
TORSION BAR LEFT SOA8741010

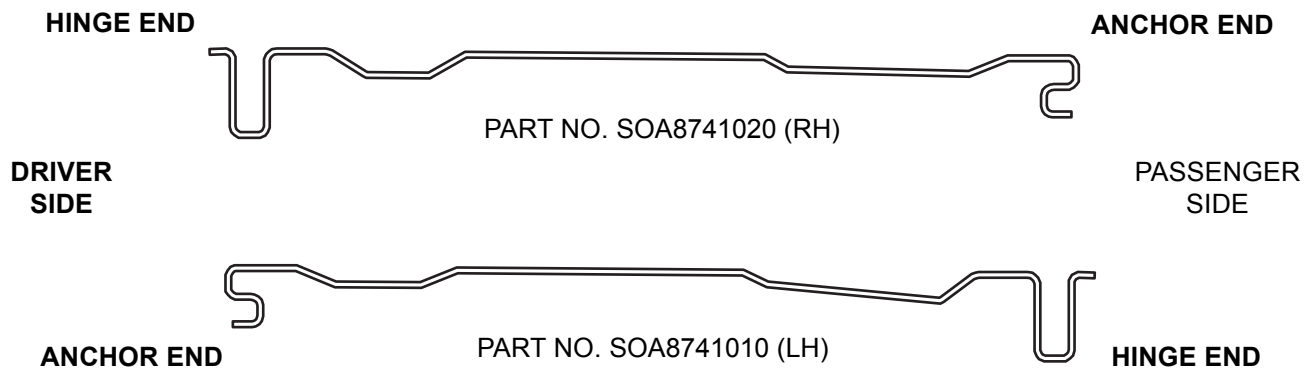


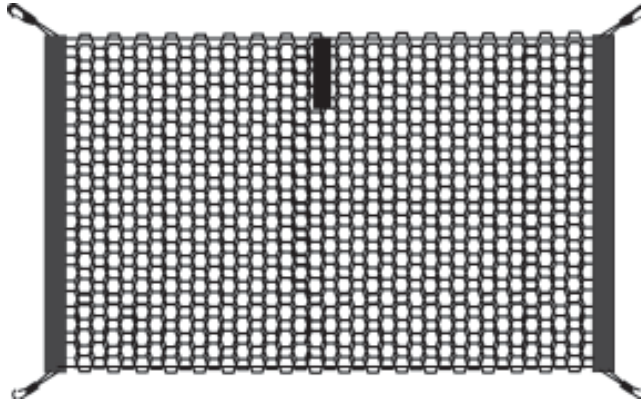
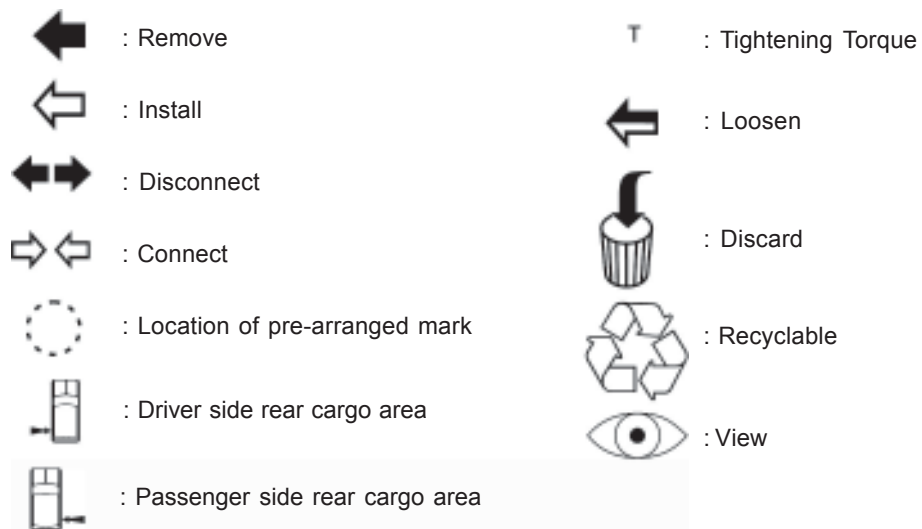
- 1 ) Open trunk lid, brace trunk in the open position. Remove torsion bars from the hinge links using remover tool (SOA321041).
- 2 ) Refer to illustration below for LH/RH identification.

**CAUTION:** TRUNK LID DROPS UNDER IT'S OWN WEIGHT  
WHEN TORSION BARS ARE REMOVED.

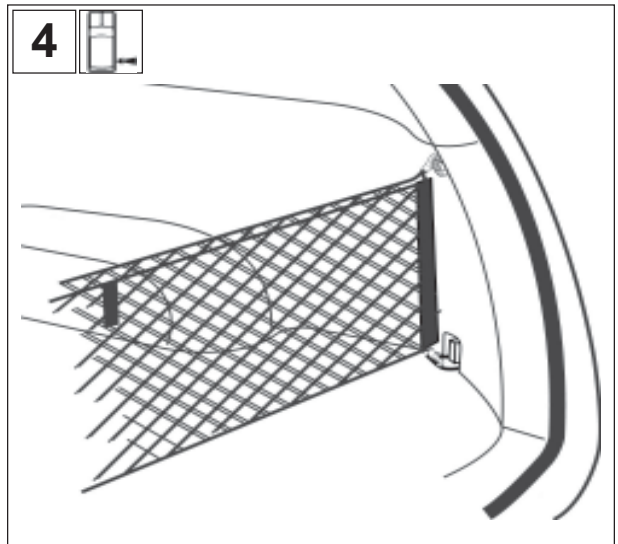
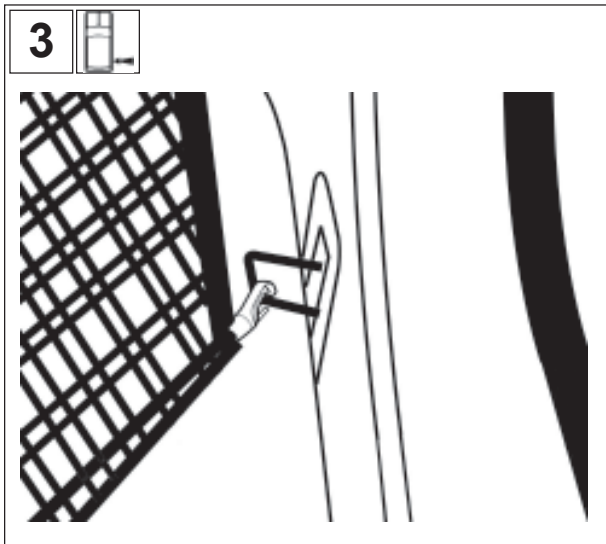
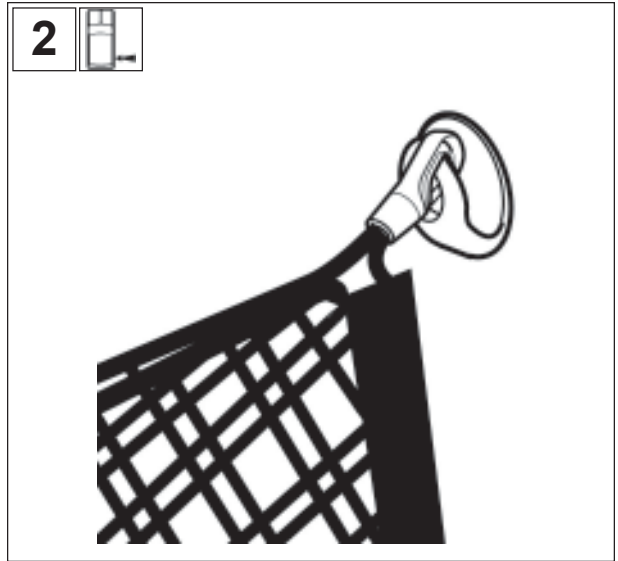
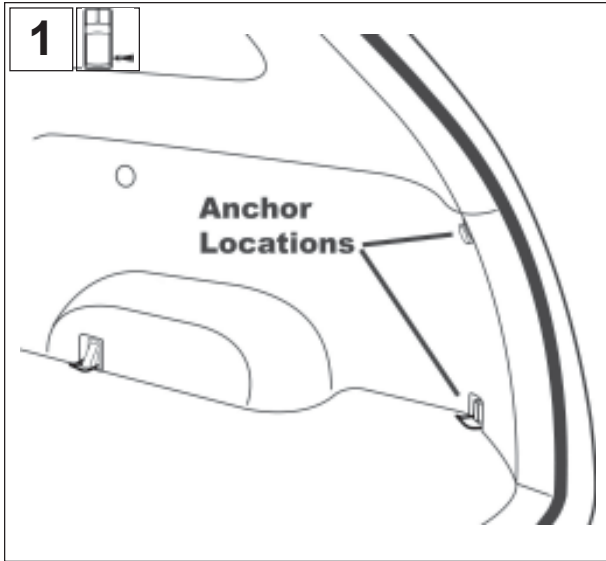
- 3 ) Install the torsion bars using the remover in the reverse procedure of "removal".  
TORSION BAR RIGHT PART NO. SOA8741020  
TORSION BAR LEFT PART NO. SOA8741010

#### TORSION ROD SET-UP



**A KIT CONTENTS:****TOOLS REQUIRED:****None****Meaning of Characters:**





Note: Installation is identical for opposite side of vehicle.



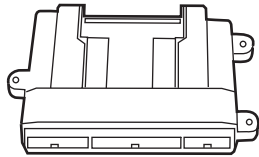
GENUINE PARTS

# INSTALLATION INSTRUCTIONS

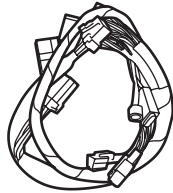
PART NUMBER: H001SXA100

DESCRIPTION: REMOTE ENGINE START SYSTEM

## 1 KIT CONTENTS



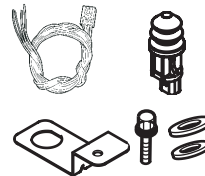
Remote Start Control Module w/ Software Card and Fuses  
Quantity= 1



Remote Start Wiring Harness w/ 30 AMP Fuse  
Quantity= 1



Remote Start Transmitters  
Quantity= 2



Hood Switch Mounting Bracket, Switch and 10" Jumper Harness  
Quantity=1



Remote Start Immobilizer Interface w/ Antenna Ring  
Quantity=1



Remote Start Patch Antenna  
Quantity=1



Underhood Warning Label  
Quantity=1



Installation Instructions  
Quantity=1



Quick Reference Card  
Quantity=1

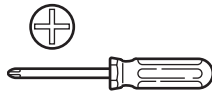


Tie Wraps  
4" Quantity= 4  
8" Quantity= 12  
21" Quantity= 2

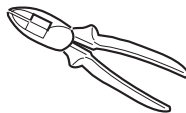
## 2 TOOLS REQUIRED



10 mm Socket and Ratchet



Phillips Screwdriver Short and Standard



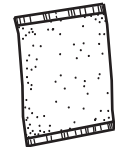
Wire Cutters



Panel Removal Tool



Electrical Tape



Alcohol and Towel



## 3 MEANING OF CHARACTERS



: Remove



: Install



: Disconnect



: Connect



: Location of Clip or Screw

T

: Tighten Torque



: Loosen



: Discard



: Re-use

**CAUTION: DO NOT SECURE ANY REMOTE START HARNESSSES / MODULES TO ANY YELLOW HARNESSSES / CONNECTORS (AIRBAG SYSTEM) IN THE VEHICLE.**

PART NUMBER  
H001SXA100

ISSUE  
01

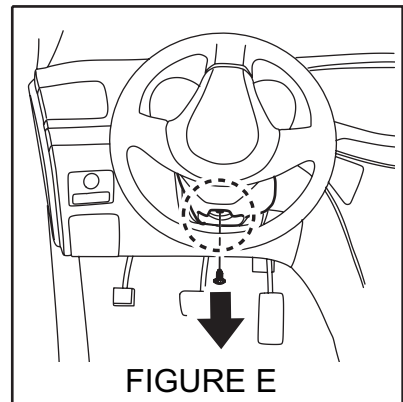
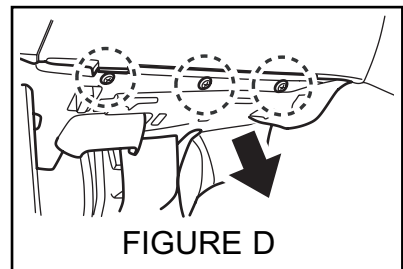
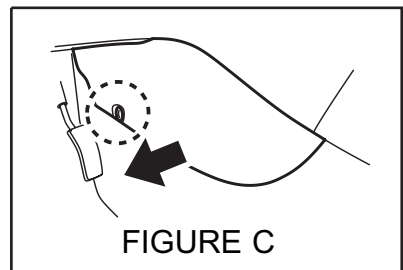
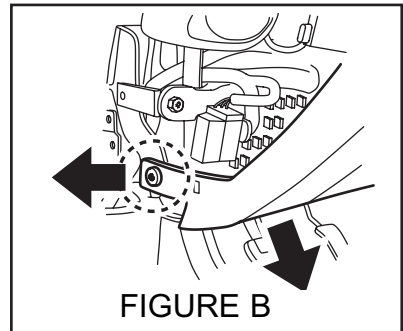
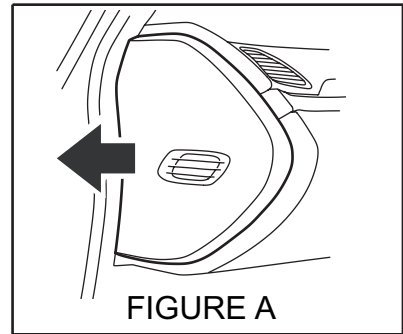
DATE  
03/02/07

SUBARU OF AMERICA

1 OF 12

**4****VEHICLE PREPARATION**

1. Using a 10mm socket/ratchet, disconnect the negative battery terminal.
2. Using a panel removal tool, carefully remove the left side driver's dash panel cover. (FIGURE A) Using a phillips screwdriver, remove the plastic screw fastener securing the left side dashboard panel (this will be mounted under the previously removed left side dash panel. (FIGURE B)
3. Using a panel removal tool, carefully remove the driver's side lower center console panel. (FIGURE C)
4. Using a phillips screwdriver, remove the 3 plastic phillips fasteners holding the driver's under dashboard panel and leave loose. (FIGURE D)
5. Using a phillips screwdriver, remove the phillips screw on the underside of the steering column shroud and carefully unsnap and remove the lower panel. Be careful not to damage the lower dashboard panel. (FIGURE E)



## VEHICLE PREPARATION (CONTINUED)

- Using a panel removal tool, un-clip and remove the driver's side lower dashboard panel and un-plug any connectors. (FIGURE F)
- Unplug the diagnostic plug by releasing the side clip on the connector. Unplug the 2-way connector for the under dashboard light and remove the driver's under dashboard panel. (FIGURE G)
- Unplug the 2-way connector and air tube connected to the right side of the metal knee bolster. Remove the metal knee bolster by removing the (4) 10mm bolts. (FIGURE H)

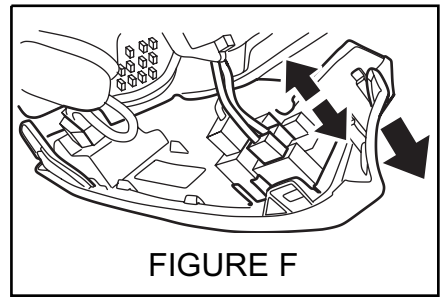


FIGURE F

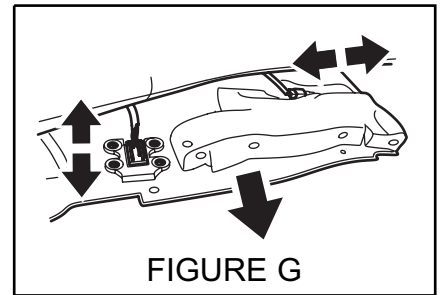


FIGURE G

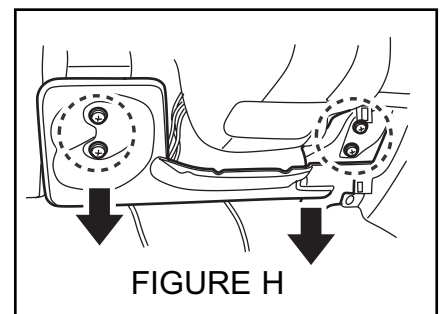


FIGURE H

## 5

### WINDSHIELD MOUNT ANTENNA INSTALLATION

- Locate the position at the top of the windshield 1" left of center and 1" from top of headliner. (FIGURE I)
- Using alcohol clean the area thoroughly.
- Remove the adhesive backing on the antenna assembly and apply the antenna to the windshield in the area indicated above. (FIGURE I)
- Using a panel removal tool, carefully remove the airbag labeled cap at the top of the A-pillar and remove the 10mm bolt. (FIGURE J)
- Gently remove the A-pillar panel starting at the top releasing the pressure clip at the bottom of the panel. (FIGURE J)

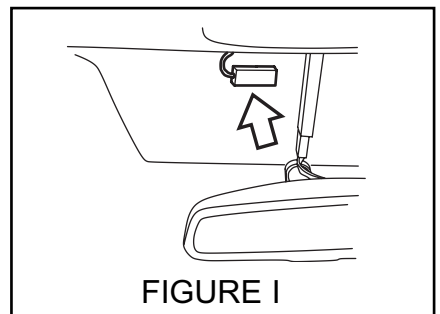


FIGURE I

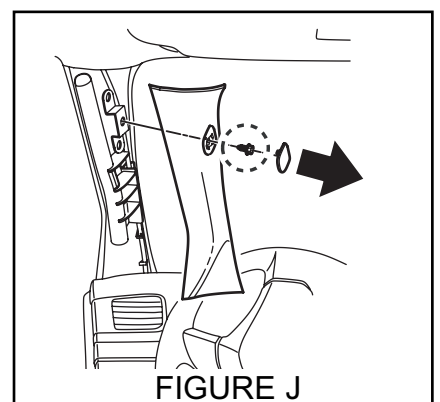
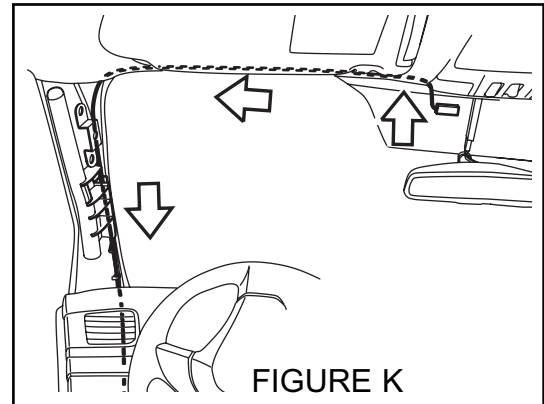


FIGURE J

## WINDSHIELD MOUNT ANTENNA INSTALLATION (CONTINUED)

6. Route the antenna cable under the headliner and down the A-pillar securing into the plastic clips holding the sunroof drain tube. Route the cable to the opening on the left side of driver's dashboard. The antenna cable will be plugged into the remote start control module later. (FIGURE K)
7. Reinstall the A-pillar panel. Torque the 10mm bolt to 10.8Nm +/- 2Nm (1.10 Kgf-m +/- 0.2 Kgf-m, 8 ft-lbs +/- 1.5 ft-lbs). (FIGURE J)

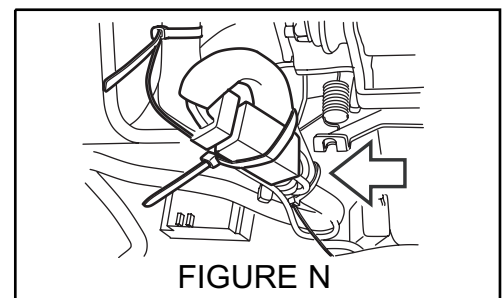
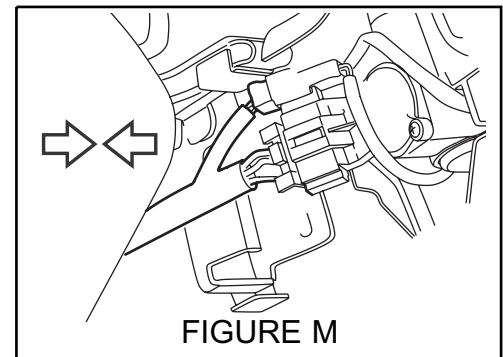
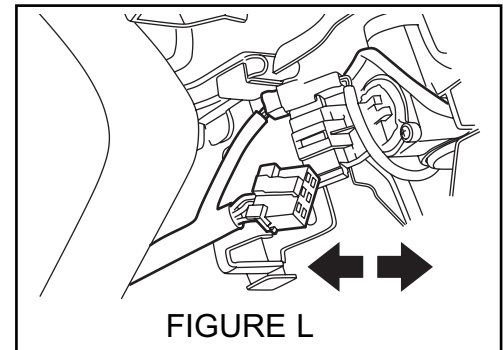


## 6

### MAIN HARNESS CONNECTIONS

#### 6-WAY IGNITION SWITCH CONNECTIONS

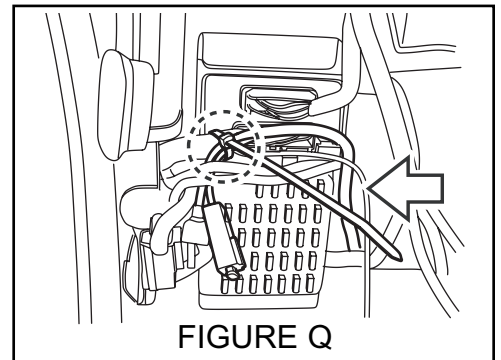
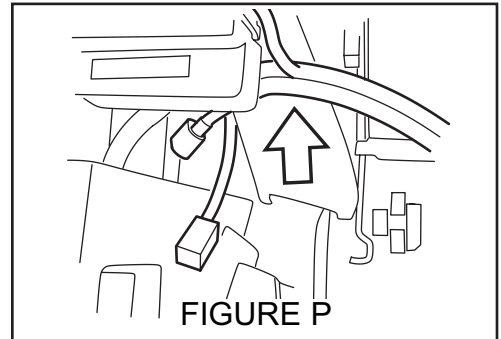
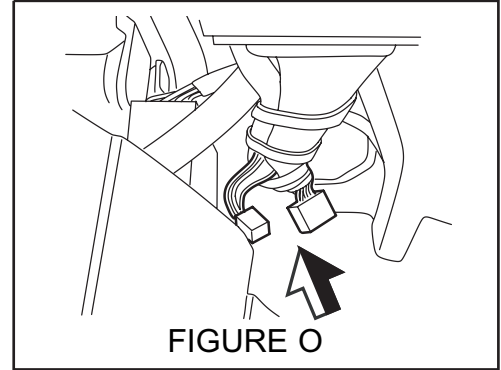
1. Locate the 6-pin ignition switch connector on the left side of the steering column and unplug. (FIGURE L)
2. Plug the remote start harness 6-pin female ignition switch connector into the vehicle's ignition switch and plug the previously unplugged vehicle's female ignition switch connector into the remote start harness 6-pin male ignition switch connector. (FIGURE M)
3. Using 2 of the supplied 8" tie wraps, secure the remote start harness wiring to the existing vehicle wiring, making sure that it will not interfere with the operation of the tilt steering column and re-assembly of vehicle panels. (FIGURE N)



## MAIN HARNESS CONNECTIONS (CONTINUED)

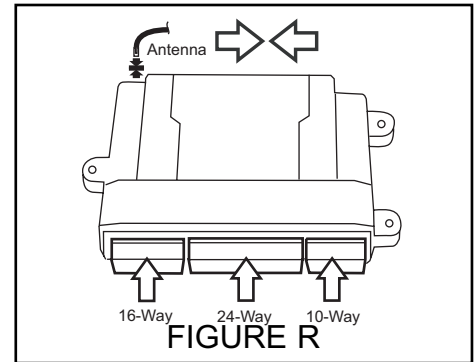
### 24-PIN AND 2-PIN UPPER LEFT KICK PANEL PRE-FIT CONNECTIONS

1. Locate the vehicle's 24-pin and 2-pin pre-fit connections located in the upper left kick panel area. These connectors are secured to the vehicle wiring using breakaway tape. (FIGURE O)
2. When the 2-pin pre-fit connector is located, unplug and discard the mating wire jumper.
3. Carefully route the remote start harness 24-pin and 2-pin connectors to the upper left kick panel area, making sure that they will not interfere with any vehicle moving components and re-assembly of dashboard panels. (FIGURE P)
4. Plug the remote start harness 24-pin and 2-pin males connectors into the corresponding 24-pin and 2-pin vehicle female connectors.
5. Using 2 of the supplied 8" tie wraps, secure the remote start wiring to existing vehicle wiring.
6. Route the remote start harness programming button and 30-AMP fuse assembly to the vehicles fuse box assembly and secure the wiring to existing vehicle wiring using one of the supplied 8" tie wraps. (FIGURE Q). **DO NOT SECURE THE REMOTE START HARNESS TO ANY VEHICLE YELLOW HARNESSES / CONNECTORS (AIRBAG SYSTEM).**



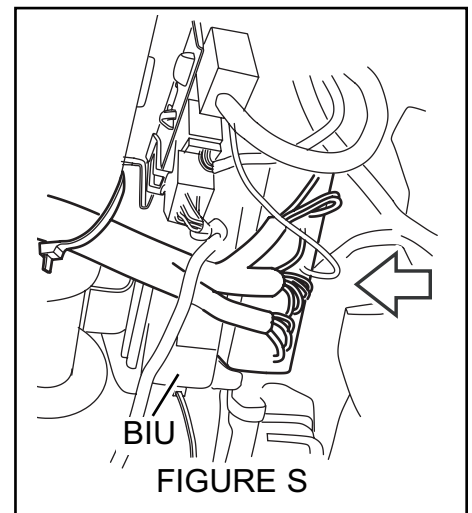


1. Route the previously installed antenna cable towards the remote start harness 24-pin, 16-pin and 10-pin connectors. At the top of the steering column secure the antenna cable along the way with 2 of the supplied 8" tie wraps.
2. Plug the 24-pin, 16-pin and 10-pin connectors into the front of the remote start control module making sure the connectors are completely seated (they will only fit into the control module one way). (FIGURE R) Plug the 2-pin antenna cable connector into the 2-pin port on the back of the remote start control module. NOTE: The small 4-pin and 5-pin connectors on the control module are not used.



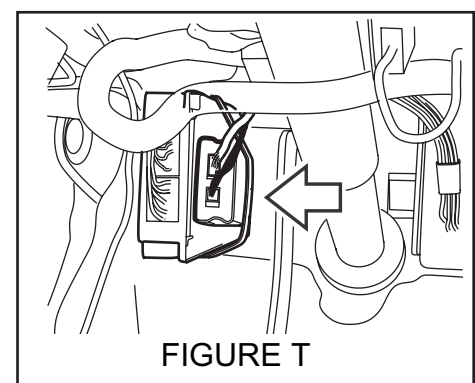
### REMOTE ENGINE START CONTROL MODULE MOUNTING

1. Locate the vehicle's body integrated unit (BIU) mounted to the bulkhead between the gas pedal and steering column.
2. Using alcohol clean the area on the right side of the BIU. Remove the adhesive backing on the back of the remote start control module.
3. Secure the remote start control module to the right side of the BIU making sure the 3 connectors on the remote start control module are pointing towards the rear of the vehicle. (FIGURE S)
4. As a secondary mounting provision, secure the remote start control module to the BIU using the supplied 24" tie wrap.



### IMMOBILIZER INTERFACE MOUNTING

1. Locate the A/T Control Module to the left of the brake pedal. Using alcohol, clean an area on the A/T control module metal bracket. Using the supplied velcro and 24" tie wrap, secure the immobilizer interface to the A/T Control Module. (FIGURE T)
2. Plug in 4 pin immobilizer interface connector (in harness) to 4 pin connector on interface box. (FIGURE T)



1. Locate the 2 phillips screws at the steering column that secure the upper steering column shroud to the steering column assembly. Refer to FIGURE U for location reference.
2. Using a phillips screwdriver, loosen but do not remove the 2 phillips screws. (FIGURE V)
3. Locate the illuminated ignition cylinder ring and gently slip the immobilizer interface antenna ring behind the illuminated ring and behind the upper steering column shroud. Re-secure the previously loosened phillips screws securing the upper steering column shroud to the steering column assembly. (FIGURE W)
4. Route the immobilizer interface antenna ring wiring to the left side of the steering column and down the steering column and plug into the 2-pin port on the immobilizer interface (refer back to FIGURE T). Secure the immobilizer interface antenna ring wiring to the existing vehicle wiring and remote start harness using 2 of the supplied 4" tie wraps. Be sure to route wiring to avoid the lower steering column shroud screw hole and any steering column moving parts. (FIGURE X)

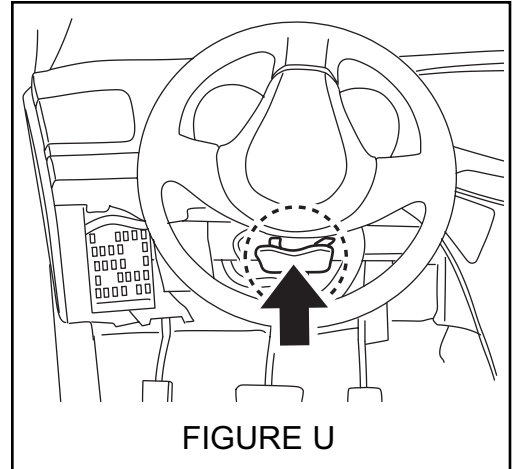


FIGURE U

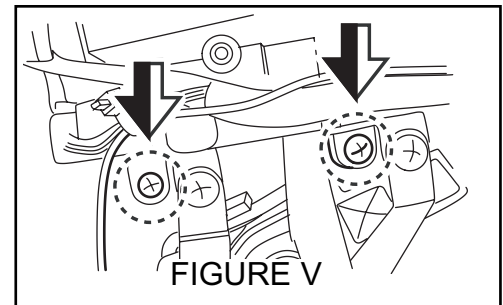


FIGURE V

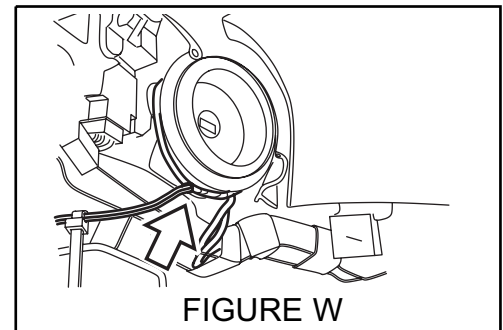


FIGURE W

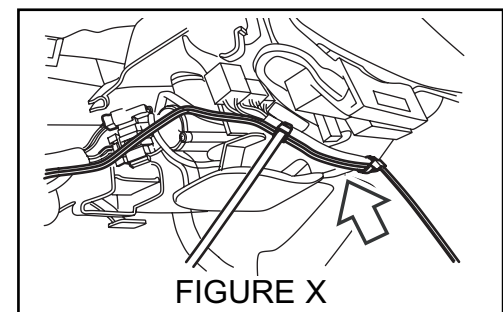
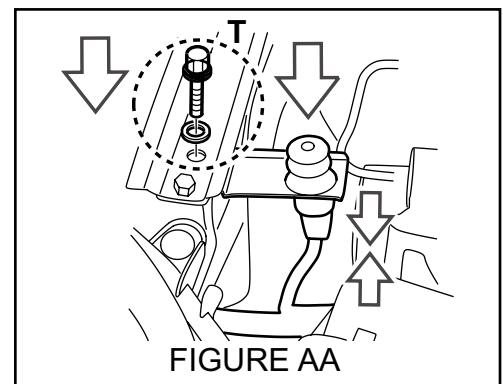
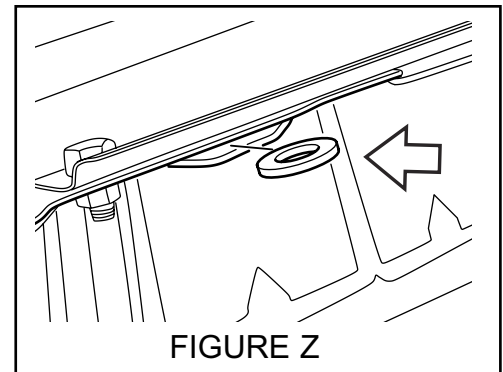
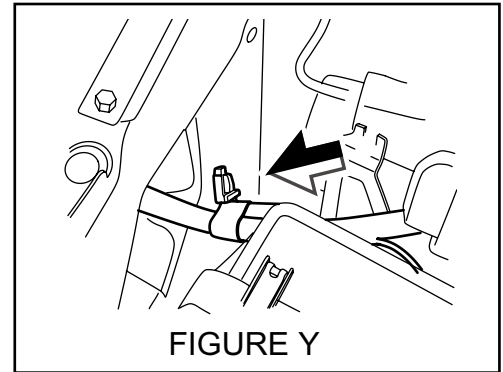


FIGURE X

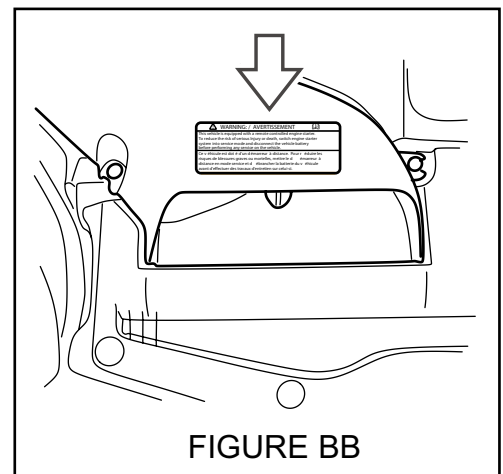
## 9 HOOD SAFETY SWITCH MOUNTING

1. In the engine compartment, locate the 2-pin pre-fit hood safety switch connector secured to the wire harness with breakaway tape in front of the shock tower on the passenger's side of the vehicle. (FIGURE Y)
2. Plug the supplied remote start harness 10" hood safety switch wiring harness to the vehicle's 2-pin pre-fit connector.
3. Insert the thicker of the two supplied washers into the space between the fender and vehicle's body located behind the first fender mounting bolt on the passengers side. (FIGURE Z)
4. Mount the hood safety switch bracket to the vehicle's fender in the predrilled hole using the supplied 10mm bolt and smaller washer (FIGURE AA). Torque the bolt to 10.8 Nm +/- 2 Nm (1.10 Kgf-m +/- 0.2 Kgf-m, 8 ft-lbs +/- 1.5 ft-lbs).
5. Securely mount (snap-in) the supplied hood safety switch in the bracket and plug the 2-way female connector of remote start harness 10" hood safety switch wiring harness to the base of the hood safety switch. (FIGURE AA)



## 10 UNDER HOOD WARNING LABEL MOUNTING

1. Using alcohol clean the top of the air intake plenum.
2. Remove the adhesive backing of the underhood warning label and secure to the top of the air intake plenum. (FIGURE BB)



## 11 SYSTEM POWER-UP

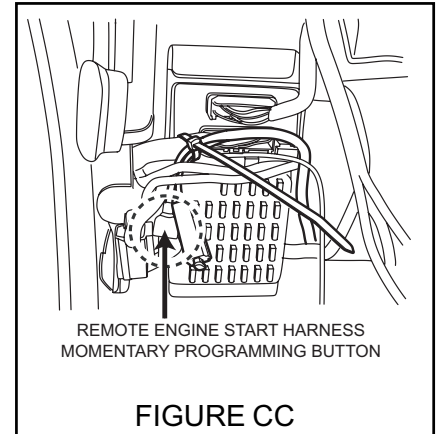
After all connections are complete, re-connect the vehicle's negative battery terminal.

**NOTE: THE VEHICLE'S HORN MAY BEGIN TO HONK ON AND OFF. IF THIS OCCURS, PRESSING THE RKE TRANSMITTER UNLOCK BUTTON OR TURNING THE IGNITION KEY TO THE RUN POSITION WILL SILENCE THE HORN.**

## 12 TACHOMETER IDLE SPEED PROGRAMMING

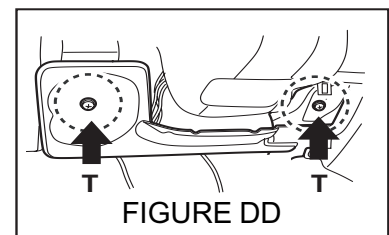
**NOTE: THE VEHICLE'S HOOD MUST BE CLOSED AND LATCHED THROUGHOUT THIS PROCESS**

1. Open driver's door (leave open throughout programming operation).
2. Turn the ignition key to the ON or RUN position.
3. Press and hold the momentary programming button for approximately 10 seconds until the vehicle's horn honks (3) times. (FIGURE CC)
4. Release the momentary programming button.
5. Press and release the remote engine start harness momentary programming button (secured to a wiring harness in front of the vehicle's dashboard mounted fuse box, FIGURE FF). The vehicle's horn will honk (4) times.
6. Press and release the vehicle's brake pedal (1) time. The horn will honk (1) time to indicate that the system has entered tachometer idle speed programming mode.
7. Start the vehicle with the ignition key. The RES system will begin honking the vehicle's horn 1 time every 3 seconds to indicate a valid tach signal.
8. When the engine has settled to a normal idle speed (normally 750-1000 RPM), press and release the brake pedal (1) time. The horn will honk (2) times to indicate the system has exited tach idle speed programming. **Be sure that the vehicle has maintained 750-1000 RPM idle speed prior to exiting tachometer idle speed programming.**
9. Turn the ignition key to the OFF position.



## 13 PANEL RE-ASSEMBLY

1. Re-install the knee bolster and torque the 10mm bolts to 10.8 Nm +/- 2 Nm (1.10 Kgf-m +/- 0.2 Kgf-m, 8 ft-lbs +/- 1.5 ft-lbs). (FIGURE DD)
2. Plug in any previously removed connectors and re-install the driver's side lower dashboard panel. Secure in place with the phillips fasteners on the side of the dashboard opening (refer to FIGURES B & F).
3. Plug in the diagnostic connector and under dashboard light connector and reinstall the driver's side under dashboard panel, securing in place with three (3) phillips fasteners (refer to FIGURE D).
4. Reinstall the steering column shroud and secure with the phillips screw (refer to FIGURE E).
5. Reinstall the driver's side lower center console panel (refer to FIGURE C).
6. Re-install the left side driver's dashboard panel (refer to FIGURE C).
7. At the end of the installation, insert the Quick Reference Card into the Owner's Information Kit.



Most new Subaru vehicles are equipped with an immobilizer system that will act as an anti-theft device preventing the vehicle from starting if an incorrect ignition key is used to start the vehicle. Each vehicle ignition key is equipped with a transponder that will transmit an ID code each time the vehicle ignition is turned on with the ignition key. During the Select Monitor (SMIII) registration process, the transponder ID code is registered by the vehicle's body integrated unit (BIU). For security reasons all available ignition keys are required to be registered any time a new key is added or replaced.

During the remote start process there will be no ignition key present to transmit a proper ID code when the vehicle is started. To simulate an ignition key during the remote start process an immobilizer interface is used to transmit a registered ID code to the ignition switch through an antenna ring that is mounted around the vehicle's ignition switch.

During the registration process, the remote start immobilizer interface will be treated as an ignition key by the vehicle. To simulate turning the ignition to the RUN position we will use a combination of pressing the remote start momentary programming button (mounted to a harness in front of the vehicle's dashboard fusebox) and activating the remote start system by pressing the START button on the remote start transmitter two (2) times.

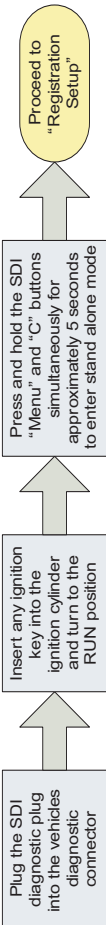
- Pressing the momentary programming button one (1) time will delay the remote start crank output for 60 - seconds. This will prevent the starter from cranking while the SDI is attempting to program the immobilizer interface as an ignition key.
- Activating the remote start system by pressing the remote start transmitter button two (2) times will both activate the immobilizer interface and power the ignition circuits. This combination will make the vehicle think that the ignition switch was turned to the RUN position using an actual ignition key.

Under normal situations the immobilizer interface will be registered to the vehicle as the 4th key. In the event that all vehicle ignition keys are not present at time of registration, the immobilizer interface should be registered as the last key (example: 2 ignition keys are available, the immobilizer interface is registered as the third key).

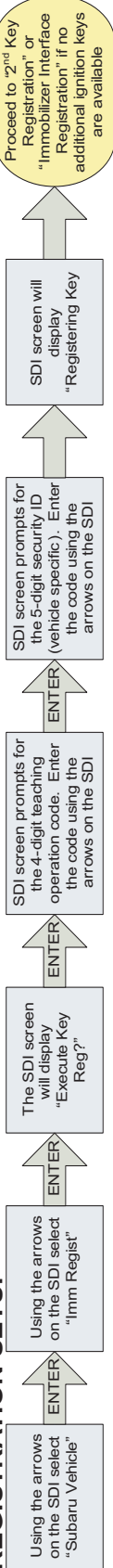
#### POINTS TO REMEMBER

1. Prior to programming the immobilizer interface, the vehicle tach idle speed section of the installation manual must be completed first.
2. The vehicle's hood must remain closed and latched during the entire process.
3. The vehicle's battery must be fully charged.
4. All ignition keys (3 keys are present with a new vehicle) must be present prior to programming. Any ignition key that is not registered during the immobilizer interface programming process will no longer start the vehicle.
5. The immobilizer teaching operation code will need to be entered at this time.
6. The vehicle specific five (5) digit security ID will be required every time the registration process is completed. The vehicle security ID is located on the larger of the 2 vehicle key tags.
7. Immobilizer interface programming / key registration will be completed using the "Subaru Diagnostic Interface" (SDI) operating in "Stand Alone Mode". **When operating in stand alone mode, the SDI does not need to be plugged into the computer**

**SDI SETUP**



**REGISTRATION SETUP**



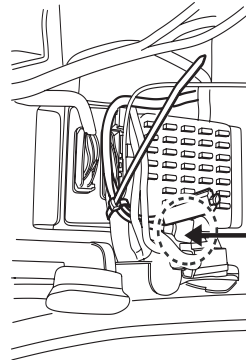
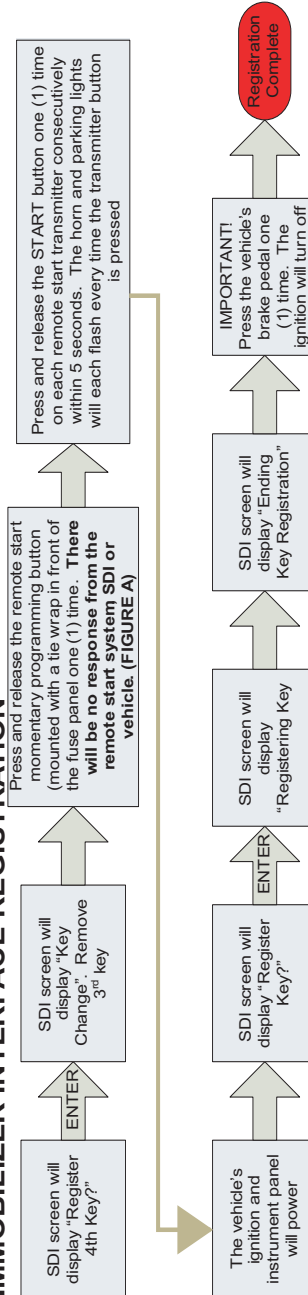
**2nd KEY REGISTRATION**



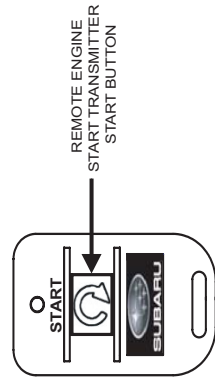
**3rd KEY REGISTRATION**



**IMMOBILIZER INTERFACE REGISTRATION**



REMOTE ENGINE START HARNESS MOMENTARY PROGRAMMING BUTTON



REMOTE ENGINE START TRANSMITTER START BUTTON



## POST INSTALLATION CHECKLIST

- 1. REMOTE ENGINE START- Make sure the key is removed from the ignition switch and the engine hood is closed. Press the START button twice within 3 seconds - The parking lights should flash twice, the horn should beep twice then the vehicle should crank and start. Once started the parking lights will turn on and stay on signifying the vehicle is started.
- 2. RUNNING WITH IGNITION KEY - While the vehicle is running under remote engine start, confirm that all function's (lock, unlock, etc.) operate properly on the FACTORY transmitter. Once FACTORY transmitter functionality is confirmed press the UNLOCK button on FACTORY transmitter and enter the vehicle, insert the ignition key and turn the ignition to the run position, press the brake pedal - At this time the vehicle should be running by the ignition key and the remote engine start was shut down when the brake pedal was pressed. Turn off the ignition switch and the vehicle should shut off.
- 3. BRAKE PEDAL SAFETY - Restart the vehicle using the remote engine start, enter the vehicle, press the brake pedal - The vehicle should shut off.
- 4. KEY-IN-SENSE - Insert the ignition key into the ignition switch but keep in off position, activate the remote engine start function - the vehicle should flash the lights as if it is going to start but then the horn should beep twice and the remote engine starter does not attempt to start the vehicle since it senses the key in the ignition.
- 5. HOOD SAFETY SWITCH - Open the engine hood and activate the remote engine start function - The horn should beep two additional times signifying that hood safety switch is tripped and the vehicle will not start.
- 6. HEATER / AC FUNCTION - Insert the ignition key and turn the ignition to the run position, preset the vehicle's heater or air conditioning to the on position then turn the ignition off and remove the ignition key. Activate the remote engine start system and verify that the heater or air conditioning turns on to the preset setting.
- 7. 15-MINUTE RUN TIME - Activate the remote engine start system and allow the system to run for the 15-minute preset run time. The remote engine start system should shut the vehicle off in 15 minutes (+/- 10 seconds).
- 8. SECURITY DISARM VERIFICATION - Activate the remote engine starter. After the vehicle has started, manually unlock the vehicle's doors using the ignition key and open any door. The horn should begin a steady honk and the engine will shut down. Press the UNLOCK button on the FACTORY transmitter and verify that the horn stops honking (the vehicle will not automatically restart).
- 9. TRANSMITTER FUNCTIONALITY VERIFICATION - Activate the remote engine starter using both of the supplied single button transmitters.

FUNCTIONAL TESTING IS NOW COMPLETE.

PART NUMBER H001SXA100	ISSUE 01	DATE 03/02/07	SUBARU OF AMERICA	12 OF 12
---------------------------	-------------	------------------	-------------------	----------



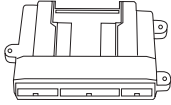
# SUBARU

## GENUINE PARTS INSTALLATION INSTRUCTIONS

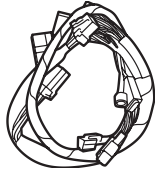
PART NUMBER: H001SAG100

DESCRIPTION: REMOTE ENGINE START SYSTEM

### 1 KIT CONTENTS



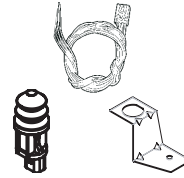
Remote Start Control Module  
w/ Software Card and Fuses  
Quantity= 1



Remote Start Wiring  
Harness w/ 30 AMP Fuse  
Quantity= 1



Remote Start  
Transmitters  
Quantity= 2



Hood Switch Mounting  
Bracket, Switch and 10"  
Jumper Harness  
Quantity=1



Remote Start Immobilizer  
Interface w/ Antenna Ring  
Quantity=1



Remote Start  
Patch Antenna  
Quantity=1



Underhood  
Warning Label  
Quantity=1



Installation  
Instructions  
Quantity=1



Quick  
Reference Card  
Quantity=1

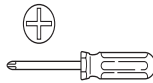


Tie Wraps  
4" Quantity= 4  
8" Quantity= 12  
21" Quantity= 1  
8" Reusable Quantity= 1

### 2 TOOLS REQUIRED



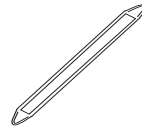
10 mm Socket  
and Ratchet



Phillips Screwdriver  
Short and Standard



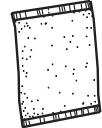
Wire Cutters



Panel Removal  
Tool

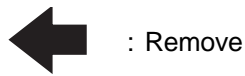


Electrical Tape



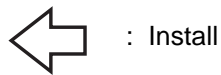
Alcohol and Towel

### 3 MEANING OF CHARACTERS



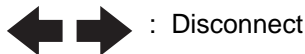
: Remove

**T** : Tighten Torque



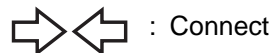
: Install

: Loosen



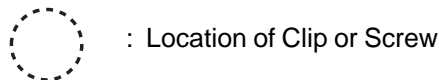
: Disconnect

: Discard



: Connect

: Re-use



: Location of Clip or Screw

**CAUTION: DO NOT SECURE ANY REMOTE START HARNESSSES / MODULES TO ANY YELLOW HARNESSSES / CONNECTORS (AIRBAG SYSTEM) IN THE VEHICLE.**

PART NUMBER  
H001SAG100

ISSUE  
02

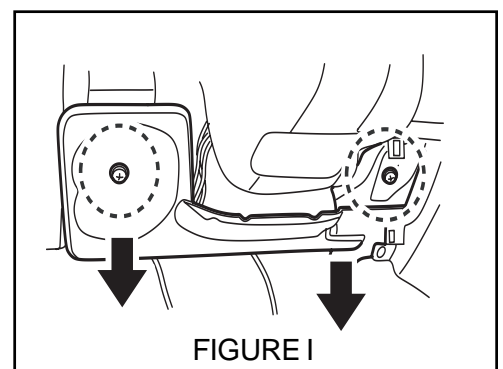
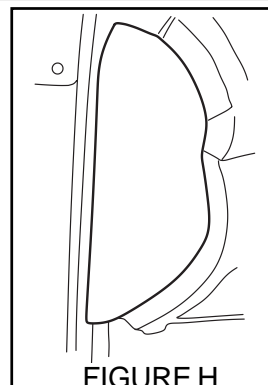
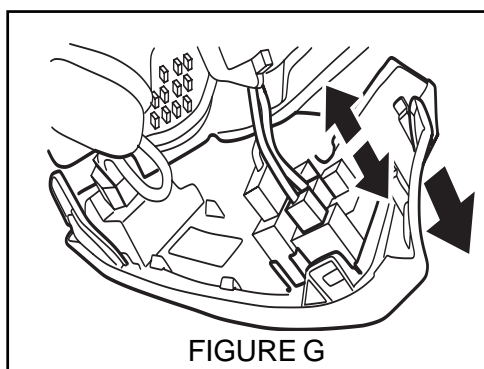
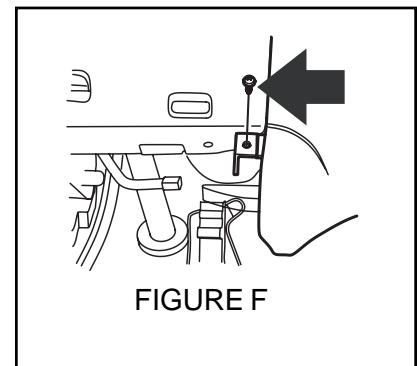
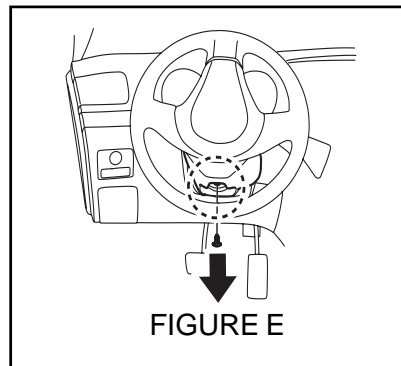
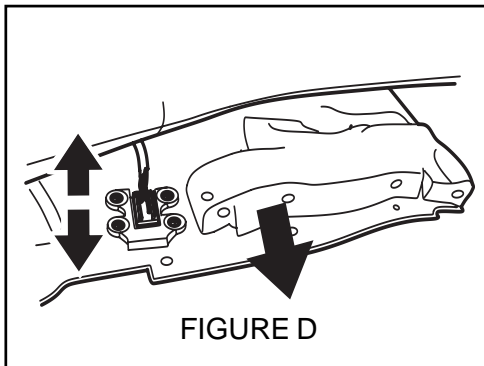
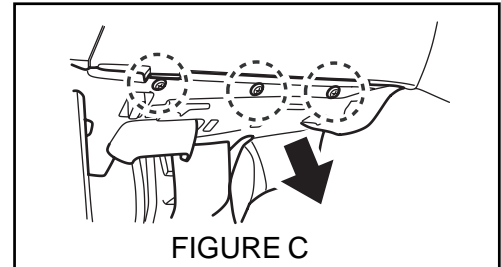
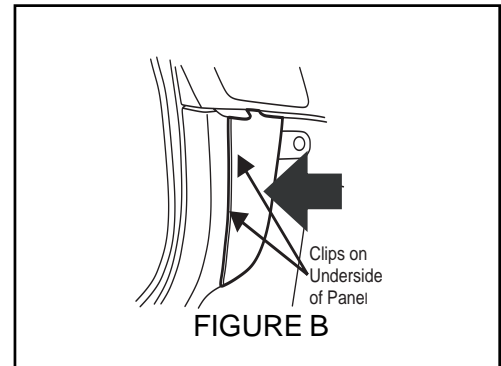
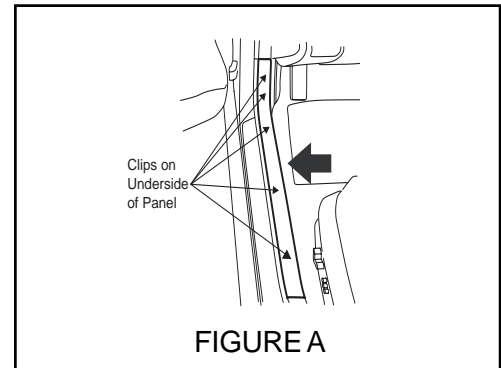
DATE  
05/23/07

SUBARU OF AMERICA

1 OF 12

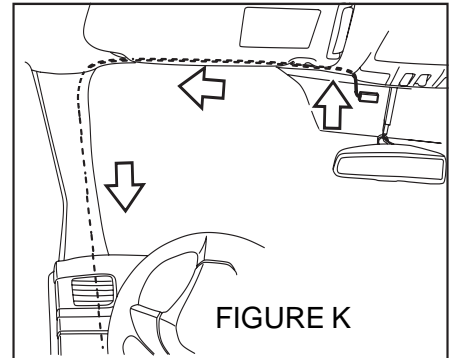
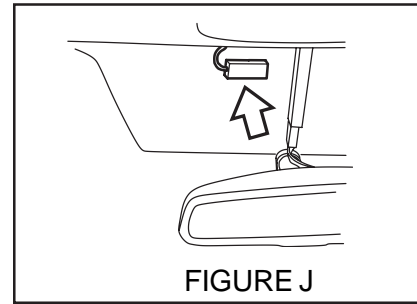
## 4 VEHICLE PREPARATION

1. Using a 10 mm socket/ratchet, disconnect the negative battery terminal.
2. Using a panel removal tool, carefully remove the driver's side sill plate by releasing the five (5) plastic tabs and remove the kick panel cover by removing the black plastic clip at the front of the panel and sliding the kick panel cover towards the rear of the vehicle. (FIGURES A & B).
3. Using a phillips screwdriver, remove the two (2) plastic phillips fasteners and one (1) pressure fastener holding the driver's under dashboard panel. Release the diagnostic connector by pressing the side clip on the connector and remove the driver's under dashboard panel. (FIGURES C & D)
4. Using a phillips screwdriver, remove one (1) phillips screw on the underside of the steering column shroud and carefully unsnap and remove the lower panel. Be careful not to damage the lower dashboard panel. (FIGURE E)
5. Remove one (1) phillips screw on the lower right side of the driver's side lower dashboard panel. (FIGURE F)
6. Using a panel removal tool, un-clip and remove the driver's side lower dashboard panel and un-plug any connectors. (FIGURE G)
7. Using a panel removal tool, carefully remove the left side dash panel. (FIGURE H)
8. Remove the metal knee bolster by removing the two (2) 10mm bolts. (FIGURE I)



## 5 WINDSHIELD MOUNT ANTENNA INSTALLATION

1. Locate the position at the top of the windshield 1" left of center and 1" from the top of the headliner. (FIGURE J)
2. Using alcohol, clean the area thoroughly.
3. Remove the adhesive backing on the antenna assembly and apply the antenna to the windshield in the area indicated above. (FIGURE J)
4. Carefully pry the A-pillar trim panel away from the windshield while gently tucking the antenna cable behind the A-pillar trim panel starting at the headliner and finishing at the dashboard. Use caution not to damage the A-pillar trim panel. (FIGURE K)
5. Route the antenna cable to the opening on the left side of the driver's dashboard. The antenna cable will be plugged into the remote start control module later.



## 6 MAIN HARNESS CONNECTIONS

### 6-WAY IGNITION SWITCH CONNECTIONS

1. Locate the 6-pin ignition switch connector on the left side of the steering column and unplug. (FIGURE L)
2. Release the black tab that secures the factory ignition harness to the metal steering column frame. (FIGURE L)
3. Plug the previously unplugged vehicle's female ignition switch connector into the remote start harness 6-pin male ignition connector. (FIGURE M)
4. Plug the remote start harness 6-pin female connector into the vehicle's ignition switch (FIGURE N). Make sure that the wires exiting the 6-pin female ignition connector are bent towards the front of the vehicle to allow for enough clearance when re-assembling the lower steering column shroud. (FIGURE O)
5. Using the supplied 8" reusable tie wrap, secure the mated remote start harness 6-pin male and vehicle's 6-pin female connectors to the bottom of the metal bracket where the vehicle's ignition harness was previously secured (refer to step 2 above). When securing the mated connectors to the bottom of the metal bracket, make sure the connectors are in-line with the metal bracket. This will ensure for proper re-assembly of the lower steering column shroud. (FIGURE N)
6. Using one (1) of the supplied tie wraps, secure the vehicle's ignition harness to the multifunction switch frame, this will prevent rattling of the factory ignition harness and allow for proper re-assembly of the lower steering column shroud. (FIGURE N). This step is not required on vehicles equipped with steering wheel mounted shift controls (paddle shifter) NOTE: Temporarily leave the tie wrap loose to allow for securing of the immobilizer interface antenna harness later in the instruction manual.
7. Route the remote start harness down the left side of the steering column towards the A/T control module to the left of the brake pedal. NOTE: The RES harness will have extra length. When routing the harness down the steering column it will need to form a loop. This loop will allow for movement when operating the tilt / telescoping steering column. (FIGURE P)

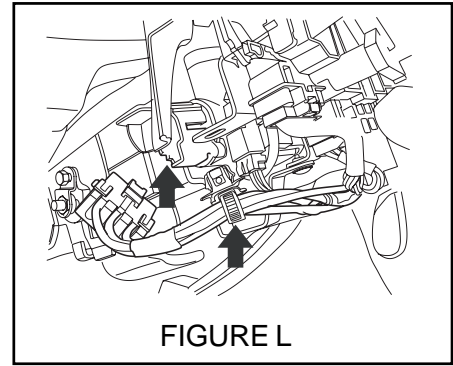


FIGURE L

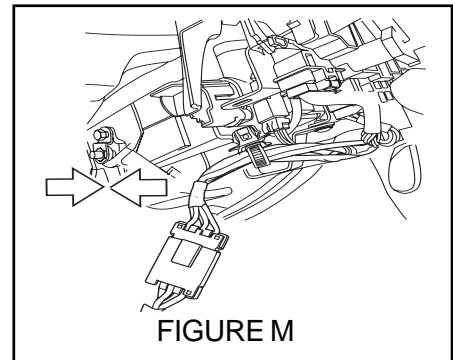


FIGURE M

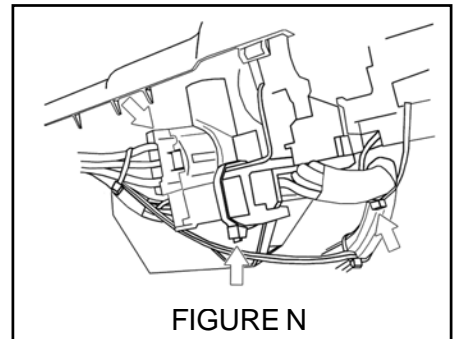


FIGURE N

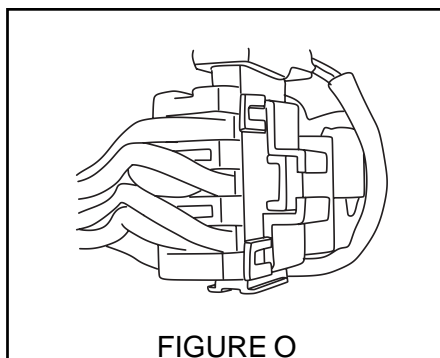


FIGURE O

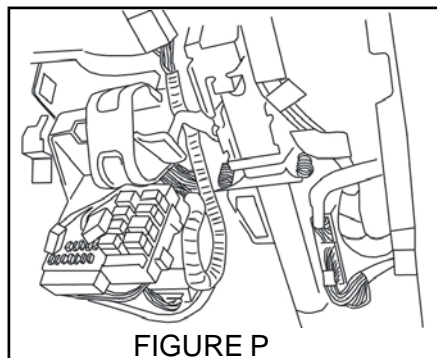
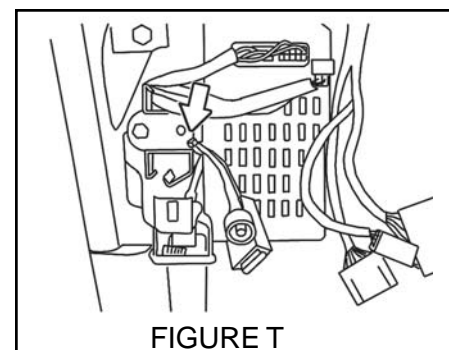
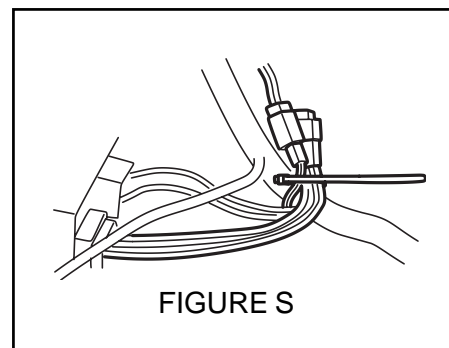
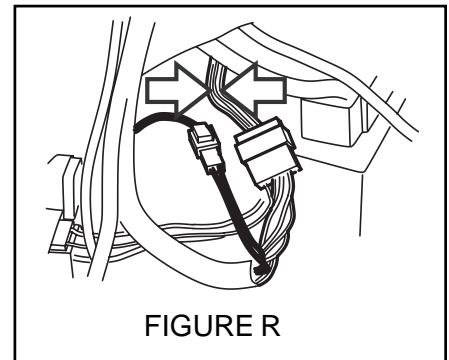
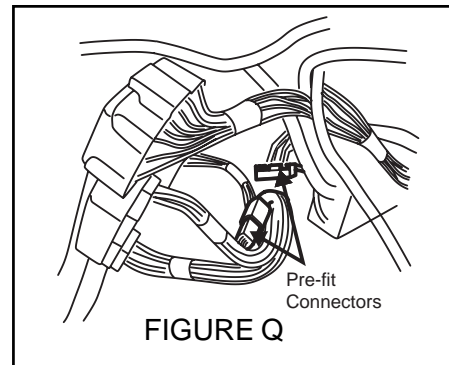


FIGURE P

## 6 MAIN HARNESS CONNECTIONS (continued)

### 24-PIN & 2-PIN PRE-FIT CONNECTIONS ABOVE & BEHIND FUSE PANEL

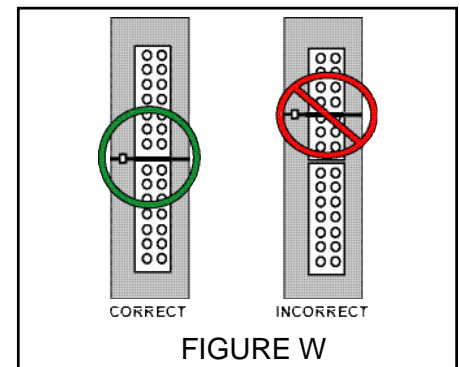
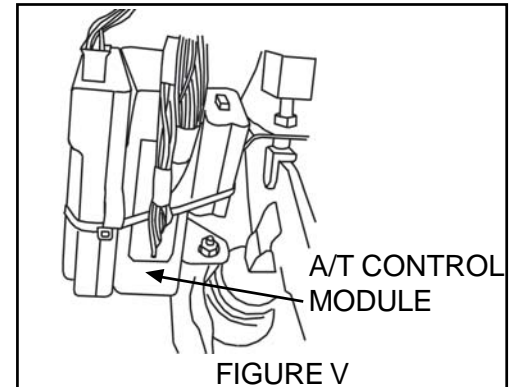
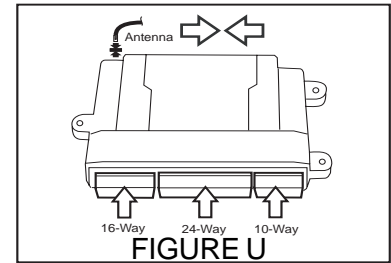
1. Locate the vehicle's 24-pin and 2-pin pre-fit connections located behind the fuse panel to the left of the steering column. These connectors are secured to the vehicle wiring using breakaway tape. (FIGURE Q)
2. When the 2-pin pre-fit connector is located, unplug and discard the mating wire jumper.
3. Carefully route the remote start harness 24-pin and 2-pin connectors behind the fuse panel, making sure that they will not interfere with any vehicle moving components and re-assembly of dashboard panels.
4. Plug the remote start harness 24-pin and 2-pin male connectors into the corresponding 24-pin and 2-pin vehicle female connectors. (FIGURE R)
5. Using one (1) of the supplied 8" tie wraps, secure the remote start wiring to existing vehicle wiring. (FIGURE S)
6. Route the remote start momentary programming button and 30-AMP fuse assembly to left side of the vehicles fuse panel assembly and secure the wiring to the fuse box assembly using one (1) of the supplied 8" tie wraps (FIGURE T). **DO NOT SECURE THE REMOTE START HARNESS TO ANY VEHICLE YELLOW HARNESSSES / CONNECTORS (AIRBAG SYSTEM).**





## 7 CONTROL MODULE CONNECTION & MOUNTING / IMMOBILIZER INTERFACE MOUNTING

1. Locate the vehicle's A/T Control Module mounted to the left side of the brake pedal.
2. Plug the 2-pin antenna cable connector into the 2-pin port on the back of the remote start control module and plug the 24 pin, 16 pin and 10 pin connectors into the remote start control module. **MAKE SURE THAT THE CONNECTORS ARE FIRMLY SEATED INTO THE REMOTE START CONTROL MODULE.** (FIGURE U) **NOTE:** The small 4-pin and 5-pin connectors on the control module are not used.
3. Secure the remote start control module to the left side of the A/T control module using the supplied velcro making sure the 3 connectors on the remote start control module are facing towards the rear of the vehicle. (FIGURE V) **NOTE:** The RES harness will have extra length. When routing the harness down the steering column it will need to form a loop. This loop will allow for movement when operating the tilt / telescoping steering column. Refer to FIGURE P on page 4.
4. Secure the immobilizer interface to the right side of the A/T control module using the supplied velcro. (FIGURE V)
5. As a secondary mounting provision, secure the remote start control module and immobilizer interface to the A/T control module using one (1) of the supplied 21" tie wraps. **NOTE: MAKE SURE THAT THE TIE WRAP DOES NOT ROUTE AGAINST ANY OF THE WIRING ON THE A/T CONTROL MODULE. THE TIE WRAP SHOULD ROUTE BETWEEN THE TWO CONNECTORS ON THE A/T CONTROL MODULE.** (FIGURE W)
6. Plug in the 4-pin immobilizer interface connector (in the remote start harness) into the 4-pin connector on the immobilizer interface. (FIGURE V)



# 8

## IMMOBILIZER INTERFACE ANTENNA RING MOUNTING

1. Locate the two (2) phillips screws at the steering column that secure the upper steering column shroud to the steering column assembly. Refer to FIGURE X for location reference.
2. Using a phillips screwdriver, loosen but do not remove the two (2) phillips screws. (FIGURE Y)
3. Locate the illuminated ignition cylinder ring and gently slip the immobilizer interface antenna ring behind the illuminated ring and behind the upper steering column shroud. Re-secure the previously loosened phillips screws securing the upper steering column shroud to the steering column assembly. (FIGURE Z)
4. Route the immobilizer interface antenna ring wiring down the left side of the steering column and plug into the 2-pin port on the immobilizer interface (refer back to FIGURE V). Secure the immobilizer interface antenna ring wiring to the existing vehicle wiring and remote start harness using four (4) of the supplied 4" tie wraps. Be sure to route wiring to avoid any steering column moving parts. A small amount of slack in the harness is required to accommodate movement of the tilt / telescopic steering wheel.

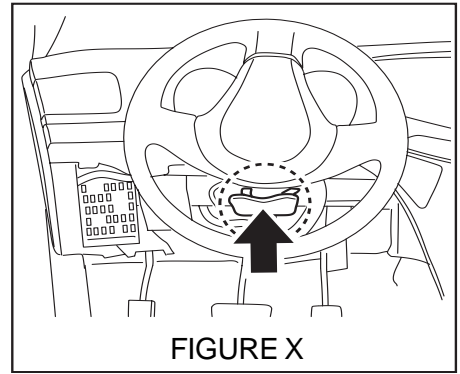


FIGURE X

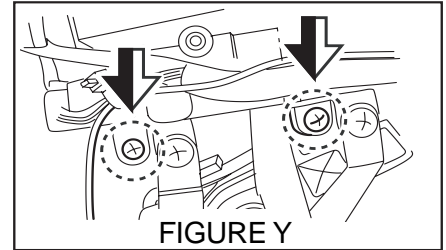


FIGURE Y

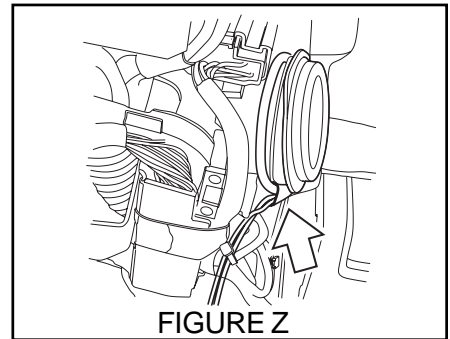
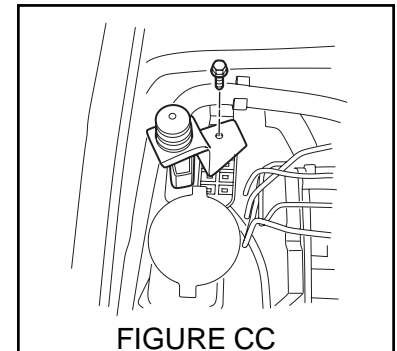
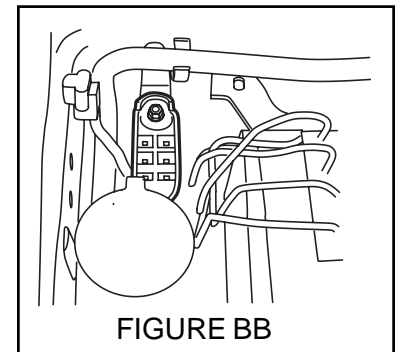
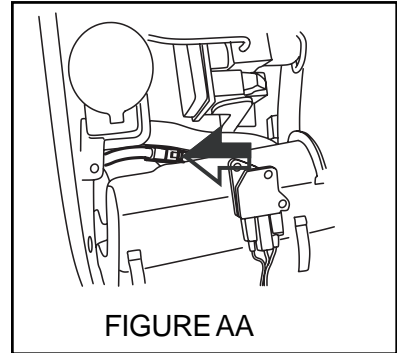


FIGURE Z

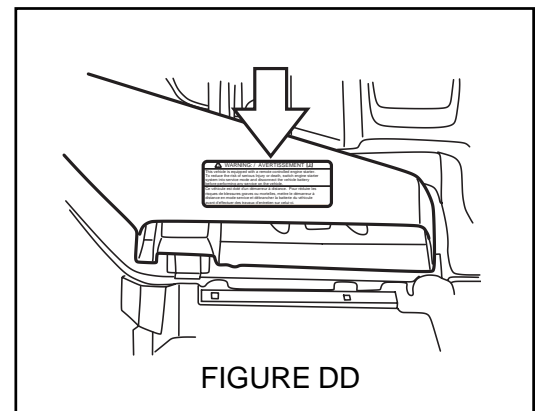
## 9 HOOD SAFETY SWITCH MOUNTING

1. In the engine compartment, locate the 2-pin pre-fit hood safety switch connector secured to the wire harness with breakaway tape in front of the power steering fluid reservoir tank on the passenger's side of the vehicle. (FIGURE AA)
2. Plug the supplied remote start harness 10" hood safety switch wiring harness to the vehicle's 2-pin pre-fit connector.
3. Remove the 10mm bolt securing the power steering reservoir tank to the vehicle's body directly in front of the passenger's side shock tower. (FIGURE BB)
4. Mount the hood safety switch bracket with the previously removed 10mm bolt securing the power steering reservoir tank to the vehicle's body, hold the bracket firmly when tightening. NOTE: The hood safety switch bracket must be mounted on an angle as shown in FIGURE CC to prevent contact with the power steering fluid hose. Torque the bolt to 10.8 Nm +/- 2 Nm (1.10 Kgf-m +/- 0.2 Kgf-m, 8 ft-lbs +/- 1.5 ft-lbs).
5. Securely mount (snap-in) the supplied hood safety switch in the bracket and plug the 2-pin female connector of the remote start harness 10" hood safety switch wiring harness to the base of the hood safety switch. (FIGURE CC)



## 10 UNDER HOOD WARNING LABEL MOUNTING

1. Using alcohol clean the top of the air intake plenum.
2. Remove the adhesive backing of the underhood warning label and secure to the top of the air intake plenum. (FIGURE DD)



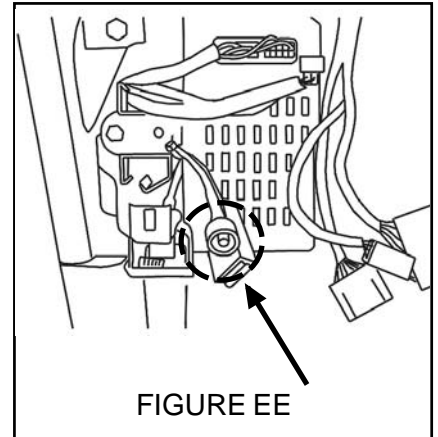
## 11 SYSTEM POWER-UP

After all connections are complete, re-connect the vehicle's negative battery terminal.  
**NOTE: THE VEHICLE'S HORN MAY BEGIN TO HONK ON AND OFF. IF THIS OCCURS, PRESSING THE RKE TRANSMITTER UNLOCK BUTTON OR TURNING THE IGNITION KEY TO THE RUN POSITION WILL SILENCE THE HORN.**

## 12 TACHOMETER IDLE SPEED PROGRAMMING

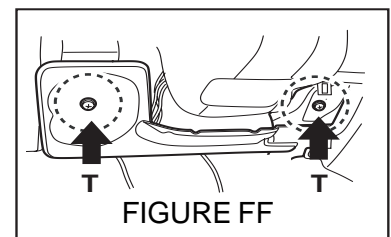
**NOTE: THE VEHICLE'S HOOD MUST BE CLOSED AND LATCHED THROUGHOUT THIS PROCESS**

1. Open driver's door (leave open throughout programming operation).
2. Turn the ignition key to the ON or RUN position.
3. Press and hold the momentary programming button for approximately 10 seconds until the vehicle's horn honks (3) times. (FIGURE EE)
4. Release the momentary programming button.
5. Press and release the remote engine start harness momentary programming button (secured to a wiring harness in front of the vehicle's dashboard mounted fuse box, FIGURE FF). The vehicle's horn will honk (4) times.
6. Press and release the vehicle's brake pedal (1) time. The horn will honk (1) time to indicate that the system has entered tachometer idle speed programming mode.
7. Start the vehicle with the ignition key. The RES system will begin honking the vehicle's horn 1 time every 3 seconds to indicate a valid tach signal.
8. When the engine has settled to a normal idle speed (normally 750-1000 RPM), press and release the brake pedal (1) time. The horn will honk (2) times to indicate the system has exited tach idle speed programming. **Be sure that the vehicle has maintained 750-1000 RPM idle speed prior to exiting tachometer idle speed programming.**
9. Turn the ignition key to the OFF position.



## 13 PANEL RE-ASSEMBLY

1. Re-install the knee bolster and torque the 10mm bolts to 10.8 Nm +/- 2 Nm (1.10 Kgf-m +/- 0.2 Kgf-m, 8 ft-lbs +/- 1.5 ft-lbs). (FIGURE FF)
2. Reinstall the left side dash panel (refer to FIGURE H).
3. Plug in any previously removed connectors and re-install the driver's side lower dashboard panel. Secure in place with 1 phillips screw on the lower right hand side of the panel (refer to FIGURES G & F).
4. Plug in the diagnostic connector and reinstall the driver's side under dashboard panel, securing in place with 2 phillips fasteners and 1 pressure fastener (refer to FIGURES D & C).
5. Reinstall the steering column shroud and secure with the phillips screw (refer to FIGURE E).
6. Reinstall the driver's side sill plate and kick panel cover (refer to FIGURE A).
7. At the end of the installation, insert the Quick Reference Card into the Owner's Information Kit.



Most new Subaru vehicles are equipped with an immobilizer system that will act as an anti-theft device preventing the vehicle from starting if an incorrect ignition key is used to start the vehicle. Each vehicle ignition key is equipped with a transponder that will transmit an ID code each time the vehicle ignition is turned on with the ignition key. During the Select Monitor (SMIII) registration process, the transponder ID code is registered by the vehicle's body integrated unit (BIU). For security reasons all available ignition keys are required to be registered any time a new key is added or replaced.

During the remote start process there will be no ignition key present to transmit a proper ID code when the vehicle is started. To simulate an ignition key during the remote start process an immobilizer interface is used to transmit a registered ID code to the ignition switch through an antenna ring that is mounted around the vehicle's ignition switch.

During the registration process, the remote start immobilizer interface will be treated as an ignition key by the vehicle. To simulate turning the ignition to the RUN position we will use a combination of pressing the remote start momentary programming button (mounted to a harness in front of the vehicle's dashboard fusebox) and activating the remote start system by pressing the START button on the remote start transmitter two (2) times.

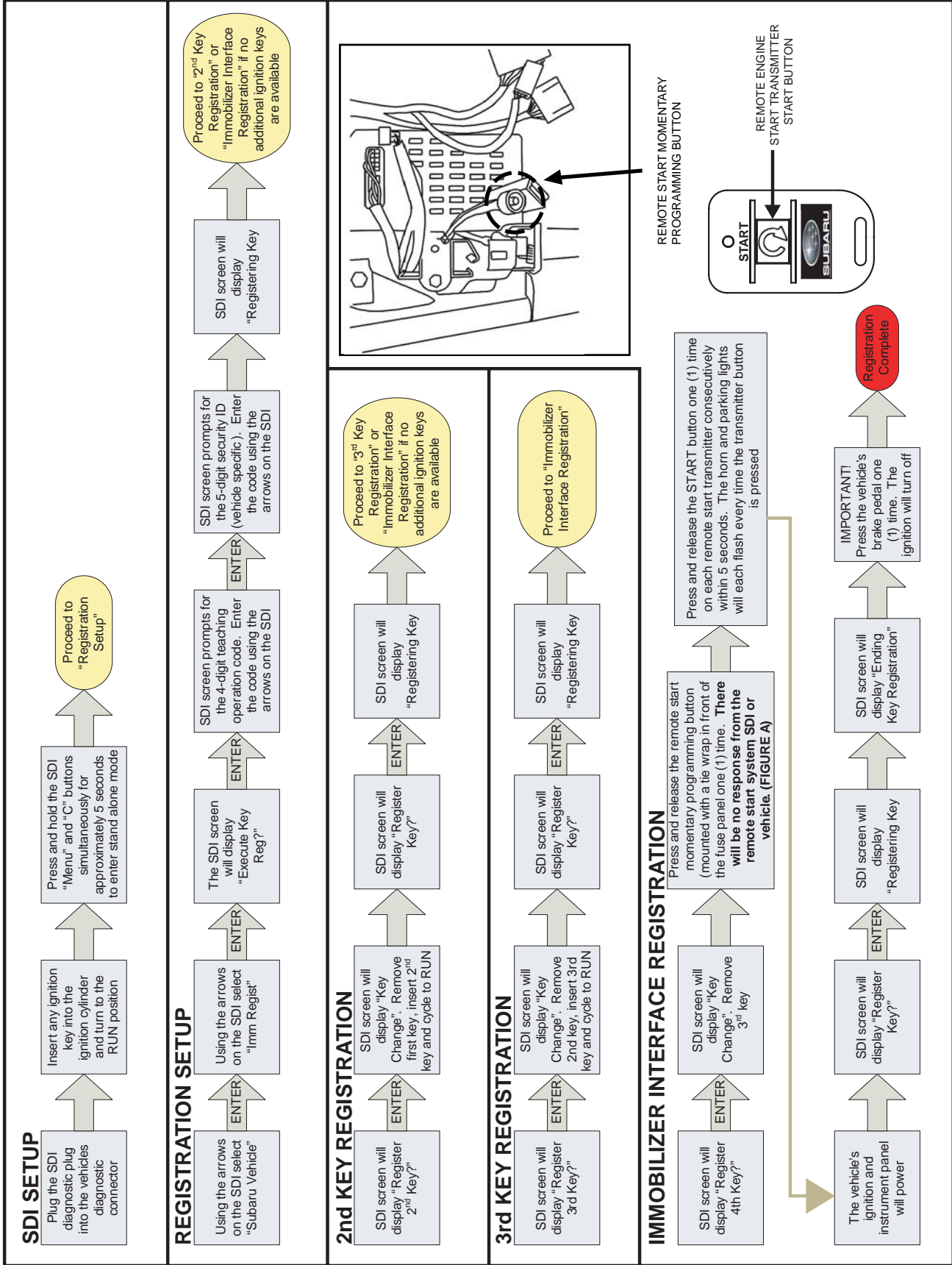
- Pressing the momentary programming button one (1) time will delay the remote start crank output for 60 - seconds. This will prevent the starter from cranking while the SDI is attempting to program the immobilizer interface as an ignition key.
- Activating the remote start system by pressing the remote start transmitter button two (2) times will both activate the immobilizer interface and power the ignition circuits. This combination will make the vehicle think that the ignition switch was turned to the RUN position using an actual ignition key.

Under normal situations the immobilizer interface will be registered to the vehicle as the 4th key. In the event that all vehicle ignition keys are not present at time of registration, the immobilizer interface should be registered as the last key (example: 2 ignition keys are available, the immobilizer interface is registered as the third key).

#### POINTS TO REMEMBER

1. Prior to programming the immobilizer interface, the vehicle tach idle speed section of the installation manual must be completed first.
2. The vehicle's hood must remain closed and latched during the entire process.
3. The vehicle's battery must be fully charged.
4. All ignition keys (3 keys are present with a new vehicle) must be present prior to programming. Any ignition key that is not registered during the immobilizer interface programming process will no longer start the vehicle.
5. The immobilizer teaching operation code for all Legacy and Outback vehicles will need to be entered at this time.
6. The vehicle specific five (5) digit security ID will be required every time the registration process is completed. The vehicle security ID is located on the larger of the 2 vehicle key tags.
7. Immobilizer interface programming / key registration will be completed using the "Subaru Diagnostic Interface" (SDI) operating in "Stand Alone Mode". **When operating in stand alone mode, the SDI does not need to be plugged into the computer**

PART NUMBER H001SAG100	ISSUE 02	DATE 05/23/07	SUBARU OF AMERICA	10 OF 12
---------------------------	-------------	------------------	-------------------	----------





## POST INSTALLATION CHECKLIST

- 1. REMOTE ENGINE START- Make sure the key is removed from the ignition switch and the engine hood is closed. Press the START button twice within 3 seconds - The parking lights should flash twice, the horn should beep twice then the vehicle should crank and start. Once started the parking lights will turn on and stay on signifying the vehicle is started.
- 2. RUNNING WITH IGNITION KEY - While the vehicle is running under remote engine start, confirm that all function's (lock, unlock, etc.) operate properly on the FACTORY transmitter. Once FACTORY transmitter functionality is confirmed press the UNLOCK button on FACTORY transmitter and enter the vehicle, insert the ignition key and turn the ignition to the run position, press the brake pedal - At this time the vehicle should be running by the ignition key and the remote engine start was shut down when the brake pedal was pressed. Turn off the ignition switch and the vehicle should shut off.
- 3. BRAKE PEDAL SAFETY - Restart the vehicle using the remote engine start, enter the vehicle, press the brake pedal - The vehicle should shut off.
- 4. KEY-IN-SENSE - Insert the ignition key into the ignition switch but keep in off position, activate the remote engine start function - the vehicle should flash the lights as if it is going to start but then the horn should beep twice and the remote engine starter does not attempt to start the vehicle since it senses the key in the ignition.
- 5. HOOD SAFETY SWITCH - Open the engine hood and activate the remote engine start function - The horn should beep two additional times signifying that hood safety switch is tripped and the vehicle will not start.
- 6. HEATER / AC FUNCTION - Insert the ignition key and turn the ignition to the run position, preset the vehicle's heater or air conditioning to the on position then turn the ignition off and remove the ignition key. Activate the remote engine start system and verify that the heater or air conditioning turns on to the preset setting.
- 7. 15-MINUTE RUN TIME - Activate the remote engine start system and allow the system to run for the 15-minute preset run time. The remote engine start system should shut the vehicle off in 15 minutes (+/- 10 seconds).
- 8. SECURITY DISARM VERIFICATION - Activate the remote engine starter. After the vehicle has started, manually unlock the vehicle's doors using the ignition key and open any door. The horn should begin a steady honk and the engine will shut down. Press the UNLOCK button on the FACTORY transmitter and verify that the horn stops honking (the vehicle will not automatically restart).
- 9. TRANSMITTER FUNCTIONALITY VERIFICATION - Activate the remote engine starter using both of the supplied single button transmitters.

FUNCTIONAL TESTING IS NOW COMPLETE.

PART NUMBER H001SAG100	ISSUE 02	DATE 05/23/07	SUBARU OF AMERICA	12 OF 12
---------------------------	-------------	------------------	-------------------	----------



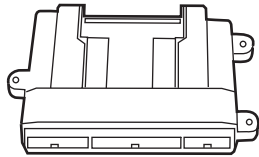
**GENUINE PARTS**

# INSTALLATION INSTRUCTIONS

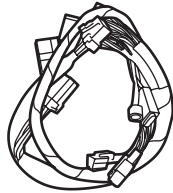
PART NUMBER: H001SXA100

DESCRIPTION: REMOTE ENGINE START SYSTEM

## 1 KIT CONTENTS



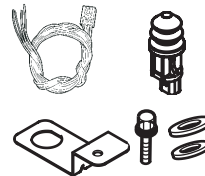
Remote Start Control Module w/ Software Card and Fuses  
Quantity= 1



Remote Start Wiring Harness w/ 30 AMP Fuse  
Quantity= 1



Remote Start Transmitters  
Quantity= 2



Hood Switch Mounting Bracket, Switch and 10" Jumper Harness  
Quantity=1



Remote Start Immobilizer Interface w/ Antenna Ring  
Quantity=1



Remote Start Patch Antenna  
Quantity=1



Underhood Warning Label  
Quantity=1



Installation Instructions  
Quantity=1



Quick Reference Card  
Quantity=1

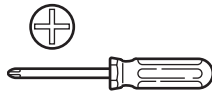


Tie Wraps  
4" Quantity= 4  
8" Quantity= 12  
21" Quantity= 2

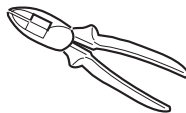
## 2 TOOLS REQUIRED



10 mm Socket and Ratchet



Phillips Screwdriver Short and Standard



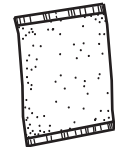
Wire Cutters



Panel Removal Tool



Electrical Tape



Alcohol and Towel



## 3 MEANING OF CHARACTERS



: Remove



: Install



: Disconnect



: Connect



: Location of Clip or Screw

T

: Tighten Torque



: Loosen



: Discard



: Re-use

**CAUTION: DO NOT SECURE ANY REMOTE START HARNESSSES / MODULES TO ANY YELLOW HARNESSSES / CONNECTORS (AIRBAG SYSTEM) IN THE VEHICLE.**

PART NUMBER  
H001SXA100

ISSUE  
01

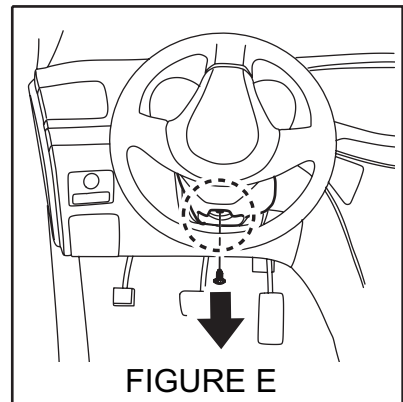
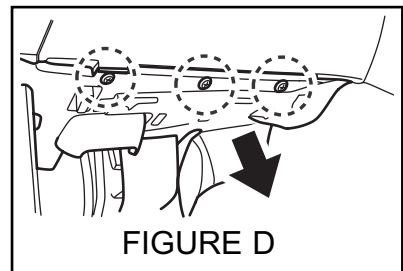
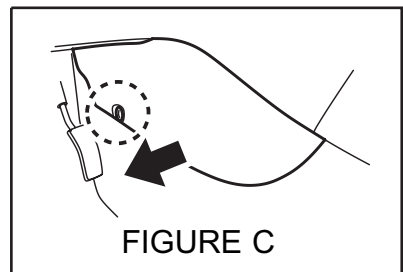
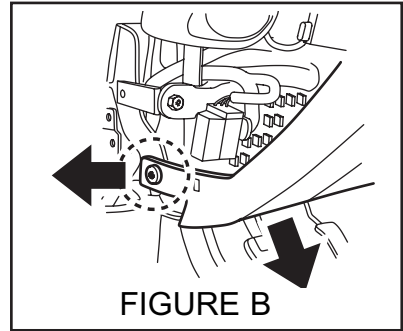
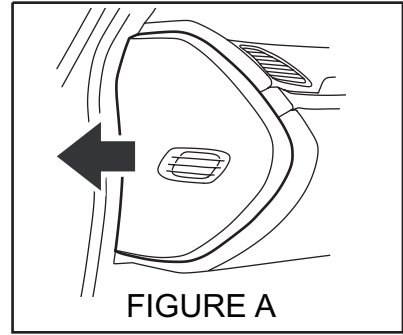
DATE  
03/02/07

SUBARU OF AMERICA

1 OF 12

**4****VEHICLE PREPARATION**

1. Using a 10mm socket/ratchet, disconnect the negative battery terminal.
2. Using a panel removal tool, carefully remove the left side driver's dash panel cover. (FIGURE A) Using a phillips screwdriver, remove the plastic screw fastener securing the left side dashboard panel (this will be mounted under the previously removed left side dash panel. (FIGURE B)
3. Using a panel removal tool, carefully remove the driver's side lower center console panel. (FIGURE C)
4. Using a phillips screwdriver, remove the 3 plastic phillips fasteners holding the driver's under dashboard panel and leave loose. (FIGURE D)
5. Using a phillips screwdriver, remove the phillips screw on the underside of the steering column shroud and carefully unsnap and remove the lower panel. Be careful not to damage the lower dashboard panel. (FIGURE E)



## VEHICLE PREPARATION (CONTINUED)

6. Using a panel removal tool, un-clip and remove the driver's side lower dashboard panel and un-plug any connectors. (FIGURE F)
7. Unplug the diagnostic plug by releasing the side clip on the connector. Unplug the 2-way connector for the under dashboard light and remove the driver's under dashboard panel. (FIGURE G)
8. Unplug the 2-way connector and air tube connected to the right side of the metal knee bolster. Remove the metal knee bolster by removing the (4) 10mm bolts. (FIGURE H)

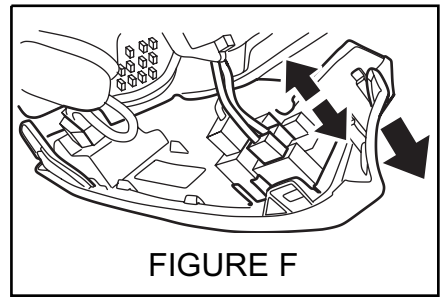


FIGURE F

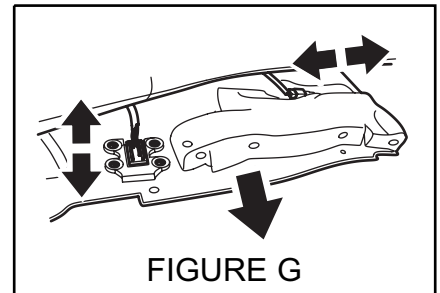


FIGURE G

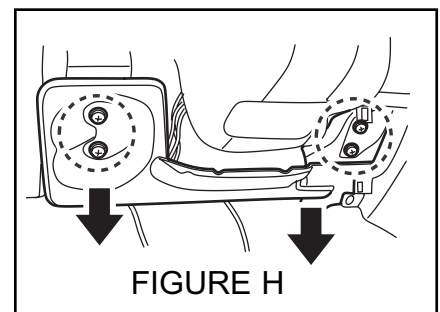


FIGURE H

## 5

### WINDSHIELD MOUNT ANTENNA INSTALLATION

1. Locate the position at the top of the windshield 1" left of center and 1" from top of headliner. (FIGURE I)
2. Using alcohol clean the area thoroughly.
3. Remove the adhesive backing on the antenna assembly and apply the antenna to the windshield in the area indicated above. (FIGURE I)
4. Using a panel removal tool, carefully remove the airbag labeled cap at the top of the A-pillar and remove the 10mm bolt. (FIGURE J)
5. Gently remove the A-pillar panel starting at the top releasing the pressure clip at the bottom of the panel. (FIGURE J)

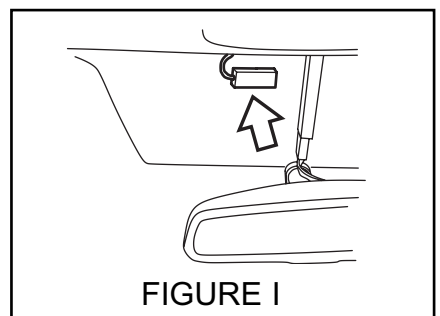


FIGURE I

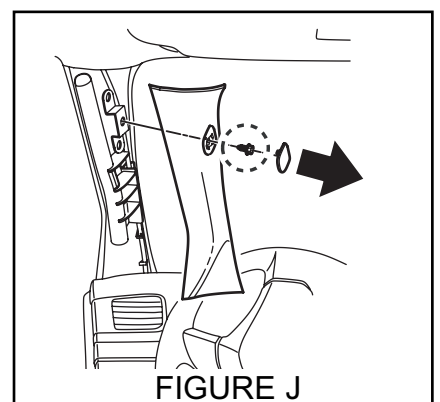
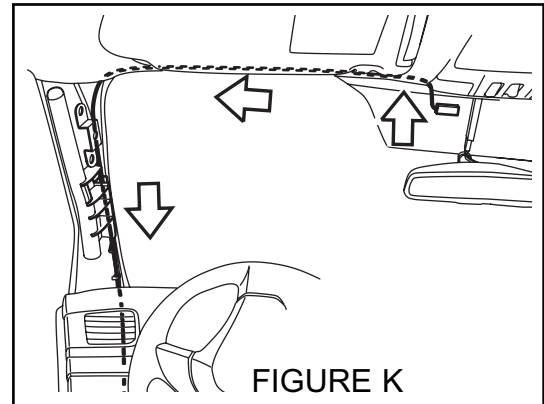


FIGURE J

## WINDSHIELD MOUNT ANTENNA INSTALLATION (CONTINUED)

6. Route the antenna cable under the headliner and down the A-pillar securing into the plastic clips holding the sunroof drain tube. Route the cable to the opening on the left side of driver's dashboard. The antenna cable will be plugged into the remote start control module later. (FIGURE K)
7. Reinstall the A-pillar panel. Torque the 10mm bolt to 10.8Nm +/- 2Nm (1.10 Kgf-m +/- 0.2 Kgf-m, 8 ft-lbs +/- 1.5 ft-lbs). (FIGURE J)

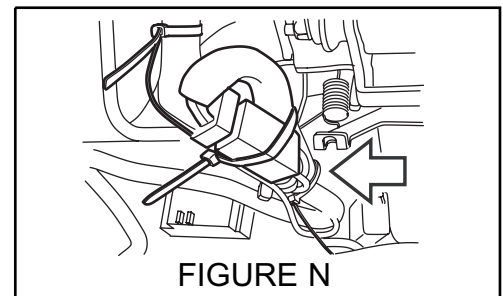
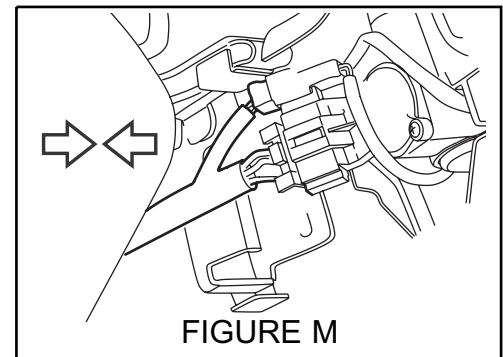
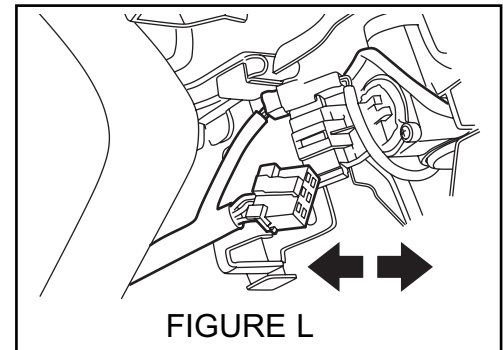


## 6

### MAIN HARNESS CONNECTIONS

#### 6-WAY IGNITION SWITCH CONNECTIONS

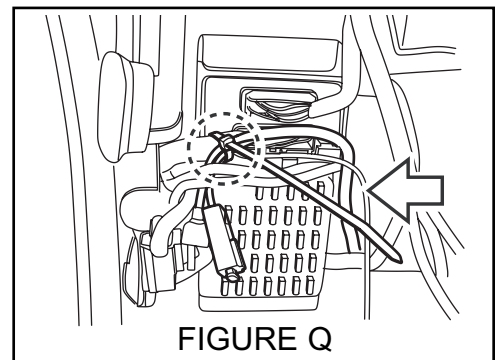
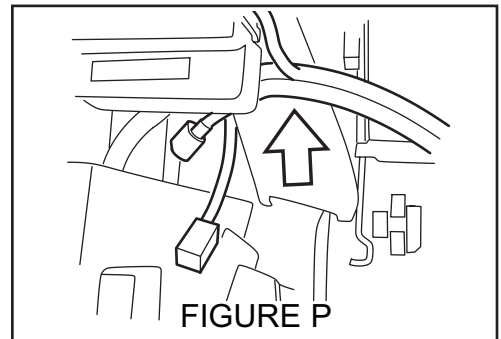
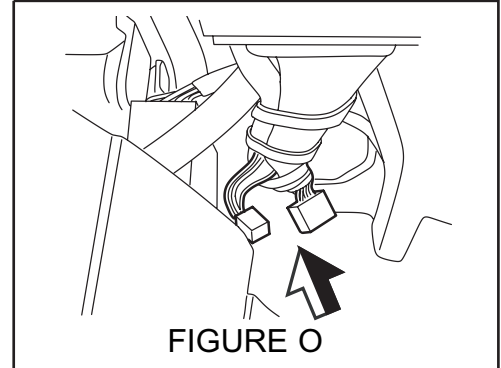
1. Locate the 6-pin ignition switch connector on the left side of the steering column and unplug. (FIGURE L)
2. Plug the remote start harness 6-pin female ignition switch connector into the vehicle's ignition switch and plug the previously unplugged vehicle's female ignition switch connector into the remote start harness 6-pin male ignition switch connector. (FIGURE M)
3. Using 2 of the supplied 8" tie wraps, secure the remote start harness wiring to the existing vehicle wiring, making sure that it will not interfere with the operation of the tilt steering column and re-assembly of vehicle panels. (FIGURE N)



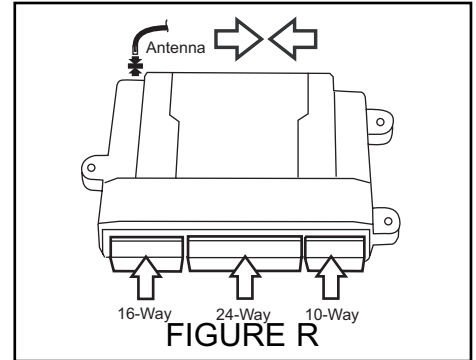
## MAIN HARNESS CONNECTIONS (CONTINUED)

### 24-PIN AND 2-PIN UPPER LEFT KICK PANEL PRE-FIT CONNECTIONS

1. Locate the vehicle's 24-pin and 2-pin pre-fit connections located in the upper left kick panel area. These connectors are secured to the vehicle wiring using breakaway tape. (FIGURE O)
2. When the 2-pin pre-fit connector is located, unplug and discard the mating wire jumper.
3. Carefully route the remote start harness 24-pin and 2-pin connectors to the upper left kick panel area, making sure that they will not interfere with any vehicle moving components and re-assembly of dashboard panels. (FIGURE P)
4. Plug the remote start harness 24-pin and 2-pin males connectors into the corresponding 24-pin and 2-pin vehicle female connectors.
5. Using 2 of the supplied 8" tie wraps, secure the remote start wiring to existing vehicle wiring.
6. Route the remote start harness programming button and 30-AMP fuse assembly to the vehicles fuse box assembly and secure the wiring to existing vehicle wiring using one of the supplied 8" tie wraps. (FIGURE Q). **DO NOT SECURE THE REMOTE START HARNESS TO ANY VEHICLE YELLOW HARNESSES / CONNECTORS (AIRBAG SYSTEM).**

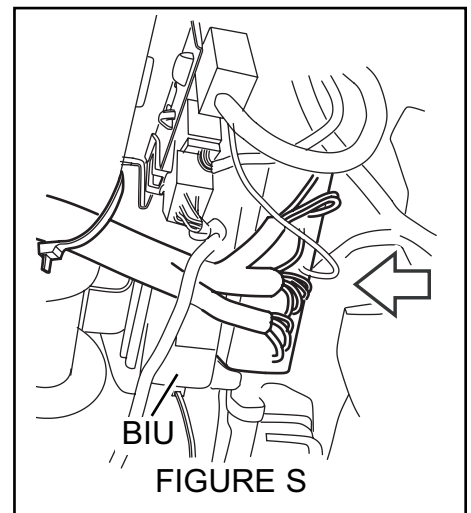


1. Route the previously installed antenna cable towards the remote start harness 24-pin, 16-pin and 10-pin connectors. At the top of the steering column secure the antenna cable along the way with 2 of the supplied 8" tie wraps.
2. Plug the 24-pin, 16-pin and 10-pin connectors into the front of the remote start control module making sure the connectors are completely seated (they will only fit into the control module one way). (FIGURE R) Plug the 2-pin antenna cable connector into the 2-pin port on the back of the remote start control module. NOTE: The small 4-pin and 5-pin connectors on the control module are not used.



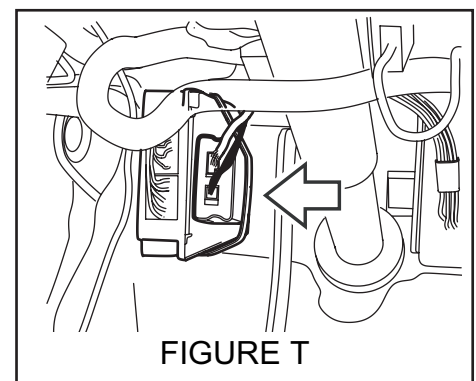
### REMOTE ENGINE START CONTROL MODULE MOUNTING

1. Locate the vehicle's body integrated unit (BIU) mounted to the bulkhead between the gas pedal and steering column.
2. Using alcohol clean the area on the right side of the BIU. Remove the adhesive backing on the back of the remote start control module.
3. Secure the remote start control module to the right side of the BIU making sure the 3 connectors on the remote start control module are pointing towards the rear of the vehicle. (FIGURE S)
4. As a secondary mounting provision, secure the remote start control module to the BIU using the supplied 24" tie wrap.



### IMMOBILIZER INTERFACE MOUNTING

1. Locate the A/T Control Module to the left of the brake pedal. Using alcohol, clean an area on the A/T control module metal bracket. Using the supplied velcro and 24" tie wrap, secure the immobilizer interface to the A/T Control Module. (FIGURE T)
2. Plug in 4 pin immobilizer interface connector (in harness) to 4 pin connector on interface box. (FIGURE T)





1. Locate the 2 phillips screws at the steering column that secure the upper steering column shroud to the steering column assembly. Refer to FIGURE U for location reference.
2. Using a phillips screwdriver, loosen but do not remove the 2 phillips screws. (FIGURE V)
3. Locate the illuminated ignition cylinder ring and gently slip the immobilizer interface antenna ring behind the illuminated ring and behind the upper steering column shroud. Re-secure the previously loosened phillips screws securing the upper steering column shroud to the steering column assembly. (FIGURE W)
4. Route the immobilizer interface antenna ring wiring to the left side of the steering column and down the steering column and plug into the 2-pin port on the immobilizer interface (refer back to FIGURE T). Secure the immobilizer interface antenna ring wiring to the existing vehicle wiring and remote start harness using 2 of the supplied 4" tie wraps. Be sure to route wiring to avoid the lower steering column shroud screw hole and any steering column moving parts. (FIGURE X)

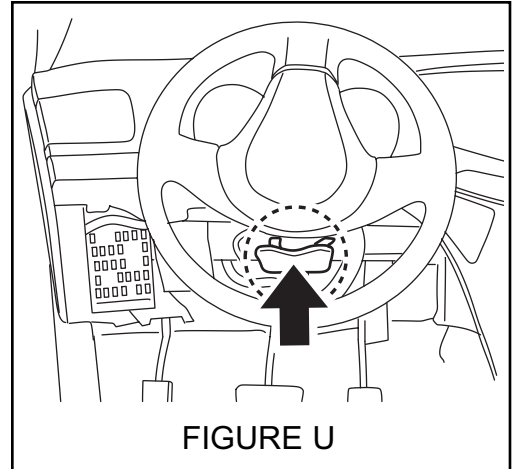


FIGURE U

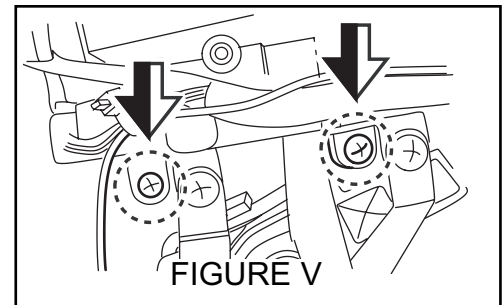


FIGURE V

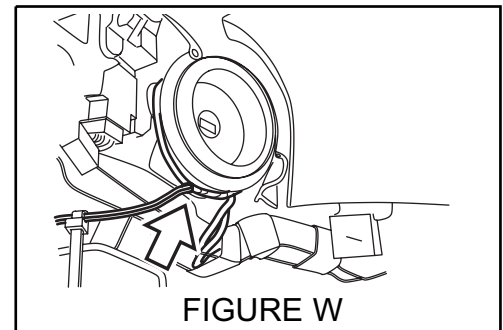


FIGURE W

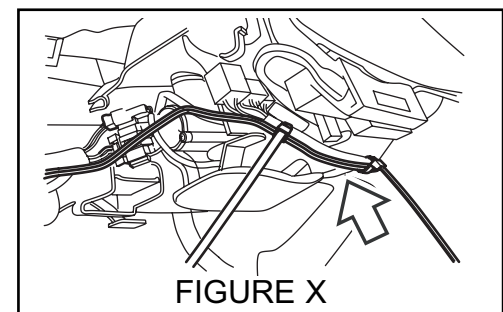
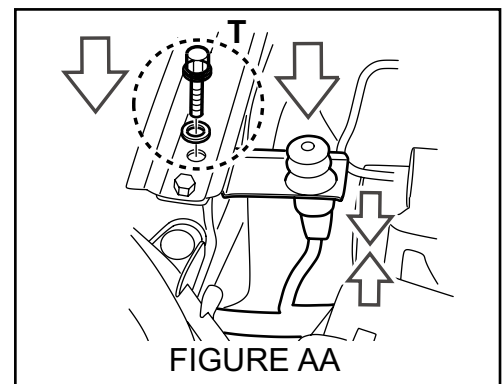
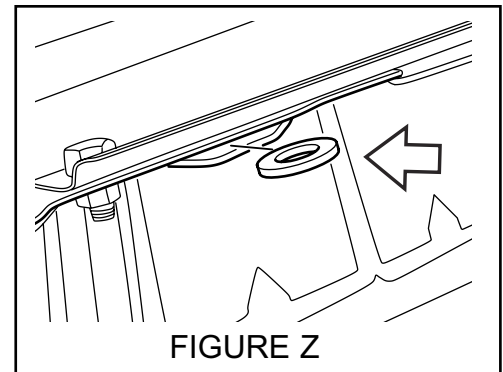
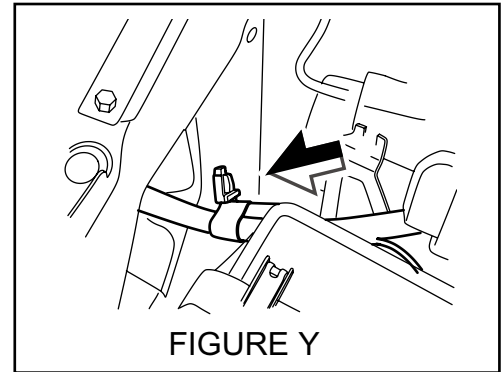


FIGURE X

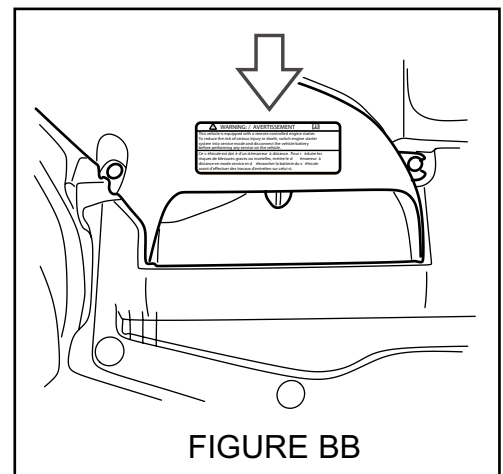
## 9 HOOD SAFETY SWITCH MOUNTING

1. In the engine compartment, locate the 2-pin pre-fit hood safety switch connector secured to the wire harness with breakaway tape in front of the shock tower on the passenger's side of the vehicle. (FIGURE Y)
2. Plug the supplied remote start harness 10" hood safety switch wiring harness to the vehicle's 2-pin pre-fit connector.
3. Insert the thicker of the two supplied washers into the space between the fender and vehicle's body located behind the first fender mounting bolt on the passengers side. (FIGURE Z)
4. Mount the hood safety switch bracket to the vehicle's fender in the predrilled hole using the supplied 10mm bolt and smaller washer (FIGURE AA). Torque the bolt to 10.8 Nm +/- 2 Nm (1.10 Kgf-m +/- 0.2 Kgf-m, 8 ft-lbs +/- 1.5 ft-lbs).
5. Securely mount (snap-in) the supplied hood safety switch in the bracket and plug the 2-way female connector of remote start harness 10" hood safety switch wiring harness to the base of the hood safety switch. (FIGURE AA)



## 10 UNDER HOOD WARNING LABEL MOUNTING

1. Using alcohol clean the top of the air intake plenum.
2. Remove the adhesive backing of the underhood warning label and secure to the top of the air intake plenum. (FIGURE BB)



## 11 SYSTEM POWER-UP

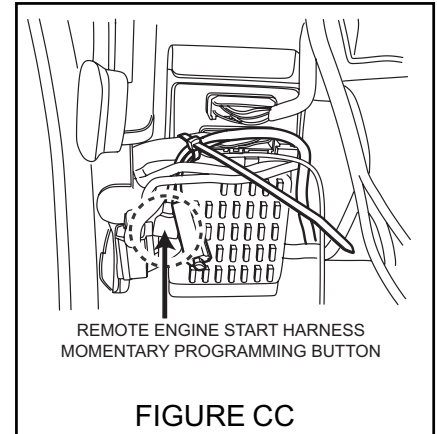
After all connections are complete, re-connect the vehicle's negative battery terminal.

**NOTE: THE VEHICLE'S HORN MAY BEGIN TO HONK ON AND OFF. IF THIS OCCURS, PRESSING THE RKE TRANSMITTER UNLOCK BUTTON OR TURNING THE IGNITION KEY TO THE RUN POSITION WILL SILENCE THE HORN.**

## 12 TACHOMETER IDLE SPEED PROGRAMMING

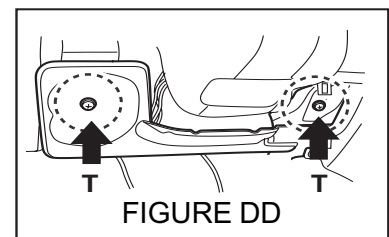
**NOTE: THE VEHICLE'S HOOD MUST BE CLOSED AND LATCHED THROUGHOUT THIS PROCESS**

1. Open driver's door (leave open throughout programming operation).
2. Turn the ignition key to the ON or RUN position.
3. Press and hold the momentary programming button for approximately 10 seconds until the vehicle's horn honks (3) times. (FIGURE CC)
4. Release the momentary programming button.
5. Press and release the remote engine start harness momentary programming button (secured to a wiring harness in front of the vehicle's dashboard mounted fuse box, FIGURE FF). The vehicle's horn will honk (4) times.
6. Press and release the vehicle's brake pedal (1) time. The horn will honk (1) time to indicate that the system has entered tachometer idle speed programming mode.
7. Start the vehicle with the ignition key. The RES system will begin honking the vehicle's horn 1 time every 3 seconds to indicate a valid tach signal.
8. When the engine has settled to a normal idle speed (normally 750-1000 RPM), press and release the brake pedal (1) time. The horn will honk (2) times to indicate the system has exited tach idle speed programming. **Be sure that the vehicle has maintained 750-1000 RPM idle speed prior to exiting tachometer idle speed programming.**
9. Turn the ignition key to the OFF position.



## 13 PANEL RE-ASSEMBLY

1. Re-install the knee bolster and torque the 10mm bolts to 10.8 Nm +/- 2 Nm (1.10 Kgf-m +/- 0.2 Kgf-m, 8 ft-lbs +/- 1.5 ft-lbs). (FIGURE DD)
2. Plug in any previously removed connectors and re-install the driver's side lower dashboard panel. Secure in place with the phillips fasteners on the side of the dashboard opening (refer to FIGURES B & F).
3. Plug in the diagnostic connector and under dashboard light connector and reinstall the driver's side under dashboard panel, securing in place with three (3) phillips fasteners (refer to FIGURE D).
4. Reinstall the steering column shroud and secure with the phillips screw (refer to FIGURE E).
5. Reinstall the driver's side lower center console panel (refer to FIGURE C).
6. Re-install the left side driver's dashboard panel (refer to FIGURE C).
7. At the end of the installation, insert the Quick Reference Card into the Owner's Information Kit.



Most new Subaru vehicles are equipped with an immobilizer system that will act as an anti-theft device preventing the vehicle from starting if an incorrect ignition key is used to start the vehicle. Each vehicle ignition key is equipped with a transponder that will transmit an ID code each time the vehicle ignition is turned on with the ignition key. During the Select Monitor (SMIII) registration process, the transponder ID code is registered by the vehicle's body integrated unit (BIU). For security reasons all available ignition keys are required to be registered any time a new key is added or replaced.

During the remote start process there will be no ignition key present to transmit a proper ID code when the vehicle is started. To simulate an ignition key during the remote start process an immobilizer interface is used to transmit a registered ID code to the ignition switch through an antenna ring that is mounted around the vehicle's ignition switch.

During the registration process, the remote start immobilizer interface will be treated as an ignition key by the vehicle. To simulate turning the ignition to the RUN position we will use a combination of pressing the remote start momentary programming button (mounted to a harness in front of the vehicle's dashboard fusebox) and activating the remote start system by pressing the START button on the remote start transmitter two (2) times.

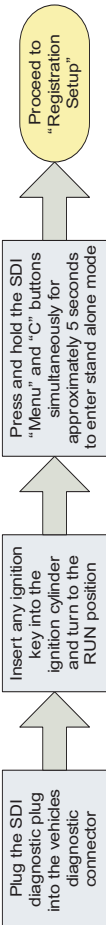
- Pressing the momentary programming button one (1) time will delay the remote start crank output for 60 - seconds. This will prevent the starter from cranking while the SDI is attempting to program the immobilizer interface as an ignition key.
- Activating the remote start system by pressing the remote start transmitter button two (2) times will both activate the immobilizer interface and power the ignition circuits. This combination will make the vehicle think that the ignition switch was turned to the RUN position using an actual ignition key.

Under normal situations the immobilizer interface will be registered to the vehicle as the 4th key. In the event that all vehicle ignition keys are not present at time of registration, the immobilizer interface should be registered as the last key (example: 2 ignition keys are available, the immobilizer interface is registered as the third key).

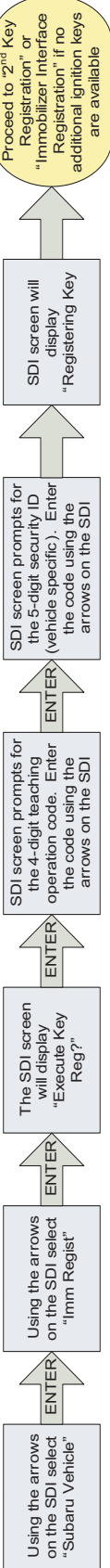
#### POINTS TO REMEMBER

1. Prior to programming the immobilizer interface, the vehicle tach idle speed section of the installation manual must be completed first.
2. The vehicle's hood must remain closed and latched during the entire process.
3. The vehicle's battery must be fully charged.
4. All ignition keys (3 keys are present with a new vehicle) must be present prior to programming. Any ignition key that is not registered during the immobilizer interface programming process will no longer start the vehicle.
5. The immobilizer teaching operation code will need to be entered at this time.
6. The vehicle specific five (5) digit security ID will be required every time the registration process is completed. The vehicle security ID is located on the larger of the 2 vehicle key tags.
7. Immobilizer interface programming / key registration will be completed using the "Subaru Diagnostic Interface" (SDI) operating in "Stand Alone Mode". **When operating in stand alone mode, the SDI does not need to be plugged into the computer**

**SDI SETUP**



**REGISTRATION SETUP**



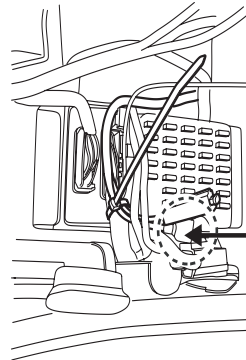
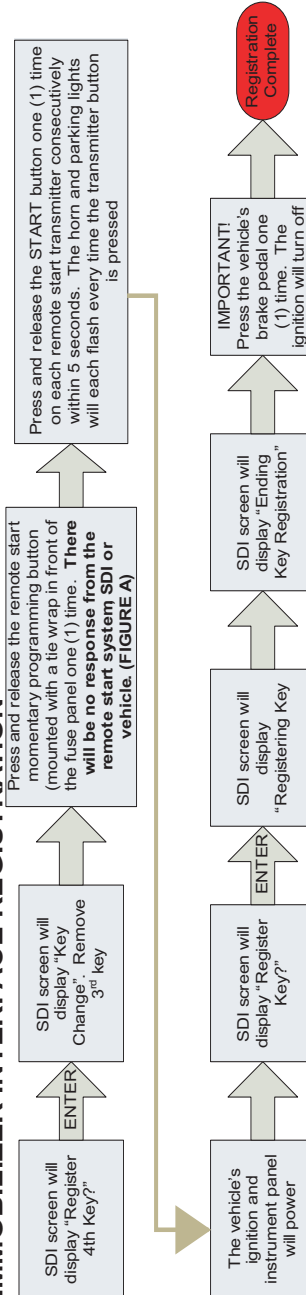
**2nd KEY REGISTRATION**



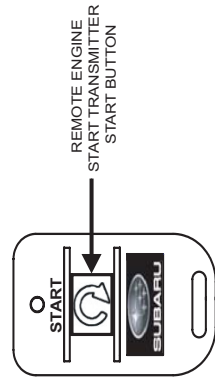
**3rd KEY REGISTRATION**



**IMMOBILIZER INTERFACE REGISTRATION**



REMOTE ENGINE START HARNESS MOMENTARY PROGRAMMING BUTTON



REMOTE ENGINE START TRANSMITTER START BUTTON

## POST INSTALLATION CHECKLIST

- 1. REMOTE ENGINE START- Make sure the key is removed from the ignition switch and the engine hood is closed. Press the START button twice within 3 seconds - The parking lights should flash twice, the horn should beep twice then the vehicle should crank and start. Once started the parking lights will turn on and stay on signifying the vehicle is started.
- 2. RUNNING WITH IGNITION KEY - While the vehicle is running under remote engine start, confirm that all function's (lock, unlock, etc.) operate properly on the FACTORY transmitter. Once FACTORY transmitter functionality is confirmed press the UNLOCK button on FACTORY transmitter and enter the vehicle, insert the ignition key and turn the ignition to the run position, press the brake pedal - At this time the vehicle should be running by the ignition key and the remote engine start was shut down when the brake pedal was pressed. Turn off the ignition switch and the vehicle should shut off.
- 3. BRAKE PEDAL SAFETY - Restart the vehicle using the remote engine start, enter the vehicle, press the brake pedal - The vehicle should shut off.
- 4. KEY-IN-SENSE - Insert the ignition key into the ignition switch but keep in off position, activate the remote engine start function - the vehicle should flash the lights as if it is going to start but then the horn should beep twice and the remote engine starter does not attempt to start the vehicle since it senses the key in the ignition.
- 5. HOOD SAFETY SWITCH - Open the engine hood and activate the remote engine start function - The horn should beep two additional times signifying that hood safety switch is tripped and the vehicle will not start.
- 6. HEATER / AC FUNCTION - Insert the ignition key and turn the ignition to the run position, preset the vehicle's heater or air conditioning to the on position then turn the ignition off and remove the ignition key. Activate the remote engine start system and verify that the heater or air conditioning turns on to the preset setting.
- 7. 15-MINUTE RUN TIME - Activate the remote engine start system and allow the system to run for the 15-minute preset run time. The remote engine start system should shut the vehicle off in 15 minutes (+/- 10 seconds).
- 8. SECURITY DISARM VERIFICATION - Activate the remote engine starter. After the vehicle has started, manually unlock the vehicle's doors using the ignition key and open any door. The horn should begin a steady honk and the engine will shut down. Press the UNLOCK button on the FACTORY transmitter and verify that the horn stops honking (the vehicle will not automatically restart).
- 9. TRANSMITTER FUNCTIONALITY VERIFICATION - Activate the remote engine starter using both of the supplied single button transmitters.

FUNCTIONAL TESTING IS NOW COMPLETE.

PART NUMBER H001SXA100	ISSUE 01	DATE 03/02/07	SUBARU OF AMERICA	12 OF 12
---------------------------	-------------	------------------	-------------------	----------



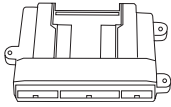
# SUBARU

## GENUINE PARTS INSTALLATION INSTRUCTIONS

PART NUMBER: H001SFG000

DESCRIPTION: REMOTE ENGINE START SYSTEM

### 1 KIT CONTENTS



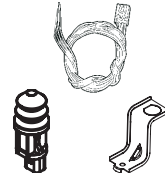
Remote Start Control Module  
w/ Software Card and Fuses  
Quantity= 1



Remote Start Wiring  
Harness w/ 30 AMP Fuse  
Quantity= 1



Remote Start  
Transmitters  
Quantity= 2



Hood Switch Mounting  
Bracket, Switch and 10"  
Jumper Harness  
Quantity=1



Remote Start Immobilizer  
Interface w/ Antenna Ring  
Quantity=1



Remote Start  
Patch Antenna  
Quantity=1



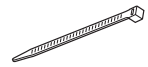
Underhood  
Warning Label  
Quantity=1



Installation  
Instructions  
Quantity=1



Quick  
Reference Card  
Quantity=1

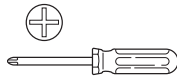


Tie Wraps  
4" Quantity= 4  
8" Quantity= 12  
21" Quantity= 2  
8" Reusable Quantity= 1

### 2 TOOLS REQUIRED



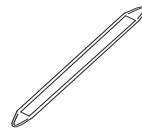
10 mm Socket  
and Ratchet



Phillips Screwdriver  
Short and Standard



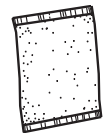
Wire Cutters



Panel Removal  
Tool



Electrical Tape

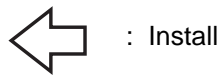


Alcohol and Towel

### 3 MEANING OF CHARACTERS



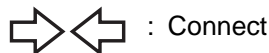
: Remove



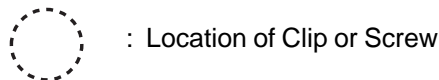
: Install



: Disconnect



: Connect



: Location of Clip or Screw

**T** : Tighten Torque



: Loosen



: Discard



: Re-use

**CAUTION: DO NOT SECURE ANY REMOTE START HARNESSSES / MODULES TO ANY YELLOW HARNESSSES / CONNECTORS (AIRBAG SYSTEM) IN THE VEHICLE.**

PART NUMBER  
H001SFG000

ISSUE  
01

DATE  
05/29/07

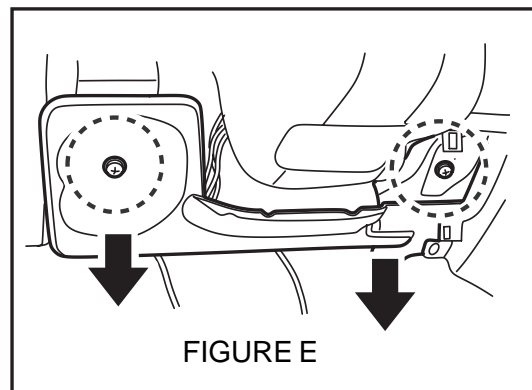
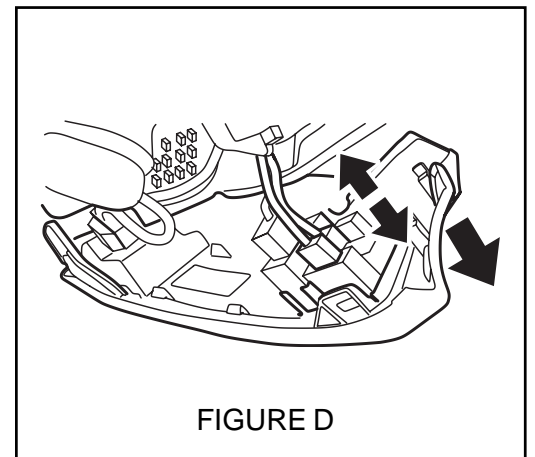
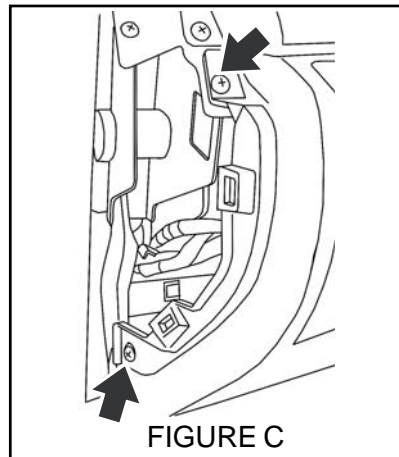
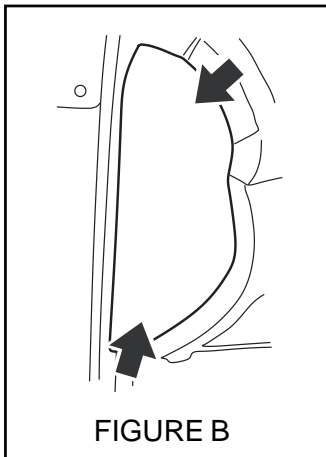
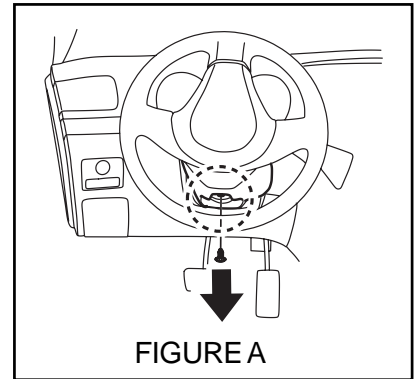
SUBARU OF AMERICA

1 OF 12



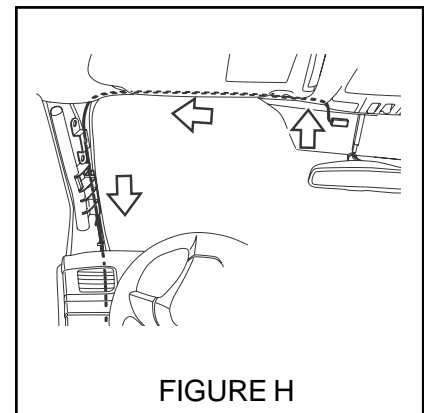
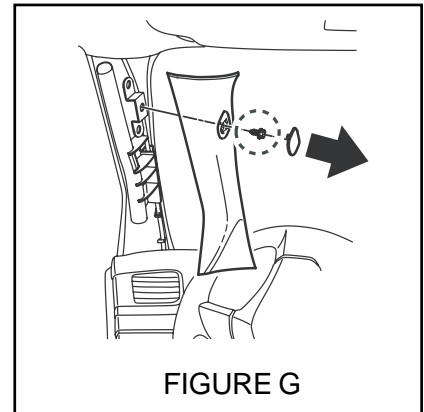
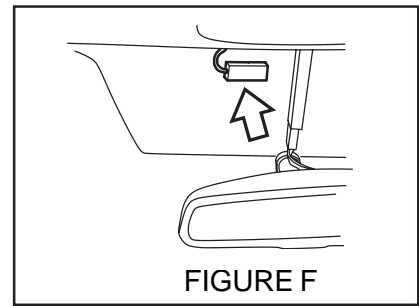
## 4 VEHICLE PREPARATION

1. Using a 10 mm socket/ratchet, disconnect the negative battery terminal.
2. Using a phillips screwdriver, remove one (1) phillips screw on the underside of the steering column shroud and carefully unsnap and remove the lower panel. Be careful not to damage the lower dashboard panel. (FIGURE A)
3. Using a panel removal tool, carefully remove the left side dashboard panel (FIGURE B). Remove 2 screws securing the lower dashboard panel on the left side of the dashboard. (FIGURE C)
4. Using a panel removal tool, carefully remove the driver's side lower dashboard panel and unplug any connectors. (FIGURE D)
5. Remove the metal knee bolster by removing the two (2) 10mm bolts. (FIGURE E)



## 5 WINDSHIELD MOUNT ANTENNA INSTALLATION

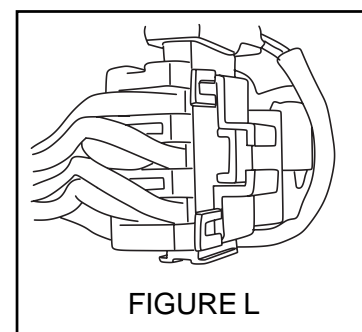
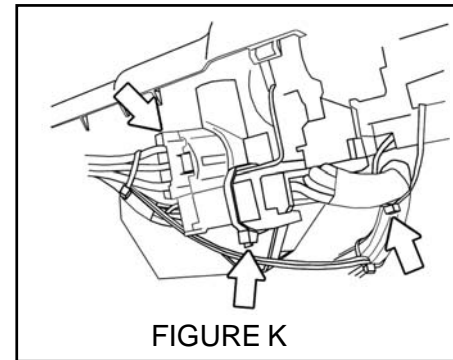
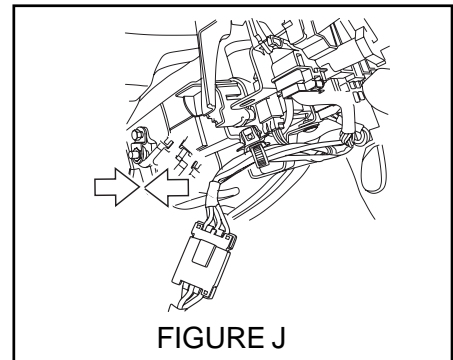
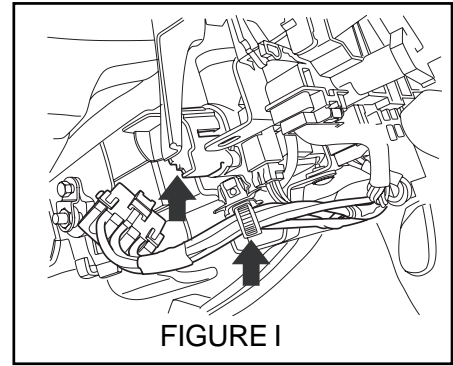
1. Locate the position at the top of the windshield 1" left of center and 1" from the top of the headliner. (FIGURE F)
2. Using alcohol, clean the area thoroughly.
3. Remove the adhesive backing on the antenna assembly and apply the antenna to the windshield in the area indicated above. (FIGURE F)
4. Using a panel removal tool, carefully remove the airbag labeled cap at the top of the A-pillar and remove the 10-mm bolt. (FIGURE G)
5. Gently remove the A-pillar panel starting at the top releasing the pressure clip at the bottom of the panel. (FIGURE G)
6. Route the antenna cable under the headliner and down the A-pillar securing into place using three (3) of the supplied 8" tie wraps. Route the cable to the opening on the left side of the driver's dashboard. The antenna cable will be plugged into the remote start control module later. (FIGURE H)
7. Reinstall the A-pillar panel. Torque the 10mm bolt to 10.8 Nm +/- 2 Nm (1.10 Kgf-m +/- 0.2 Kgf-m, 8 ft-lbs +/- 1.5 ft-lbs). (FIGURE G)



## 6 MAIN HARNESS CONNECTIONS

### 6-WAY IGNITION SWITCH CONNECTIONS

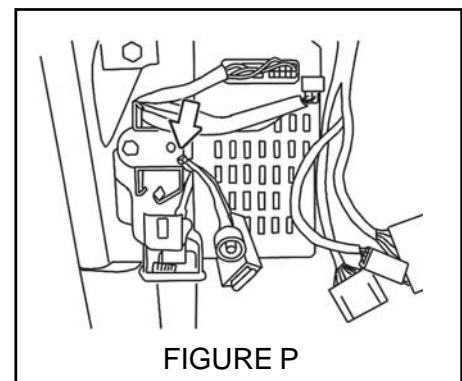
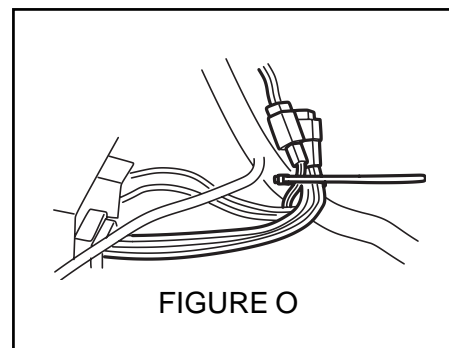
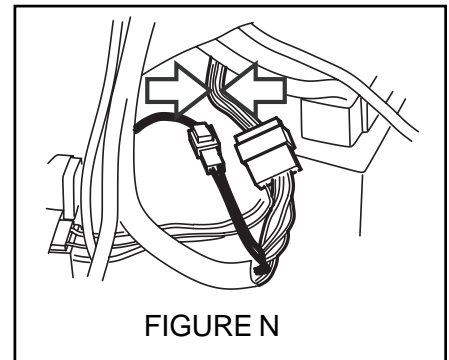
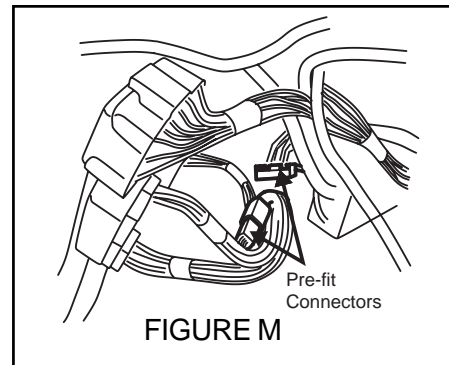
1. Locate the 6-pin ignition switch connector on the left side of the steering column and unplug. (FIGURE I)
2. Release the black tab that secures the factory ignition harness to the metal steering column frame. (FIGURE I)
3. Plug the previously unplugged vehicle's female ignition switch connector into the remote start harness 6-pin male ignition connector. (FIGURE J)
4. Plug the remote start harness 6-pin female connector into the vehicle's ignition switch (FIGURE K). Make sure that the wires exiting the 6-pin female ignition connector are bent towards the front of the vehicle to allow for enough clearance when re-assembling the lower steering column shroud. (FIGURE L)
5. Using the supplied 8" reusable tie wrap, secure the mated remote start harness 6-pin male and vehicle's 6-pin female connectors to the bottom of the metal bracket where the vehicle's ignition harness was previously secured (refer to step 2 above). When securing the mated connectors to the bottom of the metal bracket, make sure the connectors are in-line with the metal bracket. This will ensure for proper re-assembly of the lower steering column shroud. (FIGURE K)
6. Using one (1) of the supplied 8" tie wraps, secure the vehicle's ignition harness to the multifunction switch frame, this will prevent rattling of the factory ignition harness and allow for proper re-assembly of the lower steering column shroud. (FIGURE K). NOTE: Temporarily leave the tie wrap loose to allow for securing of the immobilizer interface antenna harness later in the instruction manual.
7. Route the remote start harness down the left side of the steering column towards the front of the vehicle.



## 6 MAIN HARNESS CONNECTIONS (continued)

### 24-PIN & 2-PIN PRE-FIT CONNECTIONS ABOVE & BEHIND FUSE PANEL

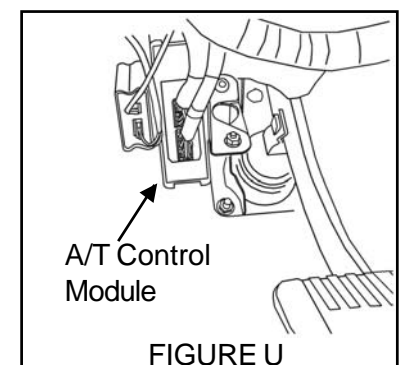
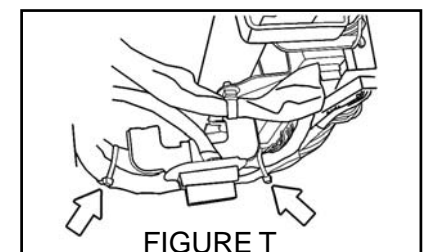
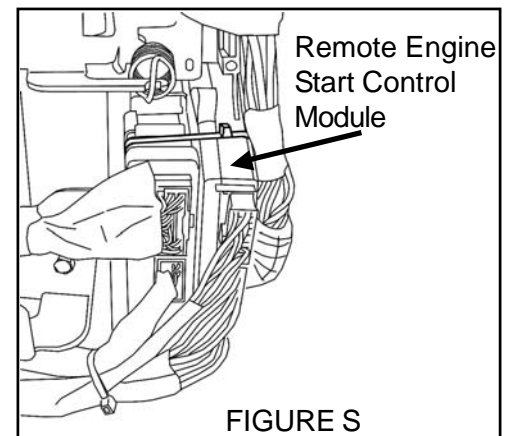
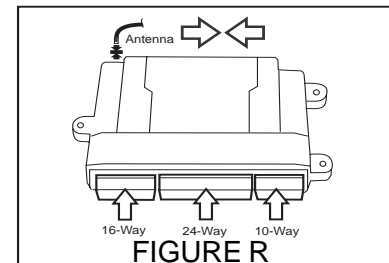
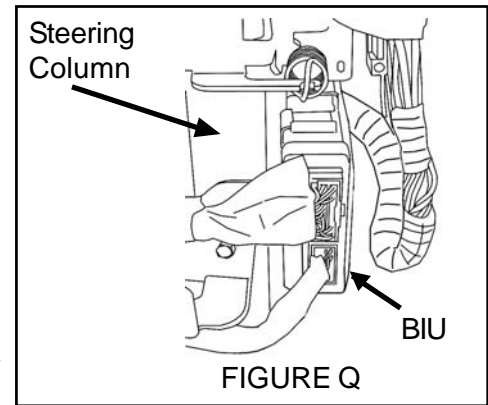
1. Locate the vehicle's 24-pin and 2-pin pre-fit connections located behind the fuse panel to the left of the steering column. These connectors are secured to the vehicle wiring using breakaway tape. (FIGURE M)
2. When the 2-pin pre-fit connector is located, unplug and discard the mating wire jumper.
3. Carefully route the remote start harness 24-pin and 2-pin connectors behind the fuse panel, making sure that they will not interfere with any vehicle moving components and re-assembly of dashboard panels.
4. Plug the remote start harness 24-pin and 2-pin male connectors into the corresponding 24-pin and 2-pin vehicle female connectors. (FIGURE N)
5. Using one (1) of the supplied 8" tie wraps, secure the remote start wiring to existing vehicle wiring. (FIGURE O)
6. Route the remote start harness programming button and 30-AMP fuse assembly to the left side of the vehicle's fuse panel assembly from behind and secure the wiring to the left side of the fuse panel using one (1) of the supplied 8" tie wraps (FIGURE P). **DO NOT SECURE THE REMOTE START HARNESS TO ANY VEHICLE YELLOW HARNESSES / CONNECTORS (AIRBAG SYSTEM).**



## 7 CONTROL MODULE CONNECTION & MOUNTING / IMMOBILIZER INTERFACE MOUNTING

### REMOTE ENGINE START CONTROL MODULE MOUNTING

1. Locate the vehicle's Body Integrated Unit (BIU) mounted to the right side of the steering column. (FIGURE Q)
2. Route the previously installed antenna cable towards the remote start harness 24-pin, 16-pin and 10-pin connectors. Route the antenna cable and remote start harness 24-pin, 16-pin and 10-pin connectors below the steering column towards the BIU. Plug the 2-pin antenna cable connector into the 2-pin port on the back of the remote start control module and plug the 24 pin, 16 pin and 10 pin connectors into the remote start control module. (FIGURE R) NOTE: The small 4-pin and 5-pin connectors on the control module are not used.
3. Secure the remote start control module to the right side of the BIU using the supplied velcro making sure the 3 connectors on the remote start control module are facing down. (FIGURE S)
4. As a secondary mounting provision, secure the remote start control module to the BIU using one (1) of the supplied 21" tie wraps. (FIGURE S)
5. Using two (2) of the supplied 8" tie wraps, secure the remote start harness and antenna cable to the existing vehicle wiring behind the diagnostic connector under the steering column (FIGURE T). Make sure that the remote engine start harness does not route against any sharp metal surfaces.

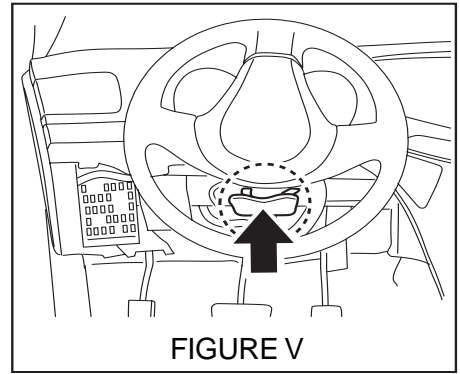
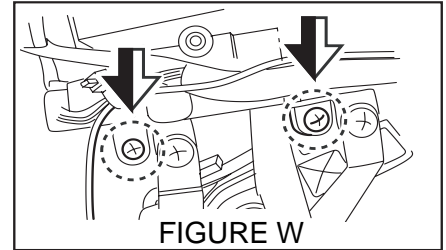
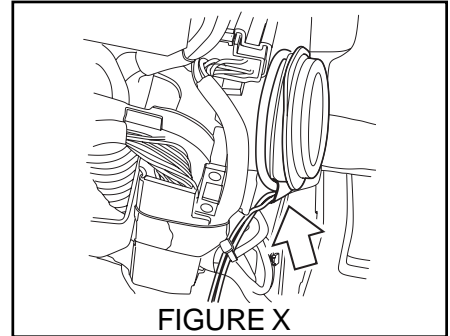


### IMMOBILIZER INTERFACE MOUNTING

1. Locate the A/T Control Module to the left of the brake pedal. Using alcohol, clean an area on the left side of the A/T Control Module. Using the supplied velcro and one (1) 21" tie wrap, secure the immobilizer interface to the A/T Control Module making sure that the immobilizer interface connectors are facing down towards the vehicle's floor. (FIGURE U)
2. Plug in the 4-pin immobilizer interface connector (in the remote start harness) into the 4-pin connector on the immobilizer interface. (FIGURE U)

**8****IMMOBILIZER INTERFACE ANTENNA RING MOUNTING**

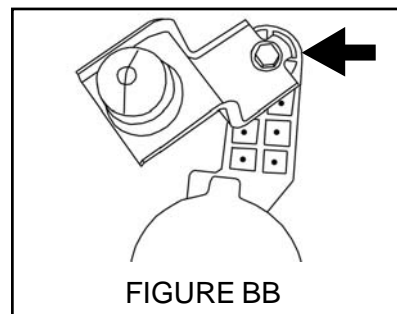
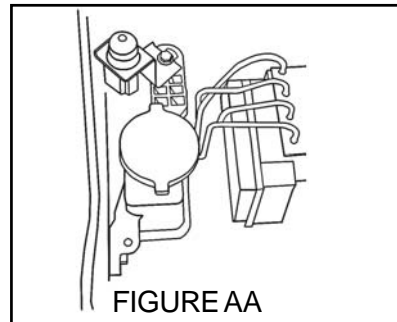
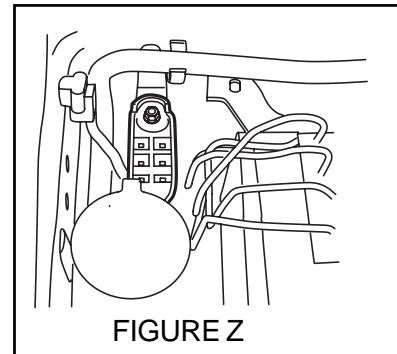
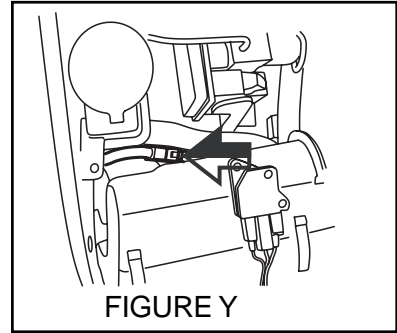
1. Locate the two (2) phillips screws at the steering column that secure the upper steering column shroud to the steering column assembly. Refer to FIGURE V for location reference.
2. Using a phillips screwdriver, loosen but do not remove the two (2) phillips screws. (FIGURE W)
3. Locate the illuminated ignition cylinder ring and gently slip the immobilizer interface antenna ring behind the illuminated ring and behind the upper steering column shroud. Re-secure the previously loosened phillips screws securing the upper steering column shroud to the steering column assembly. (FIGURE X)
4. Route the immobilizer interface antenna ring wiring down the left side of the steering column and plug into the 2-pin port on the immobilizer interface (refer back to FIGURE U). Secure the immobilizer interface antenna ring wiring to the existing vehicle wiring and remote start harness using four (4) of the supplied 4" tie wraps. Be sure to route wiring to avoid any steering column moving parts. A small amount of slack in the harness is required to accommodate movement of the tilt / telescopic steering wheel.

**FIGURE V****FIGURE W****FIGURE X**



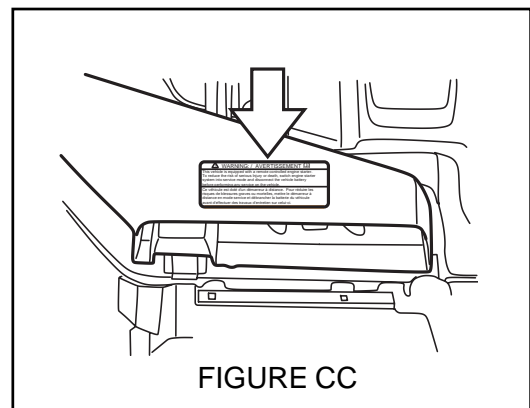
## 9 HOOD SAFETY SWITCH MOUNTING

1. In the engine compartment, locate the 2-pin pre-fit hood safety switch connector secured to the wire harness with breakaway tape in front of the power steering fluid reservoir tank on the passenger's side of the vehicle. (FIGURE Y)
2. Plug the supplied remote start harness 10" hood safety switch wiring harness to the vehicle's 2-pin pre-fit connector.
3. Remove the 10mm bolt securing the power steering reservoir tank to the vehicle's body directly in front of the passenger's side shock tower. (FIGURE Z)
4. Mount the hood safety switch bracket with the previously removed 10mm bolt securing the power steering reservoir tank to the vehicle's body, hold the bracket firmly when tightening. (FIGURE AA) NOTE: The hood safety switch bracket locating tab must slot into the groove on the power steering reservoir tank. (FIGURE BB) Torque the bolt to 10.8 Nm +/- 2 Nm (1.10 Kgf-m +/- 0.2 Kgf-m, 8 ft-lbs +/- 1.5 ft-lbs).
5. Securely mount (snap-in) the supplied hood safety switch in the bracket and plug the 2-pin female connector of the remote start harness 10" hood safety switch wiring harness to the base of the hood safety switch. (FIGURE AA & BB)



## 10 UNDER HOOD WARNING LABEL MOUNTING

1. Using alcohol clean the top of the air intake plenum.
2. Remove the adhesive backing of the underhood warning label and secure to the top of the air intake plenum. (FIGURE CC)





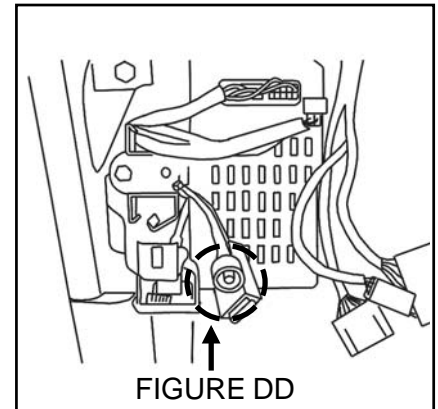
## 11 SYSTEM POWER-UP

After all connections are complete, re-connect the vehicle's negative battery terminal.  
**NOTE: THE VEHICLE'S HORN MAY BEGIN TO HONK ON AND OFF. IF THIS OCCURS, PRESSING THE RKE TRANSMITTER UNLOCK BUTTON OR TURNING THE IGNITION KEY TO THE RUN POSITION WILL SILENCE THE HORN.**

## 12 TACHOMETER IDLE SPEED PROGRAMMING

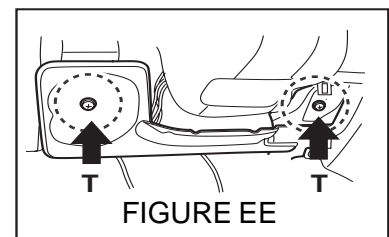
**NOTE: THE VEHICLE'S HOOD MUST BE CLOSED AND LATCHED THROUGHOUT THIS PROCESS**

1. Open driver's door (leave open throughout programming operation).
2. Turn the ignition key to the ON or RUN position.
3. Press and hold the momentary programming button for approximately 10 seconds until the vehicle's horn honks (3) times. (FIGURE DD)
4. Release the momentary programming button.
5. Press and release the momentary programming button (secured to a wiring harness in front of the vehicle's dashboard mounted fuse box, FIGURE DD). The vehicle's horn will honk (4) times.
6. Press and release the vehicle's brake pedal (1) time. The horn will honk (1) time to indicate that the system has entered tachometer idle speed programming mode.
7. Start the vehicle with the ignition key. The RES system will begin honking the vehicle's horn 1 time every 3 seconds to indicate a valid tach signal.
8. When the engine has settled to a normal idle speed (normally 750-1000 RPM), press and release the brake pedal (1) time. The horn will honk (2) times to indicate the system has exited tach idle speed programming. **Be sure that the vehicle has maintained 750-1000 RPM idle speed prior to exiting tachometer idle speed programming.**
9. Turn the ignition key to the OFF position.



## 13 PANEL RE-ASSEMBLY

1. Re-install the knee bolster and torque the 10mm bolts to 10.8 Nm +/- 2 Nm (1.10 Kgf-m +/- 0.2 Kgf-m, 8 ft-lbs +/- 1.5 ft-lbs). (FIGURE EE)
2. Reinstall the steering column shroud and secure in place with one (1) phillips screw.
3. Plug in any previously removed connectors and re-install the lower dashboard panel (refer to FIGURE D).
4. Re-install the two (2) phillips screws on the left side of the dashboard that secure the lower dashboard panel in place. (refer to FIGURE C)
5. Re-install the left side dashboard panel. (refer to FIGURE B)
6. At the end of the installation, insert the Quick Reference Card into the Owner's Information Kit.



Most new Subaru vehicles are equipped with an immobilizer system that will act as an anti-theft device preventing the vehicle from starting if an incorrect ignition key is used to start the vehicle. Each vehicle ignition key is equipped with a transponder that will transmit an ID code each time the vehicle ignition is turned on with the ignition key. During the Select Monitor (SMIII) registration process, the transponder ID code is registered by the vehicle's body integrated unit (BIU). For security reasons all available ignition keys are required to be registered any time a new key is added or replaced.

During the remote start process there will be no ignition key present to transmit a proper ID code when the vehicle is started. To simulate an ignition key during the remote start process an immobilizer interface is used to transmit a registered ID code to the ignition switch through an antenna ring that is mounted around the vehicle's ignition switch.

During the registration process, the remote start immobilizer interface will be treated as an ignition key by the vehicle. To simulate turning the ignition to the RUN position we will use a combination of pressing the remote start momentary programming button (mounted to a harness in front of the vehicle's dashboard fusebox) and activating the remote start system by pressing the START button on the remote start transmitter two (2) times.

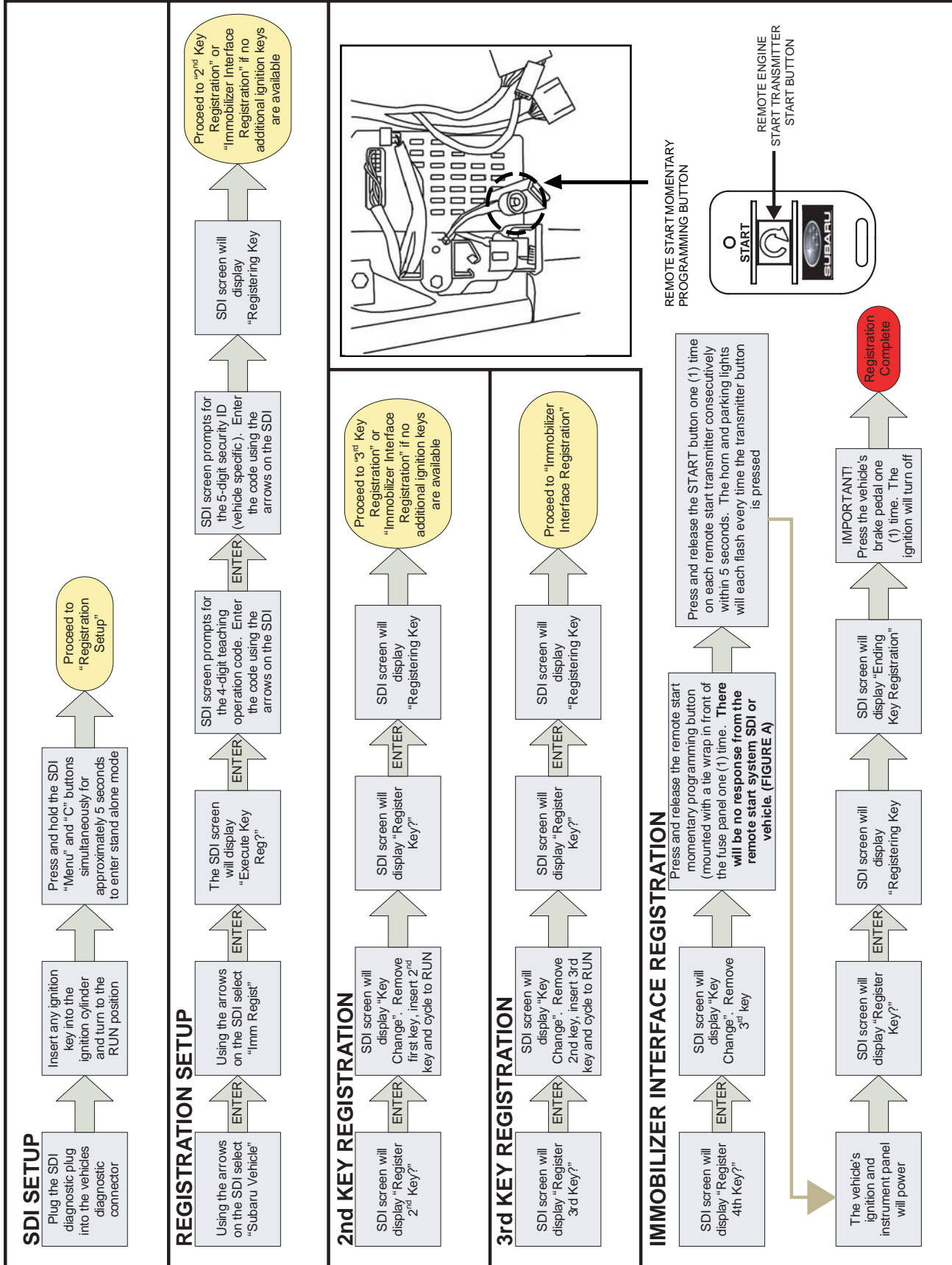
- Pressing the momentary programming button one (1) time will delay the remote start crank output for 60 - seconds. This will prevent the starter from cranking while the SDI is attempting to program the immobilizer interface as an ignition key.
- Activating the remote start system by pressing the remote start transmitter button two (2) times will both activate the immobilizer interface and power the ignition circuits. This combination will make the vehicle think that the ignition switch was turned to the RUN position using an actual ignition key.

Under normal situations the immobilizer interface will be registered to the vehicle as the 4th key. In the event that all vehicle ignition keys are not present at time of registration, the immobilizer interface should be registered as the last key (example: 2 ignition keys are available, the immobilizer interface is registered as the third key).

#### POINTS TO REMEMBER

1. Prior to programming the immobilizer interface, the vehicle tach idle speed section of the installation manual must be completed first.
2. The vehicle's hood must remain closed and latched during the entire process.
3. The vehicle's battery must be fully charged.
4. All ignition keys (3 keys are present with a new vehicle) must be present prior to programming. Any ignition key that is not registered during the immobilizer interface programming process will no longer start the vehicle.
5. The immobilizer teaching operation code for all Impreza vehicles will need to be entered at this time.
6. The vehicle specific five (5) digit security ID will be required every time the registration process is completed. The vehicle security ID is located on the larger of the 2 vehicle key tags.
7. Immobilizer interface programming / key registration will be completed using the "Subaru Diagnostic Interface" (SDI) operating in "Stand Alone Mode". **When operating in stand alone mode, the SDI does not need to be plugged into the computer**

PART NUMBER H001SFG000	ISSUE 01	DATE 05/29/07	SUBARU OF AMERICA	10 OF 12
---------------------------	-------------	------------------	-------------------	----------



## POST INSTALLATION CHECKLIST

- 1. REMOTE ENGINE START- Make sure the key is removed from the ignition switch and the engine hood is closed. Press the START button twice within 3 seconds - The parking lights should flash twice, the horn should beep twice then the vehicle should crank and start. Once started the parking lights will turn on and stay on signifying the vehicle is started.
- 2. RUNNING WITH IGNITION KEY - While the vehicle is running under remote engine start, confirm that all function's (lock, unlock, etc.) operate properly on the FACTORY transmitter. Once FACTORY transmitter functionality is confirmed press the UNLOCK button on FACTORY transmitter and enter the vehicle, insert the ignition key and turn the ignition to the run position, press the brake pedal - At this time the vehicle should be running by the ignition key and the remote engine start was shut down when the brake pedal was pressed. Turn off the ignition switch and the vehicle should shut off.
- 3. BRAKE PEDAL SAFETY - Restart the vehicle using the remote engine start, enter the vehicle, press the brake pedal - The vehicle should shut off.
- 4. KEY-IN-SENSE - Insert the ignition key into the ignition switch but keep in off position, activate the remote engine start function - the vehicle should flash the lights as if it is going to start but then the horn should beep twice and the remote engine starter does not attempt to start the vehicle since it senses the key in the ignition.
- 5. HOOD SAFETY SWITCH - Open the engine hood and activate the remote engine start function - The horn should beep two additional times signifying that hood safety switch is tripped and the vehicle will not start.
- 6. HEATER / AC FUNCTION - Insert the ignition key and turn the ignition to the run position, preset the vehicle's heater or air conditioning to the on position then turn the ignition off and remove the ignition key. Activate the remote engine start system and verify that the heater or air conditioning turns on to the preset setting.
- 7. 15-MINUTE RUN TIME - Activate the remote engine start system and allow the system to run for the 15-minute preset run time. The remote engine start system should shut the vehicle off in 15 minutes (+/- 10 seconds).
- 8. SECURITY DISARM VERIFICATION - Activate the remote engine starter. After the vehicle has started, manually unlock the vehicle's doors using the ignition key and open any door. The horn should begin a steady honk and the engine will shut down. Press the UNLOCK button on the FACTORY transmitter and verify that the horn stops honking (the vehicle will not automatically restart).
- 9. TRANSMITTER FUNCTIONALITY VERIFICATION - Activate the remote engine starter using both of the supplied single button transmitters.

FUNCTIONAL TESTING IS NOW COMPLETE.

PART NUMBER H001SFG000	ISSUE 01	DATE 05/29/07	SUBARU OF AMERICA	12 OF 12
---------------------------	-------------	------------------	-------------------	----------

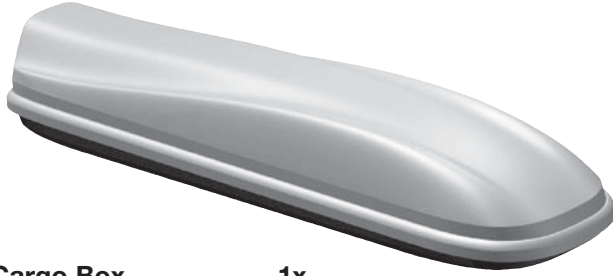
**SUBARU** 

INSTALLATION INSTRUCTIONS

**PART NUMBER: E361SAG300**

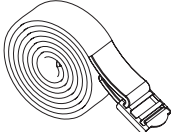
**DESCRIPTION: Roof Mounted Cargo Box (16 cu. ft.)**

**A** Kit Contents:




Cargo Box 1x

**B**




Strap 2x

**D**



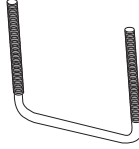
Quick Snap 4x

**C**




Key 2x

**E**




U-Bolt 4x

**F**



(Pre installed) Slide Strip 4x

**G**

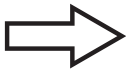


Installation Instructions 1x

Meaning of characters:



Open or close



Install



Move

**WARNING: DO NOT EXCEED THE WEIGHT LIMIT OF YOUR ROOF RACK**



Cargo Box  
39lbs.  
(17.7 kg)



Cargo Box  
contents



**Total Must be less than or equal to the rack weight limit specified in the vehicle owners manual**

Part Number  
E361SAG300

Issue

Date  
12/26/06

Subaru of America

Page  
1 of 5

DRAWING # A006775INS

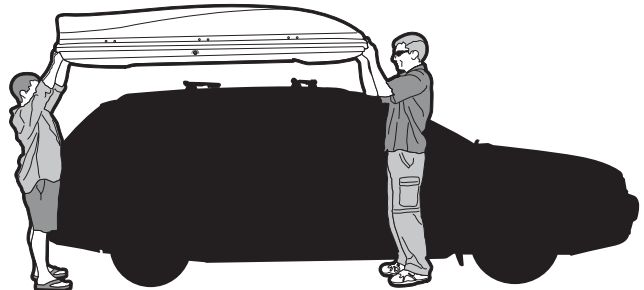
## GUIDELINES:

When using carriers and accessories, the user must understand the precautions. The points listed below will assist you in using the rack system and will encourage safety.

- Do not carry more than 45 kg (100 lbs.) in the box. Loads that exceed this limit are not covered by the warranty.
- Do not exceed the weight limit of your roof rack. Total load = cargo weight plus luggage box (39lbs.) used to carry cargo.
- Make sure all knobs, bolts and locks are firmly attached, tightened and locked before every trip. Knobs, bolts and locks must be periodically inspected for signs of wear, corrosion and fatigue. Check your load at stops during the trip to ensure continued fastening security.
- Be aware of the width and height of your cargo since low clearance bridges, bridges, and parking garages can damage the load. All cargo will affect the vehicle's driving behavior. Never drive with any lock, knob, or rack in an open, unlocked or loose position.
- To prevent damage to your cargo box and/or vehicle remove your box before entering automatic car washes.
- All locks must be turned and moved periodically to ensure smooth operation. Use graphite or similar dry lubricant to help this. The locks are designed to deter vandalism and theft. Remove valuable gear if your vehicle is unattended for an extended period. Place at least one key in the glove compartment. Replacement keys are available through Thule direct at [www.thuleracks.com](http://www.thuleracks.com)
- For safety to your vehicle and rack system, obey all posted speed limits and traffic cautions. Adapt your speed to the conditions of the road and the load being carried.
- Do not use load carriers and accessories for purposes other than those for which they were designed. Do not exceed their carrying capacity. Failure to follow these guidelines or the product's instructions will void the warranty.
- Consult with your dealer if you have any questions regarding the operations and limits of these products. Review all instructions and warranty information carefully.

1.

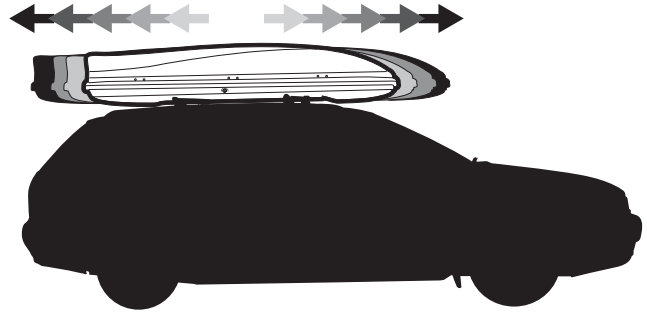
With the help of another person place box on roof rack.



2.

Slide forward or backward to position mounting slots properly over crossbars.

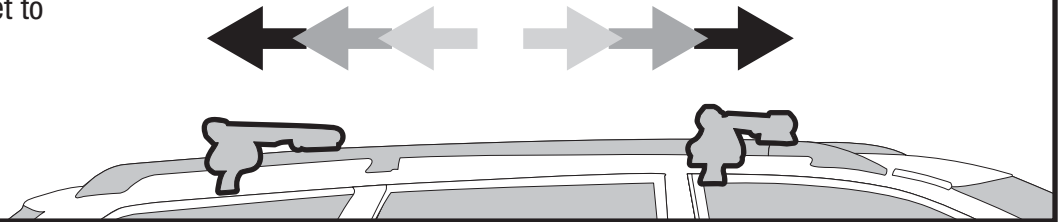
**Note:** Mount box towards the rear of the vehicle to minimize wind resistance.



3.

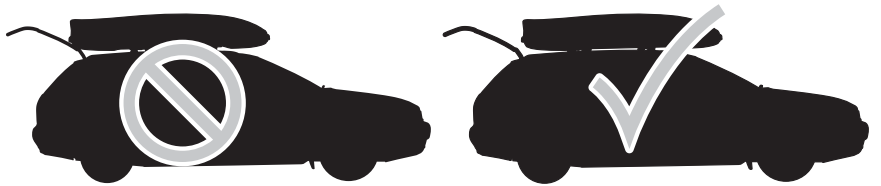
Minimum bar spread = 23 5/8" or 600mm.

If crossbars are adjustable, set to widest position which can be accommodated by mounting slots.

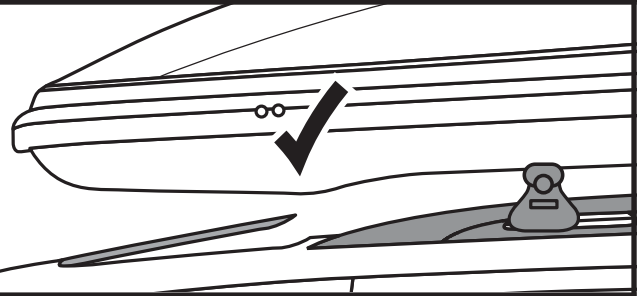
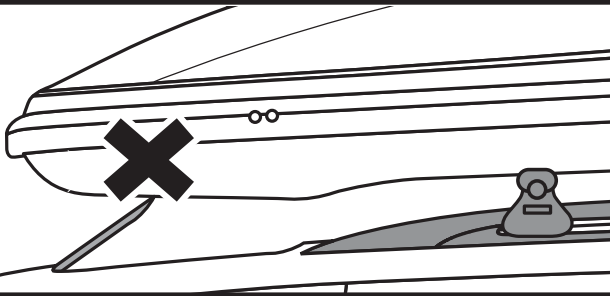


4.

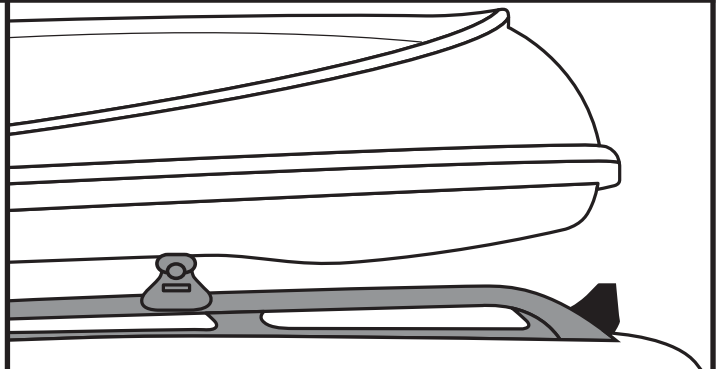
Check rear hatch clearance.



**Caution:** On vehicles equipped with moonroofs an interference condition with the cargo box may occur when the moon roof is opened in the tilt position. If this condition exists, do not tilt the moonroof fully to prevent contact with the cargo box.



On vehicles equipped with a roof mounted satellite radio antenna, position the cargo box as far away from the XM antenna as possible to minimize reception loss and prevent damage to the antenna.



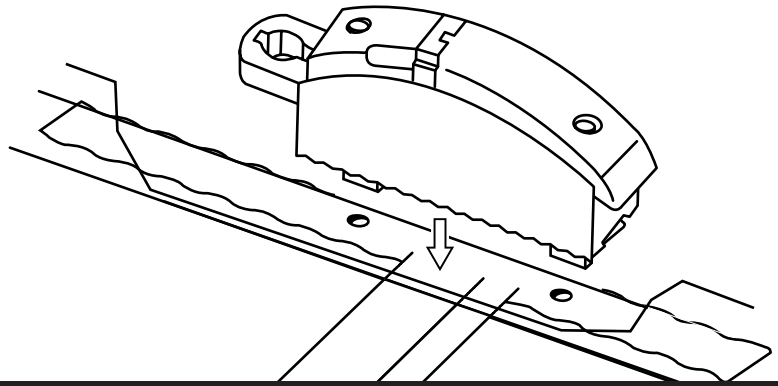


5.

Open box.

Attach Quick-Snap into the holes in slide with grey lever toward the rear of the box.

Position over load bars.

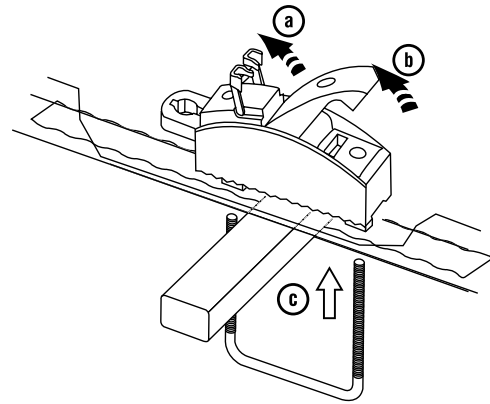


6.

Lift red safety lock (a).

Lift grey lever up (b).

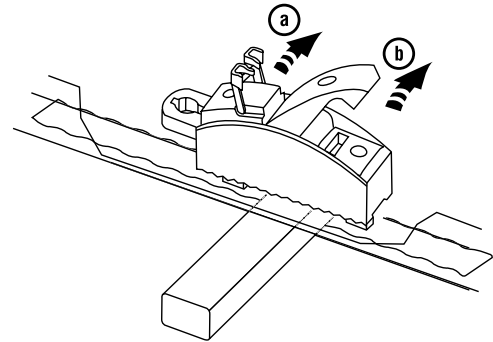
Guide U-bolt from under loadbar into mounting holes (c).



Press lever down (b) and then lower red safety lock (a).

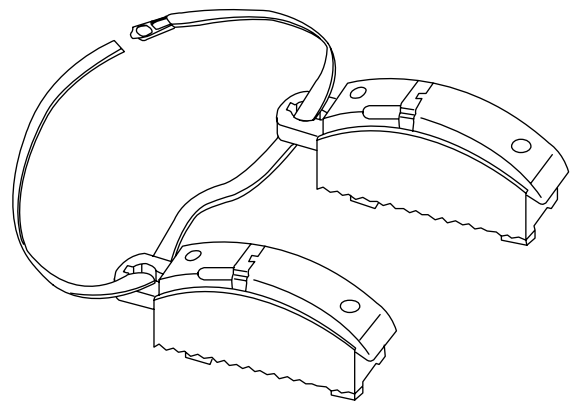
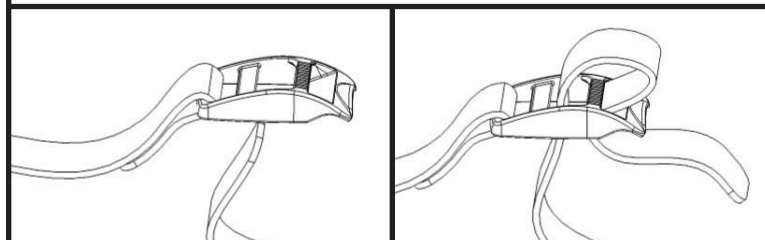
Reverse process for removing box.

**Note:** Quick-Snap does not remove once inserted through slide.



7.

Secure loads with supplied load straps.

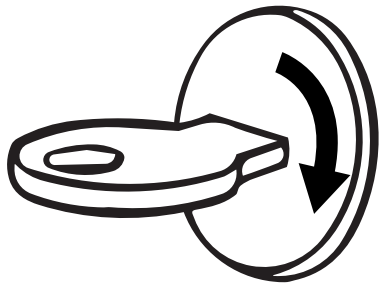
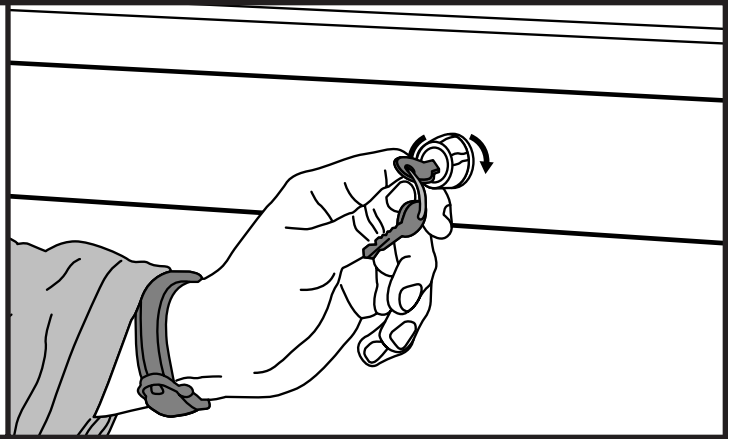


8.

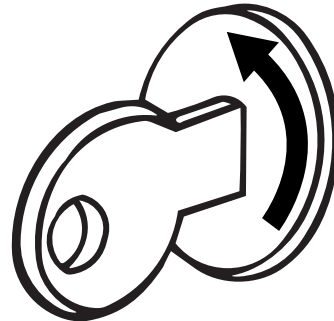
### UNLOCKING/LOCKING THE BOX

**Unlocking:** Insert the key and turn clockwise to the unlocked position. The key can only be removed when the box lid is closed and locked.

**Locking:** To close, press down on the lid at the front and rear of the box. Turn the key counter-clockwise to lock. Remove key.



OPEN



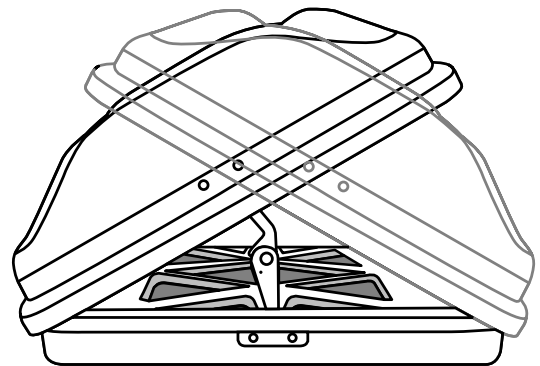
CLOSED

9.

This box is designed with a patented dual side opening system, allowing you to open the box from either side, providing easy access to each pair of quick connects during installation and removal.

The box should only be opened one side at a time.

The locks work the same way from either side of the box.



10.

### MAINTENANCE

- The roof box should be carefully cleaned and maintained, particularly in the winter months.
- For cleaning, use only water with a mild detergent which contains no additives (such as alcohol, chlorine or ammonia) as these could damage the surface of the roof box.
- The locks should be lubricated with graphite or similar dry lubricant.
- Box should be protected from exposure to the elements during prolonged periods of storage.
- Box and fittings should be inspected periodically for damage.

## NL

OPMERKING

Gelieve deze handleiding steeds bij Uw instructieboekje te bewaren

**\* De maximaal toelaatbare belasting bedraagt 80 kg (inclusief het gewicht van de bagagedrager: 5 kg). Raadpleeg Uw instructieboekje voor de maximale dakbelasting van Uw auto. Overschrijd deze limiet niet.**

Maak de lading stevig vast, zodat deze niet los kan raken en schade kan veroorzaken. Zorg ervoor dat de lading niet zijdelings of in de rijrichting kan verschuiven.

Wanneer de bagagedrager beladen wordt, zorgt u er dan voor dat het gewicht van de last gelijkmatig verdeeld is. Hou het zwaartepunt van de last zo laag mogelijk. Wanneer kleine, zware lasten vervoerd moeten worden, raden wij u aan deze aan 1 zijde van de draagstang te plaatsen, en niet in het midden. De bagage mag niet over de wagenomtrek reiken, dit om het verkeer niet te hinderen.

Gelieve voor iedere rit alle bevestigingspunten te controleren. Controleer ook of te lading goed werd vastgemaakt.

Stop even na een korte rit om moer- en vooral voetbevestigingen van de bagage-drager te controleren. Doe dit steeds vooraleer te rijden met een gemonteerde bagagedrager.

Het is mogelijk dat de lak onder de dakplaten na verloop van tijd iets matter wordt. Om dit te voorkomen dient zowel dak als drager vrij te zijn van stof en vuil, voordat er geplaatst wordt. Bij langduring gebruik is het aan te bevelen op de bevestigingsplaatsen dak en drager regelmatig goed schoon te maken.

Gelieve rekening te houden met het veranderde rijgedrag van de wagen (door zijwindgevoeligheid, bij bochten en remmen) wanneer u een wagen met gemonteerde (beladen) bagagedrager bestuurt.

Voor de veiligheid van andere weggebruikers en om de luchtweerstand te verminderen wordt de bagagedrager best gedemonteerd wanneer hij niet gebruikt wordt.

**Veiligheidstip**

Dit model dakdrager is speciaal voor Uw auto ontwikkeld, bij inruil dient meestal een andere drager toegepast te worden. Raadpleeg hierover Uw leverancier. Testrapporten uit de autoindustrie en vakbladen tonen aan dat wanneer voorwerpen met een groot oppervlak worden vervoerd (bv. surfplank, ski-/transportbox) het dak van de wagen extra belast wordt wegens een sterk verhoogde luchtweerstand.Wanneer u een windsurfplank vervoert, moet de punt van de boeg naar beneden wijzen.

Het rijgedrag van de wagen verandert eveneens; daarom is het raadzaam uw snelheid aan te passen. Stuur de wagen niet door een carwash wanneer de allesdrager geïnstalleerd is.

**De fabrikant is niet aansprakelijk voor schade onstaan door een niet juist gemonteerde drager en accessoires.**

**LET OP!**

**Het is mogelijk dat U windgeruis hoort als U deze dakdrager gebruikt. Plaats daarom alleen als U iets te vervoeren heef de dakdrager op het dak.**

### FIN

**HUOMAUTUKSIA**

Säilytä nämä asennusohjeet auton asiakirjojen kanssa.

Huomioi seuraavat seikat:

**\* Suurin sallittu kuorma on 80 kg (sis. telineen paino: 5 kg). Älä ylitä tätä rajaa. Tarkista auton ohjekirjasta taakkatelineen sijainti sekä suurin sallittu kattokuorma. (Tarkista myös mahdollinen oheistettu lisälehti koskien sallittua kattokuormaa).**

Kiinnitä kuorma niin, että se ei irtoa eikä aiheuta vaurioita. Ole tarkka kiinnittäessäsi kuormaa, että se ei siirry pituus- eikä sivusuuntaan. Kiinnitä huomiota siihen, että kuorma on jaettu mahdollisimman tasaisesti ja että painopiste on mahdollisimman alhaalla. Kun kuljetat pieniä, hyvin painavia kuormia on ne sijoitettava kannatinkiskon toiselle puolelle eikä sen keskelle. Liikenneturvallisuussyistä kuorma ei saa ylittää auton leveyttä.

Tarkista ennen liikkelle lähtöä että kaikki telineet ja lisävarusteet on kiinnitetty ohjeiden mukaan. Tarkista myös että kuorma on kunnolla kiinnitetty. Pysähdy lyhyen ajomatkan jälkeen tarkistamaan että kaikki ruuvit ja erityisesti jalkalevyt ovat tukevasti paikallaan. Tarkista sen jälkeen aina ennen seuraavaa liikkeellelähtöä.

On olemassa vaara että lakkaus himmenee jalkalevyjen kohdalla. Tämän välttämiseksi suosittelemme että katto puhdistetaan pölystä ja liasta ennen asennusta sekä että taakkateline irroitetaan aika ajoin katon puhdistusta varten.

Huomioi että ajo-ominaisuudet muuttuvat ajettaessa taakkatelineillä etenkin kuormattuna (sivutuulialttius, kaarre- ja jarrutusolosuhteet). Muiden tienkäyttäjien turvallisuussyistä sekä polttoainekulutuksen johdosta on taakkatelineet irrotettava kun ne eivät ole käytössä.

**Neuvoja oman turvallisuuden takia**

**TÄRKEÄTÄ:** Tämä taakkateline on suunniteltu Sinun automalliksi. Kysy siksi, kun vaihdat autoa, jälleenmyyjältä tarvittavaa taakkatelinettä. Autoteollisuuden ja alan lehdistön testitulokset osoittavat että auton kattoon kohdistuu lisärasitusta kun kuljetetaan suuria tai pitkiä esineitä (esim. purjelautoja, suksi-/kuljetuslaatikoita) suuresti lisääntyvän ilmavastuksen johdosta.

Purjelaudan kuljetuksessa tulee käyra pää olla suunnattu eteenpäin ja alas. Auton ajo-ominaisuudet muuttuvat myöskin - joten suosittelemme nopeuden rajoittamista.Älä käytä autoa pikapesussa kun taakkateline on asennettuna. **Valmistaja ei vastaa virheellisen telineen tai lisätarvikkeen asennuksen aiheuttamista vahingoista.**
**HUOM:**
**Kun teline on asennettu ajoneuvoon voi esiintyä lisääntynyt ajoviiman aiheuttamaa suhinaa. Jos meteli on epämiellyttävä, tulisi teline irroittaa ja s**
**ehjettävä uudelleen, vasta kun sitä tarvitaan varsinaiseen kuljetukseen.**

## E

**AVISO:**

Guarde estas instrucciones de montaje junto con los documentos del automóvil.

Tenga en cuenta los siguientes puntos:

**\* La carga máxima permitida es de 80 kg (peso del portaequipajes incluido, 5 kg). No sobrepase el peso indicado. Asegúrese consultando el libro de instrucciones del sitio adecuado para montar el portaequipajes y de la carga admitida.**

Amarre bien la carga para mediarir que se afloje y cause daños. Tenga cuidado que no se desvie hacia los lados. Considere que la carga debe estar repartida proporcionalmente encima del techo y que el punto de gravedad sea lo más bajo posible. No situe nunca pegueñas ó demasiado pesadas cargas en el centro del portaequipajes sino en una parte del mismo. Está prohibido que los bultos sobresalgan del contorno del vehículo, de manera que puedan perjudicar el tráfico.

Antes de emprender el viaje, asegúrese de la correcta fijación de los bultos según las instrucciones. Controle después de un corto recorrido el acoplamiento de los tornillos y sobre todo de los soportes. Este control se debe hacer antes de cualquier viaje.

Existe la posibilidad que la pintura debajo de los soportes se corra. Para evitarlo, le recomendamos que limpie el techo de polvo y suciedad antes de colocar las barras, así como quitarlas cada cierto tiempo para limpiar las áreas donde los pies estan situados.

Observe que la conducción no será la misma cuando conduzca con barras de carga y sobre todo con carga sobre estas (la resistencia del aire en las partes laterales al tomar las curvas, la distancia de frenado, etc. será diferente a lo normal). Por motivos de seguridad ante los demás usuarios y para reducir la resistencia del aire deberá desmontar las barras del techo si no van a ser utilizadas.

**Consejo para su seguridad**

**IMPORTANTE:** Este portaequipajes está especialmente diseñado para su vehículo. Por favor, controle qué barras necesita si cambia de coche. Según informes de la industria automovilística y de revistas técnicas la capacidad de carga del techo del automóvil transportando por ejemplo tablas de navegación, cajas de transporte, etc. es más baja debido a la fuerte resistencia del aire. (En el transporte de una tabla de navegación se debe poner la parte doblada hacia abajo.)

Es recomendable adaptar la velocidad a estas circunstancias. El coche no debe pasar por el tren de lavado con el portaequipajes montado. **El fabricante no se responsabiliza de los daños causados por un montaje incorrecto del portaequipajes y demás accesorios.**

**NOTA:**

**La instalación de este portaequipajes comportará un incremento del ruido del viento en el vehículo. Si el nivel sonoro producido fuera molesto, el portaequipajes debería desmontarse e instalarse solamente cuando se tenga que transportar algún objeto.**

## J

注意!

この取扱説明書は車内に保管しておいてください。

キャリアベースに積載できる最大積載重量は75kgです。積載物を搭載する時は、必ず別売の専用アタッチメントをご購入のうえキャリアベースに取り付けてご使用ください。

積載物は重心がなるべく低くなるように、バランスよく積載してください。また、緩まないようにしっかり固定してください。非常に小さい物や重い物を積載する場合は、バーの中央でなくフット部側に寄せて積載するようにしてください。

ルーフボックス、長尺物等積載時は、バックドア全開時に当たる場合がありますので、開閉時には充分ご注意ください。また、積載物が車幅よりはみ出さないようにご注意ください。

取付け作業終了後、スクリューの締付け状態・ガタツキが無いことを確認してください。またスクリューの緩み等は、定期的に点検を行ない、必ず増し締めを行ってください。

キャリアベースを取り付ける前には、クッションゴムが接するルーフの汚れを落としてください。

積載時には最高速度は法定速度以下に抑え、急発進、急ハンドル、急ブレーキは避け、運転には充分ご注意ください。自転車等、風圧を受ける荷物を積載した時及び、急カーブや悪路走行、強い横風を受ける場合は運転を損なうことがありますので、スピードを充分に抑えて走行してください。また、立体駐車場等の高さ制限がある場所では、制限高さ内であることを確認してください。

キャリアベース装着時は自動洗車機における洗車はできません。自動洗車機使用時はキャリアベースを外してください。

この取扱説明書に記載されていない取付け、及び使用方法や改造は絶対に行わないでください。記載事項を守らなかったために発生した不具合につきましては、責任を負いかねる場合がありますのであらかじめご了承ください。

取り外したキャリアベースは、きれいに清掃してから保管してください。外した部品やキーは紛失しないように注意してください。キャリアベースの汚れを拭き取る場合は、中性洗剤を使用して柔らかいスポンジで拭き取ってください。シンナー等の有機溶剤は使用しないでください。

<b><span>▲</span> 注意：</b>
<b>図14 に従ってキャリアベースには風切音防止モールを必ず貼ってください。</b>
<b>風切音防止モールを貼らずにキャリアベースだけを装着して走行すると、</b>
<b>風切音が発生しますのでおやめください。</b>



**SUBARU**

**IMPREZA**

## E3610FG501/E3610FG550

     D **LASTENTRÄGER**

     GB/USA **LOAD CARRIER**

     S **LASTHÅLLARE**

     F **PORTE-TOUT**

     FIN **TAAKKATELINE**

     NL **ALLESDRAGER**

     E **PORTAEQUIPAJES**

     J **キャリアベース**

     D **MONTAGEANLEITUNG**

     GB/USA **FITTING INSTRUCTIONS**

     S **MONTERINGSANVISNING**

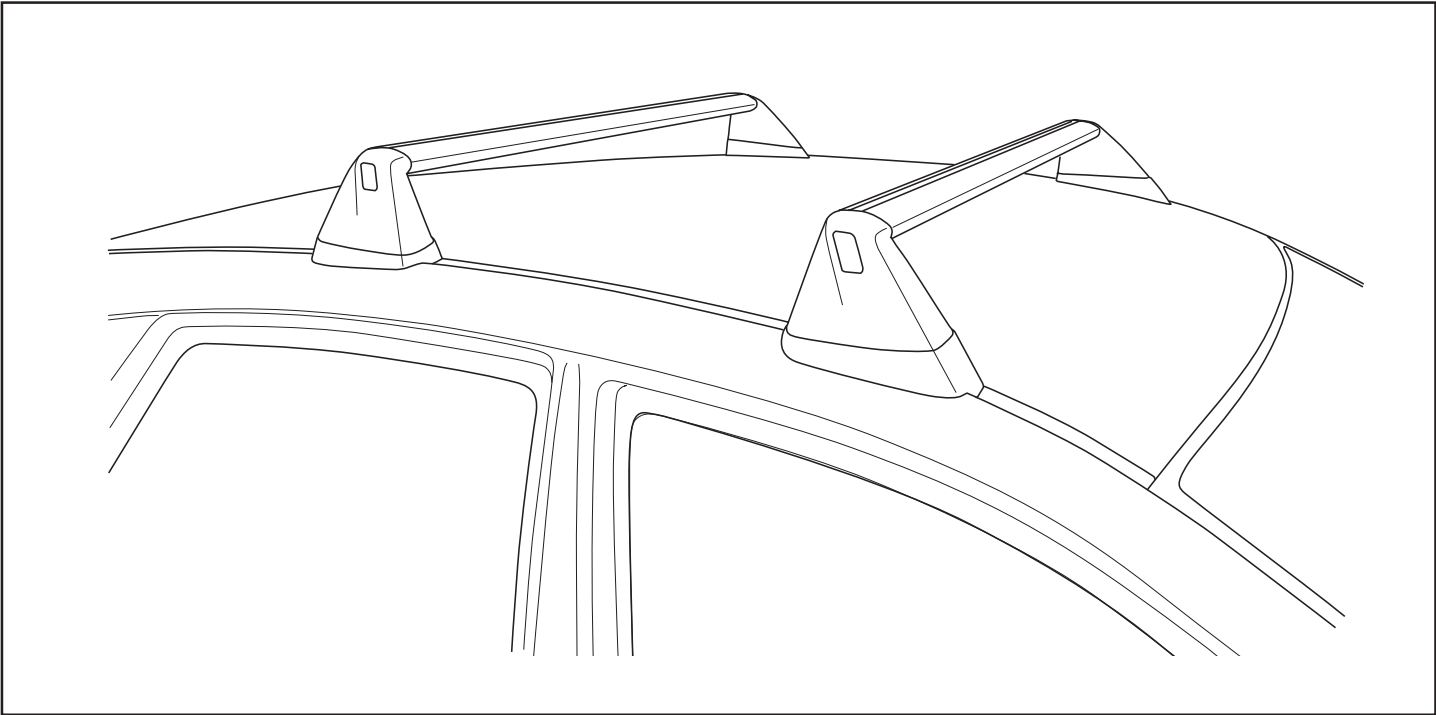
     F **INSTRUCTIONS DE MONTAGE**

     FIN **ASENNUSOHJEET**

     NL **MONTAGEVOORSCHRIFT**

     E **INSTRUCCIONES DE MONTAJE**

     J **取扱い・取付説明書**



DIN 75302 / ISO 11154-1

Impreza 2007->

IMPREZA-3A-2023-1



**D**      **WICHTIG!**  
Vor Erstgebrauch lesen.  
Montage nur nach dieser Vorlage durchführen.  
Vorlage im Fahrzeug mitführen.  
Wir empfehlen nicht schneller als richtgewindigkeit 130 km/h zu fahren.  
Zu montage und Anwendung diese Montageanleitung sehr genau durch lesen.  
Bei eventuellen Unklarheiten bitten wir Sie, sich mit Ihrem Händler, für weitere Informationen, in Verbindung zu setzen

**GB/USA** **IMPORTANT!**  
Read these instructions carefully before using the product for the first time.  
Fit the rack using these instructions only.  
Keep instructions in car.  
Do not drive faster than 130 km/h (80 mph) with load.  
Do not assemble or use this product unless you have understood the fitting instruction.  
If you have any questions, please contact your local dealer for further information.

**S**      **VIKTIG!**  
Läs igenom anvisningen noggrant innan produkten tas i bruk.  
Montera endast enligt denna beskrivning.  
Monteringsanvisningen skall medföras i bilen.  
Vi rekommenderar att inte överskrida 130 km/h med last.  
Montera och använd inte produkten förrän du har förstått monteringsanvisningen.  
Vid eventuella oklarheter, kontakta återförsäljaren.

**F**      **IMPORTANT!**  
A lire soigneusement avant la première utilisation.  
Pour le montage, se conformer strictement aux présentes instructions.  
Les instructions doivent nécessairement se trouver dans le véhicule.  
Ne pas dépasser 130 km/h avec charge sur le toit.  
Ne pas assembler et ne pas utiliser le produit avant de lire les instructions de montage.  
Prendre contact avec le fournisseur lors de problèmes éventuels.

**FIN**      **TÄRKEÄÄ!**  
Luettava ennen ensimmäistä käyttöönottoa.  
Asennus vain tämän ohjeen mukaan.  
Pidettävä mukana ajoneuvossa.  
Älä kuormalla ylitä 130 km/h nopeutta.  
Älä asenna äläkä käytä tuotetta ennen kuin olet ymmärtänyt asennusohjeet.  
Ota yhteys jälleenmyyjään epäselvissä tapauksissa.

**NL**      **BELANGRIJK!**  
Voor gebruik goed doorlezen.  
Montage alleen volgens dit voorbeeld uitvoeren.  
Montagevoorschrift in de auto bewaren.  
Niet harder dan 130 km/h rijden met lasten.  
Dit produkt niet monteren en gebruiken voordat het montagevoorschrift geheel duidelijk is.  
Wend U met eventuele vragen tot de plaatselijke dealer.

**E**      **IMPORTANTE!**  
Leer antes del primer uso.  
Realizar el montaje unicamente conforme a estas instrucciones.  
Llevar las instrucciones en el vehículo.  
No conducir a más de 130 km/h con carga.  
No monte o utilice este producto hasta que haya comprendido las instrucciones de montaje.  
Si tiene alguna pregunta, por favor pongase en contacto con su distribuidor para más información.

**J**      お客様へ  
ご使用の前に、この取扱説明書をお読みいただき、いつもお手元に置いて、常に正しい取扱い方法により、長くご愛用くださるようお願い申し上げます。  
キャリアを積載した時は法定速度以下で運転してください。  
商品、取扱い・取付け内容につきまして、ご不明な点がございましたら、商品購入先の販売店にお問合せいただき、ご理解されたくうえでお取扱ください。

**D**      **ANMERKUNGEN**  
Diese Montageanleitung zusammen mit den Fahrzeugpapieren aufbewahren.  
Folgende Punkte beachten:  
**\*Die höchste Belastung ist 80 kg (einschl. Gewicht des Lastenträgers, 5 kg). Dieses Gewicht darf nicht überschritten werden. Im Instruktionsbuch den Montageplatz des Lastenträgers und die höchste zugelassene Dachlast des Autos kontrollieren. (Eventuell das beigefügte Extrablatt für zugelassene Dachlast kontrollieren.)**

Die Last ordentlich verankern, damit diese sich nicht lockern und eventuelle Schäden verursachen kann. Aufpassen, daß sich die Last in Fahrtrichtung und seitlich nicht verschieben kann.  
Die Last gleichmäßig auf dem Lastenträger verteilen und der Schwerpunkt soll so niedrig wie möglich sein. Kleine und sehr schwere Lasten nie in der Mitte des Lastenträgers anbringen, sondern nur auf die eine Seite des Trägers.  
Auf Grund der Verkehrssicherheitsvorschriften darf die Last nicht über die Außenseiten des Autos hervorragen.

Vor der Fahrt, alle Befestigungsanordnungen genau kontrollieren, ob diese gemäß den Vorschriften fixiert sind. Kontrolliere ebenfalls die Verankerung der Last, diese muß ordentlich ausgeführt sein. Nach einer kurzen Fahrstrecke die Fahrt unterbrechen und dann alle Schraubverbindungen und besonders die Befestigung der Fußstütze kontrollieren. Diese Kontrolle soll vor jeder Fahrt durchgeführt werden.

Abmattungen der Lackoberfläche können in dem Bereich der Fußplattenauflagen auftreten. Um dieses zu vermeiden, empfehlen wir vor jeder Montage des Lastenträgers zu kontrollieren, daß die Lastenträgerbefestigungspunkte frei von Staub und Schmutz sind. Bei längerer Anwendung ist es ratsam den Lastenträger in regelmässigen Zeitabständen zu demontieren und reinigen.

Das veränderte Fahrverhalten mit montiertem Lastenträger beachten (Seitenwindempfindlichkeit, Fahren in den Kurven und beim Einbremsen).  
Mit Hinsicht auf die Verkehrssicherheitsvorschriften und Reduzierung des Luftwiderstandes, sollte der Lastenträger nach Gebrauch demontiert werden.

**Ratschläge für Ihre eigene Sicherheit**  
**WICHTIG:** Dieser Lastenträger ist speziell für Ihr Auto angepaßt. Bitte mit Ihrem Lieferanten kontrollieren welches Modell benötigt wird wenn Sie Ihren Wagen tauschen.  
Aus Testberichten von der Autoindustrie und Fachzeitschriften geht hervor, daß beim Transport von verschiedenen Gegenständen (z.B. Surfbrettern, Transport-/Skiboxen) das Autodach noch mehr, durch den stark auftretenden Luftwiderstand, belastet wird.  
(Beim Transport vom Surfbrett, soll das gebogene Ende in Fahrtrichtung, nach unten gerichtet sein.)  
Auch das Fahrverhalten des Autos wird beeinträchtigt - deshalb empfehlen wir, die Geschwindigkeit den entsprechenden Verhältnissen anzupassen.  
Das Auto nicht durch eine automatische Waschanlage mit montiertem Lastenträger fahren.

**Der Hersteller reserviert sich gegen Schäden, verursacht durch falsche Montage des Lastenträgers und den Zubehöerteilen.**

**BEMERKUNG:**  
**Mit montiertem Lastenträger können Windgeräusche entstehen. Wenn die Geräuschbelastigung störend ist, empfehlen wir den Lastenträger bei Nichtbenutzung abzubauen.**

**F**      **REMARQUES**  
Veuillez conserver les instructions de montage avec vos documents de bord.  
Veuillez considérer les points suivants:  
**\* La charge admissible est de 80 kg (le poids du porte-bagages de 5 kg inclus). Ne surcharger jamais. Contrôler dans le manuel l'endroit où le porte-bagages doit être monté ainsi que le poids maximum de charge utile permise. (Contrôler aussi dans l'annexe éventuelle de ces instructions de montage le poids maximum de charge utile permise.)**

Assurez-vous que la charge ne puisse pas se dégager ou causer des dégâts. La charge ne doit pas pouvoir se déplacer d'aucune direction.  
Lors du chargement du porte-bagages, veiller à ce que la charge soit répartie uniformément. Le centre de gravité de la charge doit se trouver le plus bas possible. En cas de petites charges très lourdes, il est conseillé de les mettre d'un côté de la barre au lieu de les mettre au milieu de la barre.  
En aucun cas la charge ne peut dépasser le contour de la voiture afin de ne pas entraver la circulation.

Veuillez contrôler tous les points de fixation avant chaque trajet. Veiller également à la bonne fixation de la charge. Contrôler la fixation des écrous et des attaches du porte-bagages après un court trajet d'essai. Exécuter ce contrôle avant chaque départ.

Une certaine usure de la peinture peut être provoquée à l'endroit où les plaques-supports reposent sur le toit. Pour éviter cela nous recommandons que le toit soit bien nettoyé (poussières et autres saletés) avant le montage du porte-bagages. Il est aussi recommandé d'enlever le porte-bagages à intervalles réguliers pour nettoyer le toit.

Soyez conscient que le comportement de la voiture est différent (sensibilité au vent latéral, tenue de route en virage et freinage) lors de la conduite avec un porte-bagages monté (chargé).  
Afin d'assurer la sécurité des autres usagers de la route et d'économiser du carburant, il est conseillé de démonter le porte-bagages quand il n'est plus utilisé.

**Avis de sécurité**  
**IMPORTANT:** Ce porte-bagages est spécialement adapté à votre voiture. En cas de changement du modèle de voiture, il faut contrôler chez le vendeur quel type de porte-bagages est adéquat.  
Il résulte de rapports d'essai de l'industrie automobile et des revues professionnelles que, lorsque le porte-bagages est utilisé pour le transport d'objets de grande surface (par exemple planche à voile, skibox), les forces sur le toit de la voiture augmentent à cause de l'augmentation de la résistance d'air. (Si vous transportez une planche à voile, le nez de la planche doit être dirigé vers le bas dans la direction de conduite.)  
La tenue de route de la voiture change également; il est donc conseillé d'adapter votre vitesse.  
Ne conduire pas la voiture dans un carwash quand le porte-bagages est installé.

**Le constructeur se décharge de toute responsabilité en cas de dommages causés par un porte-bagages et accessoires montés de façon non conformes aux instructions de montage.**

**REMARQUE:**  
**Il est possible que vous entendiez davantage de bruits aérodynamique ou de bruits de frontement dus au vent suite à l'installation de cette galerie sur votre véhicule. Si le niveau de bruit est désagréable, il faut démonter la galerie et ne l'utiliser que lorsque vous transportez des objets.**

**GB/USA**      **CAUTION NOTES**  
Please keep this installation manual with your car papers.  
Please take the following points into account:  
**\*Maximum permissible load is 80 kg/176 lbs(incl the weight of the load carrier, 5 kg/11 lbs). Do not exceed this weight. Check in the appendix to these instructions and in the car instruction manual to see where the load carrier should be fitted and to ascertain the maximum permissible load.**

Make sure to fasten the load so that it cannot come loose or cause damage. Be careful to secure the load against movement in driving direction or sideways movements.  
When using the load carrier, please make sure that the weight is evenly distributed and that the centre of gravity of the load is kept as low as possible. If small, very heavy loads have to be carried, please put them on one side of the bar and not in the middle.  
The load must not protrude from the vehicle outline, in order not to endanger traffic.

Before driving, make sure that all fastening parts are fixed according to regulations. Please check also that the load is fastened properly. Stop after a short drive to check all screw connections, and especially the foot attachments, then check every time before driving.

There is some risk that the paint under these foot plates may fade. To avoid this, we recommend to clean the roof from dust or dirt before attaching the load carrier and to remove the load carrier at suitable intervals to clean the areas where the foot plates rest on the roof.  
Please pay attention to the altered behaviour of the vehicle (due to sidewind sensitivity, when driving in bends and when braking) when you drive a mounted (loaded) load carrier. To safeguard other road users, and in order to reduce air resistance, the load carrier should be dismantled if it is not used.

**Advice for your own security**  
**IMPORTANT:** This load carrier is especially designed for your car model. Please therefore check with your retailer which type of load carrier is needed when changing your car.  
Test reports from the automotive industry and trade journals prove that when objects with large surfaces are transported, (eg. surfboards, ski/transport boxes) the roof of the vehicle will be additionally strained due to the strongly increased air resistance. (When transporting a windsurfboard, the bow should point downwards in the driving direction.)  
The driving characteristics change as well; therefore we recommend you to adjust your speed accordingly.  
Do not put the car through an automatic car wash when the load carrier is mounted.  
**The manufacturer takes no responsibility for damage caused by an incorrectly fitted load carrier.**

**NOTICE:**  
**You may hear an increased level of wind noise or wind rush as a result of installing this rack on your vehicle. If the noise level is objectionable, the rack should be removed and installed only when utilized to transport something.**  
**When you mount the load carrier only, please stick the spoilers on the specified position in fig. 14.**

**S**      **ANMÄRKNINGAR**  
Förvara denna monteringsanvisning tillsammans med fordonshandlingarna.  
Notera följande punkter:  
**\* Högsta tillåtna last är 80 kg (inkl lasthållarens vikt, 5 kg). Överskrid inte denna vikt. Kontrollera i bilens instruktionsbok var lasthållaren skall monteras samt bilens tillåtna taklast. (Kontrollera också eventuellt bifogat extrablad för tillåten taklast).**

Förankra lasten så att den inte kan lossna eller orsaka skada. Var noga med att surra lasten så att den inte kan röra sig i någon riktning.  
Var noga med att lastens vikt blir jämnt fördelad på lasthållaren och att tyngdpunkten blir så låg som möjligt. Vid transport av små, mycket tunga laster skall dessa placeras på lastskenans ena sida och inte på dess mitt.  
Av trafiksäkerhetsskäl får lasten inte skjuta ut utanför bilens utsidor.

Kontrollera före färd att alla fästansordningar är fixerade enligt föreskrift. Kontrollera också att lasten är surrad ordentligt. Stanna efter en kort körsträcka och kontrollera att alla skruvförband, och då speciellt fotstöden, sitter fast. Kontrollera därefter före varje färd.

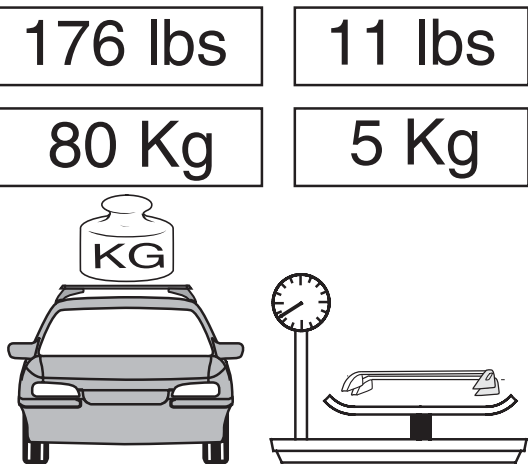
Viss risk föreligger att avmattnig i lacken kan uppstå där fotplattorna vilar mot taket. För att undvika detta rekommenderar vi att taket görs helt rent från damm och smuts före montering samt att lasthållaren tas av med jämna intervaller för rengöring av taket.

Observera bilens förändrade köregenskaper (sidvindskänslighet, vid kurvor och inbromsningar) vid färd med monterad (lastad) lasthållare.  
Av trafiksäkerhetsskäl och för att minska luftmotståndet, bör lasthållaren monteras av när den inte används.

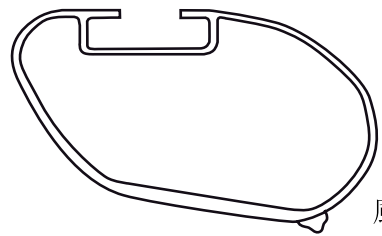
**Råd för Er egen säkerhet**  
**VIKTIGT:** Denna lasthållare är anpassad för Din bilmodell. Kontrollera därför med återförsäljaren vilken typ av lasthållare som erfordras vid byte av bilmodell.  
Testrapporter från bilindustrin och facktidskrifter visar att när omfångsrika föremål transporteras (t ex surfbådor, skid-/transportboxar) utsätts bilaket för ytterligare belastning p g a det starkt ökade luftmotståndet.  
(Vid transport av vindsurfbråda skall den böjda änden peka neråt i körriktningen.)  
Bilens köregenskaper förändras också - därför rekommenderar vi att anpassa hastigheten.  
Låt inte bilen genomgå automatvätt när lasthållaren är påmonterad.

**Tillverkaren reserverar sig mot skador orsakade av felaktigt monterad lasthållare och tillbehör.**

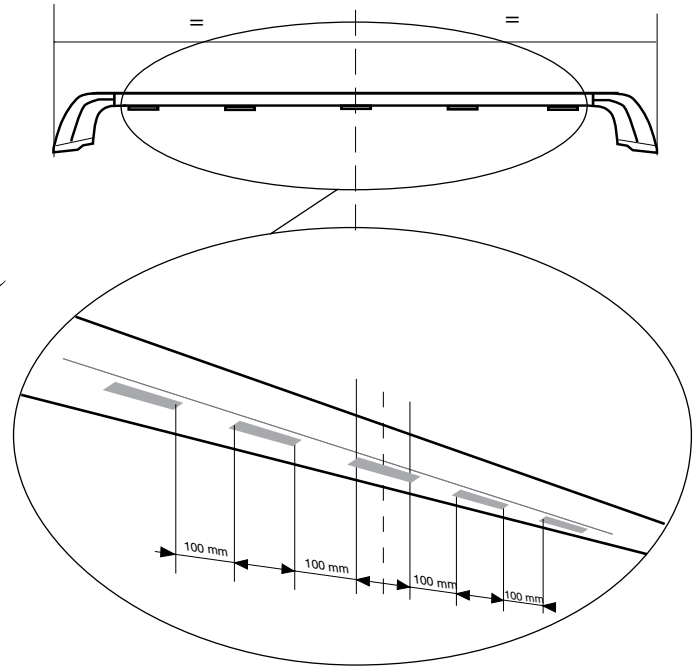
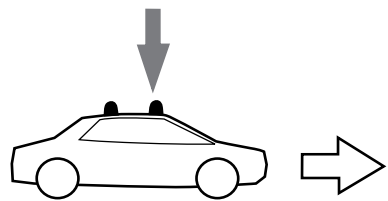
**MEDDELANDE:**  
**Ett ökat störande ljud kan förekomma på grund av lasthållarens montering på bilen. Det är indikerat att ta bort hållaren från taket och montera den på bilen enbart vid behov om ljudnivån är obehaglig.**



14



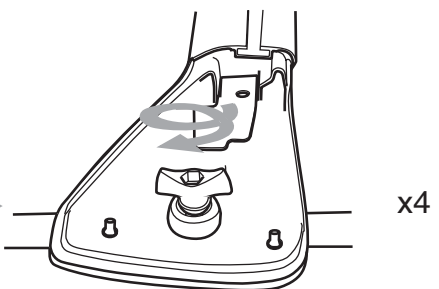
風切音防止モール



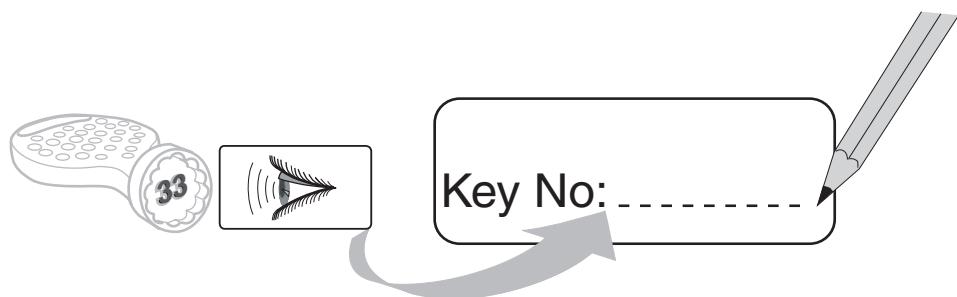
**注意:**  
風切音防止モールの必ず貼ってください。



+ 1600 km / 1000 miles



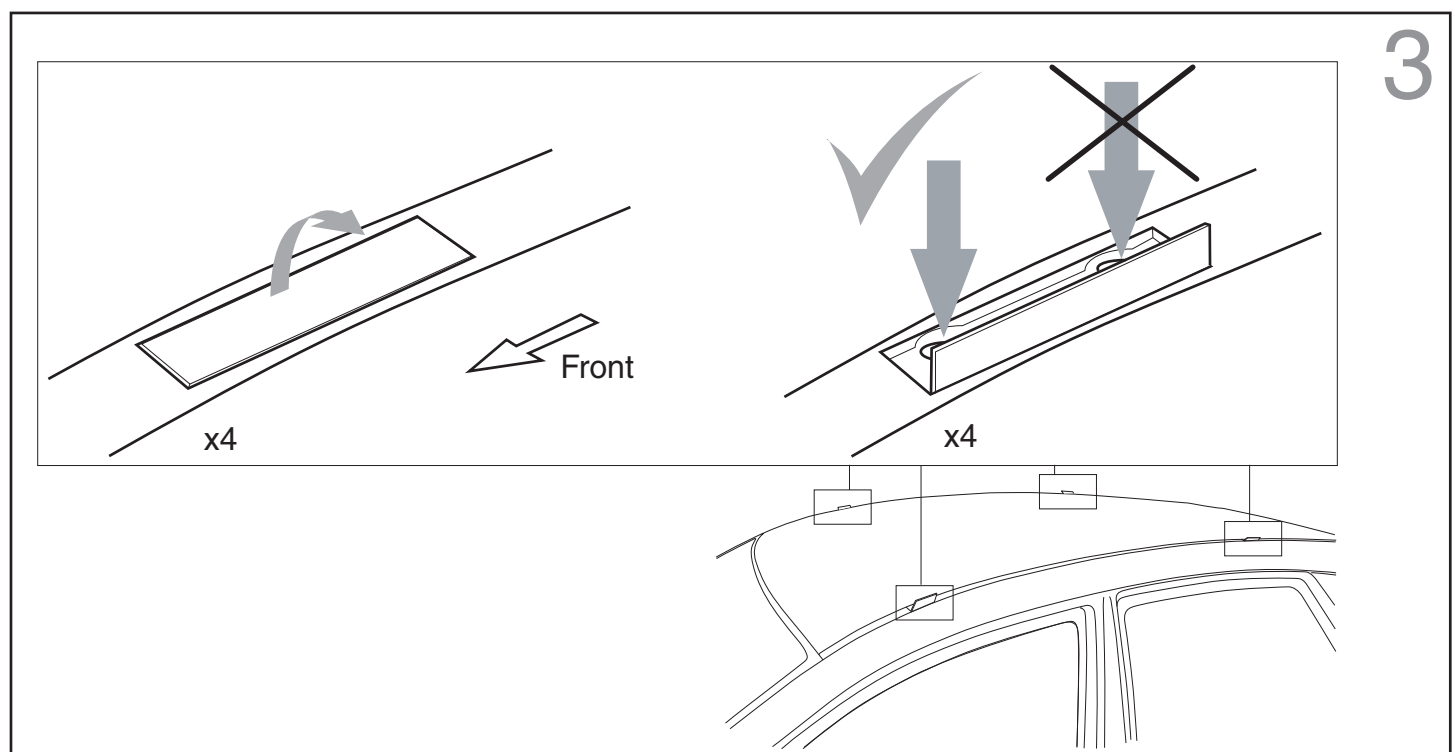
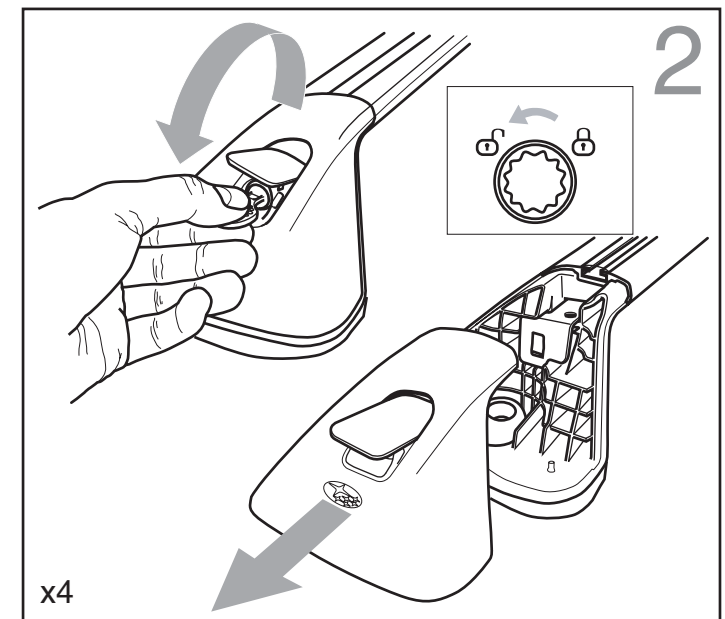
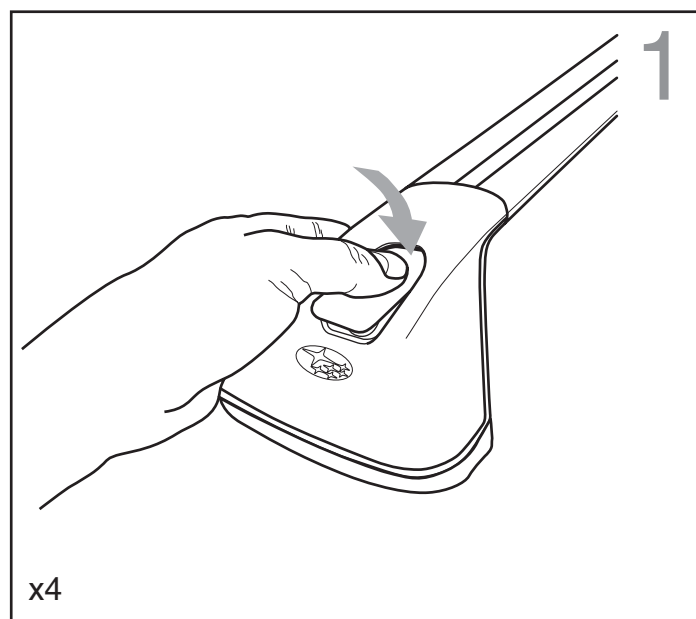
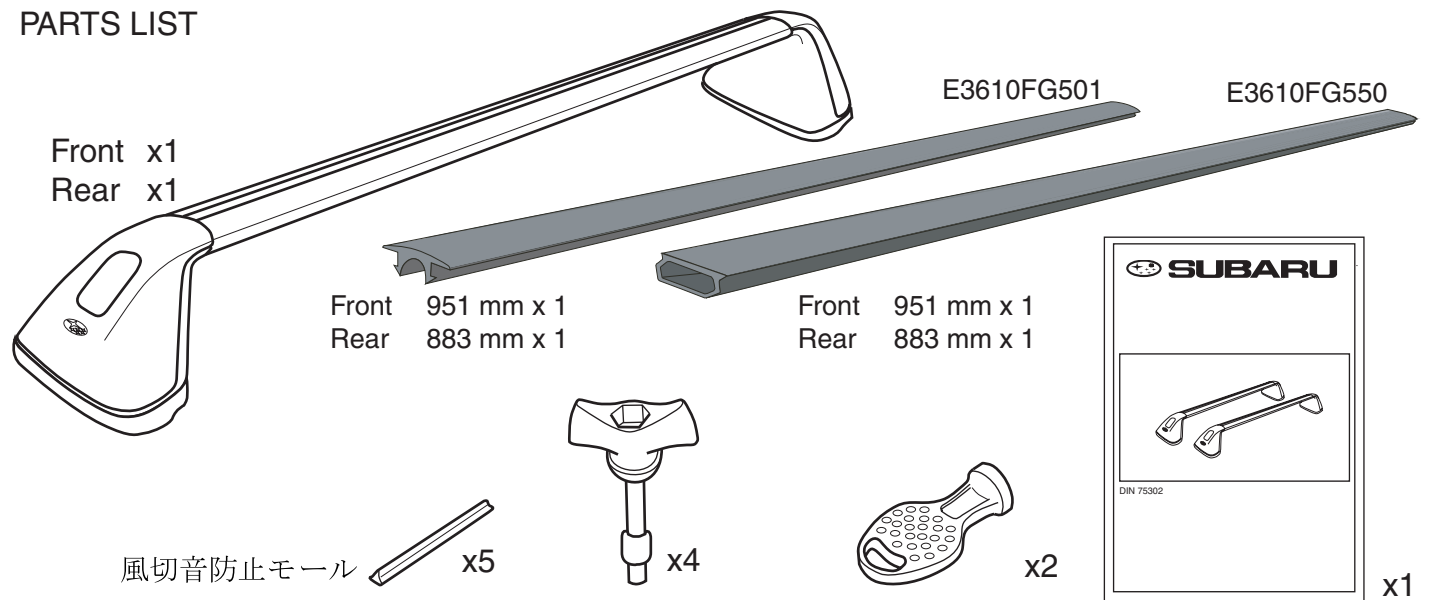
x4

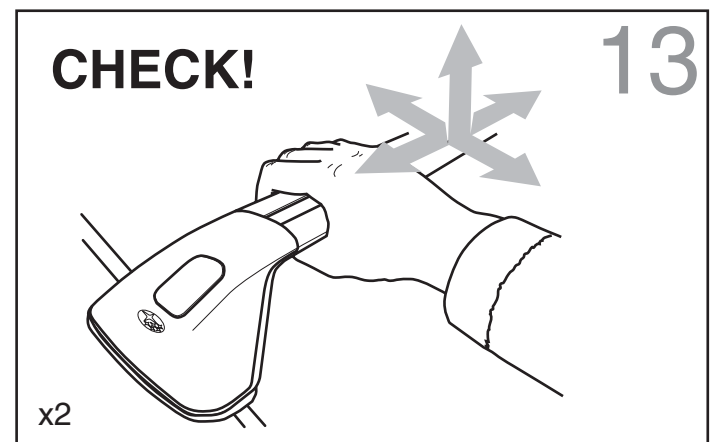
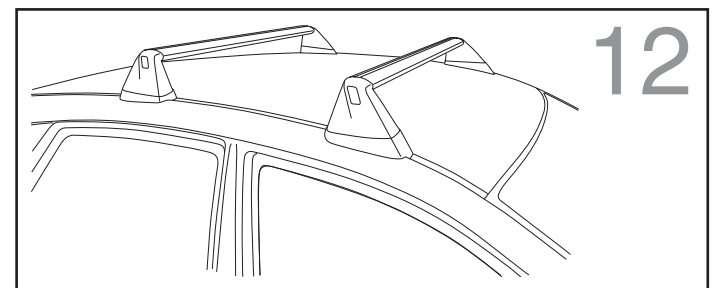
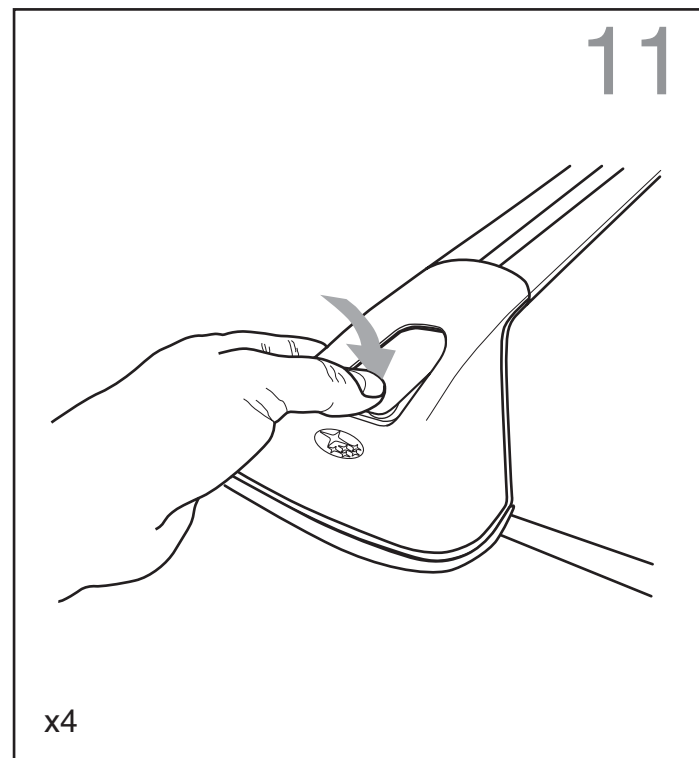
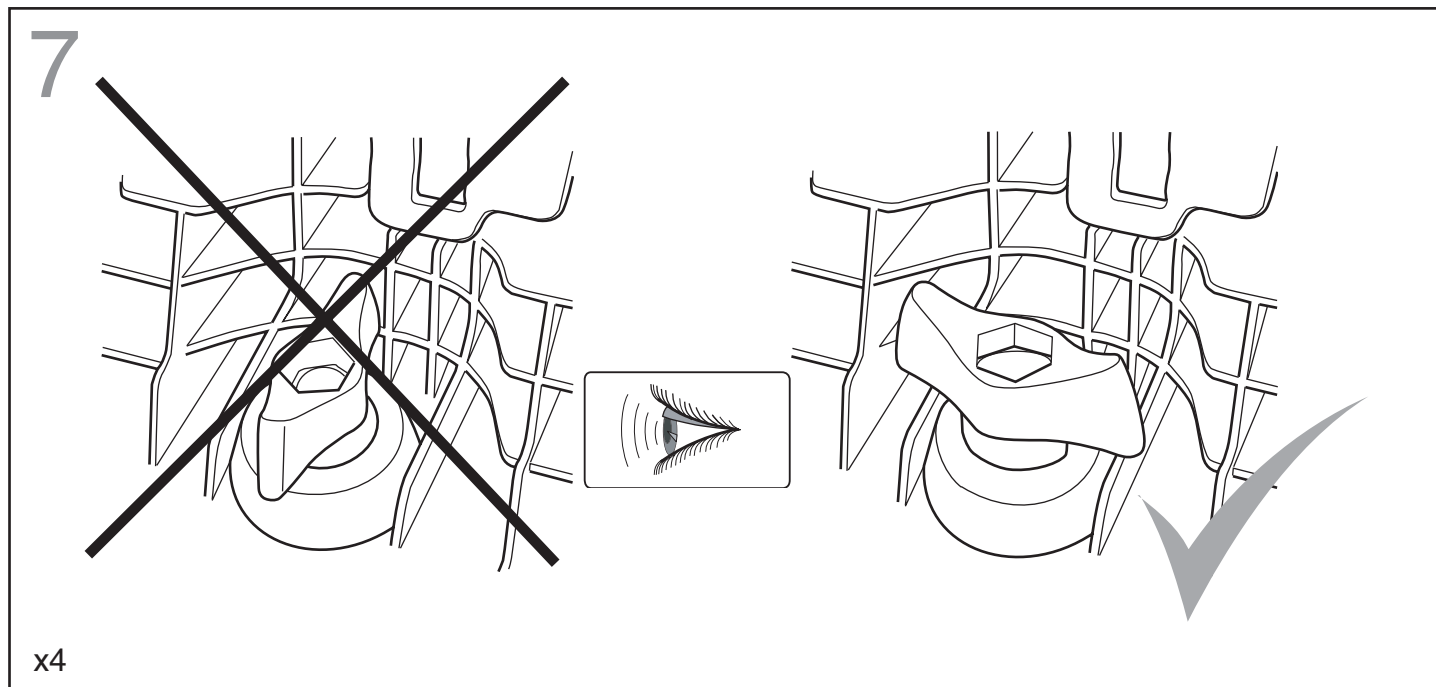
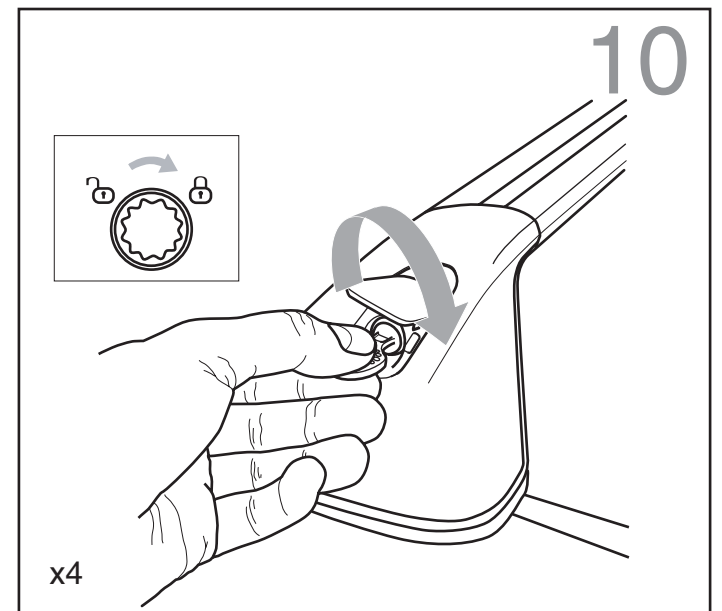
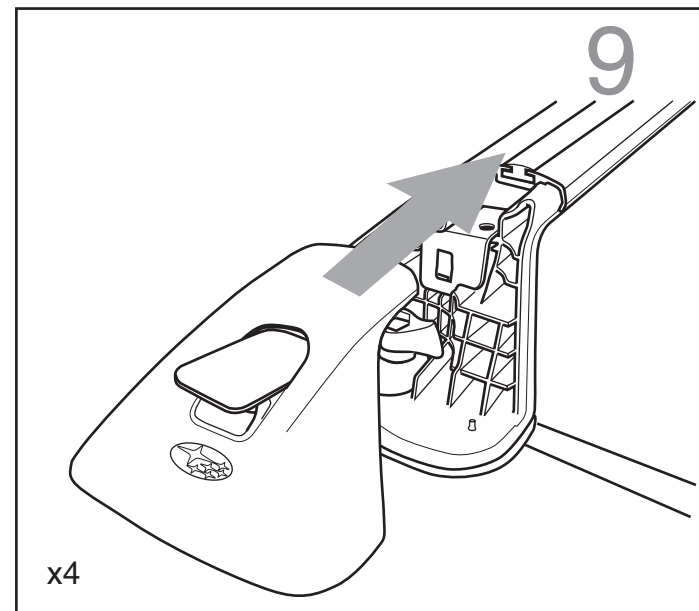
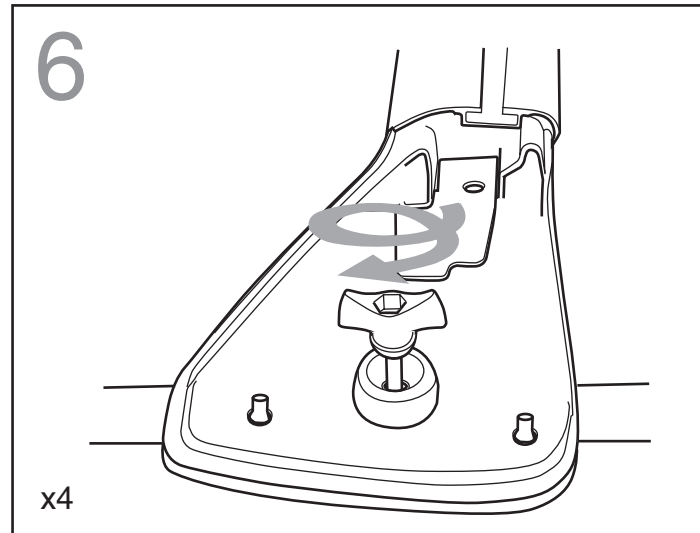
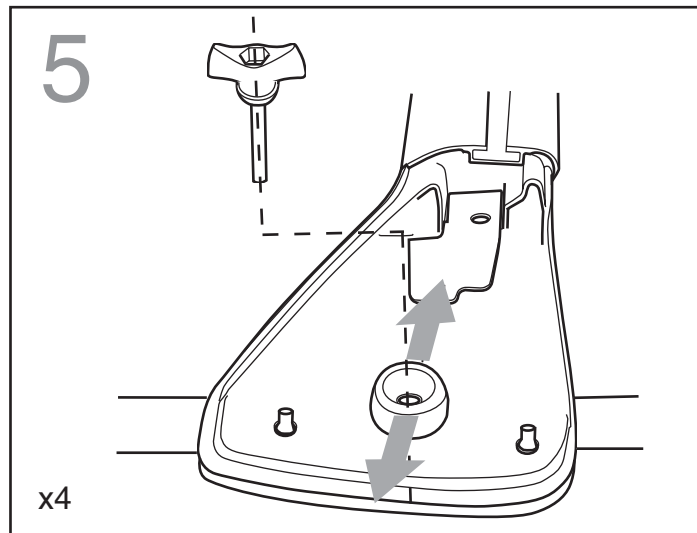
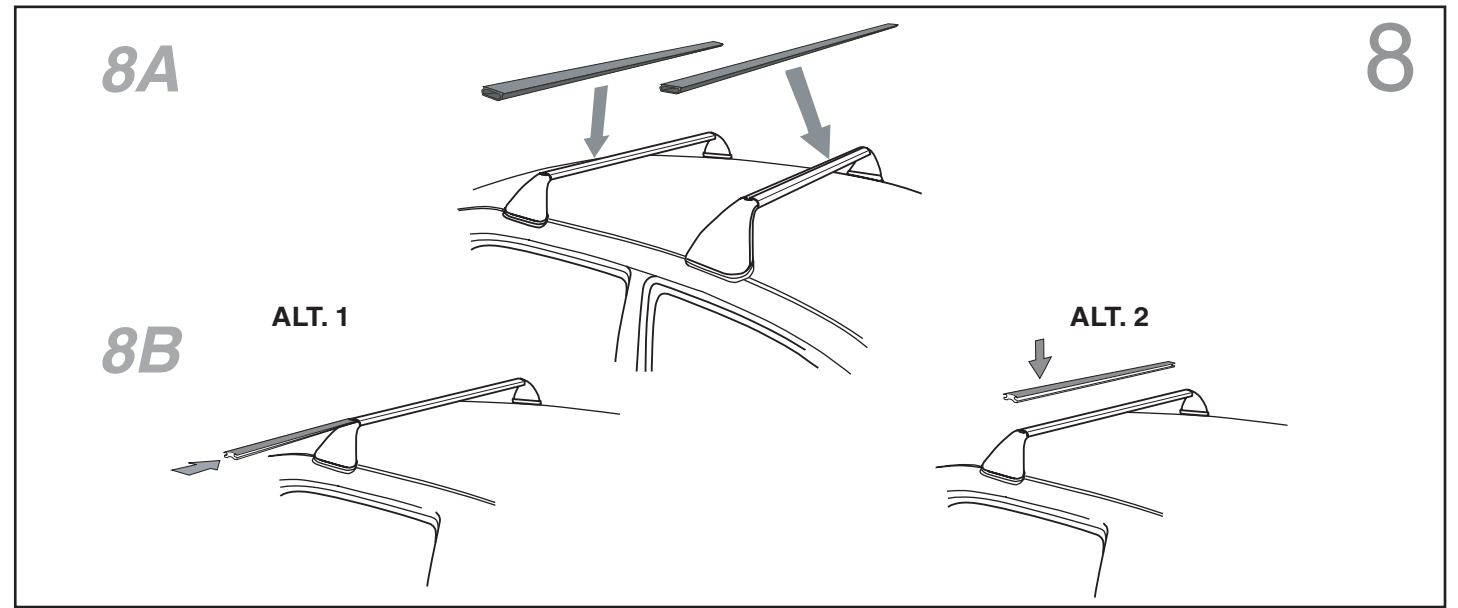
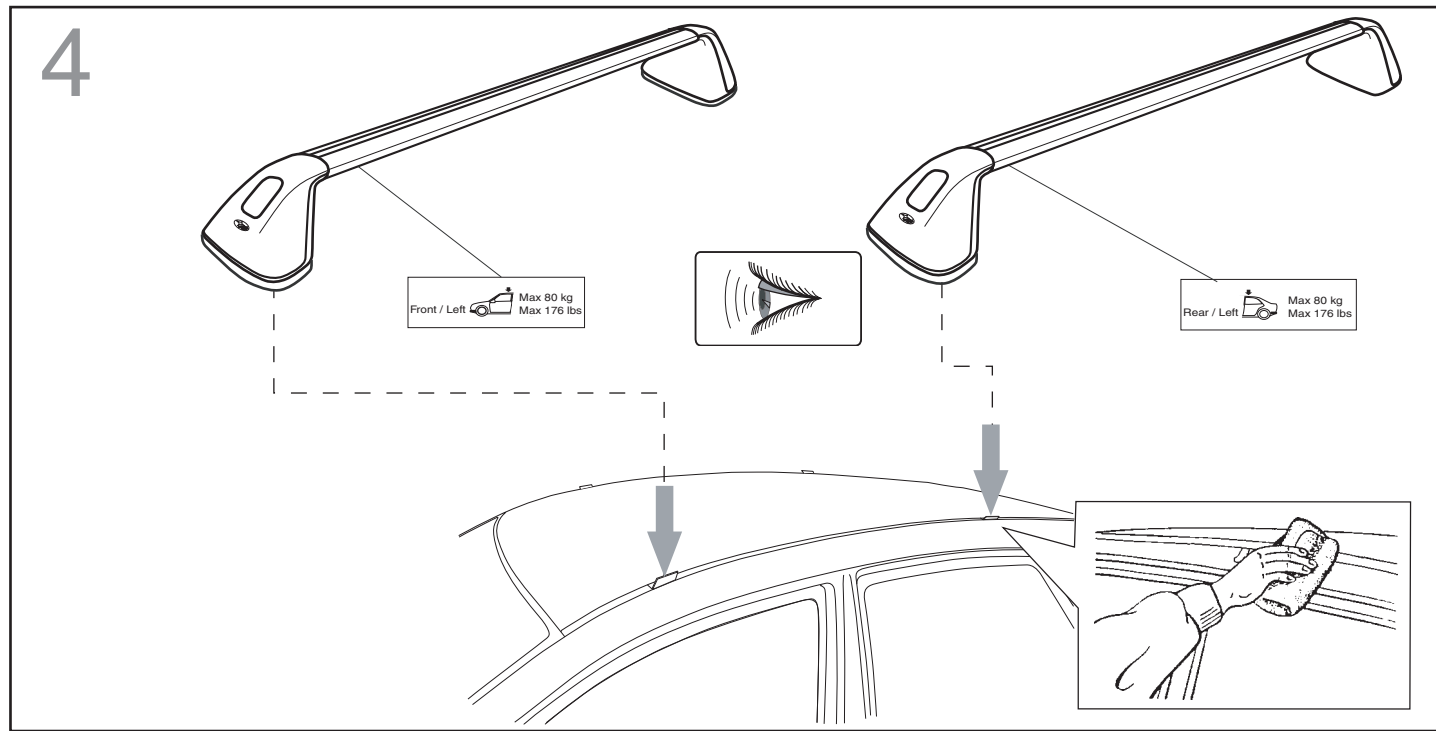


Key No: \_\_\_\_\_

- (D) Geltende Rechte und Vorschriften müssen verfolgt werden bezüglich Verwendungsweise für Lastenträger und Zubehör.
- (GB/USA) Be sure to follow the national rules and legislations in force regarding method of application of load carriers and accessories.
- (S) Gällande nationella lagkrav och föreskrifter skall följas vad avser användningssätt för lasthållare och tillbehör.
- (F) Les arrêtés et lois nationaux en vigueur doivent être suivis lors de l'emploi du porte-bagages et des ses accessoires.
- (FIN) Taakkatelineiden ja niiden lisätarvikkeiden käyttöä koskevia kansallisia lakeja ja muita säännöksiä on aina noudatettava.
- (NL) Wettelijke regels en voorschriften ten aanzien van gebruik van allesdragers en accessoires moeten in acht worden genomen.
- (E) Reglas nacionales exigidas e instrucciones vigentes tienen que ser cumplidas al respecto del modo de uso de carga equipajes y accesorios.
- (J) 積載物の大きさは、道路交通法施行令第2条3項に従ってください。

PARTS LIST







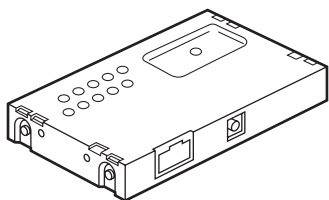
# SUBARU *IMPREZA*

**INSTALLATION  
INSTRUCTIONS**

**PART NUMBER: H621SFG100 (UF-901U-02)**

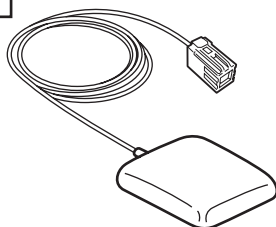
**DESCRIPTION: XM-SATELLITE RADIO KIT**

**A KIT CONTENTS:**



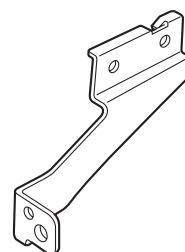
1 X

**B**



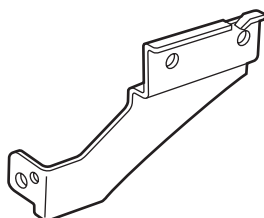
1 X

**C**



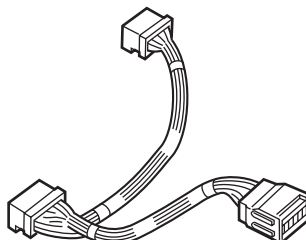
1 X

**D**



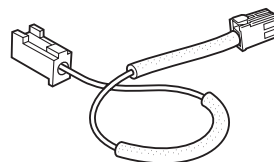
1 X

**E**



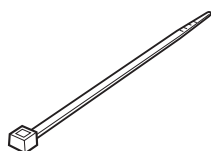
1 X

**F**



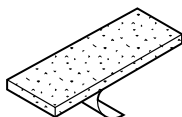
1 X

**G**



5 X

**H**



7 X

**I**



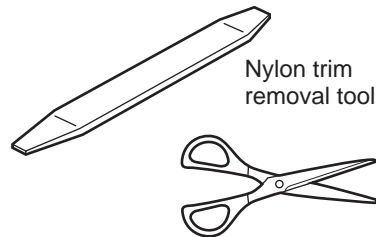
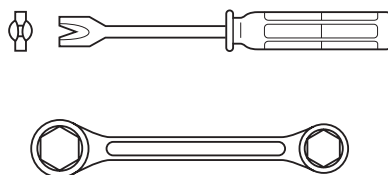
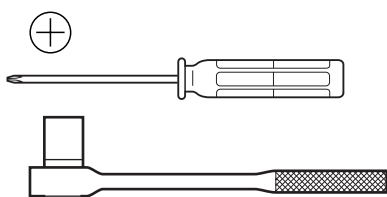
4 X

**J**



2 X

**TOOLS REQUIRED:**

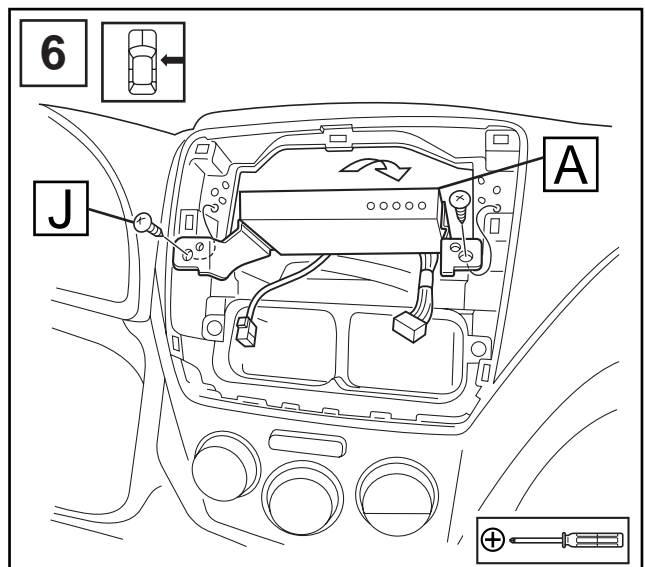
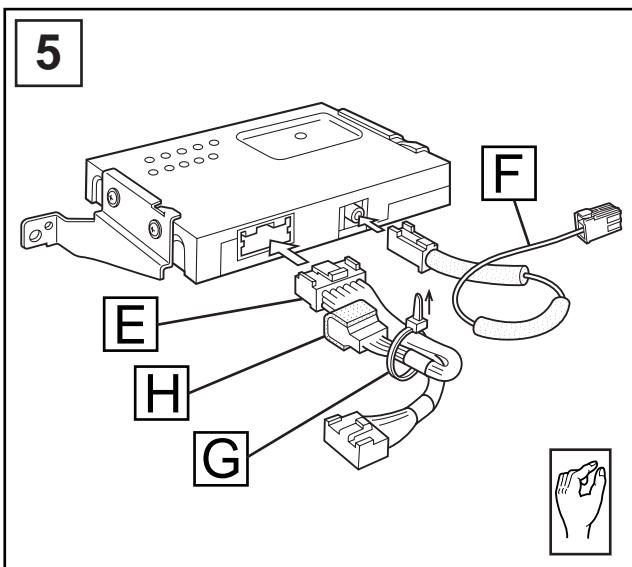
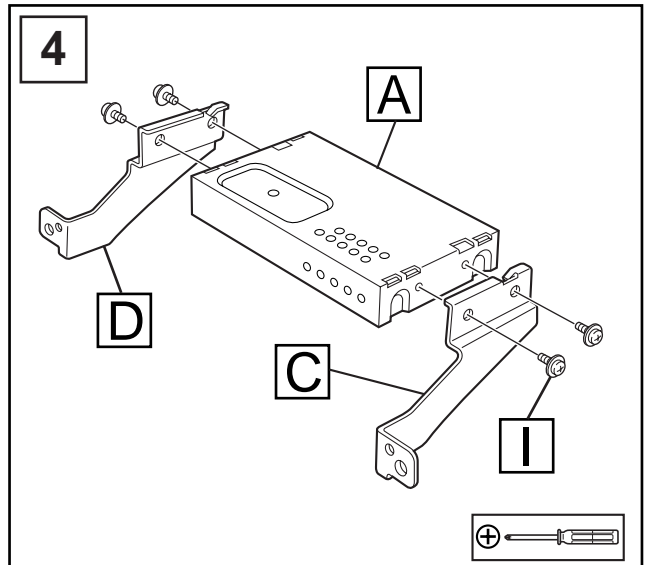
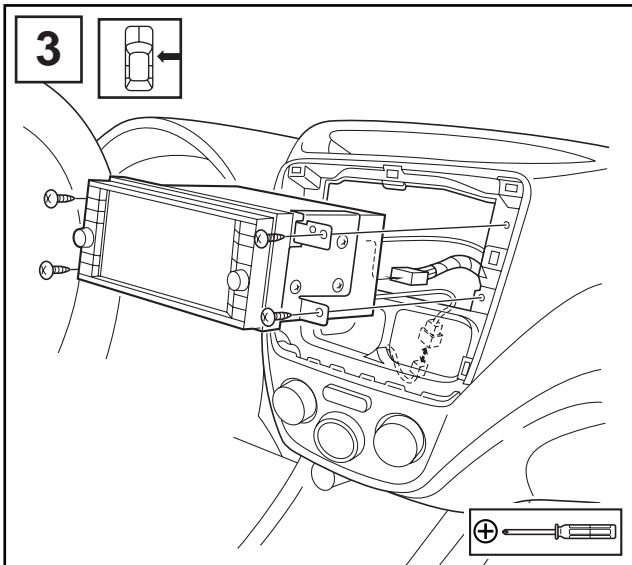
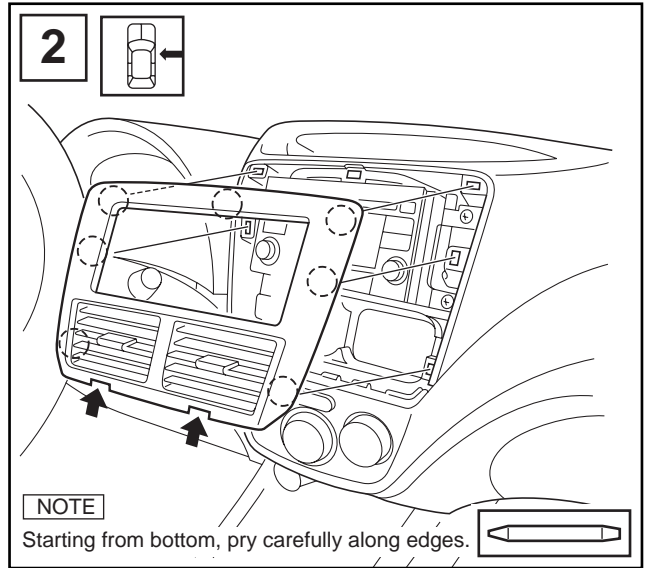
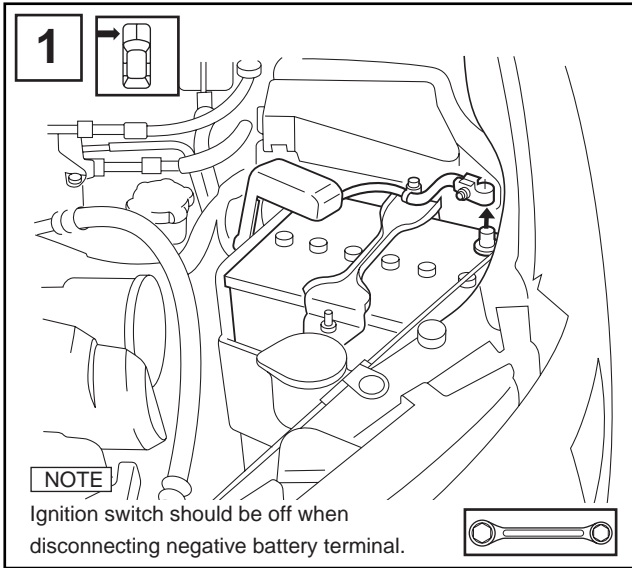


**MEANING of Characters:**

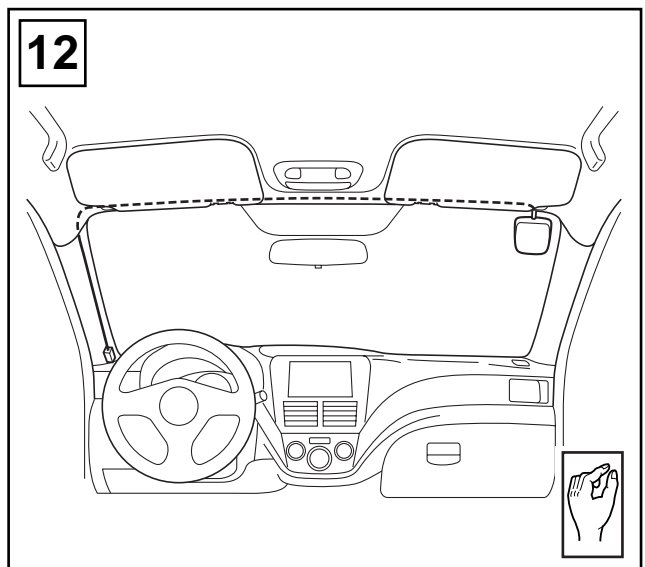
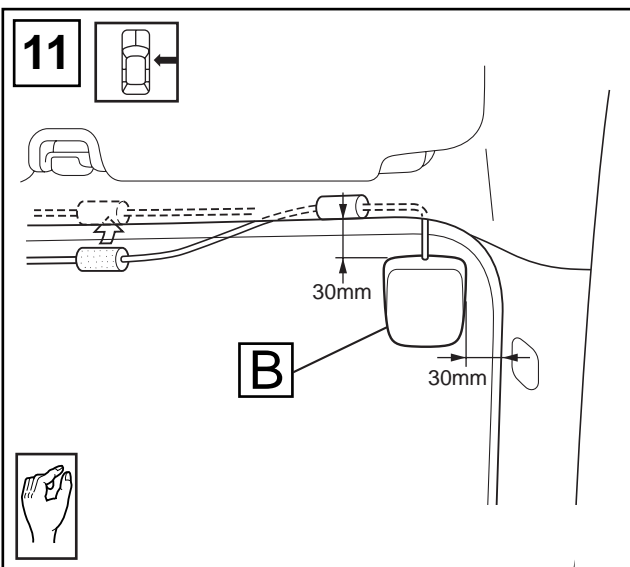
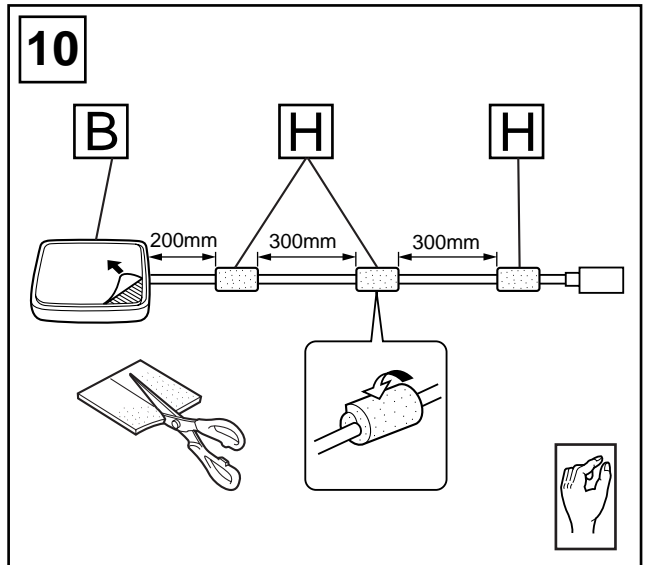
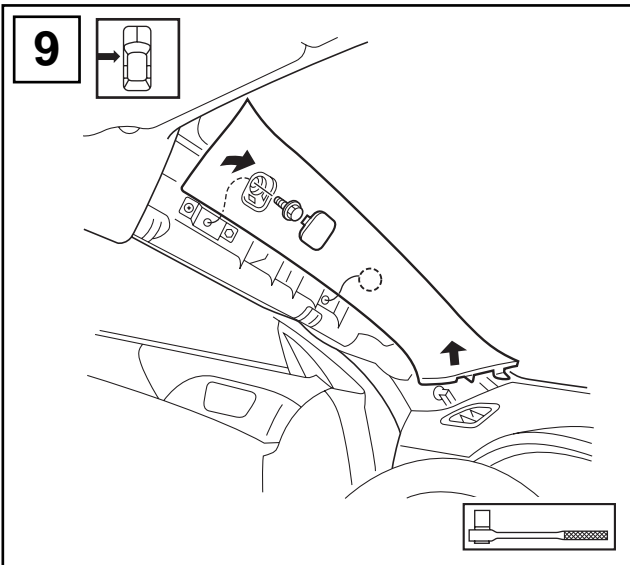
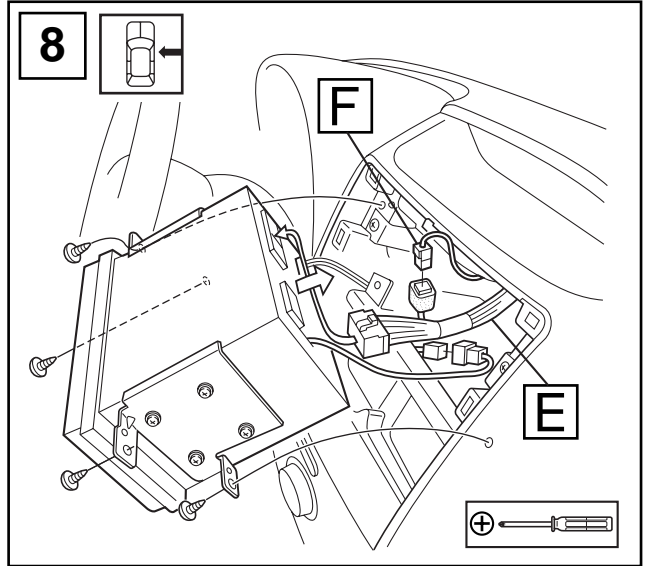
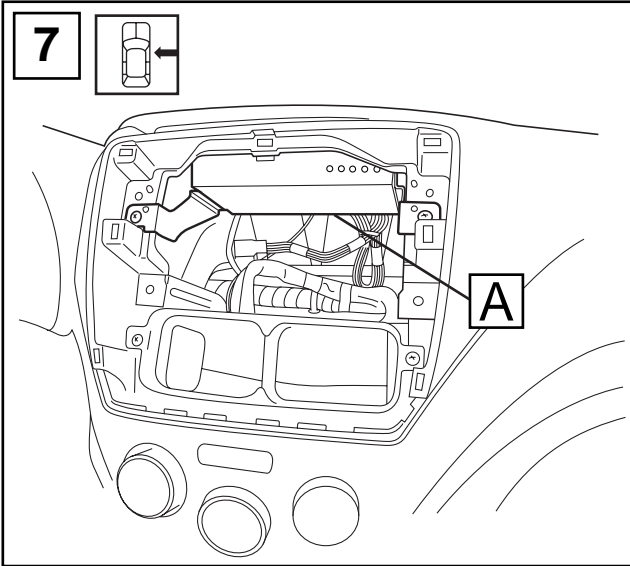
- : Remove
- : Install
- : Disconnect
- : Connect
- : Location of Clip or Screw
- T** : Tightening Torque
- : Loosen
- : Discard
- : Reuse



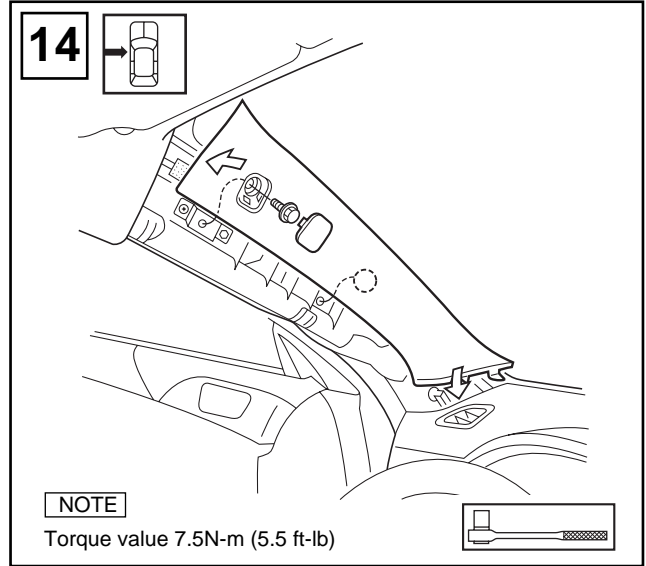
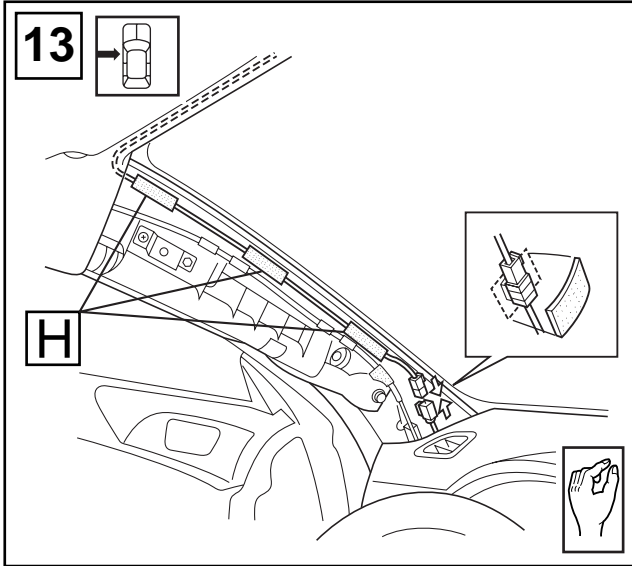
# IMPREZA



# IMPREZA



# IMPREZA



Reassembly: **2** → **1**

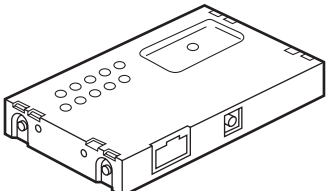
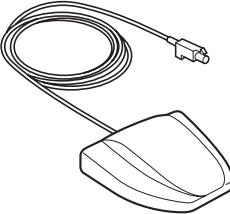
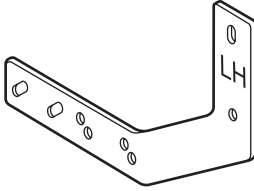
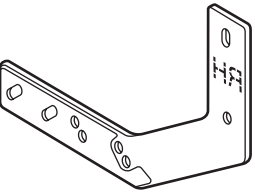
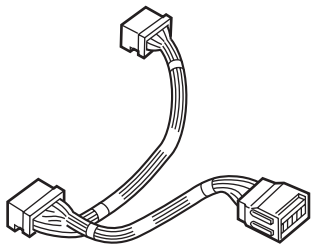
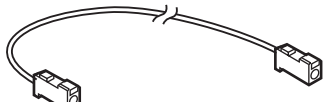
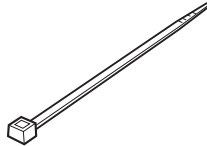
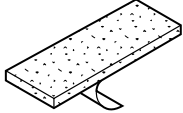



# SUBARU **B9 TRIBECA / LEGACY**

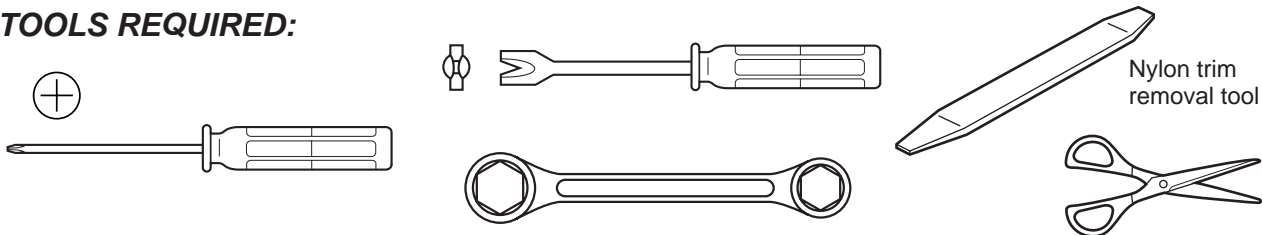
**INSTALLATION  
INSTRUCTIONS**

PART NUMBER: H621SXA100 (UF-909U-02)









DESCRIPTION: SIRIUS-SATELLITE RADIO KIT

<p><b>A KIT CONTENTS:</b></p>  <p>1 X</p>	<p><b>B</b></p>  <p>1 X</p>	<p><b>C</b></p>  <p>1 X</p>
<p><b>D</b></p>  <p>1 X</p>	<p><b>E</b></p>  <p>1 X</p>	<p><b>F</b></p>  <p>1 X</p>
<p><b>G</b></p>  <p>5 X</p>	<p><b>H</b></p>  <p>7 X</p>	<p><b>I</b></p>  <p>8 X</p>

**TOOLS REQUIRED:**

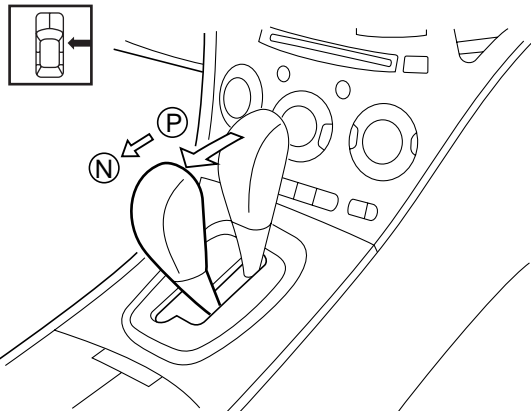


**MEANING of Characters:**

-  : Remove
-  : Install
-  : Disconnect
-  : Connect
-  : Location of Clip or Screw
- T** : Tightening Torque
-  : Loosen
-  : Discard
-  : Reuse

# B9 TRIBECA

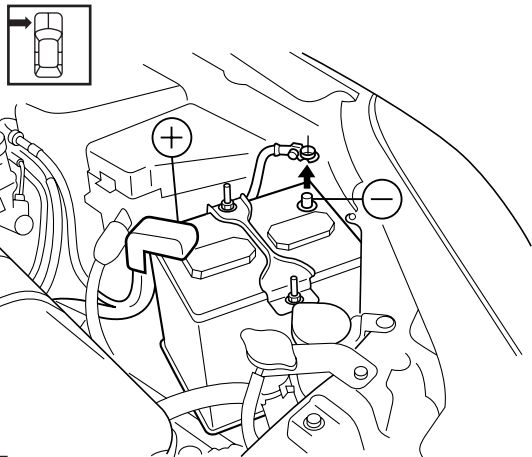
1



Engage the parking brake.  
Turn on the ignition switch.  
Move the shift Lever from "P" to "N".  
Turn off the ignition switch.



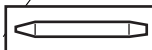
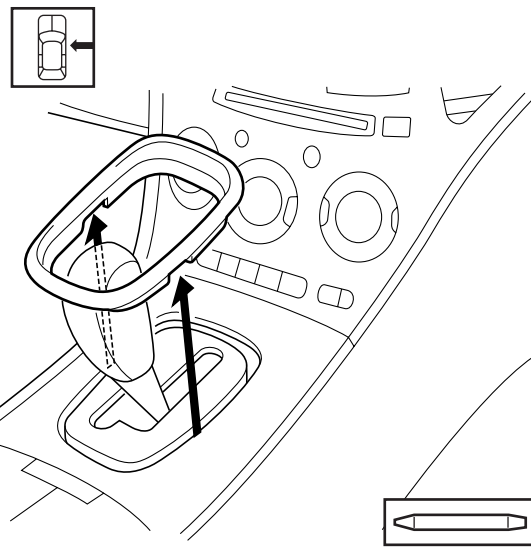
2



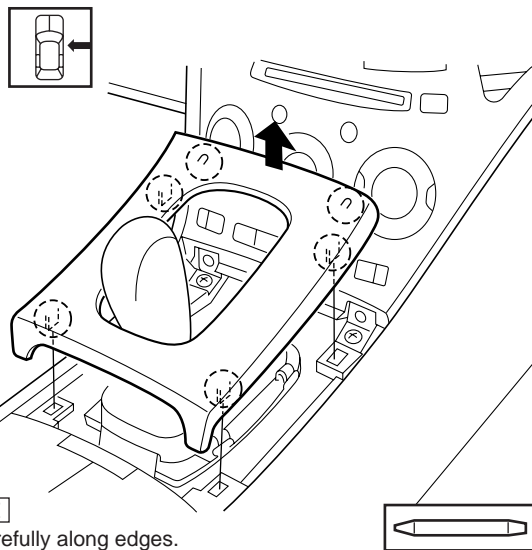
**NOTE**  
Ignition switch should be off when  
disconnecting negative battery terminal.



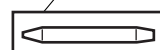
3



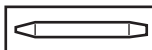
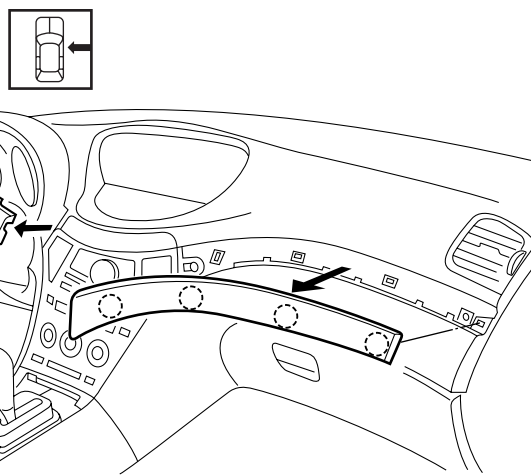
4



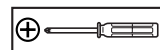
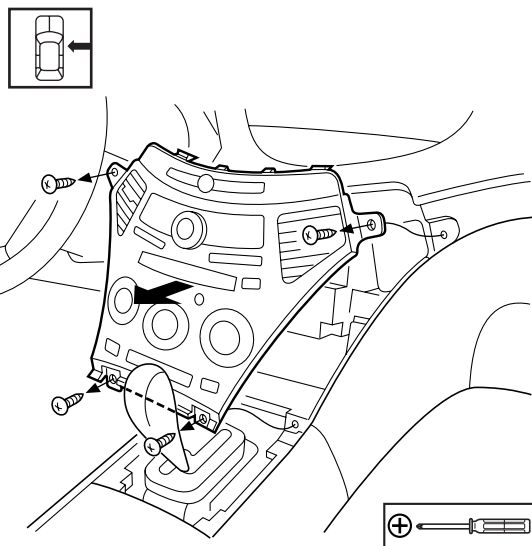
**NOTE**  
Pry carefully along edges.



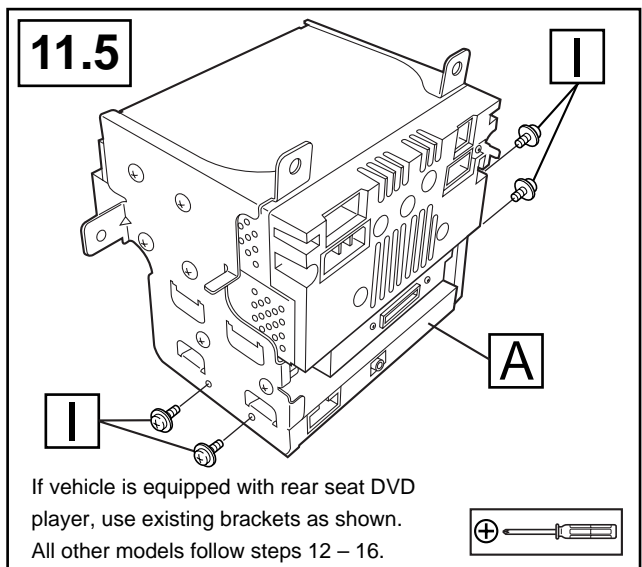
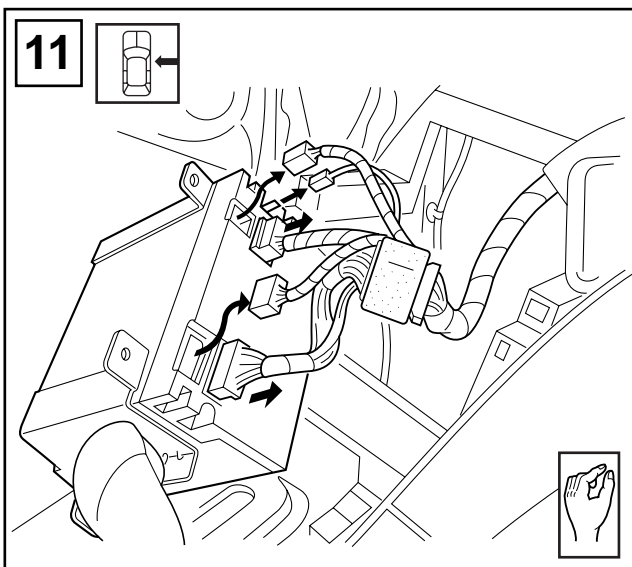
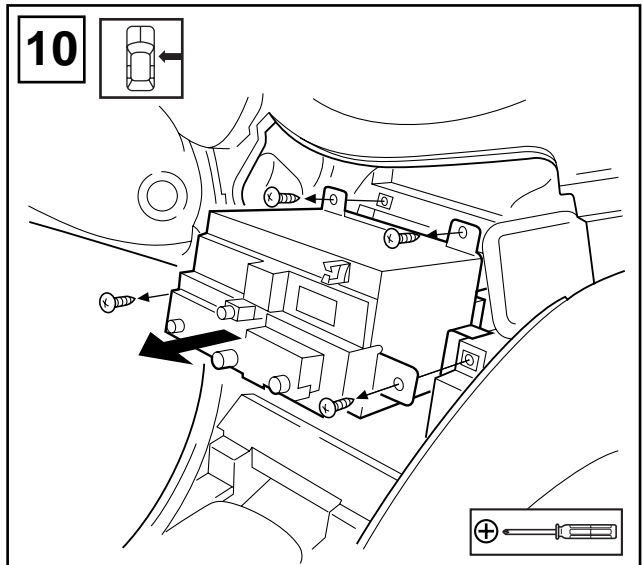
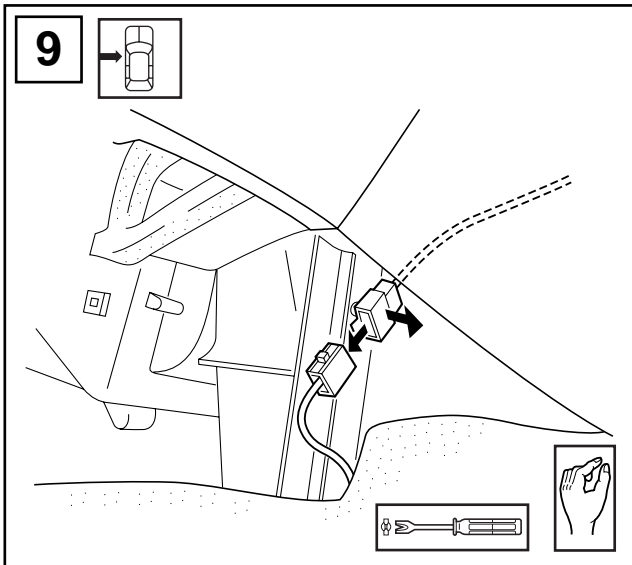
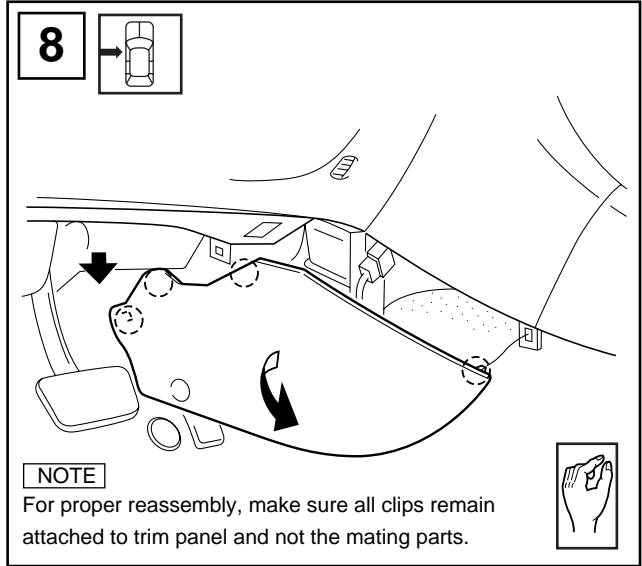
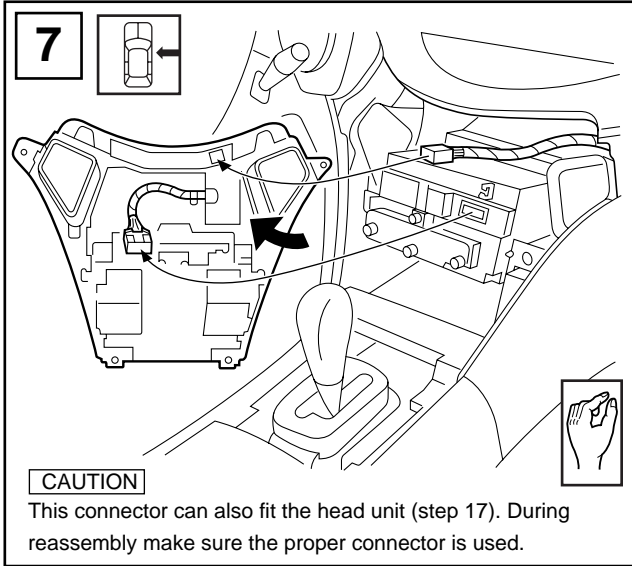
5



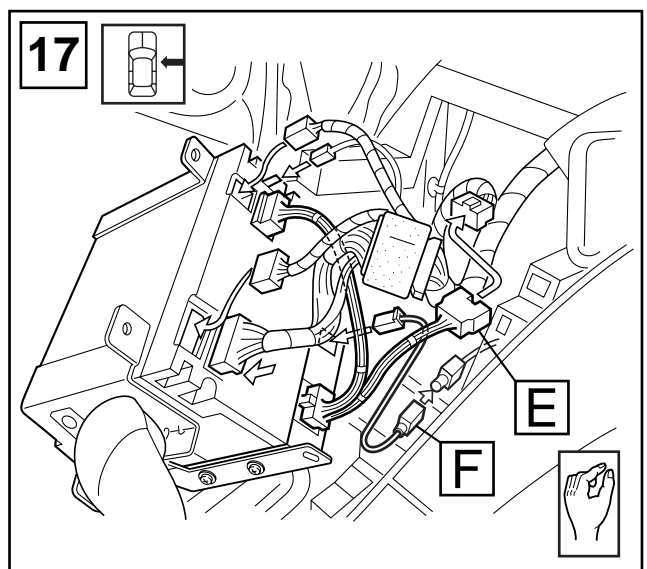
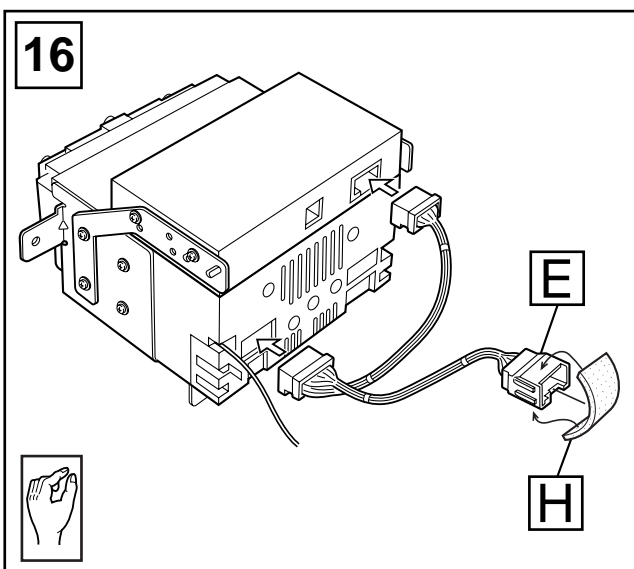
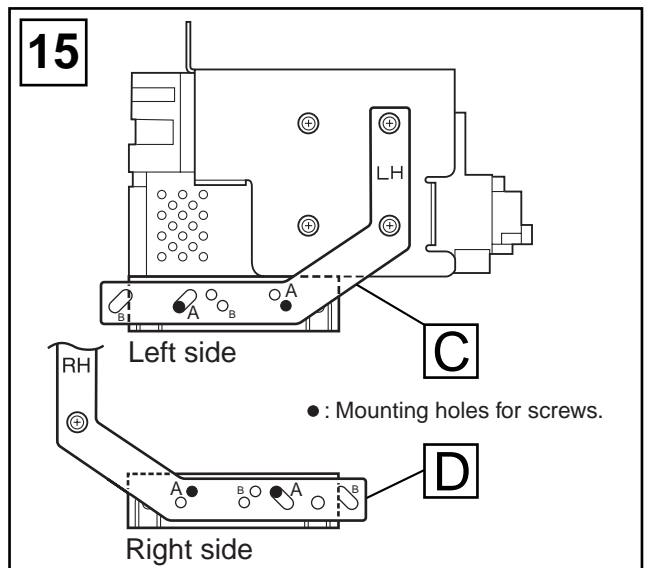
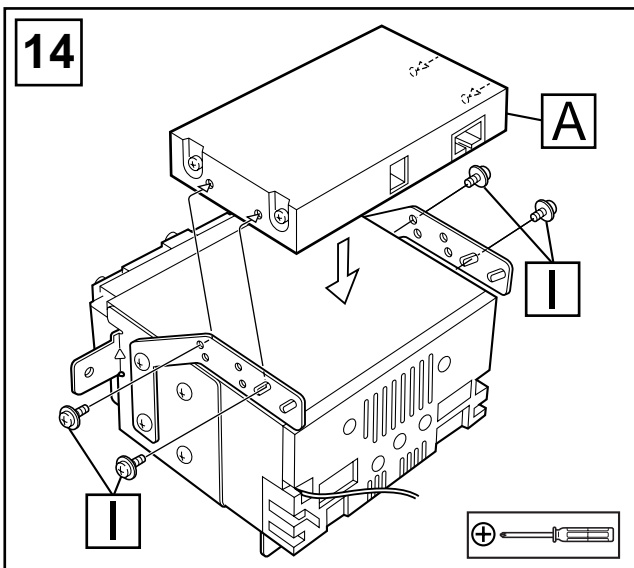
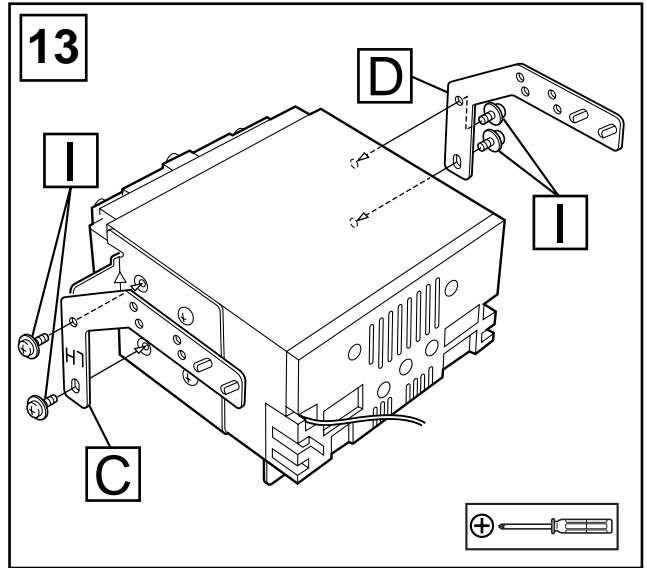
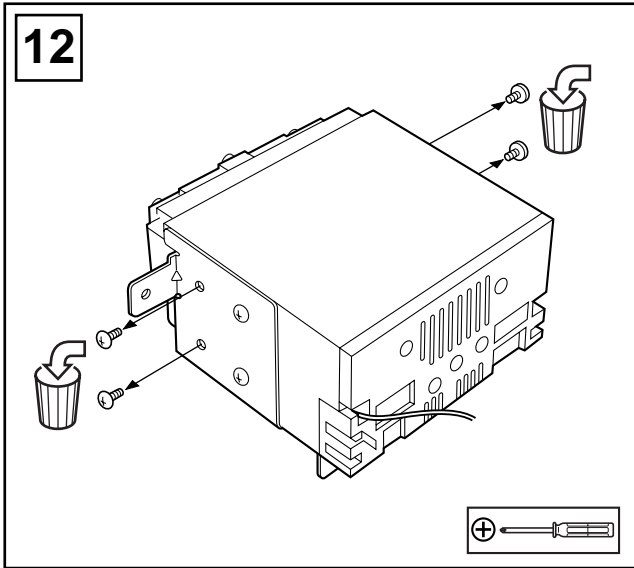
6



# B9 TRIBECA

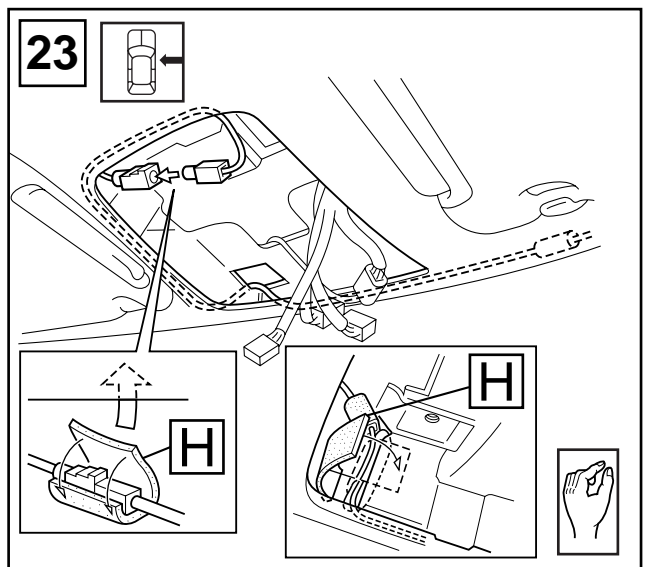
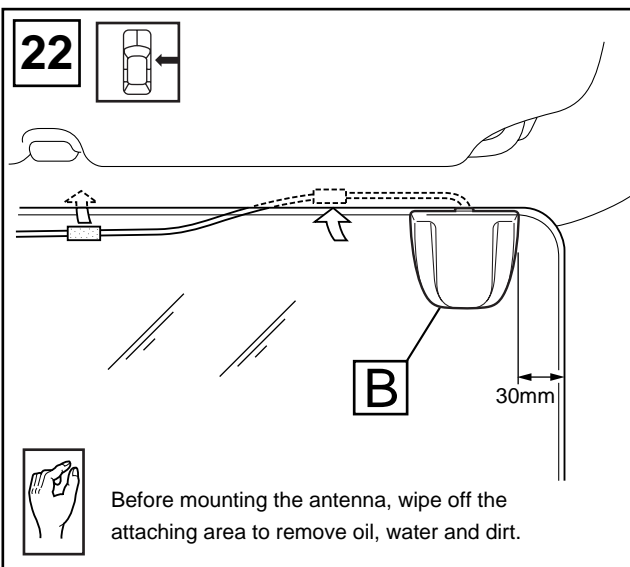
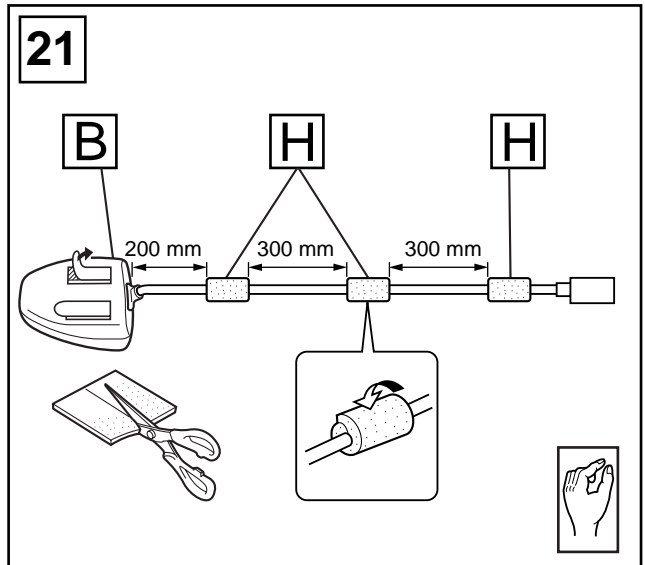
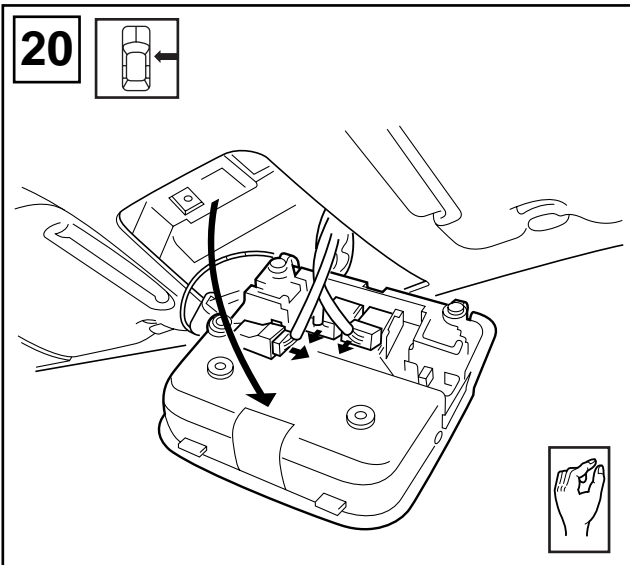
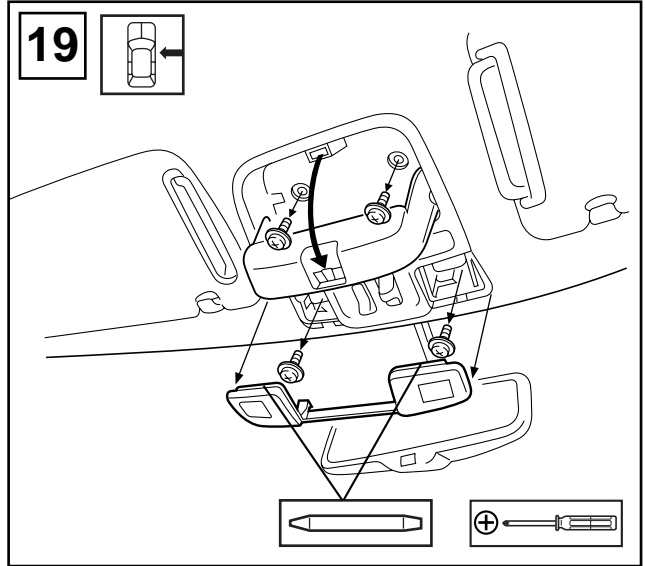
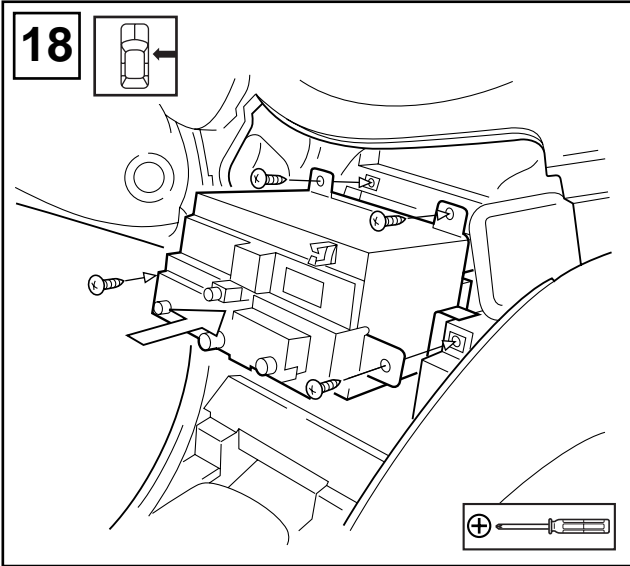


# B9 TRIBECA

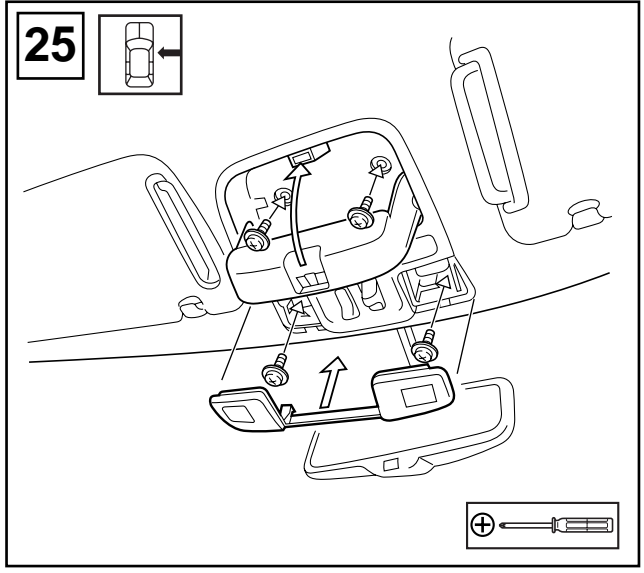
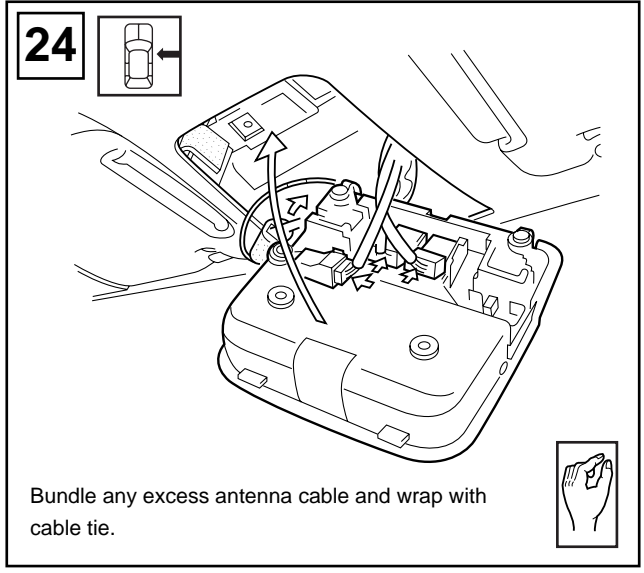




# B9 TRIBECA

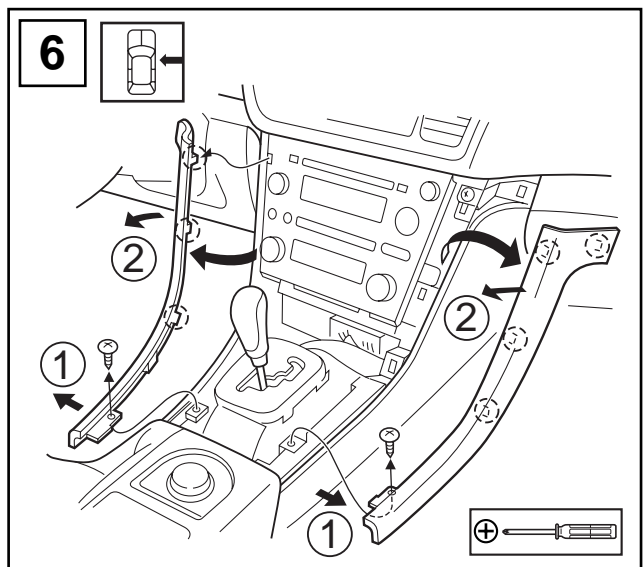
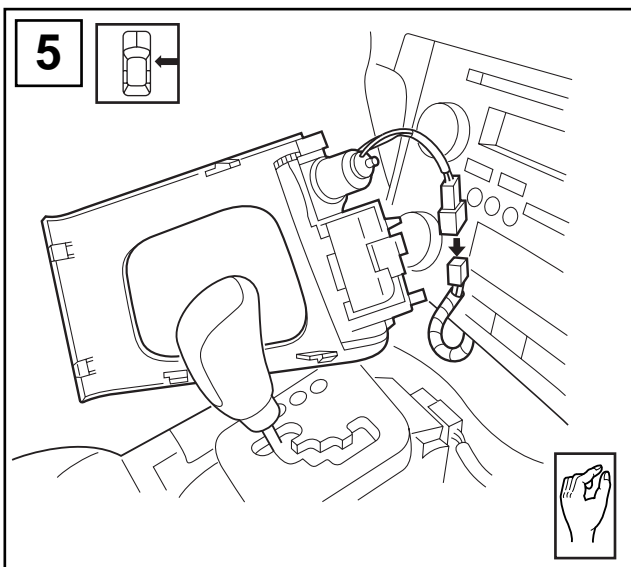
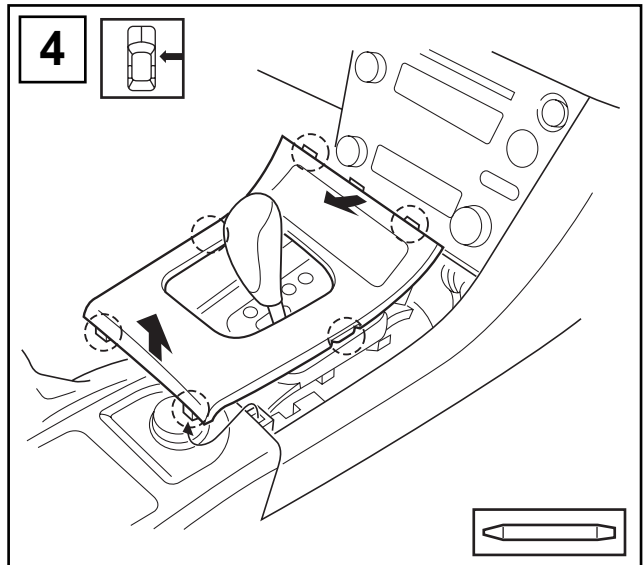
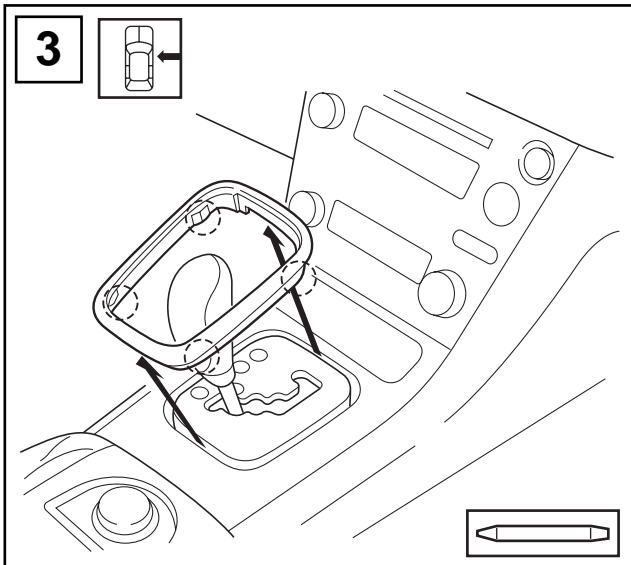
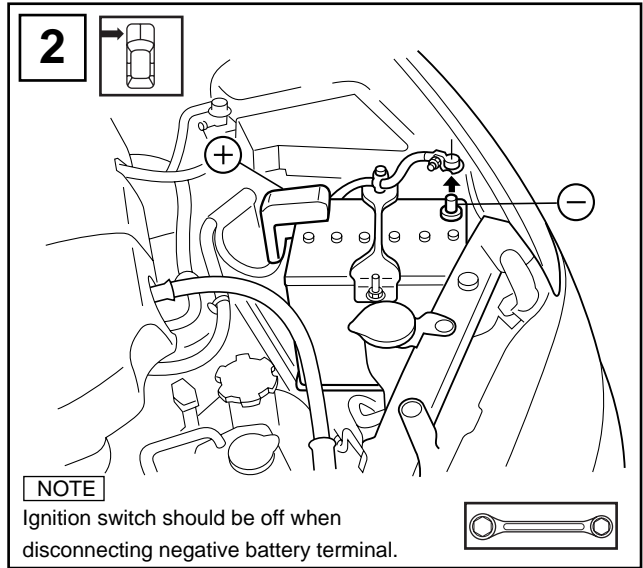
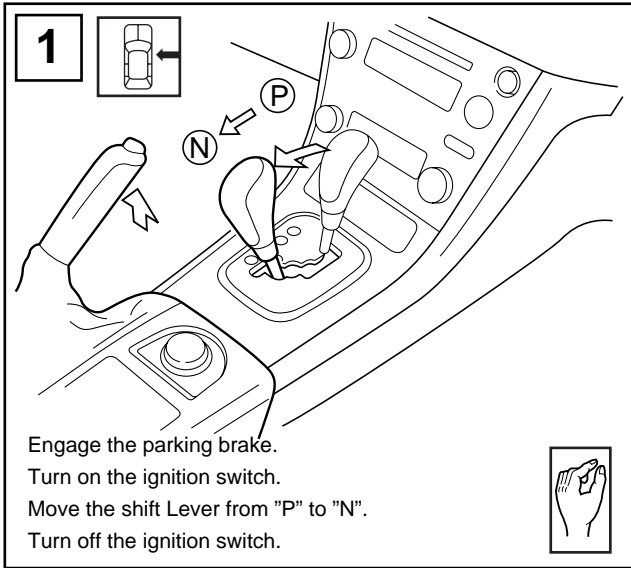


# B9 TRIBECA



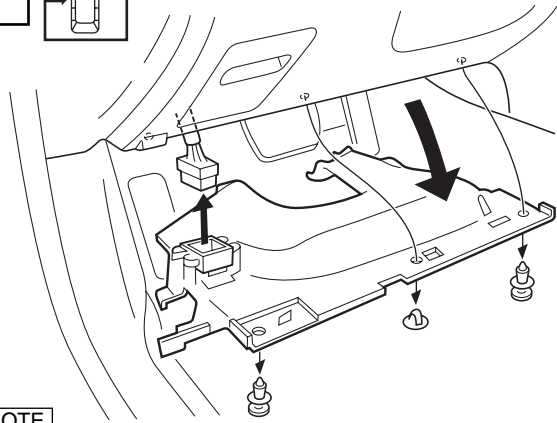
Reassembly: **9** → **1**

# LEGACY



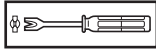
# LEGACY

7

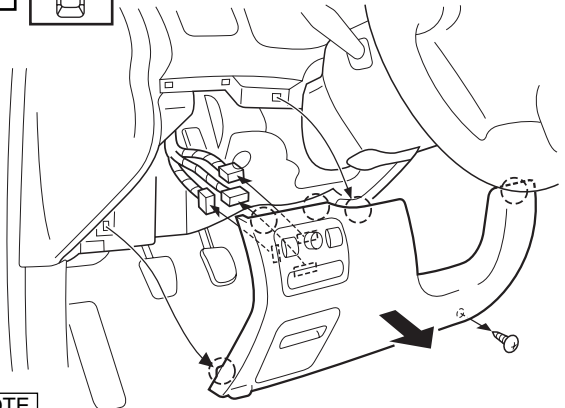


**NOTE**

If vehicle is equipped with automatic climate control skip this step.

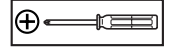


8

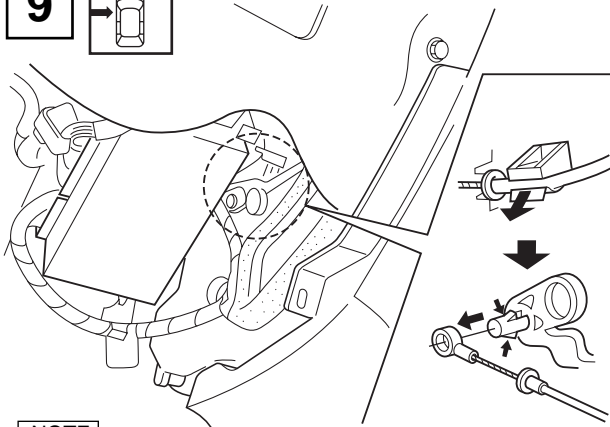


**NOTE**

If vehicle is equipped with automatic climate control skip this step.

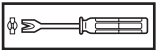


9

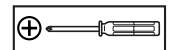
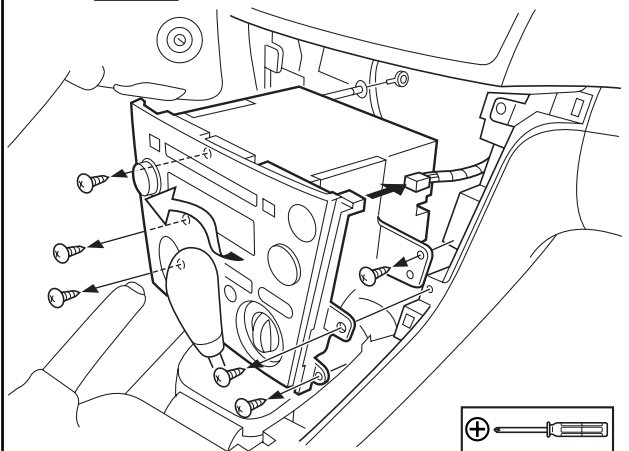


**NOTE**

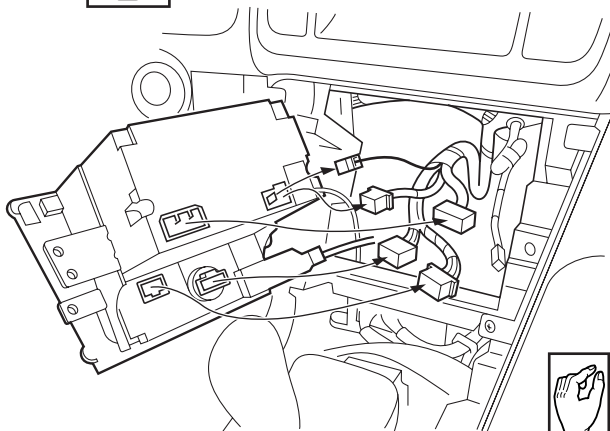
If vehicle is equipped with automatic climate control skip this step.



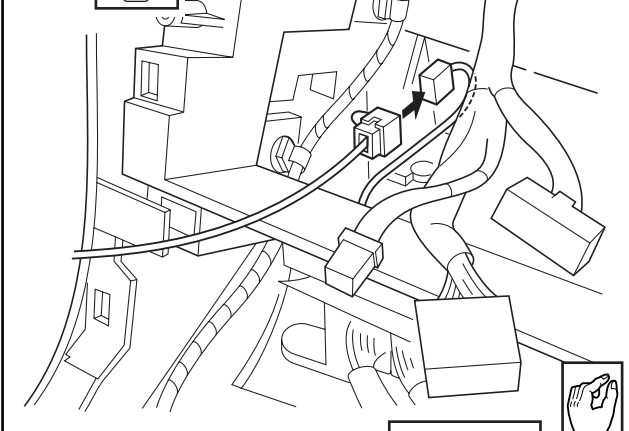
10



11

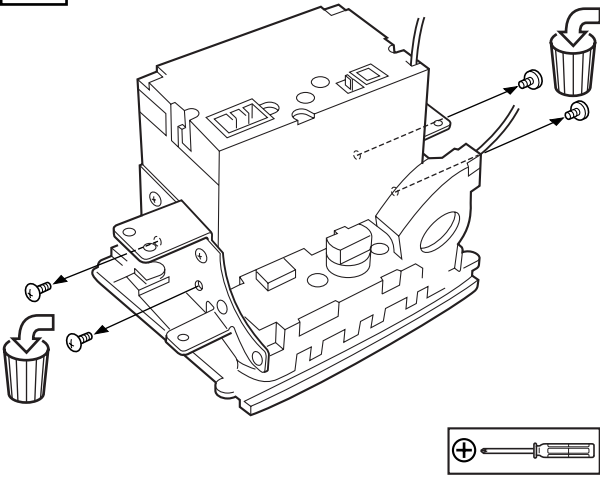


12

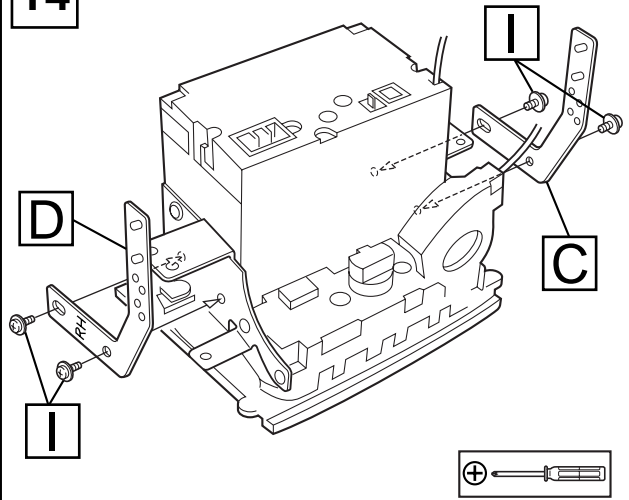


# LEGACY

13

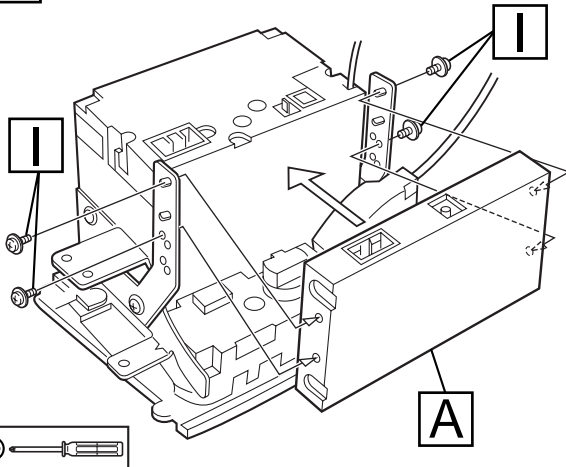


14



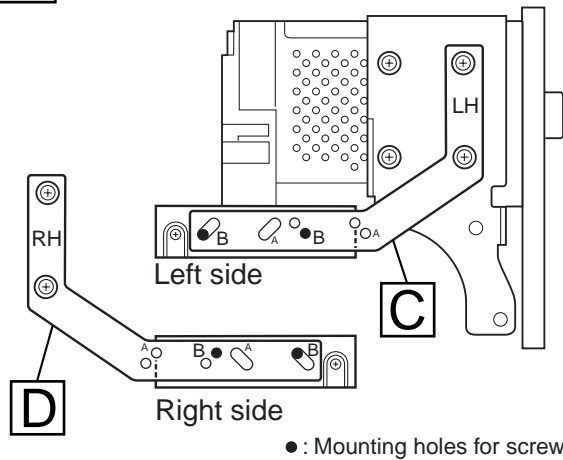
15

Manual air conditioner type



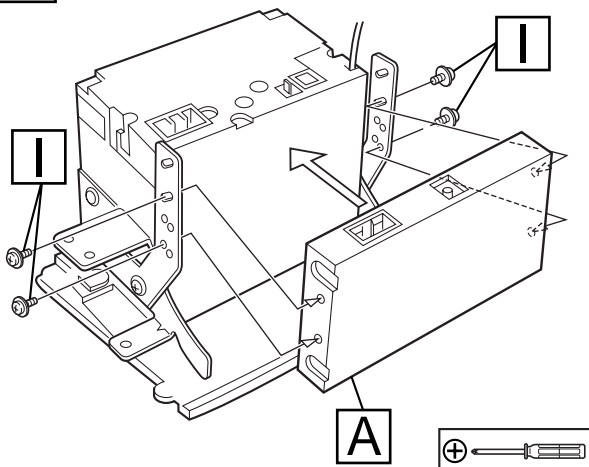
16

Manual air conditioner type



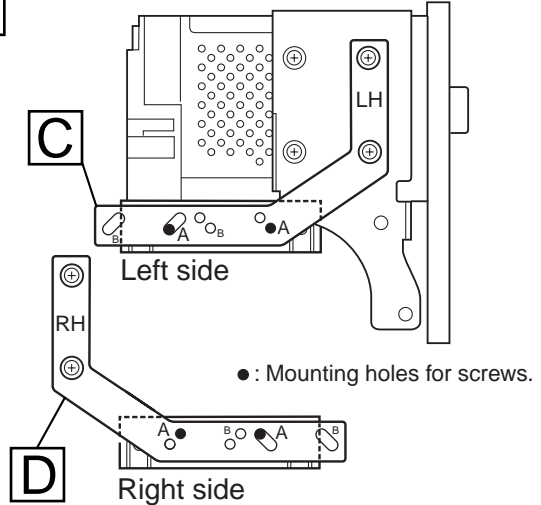
17

Auto air conditioner type

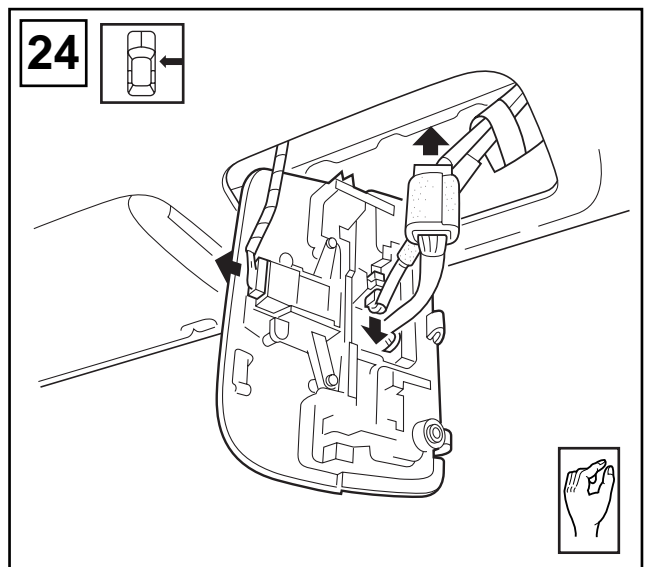
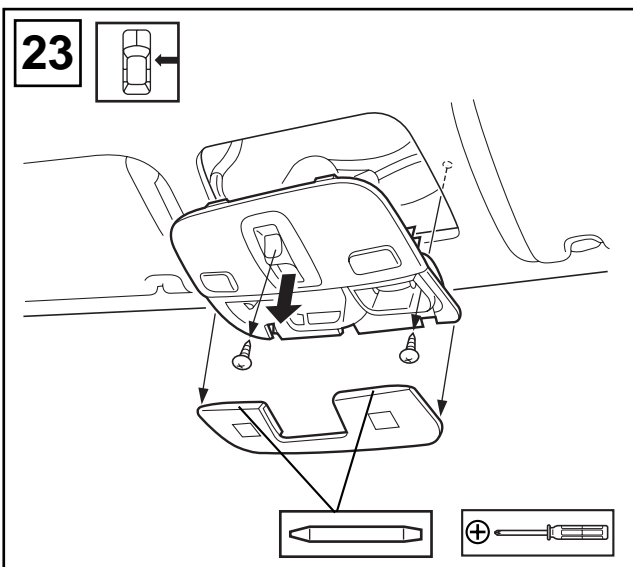
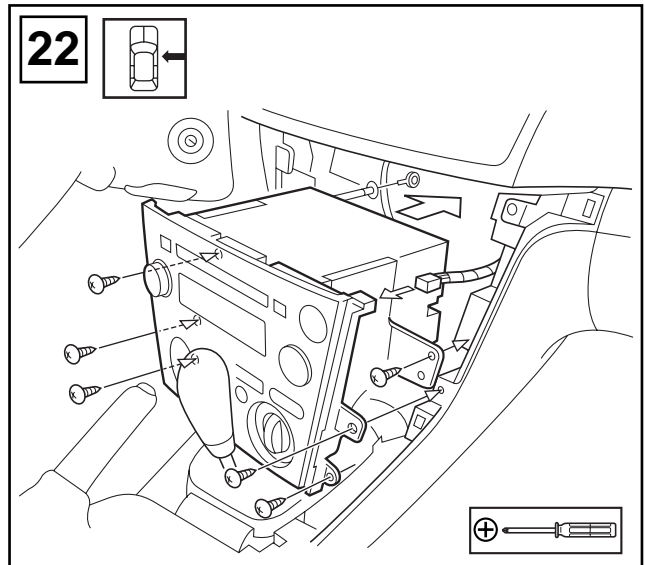
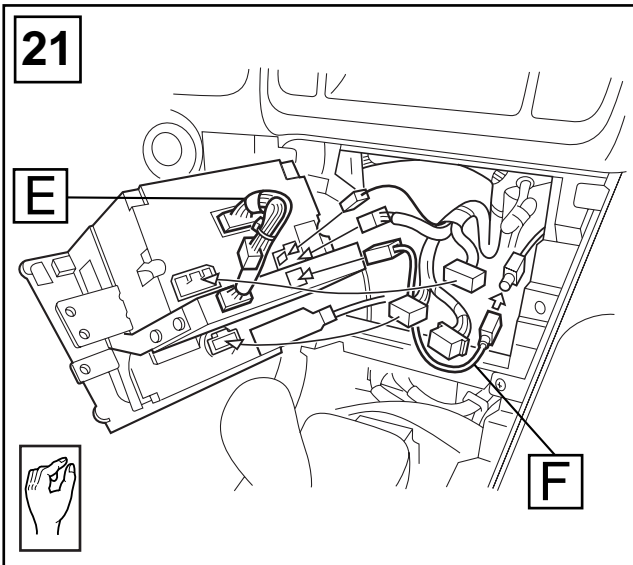
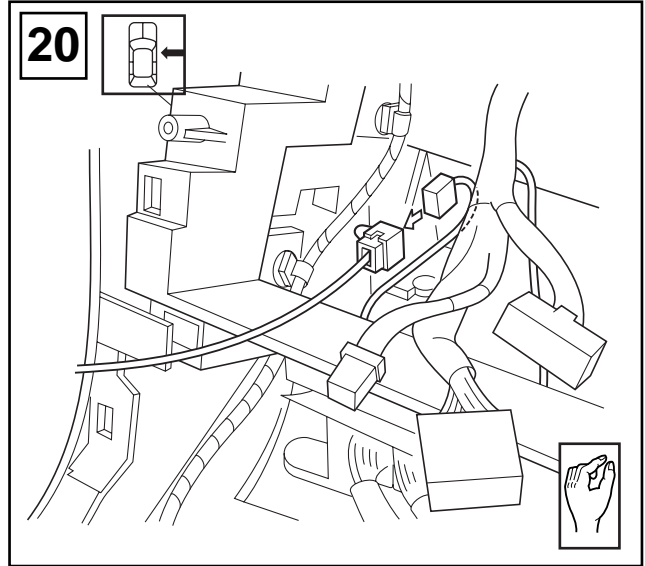
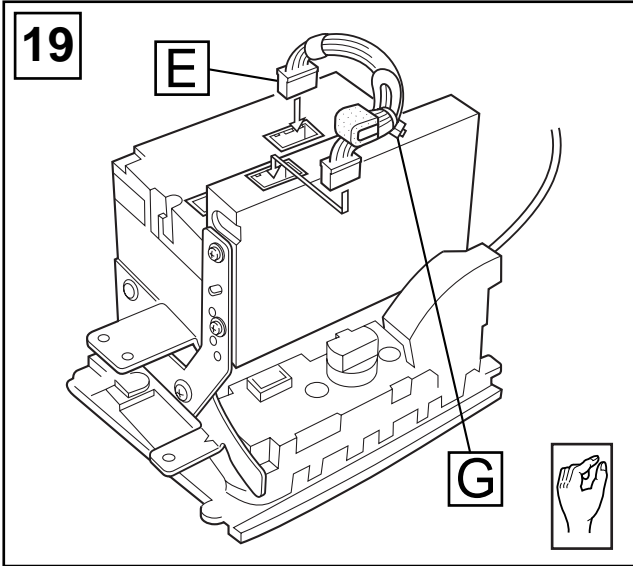


18

Auto air conditioner type



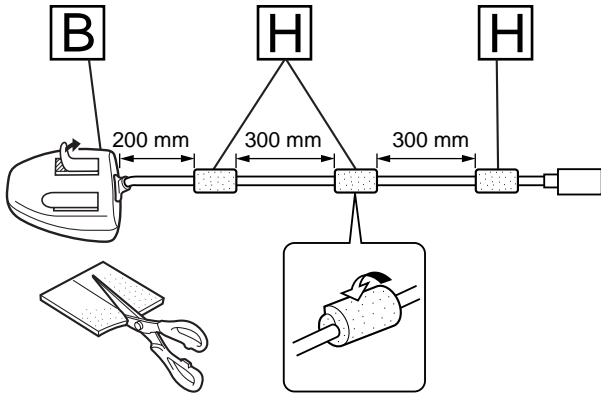
# LEGACY



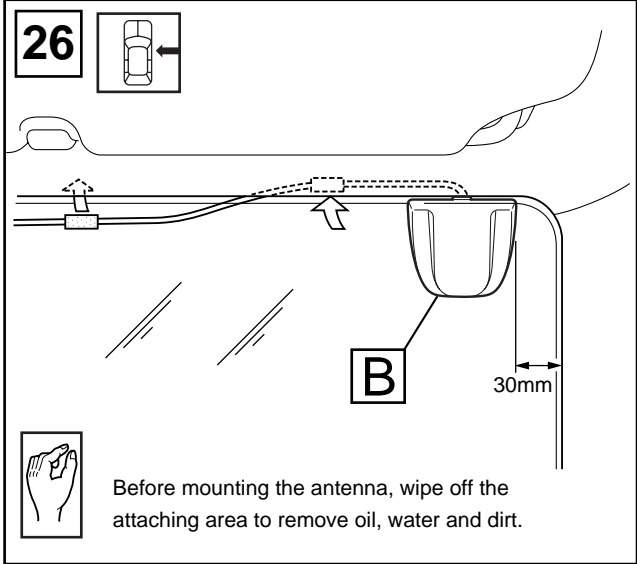


# LEGACY

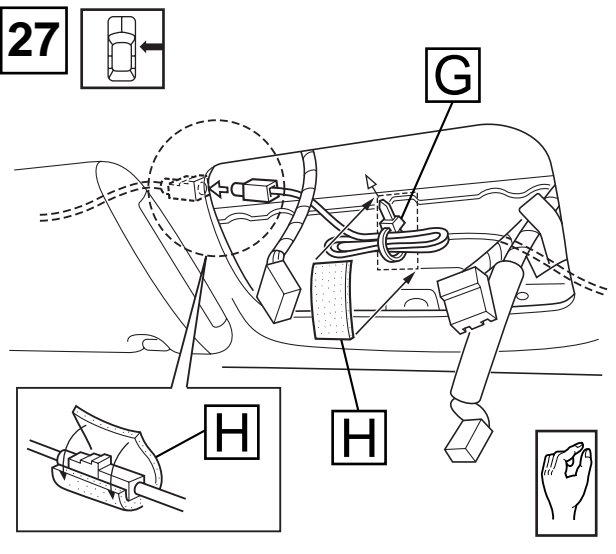
25



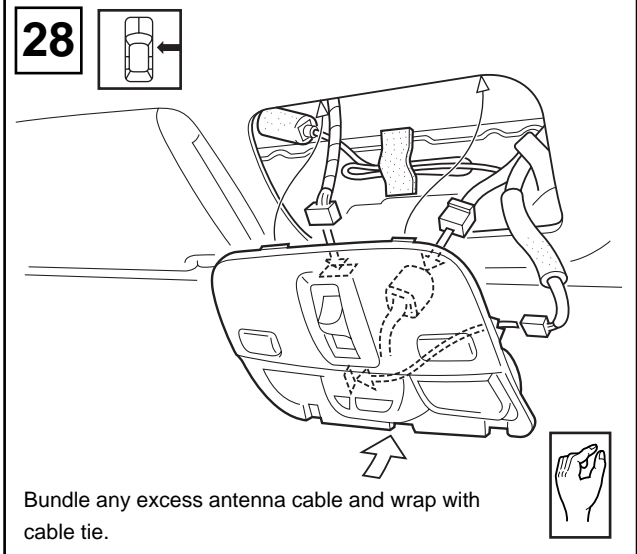
26



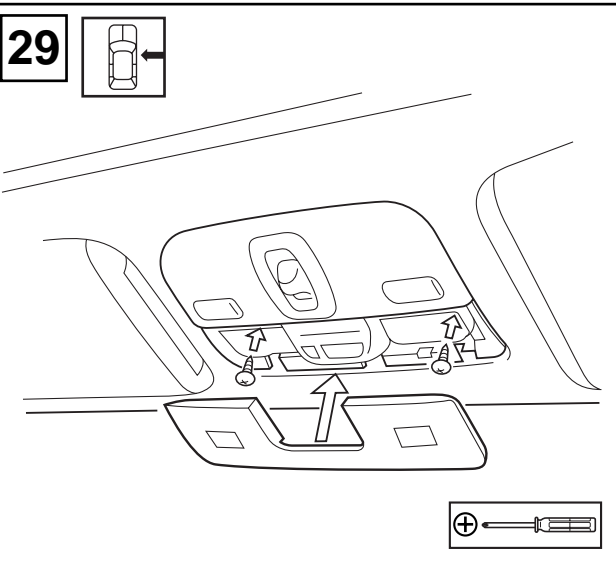
27



28



29



Reassembly: **9** → **1**

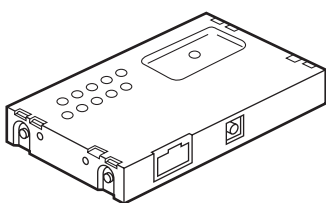
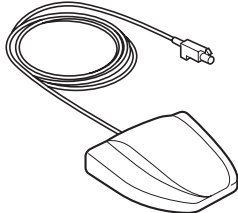
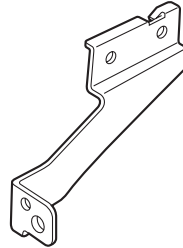
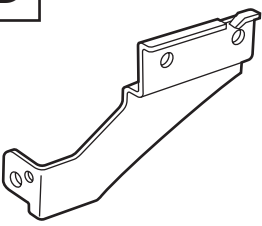
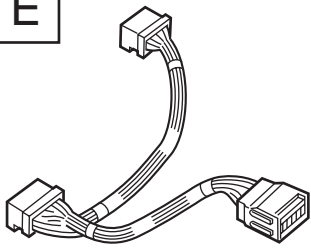
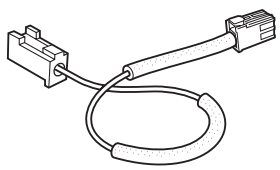
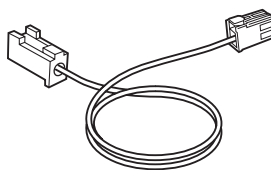
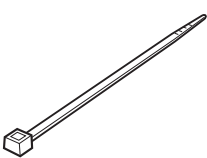
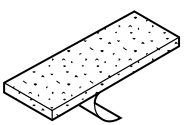




# SUBARU *IMPREZA*

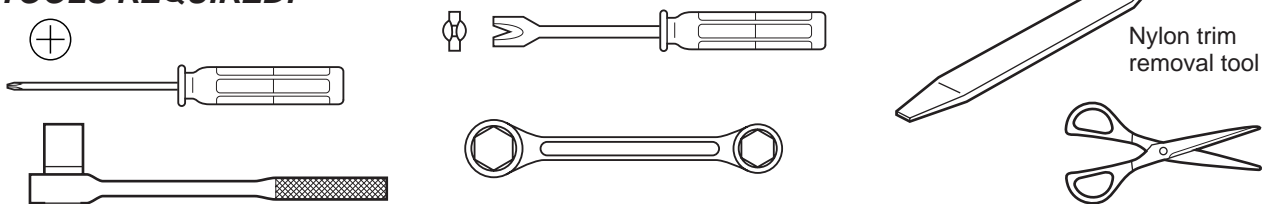
**INSTALLATION  
INSTRUCTIONS**

PART NUMBER: H621SFG000 (UF-909U-01)









DESCRIPTION: SIRIUS-SATELLITE RADIO KIT

<p><b>A KIT CONTENTS:</b></p>  <p>1 X</p>	<p><b>B</b></p>  <p>1 X</p>	<p><b>C</b></p>  <p>1 X</p>	
<p><b>D</b></p> 	<p><b>E</b></p>  <p>1 X</p>	<p><b>F</b></p>  <p>1 X</p>	<p><b>G</b></p>  <p>1 X</p>
<p><b>H</b></p>  <p>5 X</p>	<p><b>I</b></p>  <p>7 X</p>	<p><b>J</b></p>  <p>4 X</p>	<p><b>K</b></p>  <p>2 X</p>

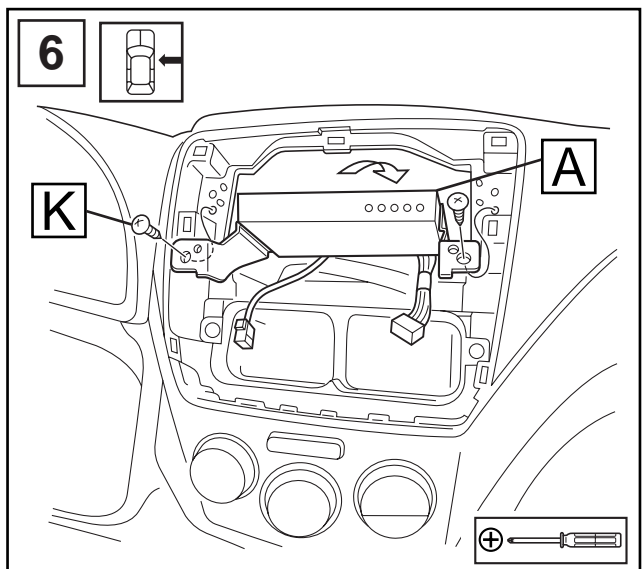
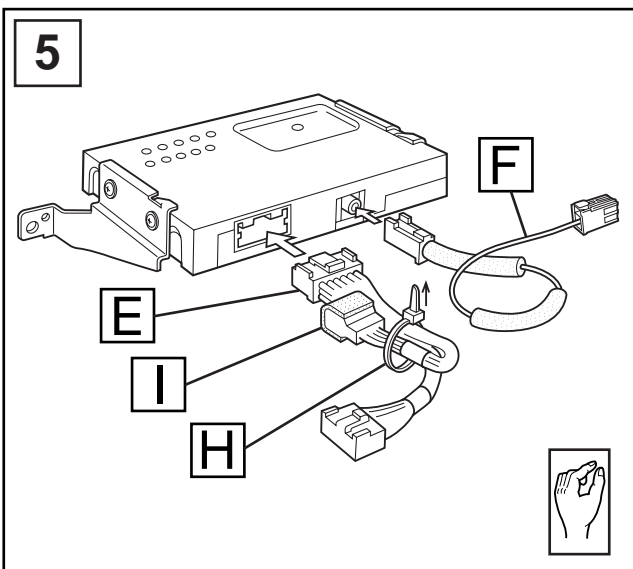
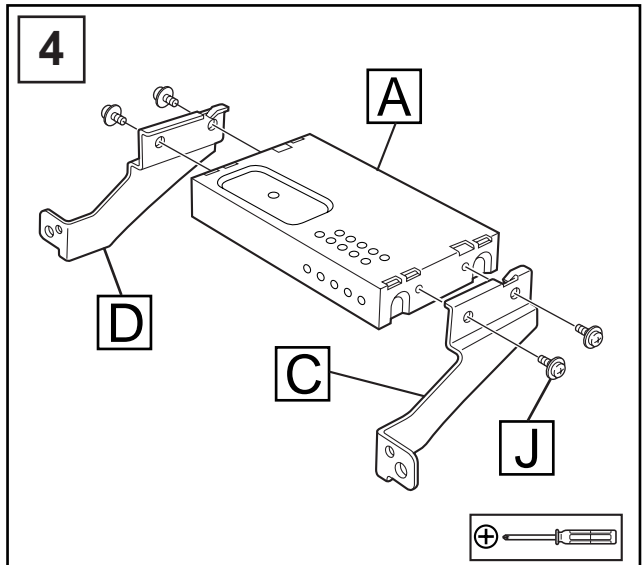
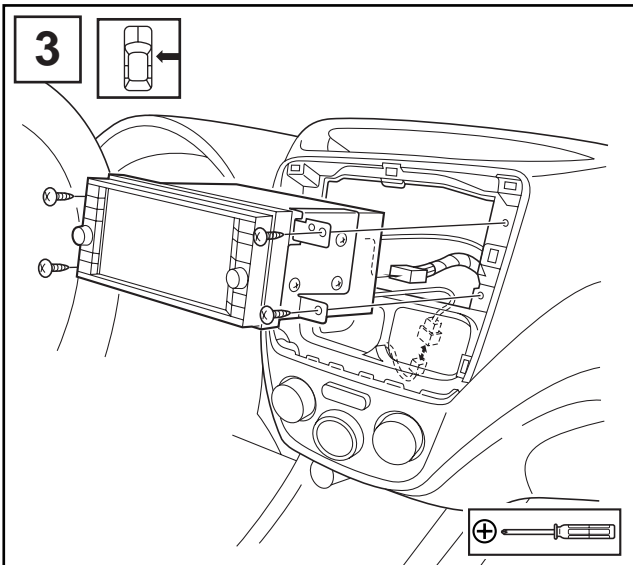
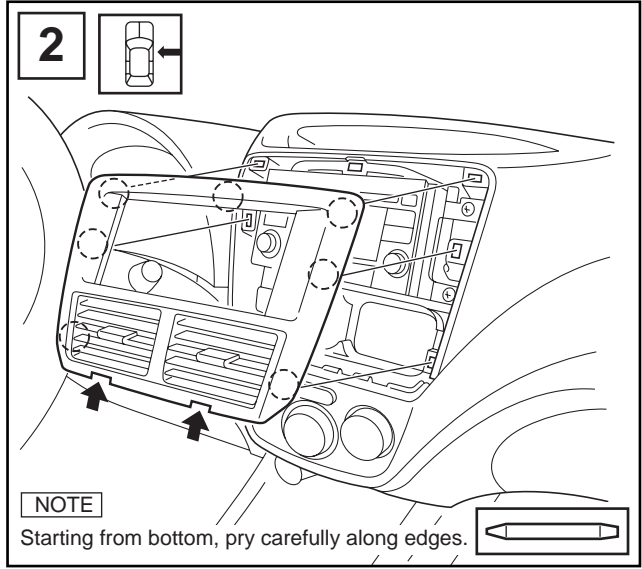
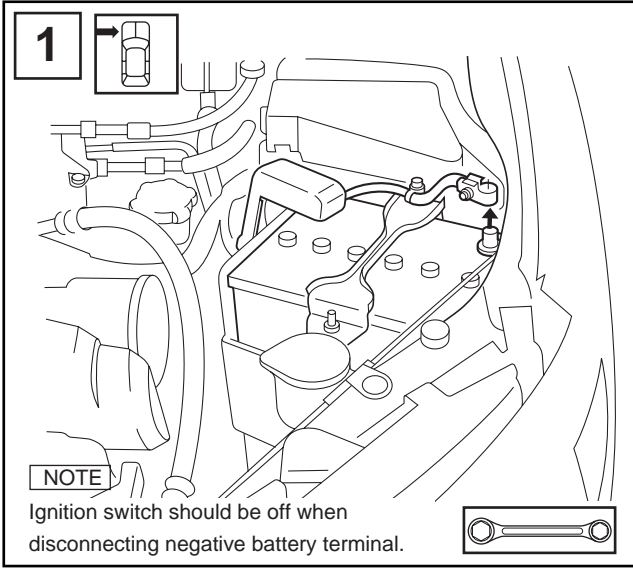
**TOOLS REQUIRED:**



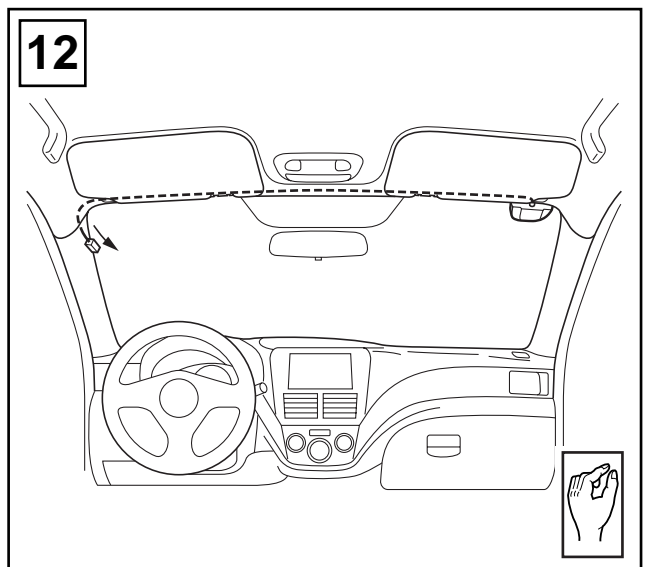
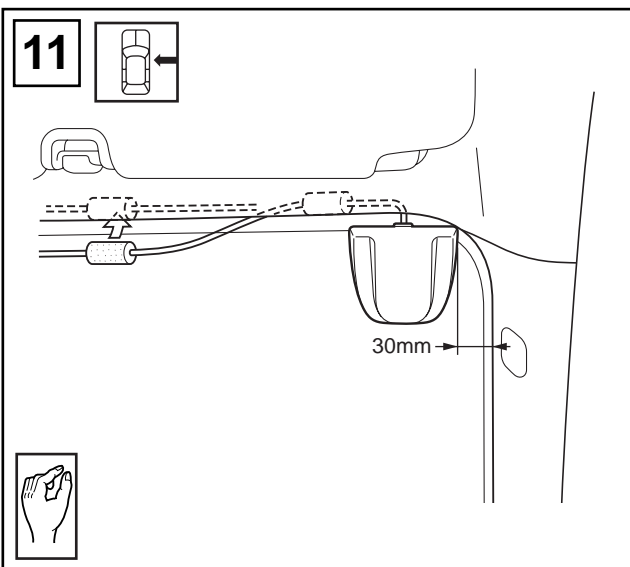
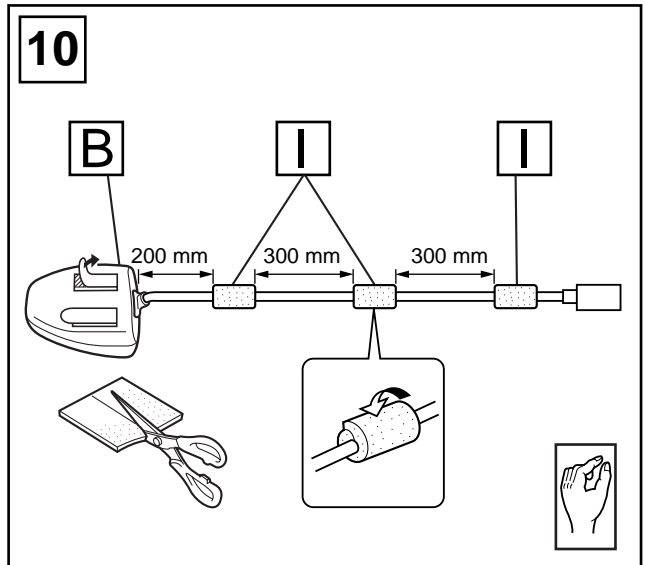
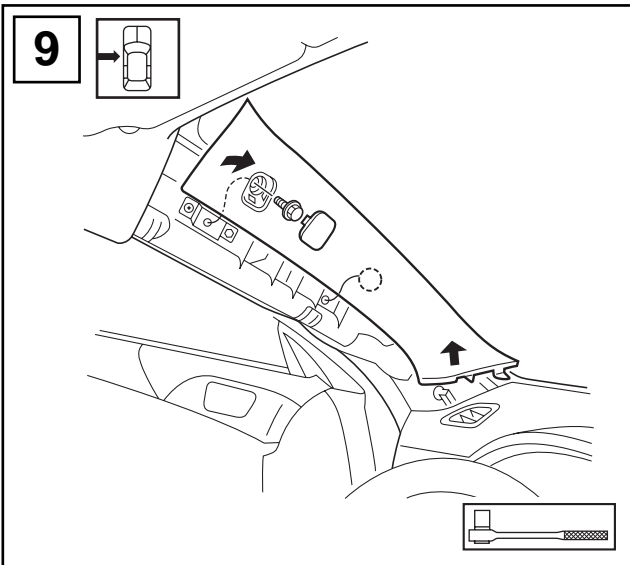
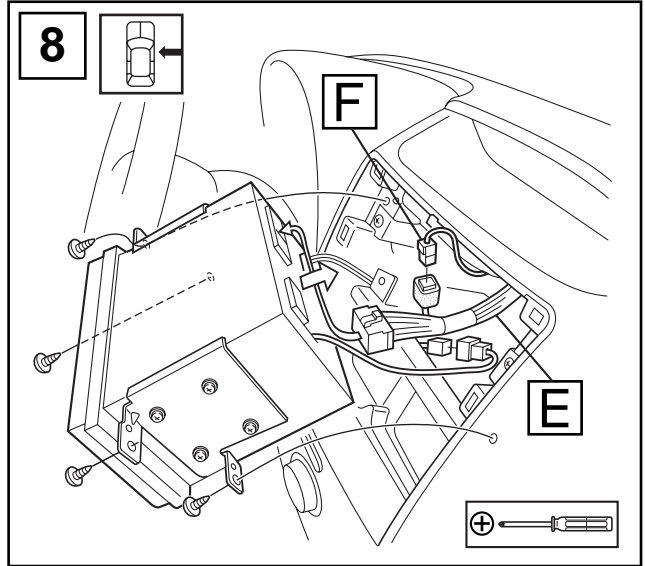
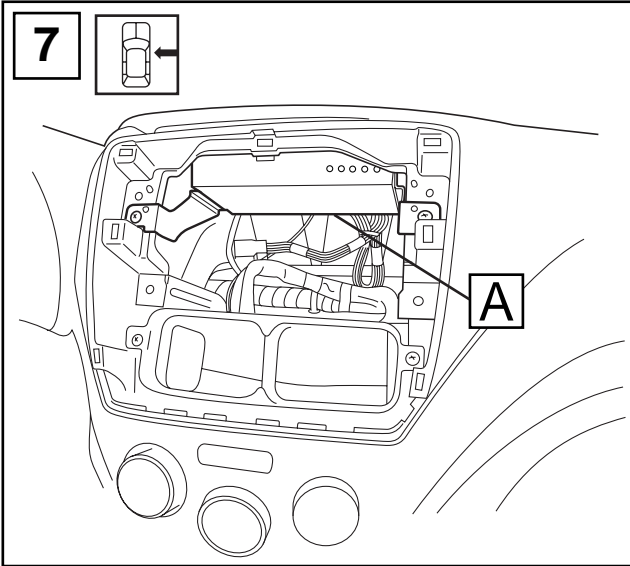
**MEANING of Characters:**

-  : Remove
-  : Install
-  : Disconnect
-  : Connect
-  : Location of Clip or Screw
- T** : Tightening Torque
-  : Loosen
-  : Discard
-  : Reuse

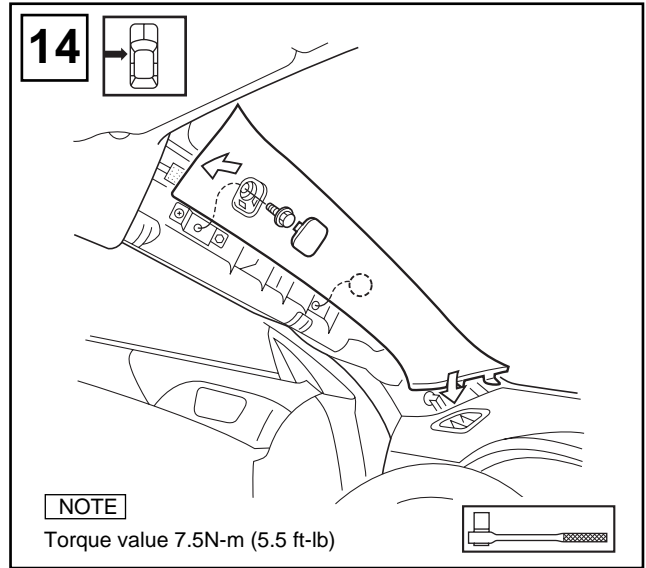
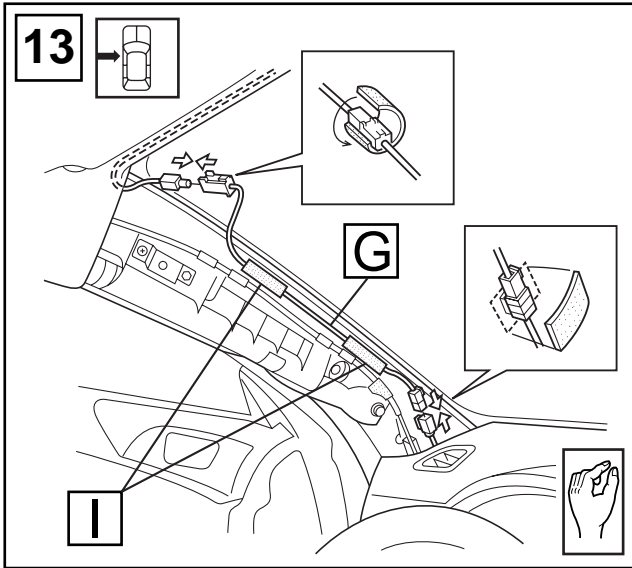
# IMPREZA



# IMPREZA



# IMPREZA



Reassembly: **2** → **1**



**SUBARU**

**INSTALLATION  
INSTRUCTIONS**

**PART NUMBER : C1010FG400**

**DESCRIPTION: STI SHIFT KNOB 6MT-DURACON**

**APPLICABLE VEHICLE: SUBARU 6 speed Manual  
( Thread diameter 12mm, Thread pitch1.25mm)**

**A: KIT CONTENTS**

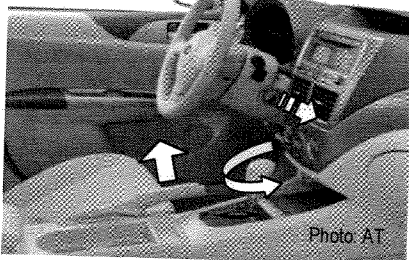
1. Shift Knob
2. Installation Instructions
3. Shift Pattern Decal

**B: TOOLS REQUIRED**

Clean Brush

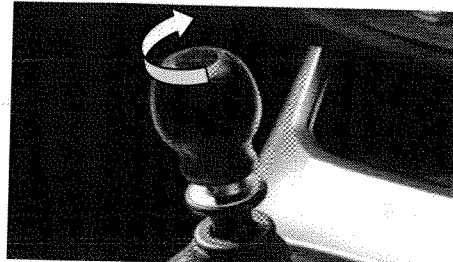
**INSTALLATION PROCEDURE**

1



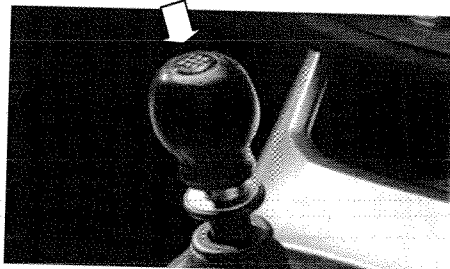
Remove key from ignition and set parking brake. Un-screw and remove existing shift knob.

2



Remove any dust on the stalk with a clean brush and screw the Shift Knob onto the stalk until tight.

3



Place the Shift Pattern Logo Decal onto the Knob.

**CAUTION**

- Over torque screwing may cause breakage of screw thread.
- Duracon shift knob is "light weight" designed. Knob vibration or gear noise may increase.
- If the shift knob is excessively heated/cooled by air temperature and/or sunlight, touching it may result in a superficial burn or frostbite. When shifting under such conditions, we recommend wearing driving gloves or waiting until the shift knob reaches a suitable temperatures.

PART NUMBER

C1010FG400

ISSUE

01

DATE

11/15/2007

SUBARU OF AMERICA

PAGE

1/1





**SUBARU**

**INSTALLATION  
INSTRUCTIONS**

**PART NUMBER : C1010FG100**

**DESCRIPTION: STI SHIFT KNOB 6MT Aluminum + Leather**

**APPLICABLE VEHICLE: SUBARU 6 speed Manual  
( Thread diameter 12mm, Thread pitch1.25mm)**

**A: KIT CONTENTS**

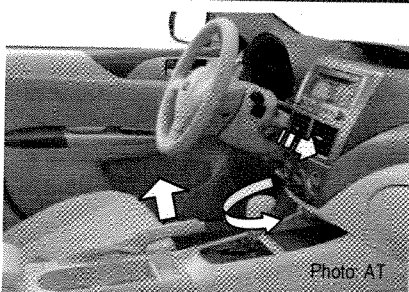
1. Shift Knob
2. Installation Instructions

**B: TOOLS REQUIRED**

Clean Brush

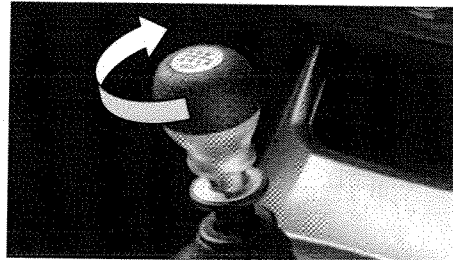
**INSTALLATION PROCEDURE**

1



Remove key from ignition and set parking brake. Un-screw and remove existing shift knob.

2



Remove any dust on the stalk with a clean brush and screw the Shift Knob onto the stalk until tight.

**CAUTION**

- Over torque screwing may cause breakage of screw thread.
- If the shift knob is excessively heated/cooled by air temperature and/or sunlight, touching it may result in a superficial burn or frostbite. When shifting under such conditions, we recommend wearing driving gloves or waiting until the shift knob reaches a suitable temperatures.

PART NUMBER

C1010FG100

ISSUE

01

DATE

11/15/2007

SUBARU OF AMERICA

PAGE

1/1



**SUBARU**

**INSTALLATION  
INSTRUCTIONS**

**PART NUMBER : C1010FG300**

**DESCRIPTION: STI SHIFT KNOB 5MT DURACON**

**APPLICABLE VEHICLE: SUBARU 5 speed Manual  
( Thread diameter 12mm, Thread pitch1.25mm)**

**A: KIT CONTENTS**

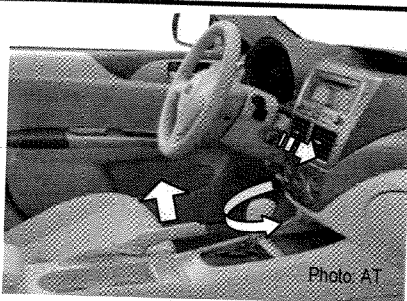
1. Shift Knob
2. Installation Instructions
3. Shift Pattern Decal

**B: TOOLS REQUIRED**

Clean Brush

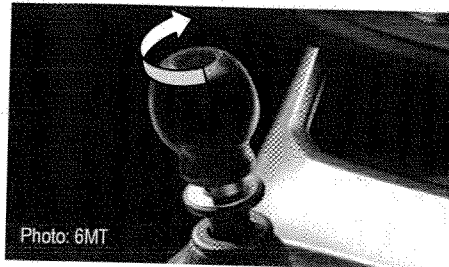
**INSTALLATION PROCEDURE**

1



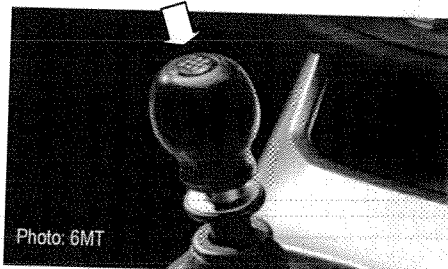
Remove key from ignition and set parking brake. Un-screw and remove existing shift knob.

2



Remove any dust on the stalk with a clean brush and screw the Shift Knob onto the stalk until tight.

3



Place the Shift Pattern Logo Decal onto the Knob.

**CAUTION**

- Over torque screwing may cause breakage of screw thread.
- Duracon shift knob is "light weight" designed. Knob vibration or gear noise may increase.
- If the shift knob is excessively heated/cooled by air temperature and/or sunlight, touching it may result in a superficial burn or frostbite. When shifting under such conditions, we recommend wearing driving gloves or waiting until the shift knob reaches a suitable temperatures.

PART NUMBER

C1010FG300

ISSUE

01

DATE

11/15/2007

SUBARU OF AMERICA

PAGE

1/1



**SUBARU**

**INSTALLATION  
INSTRUCTIONS**

**PART NUMBER : C1010FG100**

**DESCRIPTION: STI SHIFT KNOB 6MT Aluminum + Leather**

**APPLICABLE VEHICLE: SUBARU 6 speed Manual  
( Thread diameter 12mm, Thread pitch1.25mm)**

**A: KIT CONTENTS**

1. Shift Knob
2. Installation Instructions

**B: TOOLS REQUIRED**

Clean Brush

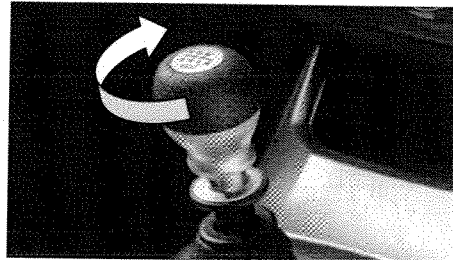
**INSTALLATION PROCEDURE**

1



Remove key from ignition and set parking brake. Un-screw and remove existing shift knob.

2



Remove any dust on the stalk with a clean brush and screw the Shift Knob onto the stalk until tight.

**CAUTION**

- Over torque screwing may cause breakage of screw thread.
- If the shift knob is excessively heated/cooled by air temperature and/or sunlight, touching it may result in a superficial burn or frostbite. When shifting under such conditions, we recommend wearing driving gloves or waiting until the shift knob reaches a suitable temperatures.

PART NUMBER

C1010FG100

ISSUE

01

DATE

11/15/2007

SUBARU OF AMERICA

PAGE

1/1

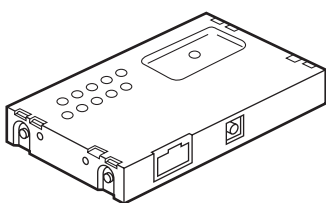
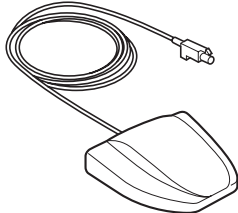
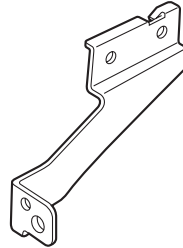
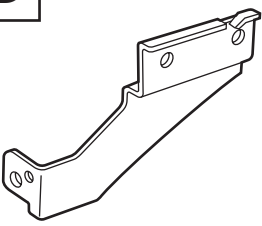
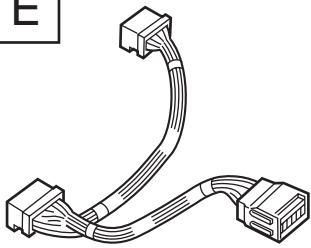
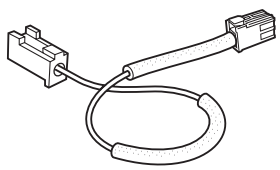
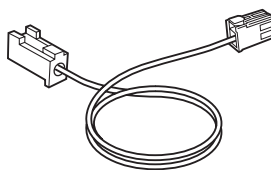
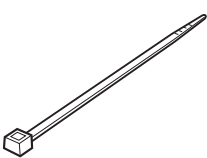
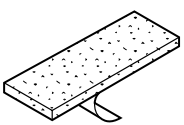




# SUBARU IMPREZA

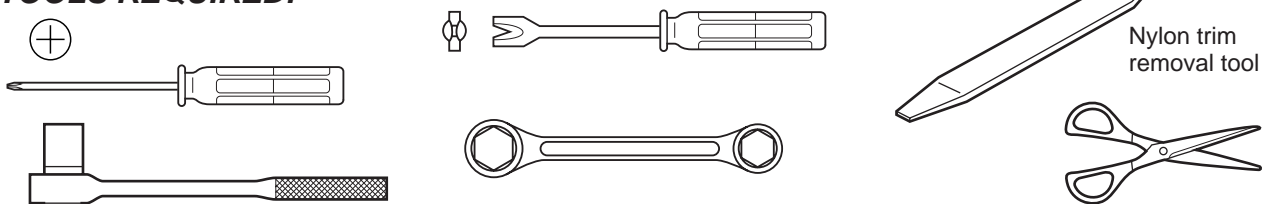
**INSTALLATION INSTRUCTIONS**

PART NUMBER: H621SFG000 (UF-909U-01)









DESCRIPTION: SIRIUS-SATELLITE RADIO KIT

<p><b>A KIT CONTENTS:</b></p>  <p>1 X</p>	<p><b>B</b></p>  <p>1 X</p>	<p><b>C</b></p>  <p>1 X</p>	
<p><b>D</b></p> 	<p><b>E</b></p>  <p>1 X</p>	<p><b>F</b></p>  <p>1 X</p>	<p><b>G</b></p>  <p>1 X</p>
<p><b>H</b></p>  <p>5 X</p>	<p><b>I</b></p>  <p>7 X</p>	<p><b>J</b></p>  <p>4 X</p>	<p><b>K</b></p>  <p>2 X</p>

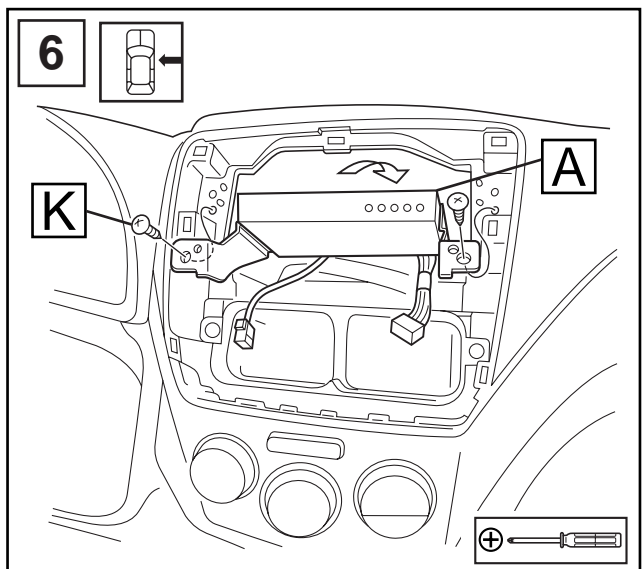
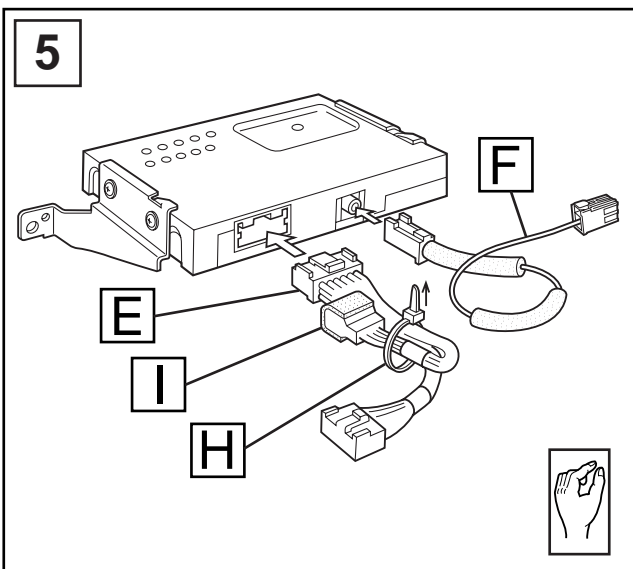
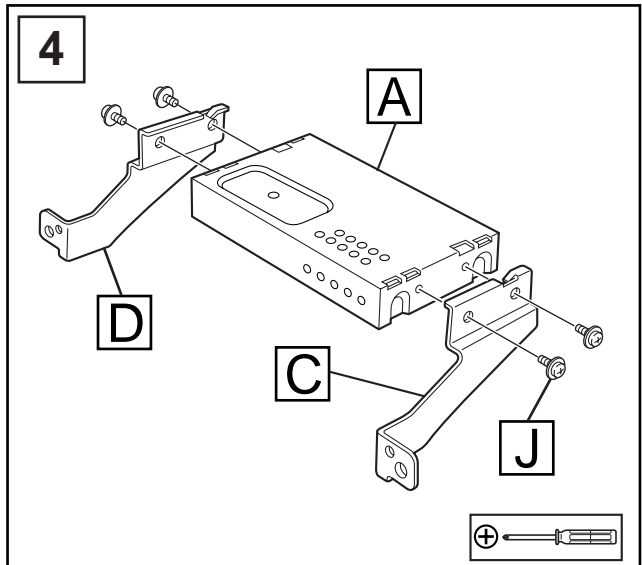
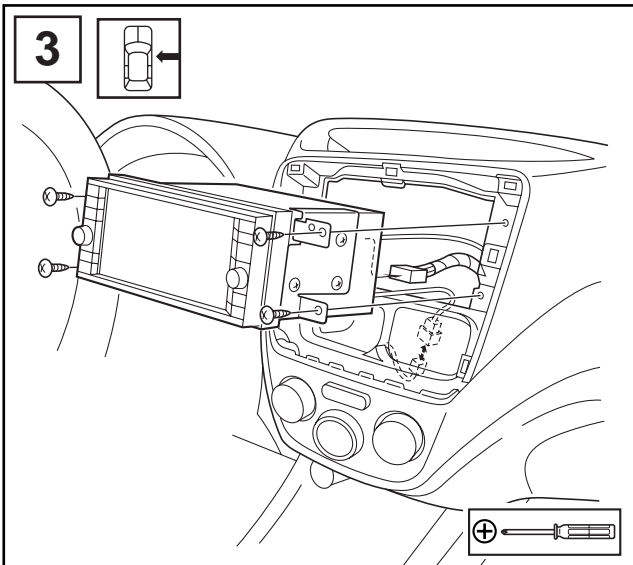
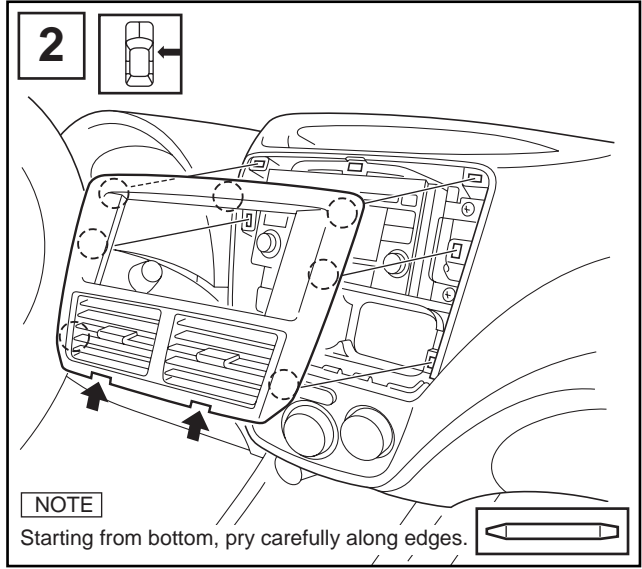
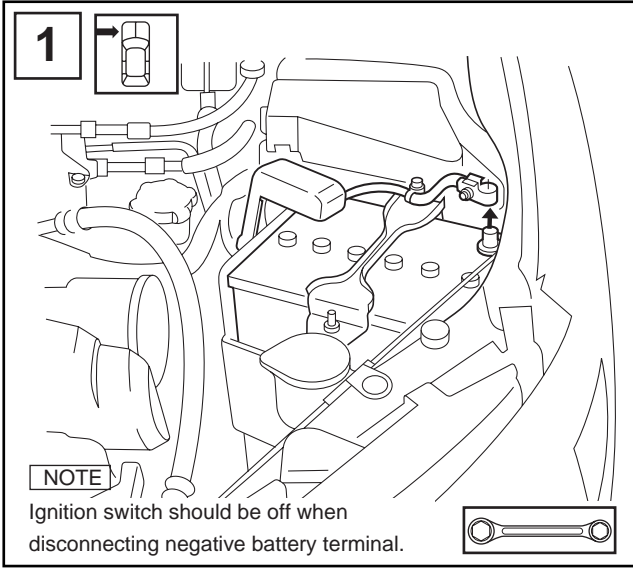
**TOOLS REQUIRED:**



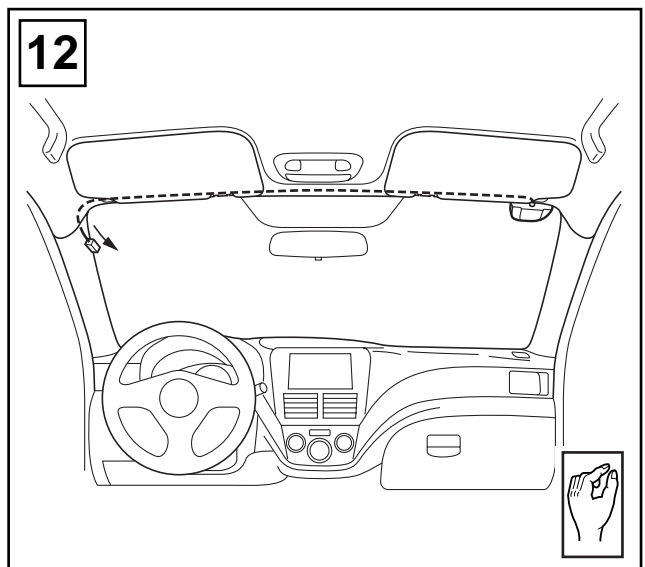
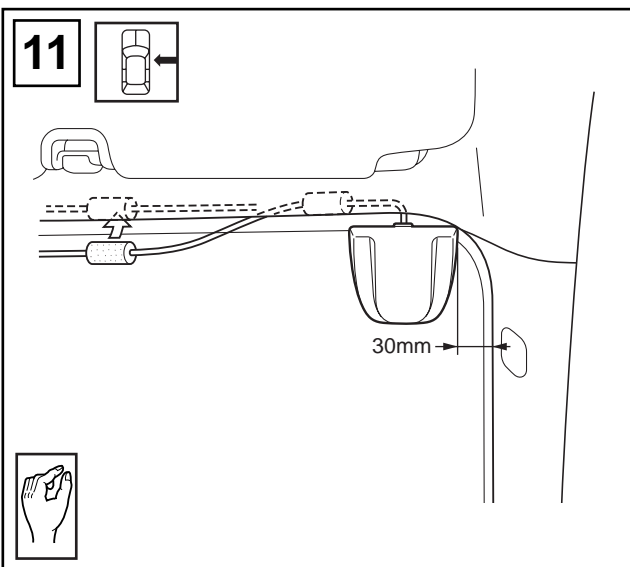
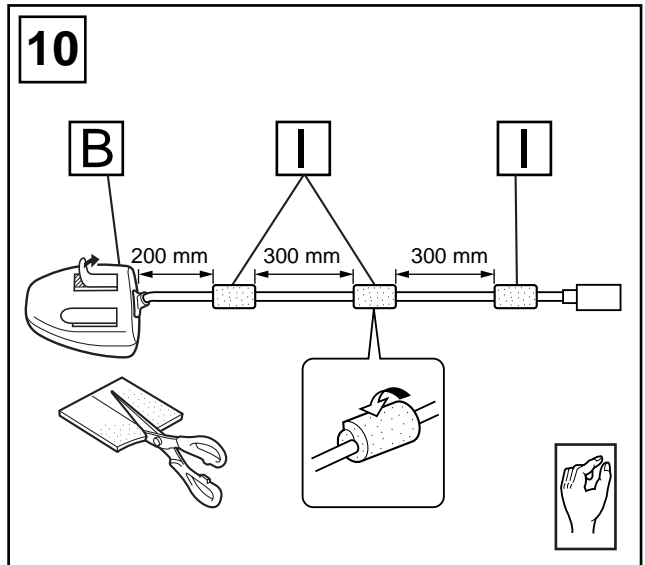
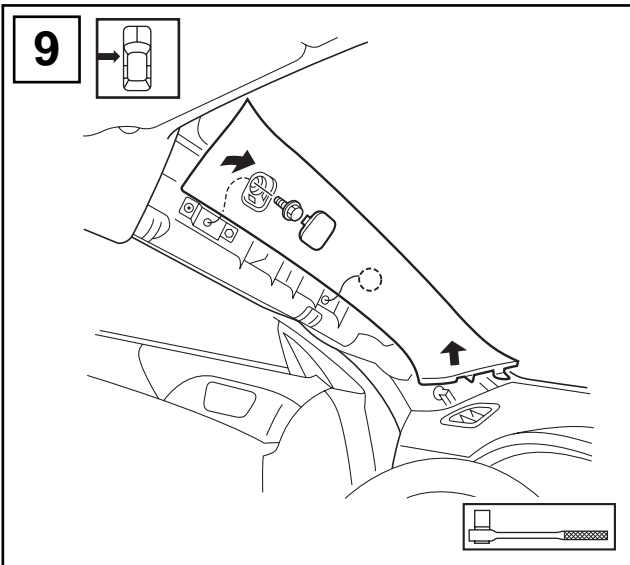
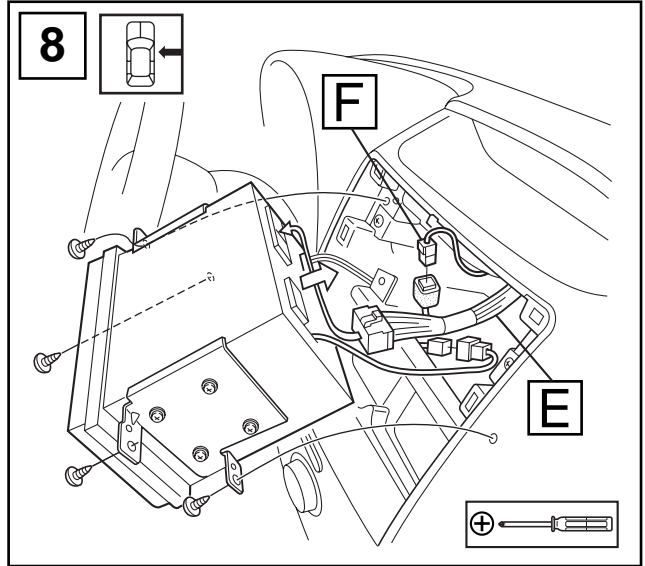
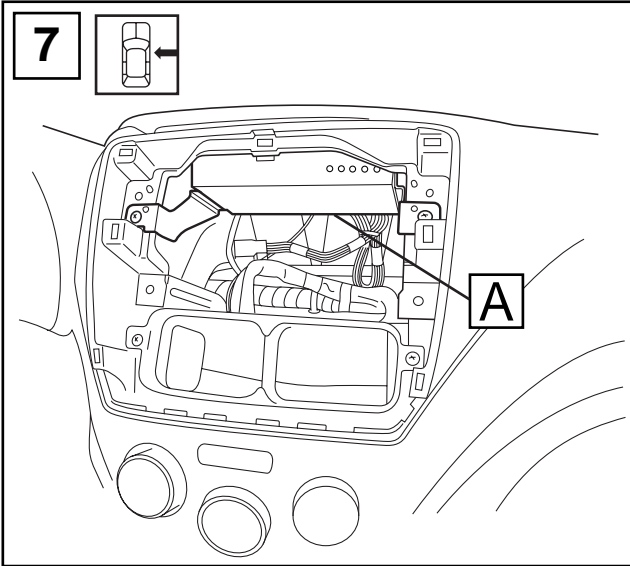
**MEANING of Characters:**

-  : Remove
-  : Install
-  : Disconnect
-  : Connect
-  : Location of Clip or Screw
- T** : Tightening Torque
-  : Loosen
-  : Discard
-  : Reuse

# IMPREZA

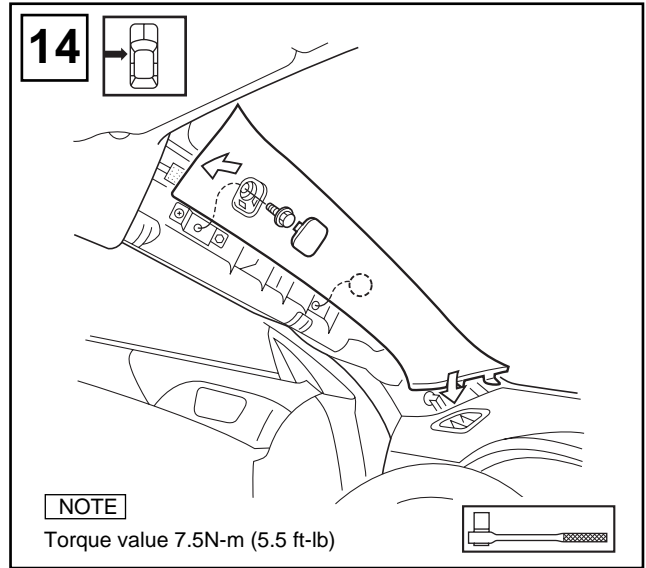
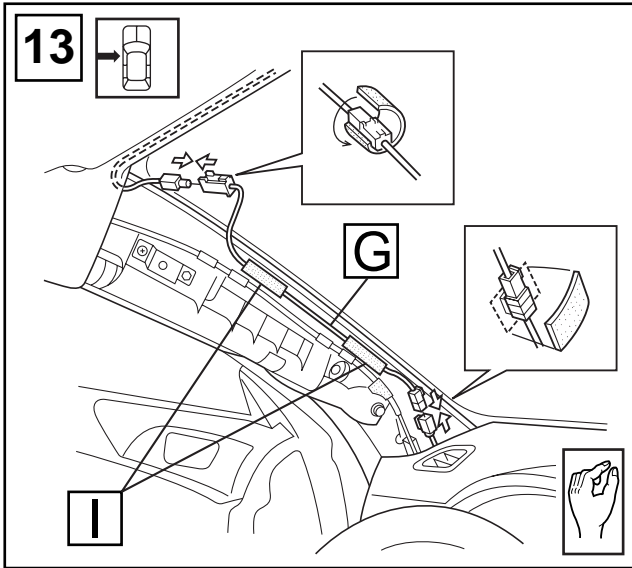


# IMPREZA





# IMPREZA



Reassembly: **2** → **1**



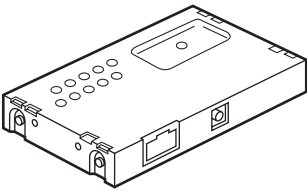
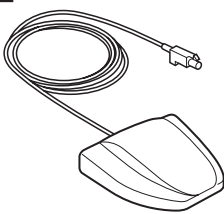
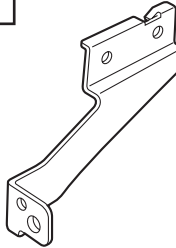
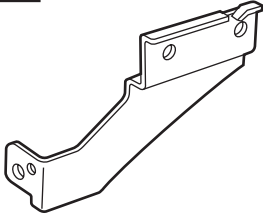
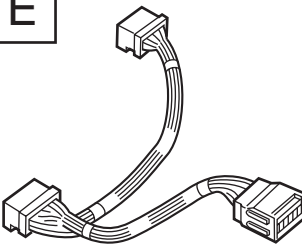
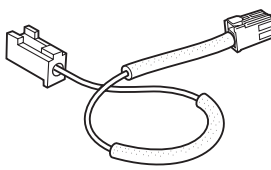
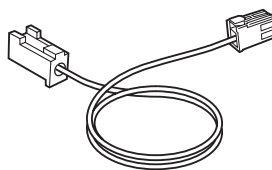
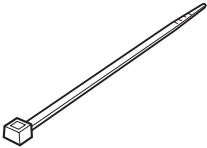
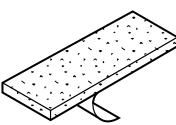


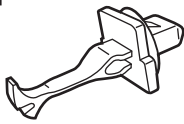
**SUBARU**

**SUBARU IMPREZA/FORESTER**

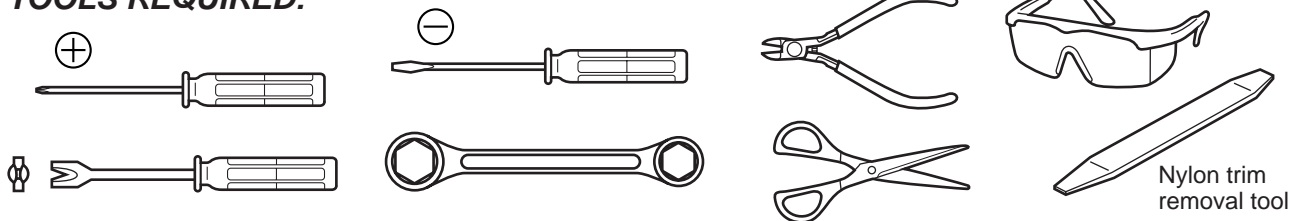
**INSTALLATION  
INSTRUCTIONS**

**PART NUMBER: H621SSC000 (UF-909U-03)**

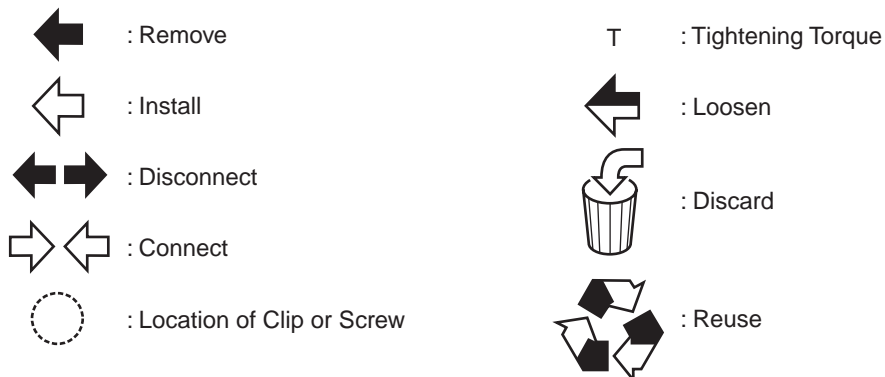
**DESCRIPTION: SIRIUS-SATELLITE RADIO KIT**

<p><b>A KIT CONTENTS:</b></p>  <p>1 X</p>	<p><b>B</b></p>  <p>1 X</p>	<p><b>C</b></p>  <p>1 X</p>	<p><b>D</b></p>  <p>1 X</p>
<p><b>E</b></p>  <p>1 X</p>	<p><b>F</b></p>  <p>1 X</p>	<p><b>G</b></p>  <p>1 X</p>	<p><b>H</b></p>  <p>5 X</p>
<p><b>I</b></p>  <p>7 X</p>	<p><b>J</b></p>  <p>4 X</p>	<p><b>K</b></p>  <p>2 X</p>	<p><b>L</b></p>  <p>1 X</p>

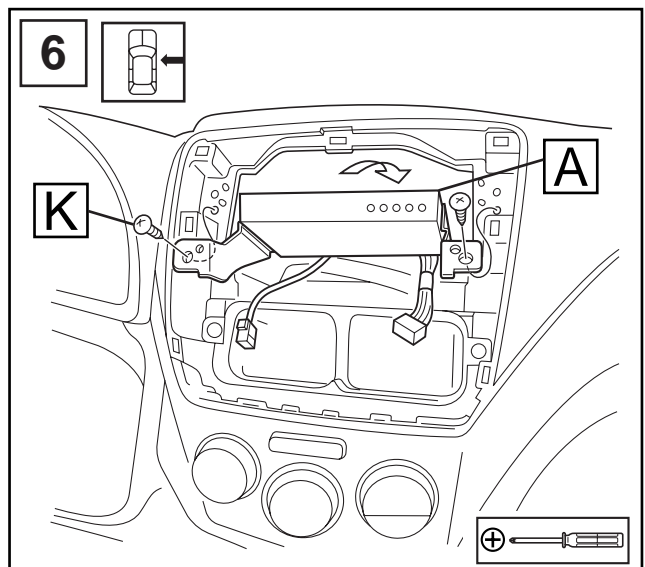
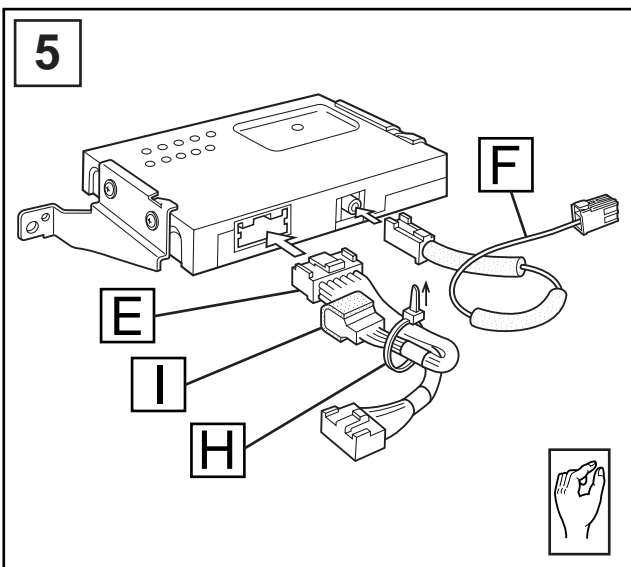
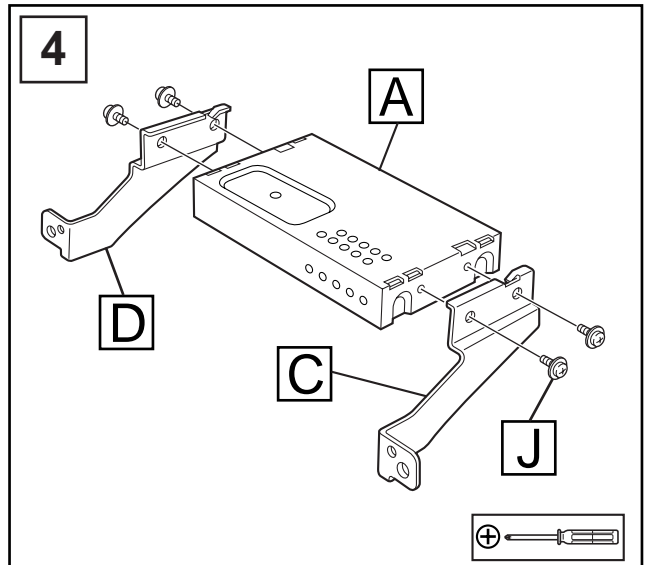
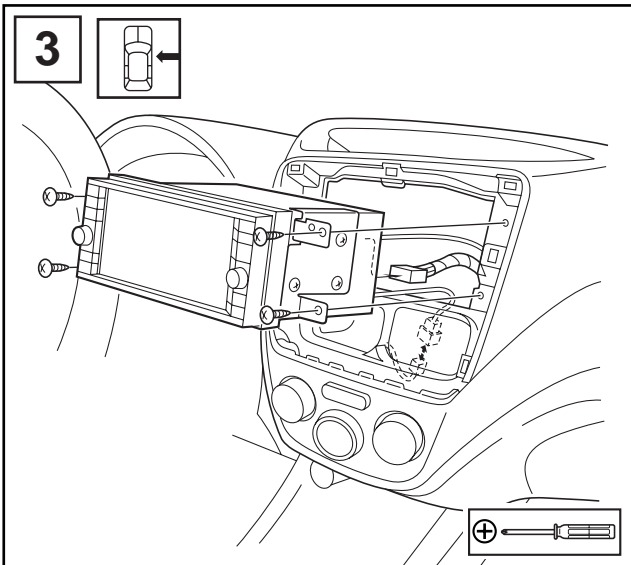
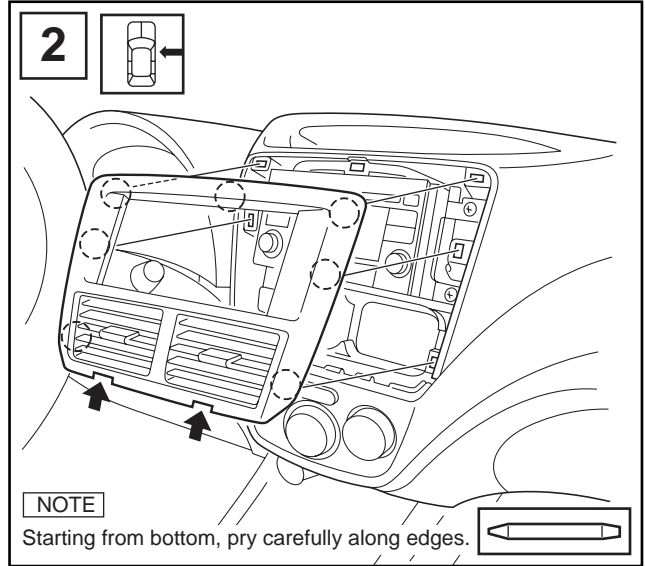
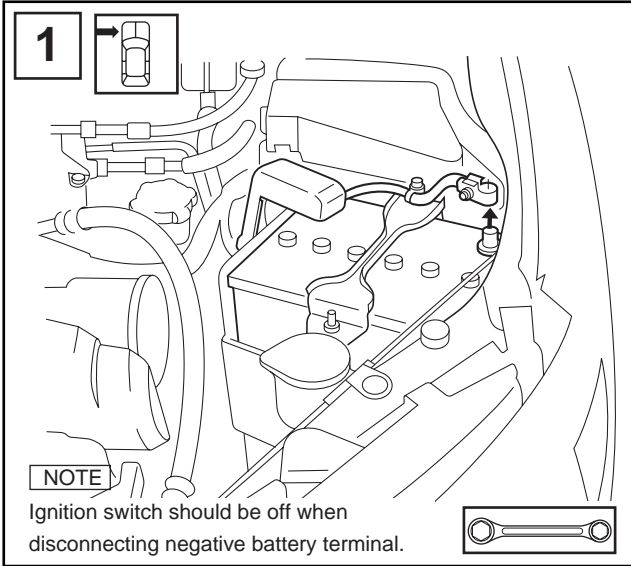
**TOOLS REQUIRED:**



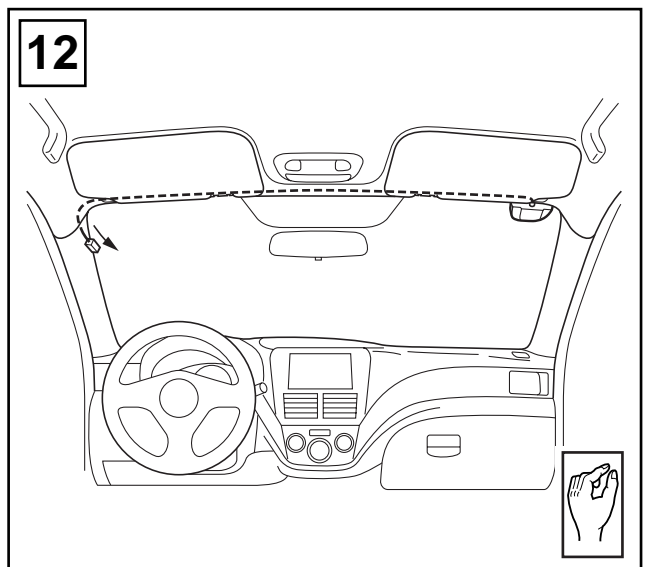
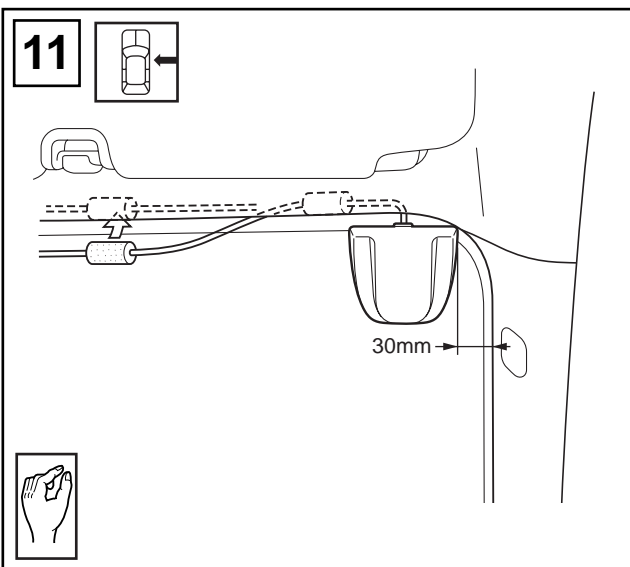
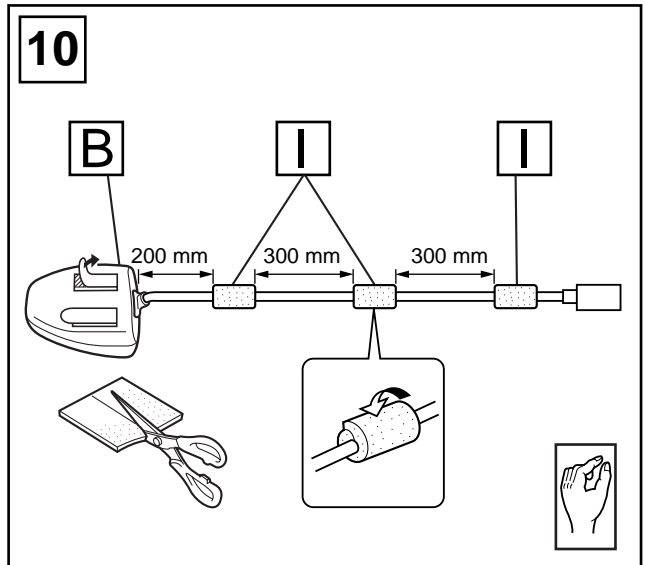
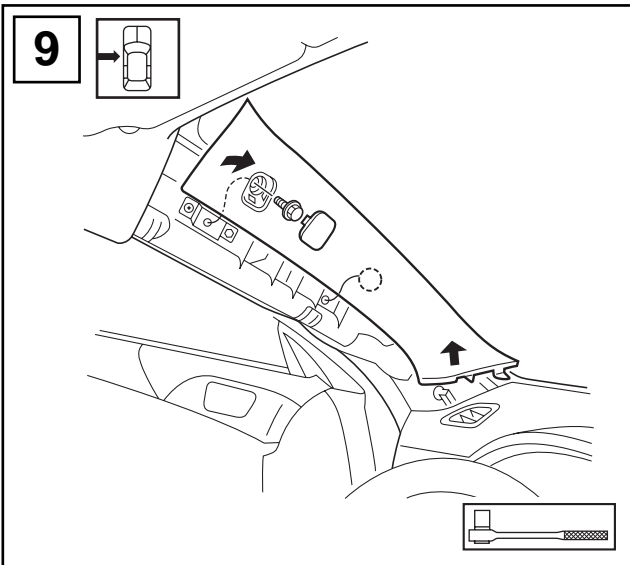
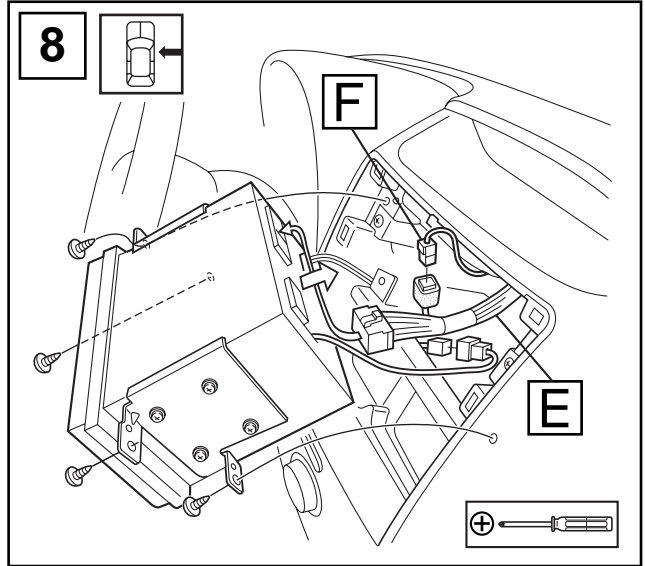
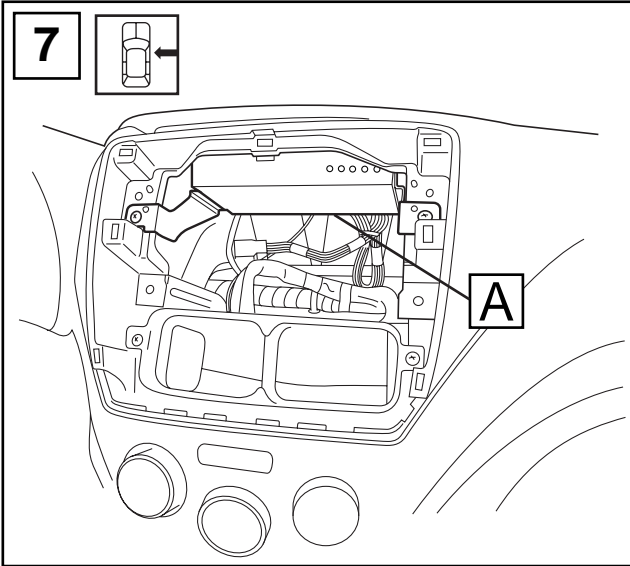
**MEANING of Characters:**



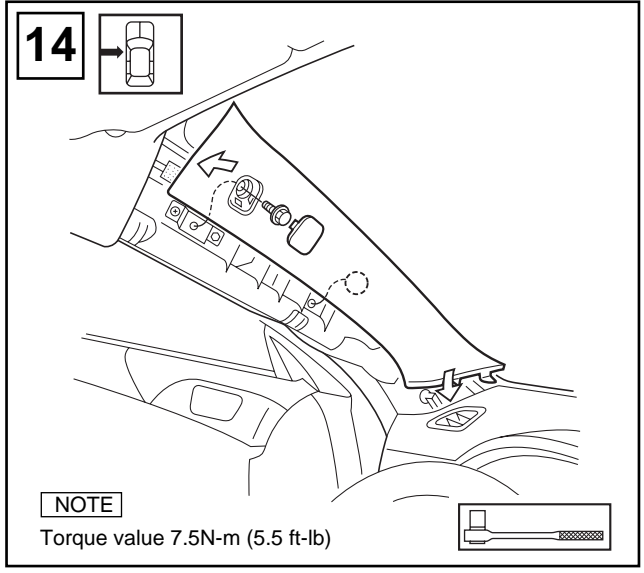
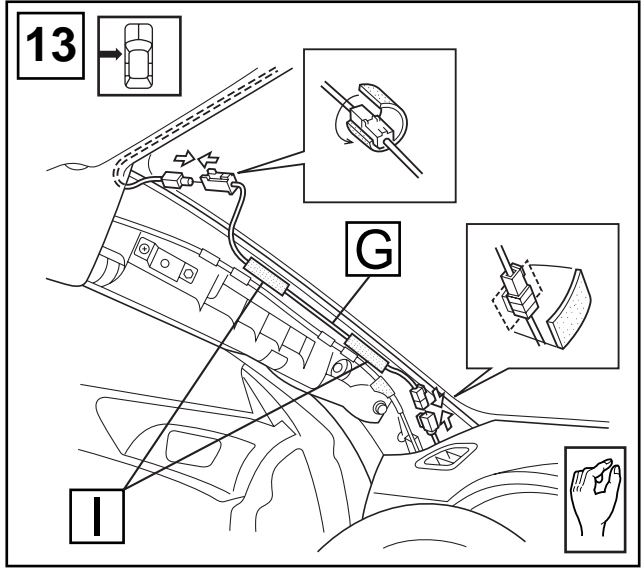
# IMPREZA



# IMPREZA

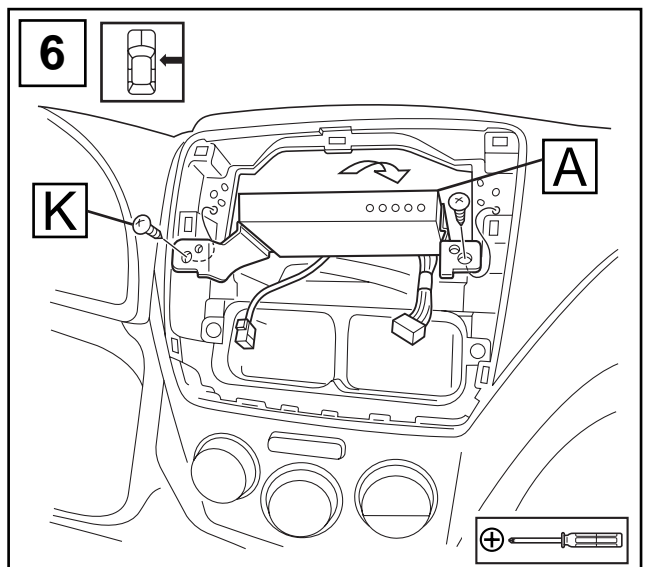
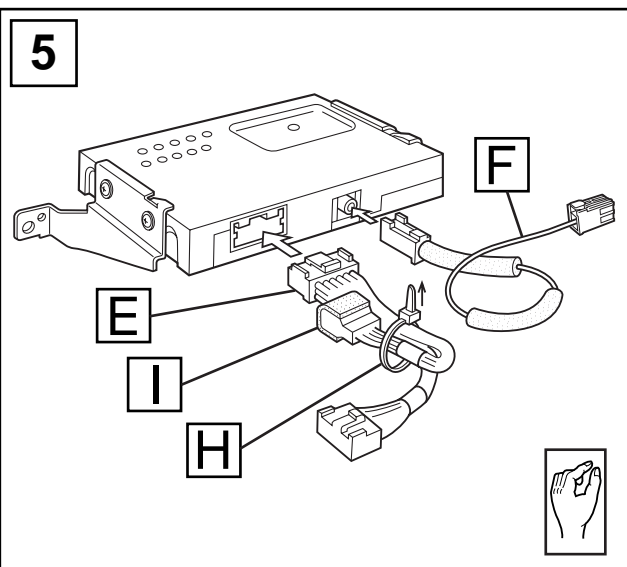
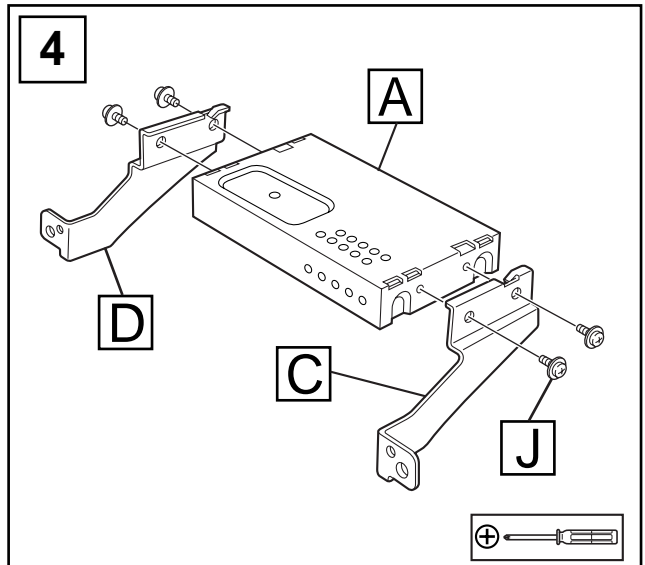
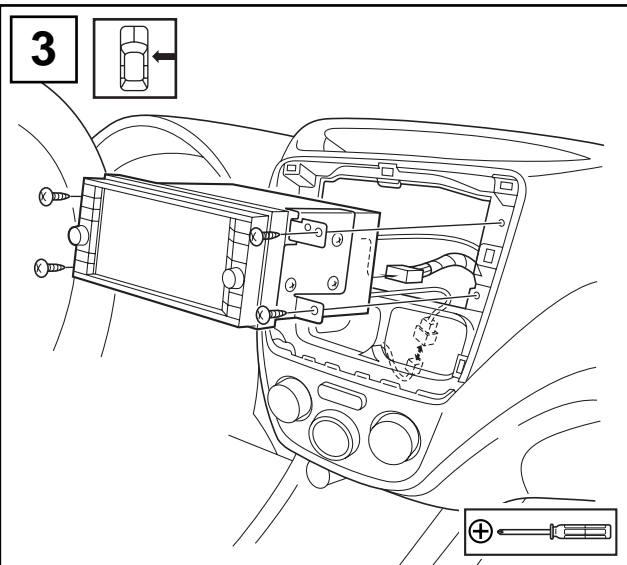
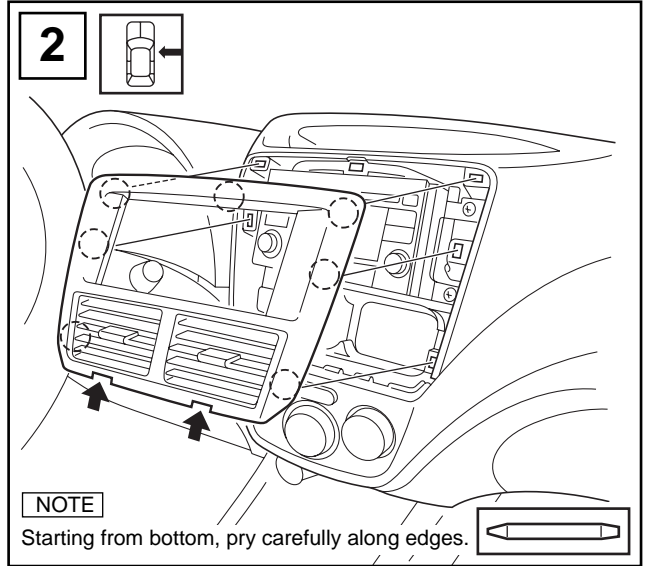
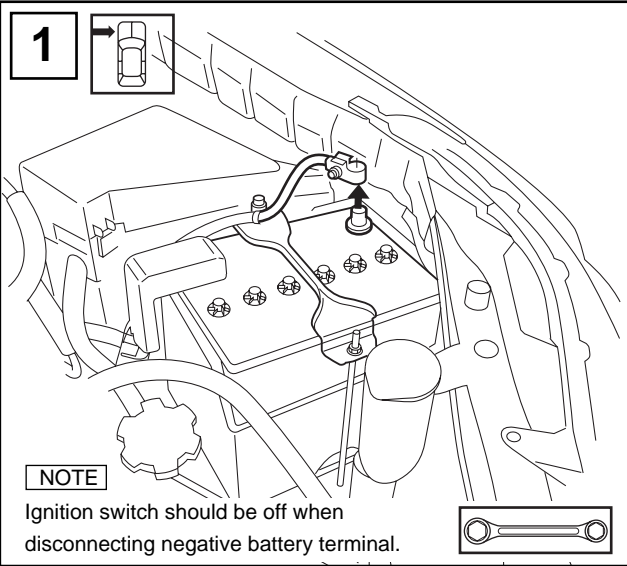


# IMPREZA

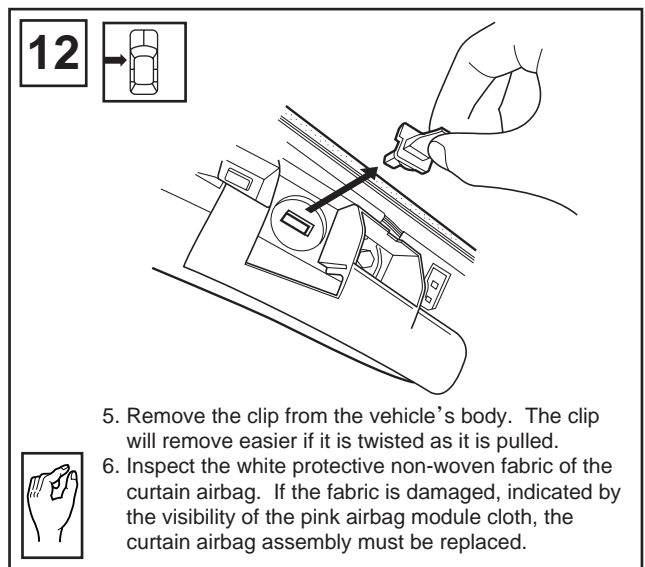
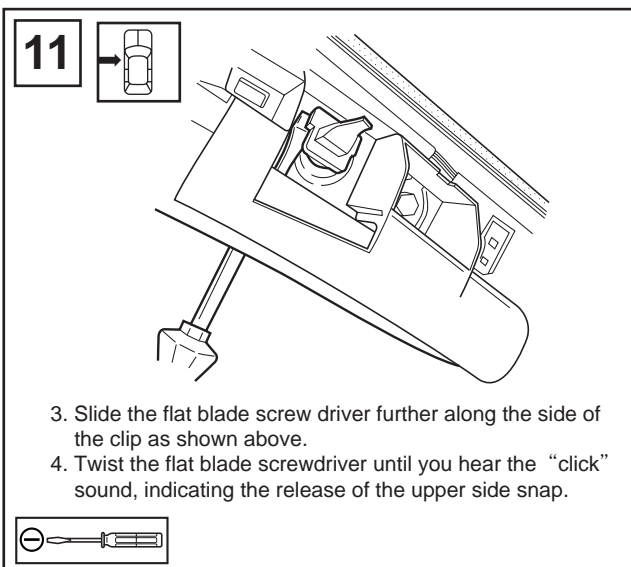
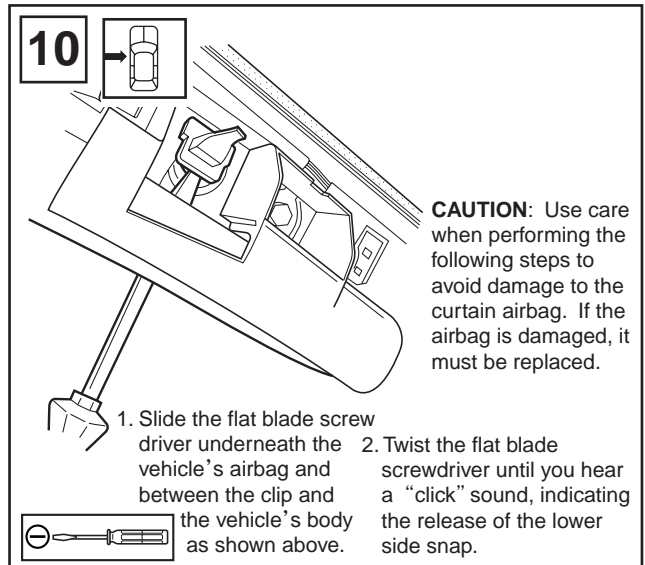
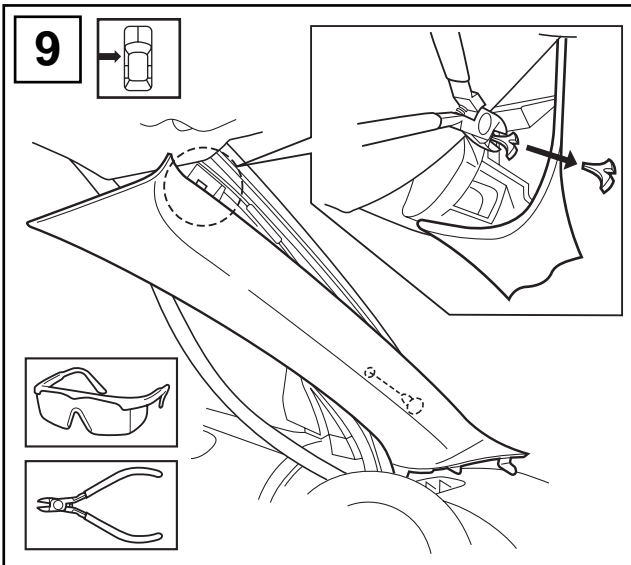
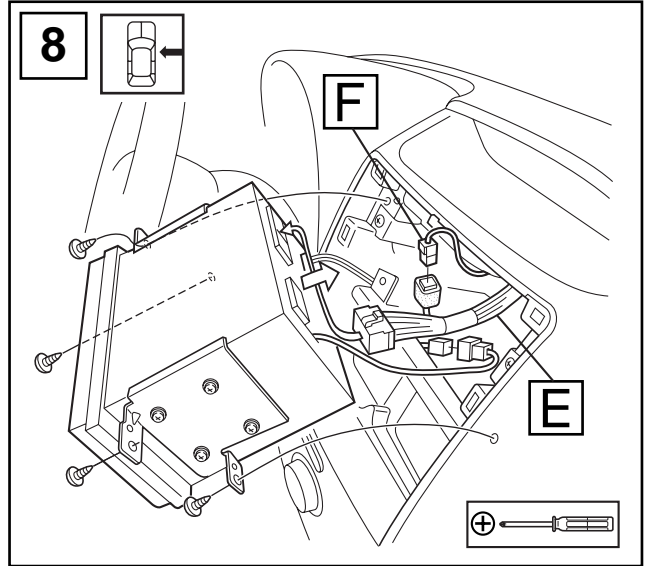
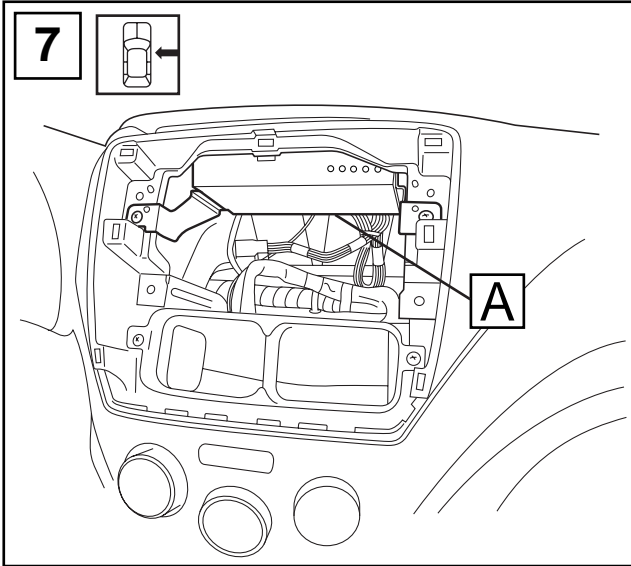


Reassembly: **2** → **1**

# FORESTER

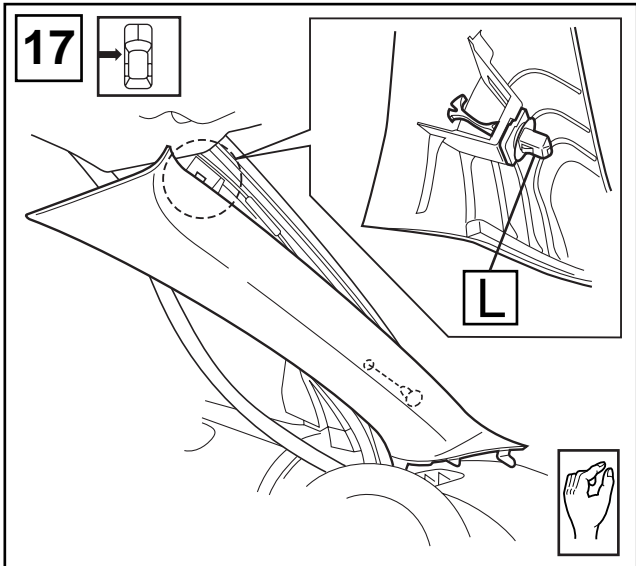
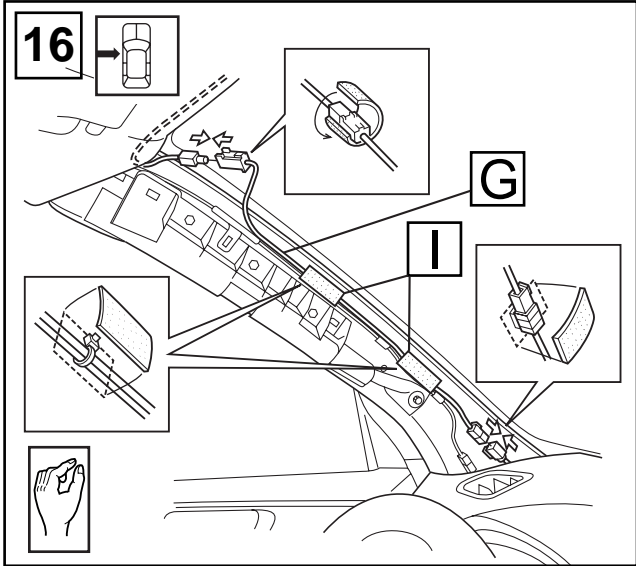
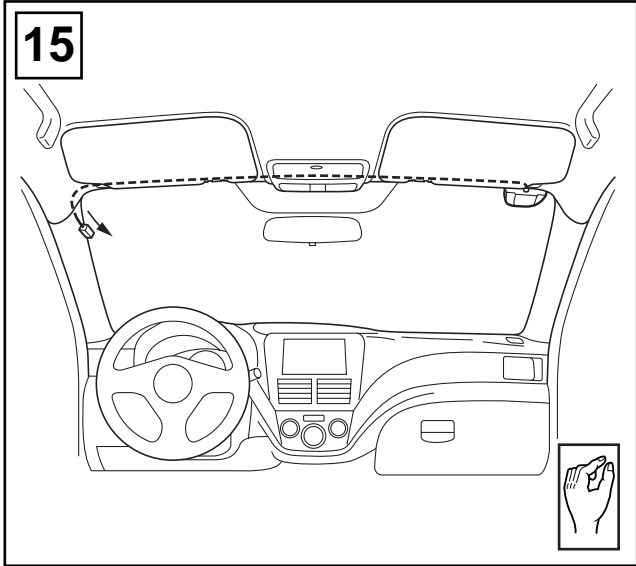
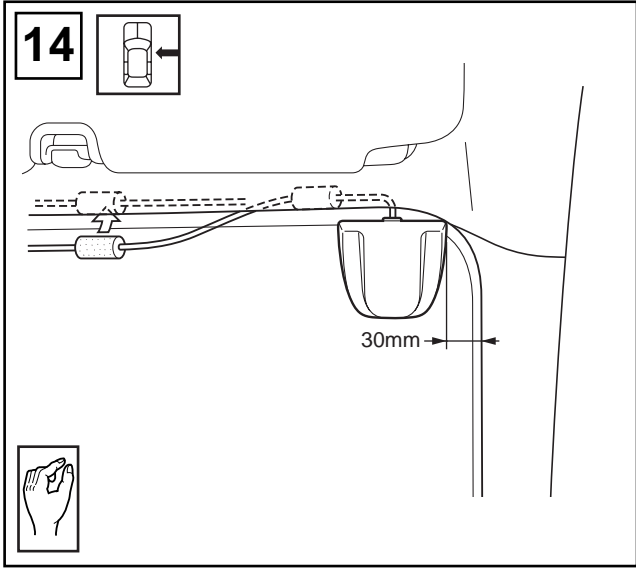
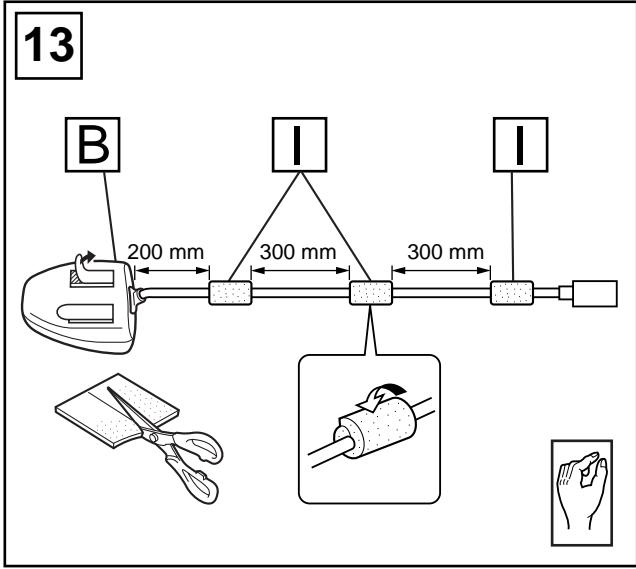


# FORESTER





# FORESTER



Reassembly: **2** → **1**



# SUBARU

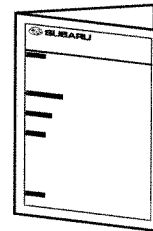
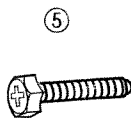
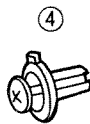
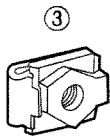
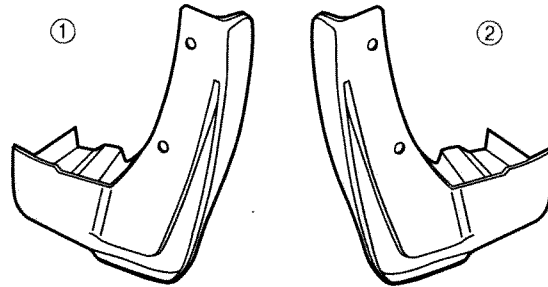
08MY+

Name : SPLASH GUARD/FRONT KIT  
Part No. : J1010FG001## 4door , 5door

## IMPREZA Installation manual

### Component parts

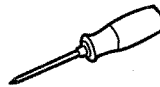
No.	Part name	Quantity
①	Splash Guard F-LH	1
②	Splash Guard F-RH	1
③	J-Nut M5	4
④	Push Rivet	2
⑤	Bolt M5 × 20mm	4
⑥	Washer	4
⑦	Installation Instruction	1



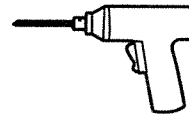
### Tools



Clean shop towel  
Chiffon d'atelier propre  
Sauberer Lappen  
Panno da officina pulito  
Paño de taller limpio



Phillips screwdriver  
Tournevis à tête cruciforme  
Kreuzschlitz-Schraubendreher  
Cacciavite a stella  
Destornillador de cabeza en cruz



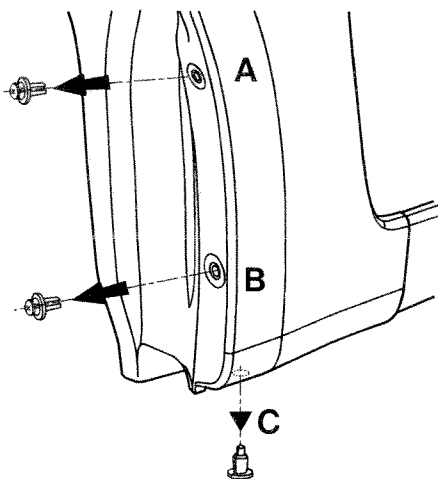
Electric drill  
Perceuse électrique  
Elektrobohrer  
Trapano elettrico  
Taladro eléctrico



Torque wrench  
Clé dynamométrique  
Drehmomentschlüssel  
Chiave torsiometrica  
Llave dinamométrica

### Work outline

1



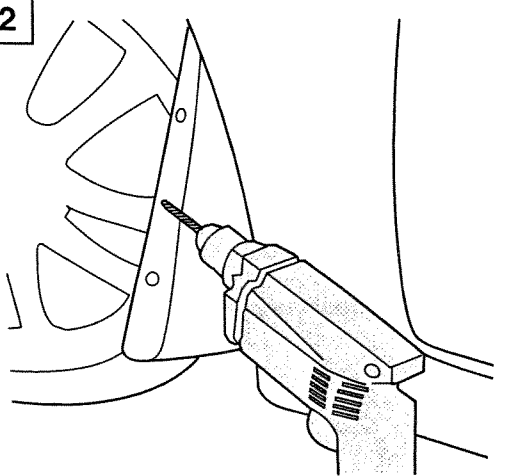
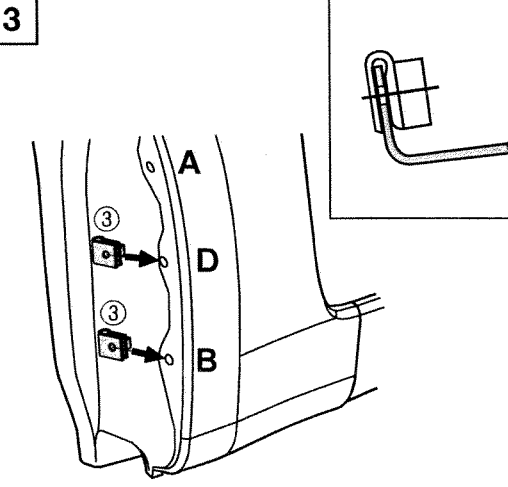
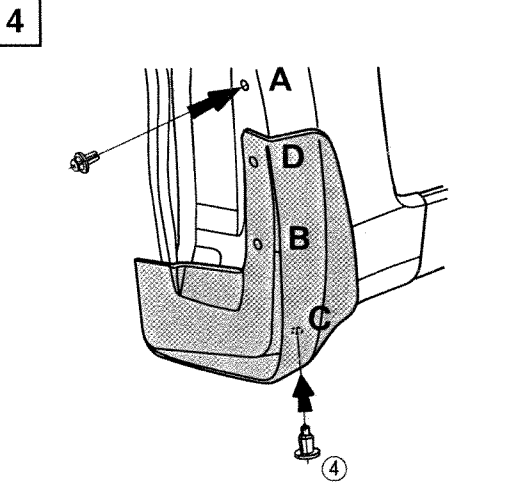
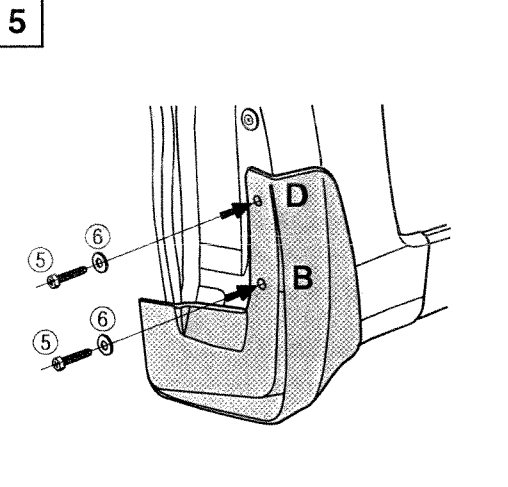
Clean the splash guard installation surface.  
Remove clips A, B and C.  
\* The removed clips are reused.

Nettoyer la surface d'installation de la bavette garde-boue.  
Déposer les circlips A, B et C.  
\* Les circlips déposés sont réutilisés.

Die Anbaufläche des Spitzblechs reinigen.  
Die Klammern A, B und C entfernen.  
\* Die entfernten Klammern werden anschließend erneut verwendet.

Pulire la superficie di installazione del paraspruzzi.  
Rimuovere i morsetti A, B e C  
\* I morsetti rimossi devono venire riutilizzati.

Limpie la superficie de instalación del protector contra salpicaduras.  
Extraiga los retenedores A, B y C.  
\* Los retenedores extraídos se vuelven a utilizar.

<p><b>2</b></p> 	<p>Drill a 6 mm hole at the circle mark on the rear of the mud guard. * The double circle mark is at the center between clips A and B.</p> <p>Percer un trou de 6 mm à l'endroit repéré par un double cercle au dos de la bavette garde-boue. * Le double cercle repère se trouve à mi-chemin entre les circlips A et B.</p> <p>Ein 6-mm-Loch an der Doppelkreismarkierung an der Rückseite des Spritzblechs bohren. * Die Doppelkreismarkierung befindet sich in der Mitte zwischen den Klammern A und B.</p> <p>Trapanare un foro da 6 mm in corrispondenza del segno del doppio cerchio tracciato sul retro del paraspruzzi. * Il doppio cerchio si trova a metà strada fra i morsetti A e B.</p> <p>Perfore un orificio de 6 mm en la marca del círculo doble de la parte posterior del parafangos. * La marca del círculo doble está en el centro, entre los retenedores A y B.</p>
<p><b>3</b></p> 	<p>Install the J-nuts at locations B &amp; D.</p> <p>Installer l'écrou à ressort en J.</p> <p>Die J-Mutter anbringen.</p> <p>Installare il dado J.</p> <p>Instale la tuerca en J.</p>
<p><b>4</b></p> 	<p>Re-install Clip A which was removed in Step 1. Hold Splash Guard in place and install Push Rivet at location C.</p> <p>Reposer les circlips déposés en partie A. Fermer les circlips.</p> <p>Erneut mit den im Teil A entfernten Klammern sichern. Mit den Klammern sichern.</p> <p>Fermare il pezzo di nuovo con i fermagli tolti dalla parte A. Fermare con i morsetti.</p> <p>Fije de nuevo con los retenedores que han sido extraídos en la parte A. Fije con los retenedores.</p>
<p><b>5</b></p> 	<p>Loosely install bolt and washer at locations B &amp; D. Hold inward pressure on Splash Guard while tightening. Tightening Torque: 180-220 N•cm (16-19.5 in•lbs) Repeat Installation process for other side.</p> <p>Fixer à l'aide du boulon et de sa rondelle. Couple de serrage: 180 à 220 N•cm</p> <p>Mit der Schraube und der Unterlegscheibe befestigen. Anzugsdrehmoment: 180 bis 220 N•cm</p> <p>Fissare poi con il bullone e la rondella. Coppia di serraggio: da 180 a 220 N•cm</p> <p>Fije con el perno y la arandela. Torsión de apriete: 180 a 220 N•cm</p>



# SUBARU

08MY+

Name : SPLASH GUARD/REAR KIT

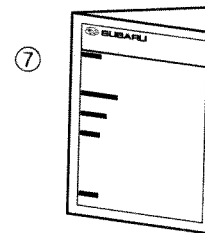
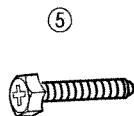
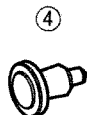
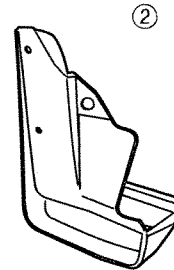
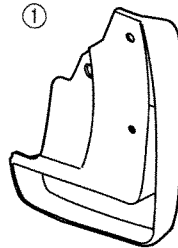
Part No. : J1010FG004## 4door

J1010FG014## 5door

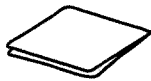
## IMPREZA Installation manual

### Component parts

No.	Part name	Quantity
①	Splash Guard R-LH	1
②	Splash Guard R-RH	1
③	J-Nut M5	4
④	Push Rivet	4
⑤	Bolt M5 × 20mm	4
⑥	Washer	4
⑦	Installation Instruction	1



### Tools



Clean shop towel  
Chiffon d'atelier propre  
Sauberer Lappen  
Panno da officina pulito  
Paño de taller limpio



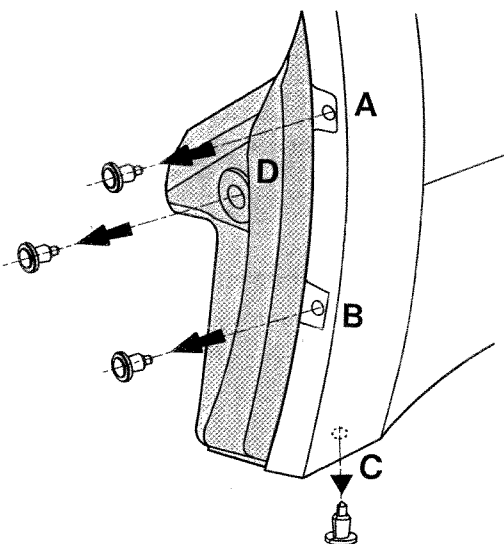
Phillips screwdriver  
Tournevis à tête cruciforme  
Kreuzschlitz-Schraubendreher  
Cacciavite a stella  
Destornillador de cabeza en cruz



Torque wrench  
Clé dynamométrique  
Drehmomentschlüssel  
Chiave torsionometrica  
Llave dinamométrica

### Work outline

1



Clean the splash guard installation surface.  
Remove clips A, B, C and D.  
\* The removed clips are reused.

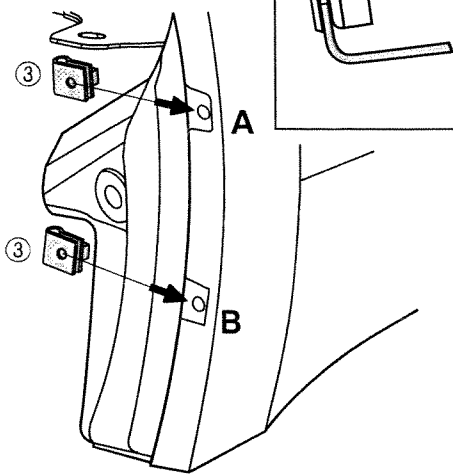
Nettoyer la surface d'installation de la bavette garde-boue.  
Déposer les circlips A, B, C et D.  
\* Les circlips déposés sont réutilisés.

Die Anbaufläche des Spitzblechs reinigen.  
Die Klammern A, B, C und D entfernen.  
\* Die entfernten Klammern werden anschließend erneut verwendet.

Pulire la superficie di installazione del paraspruzzi.  
Rimuovere i morsetti A, B, C e D  
\* I morsetti rimossi devono venire riutilizzati.

Limpiar la superficie de instalación del protector contra salpicaduras.  
Extraiga los retenedores A, B, C y D.  
\* Los retenedores extraídos se vuelven a utilizar.

2



Install the J-nuts at locations A & B.

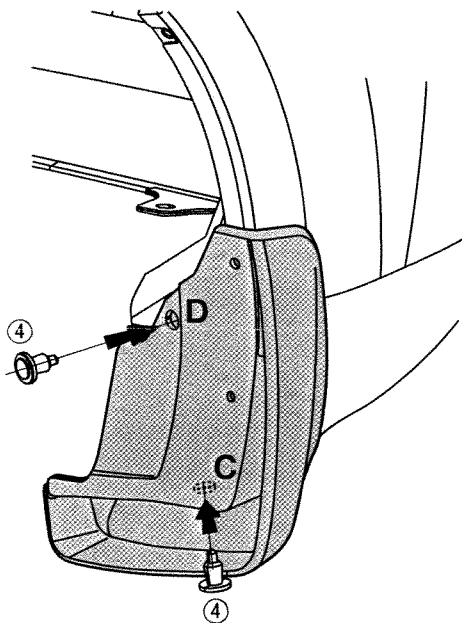
Installer l'écrou à ressort en J.

Die J-Mutter anbringen.

Installare il dado J.

Instale la tuerca en J.

3



Hold Splash Guard in place and install Push Rivets at location C & D.

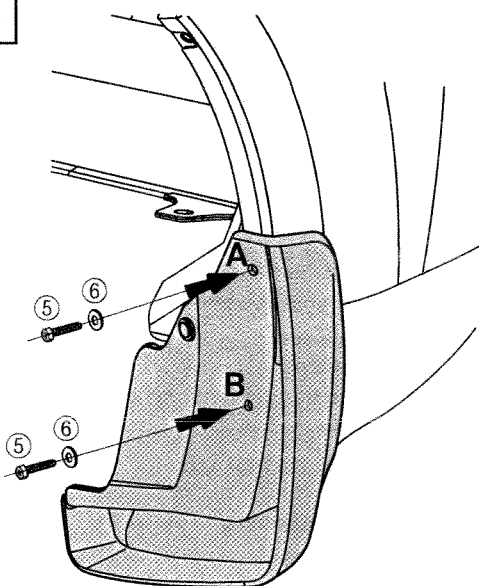
Reposer les circlips déposés en partie C et D.  
Fermer les circlips.

Erneut mit den im Teil C und D. entfernten Klammern sichern.  
Mit den Klammern sichern.

Fermare il pezzo di nuovo con i fermagli tolti dalla parte C e D.  
Fermare con i morsetti.

Fije de nuevo con los retenedores que han sido extraídos en la parte C y D.  
Fije con los retenedores.

4



Loosely install bolt and washer at locations A & B.  
Hold inward pressure on Splash Guard while tightening.  
Tightening Torque: 180-220 N-cm (16-19.5 in-lbs)  
Repeat Installation process for other side.

Fixer à l'aide du boulon et de sa rondelle.  
Couple de serrage: 180 à 220 N•cm

Mit der Schraube und der Unterlegscheibe befestigen.  
Anzugsdrehmoment: 180 bis 220 N•cm

Fissare poi con il bullone e la rondella.  
Coppia di serraggio: da 180 a 220 N•cm

Fije con el perno y la arandela.  
Torsión de apriete: 180 a 220 N•cm



# SUBARU

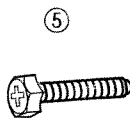
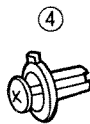
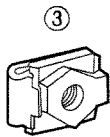
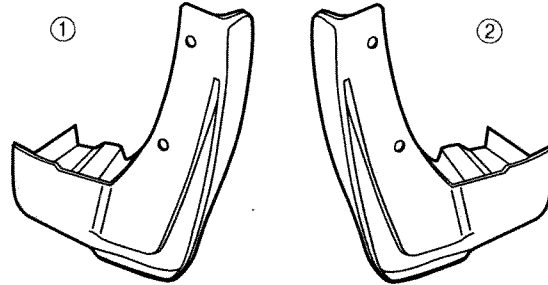
08MY+

Name : SPLASH GUARD/FRONT KIT  
Part No. : J1010FG001## 4door , 5door

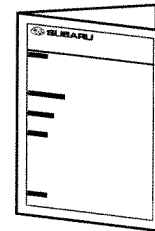
## IMPREZA Installation manual

### Component parts

No.	Part name	Quantity
①	Splash Guard F-LH	1
②	Splash Guard F-RH	1
③	J-Nut M5	4
④	Push Rivet	2
⑤	Bolt M5 × 20mm	4
⑥	Washer	4
⑦	Installation Instruction	1



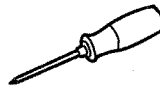
⑦



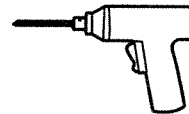
### Tools



Clean shop towel  
Chiffon d'atelier propre  
Sauberer Lappen  
Panno da officina pulito  
Paño de taller limpio



Phillips screwdriver  
Tournevis à tête cruciforme  
Kreuzschlitz-Schraubendreher  
Cacciavite a stella  
Destornillador de cabeza en cruz



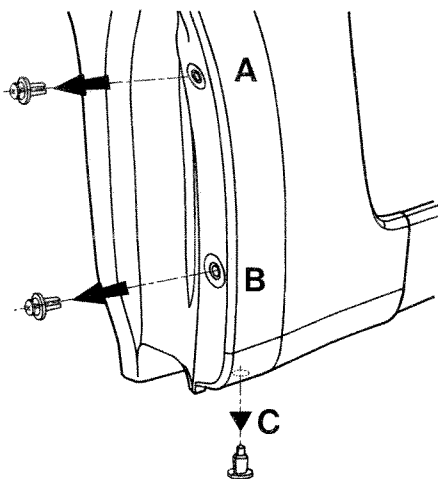
Electric drill  
Perceuse électrique  
Elektrobohrer  
Trapano elettrico  
Taladro eléctrico



Torque wrench  
Clé dynamométrique  
Drehmomentschlüssel  
Chiave torsionmetrica  
Llave dinamométrica

### Work outline

1



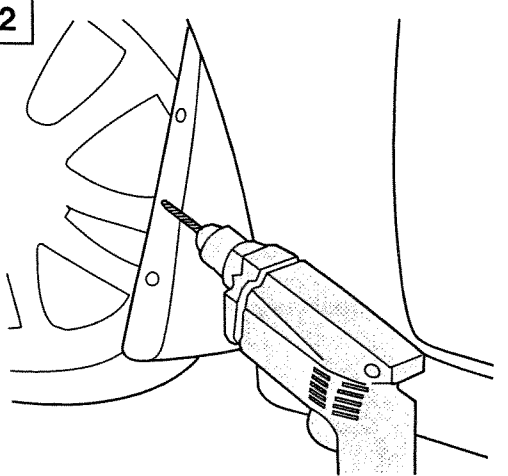
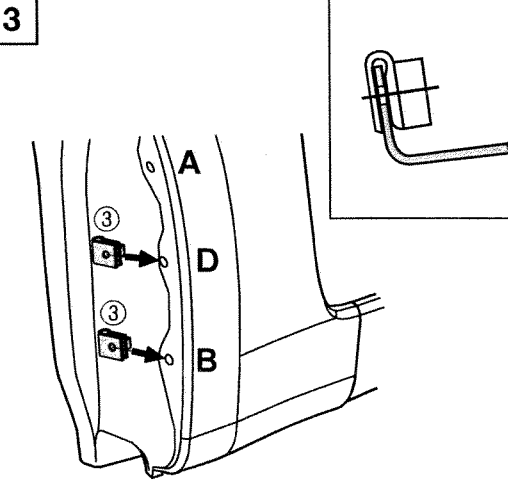
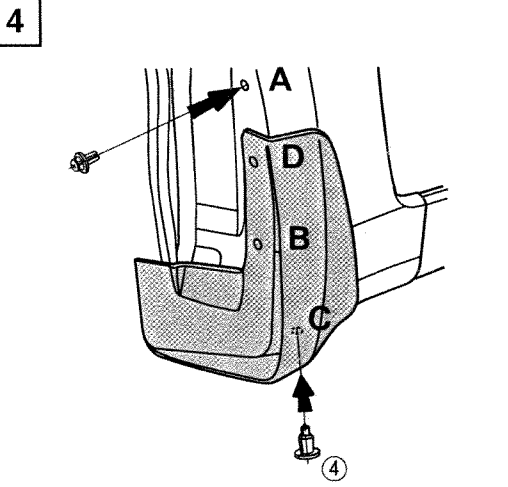
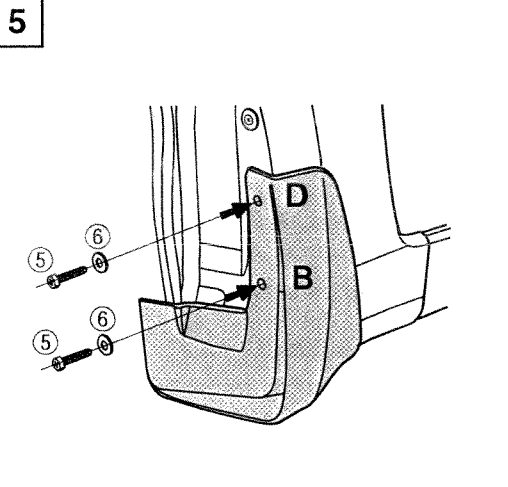
Clean the splash guard installation surface.  
Remove clips A, B and C.  
\* The removed clips are reused.

Nettoyer la surface d'installation de la bavette garde-boue.  
Déposer les circlips A, B et C.  
\* Les circlips déposés sont réutilisés.

Die Anbaufläche des Spitzblechs reinigen.  
Die Klammern A, B und C entfernen.  
\* Die entfernten Klammern werden anschließend erneut verwendet.

Pulire la superficie di installazione del paraspruzzi.  
Rimuovere i morsetti A, B e C  
\* I morsetti rimossi devono venire riutilizzati.

Limpie la superficie de instalación del protector contra salpicaduras.  
Extraiga los retenedores A, B y C.  
\* Los retenedores extraídos se vuelven a utilizar.

<p><b>2</b></p> 	<p>Drill a 6 mm hole at the circle mark on the rear of the mud guard. * The double circle mark is at the center between clips A and B.</p> <p>Percer un trou de 6 mm à l'endroit repéré par un double cercle au dos de la bavette garde-boue. * Le double cercle repère se trouve à mi-chemin entre les circlips A et B.</p> <p>Ein 6-mm-Loch an der Doppelkreismarkierung an der Rückseite des Spritzblechs bohren. * Die Doppelkreismarkierung befindet sich in der Mitte zwischen den Klammern A und B.</p> <p>Trapanare un foro da 6 mm in corrispondenza del segno del doppio cerchio tracciato sul retro del paraspruzzi. * Il doppio cerchio si trova a metà strada fra i morsetti A e B.</p> <p>Perfore un orificio de 6 mm en la marca del círculo doble de la parte posterior del parafangos. * La marca del círculo doble está en el centro, entre los retenedores A y B.</p>
<p><b>3</b></p> 	<p>Install the J-nuts at locations B &amp; D.</p> <p>Installer l'écrou à ressort en J.</p> <p>Die J-Mutter anbringen.</p> <p>Installare il dado J.</p> <p>Instale la tuerca en J.</p>
<p><b>4</b></p> 	<p>Re-install Clip A which was removed in Step 1. Hold Splash Guard in place and install Push Rivet at location C.</p> <p>Reposer les circlips déposés en partie A. Fermer les circlips.</p> <p>Erneut mit den im Teil A entfernten Klammern sichern. Mit den Klammern sichern.</p> <p>Fermare il pezzo di nuovo con i fermagli tolti dalla parte A. Fermare con i morsetti.</p> <p>Fije de nuevo con los retenedores que han sido extraídos en la parte A. Fije con los retenedores.</p>
<p><b>5</b></p> 	<p>Loosely install bolt and washer at locations B &amp; D. Hold inward pressure on Splash Guard while tightening. Tightening Torque: 180-220 N•cm (16-19.5 in•lbs) Repeat Installation process for other side.</p> <p>Fixer à l'aide du boulon et de sa rondelle. Couple de serrage: 180 à 220 N•cm</p> <p>Mit der Schraube und der Unterlegscheibe befestigen. Anzugsdrehmoment: 180 bis 220 N•cm</p> <p>Fissare poi con il bullone e la rondella. Coppia di serraggio: da 180 a 220 N•cm</p> <p>Fije con el perno y la arandela. Torsión de apriete: 180 a 220 N•cm</p>





# SUBARU

08MY+

Name : SPLASH GUARD/REAR KIT

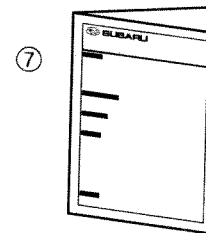
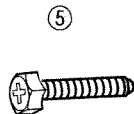
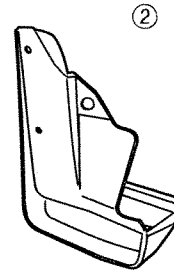
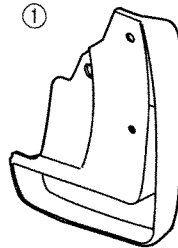
Part No. : J1010FG004## 4door

J1010FG014## 5door

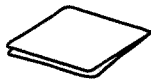
## IMPREZA Installation manual

### Component parts

No.	Part name	Quantity
①	Splash Guard R-LH	1
②	Splash Guard R-RH	1
③	J-Nut M5	4
④	Push Rivet	4
⑤	Bolt M5 × 20mm	4
⑥	Washer	4
⑦	Installation Instruction	1



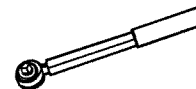
### Tools



Clean shop towel  
Chiffon d'atelier propre  
Sauberer Lappen  
Panno da officina pulito  
Paño de taller limpio



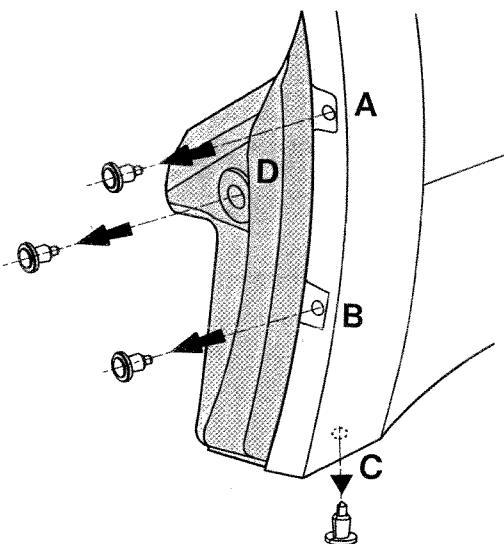
Phillips screwdriver  
Tournevis à tête cruciforme  
Kreuzschlitz-Schraubendreher  
Cacciavite a stella  
Destornillador de cabeza en cruz



Torque wrench  
Clé dynamométrique  
Drehmomentschlüssel  
Chiave torsionometrica  
Llave dinamométrica

### Work outline

1



Clean the splash guard installation surface.  
Remove clips A, B, C and D.  
\* The removed clips are reused.

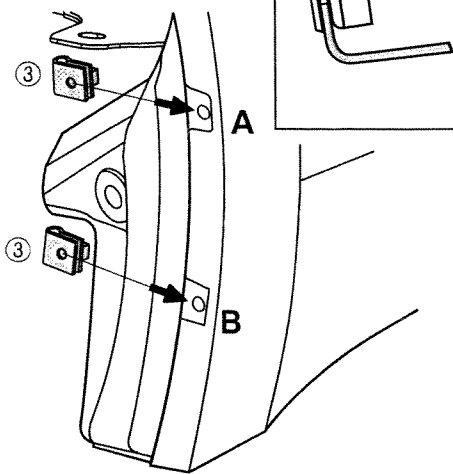
Nettoyer la surface d'installation de la bavette garde-boue.  
Déposer les circlips A, B, C et D.  
\* Les circlips déposés sont réutilisés.

Die Anbaufläche des Spitzblechs reinigen.  
Die Klammern A, B, C und D entfernen.  
\* Die entfernten Klammern werden anschließend erneut verwendet.

Pulire la superficie di installazione del paraspruzzi.  
Rimuovere i morsetti A, B, C e D  
\* I morsetti rimossi devono venire riutilizzati.

Limpiar la superficie de instalación del protector contra salpicaduras.  
Extraiga los retenedores A, B, C y D.  
\* Los retenedores extraídos se vuelven a utilizar.

2



Install the J-nuts at locations A & B.

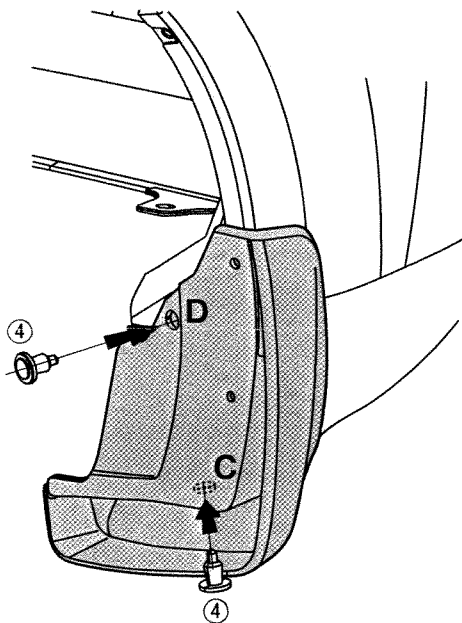
Installer l'écrou à ressort en J.

Die J-Mutter anbringen.

Installare il dado J.

Instale la tuerca en J.

3



Hold Splash Guard in place and install Push Rivets at location C & D.

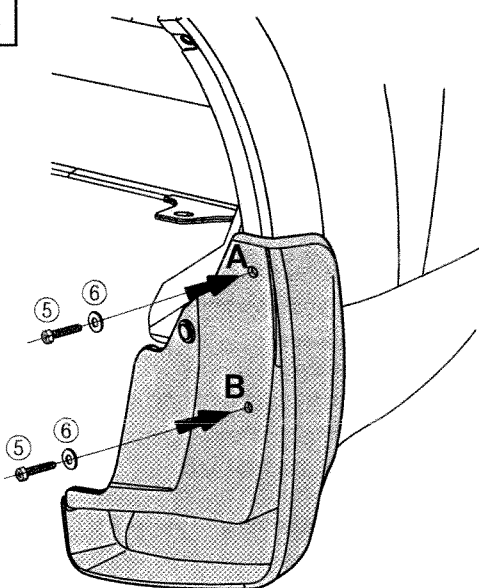
Reposer les circlips déposés en partie C et D.  
Fermer les circlips.

Erneut mit den im Teil C und D. entfernten Klammern sichern.  
Mit den Klammern sichern.

Fermare il pezzo di nuovo con i fermagli tolti dalla parte C e D.  
Fermare con i morsetti.

Fije de nuevo con los retenedores que han sido extraídos en la parte C y D.  
Fije con los retenedores.

4



Loosely install bolt and washer at locations A & B.  
Hold inward pressure on Splash Guard while tightening.  
Tightening Torque: 180-220 N-cm (16-19.5 in-lbs)  
Repeat Installation process for other side.

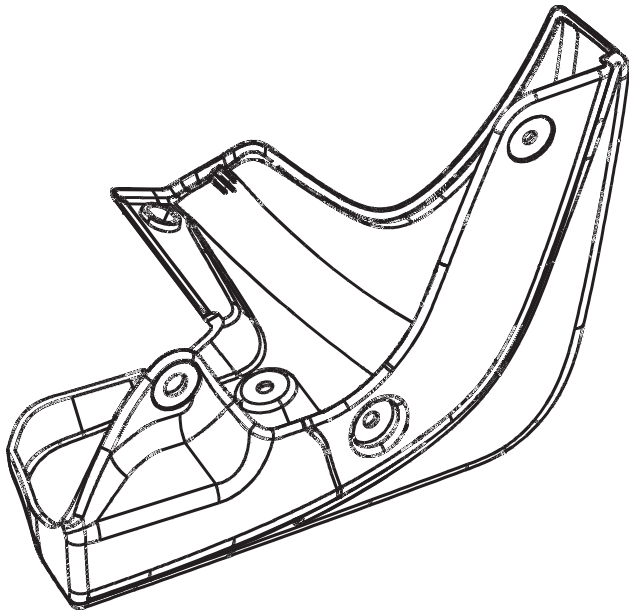
Fixer à l'aide du boulon et de sa rondelle.  
Couple de serrage: 180 à 220 N•cm

Mit der Schraube und der Unterlegscheibe befestigen.  
Anzugsdrehmoment: 180 bis 220 N•cm

Fissare poi con il bullone e la rondella.  
Coppia di serraggio: da 180 a 220 N•cm

Fije con el perno y la arandela.  
Torsión de apriete: 180 a 220 N•cm

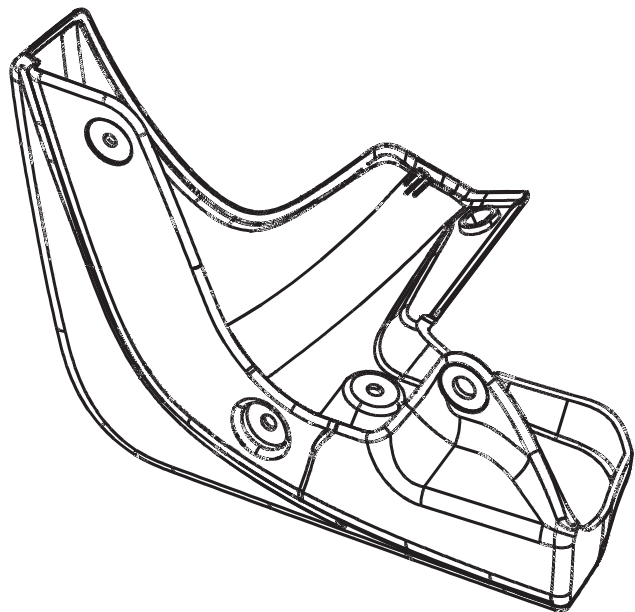
**A** KIT CONTENTS



FR LH SPLASH GUARD

1x

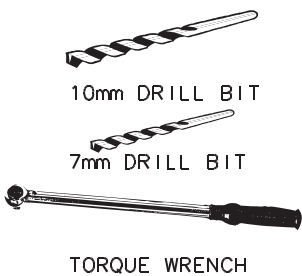
**B**



FR RH SPLASH GUARD

1x

**TOOLS REQUIRED**



10mm DRILL BIT

7mm DRILL BIT

TORQUE WRENCH



FLAT BLADE  
SCREWDRIVER



8mm SOCKET



PHILLIPS SCREWDRIVER



POWER SCREWDRIVER

**C**



BOLT WITH  
WASHER 4x

**D**



SELF TAPPING  
SCREW 2x

**MEANING OF CHARACTERS**

 : REMOVE

 : INSTALL



RE USE



DISCARD

**E**



J-NUT  
PLASTIC 4x

**F**



SCREW  
GROMMET 2x

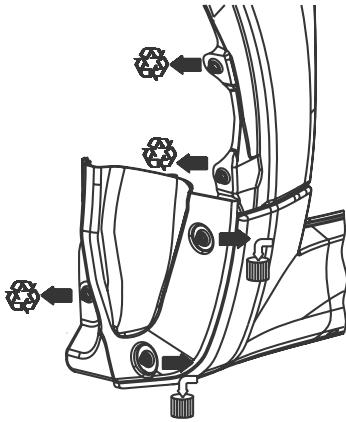
**G**



2-PIECE  
CLIP 2x

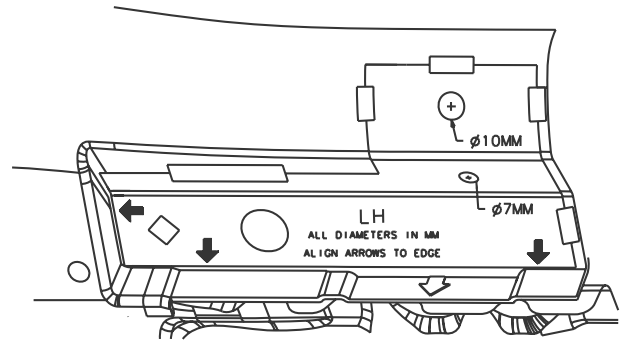
# FRONT SPLASH GUARD INSTALLATION

**1** FRONT LH/RH SPLASH GUARD  
LH (DRIVER) SHOWN



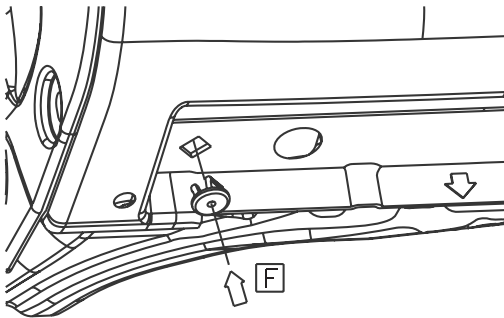
NOTE:  
TURN TIRE TO GAIN ACCESS TO WHEEL WELL.  
REMOVE FIVE(5) MUDGUARD CLIPS AND RETAIN THREE(3)  
FOR RE-USE.

**2**



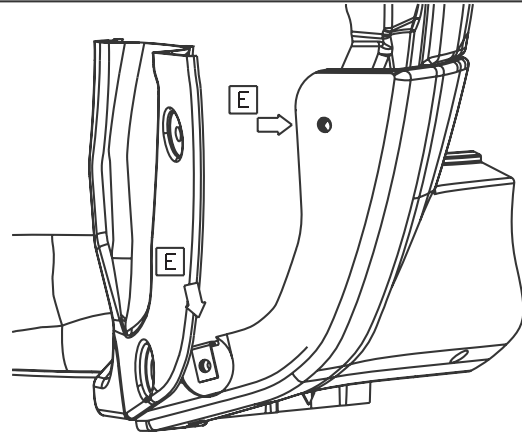
NOTE:  
CAREFULLY CUT OUT TEMPLATES AND ALIGN ARROWS TO  
EDGE AND TAPE TEMPLATE IN PLACE.  
TRANSFER THE 10 MM AND 7MM HOLE CENTERS.

**3**



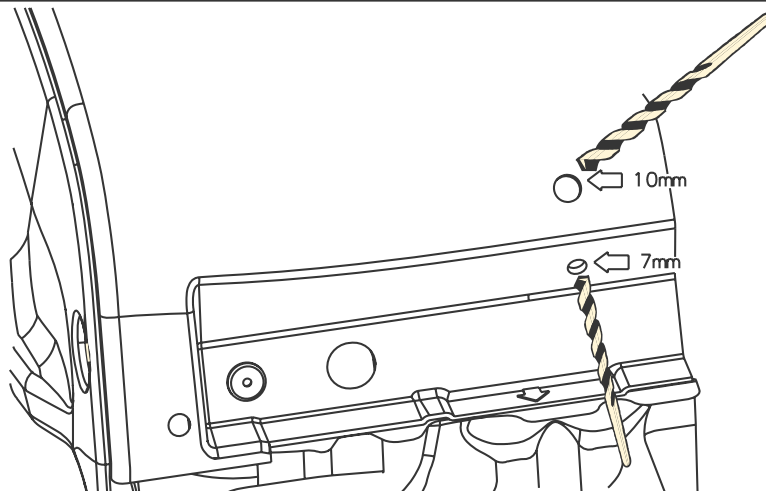
NOTE:  
INSTALL SQUARE BASED SCREW GROMMET ON  
THE UNDERSIDE OF ROCKER PANEL TRIM.

**4**



NOTE:  
CAREFULLY PULL THE MUD GUARD ASIDE. INSTALL THE  
PLASTIC J-NUTS ON THE LOWER HOLE AND THE UPPER  
HOLE (BEHIND THE GARNISH).

**5**



NOTE:  
DRILL 10mm AND 7mm HOLES (USE 5mm DRILL  
STOP FOR EACH HOLE).

PART NUMBER  
J101SXA001

ISSUE  
02

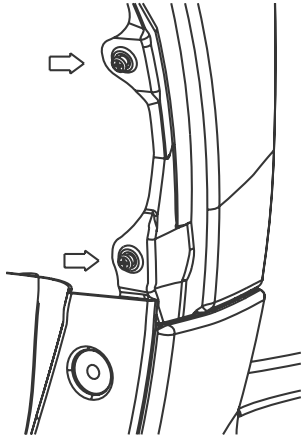
DATE  
08/22/2006

SUBARU OF AMERICA

PAGE  
2/3

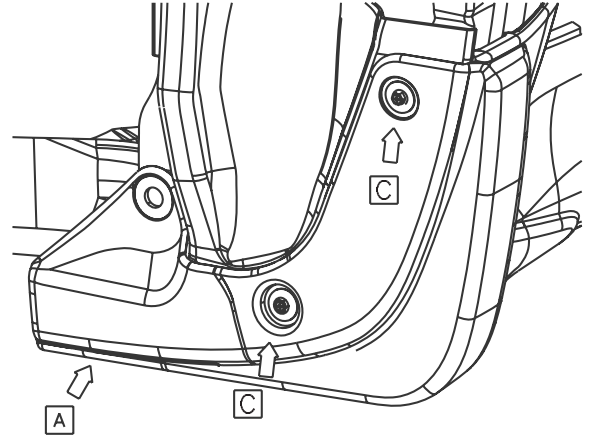
# FRONT SPLASH GUARD INSTALLATION

6



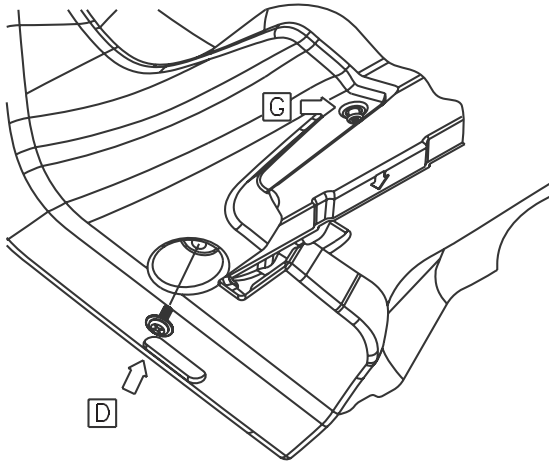
NOTE:  
RE-INSTALL TWO(2) UPPER CLIPS RETAINED FROM STEP #1.

7

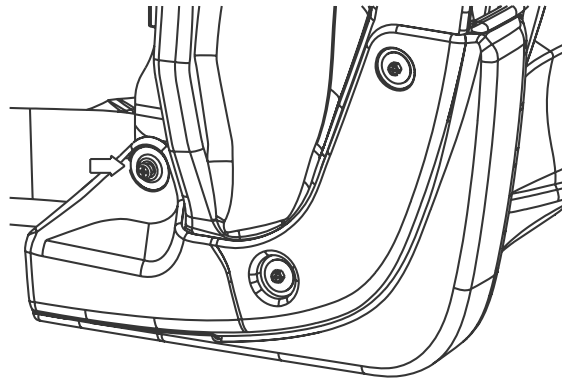


NOTE:  
PUT SPLASH GUARD IN PLACE. INSTALL AND HAND TIGHTEN TWO FRONT BOLTS. (ENSURE PROPER FIT OF MOLDED IN CLIP AT BOTTOM OF SPLASH GUARD)

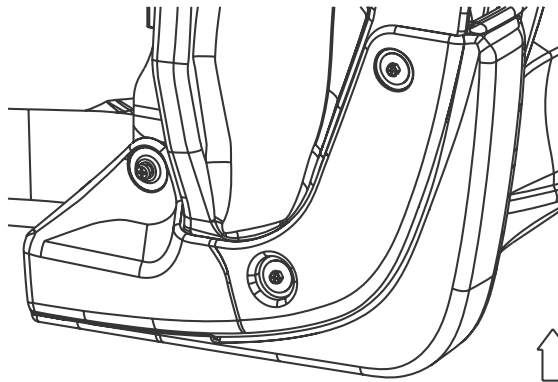
8



NOTE:  
INSTALL BOTTOM CLIP AND REINSTALL ONE INNER MUD GUARD CLIP RETAINED FROM STEP #1. LOOSELY INSTALL SELF TAPPING SCREW **D**. (POWER SCREWDRIVER RECOMMENDED) (VIEW FROM THE BOTTOM OF THE VEHICLE)



9



↑  
← APPLY PRESSURE IN UPWARD AND INWARD DIRECTION DURING TIGHTENING.

NOTE:  
TIGHTEN TWO(2) FRONT BOLTS TO  $4.1 \pm 0.7 \text{ Nm. (3 \pm 0.5 ft. lbs.)}$   
TIGHTEN SELF TAPPING SCREW.

PART NUMBER  
J101SXA001

ISSUE  
02

DATE  
08/22/2006

SUBARU OF AMERICA

PAGE  
3/3



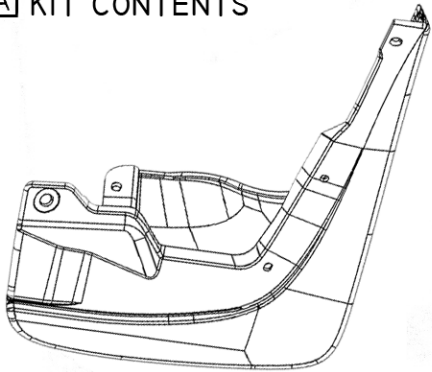
**SUBARU**

PART NUMBER: J10ISXA200

**INSTALLATION INSTRUCTIONS**

DESCRIPTION: TRIBECA REAR SPLASH GUARD KIT

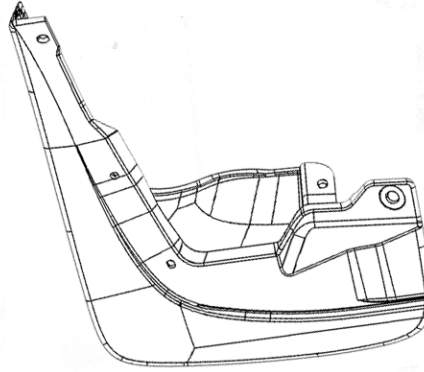
**A KIT CONTENTS**



REAR LH SPLASH GUARD

1x

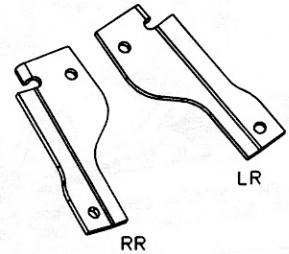
**B**



REAR RH SPLASH GUARD

1x

**C**



REAR BRACKETS  
(NOT INCLUDED IN TRIBECA  
REAR SPLASH GUARD KIT)

1x

**TOOLS REQUIRED**



TORQUE WRENCH



8MM SOCKET



FLAT BLADE  
SCREWDRIVER



PHILLIPS SCREWDRIVER

**MEANING OF CHARACTERS**

← : REMOVE

⇐ : INSTALL



: RE-USE



DISCARD

**D**



BOLT WITH  
WASHER

6x

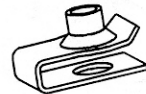
**E**



6MM PUSH CLIP

4x

**F**

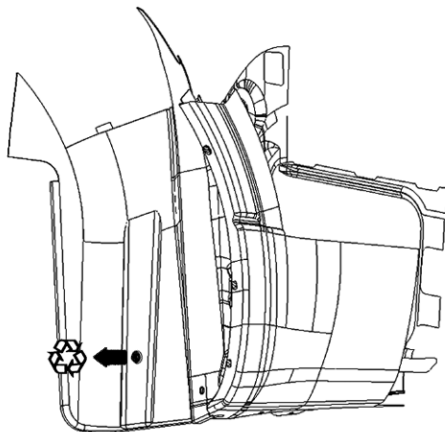


J-NUT  
PLASTIC

6x

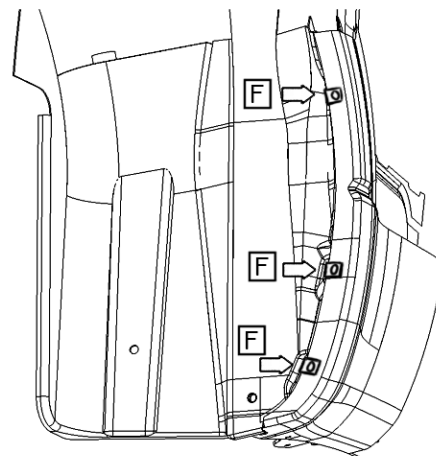
**1**

REAR LH/RH SPLASH GUARD  
LH (DRIVER) SHOWN



NOTE:  
REMOVE TIRE TO GAIN ACCESS TO WHEEL WELL.  
REMOVE ONE MUDGUARD CLIP (8MM PUSH CLIP) AND  
RETAIN FOR RE-USE.

**2**



NOTE:  
INSTALL THREE (3) J-NUTS TO BUMPER AT HOLE LOCATION,  
THREADED SIDE ON BACKSIDE OF BUMPER.

PART NUMBER  
J10ISXA200

ISSUE  
01

DATE  
12/18/2006

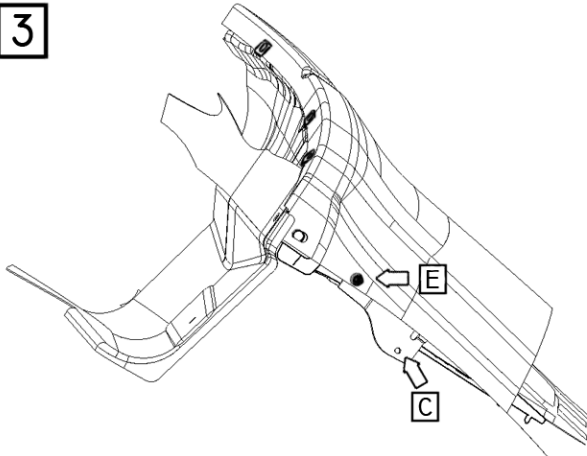
SUBARU OF AMERICA

PAGE  
1/2

B006725INS

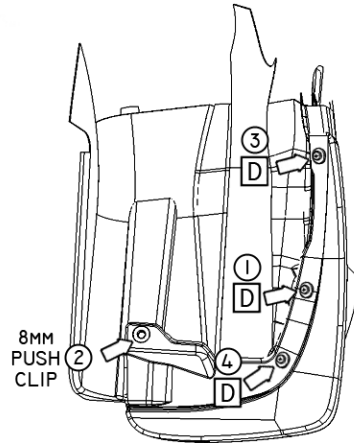
## REAR SPLASH GUARD INSTALLATION

**3**



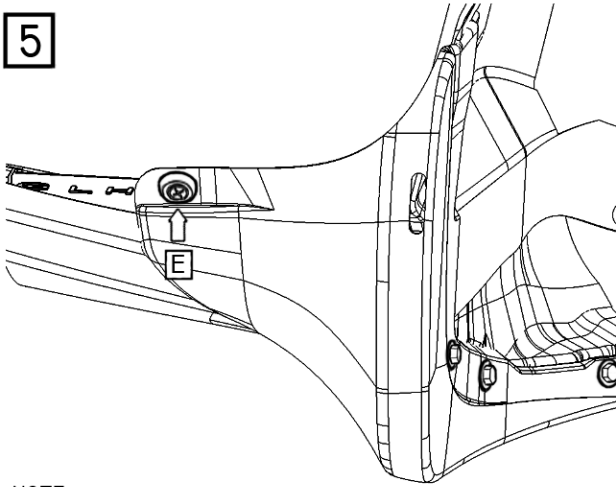
NOTE:  
INSTALL LOWER BRACKET BY INSERTING CLIP THROUGH HOLE IN BUMPER. SLIDE BRACKET UNTIL STOPPER MAKES CONTACT WITH BUMPER.

**4**



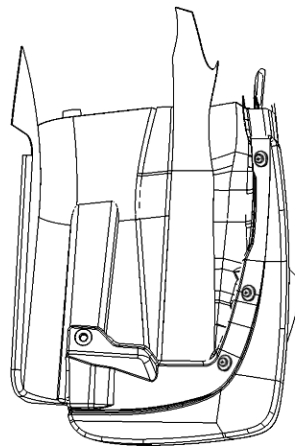
NOTE:  
PUT SPLASH GUARD IN PLACE, LOOSELY INSTALL FRONT BOLTS AND PUSH CLIP IN ORDER OF SEQUENCE SHOWN.

**5**



NOTE:  
INSTALL CLIP THROUGH HOLE AND INTO LOWER BRACKET.

**6**



↑  
← APPLY PRESSURE IN UPWARD AND INWARD DIRECTION DURING TIGHTENING.

NOTE:  
TIGHTEN THREE (3) FRONT BOLTS TO 4.5 +/- 1.5 NM (3.3 +/- 1.1 LBFT).  
RE-INSTALL WHEEL WHEN COMPLETED.

PART NUMBER  
J10ISXA200

ISSUE  
01

DATE  
12/18/2006

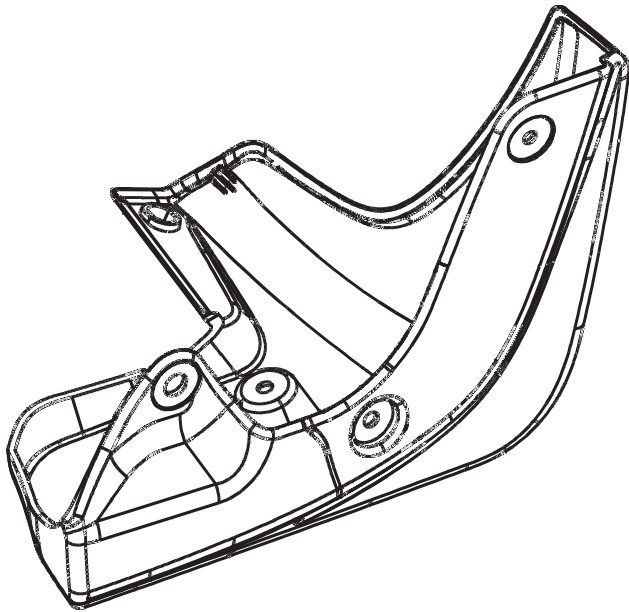
SUBARU OF AMERICA

PAGE  
2/2

B006725INS



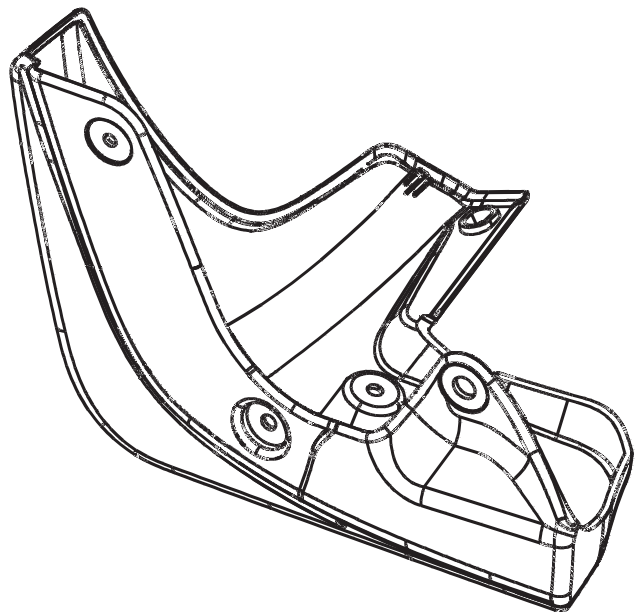
**A** KIT CONTENTS



FR LH SPLASH GUARD

1x

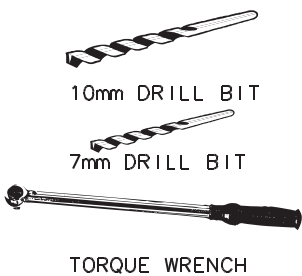
**B**



FR RH SPLASH GUARD

1x

**TOOLS REQUIRED**



10mm DRILL BIT

7mm DRILL BIT

TORQUE WRENCH



FLAT BLADE  
SCREWDRIVER



8mm SOCKET



PHILLIPS SCREWDRIVER



POWER SCREWDRIVER

**C**



BOLT WITH  
WASHER 4x

**D**



SELF TAPPING  
SCREW 2x

**MEANING OF CHARACTERS**

 : REMOVE

 : INSTALL



RE USE



DISCARD

**E**



J-NUT  
PLASTIC 4x

**F**



SCREW  
GROMMET 2x

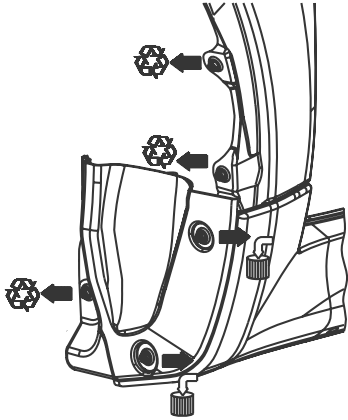
**G**



2-PIECE  
CLIP 2x

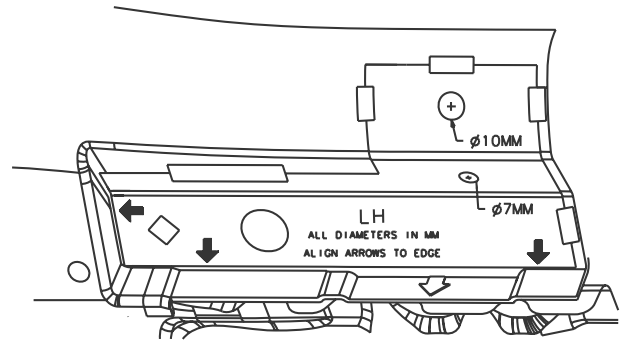
# FRONT SPLASH GUARD INSTALLATION

**1** FRONT LH/RH SPLASH GUARD  
LH (DRIVER) SHOWN



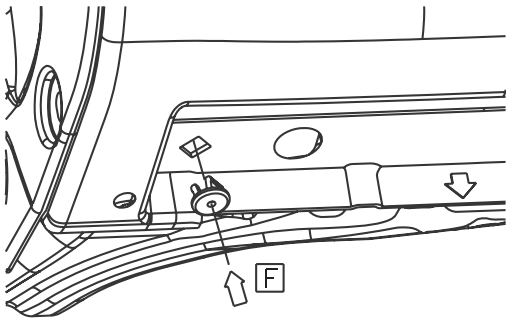
NOTE:  
TURN TIRE TO GAIN ACCESS TO WHEEL WELL.  
REMOVE FIVE(5) MUDGUARD CLIPS AND RETAIN THREE(3)  
FOR RE-USE.

**2**



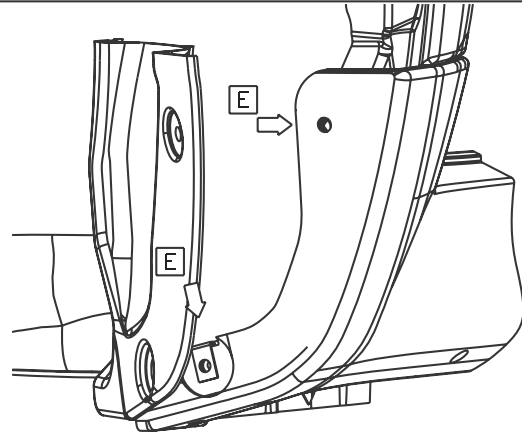
NOTE:  
CAREFULLY CUT OUT TEMPLATES AND ALIGN ARROWS TO  
EDGE AND TAPE TEMPLATE IN PLACE.  
TRANSFER THE 10 MM AND 7MM HOLE CENTERS.

**3**



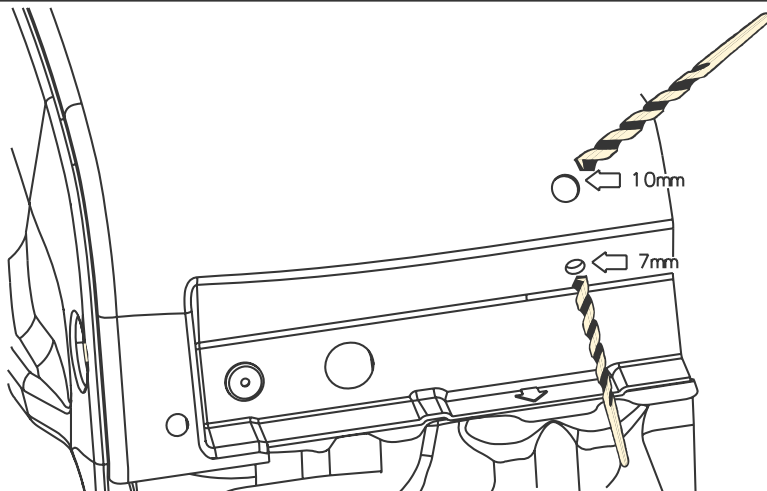
NOTE:  
INSTALL SQUARE BASED SCREW GROMMET ON  
THE UNDERSIDE OF ROCKER PANEL TRIM.

**4**



NOTE:  
CAREFULLY PULL THE MUD GUARD ASIDE. INSTALL THE  
PLASTIC J-NUTS ON THE LOWER HOLE AND THE UPPER  
HOLE (BEHIND THE GARNISH).

**5**



NOTE:  
DRILL 10mm AND 7mm HOLES (USE 5mm DRILL  
STOP FOR EACH HOLE).

PART NUMBER  
J101SXA001

ISSUE  
02

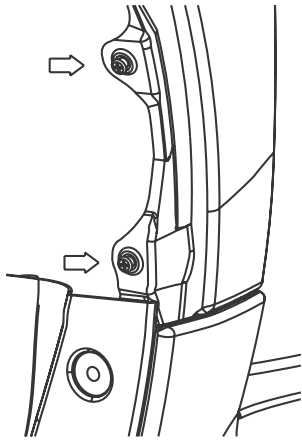
DATE  
08/22/2006

SUBARU OF AMERICA

PAGE  
2/3

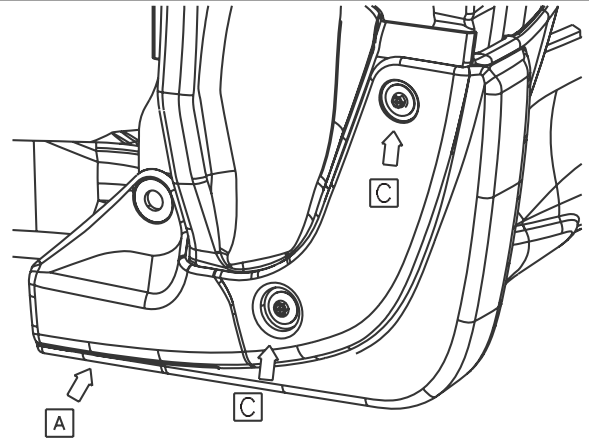
# FRONT SPLASH GUARD INSTALLATION

6



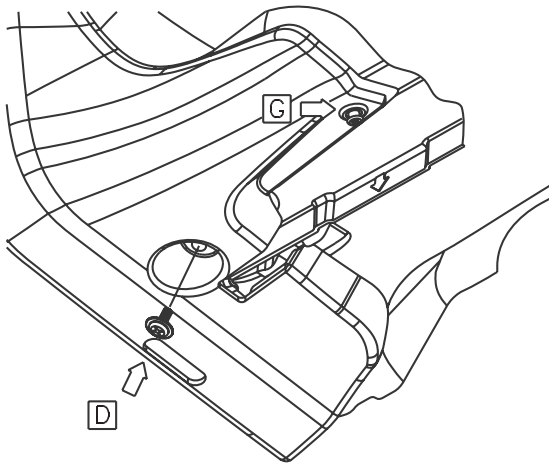
NOTE:  
RE-INSTALL TWO(2) UPPER CLIPS RETAINED FROM STEP #1.

7

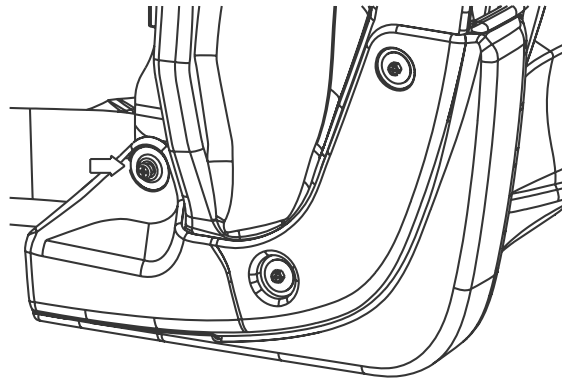


NOTE:  
PUT SPLASH GUARD IN PLACE. INSTALL AND HAND TIGHTEN TWO FRONT BOLTS. (ENSURE PROPER FIT OF MOLDED IN CLIP AT BOTTOM OF SPLASH GUARD)

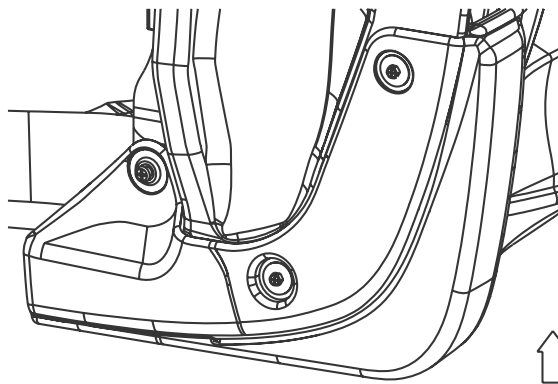
8



NOTE:  
INSTALL BOTTOM CLIP AND REINSTALL ONE INNER MUD GUARD CLIP RETAINED FROM STEP #1. LOOSELY INSTALL SELF TAPPING SCREW **D**. (POWER SCREWDRIVER RECOMMENDED) (VIEW FROM THE BOTTOM OF THE VEHICLE)



9



↑  
← APPLY PRESSURE IN UPWARD AND INWARD DIRECTION DURING TIGHTENING.

NOTE:  
TIGHTEN TWO(2) FRONT BOLTS TO  $4.1 \pm 0.7 \text{ Nm. (3 \pm 0.5 ft. lbs.)}$   
TIGHTEN SELF TAPPING SCREW.

PART NUMBER  
J101SXA001

ISSUE  
02

DATE  
08/22/2006

SUBARU OF AMERICA

PAGE  
3/3

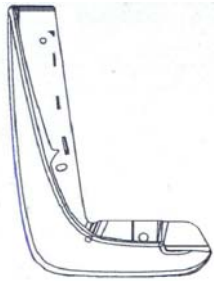
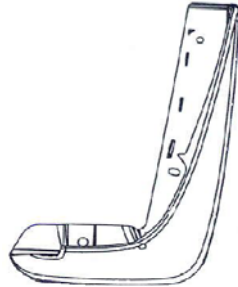






**INSTALLATION  
INSTRUCTIONS**

**DESCRIPTION: Outback Wagon**

**Splash Guard Kit**

**KIT CONTENTS:**

PAGE 1/2

<p><b>A</b></p>  <p>FR RH Splash Guard 1X</p>	<p><b>B</b></p>  <p>FR LH Splash Guard 1X</p>		
<p><b>C</b></p>  <p>RR RH Splash Guard 1X</p>	<p><b>D</b></p>  <p>RR LH Splash Guard 1X</p>		
<p><b>E</b></p>  <p>Bolt with Washer 8X</p>	<p><b>F</b></p>  <p>Plastic J-Nut 6X</p>	<p><b>G</b></p>  <p>Sheet Metal J-Nut 2X</p>	<p><b>H</b></p>  <p>Screw Rivet 2X</p>

**TOOLS REQUIRED:**



#2 Phillips Screwdriver (+)



Soft Clean Cloths



Isopropyl Alcohol (90-100%)

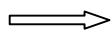
**MEANING OF CHARACTERS:**



:Remove



:Reuse

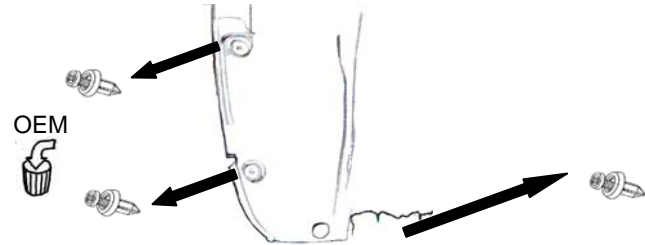


:Install



:Discard


**1**



FR LH/RH Splash Guard:  
RH (Passenger) Shown

For Front Splash Guards remove Screw Rivets and discard. It may be helpful to use a small flat head screw driver to dislodge the screw.

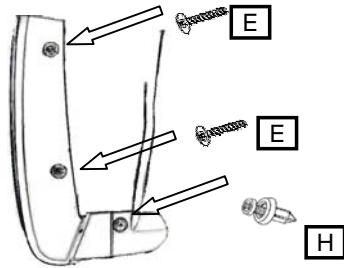
**2**



Insert Metal J-clip onto sheet metal behind the top hole.  
Insert the plastic J-Clip behind the lowest hole.

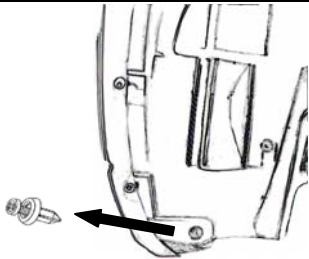
Lift the mud guard to slide J-Nuts behind holes.

3



Line up Front Splash Guard with existing holes and insert Screw Rivet from Hardware Kit into bottom hole. Insert Bolt with Washer into lower hole and tighten. Adjust Front Splash Guard to fit flush to exterior of vehicle body and insert and tighten the Bolt with Washer for the last (top) hole. Tighten bolts to  $10 \pm 2$  in-lbs ( $1.1 \pm 0.2$ N-m)

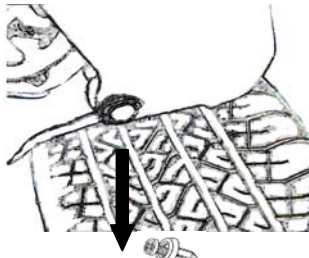
4



RR LH/RH Splash Guard:  
RH (Passenger) Shown

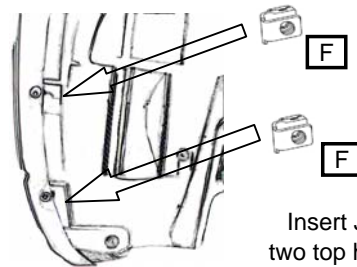
For Rear Splash Guards remove Screw Rivet and KEEP for REINSTALLATION.

5



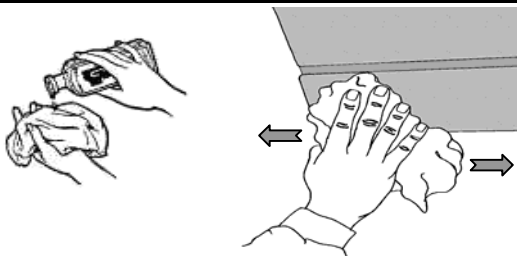
Remove screw rivet from (underside) rear and KEEP for REINSTALLATION.

6



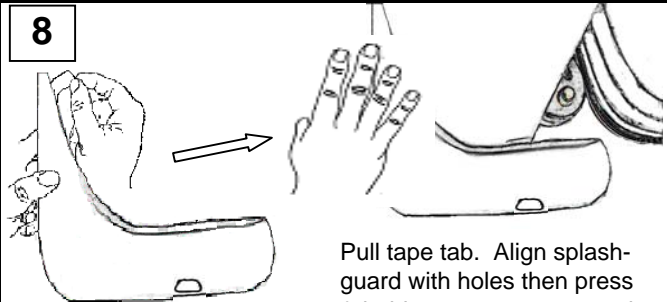
Insert J-Nuts behind the two top holes.

7



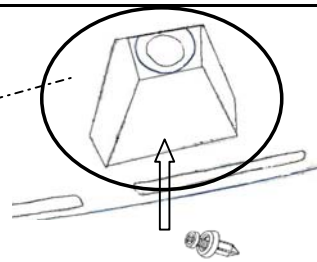
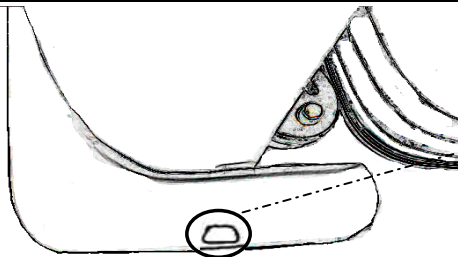
Clean body where splash guard attaches with cloth and alcohol.

8



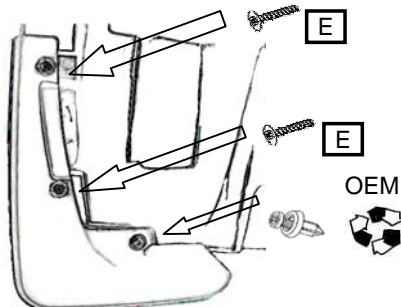
Pull tape tab. Align splash-guard with holes then press & hold tape area 10 seconds.

9



REINSTALL screw rivet on underside of Splash Guard.

10



REINSTALL the OEM Screw Rivet. Insert and tighten the Bolt with Washer to lower hole of Rear Splash Guard. Adjust to fit flush to exterior of body and insert and tighten the Bolt with Washer for the last (top) hole. Tighten bolts to  $10 \pm 2$  in-lbs ( $1.1 \pm 0.2$ N-m)

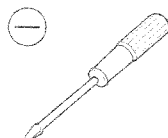
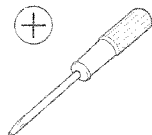
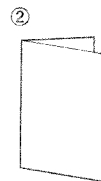
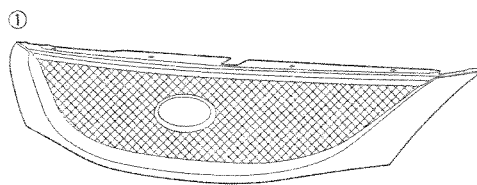
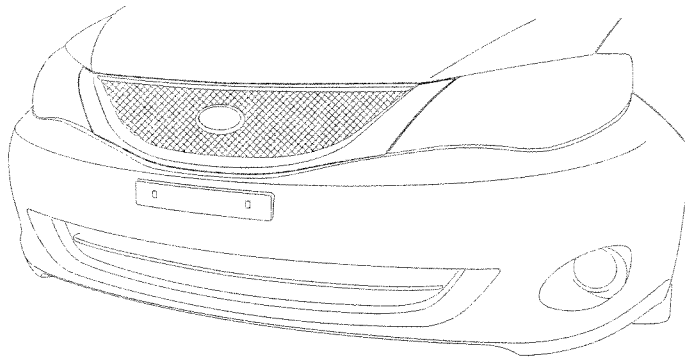


IMPREZA FRONT GRILLE  
IMPREZA FRONT GITTER  
IMPREZA GRILLE AVANT  
IMPREZA GRATA ANTERIORE  
IMPREZA LA VERJA DELANTERA

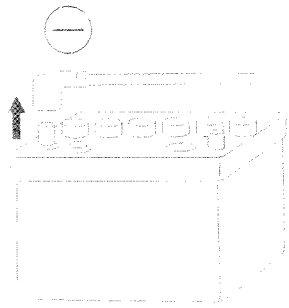
INSTALLATION INSTRUCTION  
EINBAUANLEITUNG  
INSTRUCTIONS DE L'INSTALLATION  
ISTRUZIONI USO  
INSTRUCCIONES PARA LA INSTALACION  
(2007.April)

PART.No

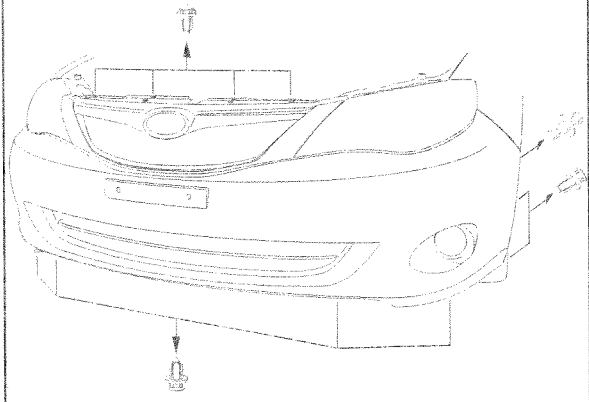
J1010FG100##



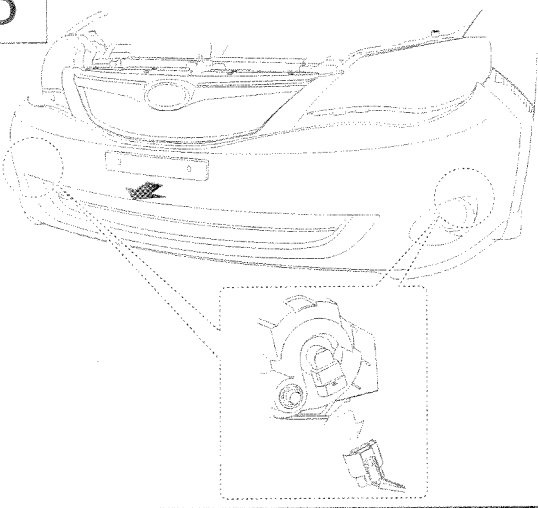
1



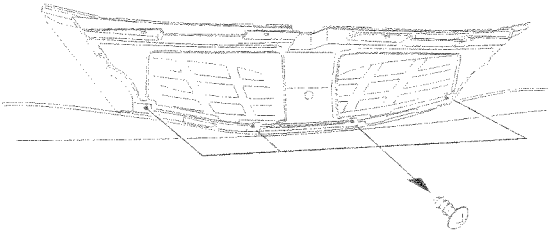
2



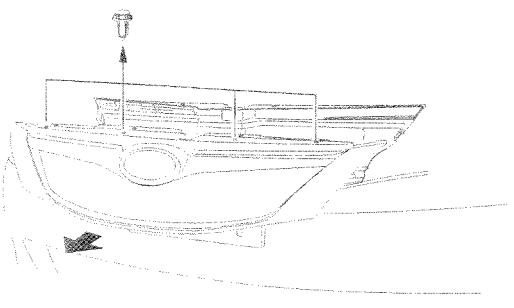
3



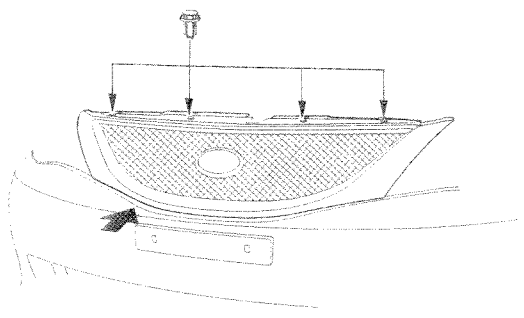
4



5

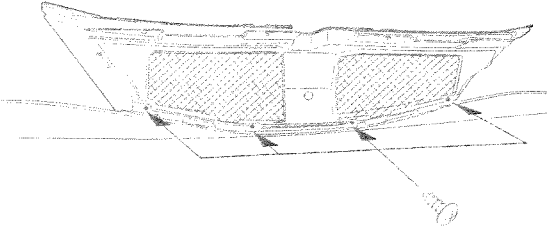


6

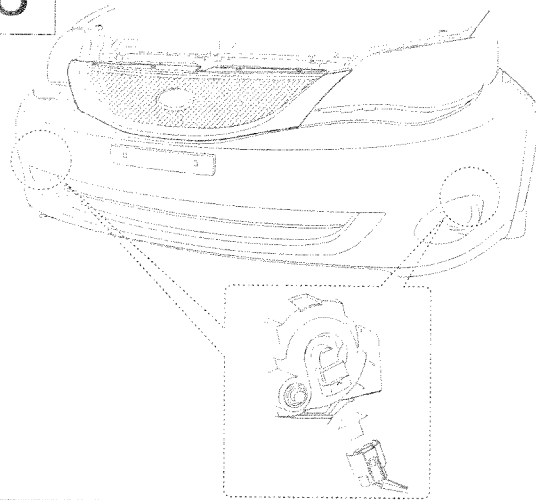




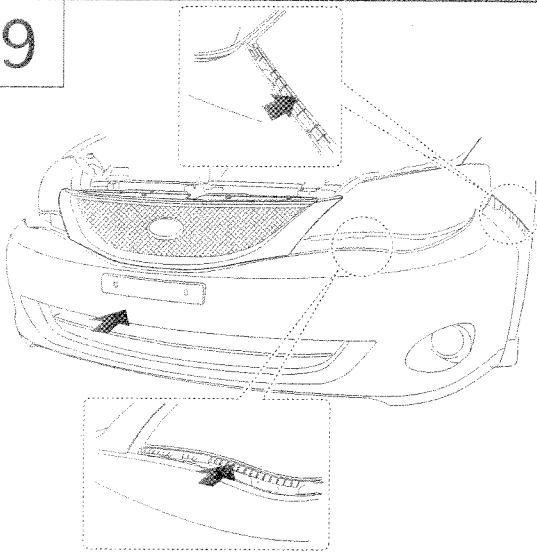
7



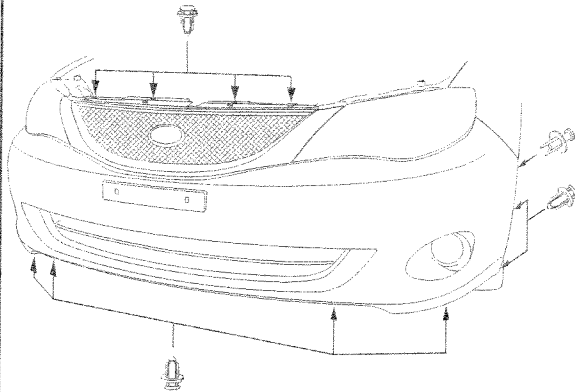
8



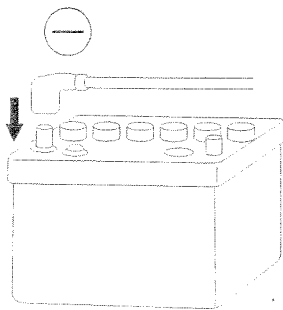
9



10



11





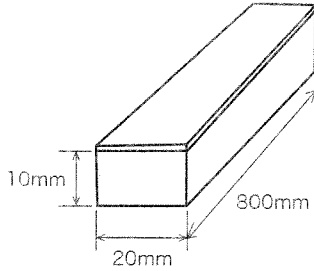
IMPREZA FRONT GRILLE  
 IMPREZA FRONT GITTER  
 IMPREZA GRILLE AVANT  
 IMPREZA GRATA ANTERIORE  
 IMPREZA LA VERJA DELANTERA

**Supplement**

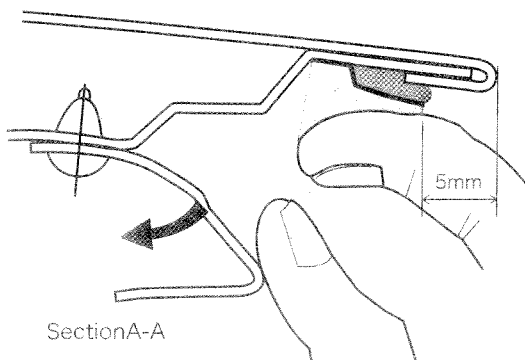
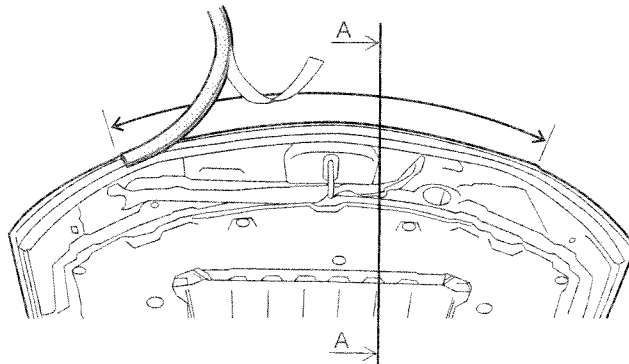
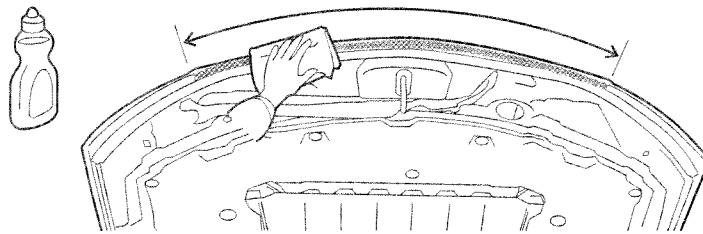
INSTALLATION INSTRUCTION  
 EINBAUANLEITUNG  
 INSTRUCTIONS DE L'INSTALLATION  
 ISTRUZIONI USO  
 INSTRUCCIONES PARA LA INSTALACION  
 (2007, April)

PART.No

J1010FG100##



Degreasing agent



Firmly stick the rubber seal 5mm off set from the hood edge.



# SUBARU

## STI Manual and Automatic Pedal Kit

Part Number: C8110AG000 : Legacy MT (07-08MY Except Spec.B), Outback MT (07-08MY)  
Impreza MT (08MY)

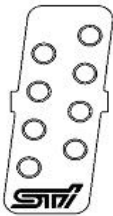
C8110AG010 : Legacy AT (07-08MY), Outback AT (07-08MY), Impreza AT (08MY)

### Caution

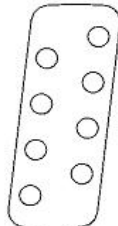
1. Be sure to tighten fasteners including bolts and nuts to the specified torque.
2. Be sure vehicle is parked in gear with the parking brake on.
3. This part uses an adhesion bond called "Thread lock".  
When you fix the nut to the bolt, it will completely harden in 30 minutes.  
It is one time use only. If you temporarily fix the bolt,  
please fully tighten it within 5 minutes.

### Kit Contents

Pad Accel(A-1)



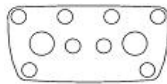
Rubber Accel(A-2)



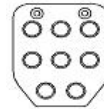
Pad Brake(B-1)



Rubber Brake(B-2)



Pad BC(C-1)



Rubber BC(C-2)



Back Plate(D-1)



Back Plate(D-2)



Socket Cap Screw(E)



Washer(G)



Nut(I)

Installation Manual(K)

Cap Nut(F)



Hexagon  
Socket Head Bolt(H)



Spacer(J)

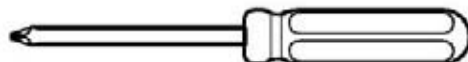
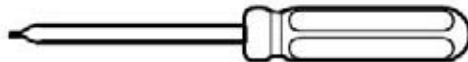


### Required Tools

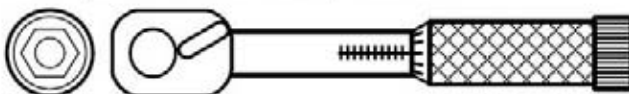
12mm Socket Wrench



+/- Screw Driver



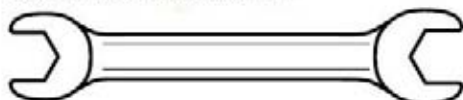
5.5mm, 7mm and 12mm Torque Wrench



2.5mm Hexagon Socket Wrench



5.5mm and 7mm Wrench



## Manual and Automatic Accelerator Pedal Installation

1. Take off the Connector and remove the bolts.
2. Place Pad Accel(A-1) onto Rubber Accel(A-2).
3. Clean the existing accelerator pedal before installing pedal pad assembly.
4. Insert Socket Cap Screw(E) from vehicle outside, using Spacer(J).  
Temporarily fix by Cap Nut(F).

**Note:**  
Please be sure to insert screw(E) from the outside.

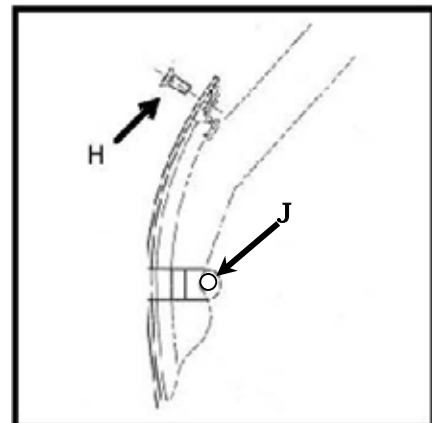
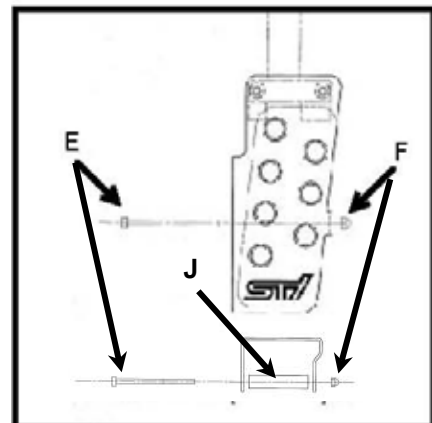
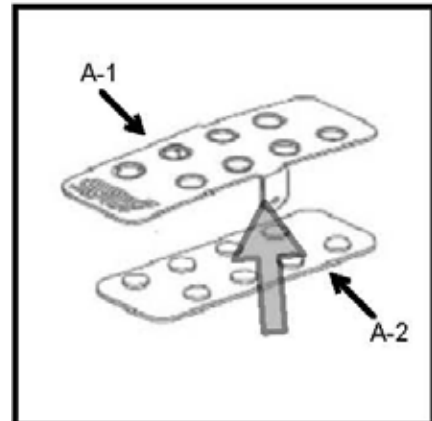
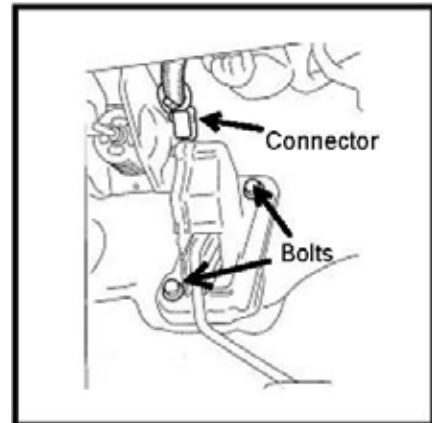
**Note:**  
Spacer(J) is very tight.

5. Center pedal pad assembly on accelerator pedal.
6. Secure pedal pad assembly to the accelerator pedal by tightening the Hexagon Socket Head Bolts(H) in the Back Plate(D-1).
7. Fully tighten Socket Cap Screw(E) and Cap Nut(F).

**Note:**  
Tightening torque: 18N-m / 13.3 lbs-ft

8. Fix the Accelerator Pedal with the OE bolts and connect the connector.

**Note:**  
Please reference tightening torque of OE bolts from service manual.



## Manual Vehicle Brake and Clutch Pedal installation

1. Remove the existing rubber brake pedal cover by prying it off with a screwdriver and hands.
2. Place Pad BC(C-1) onto Rubber BC(C-2).
3. Place pedal pad assembly over existing brake and clutch pedal on vehicle.

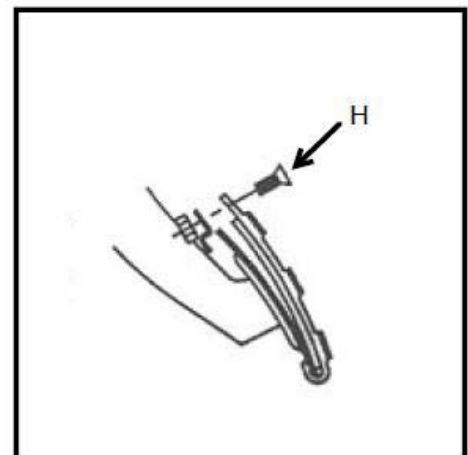
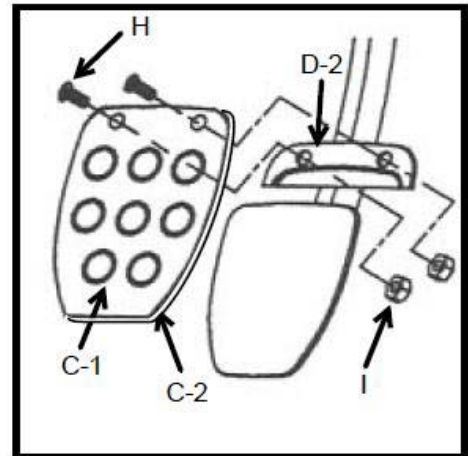
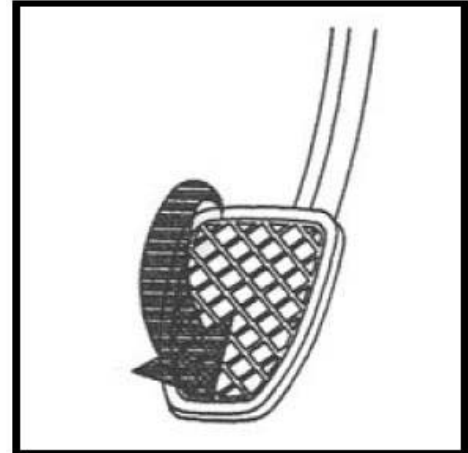
**Note:**

**Do so by first engaging metal wrap-around on lower part of brake and clutch pedal and then by pressing the pedal pad assembly down onto the existing metal brake or clutch pedal.**

4. While holding the pedal pad assembly in place, insert the two Hexagon Socket Head Bolts(H) into the metal and through the Back plate(D-2) holes.
5. Once through, install the two nuts(I) on the end of the Hexagon Socket Head Bolts(H).

**Note:**

**Tightening torque: 18N-m / 13.3 lbs-ft**

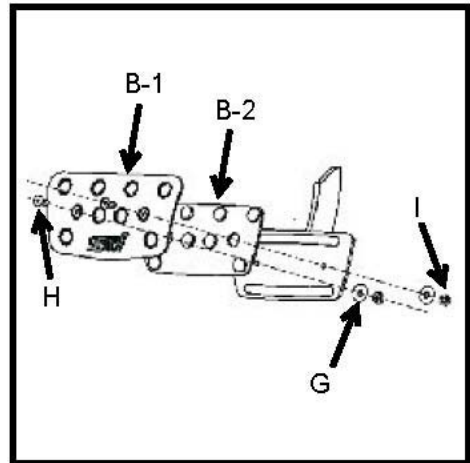
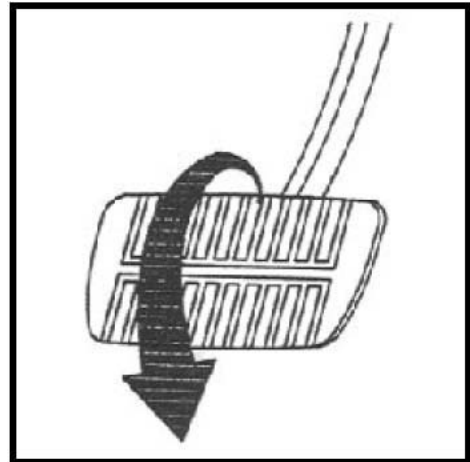


## Automatic Vehicle Brake Pedal installation

1. Remove the existing rubber brake pedal cover by prying it off with a screwdriver and hands.
2. Place Pad Brake(B-1) onto Rubber Brake(B-2).
3. Place pedal pad assembly over existing brake pedal on vehicle.
4. While holding the pedal pad assembly in place, insert the two Hexagon Socket Head Bolts(H) into the Pad B(B-1) and through the Washers(G).
5. Once through, install the two nuts(I) on the end of the Hexagon Socket Head Bolts(H).

**Note:**

**Tightening torque: 18N-m / 13.3 lbs-ft**





# SUBARU

## STI Manual and Automatic Pedal Kit

Part Number: C8110AG000 : Legacy MT (07-08MY Except Spec.B), Outback MT (07-08MY)  
Impreza MT (08MY)

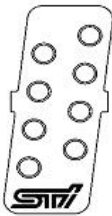
C8110AG010 : Legacy AT (07-08MY), Outback AT (07-08MY), Impreza AT (08MY)

### Caution

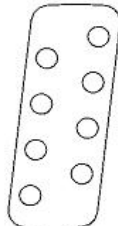
1. Be sure to tighten fasteners including bolts and nuts to the specified torque.
2. Be sure vehicle is parked in gear with the parking brake on.
3. This part uses an adhesion bond called "Thread lock".  
When you fix the nut to the bolt, it will completely harden in 30 minutes.  
It is one time use only. If you temporarily fix the bolt,  
please fully tighten it within 5 minutes.

### Kit Contents

Pad Accel(A-1)



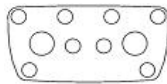
Rubber Accel(A-2)



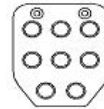
Pad Brake(B-1)



Rubber Brake(B-2)



Pad BC(C-1)



Rubber BC(C-2)



Back Plate(D-1)



Back Plate(D-2)



Socket Cap Screw(E)



Washer(G)



Nut(I)

Installation Manual(K)

Cap Nut(F)



Hexagon  
Socket Head Bolt(H)



Spacer(J)

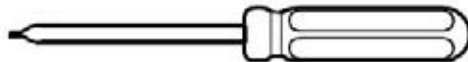


### Required Tools

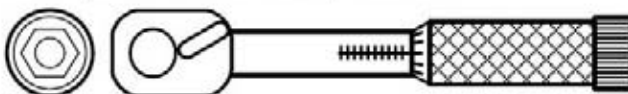
12mm Socket Wrench



+/- Screw Driver



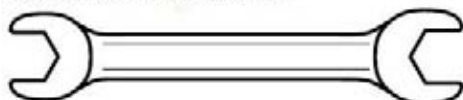
5.5mm, 7mm and 12mm Torque Wrench



2.5mm Hexagon Socket Wrench



5.5mm and 7mm Wrench





## Manual and Automatic Accelerator Pedal Installation

1. Take off the Connector and remove the bolts.
2. Place Pad Accel(A-1) onto Rubber Accel(A-2).
3. Clean the existing accelerator pedal before installing pedal pad assembly.
4. Insert Socket Cap Screw(E) from vehicle outside, using Spacer(J).  
Temporarily fix by Cap Nut(F).

**Note:**  
Please be sure to insert screw(E) from the outside.

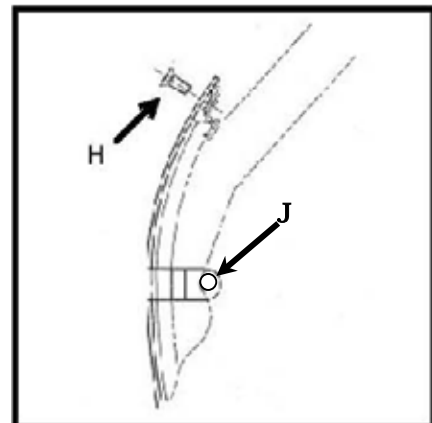
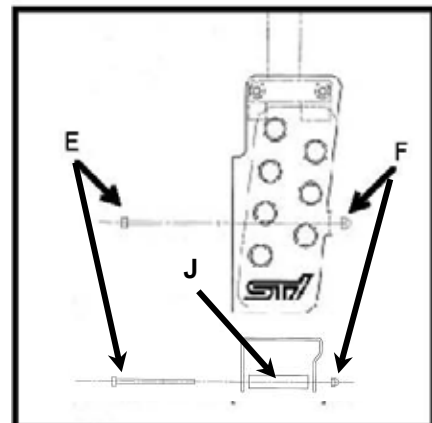
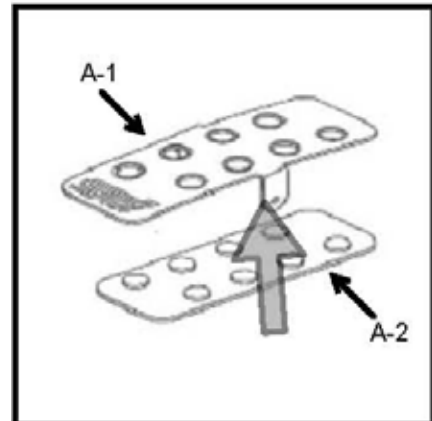
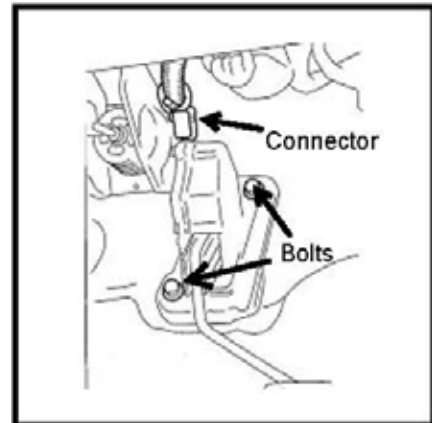
**Note:**  
Spacer(J) is very tight.

5. Center pedal pad assembly on accelerator pedal.
6. Secure pedal pad assembly to the accelerator pedal by tightening the Hexagon Socket Head Bolts(H) in the Back Plate(D-1).
7. Fully tighten Socket Cap Screw(E) and Cap Nut(F).

**Note:**  
Tightening torque: 18N-m / 13.3 lbs-ft

8. Fix the Accelerator Pedal with the OE bolts and connect the connector.

**Note:**  
Please reference tightening torque of OE bolts from service manual.



## Manual Vehicle Brake and Clutch Pedal installation

1. Remove the existing rubber brake pedal cover by prying it off with a screwdriver and hands.
2. Place Pad BC(C-1) onto Rubber BC(C-2).
3. Place pedal pad assembly over existing brake and clutch pedal on vehicle.

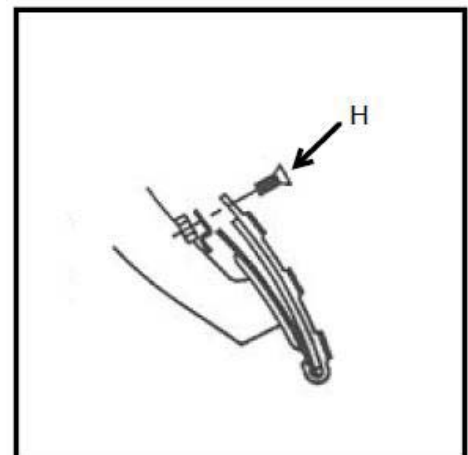
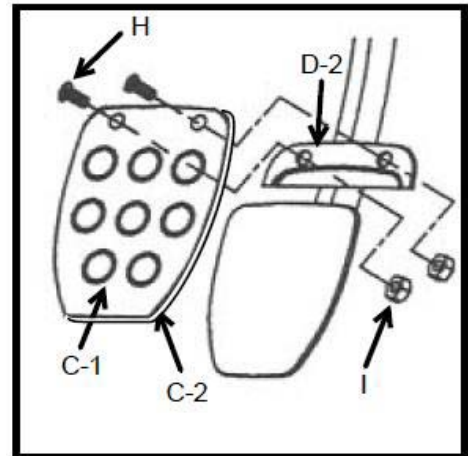
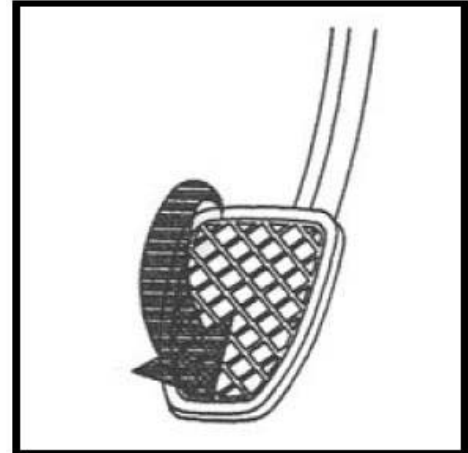
**Note:**

**Do so by first engaging metal wrap-around on lower part of brake and clutch pedal and then by pressing the pedal pad assembly down onto the existing metal brake or clutch pedal.**

4. While holding the pedal pad assembly in place, insert the two Hexagon Socket Head Bolts(H) into the metal and through the Back plate(D-2) holes.
5. Once through, install the two nuts(I) on the end of the Hexagon Socket Head Bolts(H).

**Note:**

**Tightening torque: 18N-m / 13.3 lbs-ft**

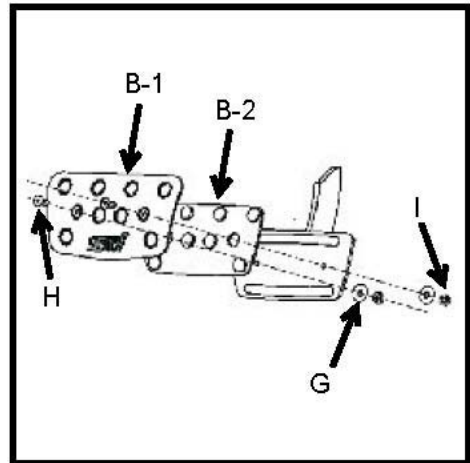
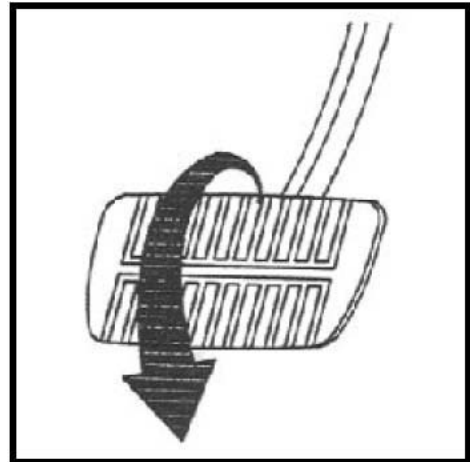


## Automatic Vehicle Brake Pedal installation

1. Remove the existing rubber brake pedal cover by prying it off with a screwdriver and hands.
2. Place Pad Brake(B-1) onto Rubber Brake(B-2).
3. Place pedal pad assembly over existing brake pedal on vehicle.
4. While holding the pedal pad assembly in place, insert the two Hexagon Socket Head Bolts(H) into the Pad B(B-1) and through the Washers(G).
5. Once through, install the two nuts(I) on the end of the Hexagon Socket Head Bolts(H).

**Note:**

**Tightening torque: 18N-m / 13.3 lbs-ft**





# SUBARU

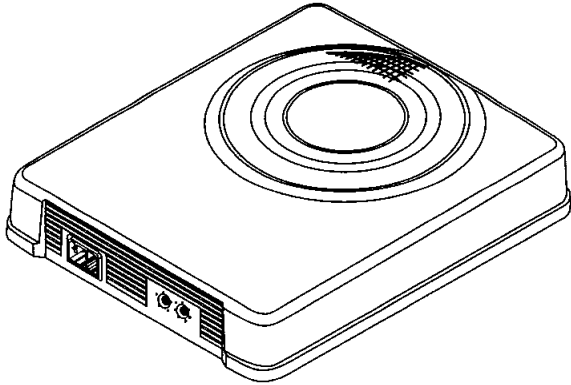
# FORESTER

## INSTALLATION INSTRUCTIONS

PART NUMBER: H630SSA300 (For 1DIN Audio) ~06MY  
H630SSA400 (For 2DIN Audio) 07MY~

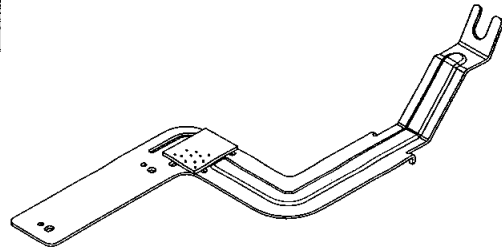
DESCRIPTION: SUB WOOFER

### A KIT CONTENTS:



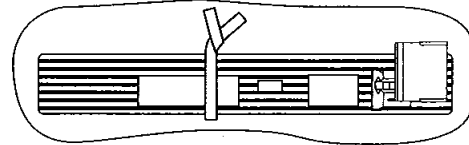
1X

### B



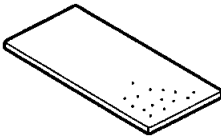
1X

### C



1X

### D



1X

### E



2X

### F



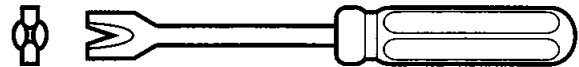
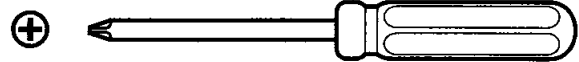
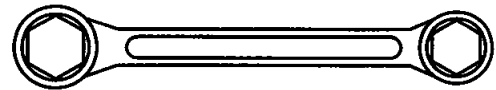
2X

### TOOLS REQUIRED:

10mm & 14mm



14mm



### Meaning of Characters:



: Remove



: Install



: Disconnect



: Connect



: Location of Clip or Screw

T

: Tightening Torque



: Loosen



: Discard



: Reuse

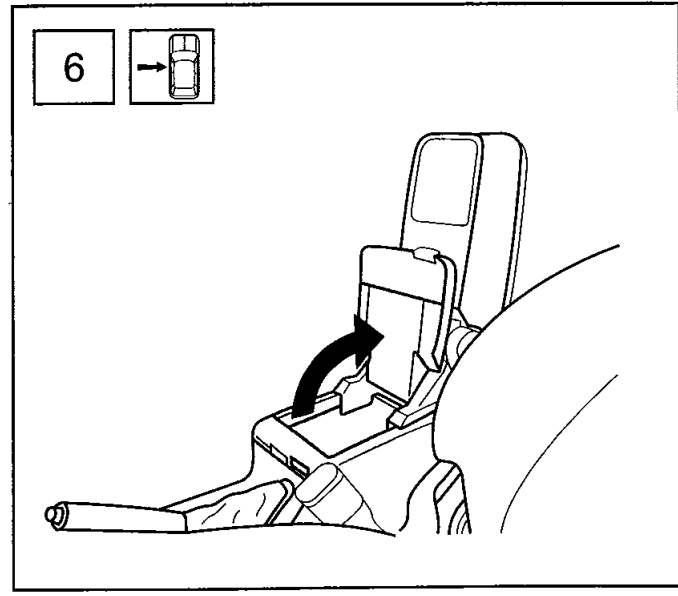
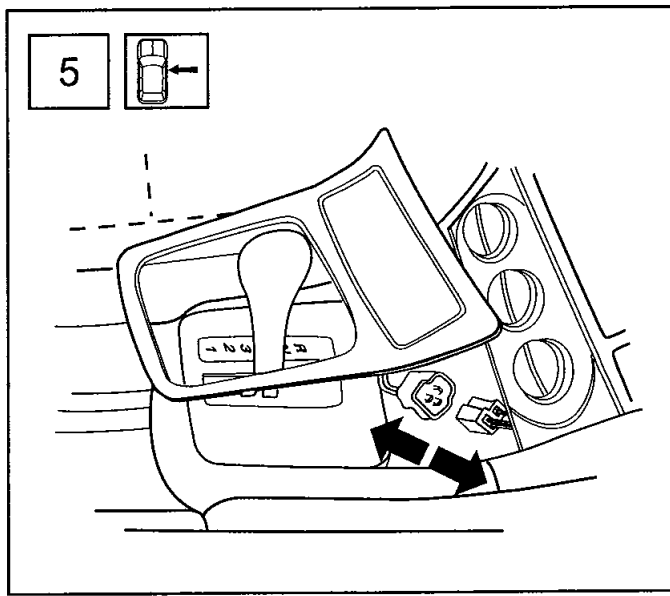
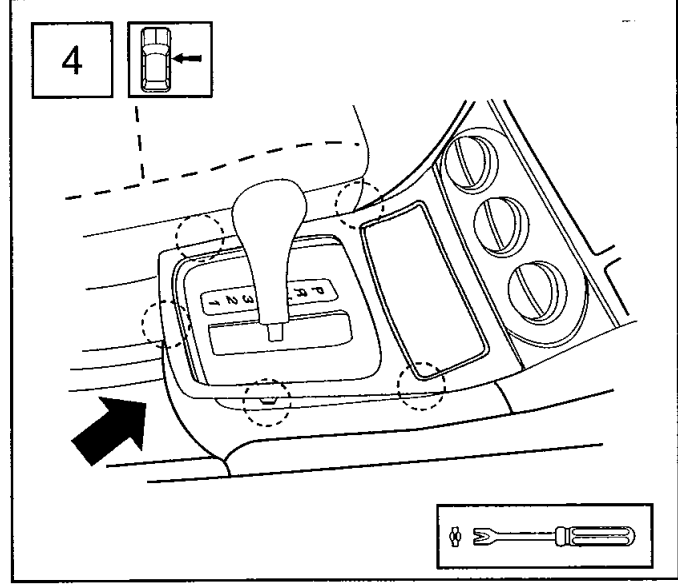
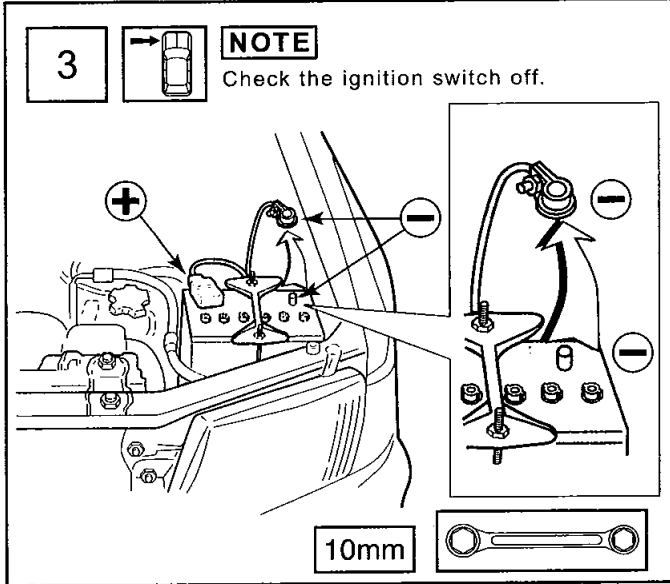
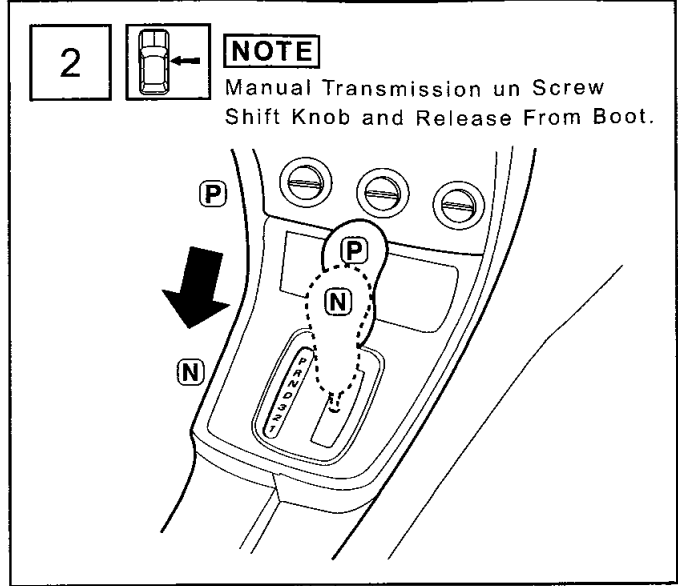
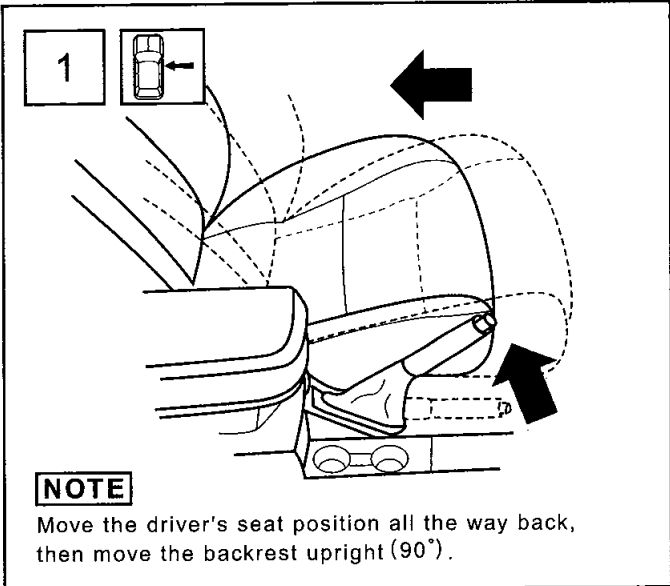
PART NUMBER  
H630SSA300  
H630SSA400

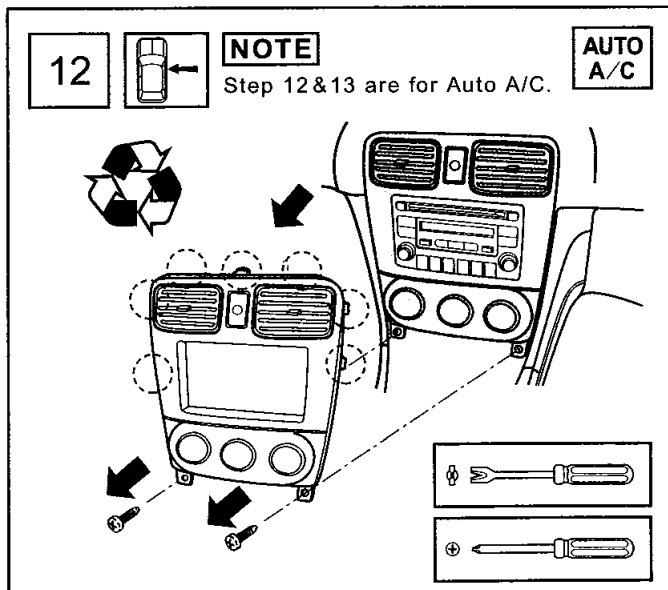
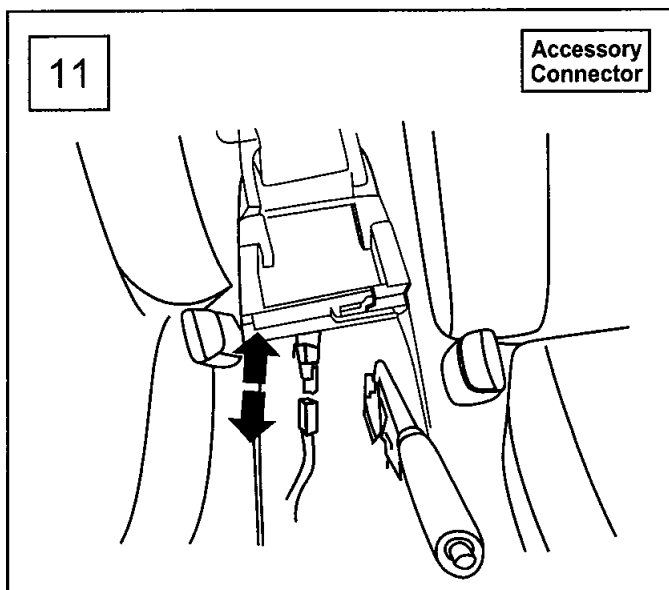
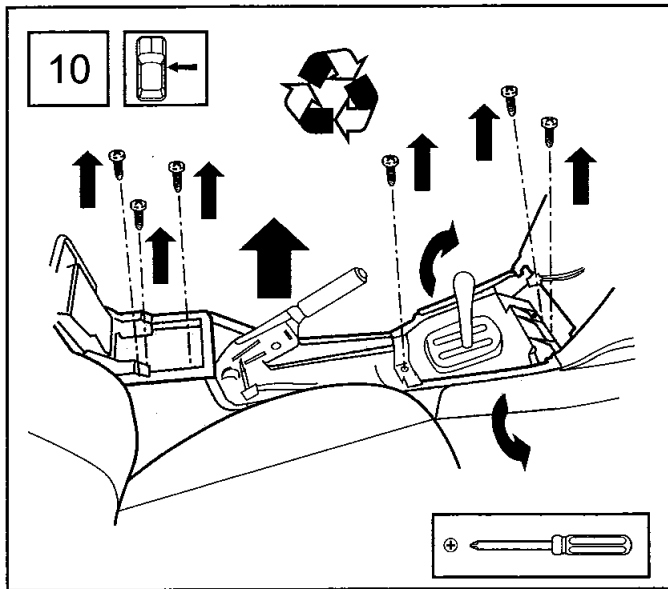
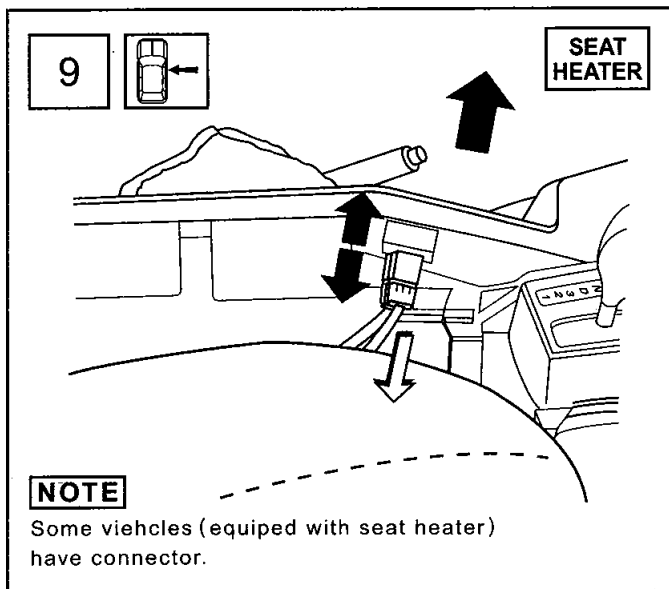
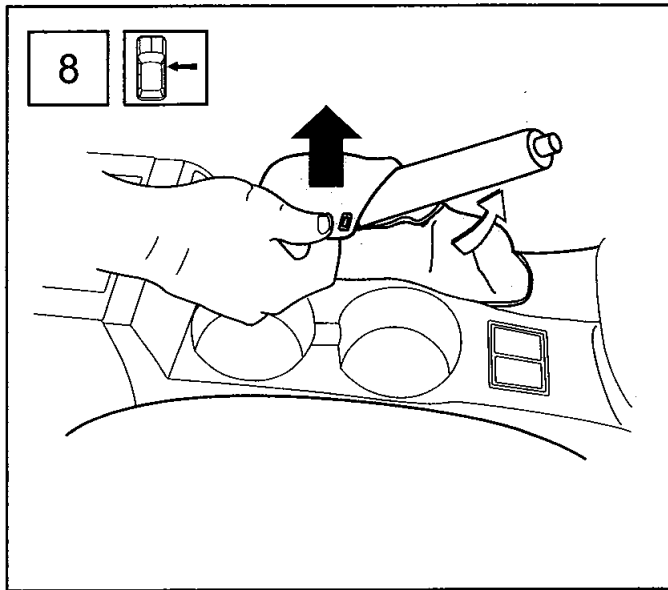
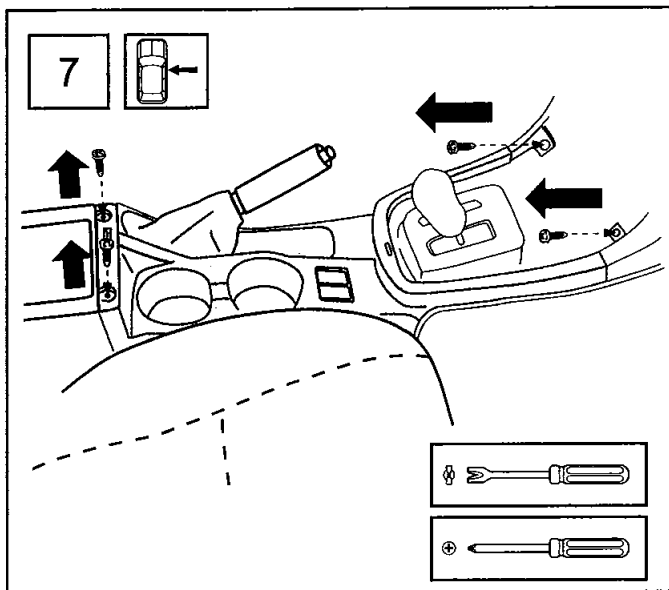
ISSUE  
00

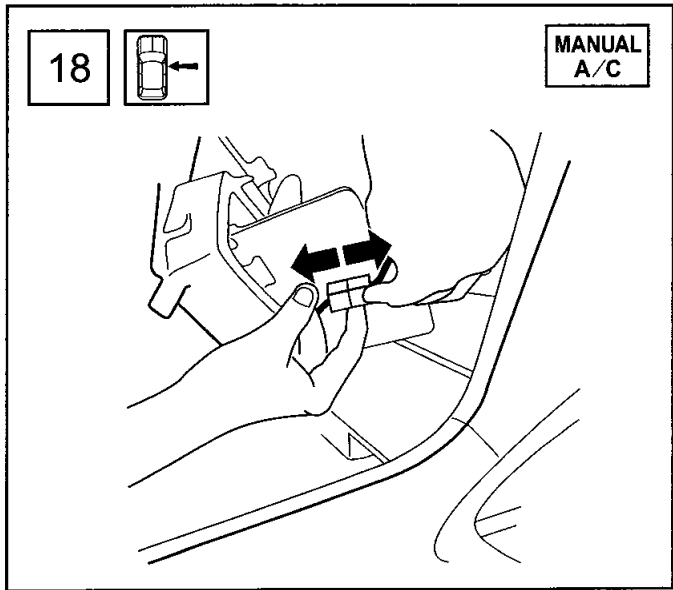
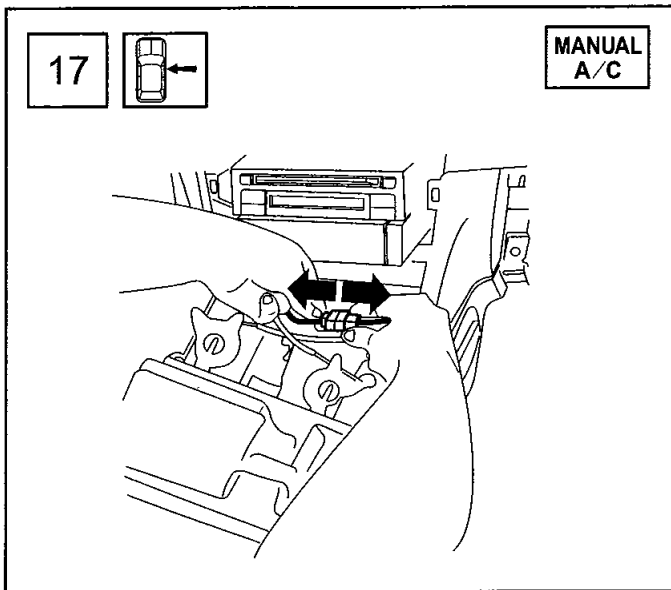
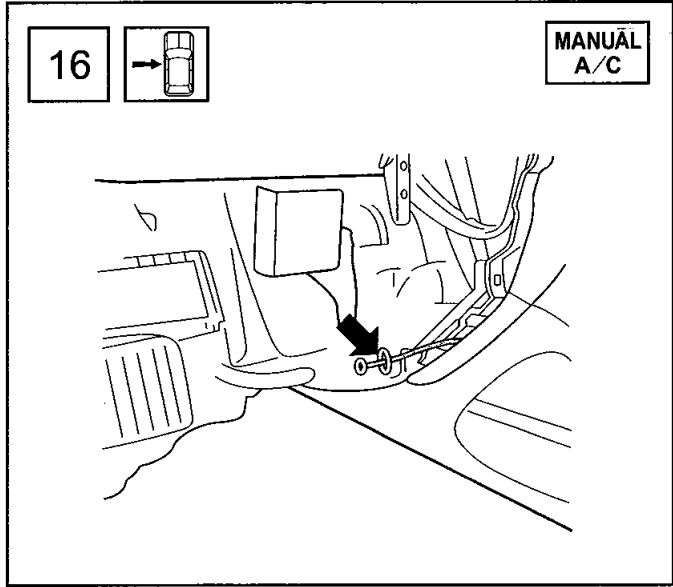
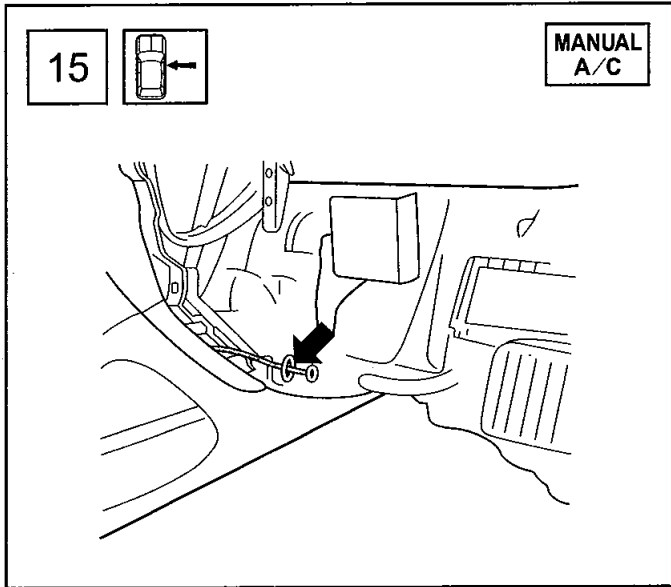
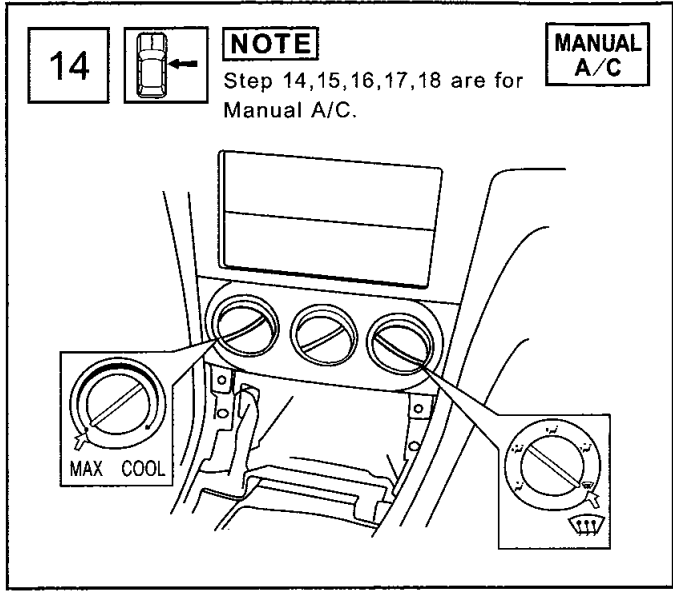
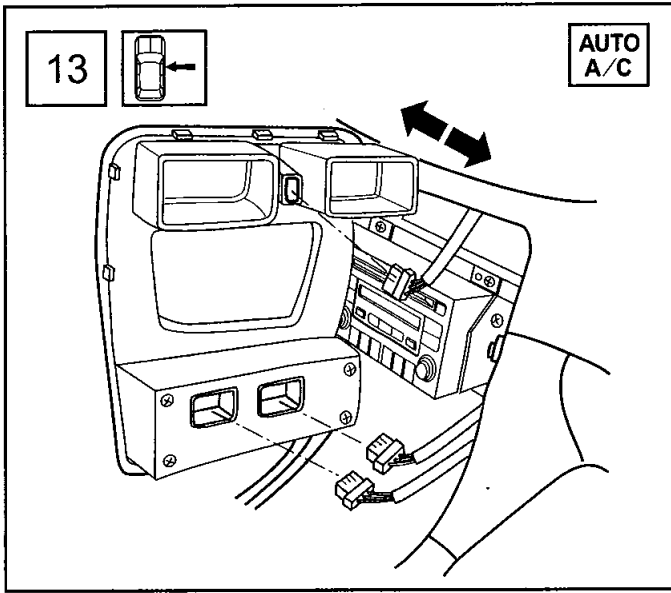
DATE  
06/01/23

## SUBARU OF AMERICA


PAGE  
1/10



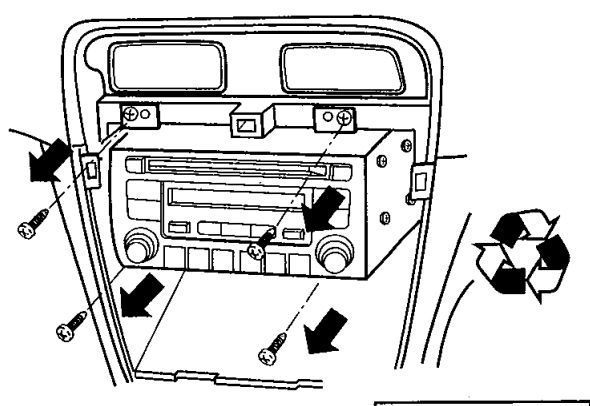




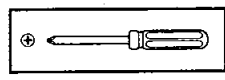



19 

2DIN

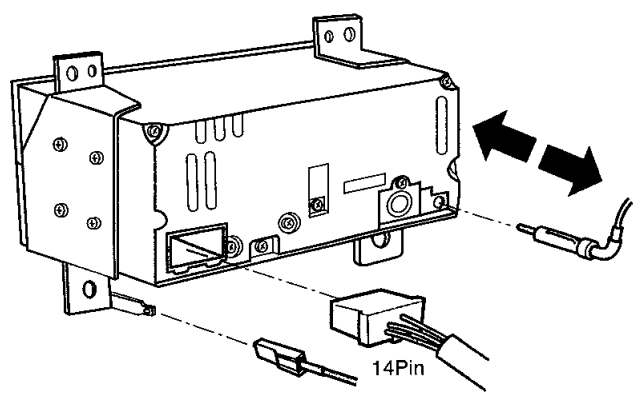



Step 19 and 20 are for 2DIN AUDIO.



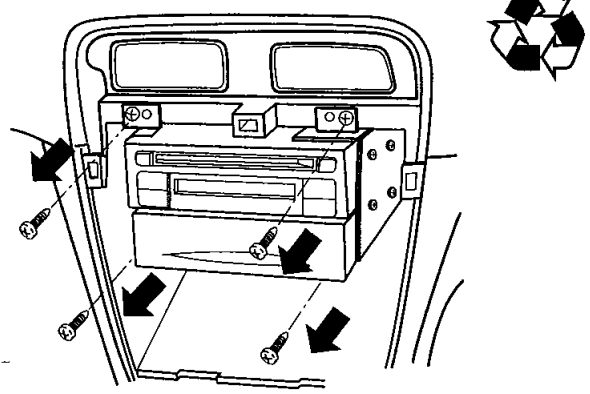
20 

2DIN



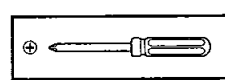
21 


1DIN



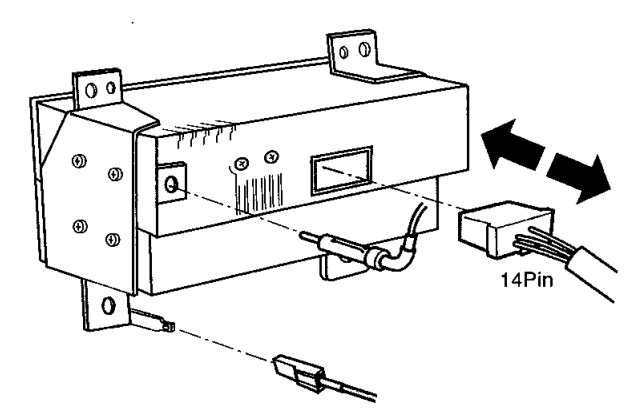
**NOTE**


Step 21 and 22 are for 1DIN

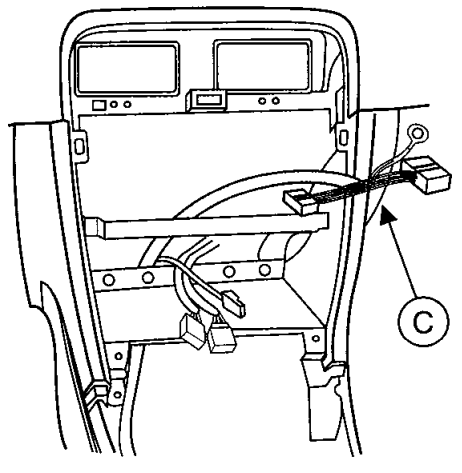


22 

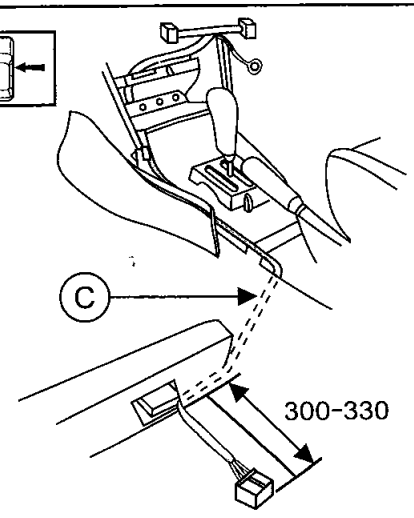
1DIN



23 



24 



Route subwoofer harness under floor carpet starting at the center console and out the floor vent hole.

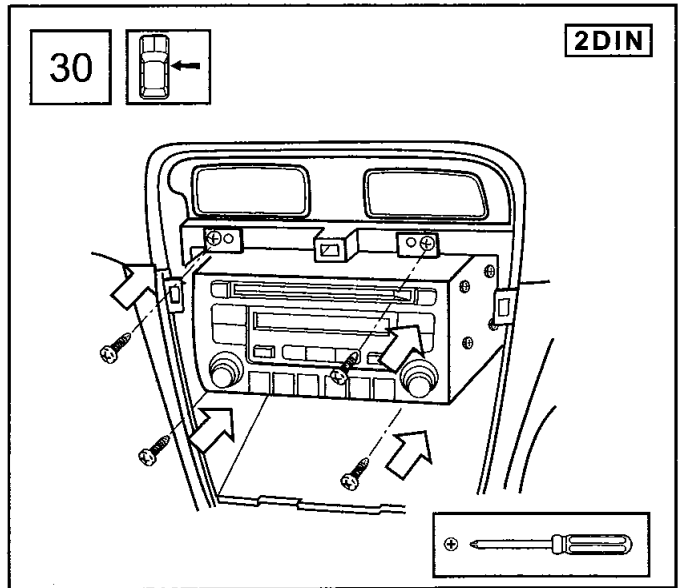
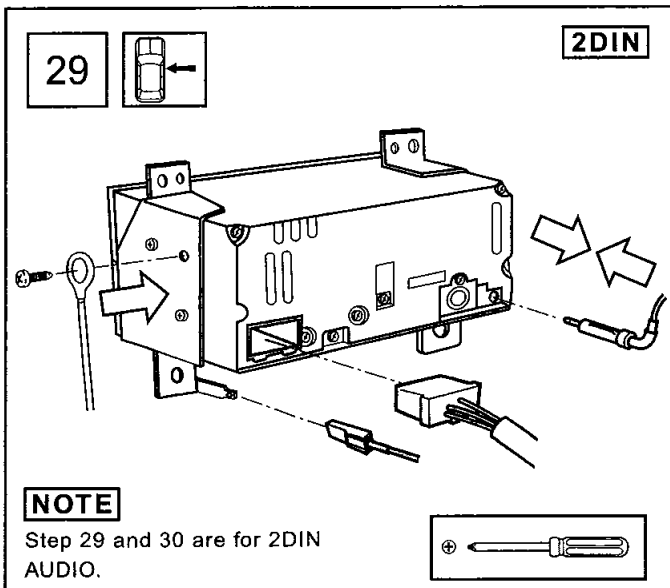
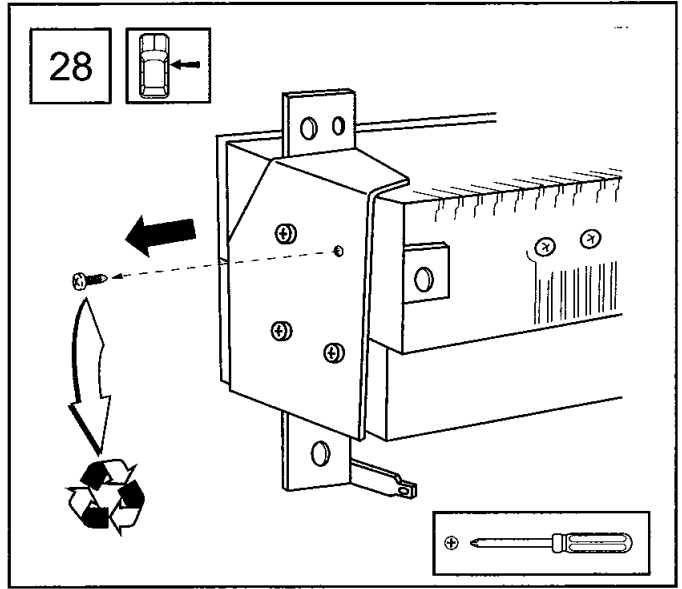
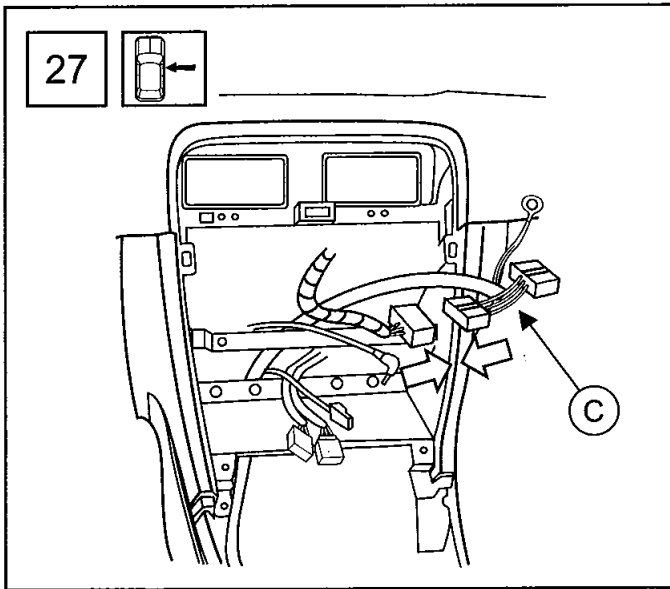
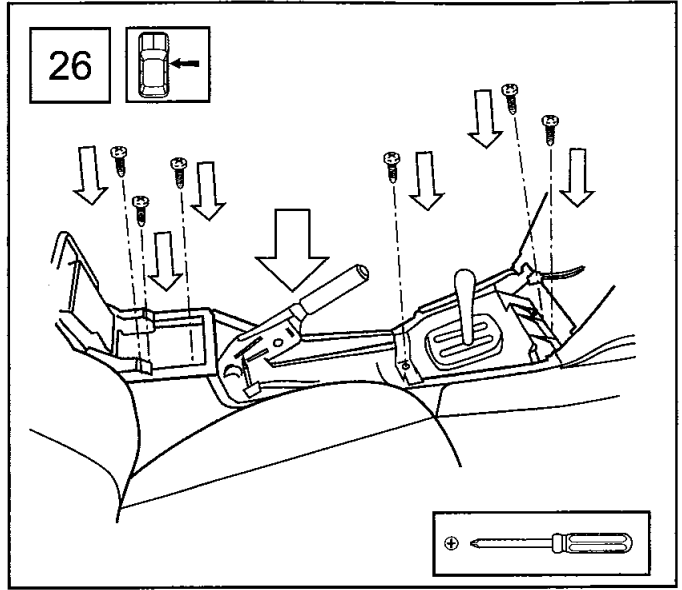
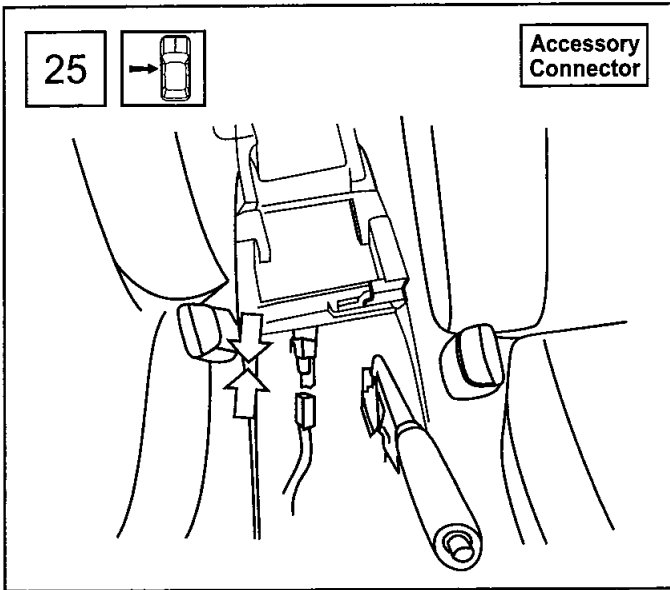
PART NUMBER  
H630SSA300  
H630SSA400


ISSUE  
00

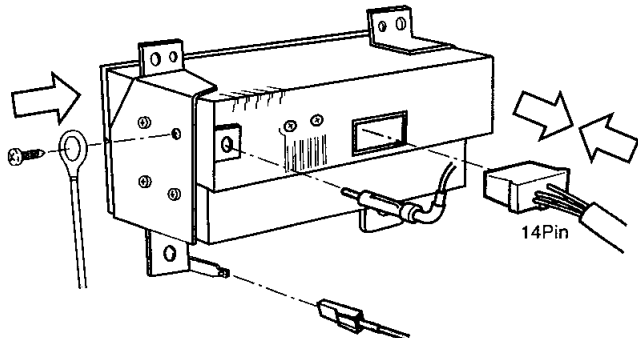
DATE  
06/01/23

SUBARU OF AMERICA


PAGE  
5/10

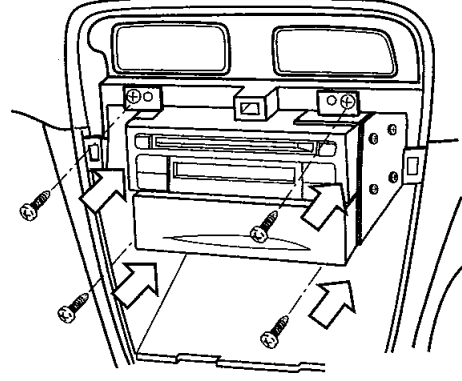



**31**  **1DIN**

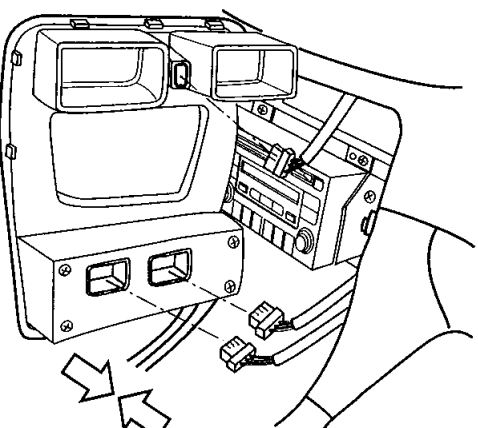



**NOTE**  
Step 31 and 32 are for 1DIN AUDIO.

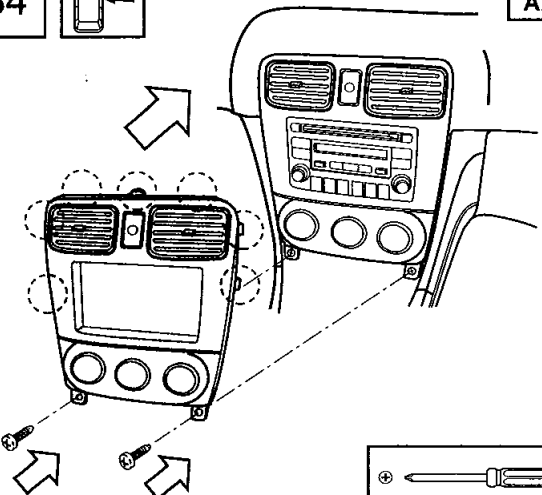
**32**  **1DIN**




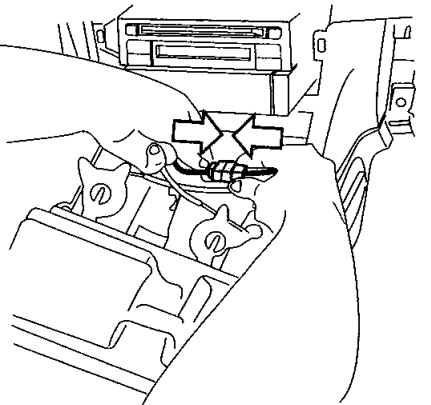
**33**  **NOTE** **AUTO A/C**  
Step 33 and 34 are for Auto A/C.





**34**  **AUTO A/C**

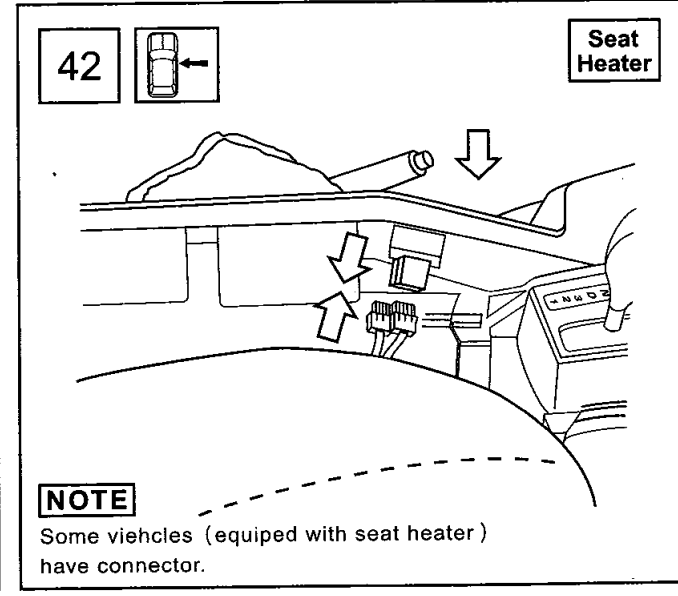
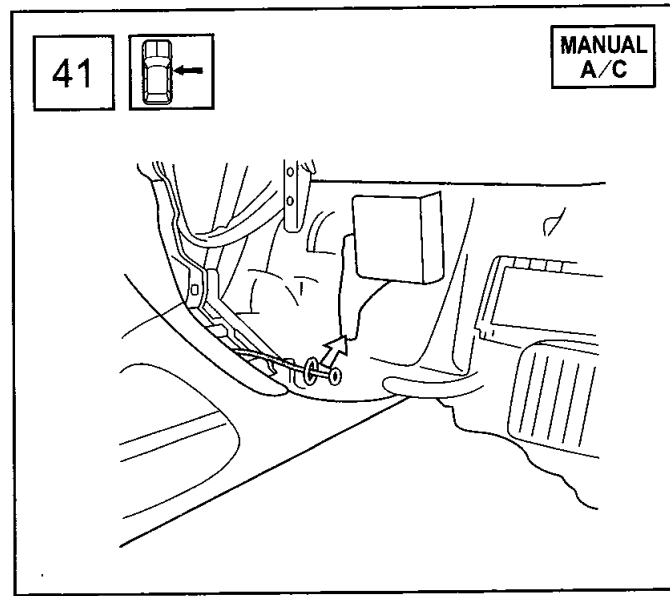
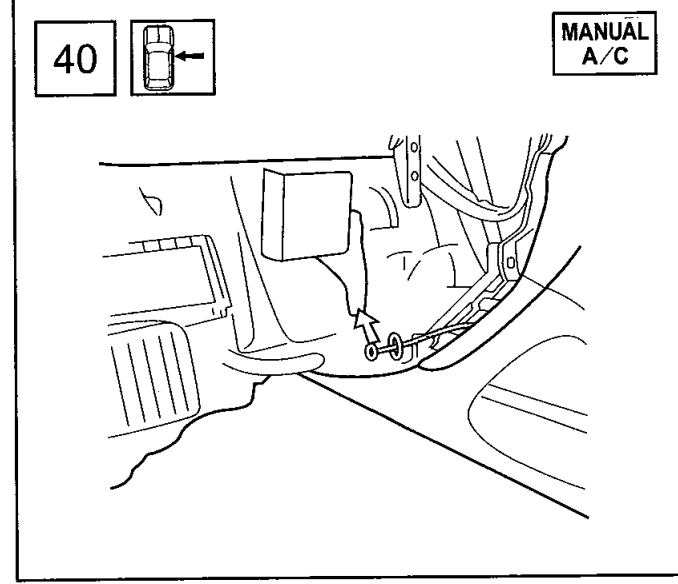
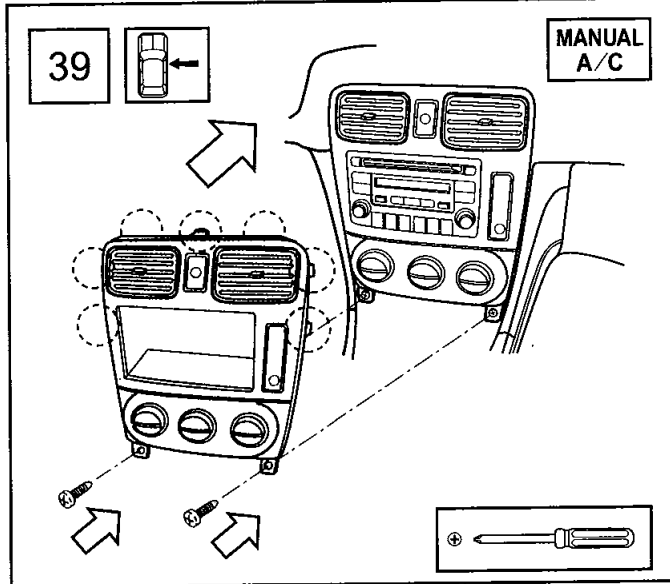
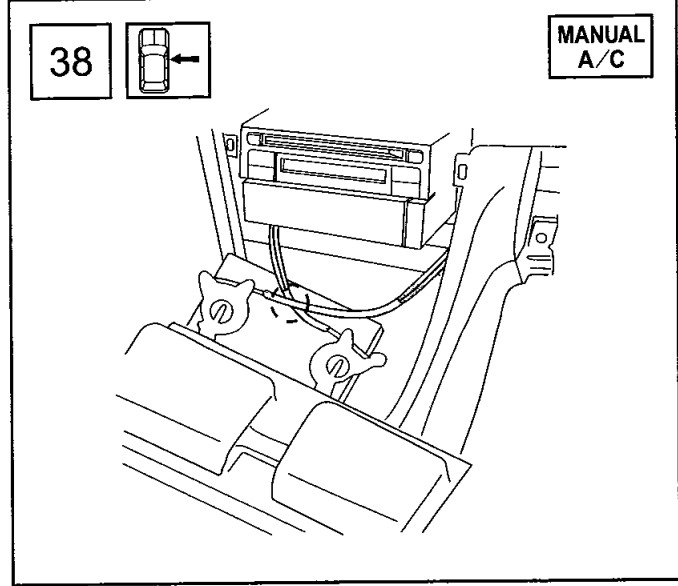
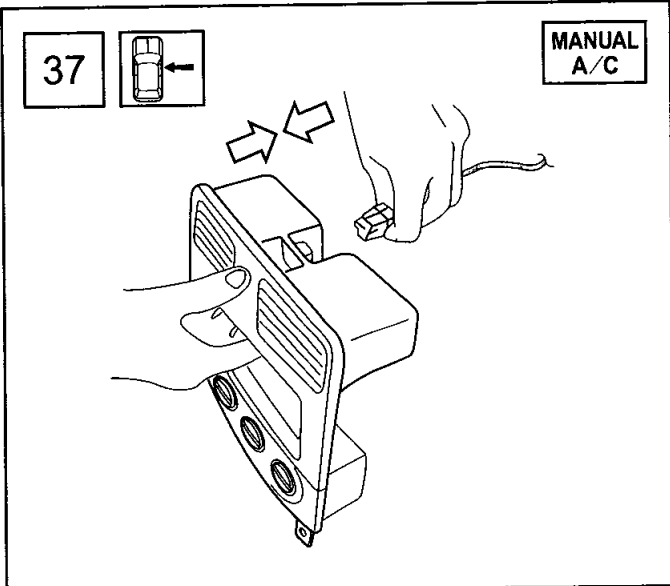


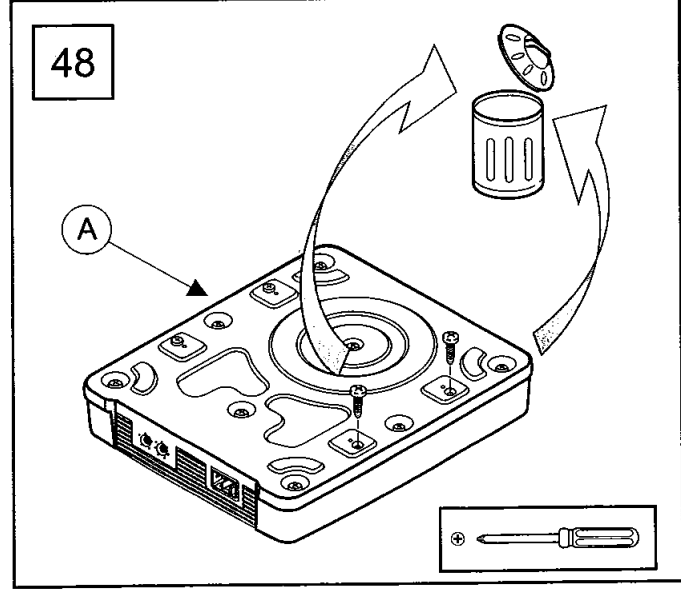
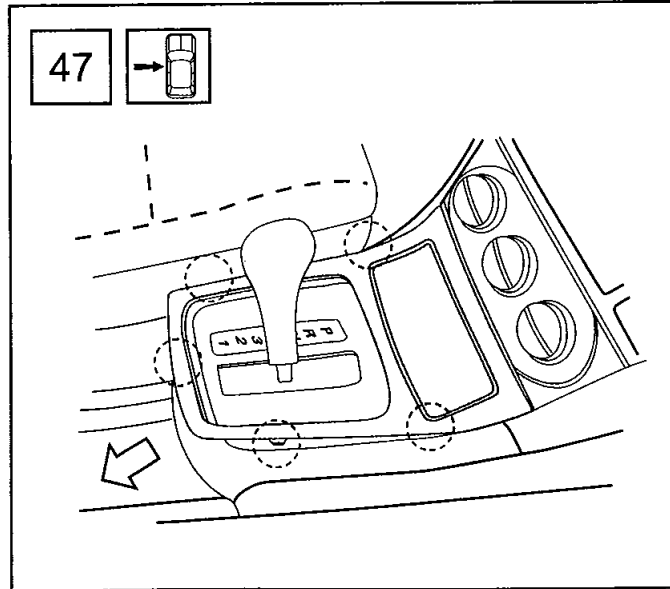
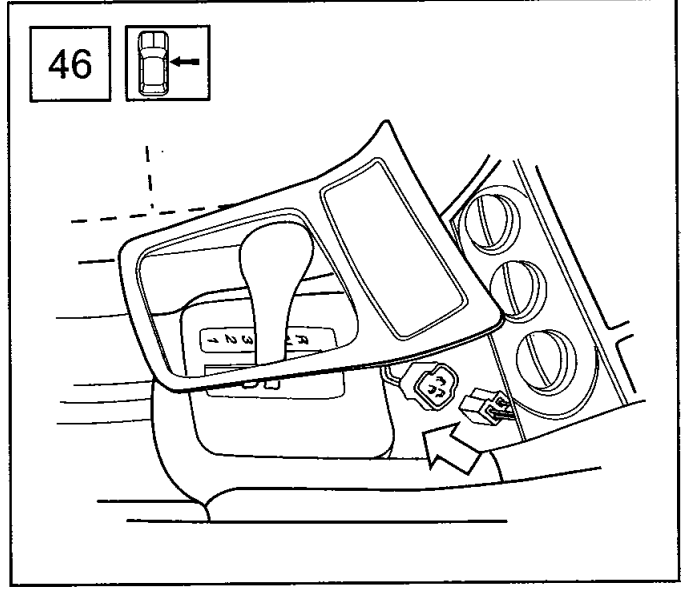
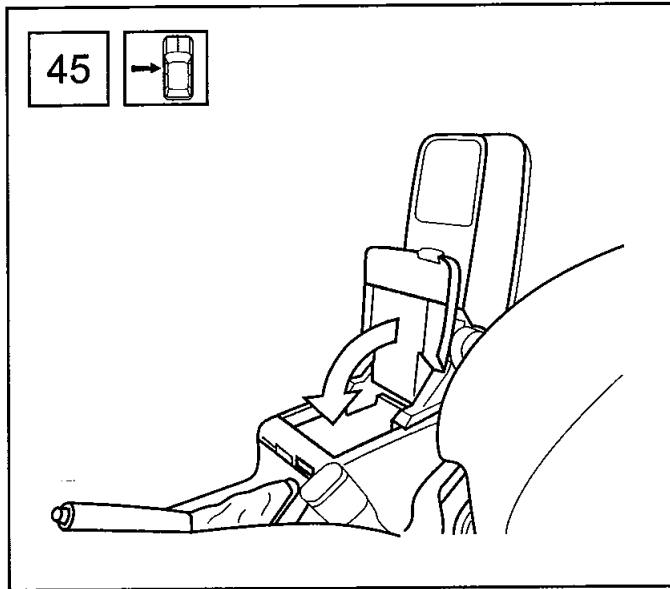
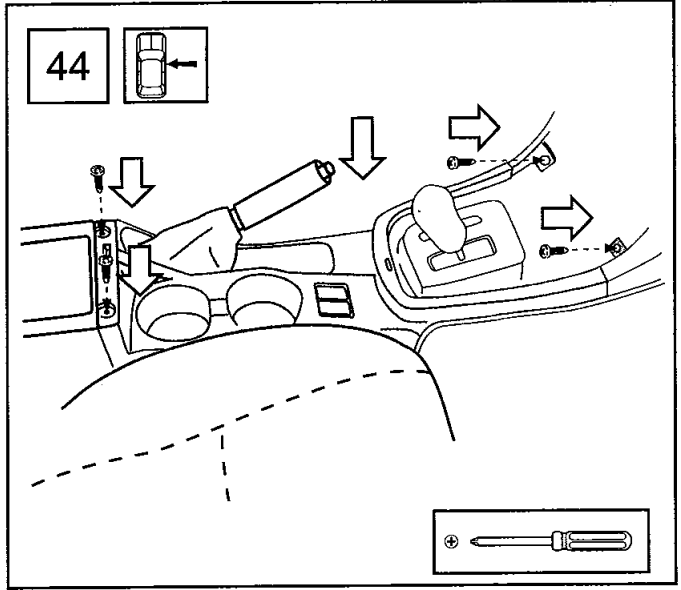
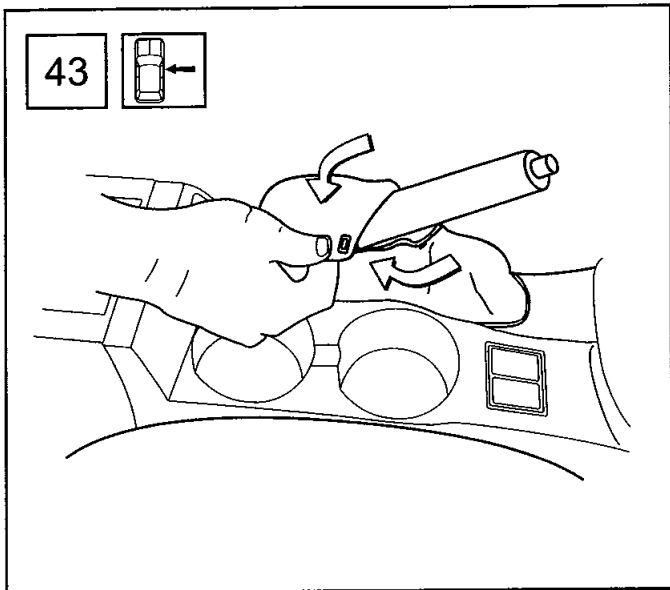
**35**  **NOTE** **MANUAL A/C**  
Step 35, 36, 37, 38, 39, 40 & 41 are for Manual A/C.

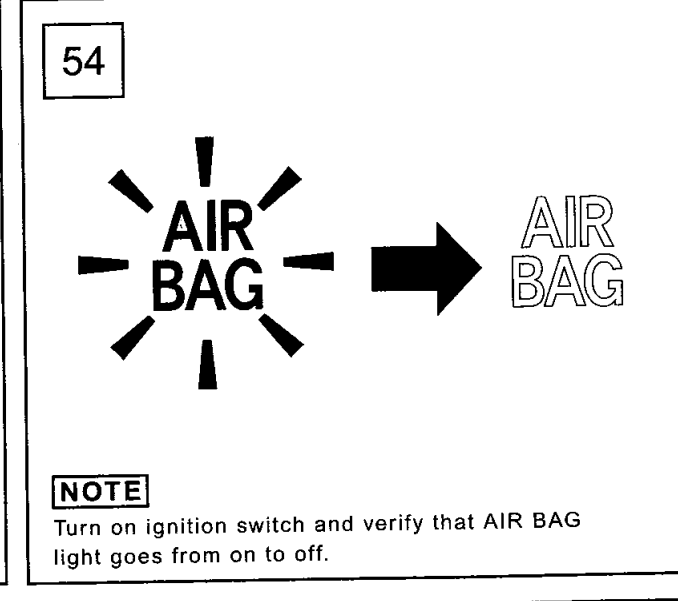
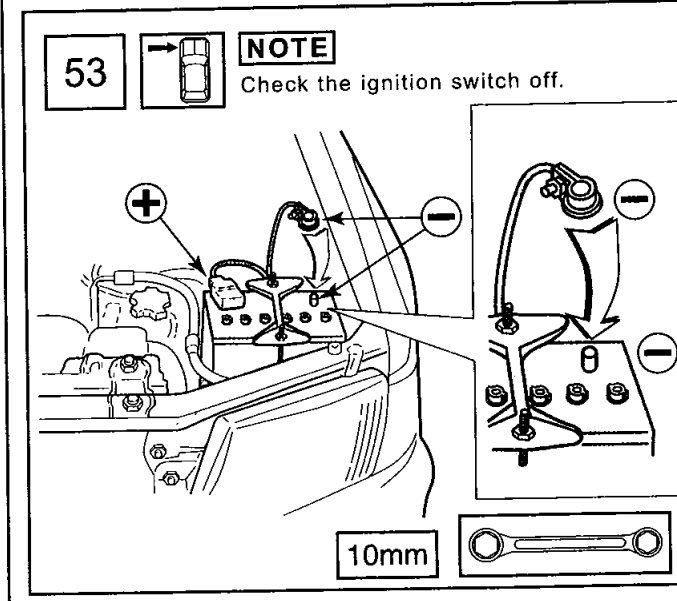
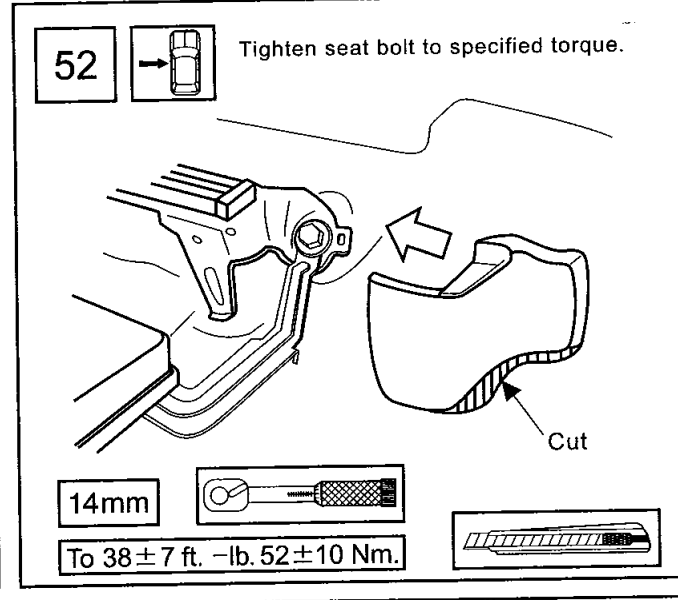
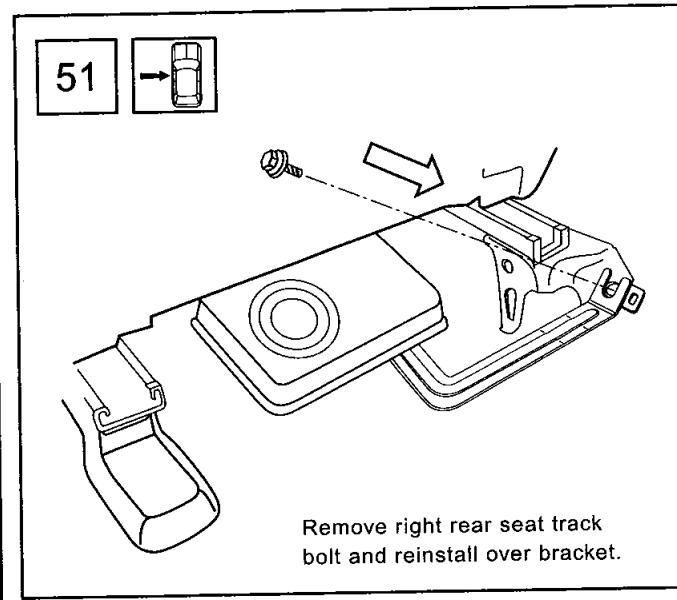
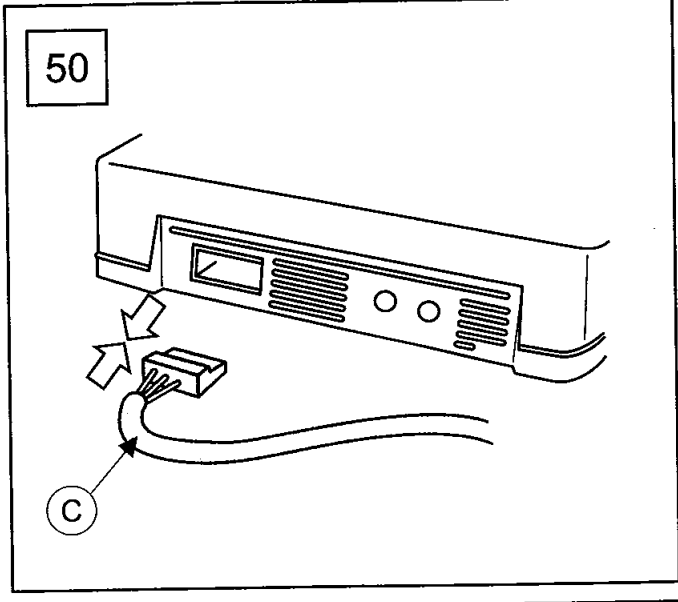
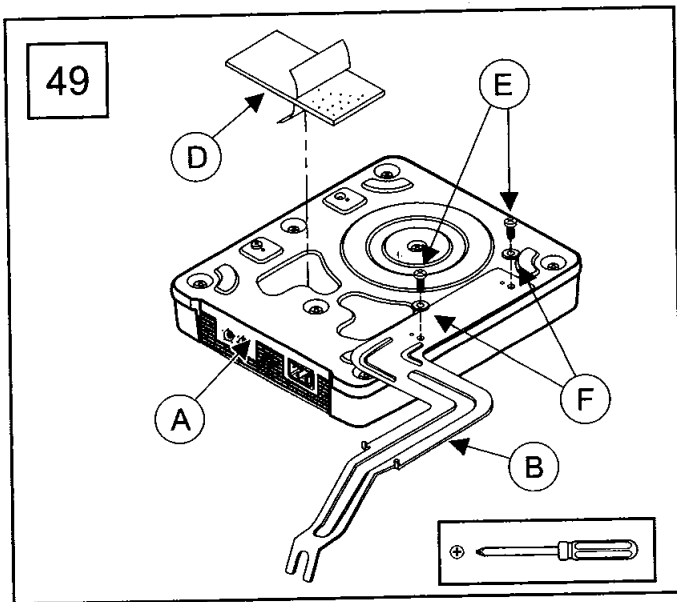


**36**  **MANUAL A/C**











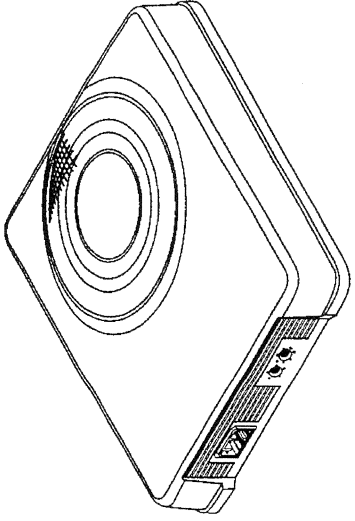
**SUBARU**

**INSTALLATION  
INSTRUCTIONS**

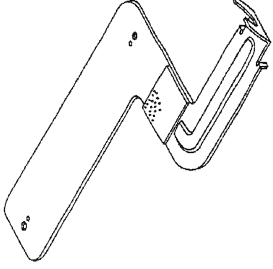
**PART NUMBER : H630SFG000**

**DESCRIPTION : SUB WOOFER**

**A KIT CONTENTS:**

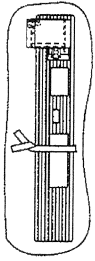


**B**



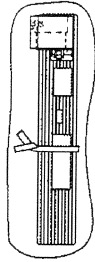
1X

**C**



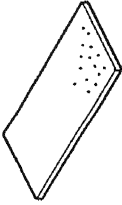
1X

**D**



1X

**E**



1X

**F**



2X

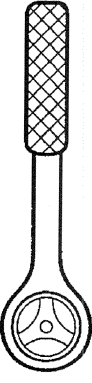
**G**



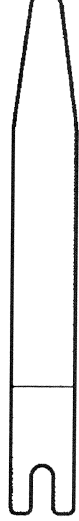
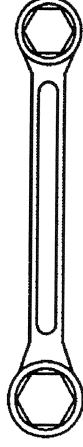
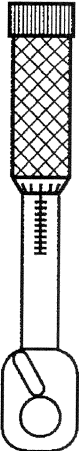
2X

**TOOLS REQUIRED:**

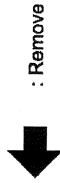
10mm & 14mm



14mm



**Meaning of Characters:**



: Remove



: Install



: Disconnect



: Connect



: Location of Clip or Screw

T

: Tightening Torque



: Loosen

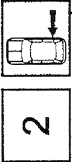
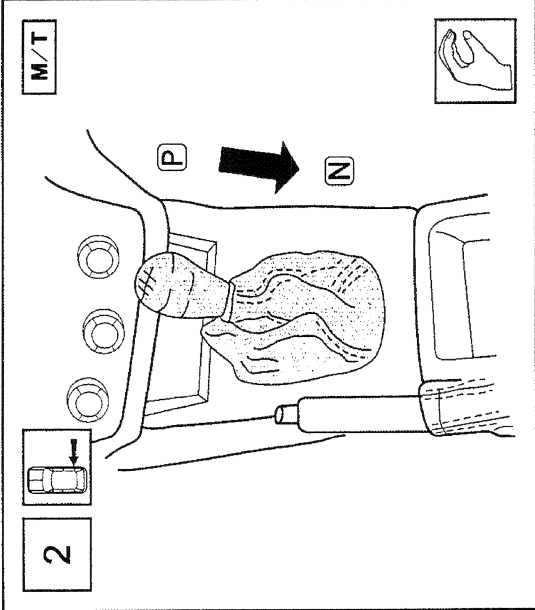
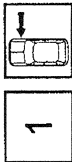
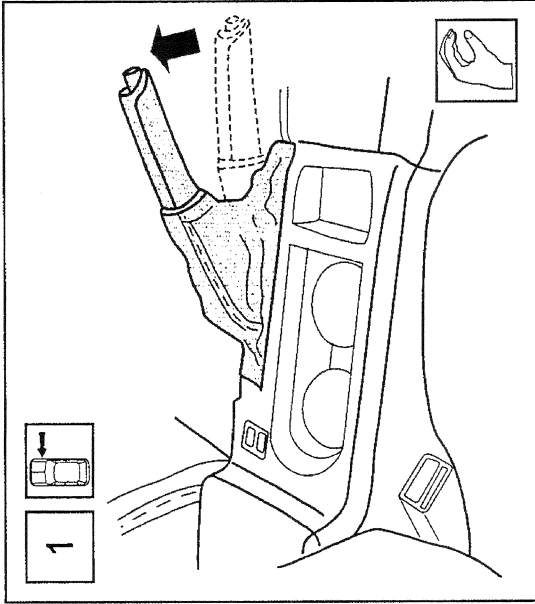


: Discard

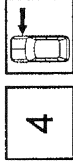
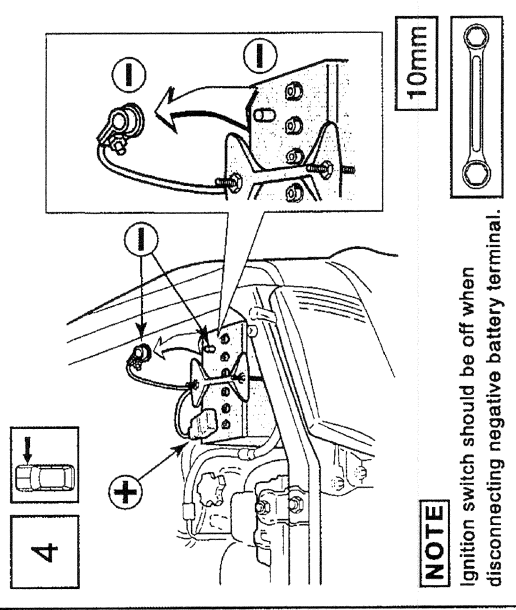
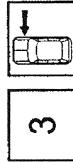
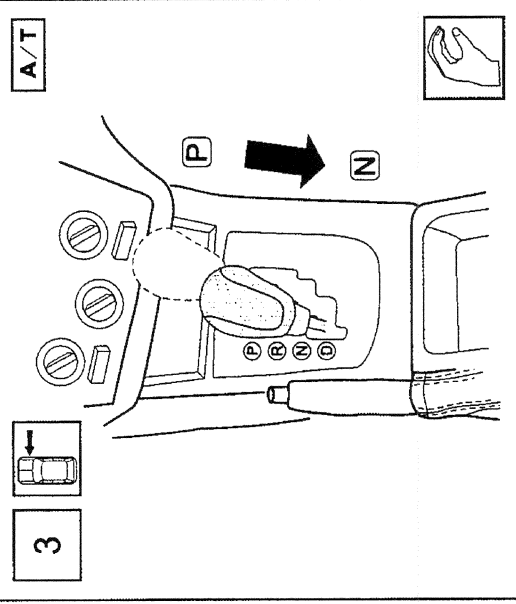


: Reuse





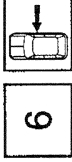
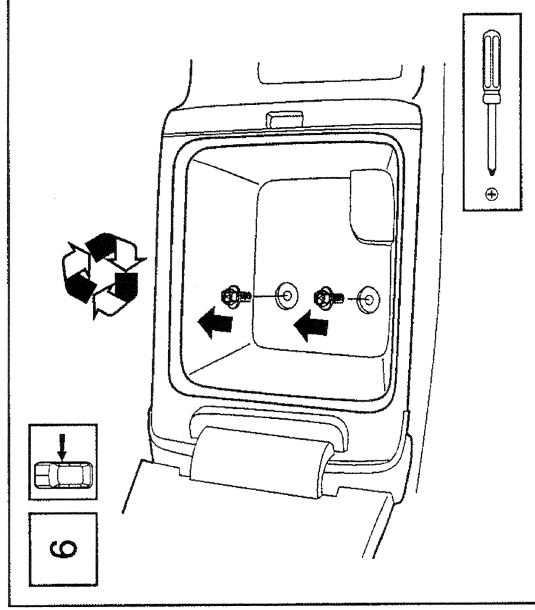
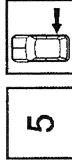
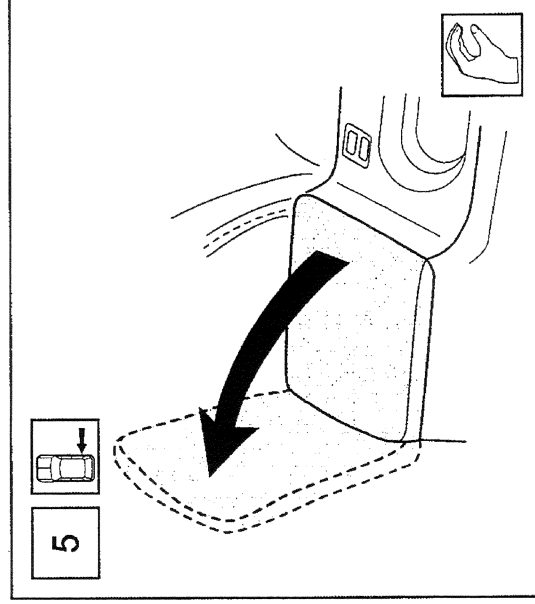
M/T



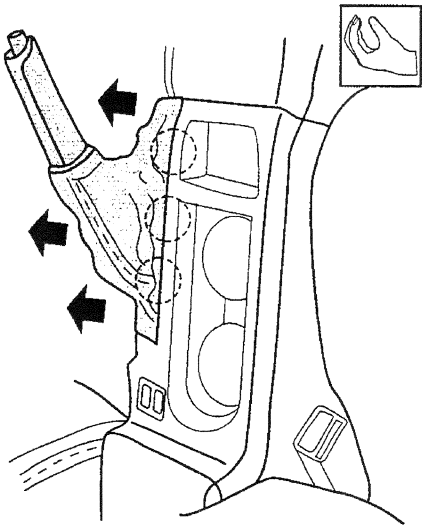
10mm

**NOTE**

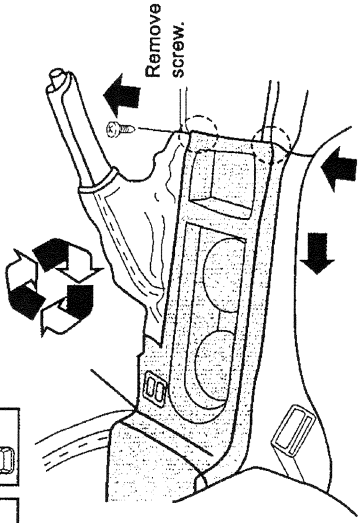
Ignition switch should be off when disconnecting negative battery terminal.



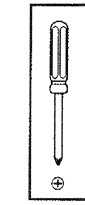
7



8



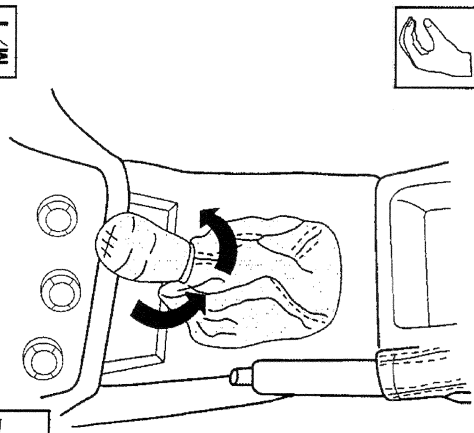
Remove screw.



9



M/T



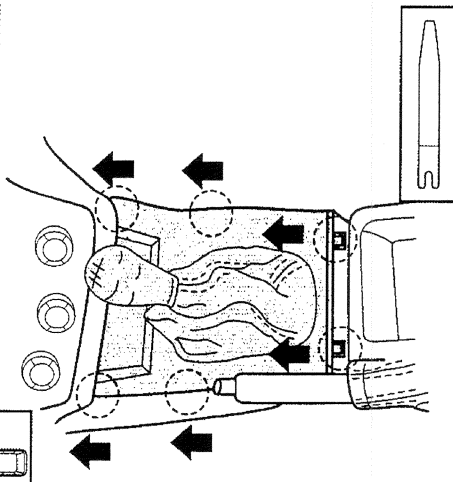
Unscrew shift knob.



10



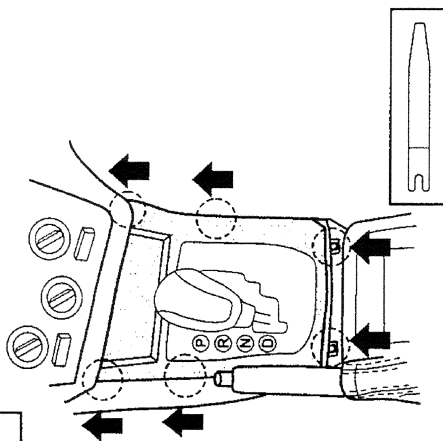
M/T



11



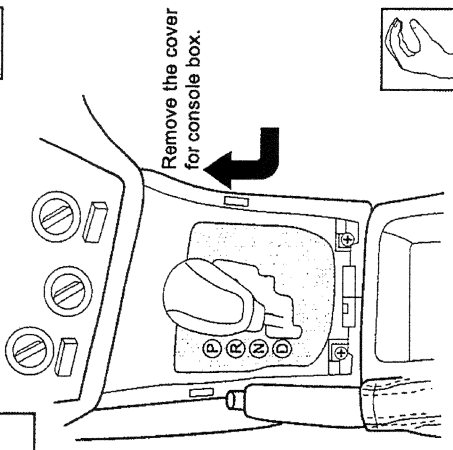
A/T



12



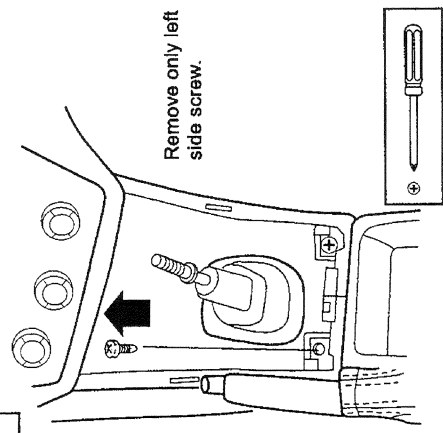
A/T



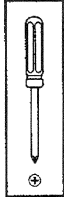
13



M/T



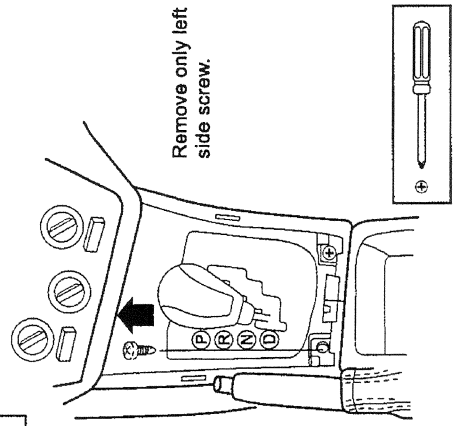
Remove only left side screw.



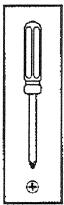
14



A/T



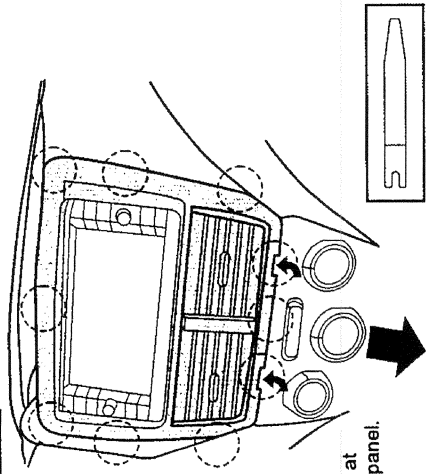
Remove only left side screw.



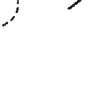
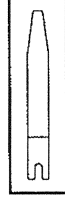
15



M/T



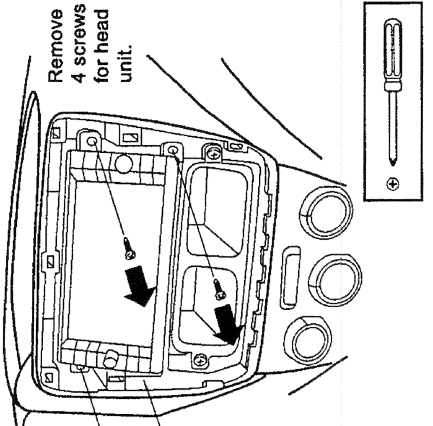
Gently pry at lower trim panel.



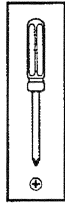
16



M/T



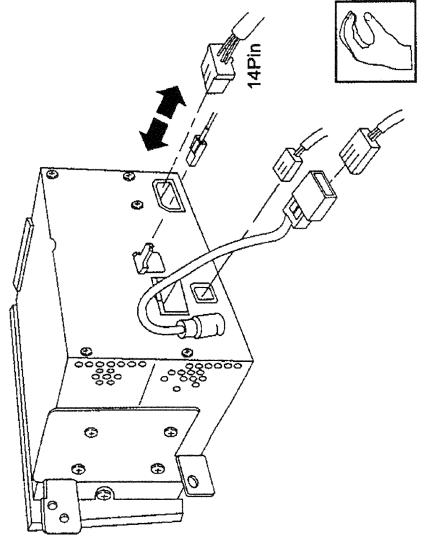
Remove 4 screws for head unit.



17



Navi



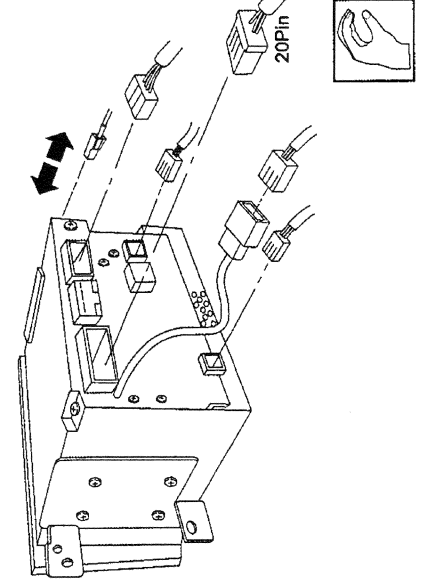
14Pin



18



Audio



20Pin

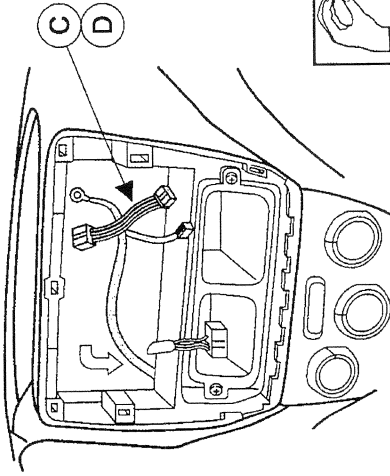


19

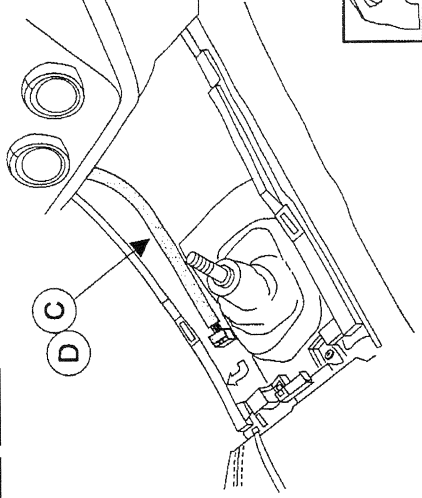


**NOTE**

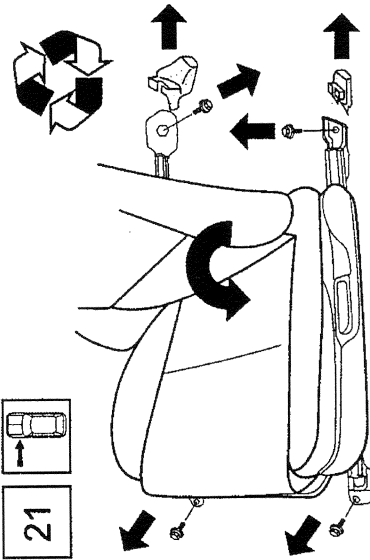
Use harness C for navi,  
harness D for audio.



20

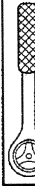


21



Remove 4 seat bolts as shown and lean seat back to gain  
access to floor carpet.

14mm

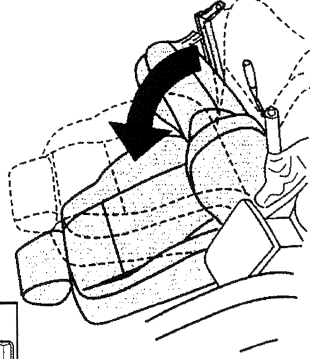


**NOTE**

Put a board or a mat, etc. under the back leg of seat  
to protect carpet.

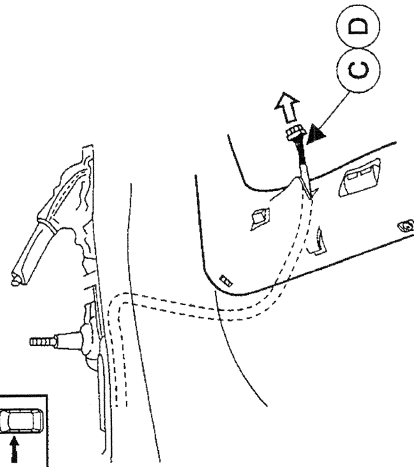


22



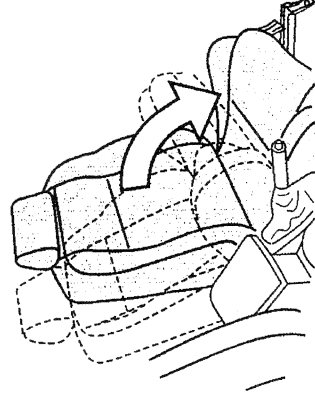
Lean seat back to gain access to floor carpet.

23

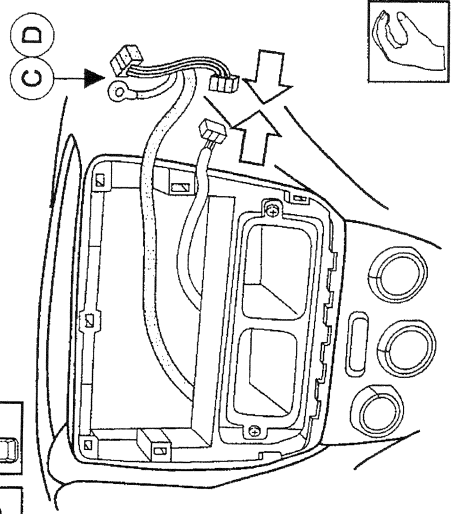


Route subwoofer harness under floor carpet starting  
at the center console and out the floor vent hole.

24



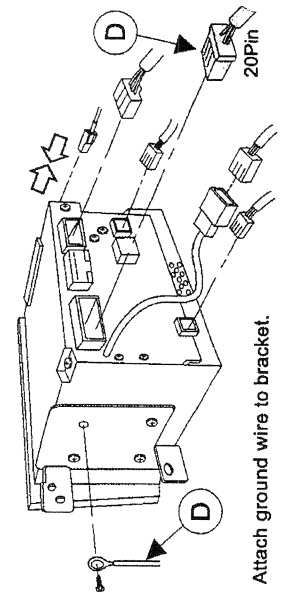
25



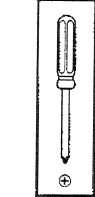
26



Audio



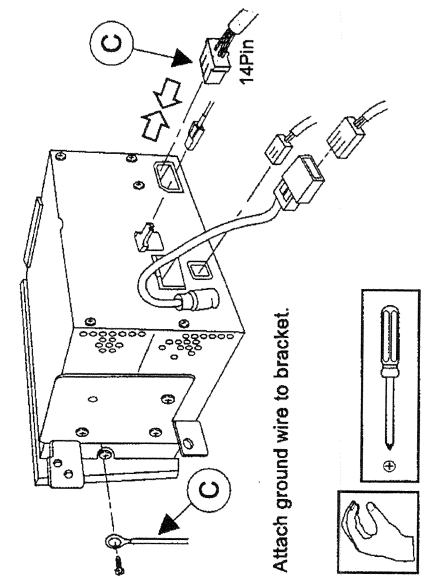
Attach ground wire to bracket.



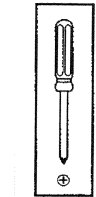
27



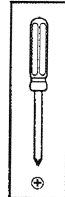
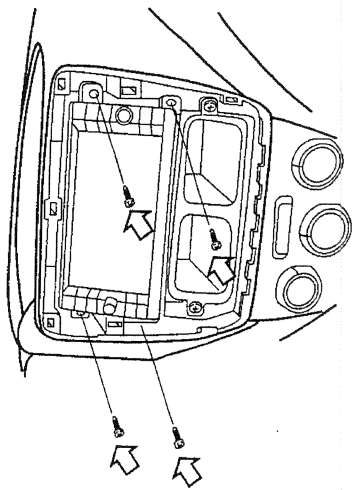
Navi



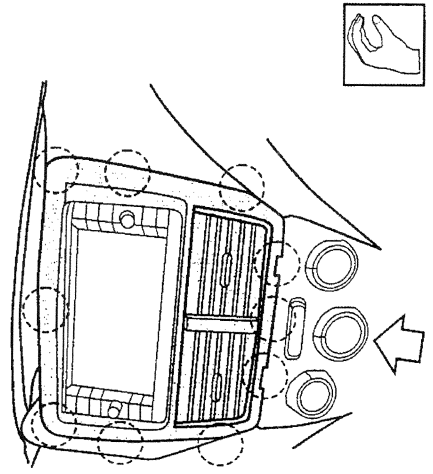
Attach ground wire to bracket.



28



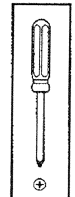
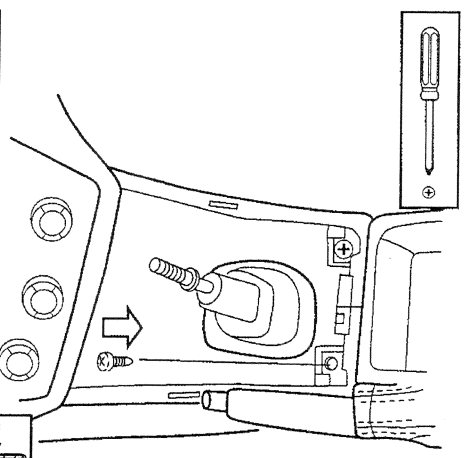
29

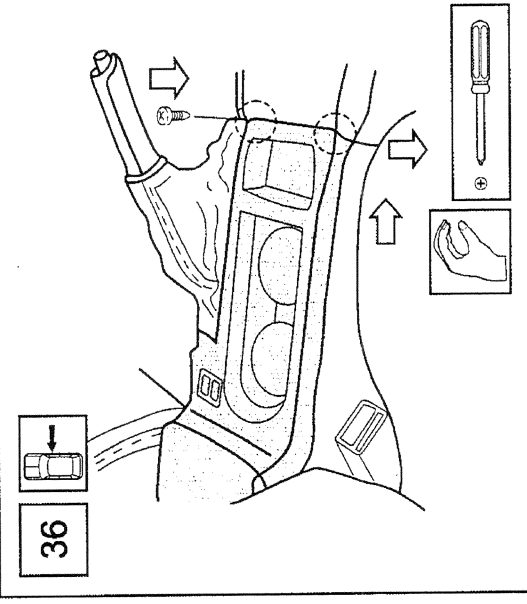
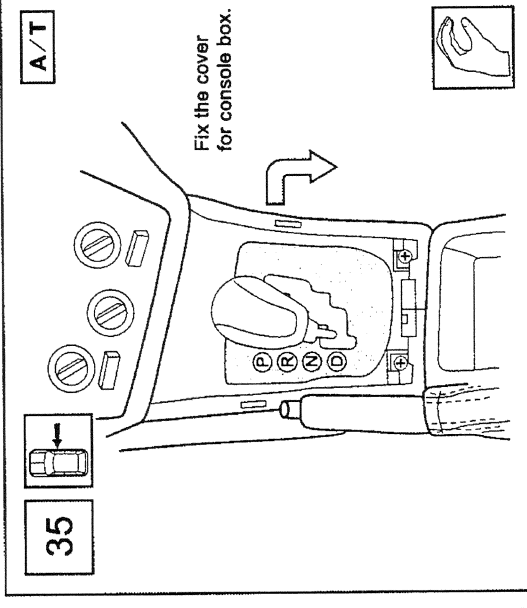
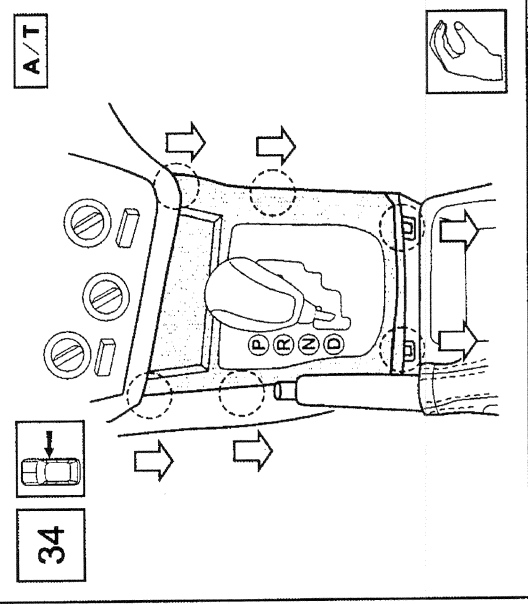
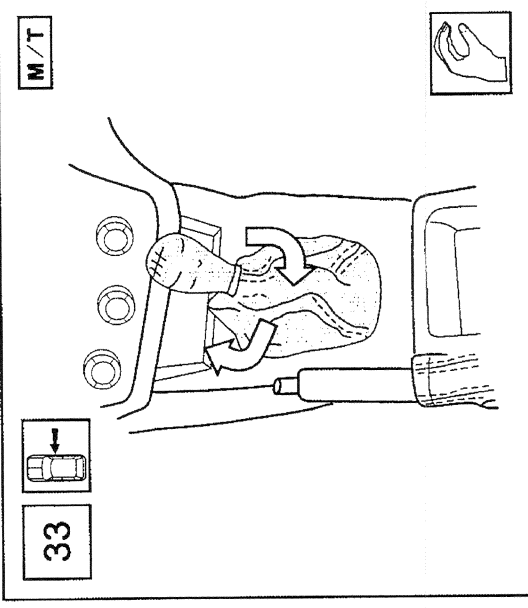
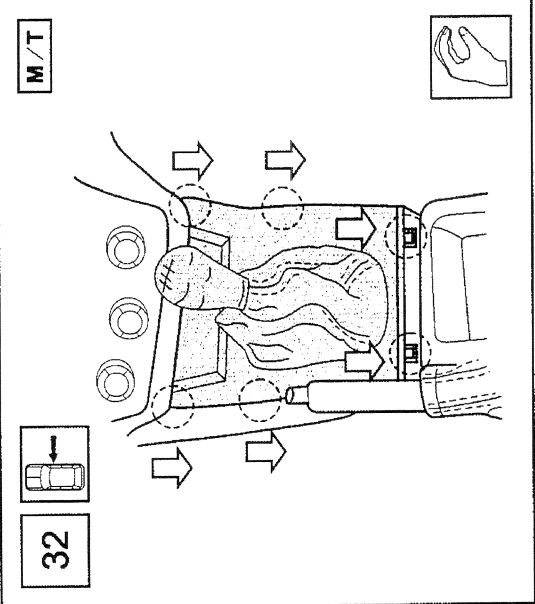
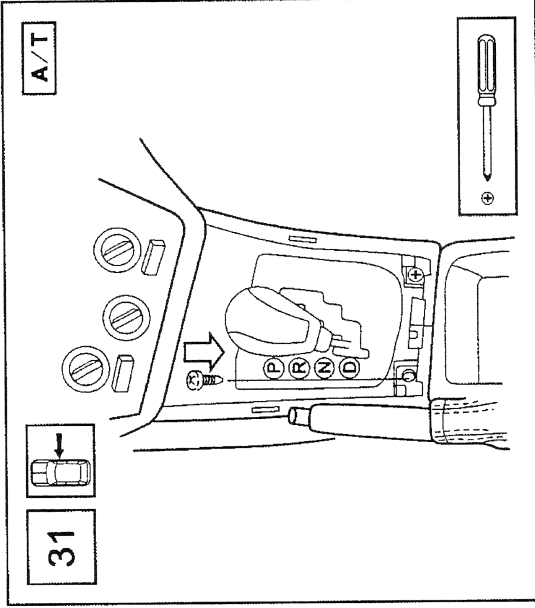


30



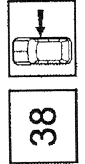
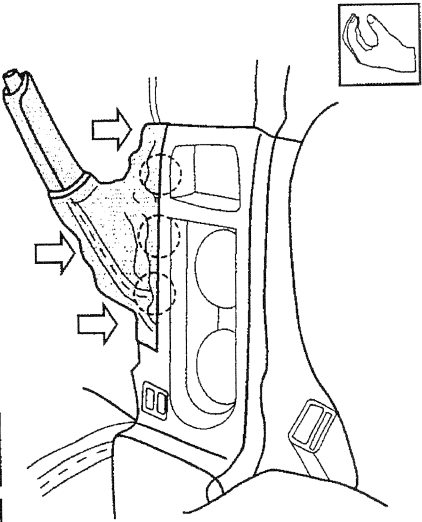
M/T



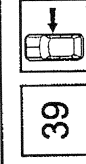
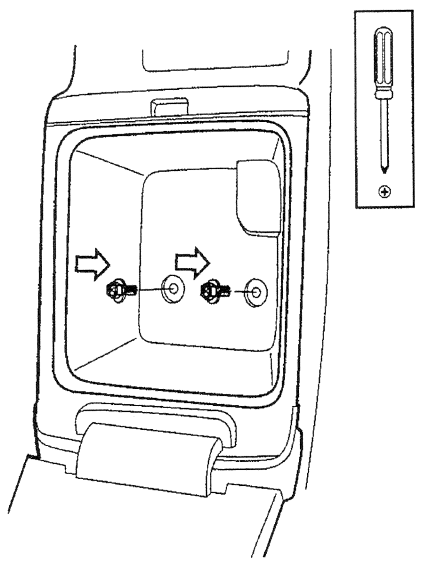




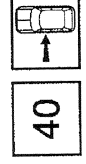
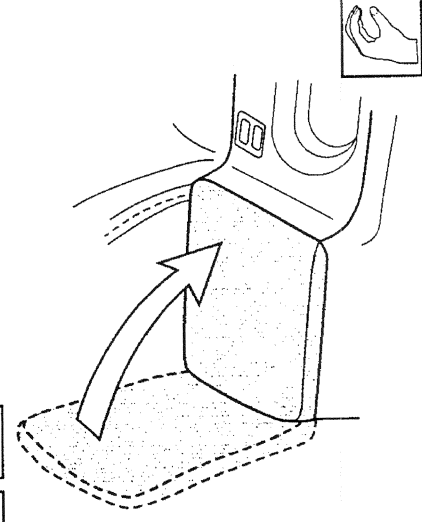
37



38



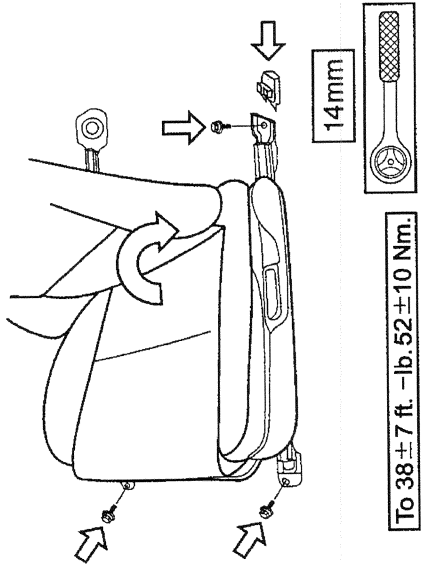
39



40

**NOTE**

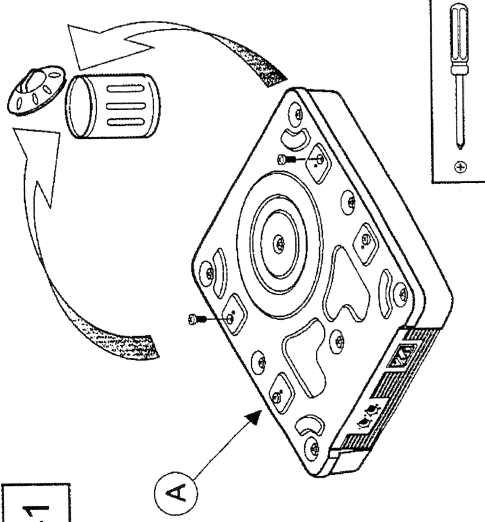
Be careful not to rip harness.



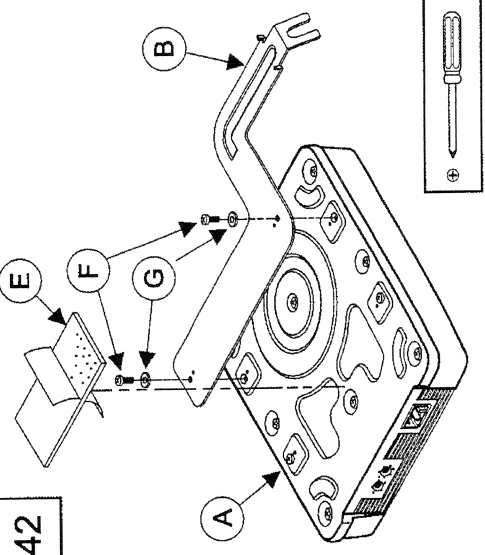
14mm

To 38±7 ft. -lb. 52±10 Nm.

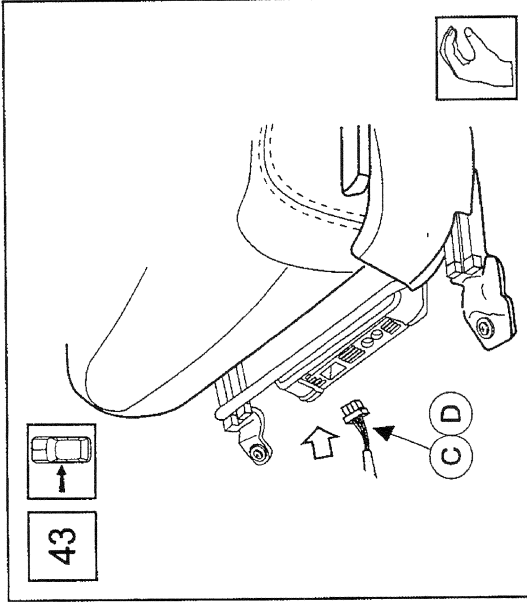
41



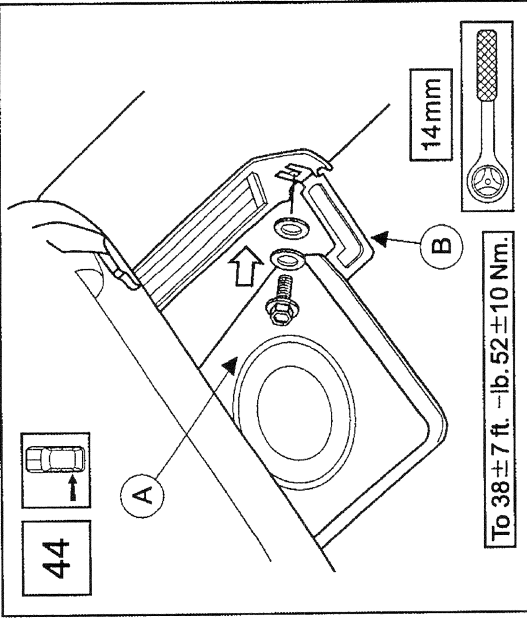
42







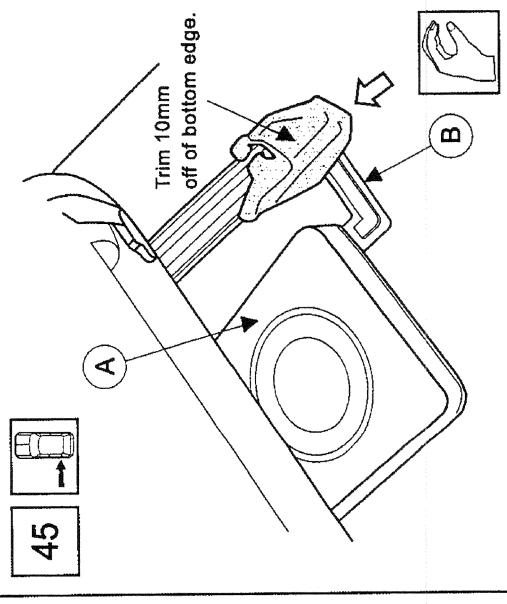
43



44

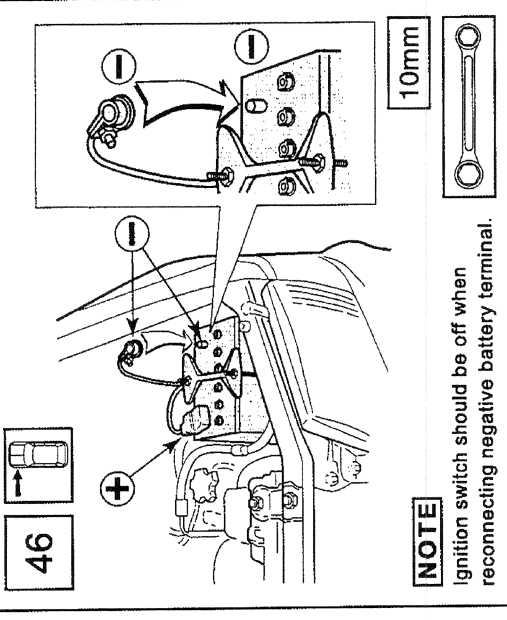
To 38 ± 7 ft.-lb. 5.2 ± 1.0 Nm.

14 mm



45

Trim 10mm  
off of bottom edge.

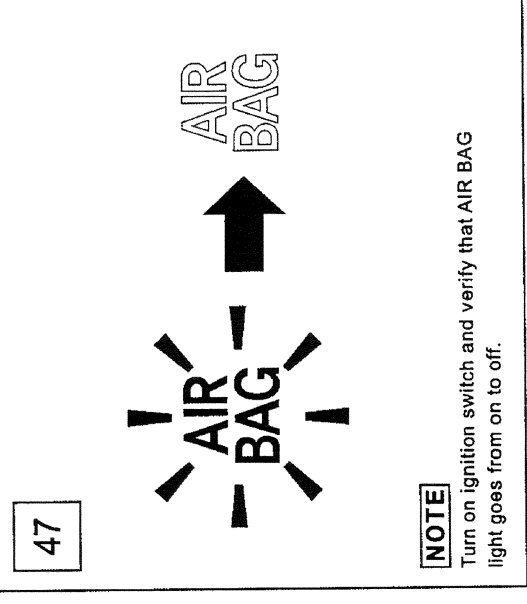


46

**NOTE**

Ignition switch should be off when reconnecting negative battery terminal.

10mm



47

**NOTE**

Turn on ignition switch and verify that AIR BAG light goes from on to off.

## HIGH CUT and GAIN adjustment

Method for adjustment at the side of the subwoofer body

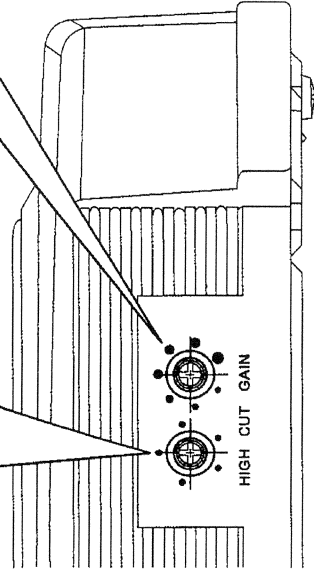
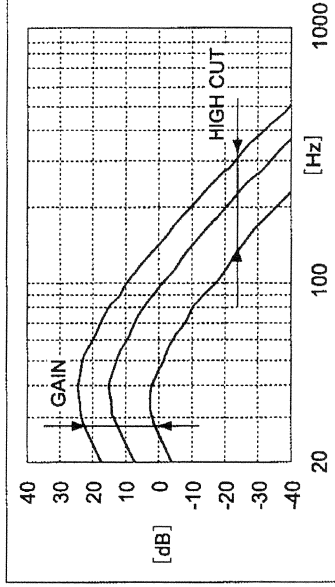
### HIGH CUT

- 1) If radio announcements and other voice transmissions are difficult to understand, turn the tone adjustment (HIGH CUT) to the left.
- 2) If the low range is to be widened and the woofer sound is to be stressed, turn the tone adjustment (HIGH CUT) to the right.

### GAIN

- 1) If you want to reduce the subwoofer volume, turn the volume adjustment (GAIN) to the left.
- 2) If you want to increase the subwoofer volume, turn the volume adjustment (GAIN) to the right.

Output characteristic of the built-in amplifier



(Body side)



**SUBARU**

# Subwoofer Mounting Kit - B9 Tribeca Installation Instructions

**Part Number: SOA551G000**

## Tool List

10mm Socket

1/4" Drive Ratchet

1/4" Drive – 6" Extension

14mm Socket

3/8" Drive Ratchet

3/8" Drive – 6" Extension

Torque Wrench

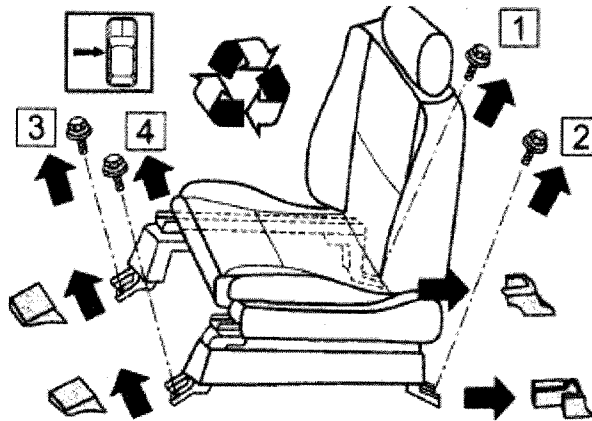
## Contents

RH Mounting Bracket

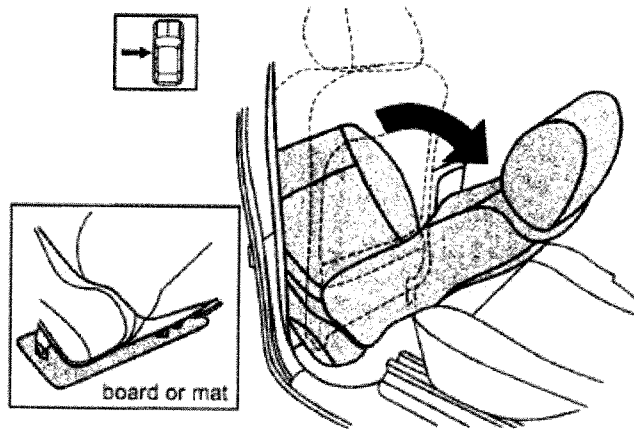
LH Mounting Bracket

4 – M6 Lock Nuts (10mm Hex) Head

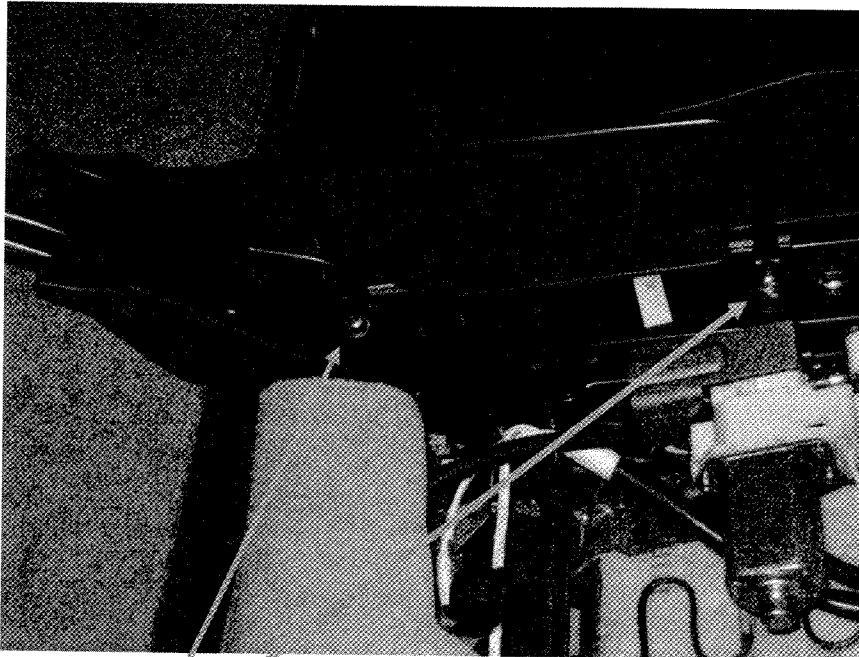
1. Remove 4 (Drivers Side - Front) seat bolts in marked order as shown below using the 14mm socket. Save seat bolts for re-use.



2. Lean seat back to gain access to seat track. Place a board or mat under pivoting seat to protect carpet.

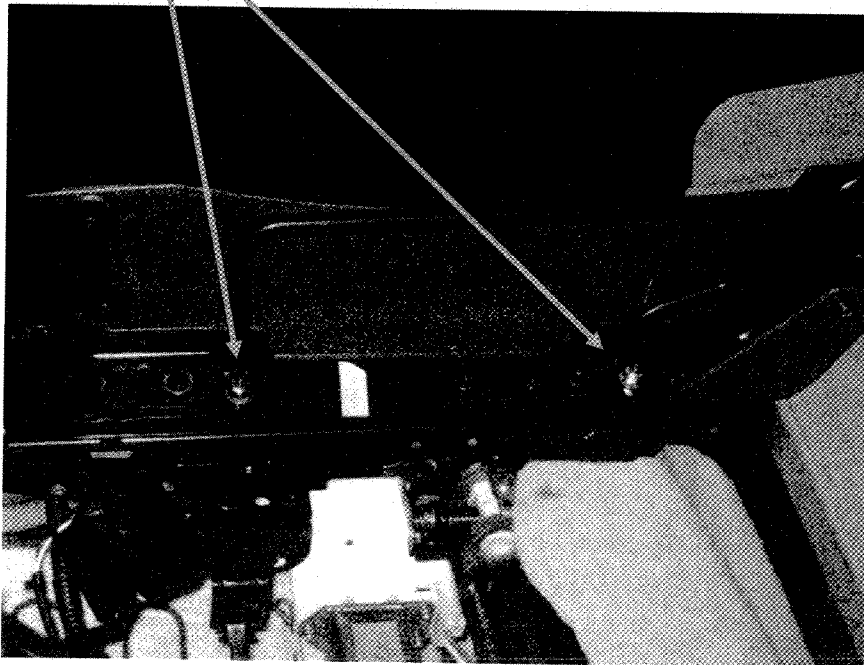


3. Locate the mounting studs on both sides of the seat track at these locations and mount the brackets as shown below. Torque nuts to 4.4 ft-lbs (6 Nm).



LH Side

Mounting Studs

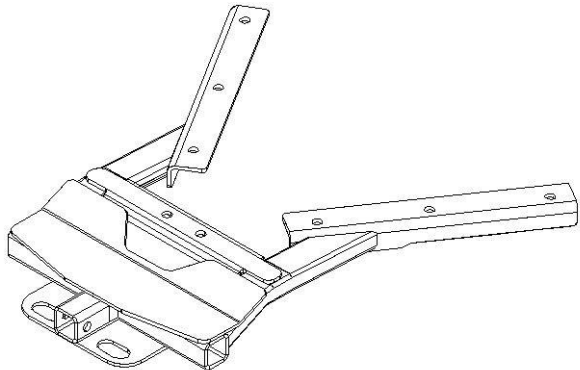
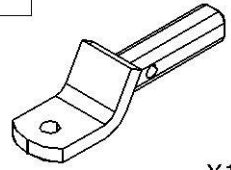
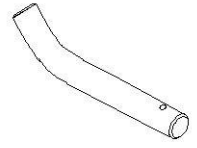



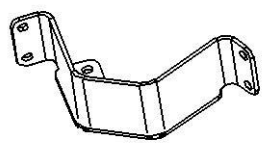
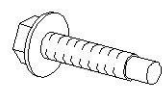
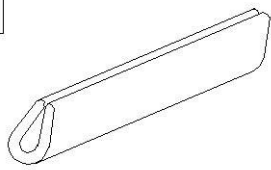
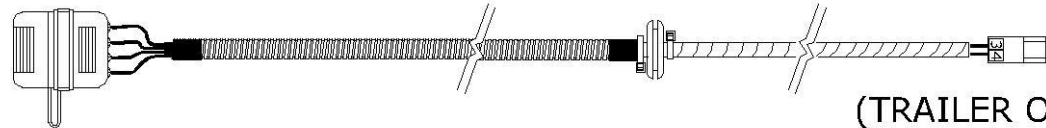
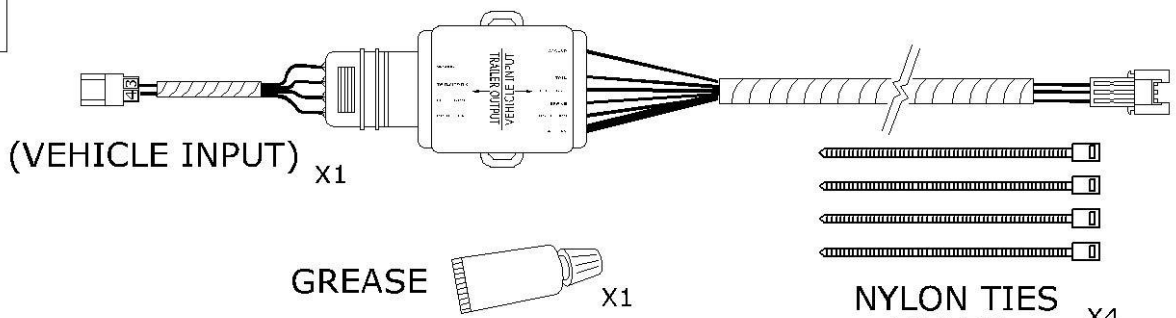
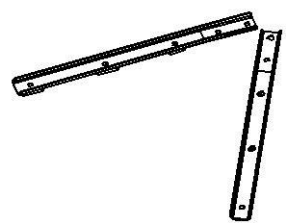


RH Side

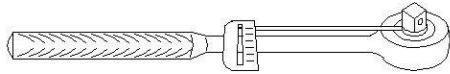
4. You may now proceed with the mounting of the Subwoofer kit.

INSTALLATION  
INSTRUCTIONS

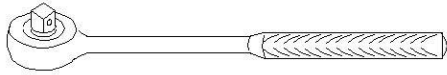
DESCRIPTION: B9 TRIBECA HITCH  
& WIRING HARNESS

<p><b>A KIT CONTENTS:</b></p>  <p>X1</p>	<p><b>B</b></p>  <p>X1</p>	<p><b>C</b></p>  <p>X1</p>	
<p><b>D</b></p>  <p>X1</p>	<p><b>E</b></p>  <p>X1</p>		
<p><b>F</b></p>  <p>15mm BLACK X4</p>	<p><b>G</b></p>  <p>X1</p>	<p><b>H</b></p>  <p>13mm BLACK X6</p>	<p><b>I</b></p>  <p>X1</p>
<p><b>J</b></p>  <p>(TRAILER OUTPUT) X1</p>			
<p><b>K</b></p>  <p>(VEHICLE INPUT) X1</p> <p>GREASE X1</p> <p>NYLON TIES BLACK X4</p>			
<p><b>L</b></p>  <p>X1</p>			

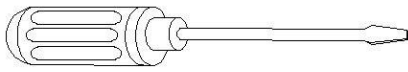
## TOOLS REQUIRED:



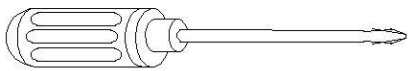
1/2" DRIVE TORQUE WRENCH



1/2" DRIVE RATCHET



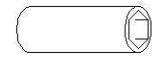
SLOT SCREWDRIVER



PHILLIPS SCREWDRIVER



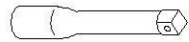
15 mm DEEP WELL SOCKET



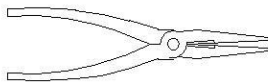
13 mm DEEP WELL SOCKET



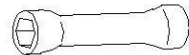
12 mm DEEP WELL SOCKET



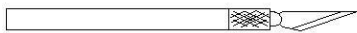
6" SOCKET EXTENSION



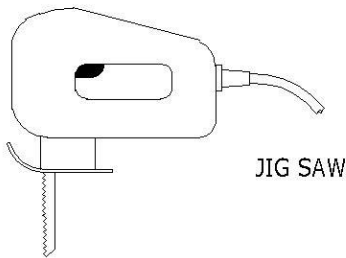
PLIERS W/CUTTER



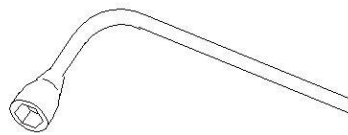
EXTENDER  
(SUPPLIED WITH VEHICLE)



X-ACTO KNIFE



JIG SAW



LUG WRENCH  
(SUPPLIED WITH VEHICLE)

## Meaning of Characters

Remove:

Install:

Disconnect:

Connect:

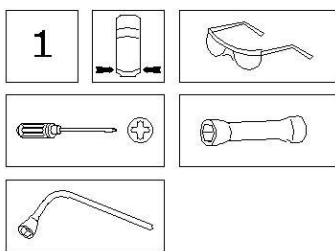
Location of Clip or Screw:

Tightening Torque: **T**

Loosen:

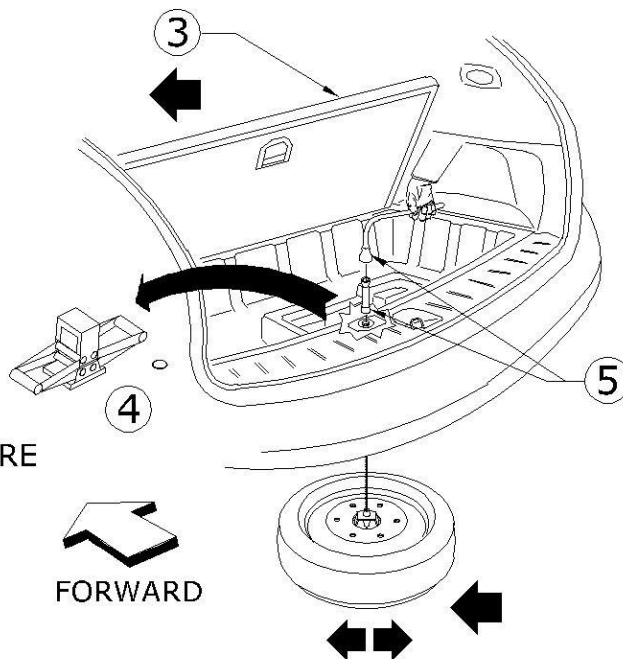
Discard:

Reuse:

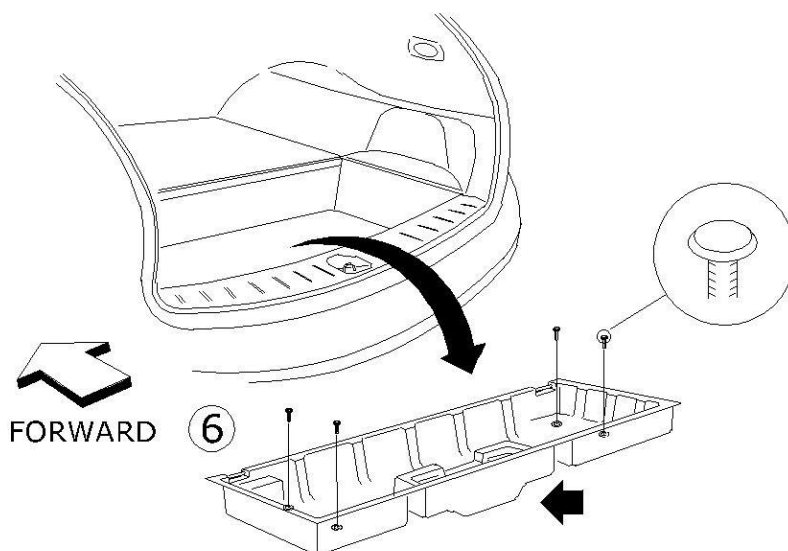


## REAR TRAY, SPARE TIRE REMOVAL

- 1) WEAR SAFETY GLASSES.
- 2) JACK VEHICLE UP AND SECURE WITH JACK STANDS.



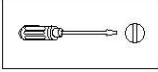
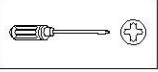
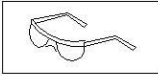
- 3) OPEN AND REMOVE THE COVER THAT CONCEALS THE PLASTIC TRAY BENEATH.
- 4) REMOVE THE JACK FROM THE TRAY, EXPOSING THE MECHANISM TO LOWER THE SPARE TIRE FROM THE VEHICLE. REMOVE PLASTIC PLUG.
- 5) USING THE LUG WRENCH AND EXTENSION PROVIDED, LOWER THE SPARE TO THE GROUND AND MOVE IT OUT FROM UNDER THE VEHICLE.



- 6) REMOVE THE (4) PUSH PINS IN THE BOTTOM CORNERS OF THE TRAY. REMOVE TRAY FROM THE VEHICLE.

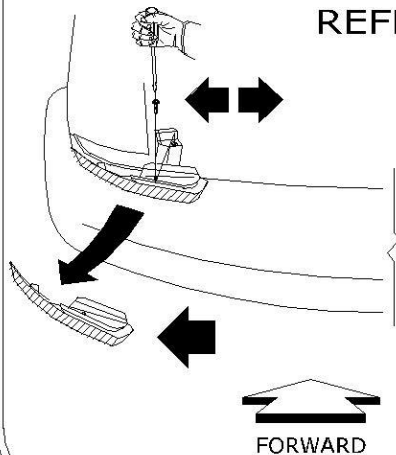


2



## REFLECTOR AND REAR BUMPER FASCIA REMOVAL

DRIVERS  
SIDE



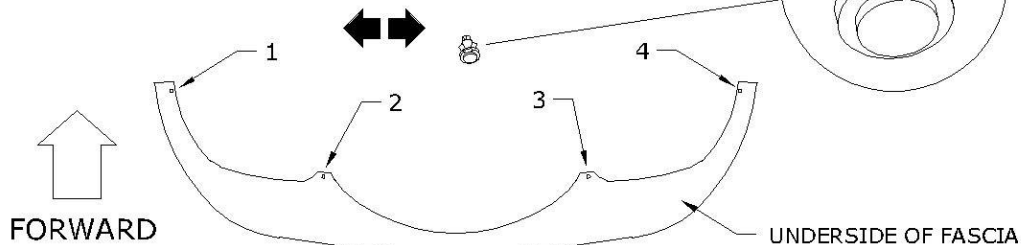
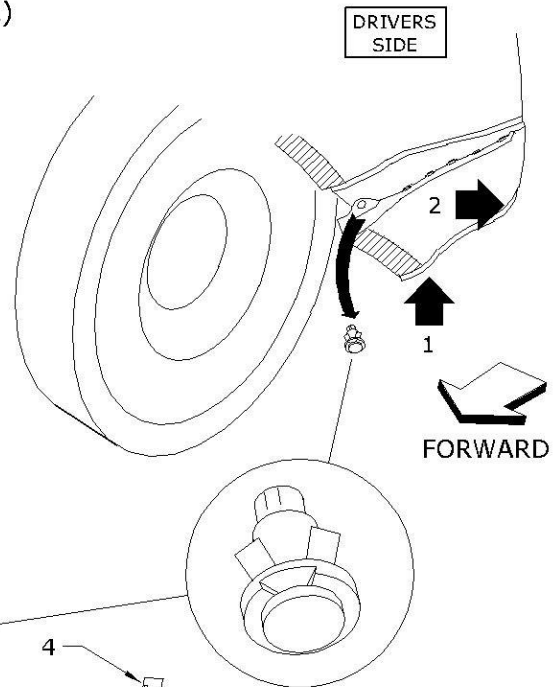
### REFLECTOR REMOVAL (FOR 2007 MY ONLY)

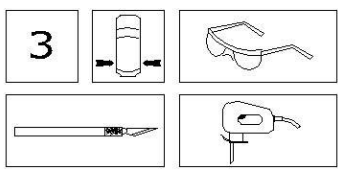
- 1) DISCONNECT THE PHILLIPS HEAD PUSH PINS LOCATED ON THE TOP SURFACE OF EACH REFLECTOR USING A PHILLIPS SCREWDRIVER.
- 2) CAREFULLY SLIDE REFLECTORS AWAY FROM VEHICLE AND PUT ASIDE IN A PROTECTED AREA.
- 3) CHECK THAT CLIPS REMAIN ON REFLECTOR (3 CLIPS PER REFLECTOR).

### REAR BUMPER FASCIA REMOVAL

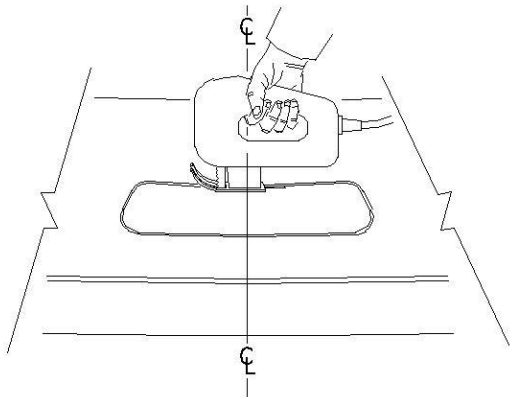
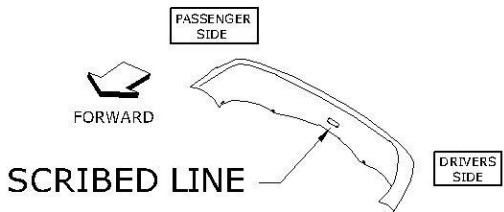
- 1) WITH A SLOT SCREWDRIVER, REMOVE THE (2) PUSH PINS LOCATED ON EACH SIDE OF THE FASCIA WHERE IT ATTACHES TO THE REAR QUARTER PANELS. PULL FENDER LINER AWAY TO EXPOSE PINS BETTER.
- 2) REMOVE THE (4) PUSH PINS WITH A SLOT SCREWDRIVER ALONG THE BOTTOM THAT HOLD THE BUMPER FASCIA IN PLACE.
- 3) AFTER REMOVING THE (6) PUSH PINS, THE BUMPER FASCIA MAY BE REMOVED BY CAREFULLY PULLING IT AWAY FROM THE BODY PANELS. PUSH UPWARDS WHILE PULLING AWAY FROM VEHICLE. ONCE SIDES ARE RELEASED, PULL FASCIA REARWARD.
- 4) LAY FASCIA ASIDE WHERE IT WILL NOT BE DAMAGED DURING HITCH INSTALLATION.

DRIVERS  
SIDE

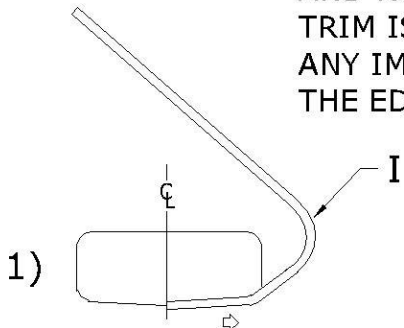




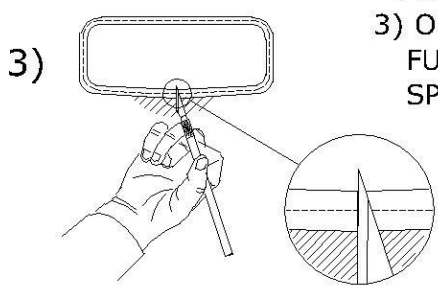
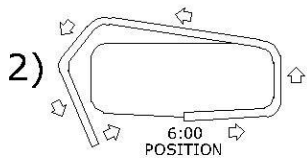
# MODIFYING REAR BUMPER FASCIA



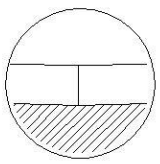
ONCE THE BUMPER FASCIA IS REMOVED, LOOK AT THE CENTER OF THE INSIDE OF THE FASCIA. THERE IS A SCRIBED PATTERN LINE FOR THE HITCH RECEIVER CUTOUT HOLE. CAREFULLY CUT OUT THE SECTION ALONG THE LINE PROVIDED. AFTER THE SECTION IS REMOVED, ALL BURRS AND ROUGH EDGES MUST BE REMOVED. WHEN THE TRIM IS ADDED TO THE CUTOUT (NEXT STEP), ANY IMPERFECTIONS WILL BE AMPLIFIED IF THE EDGE IS NOT PREPARED CORRECTLY.



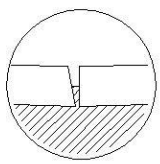
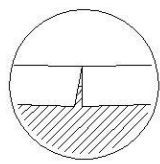
## TRIM GASKET INSTALLATION



- INSTALL THE TRIM GASKET (I) PROVIDED IN THE KIT AS SHOWN:
- 1) MAKE SURE GASKET END HAS A 90 DEGREE EDGE.
  - 2) CAREFULLY SLIDE INTO PLACE IN A COUNTER-CLOCKWISE DIRECTION, BEGINNING AT 6:00 O'CLOCK POSITION.
  - 3) ONCE GASKET IS IN PLACE, CUT THE END CAREFULLY TO CREATE A SMOOTH JOINT. GAPS AND/OR SPACES AT THE JOINT ARE NOT PERMISSIBLE.

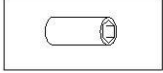
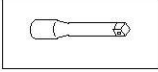
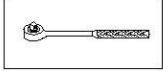
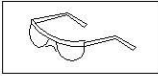


CORRECT

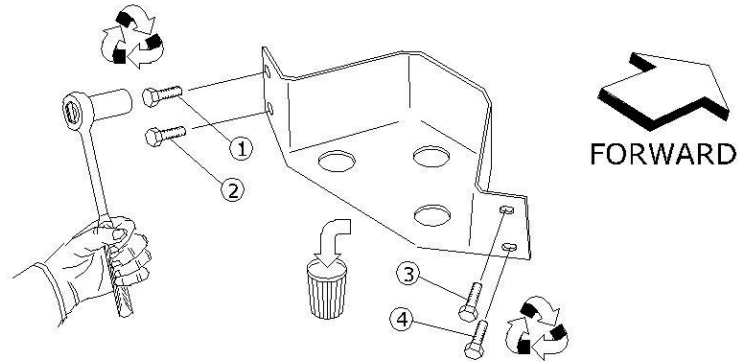


NOT PERMISSIBLE

4

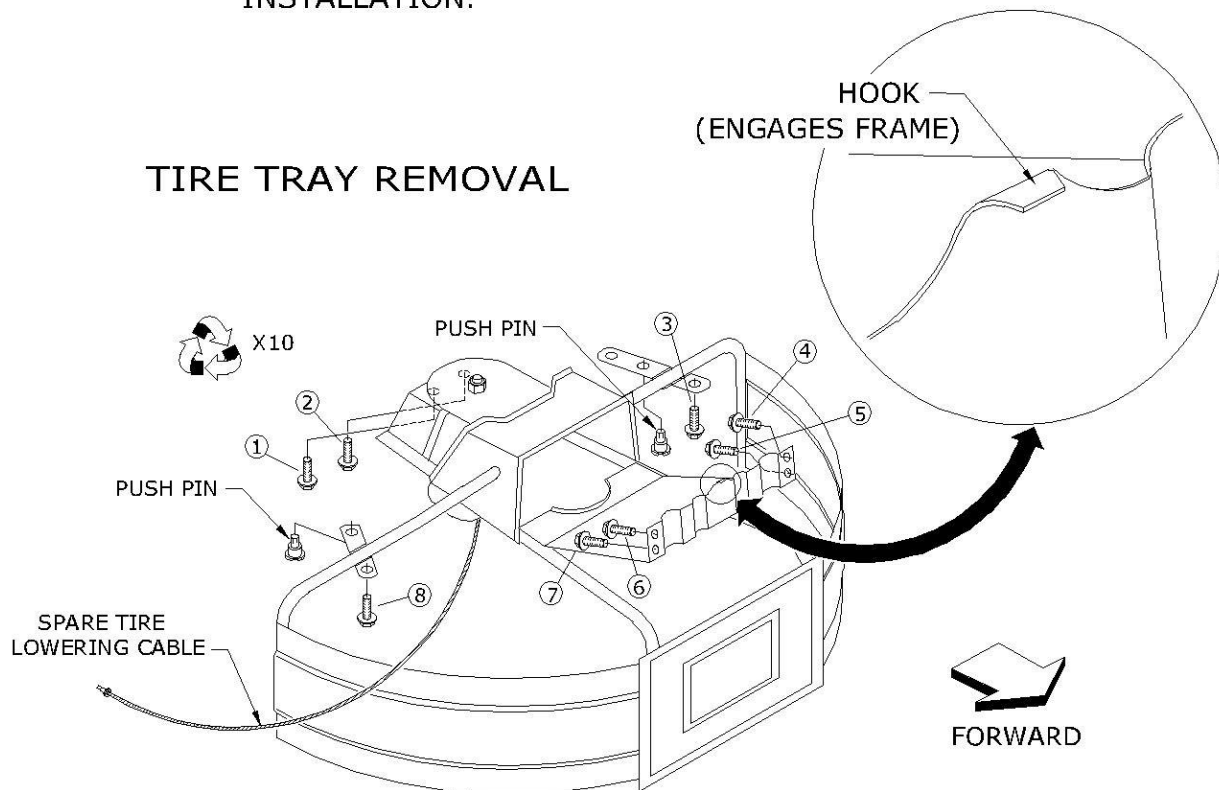


## CRASH BOX REMOVAL



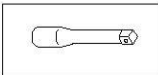
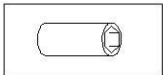
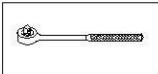
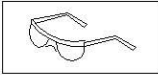
REMOVE THE (4) M8 BOLTS WITH A 12MM SOCKET AND DISCARD THE CRASH BOX THAT IS INSTALLED ON THE VEHICLE. SAVE THE BOLTS FOR USE IN THE NEW CRASH BOX INSTALLATION.

## TIRE TRAY REMOVAL

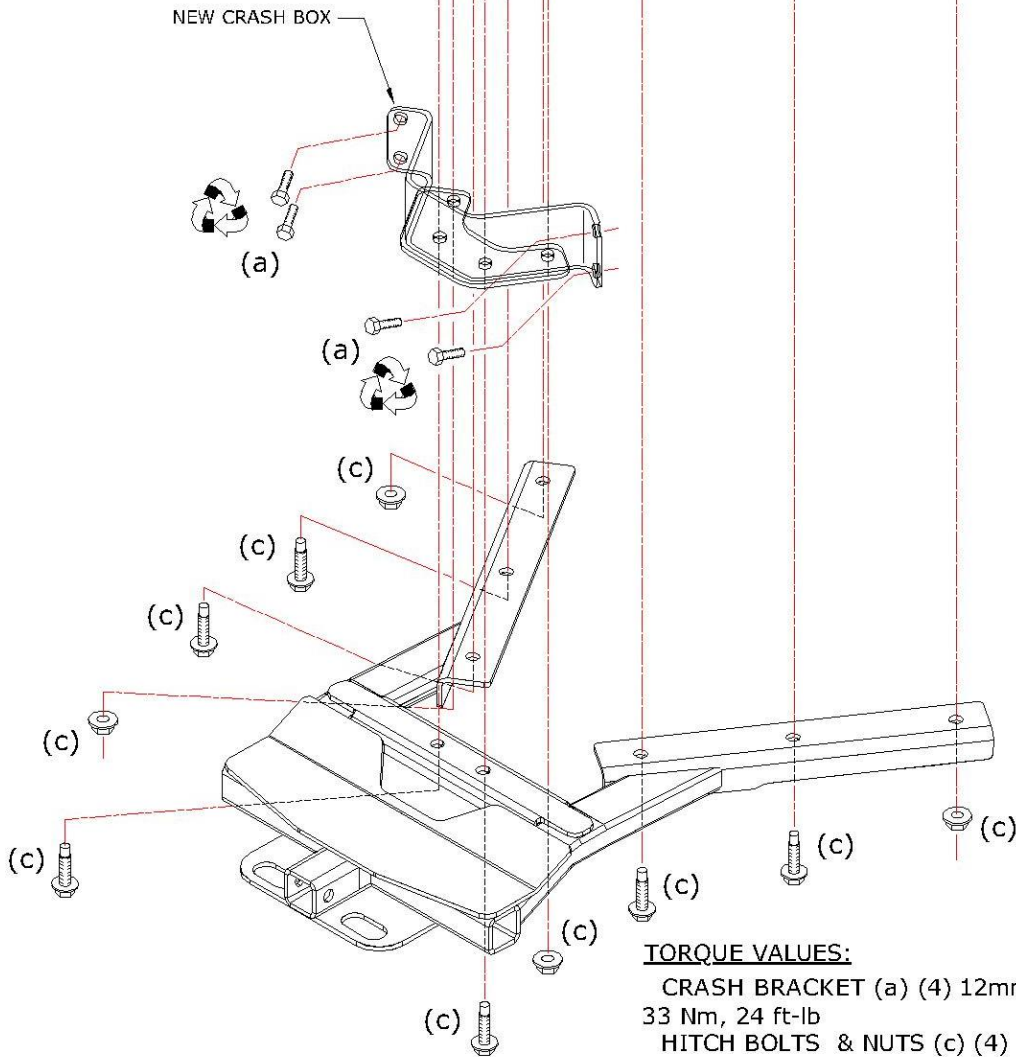
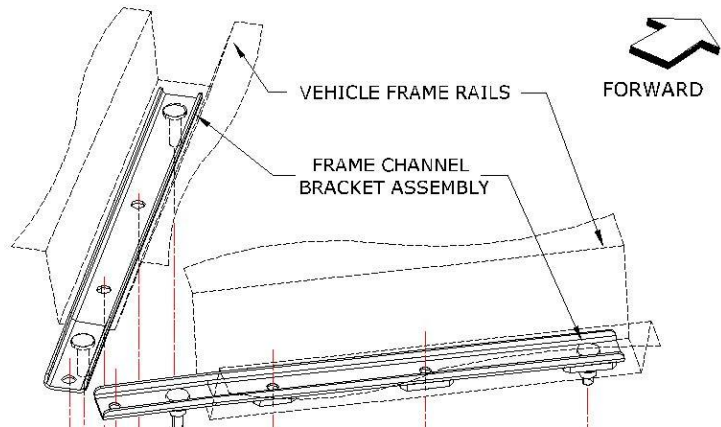


- 1) MOVE THE SPARE TIRE LOWERING CABLE OUT OF THE WAY TO PREVENT DAMAGE.
- 2) REMOVE THE (2) PUSH PINS AND THE (8) 12 MM BOLTS THAT HOLD THE TIRE TRAY IN PLACE. SAVE THE BOLTS AND PINS FOR USE DURING REINSTALLATION.
- 3) DISENGAGE THE "HOOK" THAT RESTS ON THE VEHICLE FRAME BY PULLING DOWN FIRMLY
- 4) CAREFULLY REMOVE THE TIRE TRAY AND LAY IT ASIDE. BE VERY CAREFUL NOT TO DAMAGE THE MUFFLERS, HEAT SHIELDS, AND EVAPORATOR HOSE DURING REMOVAL.

5



# HITCH HARDWARE INSTALLATION

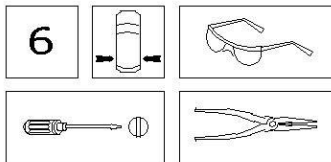


**TORQUE VALUES:**  
 CRASH BRACKET (a) (4) 12mm (M8 BOLT) 33 Nm, 24 ft-lb  
 HITCH BOLTS & NUTS (c) (4) 15mm (M10 NUT), (6) 13mm (M10 BOLT) 53 Nm, 39 ft-lb  
 TIRE TRAY (b) (NOT SHOWN) (8) 12mm (M8 BOLT) 33 Nm, 24 ft-lb

## HITCH HARDWARE INSTALLATION (CONTINUED)

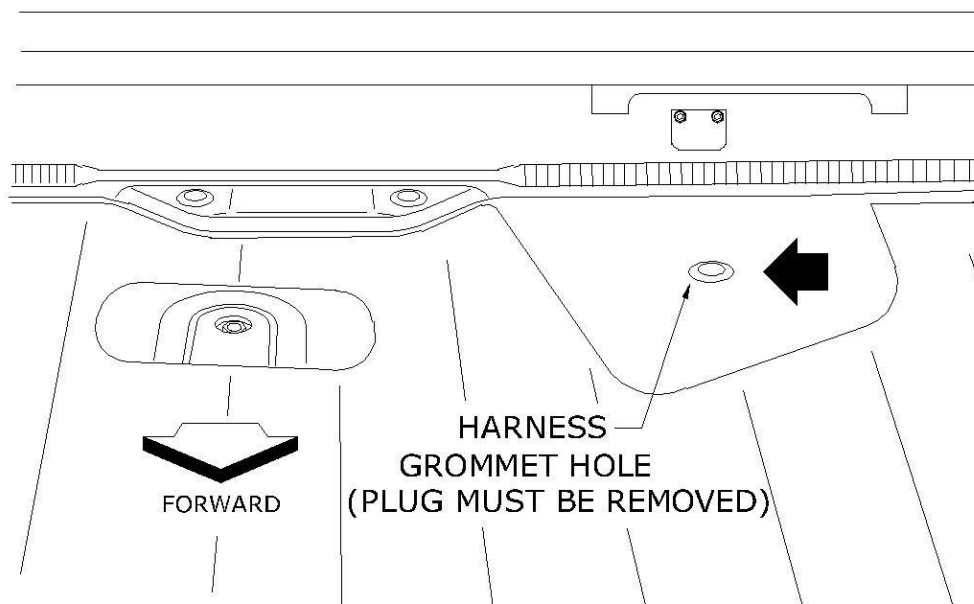
NOTE: REFER TO EXPLODED DRAWING ON PREVIOUS PAGE.

- 1) SLIDE THE FRAME CHANNEL BRACKET ASSEMBLIES INSIDE THE FRAME RAILS. MAKE SURE THAT THE STUD CLOSEST TO THE END OF EACH CHANNEL BRACKET IS TOWARDS THE FRONT OF THE VEHICLE.
- 2) SEAT THE STUDS INTO THE CORRESPONDING HOLES PROVIDED IN THE FRAME RAILS.
- 3) ALIGN AND SECURE IN PLACE THE NEW CRASH BOX SUPPLIED IN THE KIT. USE THE (4) M8 BOLTS THAT WERE SAVED WHEN THE ORIGINAL CRASH BOX WAS DISCARDED.
- 4) INSTALL HITCH IN PLACE OVER THE (2) FORWARD STUDS.
- 5) ATTACH THE (4) 15 MM NUTS FROM THE KIT ONTO THE STUDS.
- 6) ATTACH THE (4) 13 MM BOLTS FROM THE KIT THRU THE HOLES IN THE RAILS/HITCH INTO THE WELD NUTS ON THE CHANNEL BRACKETS AND (2) 13 MM BOLTS INTO THE NEW CRASH BOX.
- 7) TORQUE HARDWARE TO VALUES SHOWN IN FIGURE ON PREVIOUS PAGE.

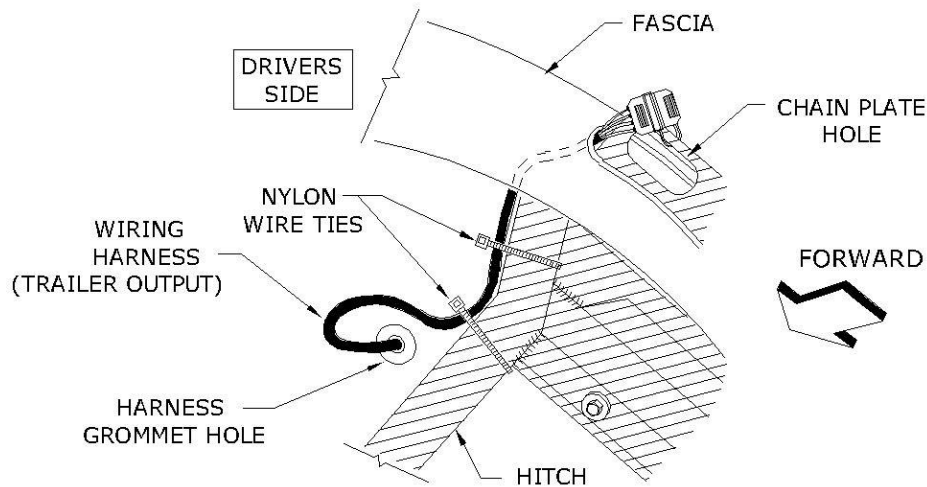


### WIRING HARNESS INSTALLATION

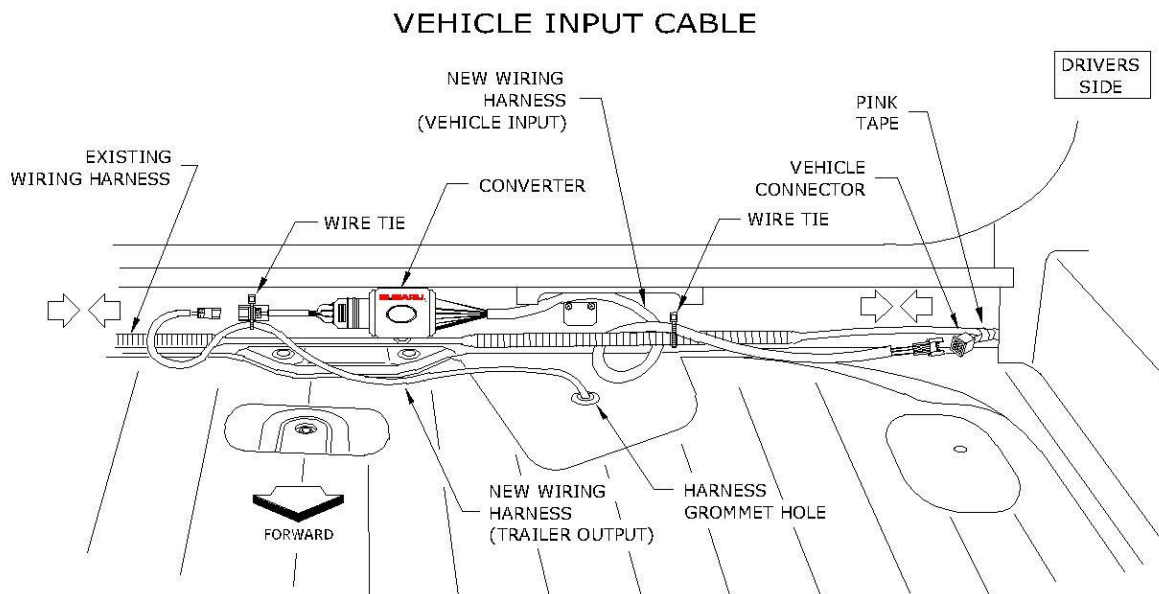
#### TRAILER OUTPUT CABLE



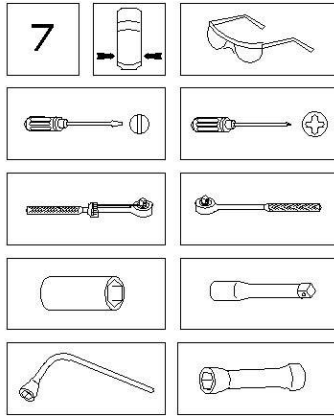
BEGIN INSTALLATION BY REMOVING THE PLASTIC PLUG ON THE REAR FLOOR WHERE THE TRAILER OUTPUT CABLE WILL PASS THRU.



FROM UNDERNEATH THE VEHICLE, THREAD THE CABLE THAT HAS THE CONNECTOR WITH CAP, THROUGH THE HOLE IN THE BUMPER FASCIA AND UNDER THE CHAIN PLATE. SECURE CONNECTOR TO CHAINPLATE USING CONNECTOR CAP AS SHOWN. ROUTE THE OTHER END OF THE HARNESS ALONG THE SIDE OF THE HITCH, AND THROUGH THE GROMMET HOLE. INSTALL RUBBER PLUG ALONG HARNESS INTO THE HOLE.



- 1) MOUNT THE WIRING HARNESS CONVERTER BY REMOVING BACKING TAPE AND PRESSING INTO PLACE IN THE MIDDLE OF THE BACK EDGE OF THE HATCH AS SHOWN.
- 2) CONNECT THE TRAILER OUTPUT CABLE WHICH WAS PREVIOUSLY ROUTED INTO THE VEHICLE TO THE CONVERTER.
- 3) PULL BACK THE FLOOR COVERING IN THE DRIVERS SIDE CORNER TO EXPOSE THE VEHICLE CONNECTOR. THE END WILL BE WRAPPED IN TAPE FOR EASY IDENTIFICATION.
- 4) PLUG THE VEHICLE INPUT CABLE INTO THE CONNECTOR.
- 5) MAKE SURE THAT THE HARNESS GROMMET IS PROPERLY SEATED IN THE VEHICLE TO ENSURE A WATER TIGHT FIT.



## REINSTALLATION OF COMPONENTS

- 1) REINSTALL THE TIRE TRAY ((8) BOLTS AND (2) PUSHPINS).  
CAUTION: REFER TO STEP #4 TO CAREFULLY REINSTALL AND PAGE #7 FOR TORQUE VALUES.
- 2) CAREFULLY REINSTALL THE BUMPER FASCIA WITH THE (6) PUSHPINS. CAUTION: VERIFY THAT TOP EDGE OF BUMPER FASCIA ENGAGES RECEPTACLE JUST BELOW REFLECTOR LOCATION.
- 3) REPLACE VEHICLE REFLECTORS REMOVED IN STEP #4.(2007 MY ONLY)
- 4) REINSTALL THE STORAGE TRAY IN THE REAR OF THE VEHICLE.
- 5) PUT THE JACK, LUG WRENCH, AND EXTENDER IN THEIR PROPER PLACES IN THE STORAGE TRAY.
- 6) REPLACE REAR COMPARTMENT COVER.



# SUBARU®

INSTALLATION  
INSTRUCTIONS

## WHEEL LOCKS

T3010YS000

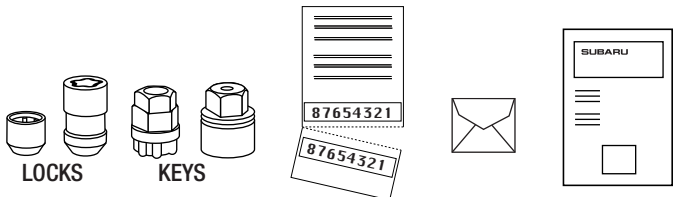
T3010YS010

T3010YS020

**B321SFG000** (NOT FOR USE WITH STEEL WHEELS)

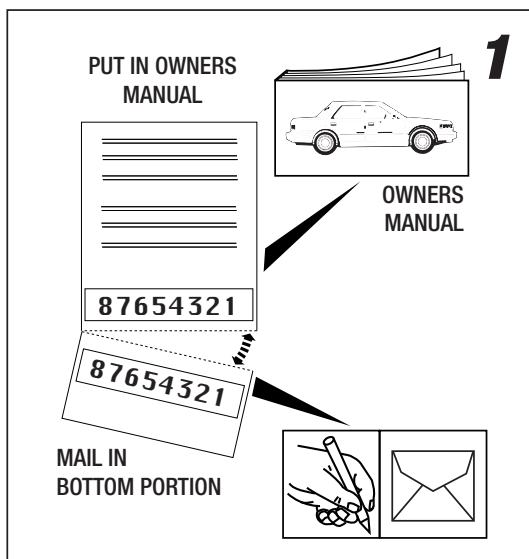
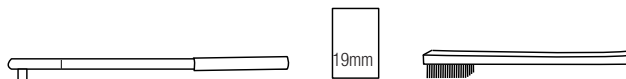
Kit Contents:

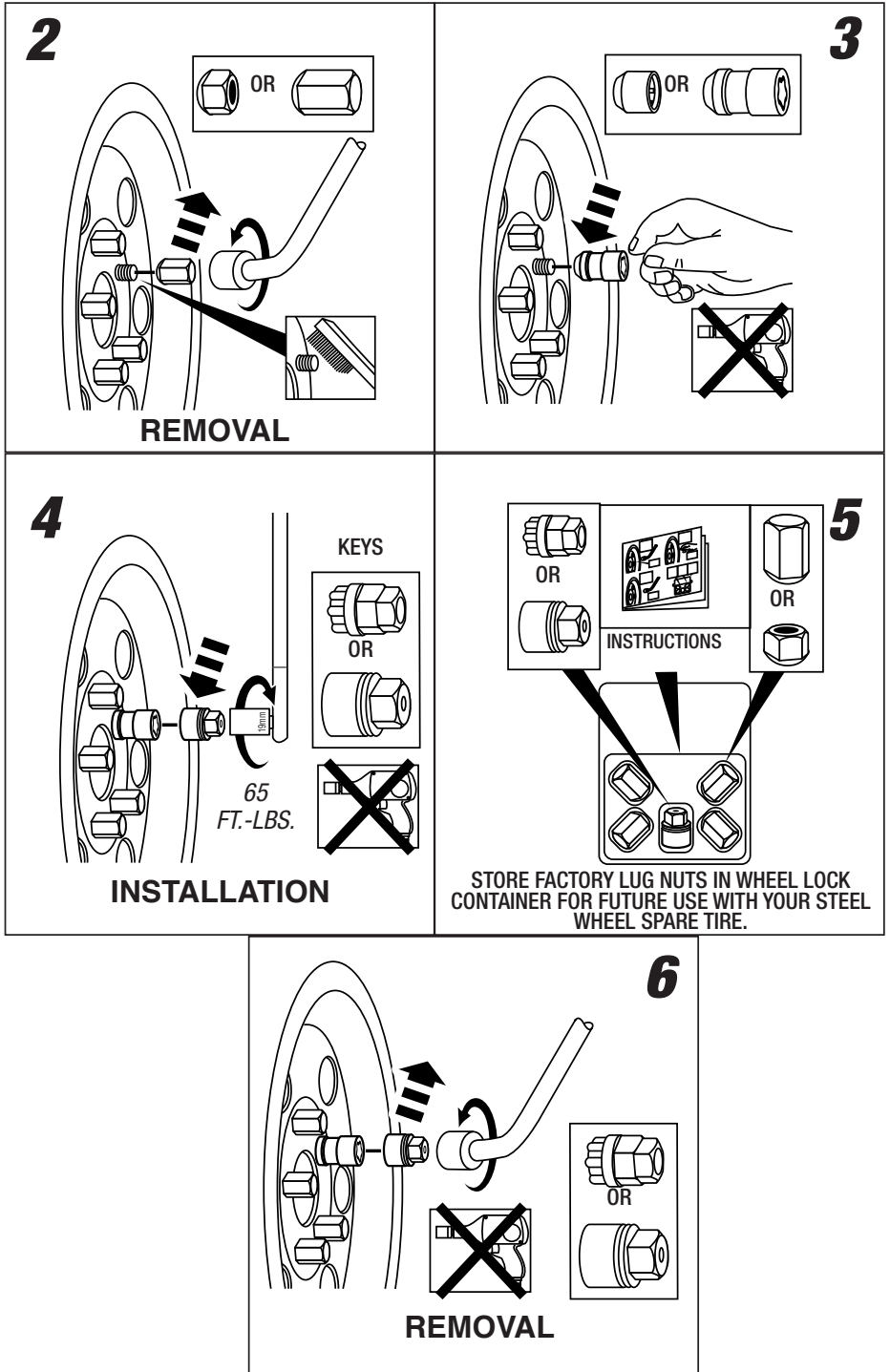
- 4 x Wheel Locks
- 1 x Key
- 1 x ID Card
- 1 x Order Form/Envelope
- 1 x Installation Instructions



Tools Required:

- Torque Wrench
- 19mm Hex Socket
- Wire Brush







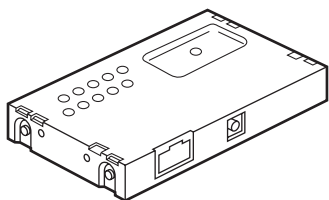
# SUBARU *IMPREZA*

**INSTALLATION  
INSTRUCTIONS**

**PART NUMBER: H621SFG100 (UF-901U-02)**

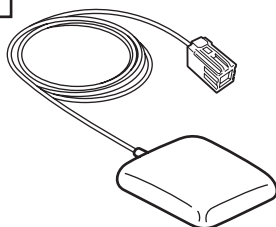
**DESCRIPTION: XM-SATELLITE RADIO KIT**

**A KIT CONTENTS:**



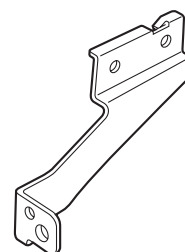
1 X

**B**



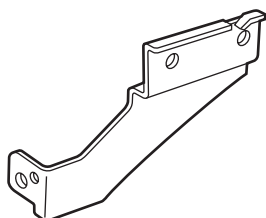
1 X

**C**



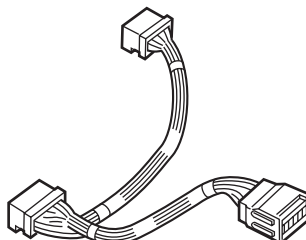
1 X

**D**



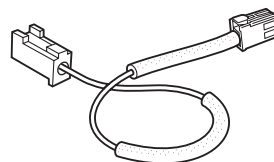
1 X

**E**



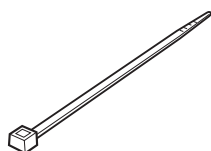
1 X

**F**



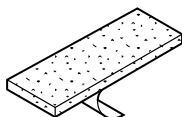
1 X

**G**



5 X

**H**



7 X

**I**



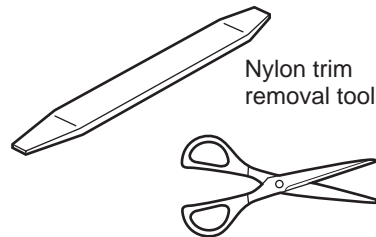
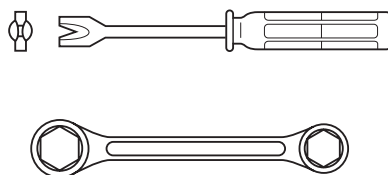
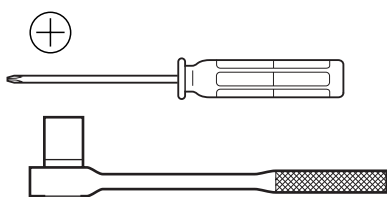
4 X

**J**



2 X

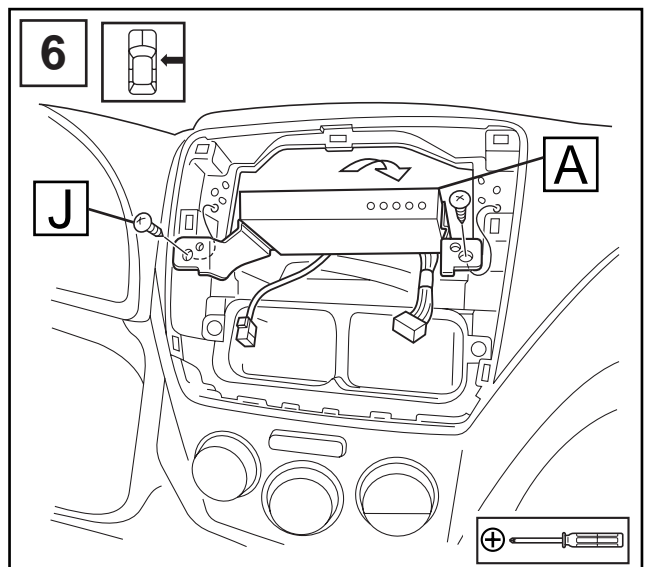
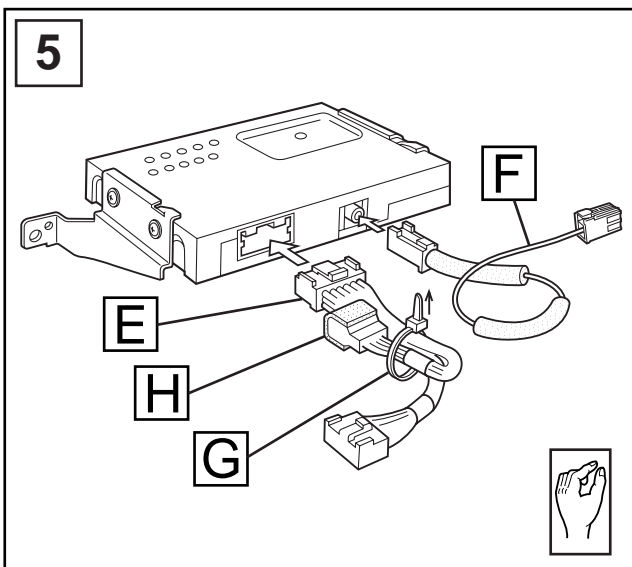
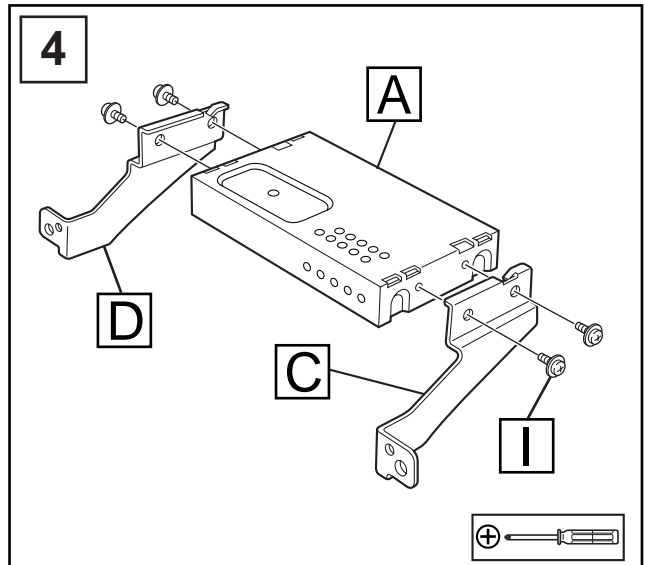
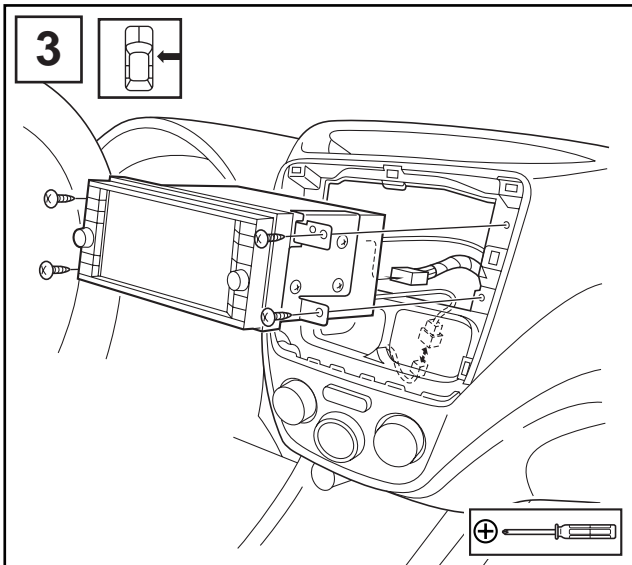
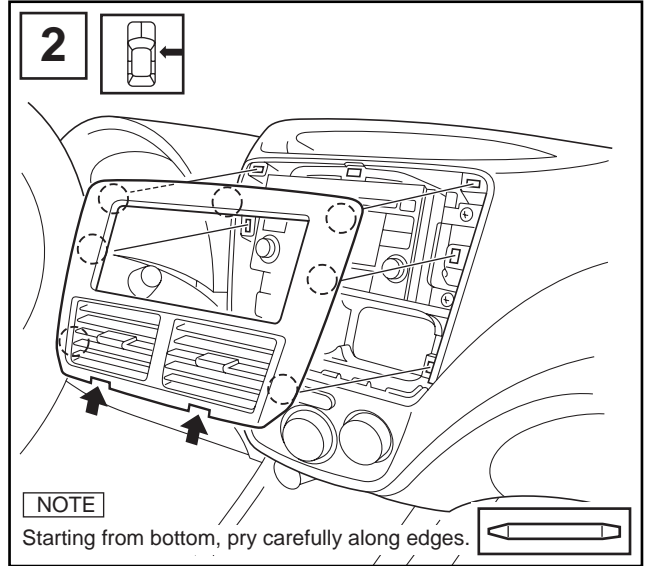
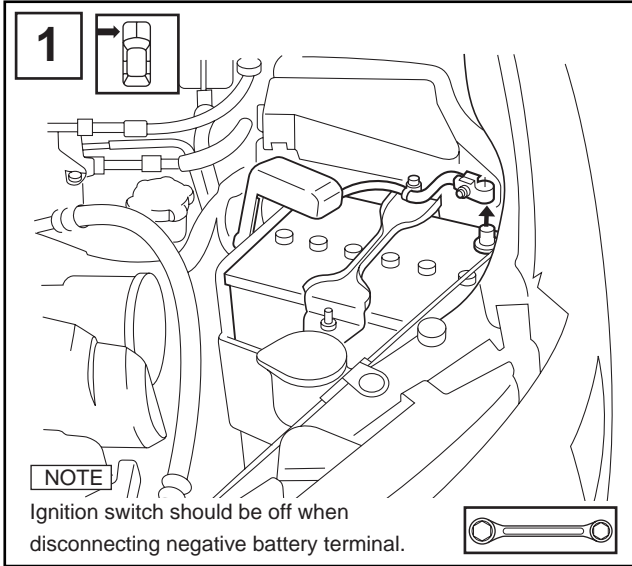
**TOOLS REQUIRED:**



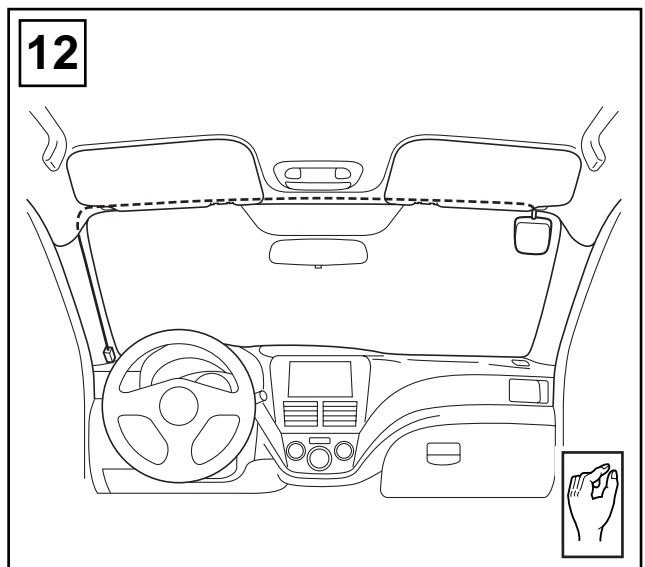
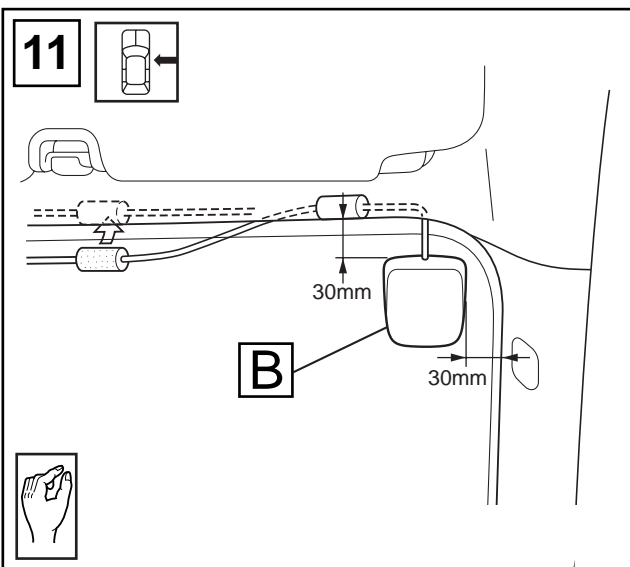
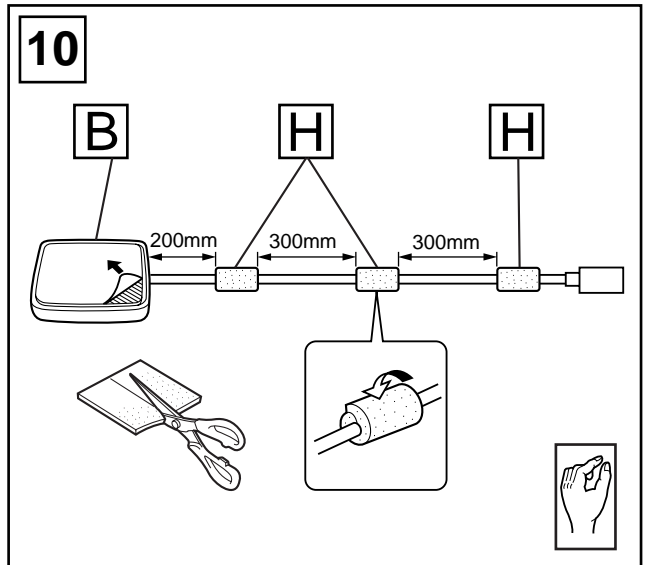
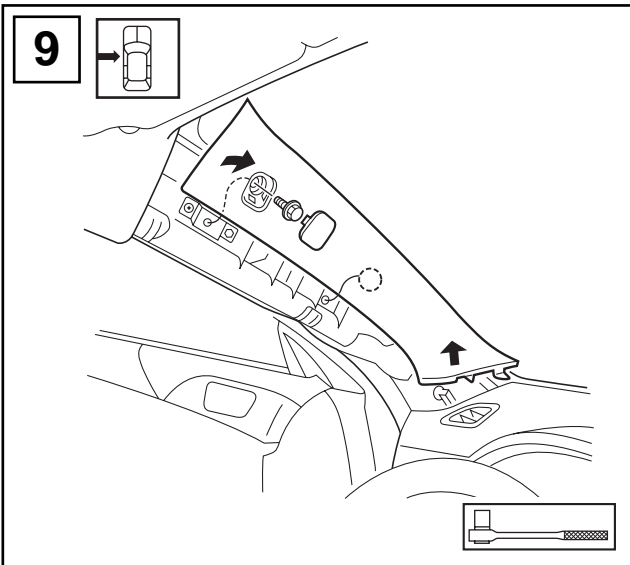
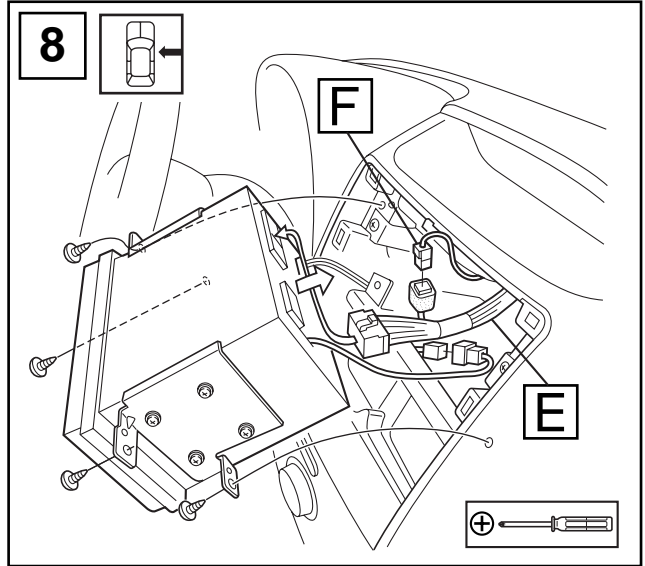
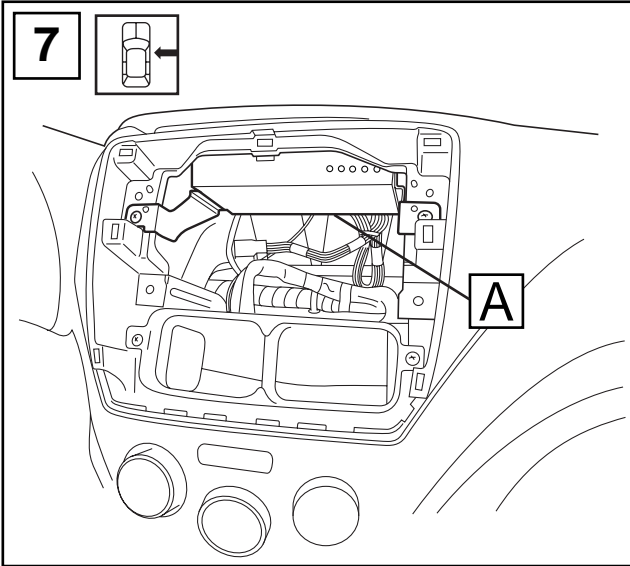
**MEANING of Characters:**

- : Remove
- : Install
- : Disconnect
- : Connect
- : Location of Clip or Screw
- T** : Tightening Torque
- : Loosen
- : Discard
- : Reuse

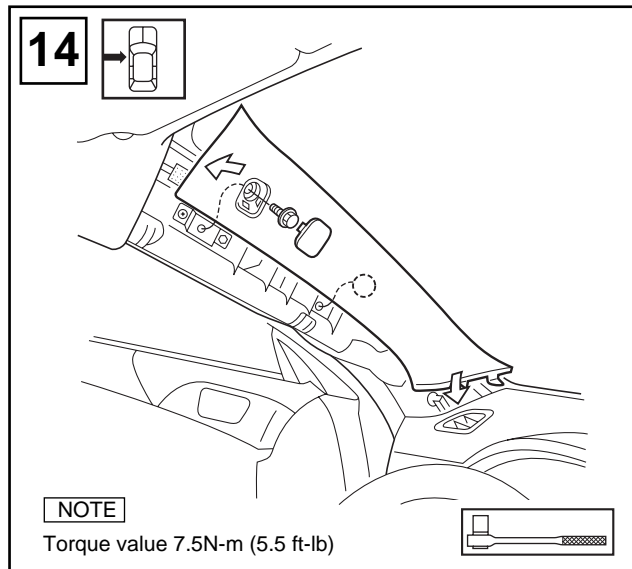
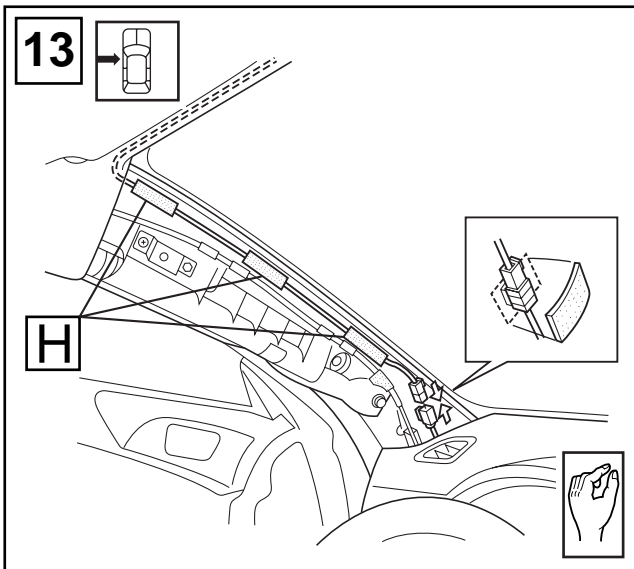
# IMPREZA



# IMPREZA



# IMPREZA



Reassembly: **2** → **1**



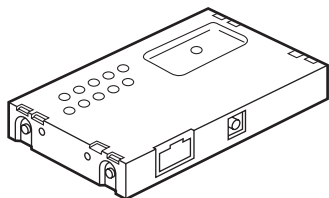
# SUBARU *TRIBECA / LEGACY*

**INSTALLATION  
INSTRUCTIONS**

**PART NUMBER: H621SXA001 (UF-901U-03)**

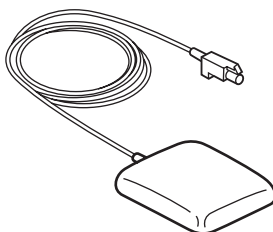
**DESCRIPTION: XM-SATELLITE RADIO KIT**

**A KIT CONTENTS:**



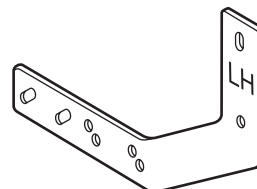
1 X

**B**



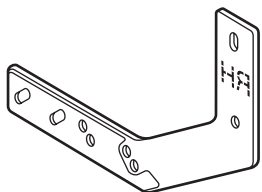
1 X

**C**



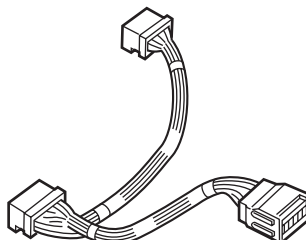
1 X

**D**



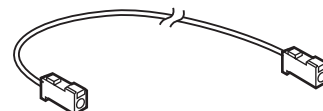
1 X

**E**



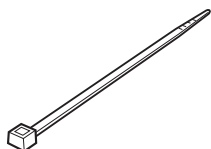
1 X

**F**



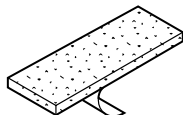
1 X

**G**



5 X

**H**



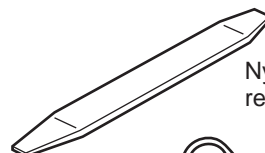
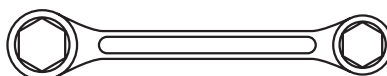
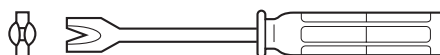
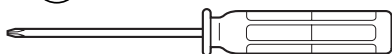
7 X

**I**

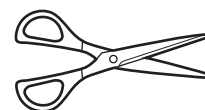


8 X

**TOOLS REQUIRED:**



Nylon trim  
removal tool



**MEANING of Characters:**



: Remove



: Install



: Disconnect



: Connect



: Location of Clip or Screw

T : Tightening Torque



: Loosen



: Discard



: Reuse



# TRIBECA

**1**

Engage the parking brake.  
Turn on the ignition switch.  
Move the shift Lever from "P" to "N".  
Turn off the ignition switch.

**2**

**NOTE**  
Ignition switch should be off when disconnecting negative battery terminal.

**3**

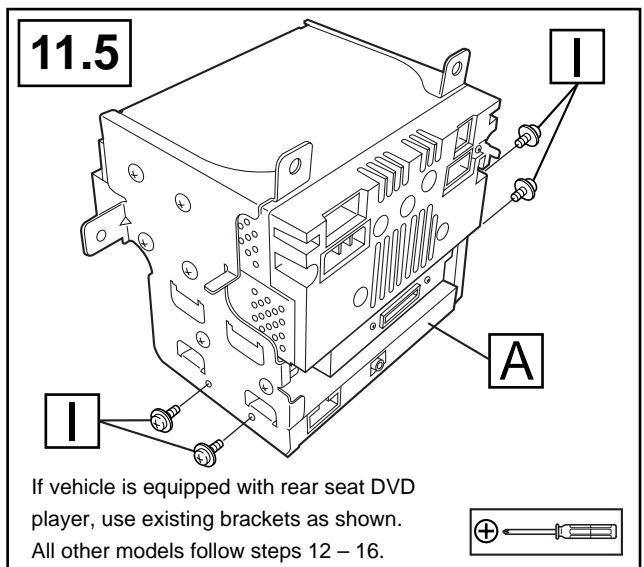
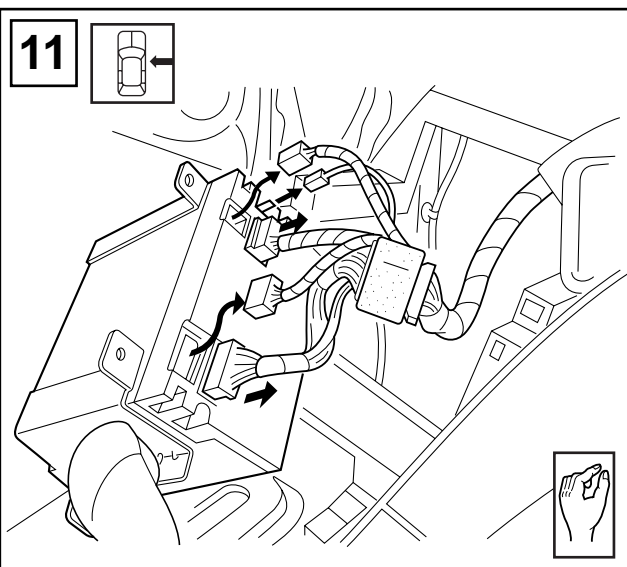
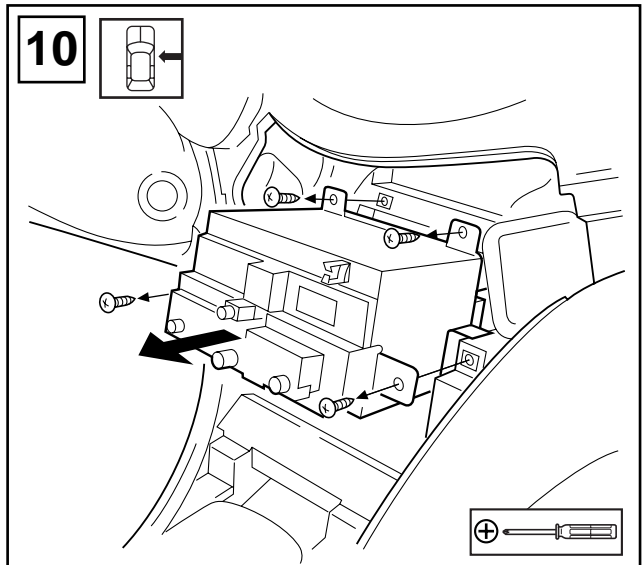
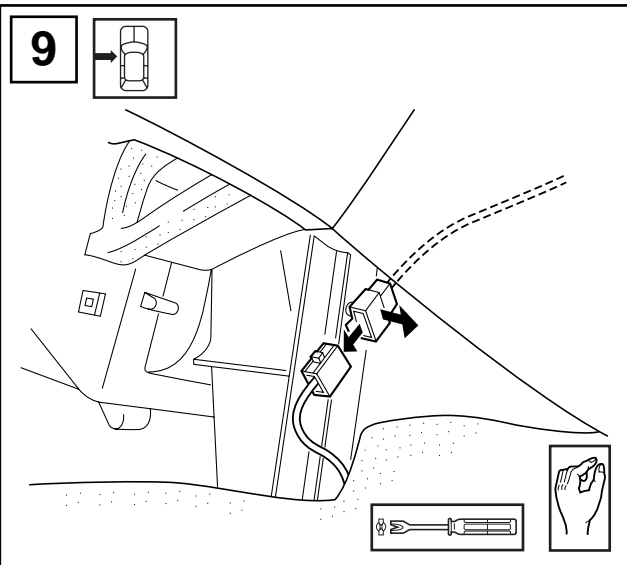
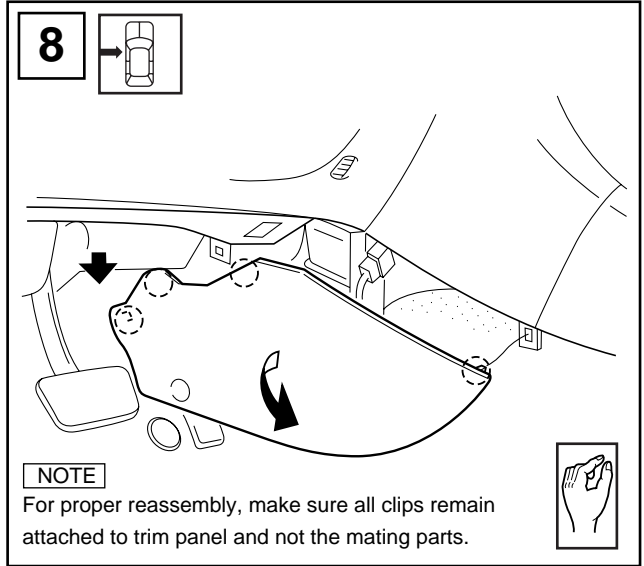
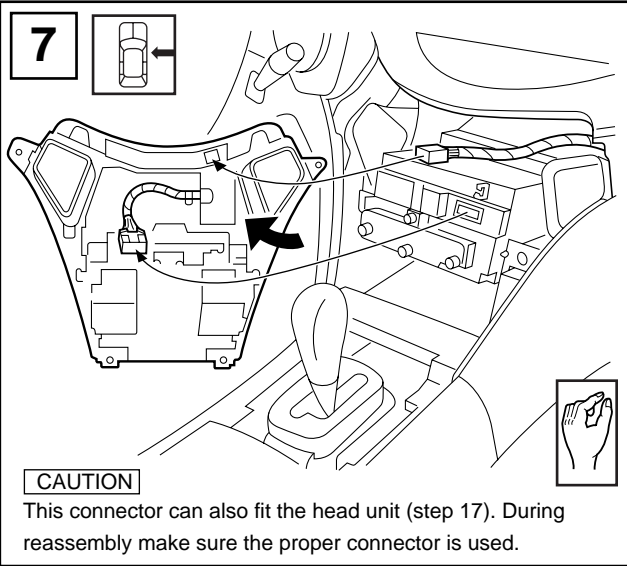
**4**

**NOTE**  
Pry carefully along edges.

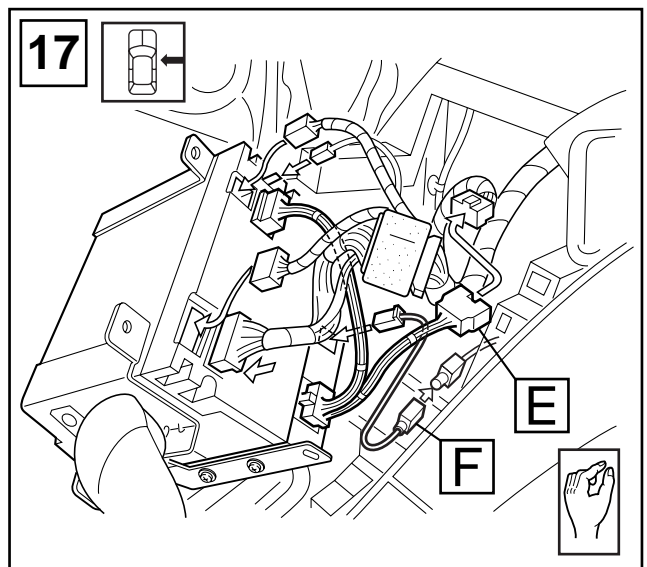
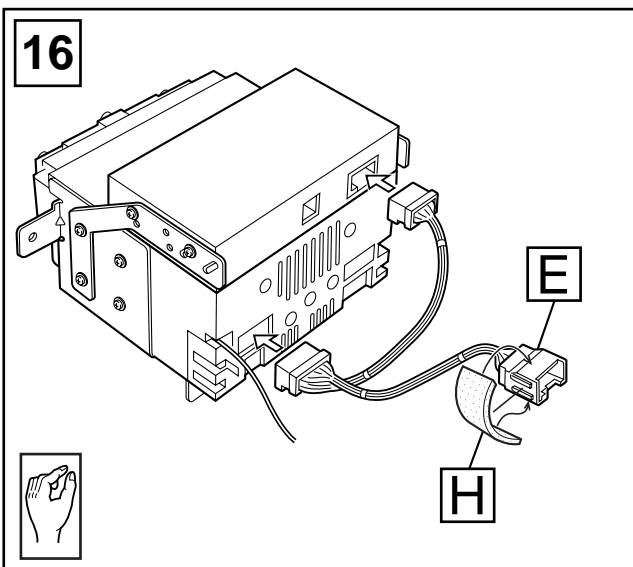
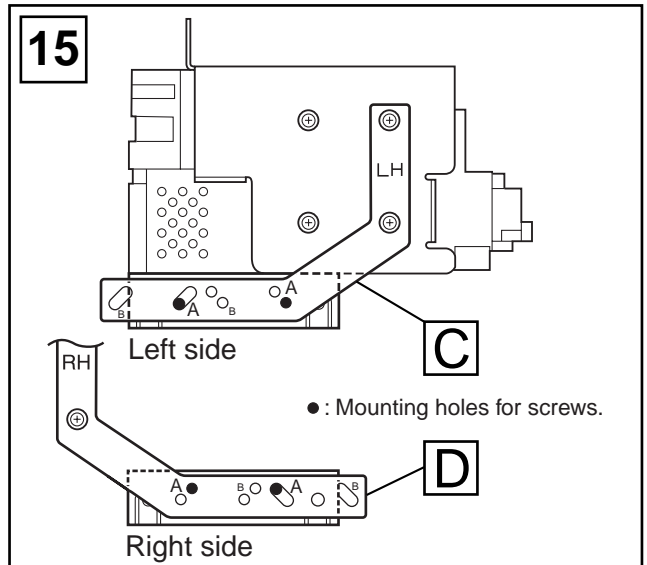
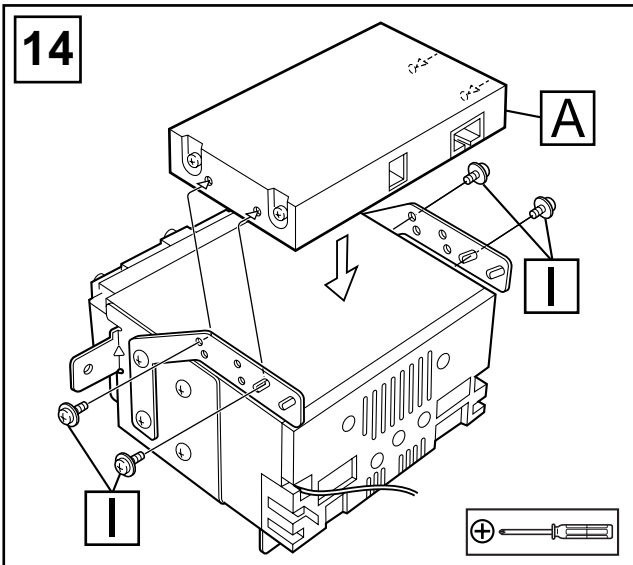
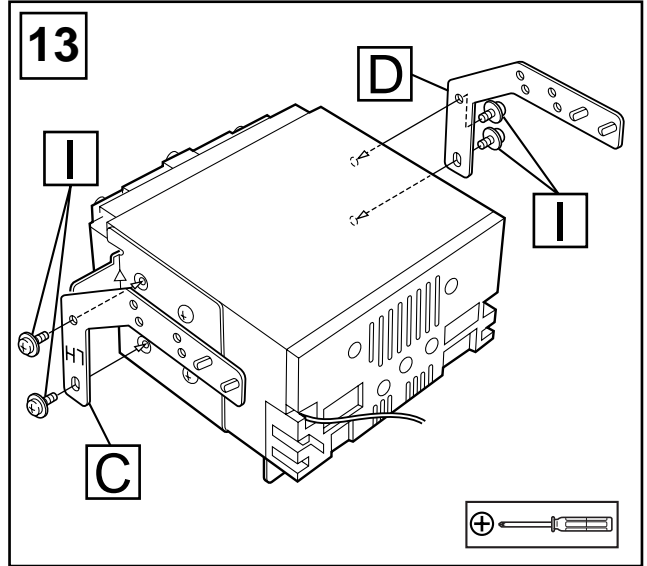
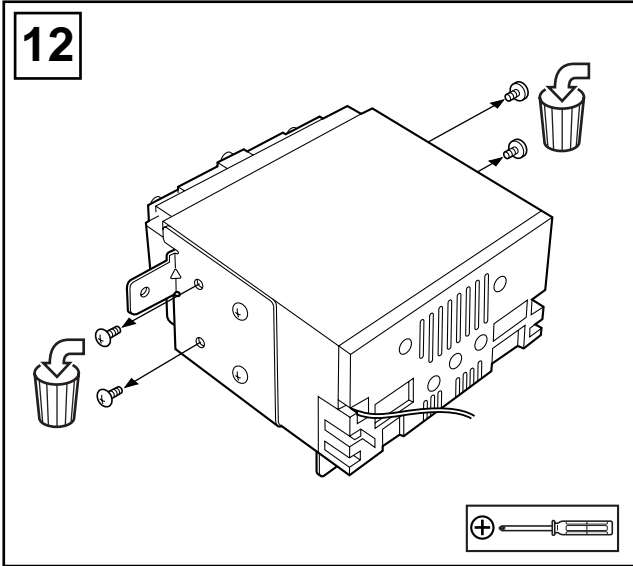
**5**

**6**

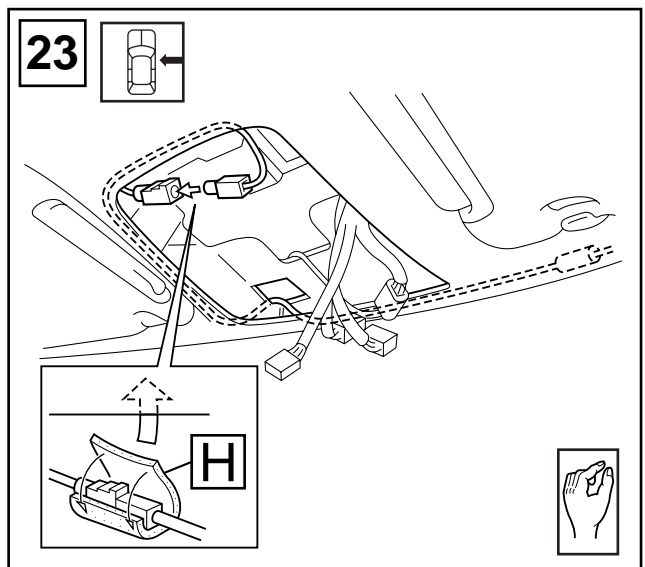
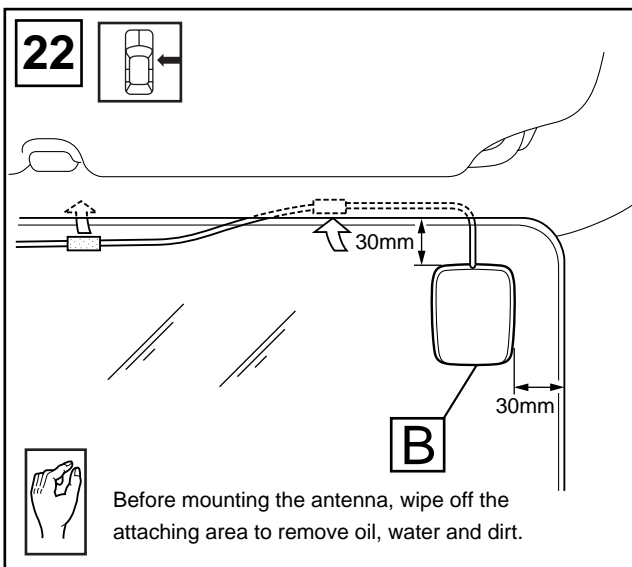
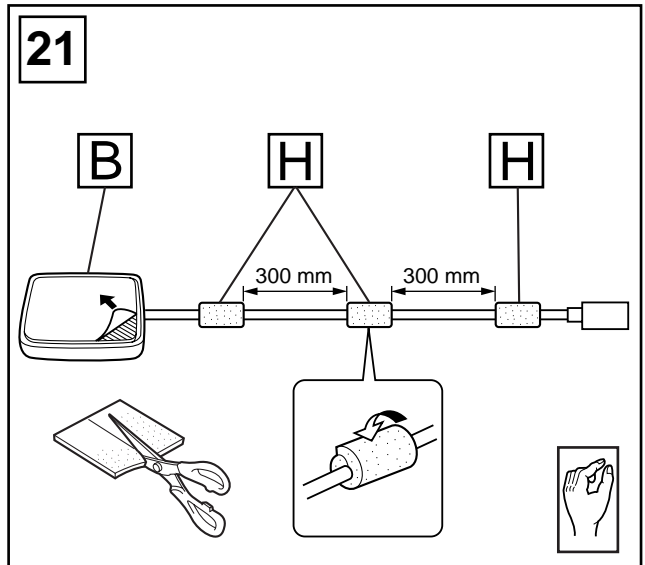
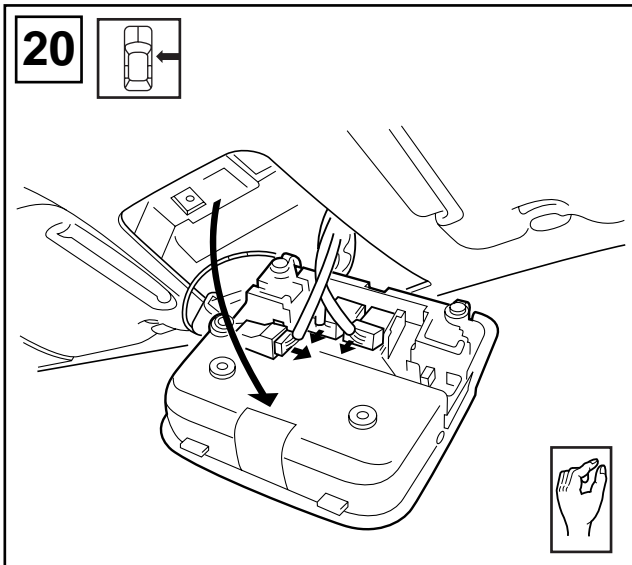
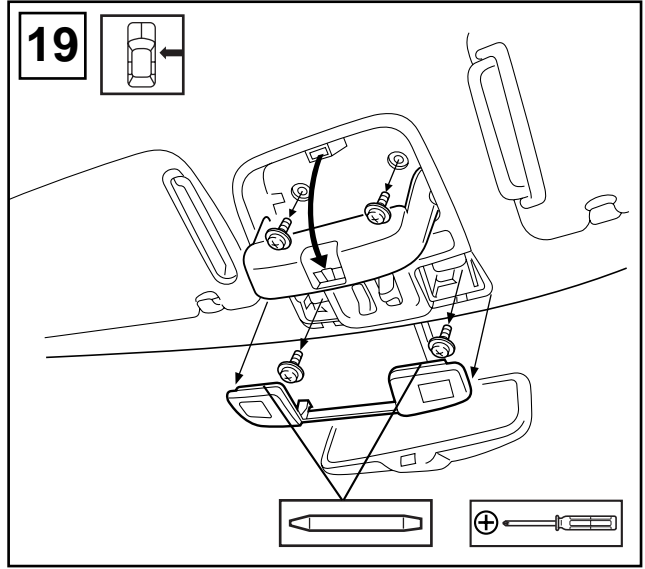
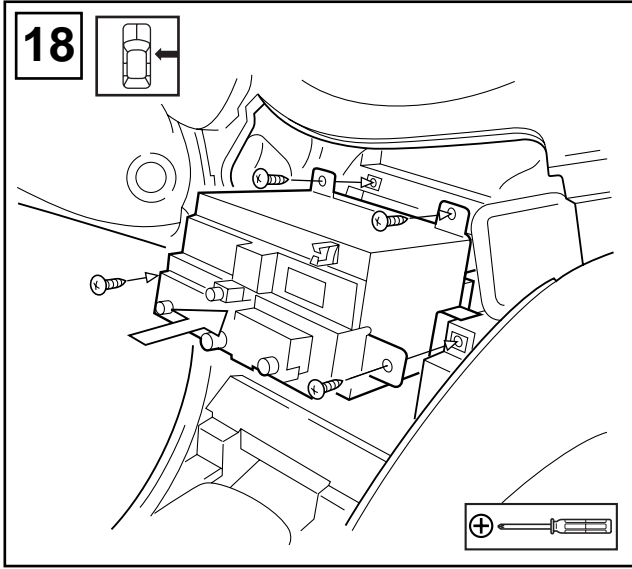
# TRIBECA



# TRIBECA

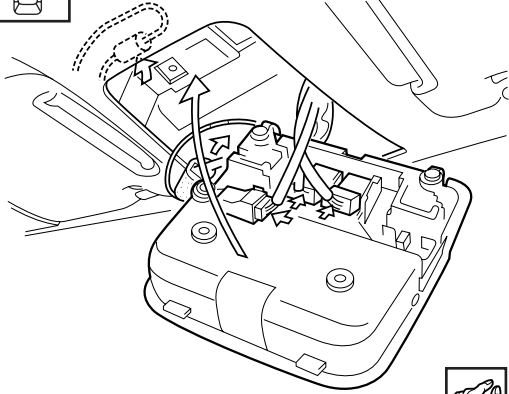


# TRIBECA



# TRIBECA

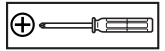
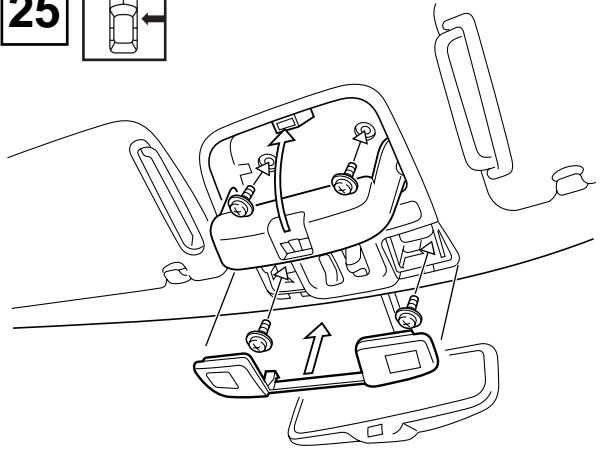
24



Bundle any excess antenna cable and wrap with cable tie.




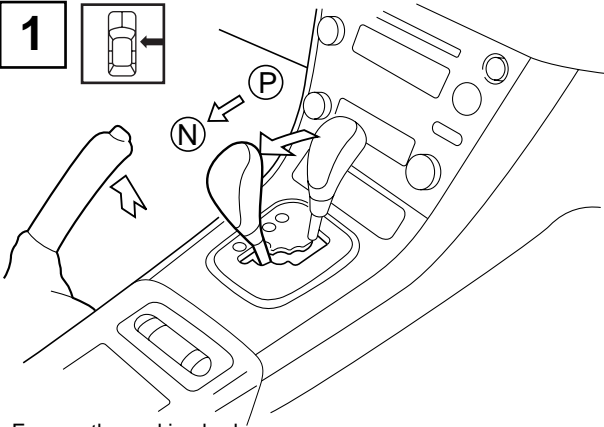
25




Reassembly: **9** → **1**


# LEGACY

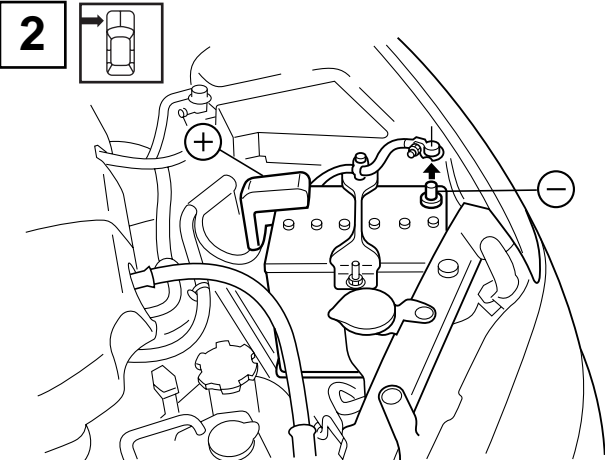
**1** 



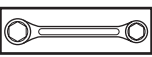
Engage the parking brake.  
Turn on the ignition switch.  
Move the shift Lever from "P" to "N".  
Turn off the ignition switch.




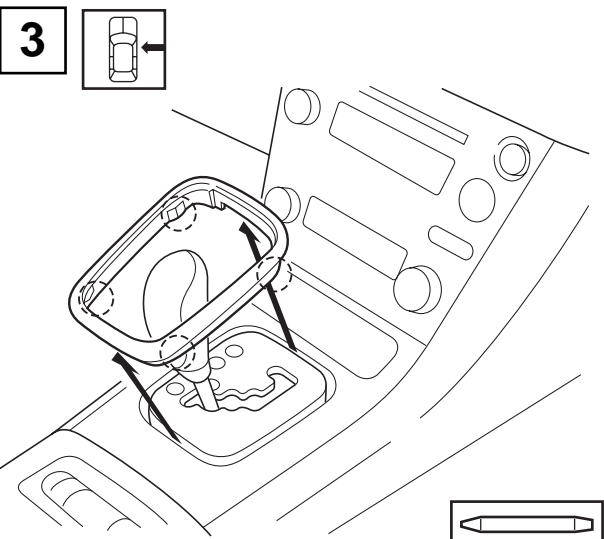
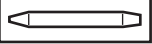
**2** 




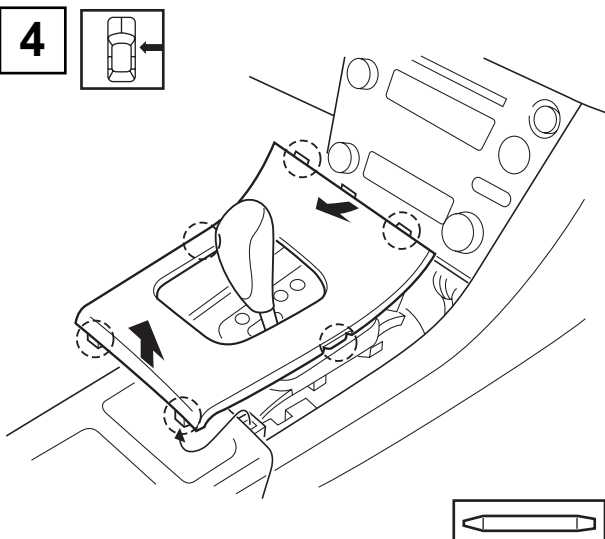
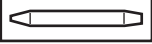
**NOTE**  
Ignition switch should be off when disconnecting negative battery terminal.




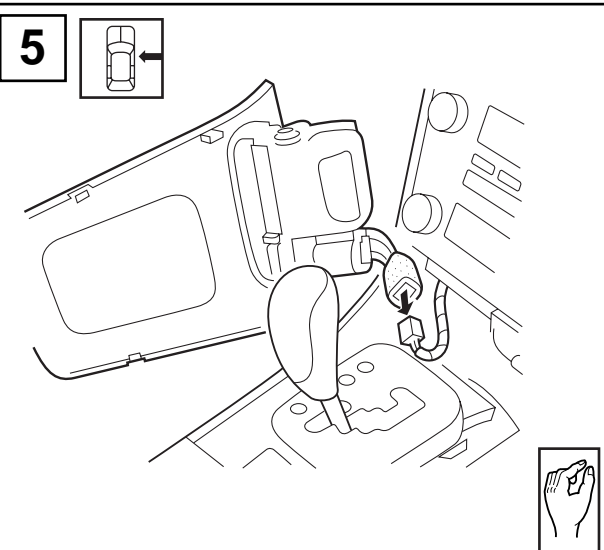

**3** 





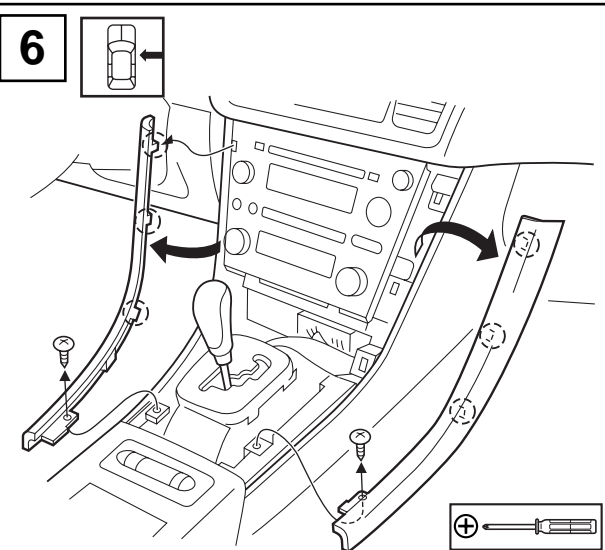
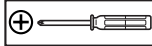
**4** 

**5** 





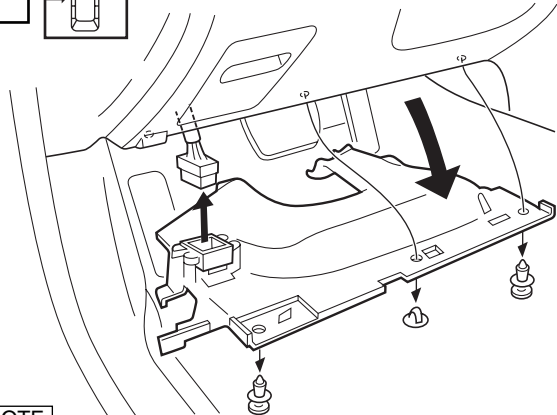
**6** 

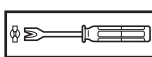



# LEGACY

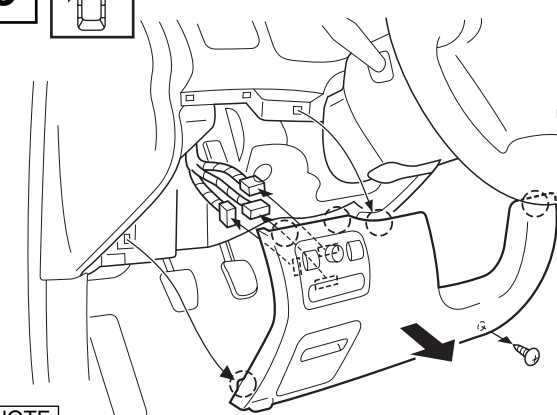
**7** 



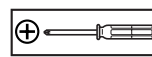
**NOTE**  
If vehicle is equipped with automatic climate control skip this step.




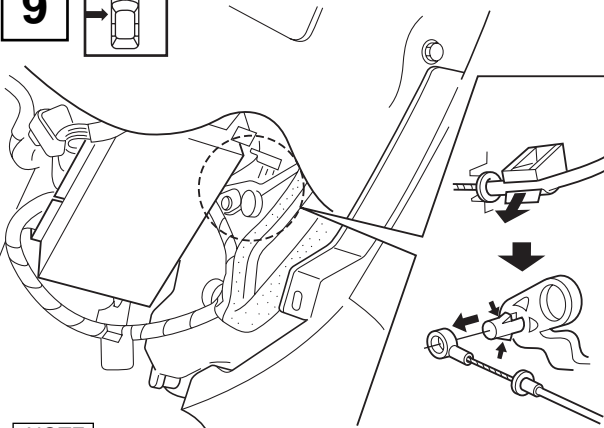
**8** 



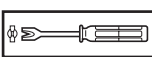
**NOTE**  
If vehicle is equipped with automatic climate control skip this step.




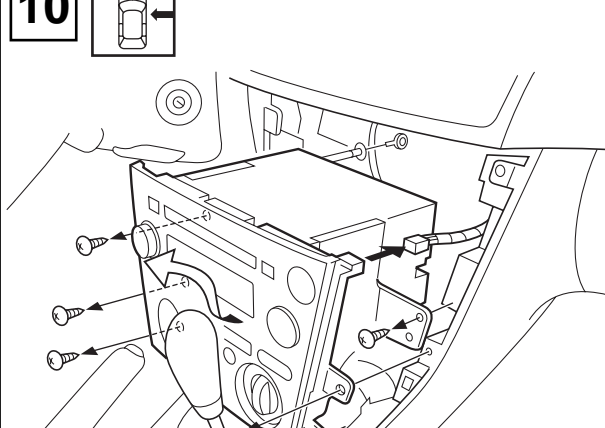
**9** 



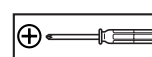
**NOTE**  
If vehicle is equipped with automatic climate control skip this step.




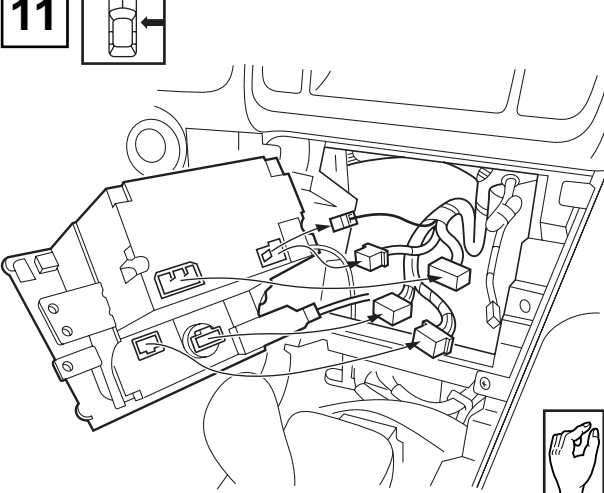

**10** 




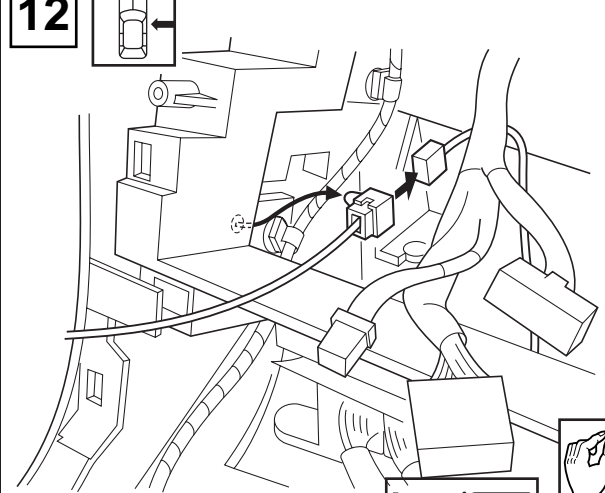
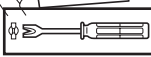

**NOTE**  
If vehicle is equipped with automatic climate control skip this step.



**11** 

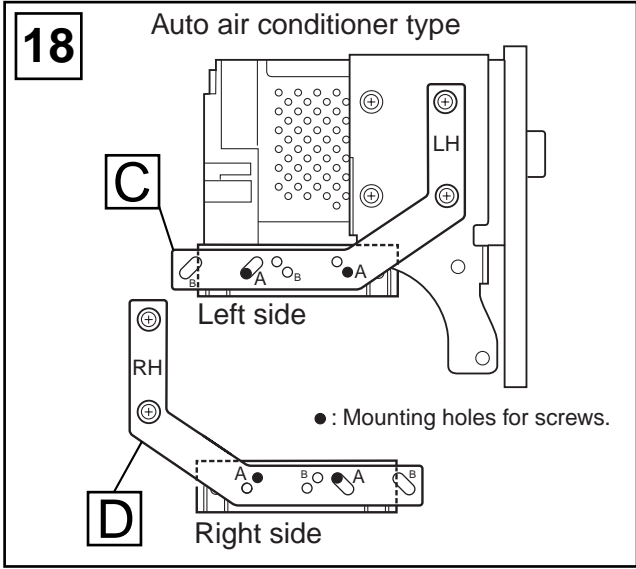
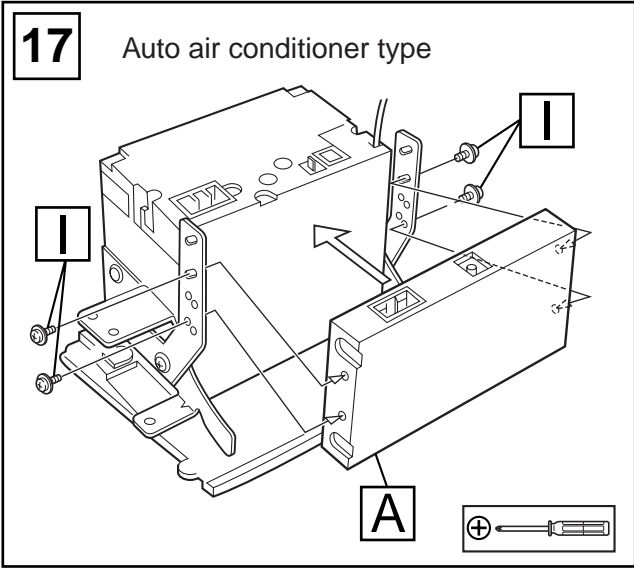
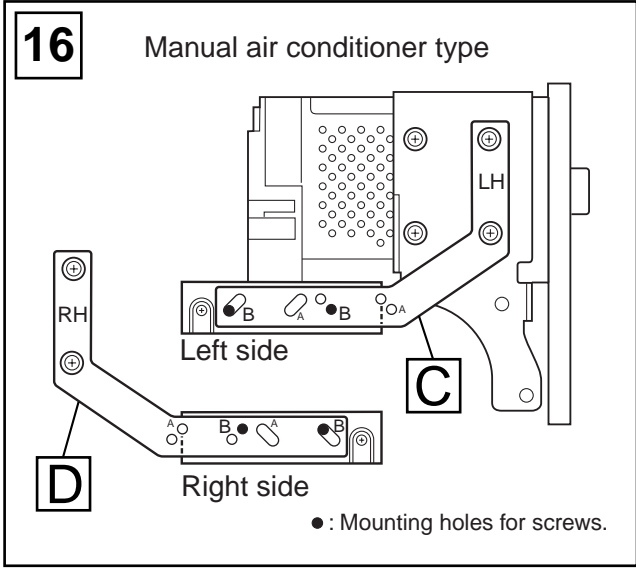
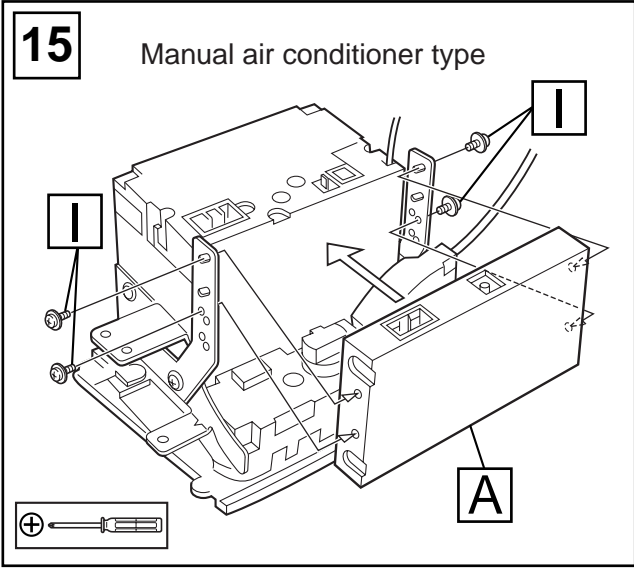
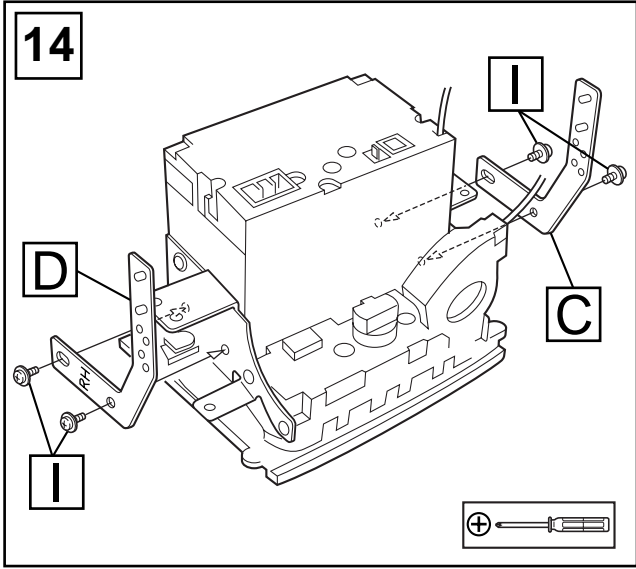
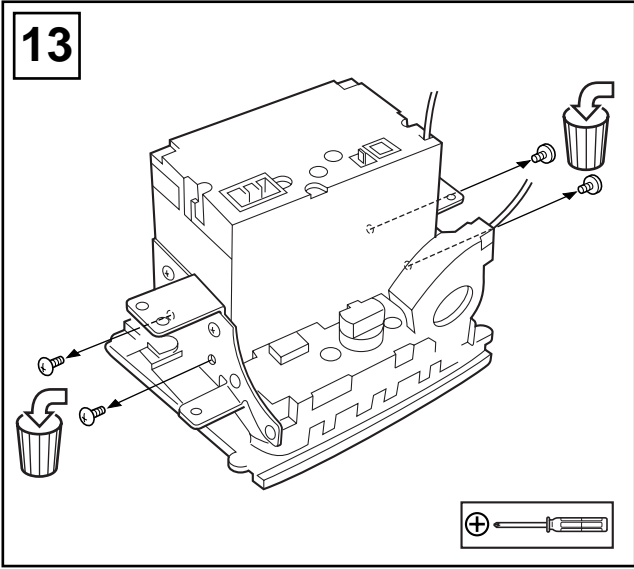



**12** 

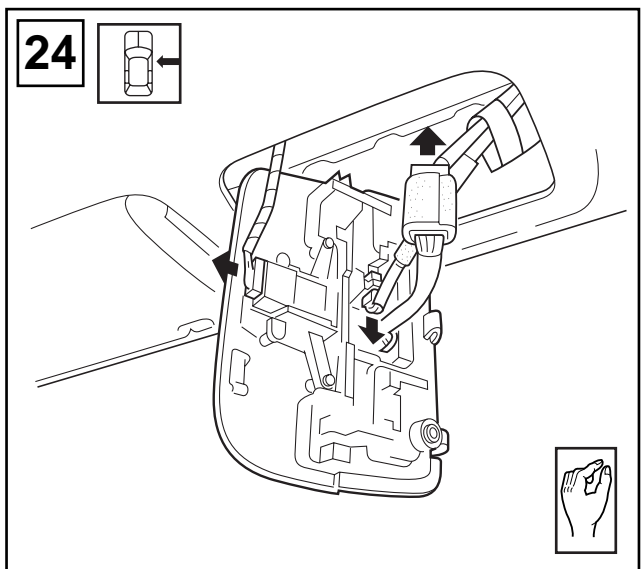
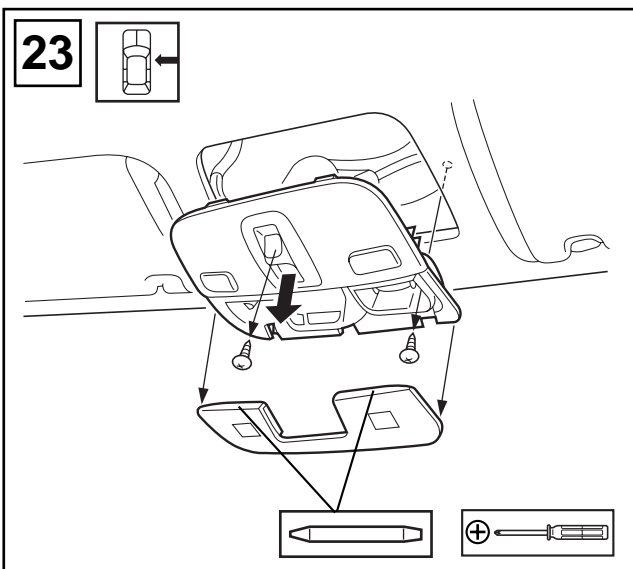
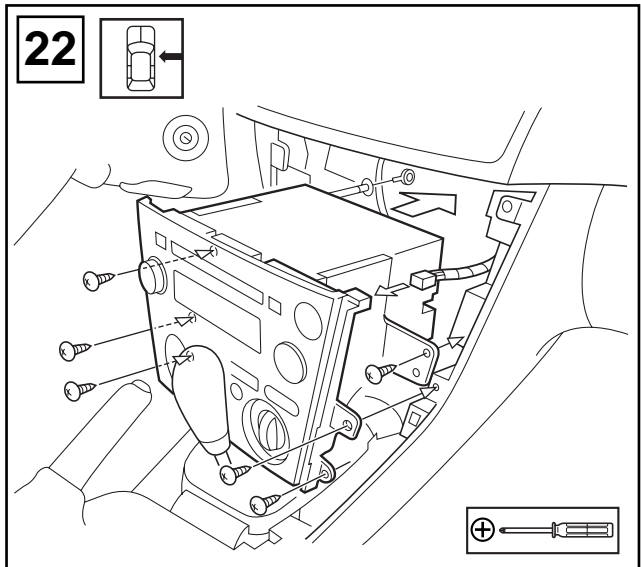
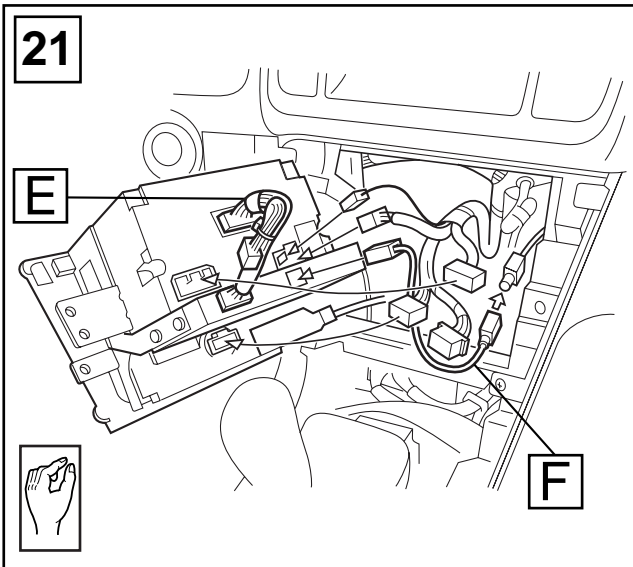
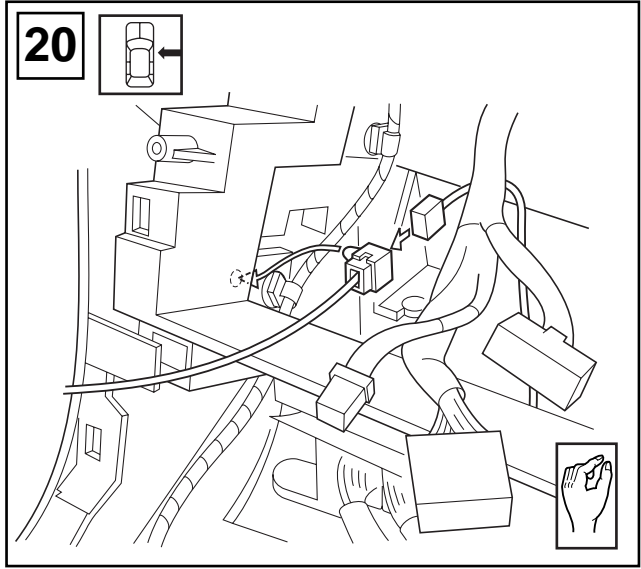
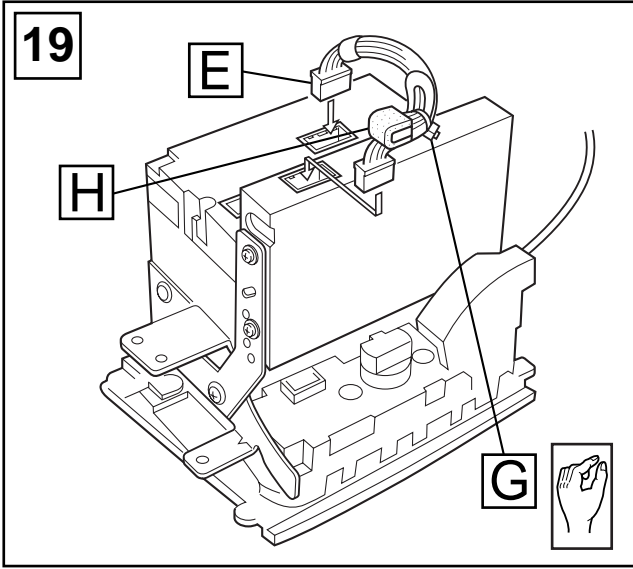






# LEGACY

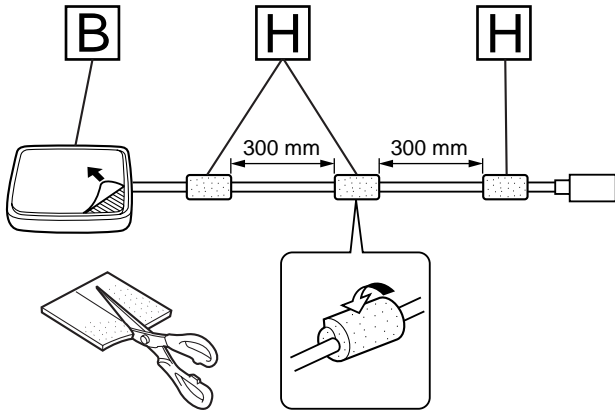


# LEGACY

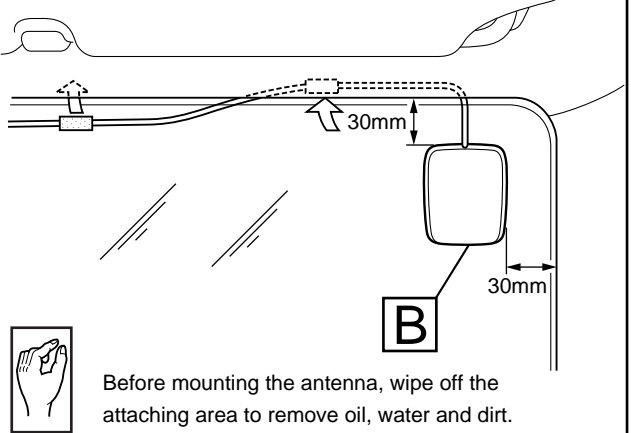


# LEGACY

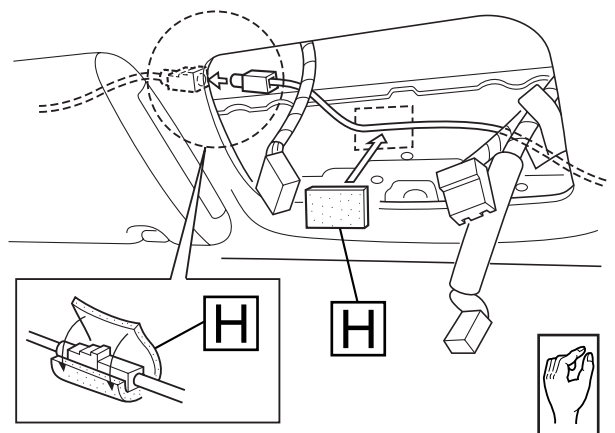
25



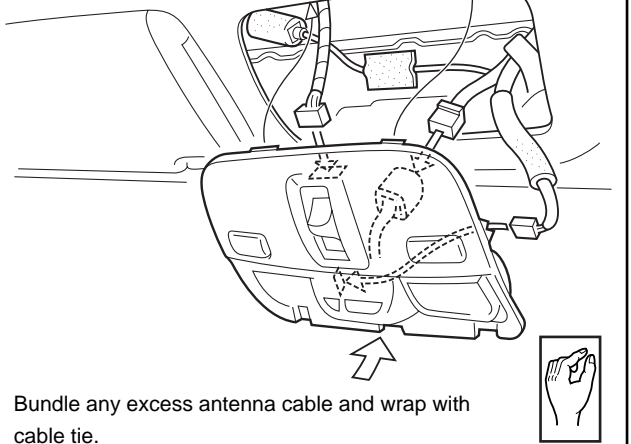
26



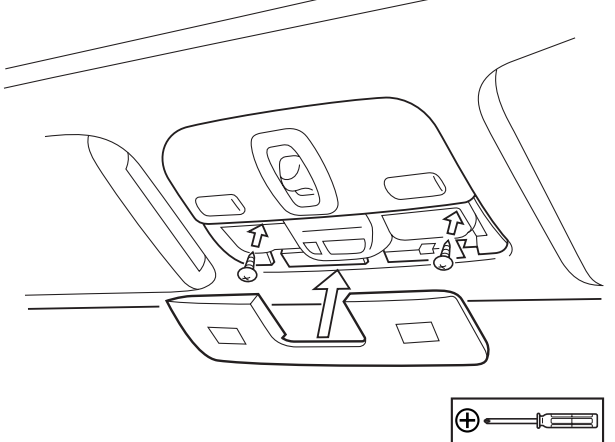
27



28



29



Reassembly: **9** → **1**